This Volume is presented *by the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury*

to _____

and will, in the event of the Library being broken up, be returned to the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office, Westminster.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

W., 10,000—20/9/98.

Croydon Public Libraries.

Central Reference Library.

Accession No. 5425 Class No. 914.2

Besides the class topic, other topics treated of in this book are as follows:—

Topic No.	Pages.	Topic No.	Pages.

BROMLEY LIBRARIES
3 0128 01814 6970

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

32964.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/hronicamonasteri0000thom

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES CENTRAL

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.

YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ,
A THOMA WALSINGHAM,

QUONDAM MONACHO MONASTERII S. ALBANI, CONSCRIPTUM.

EDITED
BY
HENRY THOMAS RILEY, M.A., CAMBR. & OXF.,
AND OF THE INNER TEMPLE, BARRISTER-AT-LAW.

CROYDON FREE PUBLIC LIBRARY
CENTRAL

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMAN & Co., PATERNOSTER ROW; TRÜBNER & Co., LUDGATE HILL:
ALSO BY PARKER & Co., OXFORD;
MACMILLAN & Co., CAMBRIDGE;
A. & C. BLACK, EDINBURGH; AND A. THOM, DUBLIN.

1876.

LR5423
L

BROMLEY PUBLIC LIBRARIES
AL
CLASS
L65 4
ACC.
01814 6970

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

LONDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	Page
Introduction - - - - - - -	vii
Summary of the Contents of the Ypodigma Neustriæ - - - - - - -	xlv
Ypodigma Neustriæ, a Thoma Walsingham, quondam Monacho Monasterii S. Albani, Conscriptum -	1
Appendix - - - - - - -	489
Index of Names in the Ypodigma Neustriæ -	569
Index of Names in the Appendix - - -	609

INTRODUCTION.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

INTRODUCTION.

Description of the Manuscript of the *Ypodigma Neustriæ*.

THE *Ypodigma Neustriæ* of Thomas Walsingham, the last of the historical works in the portion of this Series known as the "*Chronica Monasterii S. Albani*," is a small octavo volume, No. CCXL. in the Catalogue of the Manuscripts preserved in the Parker Collection, at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. The cover, $7\frac{3}{4}$ inches high and $5\frac{2}{3}$ inches in breadth, is of boards, bound in black leather, and formerly had a clasp, the volume having been rebound, to all appearance, about the time of Elizabeth; in which operation some few marginal notes, (of later date than the text), have been, very thoughtlessly, more or less cut away. The book contains, in all, 189 written leaves of paper, with seven additional leaves in blank, three at the beginning, and four at the end. At the head of the first written page is inscribed, in a hand probably of the reign of Henry the Eighth,—"Lib' M. "Hugon Fraunce" (The book of Master Hugh Fraunce), and, below it, "Henr 5," the writing of Archbishop Parker, with his well-known pencil of red chalk. The context ends in the fourth line of the obverse of written folio 189; the writing throughout being on pencilled lines. On the obverse of folio 9 the context is cancelled with lines running across it, in correction of a mistake made by the transcriber.

Thomas Walsingham, the compiler

Of Thomas Walsingham, *Præcentor* and "*Scriptorarius*" of St. Alban's, and, at one time, Prior of the St. Alban's Cell of Wymundham, in Norfolk, all probably that is now known has been set forth in page xx. of the Introduction to Vol. II. of the *Historia Anglicana*, in this Series; a work, the chief authority for a great part of which (A.D.

1272—1392), as again noticed in the sequel, was either compiled by him, or under his auspices. The date of his death has not come down to us, but he must have been well stricken in years at the time of writing his Dedication of the present work to King Henry the Fifth.

Object of the compilation.

While entering upon a short inquiry as to the possible object of Walsingham in compiling the *Ypodigma*, a review of the language of this Dedication may be not inopportune. In a translated form, it runs as follows:—

Language of the Dedication to King Henry V.

" To the most magnificent and most illustrious King " of the French and of the English, Henry, the Conqueror " of Normandy, the most Serene Prince of Wales, Lord of " Ireland and of Acquitaine, by the grace of God, ever " and everywhere Victor, the least of his orators, Brother " Thomas de [1] Walsigham, monk of the Monastery of St. " Alban, Protomartyr of the English, with humble com- " mendation, health in Him Who giveth health to Kings.

" Upon reflecting, amid the studies presented in the " cloister to my contemplation, with what endowments of " virtues, and with what guerdons of victories, Almighty " God hath exalted you, how great the gifts of especial " graces He hath accumulated upon you; so much so, that " even your enemies proclaim your wisdom, admire your " discreetness, and, everywhere commending you, spread " far the fame of your justice in their praises; I have " been filled and refreshed, I confess, with a spiritual de- " light and an inmost rejoicing, much more, to my appre- " ciation of sweetness, than even by exquisite dainties.

" But amid these matters there arises a certain cloud " upon my mind, which darkens the joyousness conceived " in my heart, while I feel compelled to apprehend the " wonted usage of a people, which too often sets but " little value upon the expression of even a vow made

[1] This mode of spelling the name is also adopted in the St. Alban's Manuscript of the *Gesta Abbatum*, which was compiled by Walsingham, or under his supervision; see the *Gesta Abbatum*, Vol. II., p. 109.

" in public, and an oath solemnly made. And while I " was calling to mind ancient days, recollecting the " frauds, the foul deeds, the factiousness, and the acts " of wickedness, committed by the enemy, my spirit " within me was racked with anxiety, and within me " my heart was disturbed, and for grief my life had almost " failed me: knowing that to-morrow may be done " base deeds, even as yesterday, and in dread lest your " guilelessness might in every way be circumvented, I " revolved in my mind, what there was more especially " that might contribute to your safety, while living " amid so many perils.

" At last, among very many other matters, it occurred " to me to write for your Highness, whom my soul " loveth from the inmost recesses of the heart, some- " thing, through which you might be, at once, in greater " safety, and more upon your guard: for, as the Poet[1] " is witness,

" ' Love conquers all,'—

" so it hath wrought that in me, that I do not dread, " even though in rugged and unpolished language, in my " own faltering way, to proffer to a Prince, so wise, so " glorious, the matters which I have been reflecting on in " my mind, and in some way or other to disclose to your " Sereneness what in my heart, to insure the King's " safety, I have conceived. Hence it is, that I have made " it my study to compile a short manual, which comes " down, from the beginning of the Conquest of [2]Neustria " by the Normans, unto the Conquest of England by the " same. And this I have continued even down to the

[1] Virgil, *Ecl.* x. l. 69.

[2] The original " Neustria " comprised the western part of France, from the rivers Saone and Meuse, (the western margin of Bretagne excepted), and between the river Loire, on the south, and the English Channel, on the north. At a later period, the name became restricted to Normandy; though that was but a portion only of the extensive territories known under the name of " Neustria," in the division of the Frankish kingdom among the sons of Chlotair, or Lothaire, the First.

" time, when your Majesty hath potently and victoriously " compelled that same Normandy, alienated, against " right and justice, from your forefathers, for about two " hundred and twenty years, to pass beneath the yoke, " and hath disposed thereof in right of kingship according " to your desires.

" Hence it is, my Lord, King renowned, that unto you " I do present in this little work, for your inspection, the " history of the past, its various wars, peaces mutually " agreed upon, treaties violated, [though] confirmed by " oath, promises, pledges, engagements, made to your " ancestors in fraud, the deceits and the hypocrisy of " their enemies, and whatever means, in his exquisite " craft, the enemy could devise, whereby to beguile your " noble race. Therefore, forasmuch as it is befitting that " no one should have greater knowledge than a Prince, " whose learning may be of the greatest possible advan- " vantage to his subjects, this little book, if so it please " you, for your inspection, to your Highness I, poor and " lowly, your devoted subject, have offered; and I have " given unto it the name of [1] *Ypodigma Neustriæ*,' see- " ing that it shews forth more especially the fortunes or " events of that country, from the time of Rollo, the first " Duke, even down to the sixth year of your happy reign: " and may Almighty God, in His great mercy, main- " tain it in peace in all places, and preserve it in all " prosperity. Amen."

Possible intention with which the work was compiled.

This Dedication, if written, as seems to be implied, immediately after the entire subjugation of Normandy, by Henry the Fifth, was probably composed shortly after the capture of Rouen, which event took place on

[1] This is not a classical word, but Walsingham has invented it himself, as a Latinized form of the Greek word ὑπόδειγμα; the meanings of which are, "sign," "mark," "token;" as also, "pattern." As this word is of the Historian's own coinage, it is placed before the reader, in preference to "*Hypo-* " *digma*," in the exact form which he himself has given to it.

the 16th of January 1419, the sixth year of the reign of that Sovereign: though a few lines were probably afterwards added (p. 488), in reference to the capture of Pontoise, six months later in date, on the 31st of July, in the seventh year of that reign. Possibly, it may have been Walsingham's intention, on commencing the work, to present the book, himself in person, to his Sovereign, on the occasion of some future visit by him to the Abbey of St. Alban's. Of any such visit having been made to the Abbey, no record probably[1] exists. The only time posterior to the implied date of the Dedication that King Henry was in England, was from February to June 1421, and the desired opportunity for personally making this presentation, (if indeed Walsingham survived till 1421), in all probability never arrived: indeed, it seems most likely that neither by him nor by any one else, the book ever was presented. Till the dissolution of the Monastery, it probably lay in the Library at St. Alban's.

Warning tone of the Dedication.

On perusing the earlier part of this Dedication, the reader can hardly fail to be struck with the warning, almost foreboding, tone assumed by the writer; indeed, so remarkable is the language, so significant, apparently, of coming disaster, that one might have almost expected that the aged monk was about to recommend to his Sovereign some prophylactic, or potent antidote, to protect him bodily against the machinations of certain insidious foes; the French nation, no doubt, as such, being alluded to; and this the more especially, as, both in his greater History, the *Historia Anglicana*, and in the present[2] work, Edward (the Black Prince), the great forerunner and prototype of Henry in his career of French conquest, is

[1] The domestic history of the Abbey during this reign is wholly unknown; no particulars relative to it having come down to us, beyond the fact that in 1420 William Heyworth, on becoming Bishop of Litchfield, was succeeded as Abbot by John Whethamstede. Henry and his Queen visited various places north of London in March and April 1421, but St. Alban's is not named among them.

[2] See p. 313 of this Volume; where the assertion is somewhat stronger than in the *Hist. Angl.*, Vol. I., pp. 305, 6.

distinctly mentioned as having had his life shortened by the agency of poison.

Alleged object of the writer of the work.

The gift, however, notwithstanding this extravagant and hyperbolical language, is, after all, no medicinal remedy or antidote, but a little written book only,—*Brevis Tabula*,—"a Short Manual," we will call it; which, under the appellation of "*Ypodigma Neustriæ*," is to teach the Sovereign such important lessons as may be derived from a history of the reigns of his forefathers, commencing in the remote past; and thereby at once inspire him with due caution in dealing with a treacherous foe, and insure his safety and well-being for the future.

The possible object, originally, of the compilation.

Apart from any statement or allegation made in the Dedication, the real fact would seem to be, that, for some reason that can now only be [1] surmised,—very possibly in consideration of the Sovereign's comparative youthfulness,—soon after Henry's accession to the throne, Thomas Walsingham determined upon compiling for his use a manual of Norman and English History, commencing with the conquests of Rollo, the most remote of Henry's Norman ancestors, and bringing it down to the most recent times: the compilation of the later portion being not improbably looked upon by the zealous monk, as also affording a desirable and welcome

[1] We learn from Mr. E. M. Thompson, the Editor of the *Chronicon Angliæ*, recently published in this Series, that there were in existence copies of a Chronicle (the *Chronicon* above-mentioned), containing most scandalous reflections on John of Gaunt, the King's grandfather; and that one, at least, of them had been in the possession of the Abbey of St. Alban's. Henry the Fourth had been, apparently, on good terms with the Abbey authorities; and Walsingham may possibly have been animated by a wish to shew, that history was no longer written within those walls in its former tone of bitter animosity to the grandsire of the now reigning King. Mr. Thompson suggests (Introd. p. xxxiv.) that Walsingham himself may have been, at least to some extent, the writer of the offending volume; the existence of which had probably not been unknown to Thomas of Woodstock, Duke of Gloucester, a younger brother of the Duke of Lancaster, John of Gaunt. The Harleian MS. (3634) of the *Chronicon Angliæ* has some additions to it from the *Ypodigma*, in a 16th century hand.

opportunity of setting before the Sovereign the heresies and excesses of the Wycliffites, or Lollards; men whom Walsingham, in each of his works alike, has not failed, at every opportunity, to rebuke and vilify, and to expose to all possible hatred and contempt.

His mention of the Wycliffites, or Lollards.

The city of Rouen, as already noticed, was not surrendered to Henry until January 1419, and the Conquest of Normandy could not be said to have been completed by him before that date. The Dedication, which of course could not have been written until after that time, was, no doubt, with the exception of the few added lines previously mentioned, the portion last written; and indeed is entered in the manuscript in a different hand, whether or not Walsingham's own, it is impossible to say. The reason, therefore, given at the end of the Dedication for styling the work *Ypodigma Neustriæ*—"Example," or "Pattern, " of Neustria," seems to be but a lame one, at best. If, as above surmised, the compilation was commenced in the second or third year of Henry's reign, or even later, such a title as this cannot have been otherwise than an afterthought; suggested in fact, at the very last moment, that of writing the Dedication, by the coincidence that with Rollo's Conquest of Normandy the book begins, and that with King Henry's re-conquest of the same territory, (which had been wrested from his forefathers by Philip Augustus of France in 1206), it ends. Of Neustria, or Normandy, the mention in the book, after its first comparatively few pages, is but incidental only. That Normandy is in no way its main subject, as would seem to be implied in the title, may at once be seen on reference to the Index at the close of this volume; from which it appears that but the very slightest allusion is ever made made to it between the days of the Conqueror and the time of Henry the Fifth; the notices in reference to it being but ten or twelve only, in upwards of three hundred pages.

The nature, and writing, of the Dedication.

This *Brevis Tabula*, or "Short Manual," of early

Shortcomings of the compiler, in the execution of the work.

Norman and of English History, is perhaps more to be commended for the original design of its compilation, than for the manner in which the work of compilation has been carried out in a practical point of view. Abandoning, to a great extent, the text of his own larger History—(the Manuscript now known as No. 13 E. ix. in the King's Library, at the British Museum),—a work of his earlier years, Walsingham has selected for his manual a series of facts, culled, no doubt, to the best of his ability, from the best writers,—or at least the writers whom he deemed to be such,—on the respective eras, as they successively come under notice. He, however, or at least his amanuensis,—and the errors of his amanuensis a compiler must be content to bear,—is careless at times; as witness his total [1]omission (pp. 155–160) of the events of more than a whole year after the Battle of Lewes; his omission of all notice of the death of Philippa, the wife of Edward the Third, while he takes care to record the obituaries of far less important persons; and the fact of his passing altogether unnoticed the capture of Rouen, the very event on which, as completing the conquest of Normandy, the title of his manual is based.[2]

The probable mode of writing the compilation.

In compiling his work, it seems most consistent with probability that Walsingham himself first marked out in his successive authorities the passages for transcription; and that these passages were then "dictated," according to monastic phrase, or read aloud, to the writer; a fact which would account for the remarkable manner in which the transcriber is found in numerous places to

[1] This omission will be found again noticed in the sequel; see p. xxxvi.

[2] Walsingham has omitted too to correct some errors as to dates, in the MSS. from which he copies. Henry de Wakefeld, Bishop of Worcester, died in 1394, not 1395 (p. 370); Stephen de Patryngtone became Bishop of St. David's in 1415, not 1414 (p. 450); John Beaufort, not Thomas, was created Earl of Somerset (p. 375); and by Thomas Beaufort, Earl of Surrey (p. 430) the same John Beaufort, Earl of Somerset, is meant.

have deviated from the spellings of proper names, as existing in the current texts of those authorities. The book appears throughout, (the Dedication excepted,) to have been written by the same hand: the letters are cramped and disjointed, and faintly written at times, and the writing, altogether of a peculiar character, not improbably was the work of an aged man. From time to time, a small tick, or mark, is inserted in the margin, denoting probably where the work of transcription had been suspended, and then resumed.

The earliest portion of the history contained in the *Ypodigma*, the history, in fact, of the Dukes of Normandy, down to the Norman Conquest of England, pp. 6–68 of this volume, is almost wholly derived from the [1] *Historia Normannorum* of William of Jumièges; who, in his turn, has borrowed his facts, down to the year 1002, from the earlier work of Dudo of Saint Quintin, [2] *De Gestis Ducum Normanniæ*. The language of William of Jumièges, who indulges in much the same hyperbolical and inflated style as Dudo, his original, is abbreviated, and altered, at the compiler's pleasure, in the *Ypodigma;* but the text, with some few exceptions, as follow, is wholly indebted to him for its facts:—

The *Historia* of William of Jumièges, the source of the earliest part of this work.

P. 7, l. 28.—" Episcopum, Sancto Sabbato . . . . " populum peremere;" this statement, as to the murder

[1] Published in Camden's *Anglica, Normannica, etc.*, Duchesne's *Scriptores Norm.*, and Migne's *Patrologiæ Cursus*, No. 149, p. 779. On his historical value, see Mr. Freeman's *History of the Norman Conquest*, Vol. II., pp. 4, 163. William of Jumièges dedicates his History to William the Conqueror, King of England, and Duke of Normandy. It is just possible that his Dedicatory Epistle may have suggested to Walsingham his own Dedication, without any decided intention on his part of presenting the work personally to the Sovereign.

[2] Published in Duchesne's *Scriptores Norm.*, and in Migne's *Patrologiæ Cursus*. A paper was read by Mr. H. H. Howorth, on the historical value of Dudo's work, before the Society of Antiquaries, in the first half year of 1874; see also *Descriptive Catalogue of MSS. on English History* by Sir T. Duffus Hardy, Vol. I., p. 616, and Mr. Freeman's *History of the Norman Conquest of England*, Vol. I., p. 166. Both Dudo and William of Jumièges have, of course, been extensively used by Sir F. Palgrave, in his *History of Normandy and of England*.

of the Bishop of Nantes by the Danes, is not to be found in William of Jumièges, Camden's text, printed in the same volume with the *Ypodigma*, or in that of Duchesne, Paris, 1619.

P. 11, l. 4.—The words "Sanctæ Geretrudis" are an addition to the text of W. Jumièges.

P. 13, l. 6.—For "Guidonis, Comitis Silvanectensis," the reading is "Berengarii, illustris viri," in the text of W. Jumièges and of Dudo of St. Quintin.

P. 13, l. 31.—For "Walterius Episcopus" we read "Antelmus Episcopus" in the text of W. Jumièges, and "Guualtelmus Episcopus" in Dudo of St. Quintin.

P. 13, l. 32.—"quam Karolus Calvus . . "advexerat," is not to be found in the text of W. Jumièges or of Dudo.

P. 14, l. 1.—"Illi tamen, ignorantes . . . percussi "sunt" is an addition to the text of W. Jumièges.

P. 18, l. 6.—"qui Laudunensis . . . obierat," and the passage immediately following,—"Confugerat enim "Lodowicus . . . . Herberti moritur," are additions to the text of W. Jumièges.

P. 18, l. 22.—"apud Laudunum ab Artallo Archie-"piscopo" is added to the text of W. Jumièges.

P. 66, l. 21.—"Johannes Abrincatensis . . Hugo "Luxoviensis," the names of three of the Bishops present at the dedication of the Church of St. Mary, at Jumièges, are omitted in the text of William of Jumièges.

The reign of William the Conqueror, its sources.

The reign of William the Conqueror, pp. 65–75.—The opening part of this reign, from the words "Dux "ergo fortissimus" p. 65, l. 23, to "nox prœlium diremis-"set" in p. 68, is derived, as already stated, like the preceding text, from the work of William of Jumièges; the latter portion of the text, with the exception only of a few words, being taken *verbatim*, or condensed, from the [1]*Abbreviationes Chronicorum* of Ralph de Diceto, Dean of

[1] Published among the *Decem Scriptores*, by Sir Roger Twysden, in 1652; among which are also the Chronicles of John Bromton and Henry Knighton (who lived in the reigns of Edward III. and Richard II.), hereafter more fully mentioned.

St. Paul's London, who wrote at the end of the 12th century.

P. 70, l. 10.—"Unde factum est . . . . regnum "subjugaret," is an unimportant addition to Diceto's text.

P. 74, l. 11.—"ubi prodentibus miraculis . . manifeste declarat," a reference to the miracles said to have been wrought at Earl Waltheof's tomb, at Crowland, is an addition to Diceto.

P. 75, l. 14.—"quibus visum . . . . cellas suas," an addition to Diceto's text.

The reign of William the Second, pp. 75–84.— Reign of William II.

This reign. with one exception, is taken almost *verbatim* from Ralph de Diceto, already mentioned.

P. 76, l. 1.—"dictus Rufus," is an addition, not in Diceto's text.

P. 83, l. 9.—"Adducto Helia . . cum Rege furente," —the conversation of William with his prisoner, Count Helias, at Le Mans, is also an addition to Diceto's text, apparently from the *Gesta Regum Anglorum* of William of Malmesbury.

The reign of Henry the First, pp. 84–88.— Reign of Henry I.

The brief account of this reign is, to a great extent, derived from the text of Ralph de Diceto. The following are the variations :—

P. 85, l. 4.—"regressus de peregrinatione Ierosolymitana," is an interpolation, or addition to Diceto's text.

P. 85, l. 29.—"et plures alii capti sunt," apparently an incorrect version of the text of Diceto, which has "et "Willelmus Crispinus captus," in place of it.

P. 86, l. 32.—"Mortua Matilde . . centesimo vicesimo," an addition to Diceto's text, from other historical sources.

P. 87, l. 2.—"Hic jactitaverat . . . . . trahere "faceret,"—in reference to the threat uttered by Prince William, the unfortunate son of Henry, is an addition to Diceto's text. Similar words are quoted in John Bromton's *Chronicle*, as being given by William of Malmesbury ; but they are not in his *Gesta Regum Anglorum*.

The exact words here used are in Henry Knighton's *Chronicle.*

P. 87, l. 5.—"Sub hoc tempore, Rex . . . Ste- "phanus, Comes Boloniæ"; the whole of this context is added, from other historical sources; the same account is given in the Chronicles of John Bromton and Henry Knighton.

P. 88, l. 8.—"quondam Dux Normanniæ . . obiit "apud Kardif";—an addition to Diceto's text: it occurs in the text of Bromton's and Knighton's Chronicles.

Reign of King Stephen.

The reign of King Stephen, pp. 88–92.—

In the short account of this reign, the text of Diceto is still mainly used, but extracts from the [1] *Annales* of Nicholas Trivet are added.

P. 89, l. 28.—"et terram usque ad flumen Teyse," is an addition, from Trivet.

P. 90, l. 6.—"ubi Regina Angliæ . . transiit super- "stratum"; an addition to Diceto's text; the context being found in Bromton's Chronicle.

P. 90, l. 32.—"Sed, morte præventus . . . vixit in "Papatu," an addition to the text of Diceto; perhaps an incorrect assertion derived from Trivet, who says that Lucius II., lived, as Pope, *more* than eleven months; namely, eleven months, and seven days.

P. 91, l. 8.—"Anno millesimo . . . inferno tor- "queri," an addition to Diceto's text; but found in Bromton's Chronicle.

Reign of Henry II.

The reign of Henry the Second, pp. 92–110.—

The context under this reign is almost wholly derived the *Ymagines Historiarum* of Ralph de Diceto, a Continuation of the *Abbreviationes*, previously mentioned.

P. 95, l. 14.—"Annus millenus . . . ense Thomas," an addition to the text of Diceto: the lines are found in the texts of Robert de Monte and [2]Roger de Hoveden, and are given, with several others, in Bromton's Chronicle.

[1] Published by the English Historical Society, Ed. Thomas Hog, 1845.

[2] Recently published in the present Series, under the editorship of Professor Stubbs.

P. 97, l. 17.—" et multa alia . . . Sancti Thomæ"; an addition, probably the result of Walsingham's own reading.

P. 105, l. 19.—[Post hæc . . jusjurandum fecerunt]: these words, which are required by the sense, (and are added from Camden's text), are wanting also in the text of Diceto.

Pp. 108, 9, ll. 32, 2.—" Sub eodem anno . . . cruce-" signati sunt"; an adaptation probably of the language of Trivet.

Pp. 109, 110, ll. 24, 6.—" Rege Angliæ Cenomannis . . " . . Regi Francorum" is taken from the text of Trivet.

P. 110. The assertion that Henry the Second, as he lay on his death-bed, cursed the day he was born, is, from the language, more probably borrowed from Roger de Hoveden, than from Matthew of Westminster, or the *Chronica Majora* of Matthew Paris; the epitaph is quoted, however, from Diceto, and is not the one given by Matthew Paris.

The reign of Richard the First, pp. 110–122.— Reign of Richard I.

The text of Ralph de Diceto is mainly adopted in the earlier part of this reign, but towards the close that of Trivet is more generally used.

P. 114, ll.3–30.—" Qui, immemor beneficiorum . . . " interfecti"; the whole of this context is derived from Trivet.

P. 115, l. 4.—" Rex Ricardus . . . Turcis com-" mutavit,"—the ransom of William des Preaux, is taken from Trivet.

P. 115, l. 13.—The words "infausto omine," in reference to King Richard landing on the territory of the Duke of Austria, are an addition to the text of Diceto.

Pp. 115, 6, ll. 14, 22.—"A quo captus . . . quin-" gentesimo quinto"; this account of the capture of Richard, and transcript of the letter sent by the Prince of the Assesini, is taken from Trivet.

P. 118, l. 13.—" Cum Rex Ricardus . . . in memoria " quod fecisti"; this is borrowed from the text of Trivet.

P. 120, l. 18.—"Anno millesimo . . . Marcadeus . . . "Rotomagum"; borrowed from Trivet, with the exception that he says that the Bishop of Beauvais was imprisoned in England, and not at Rouen; and that the words—"homo Marti plus deditus quam cultor Martyrum," are not given in Trivet.

Pp. 120, 1, ll. 27, 12.—"Ricardus Rex . . reintroduxit "monachos"; the whole of this context is also in Trivet, but the continuing words, in p. 121, l. 12.—"Ad quorum . . . fœdere adunari," in reference to the mission from St. Alban's for the instruction of the restored monks of Coventry, is an addition; no doubt, from a St. Alban's source.

Pp. 121, 2, ll. 34, 17.—"Anno millesimo . . Ricardus "Rex . . . sexque diebus"; this account of the death of Richard is derived from the text of Trivet, but the line stating the name of the soldier, "Petrus Basilii," is taken from the Abbreviated Annals towards the close of the text of Ralph de Diceto.

Reign of King John.

The reign of King John, pp. 122–135.—

The history of this reign is almost wholly derived from the *Annales* of Trivet; the following being the only exceptions:—

P. 130, l. 6.—"octavo anno . . . Dominicus præ- "dicare"; this remark, that the conversion of St. Francis of Assisi took place in the eighth year after St. Dominic began to preach, is an addition to Trivet's text, but still an inference from it.

P. 133, l. 19.—"Horum dux fuit . . ut præfertur"; this account of the shipwreck of Hugh de Boves and his mercenaries, and of the pestilence arising from the bodies of the drowned, is an addition to the text of Trivet; probably from the *Chronica Majora* of Matthew Paris, *sub anno* 1215.

Reign of Henry III.

The reign of Henry the Third, pp. 135–166.—

The text of this reign is derived by Walsingham from the *Annales* of Trivet, with the following exception:—

P. 136, ll. 5, 26.—"Narrant tamen quidam Chronici .

" . . . spiritum exhalavit;" the story told by some Chroniclers as to the sinister intentions of Prince Louis of France, on his invasion of England, is probably borrowed from the *Chronica Majora* of Matthew Paris, *sub anno* 1216.

The reign of Edward the First, pp. 166–240.— The text of this reign, with the exceptions below stated, is derived from the *Annales* of Trivet :— Reign of Edward I.

P. 173, l. 15.—The words "apud Westmonasterium," in the account given of the decoration of the tomb of Henry the Third, by his son, King Edward, are added from the St. Alban's Chronicle of William Rishanger (printed in the present Series).

P. 174, l. 6.—"Hoc anno . . . . dorsatim con-" juncti"; the account of eight semicircles being seen around the sun, is derived from the Chronicle of Rishanger.

Pp. 174, 5, ll. 32, 5.—"Hoc anno, Rex . . . . in " subsidium concesserunt;" the context here is derived from the text of Rishanger.

P. 176, l. 23.—"Sub eodem tempore . . est trans-" lata"; the account of the finding of the body of Constantius, and of the recovery of the crown of King Arthur, is derived from Rishanger. Much of the matter in this reign is common to Trivet and Rishanger, and at times it seems impossible to say positively to which source the compiler has been indebted.

P. 177, l. 5.—"Et quia prius . . non minorarent"; the enactment, under King Edward, as to the secular possessions of the religious, is found only in Rishanger's Chronicle.

P. 177, l. 23.—"dote sua . : in perpetuum confir-" mata;" the confirmation of her dowry to Queen Alianor, the King's mother, on her assuming the monastic habit at Ambresbury, is derived solely from Rishanger's text.

P. 178, l. 6.—"Thomas de Cantilupo . . . . corus-" care"; the account of the death and miracles of

Thomas de Cantilupe, Bishop of Hereford, is derived from Rishanger's text.

P. 179, l. 25.—"Nocte Sanctæ Margaretæ . . ad "decem solidos venderetur;" the account of the great tempest in 1289, and of the dearth prevailing for many years after, is derived from Rishanger's Chronicle.

P. 180, l. 10.—"Conditum est ergo corpus . . . . "imaginem depingi"; the account of the burial of Queen Alianor, wife of King Edward, and of the honours paid to her memory, is derived from Rishanger's Chronicle. The words added in the same page,—"Fuerat hæc "Regina . . . . . morum gravitate," are probably Walsingham's own.

Pp. 180–2, ll. 33, 34.—"Ob quam causam . . . decre- "verit in præmissis"; this account of the inquiry as to Edward's right as superior lord of Scotland, and of the transactions at Norham in reference to the Scottish Crown, is wholly derived from the text of Rishanger.

P. 185, l. 5.—"Igitur ex parte . . . plenius decla- "ratur"; this account of the further proceedings, resulting in the award in favour of John de Balliol, is given from Rishanger's text.

P. 186, ll. 1, 24.—"suborta est discordia . . . utri- "usque regni;" this account of the quarrel between English and Norman sailors, and its results, is derived from Rishanger's Chronicle.

Pp. 186–189, ll. 33, 25.—"Eo tempore, Ericus . . . "domini sui prædicti, *et cætera*"; this account of the claim of Eric, King of Norway, to the Crown of Scotland, is taken from Rishanger's Chronicle.

P. 192, ll. 5–21.—"Anno millesimo . . . astringi "ulterius intendebat"; this account of the negotiations with the King of France in 1294, and of the renunciation of homage to him on part of the King of England, is derived from Rishanger's Chronicle.

Pp. 193, 4, ll. 23, 4.—"Huic successit idem Benedictus "." . . . factus Papa, revocavit"; this statement as to the abdication of Pope Cœlestinus V., and the suc-

cession of Boniface VIII., with the allusion to his misfortunes and miserable end, is derived from Rishanger's text; and, possibly, from a short account thereof in the brief St. Alban's Chronicle, *Annales Anglicæ et Scotiæ*, printed in the same volume with Rishanger's Chronicle, in the present Series, from MS. Cotton, Claudius D. vi.

Pp. 194, 5, ll. 32, 2.—"Succisa sunt etiam . . . tem-" poralium metuentes"; this statement, as to the woods being cut down in Wales, and the capture of Madoc, is derived from Rishanger's text.

P. 196, l. 13.—"Nempe horum consilio . . . . . " pinguia possidebat,"—in reference to the advice given to Balliol by the Abbot of Mailros and others, is an addition, from Rishanger's Chronicle.

P. 197, l. 10.—"fuerat autem Comes Leycestriæ et " Lancastriæ," the titles of the deceased prince, Edmund, brother of Edward the First;—this passage is probably borrowed from Rishanger's text, at the beginning of his account of the reign of Edward the First.

P. 201, l. 31.—"Consignata littera . . regni Scotiæ;" this passage, at the conclusion of Balliol's formal submission to King Edward, is given in the text of Rishanger only.

P. 204, l. 22.—"Nam idem Archiepiscopus . . bonis " Ecclesiæ," the ground of the offence given by the Archbishop of Canterbury to King Edward, is derived from Rishanger's text.

Pp. 209, 210, ll. 37, 3.—"Eodem anno, Adulphus . . . " Albertus pro eo"; this account of the death of Adolph, King of the Romans, is borrowed from Rishanger's text: by Trivet it is given in different language.

P. 212, l. 16.—"Anno millesimo . . . apud Ganda-" vum"; the fact of King Edward spending Christmas at Ghent, is derived from Rishanger's text.

Pp. 215–218, ll. 33, 3.—"respondit se ipsum Johannem " . . . . contra eum cœlum et terram"; the whole of the context here is borrowed from Rishanger's text.

P. 233, l. 5.—"prout videbatur ignorantibus verita-" tem," an addition, from Rishanger's text.

P. 234, ll. 1–29.—"Circa festum . . . tribuit facul-" tatem"; the whole of this account of the dissensions between the King of France and Pope Boniface the Eighth, with the statement as to the miserable end of the latter, is an abbreviation from the account given by Rishanger.

P. 235, l. 15.—"Papa Benedictus . . . . . in " eum, absolvit;" the absolution of the King of France from excommunication, is borrowed from the text of Rishanger.

P. 235, l. 23.—"Rex Edwardus . . . malum consi-" lium;" the banishment of Gaverston by Edward the First, on the ground that he had given bad counsel to his son, the Prince, is probably an adaptation from the text of Trivet; who says that "he was accused of divers " things." John de Trokelowe, in his *Annales*, published in the present Series (p. 64), says that Gaverston was banished "certis de causis." In Rishanger's text, Gaverston is not mentioned here.

P. 236, ll. 4–27.—"Rex autem Angliæ . . minutis " beneficiis"; the text is here borrowed from Rishanger, the words, in reference to the avarice displayed by Pope Clement the Fifth,—"attendens quod charitas incipit " a se ipsa,"—seeing that charity begins at home,—are probably added by Walsingham himself.

The epithet "viraginem," applied in p. 237, l. 10, to the Countess of Buchan, who crowned Robert le Brus King of Scotland, at Scone, and was afterwards imprisoned in a wooden cage on the wall of Berwick Castle, is found in neither of the corresponding texts of Trivet, Rishanger, or MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.; it is, in all probability, an epithet of Walsingham's own coinage.

P. 237, l. 17.—"Ob quam causam . . . datus fuit"; the account of the grant made to the King by the people and clergy, is given only in the text of Rishanger.

P. 237, l. 19.—"Dedit autem Rex . . sunt gavisi;" this statement as to the joy of the Welch, on the Principality and the Earldom of Chester being bestowed on the King's son, Prince Edward, is derived from the *Annales Regis Edwardi Primi*, MS. Cotton. Claudius D. vi., p. 464 of the Volume of Rishanger, in this Series. It is borrowed also by Walsingham in MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix. *sub anno* 1300. The same statement is found, but in different language, in the *Flores Historiarum* of Matthew of Westminster.

P. 237, 8, ll. 28, 2.—"Edwardus, filius Regis . . . "principum jussione"; the text here, in reference to the ravages committed in Scotland by the Prince of Wales, and the displeasure manifested by his father, is borrowed from Rishanger's text.

The context of Rishanger's Chronicle ends abruptly at the words—"invitans Aymerum ad congressum," which occur in the *Ypodigma* at page 238, line 10. The whole of the context in this page, except the words —"Insuper Simon . . . . . et combustus, fuit"; the capture and execution of Simon Frissell (or Fraser), is also found in Trivet; and from the same source probably is derived the further context of the *Ypodigma*, down to—"sexaginta octo et dies viginti" in page 240, l. 8, with which words Trivet's *Annales* end.

P. 240. ll. 9–27.—"Duxerat autem duas uxores . . . "filiam, nomine Margaretam;" this statement is derived from MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., which was probably, at least partly, indebted for its matter to the Continuation of Trivet's *Annales*.

P. 240, l. 28.—"Fuerat autem . . . subjugata,"—the character and victorious career of Edward the First:—the context is taken from MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., which is here indebted to the Chronicles of Adam Murimuth and Matthew of Westminster.

The reign of Edward the Second, pp. 241–265.— Reign of Edward II.

The whole of this reign is derived by Walsingham from the compilation in MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., already

mentioned, or its original; mostly, in a very condensed form.

In p. 244 (ll. 23, 24) the Dominicans, or "Friars "Preachers" (of MS. Bibl. Reg.), established at Langley, in Hertfordshire, by King Edward, to pray for the soul of Piers Gaverston, have the epithet "Friars Jacobins" (Fratres Jacobitæ), given them by Walsingham; an addition, probably, of his own.

P. 259, l. 19.—"Circa tempus . . . . . brachia "domesticorum, expiravit"; this passage, in reference to the death of Aymer de Valence, Earl of Pembroke, while sent as an envoy to France, is omitted in the *Historia Anglicana*, when borrowing from the text of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

Reign of Edward III.

The reign of Edward the Third, pp. 265–326.—

The history of this reign is derived in general from the Manuscript Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., previously mentioned.

P. 268, ll. 6–14.—"Obiit etiam . . . . Francorum "regnum," in reference to the claim of Edward to the French throne, is an interpolation from another source.

P. 269, l. 26.—"Qui cum tristem . . . afflixerat "populares,"—an addition to the account of the execution of Edmund de Woodstock, Earl of Kent; derived from the Chronicle of Walter de Hemingburgh, or Hemingforde, the two lines beginning—"Qui eo minus . . "." . . . . populares," excepted, which are from the *Chronicon* of Adam Murimuth.

Pp. 270, 1, ll. 36, 2.—"Rex Edwardus . . mille libras," the ordinance as to the yearly grant to Isabel, the Queen Mother, is an addition, from Hemingburgh's Chronicle.

P. 273, l. 28.—"Hoc anno . . . Regis Edwardi"; the fact of King Edward laying the country waste to the extreme north of Scotland, is an addition, from Hemingburgh's text.

P. 276, l. 11.—"scilicet, Petrus Hispanus . . . Fa-"ventiæ,"—the names of the Cardinals, sent as envoys to treat of peace between the Kings of England and France, are an addition, from Murimuth's Chronicle.

P. 282, l. 10.—"Cujus tenor . . . in stuporem"; this statement as to the admiration and surprise of the Pope and the Cardinals at the elegance of King Edward's letter, beginning,—"Pensata Sedis Apostolicæ "clementia," is an addition to the text of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

Pp. 285–290, ll. 32, 5.—"In scandendo terram apud "Hogges . . . non ad mortem"; in these pages the context of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix. is abandoned, and matter from other sources is substituted.

Pp. 291, 2, ll. 2, 3.—"Cujus capitaneus . . . cum "triumpho rediit glorioso"; the text is here expanded, in comparison with that of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., and taken from other sources.

P. 293, l. 13.—"Qui anno præcedenti . . fugam "versis"; an addition to the context of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 311, l. 8.—"quæ cum eo remanserat . . promp-"tissimorum"; an addition to the context of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 315, l. 18.—"Cujus admiranda gesta . . . Lum-"bardus"; this is an addition to the praises of Sir John Hawkwode, as taken from MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 317, l. 13.—"ictu spiculi peremptus est,"—"an "arrow" as being the cause of the death of Sir John Chaundos, is an addition to the context from MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 319, l. 29.—"tento Londoniis," an addition to the context of MS. Bibl. Reg., which omits to say where this Parliament was held.

P. 320, l. 22.—"quidam ex aulicis," and ll. 26, 27, "Willelmus Comes Sarum, Reginaldus Dominus de "Cobham," are additions to the context, which is taken from MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 321, l. 5.—"Captæ sunt tamen . . . duraturæ," an addition to the context of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 322, l. 9.—"quod 'Bonum' a vulgaribus dicebatur,"

the title of "the Good Parliament" being applied to that of the year 1376, is an addition to the context of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 323, l. 31.—"Rex Comitem . . . amoverit,"—a passage in reference to the reported dislike of King Edward towards the Earl of Warwick, is an addition to the context of MS. Bibl. Reg.

P. 325, l. 26.—"Hii vocabantur a vulgo 'Lollardi' . " . . ad sectam suam"; this description of the dress and habits of the Lollards is an addition, perhaps the result of Walsingham's own observation, to the context of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix. It is printed in Camden's text of the *Historia Anglicana* of Walsingham, but in MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., from which that text is derived, it is wanting.

P. 326, l. 14.—"qui, dum vixit . . . superavit"; a brief testimony to the merits of Edward the Third, is probably an addition to the context, from Walsingham's own pen.

Reign of Richard II.

The reign of Richard the Second, pp. 327–387.—

The history of this reign in the *Ypodigma* down to the year 1392 (p. 364, l. 29—"eligere, sicut prius") has been mainly borrowed by Walsingham from the Manuscript Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., previously mentioned, or the original from which it was copied; the text being either abbreviated, or, occasionally, copied *verbatim*. The following is a list of the additions which have been made in his text from other sources:—

Pp. 327, 8, ll. 34, 3.—"sed ex . . . reportaverunt," in reference to the conflict of the French with the forces under the Prior of Lewes; an addition to the context of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 328, l. 23.—"locavit . . . Regi Angliæ, pro certa " pecunia annua"; words added by Walsingham, probably from the Corpus Christi Manuscript, mentioned in the sequel; the fact that Cherburgh had been pawned to the King of England by the King of Navarre, for

22,000 marks, does not seem to have been known to the compiler, at the time of writing the text of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix. See the *Hist. Angl.* of Walsingham, Vol. I. p. 371, and Vol. II. p. 214.

P. 328, l. 32.—"miles perante . . semper infamis;" the character given of Sir Alan de Buxille, accused of being one of the murderers of Robert Haule, in Westminster Abbey, is an addition to the condensed narrative here given of the transaction, itself described at great length in MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 328, l. 34.—The name of Thomas Hog is an addition, in the short account of the surprise and capture of Berwick Castle, in A.D. 1378, as being the leader of the Scots, to the context of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.: it is in the text of the *History of Richard II.* by the Monk of Evesham, published by Hearne, in 1729.

P. 336, l. 23.—"In Parliamento, facto Londoniis . . . "totum regnum;" in reference to the stipulation made by Parliament, at Michaelmas 1382, that proceedings should be taken against the Wycliffites, is an interpolation from the Manuscript Harl. 3634 (or its sources), edited by Mr. E. M. Thompson, as already noticed (p. xii. *ante*), in this Series.

P. 336, l. 31.—"Hoc anno . . . eadem jejunetur"; the ordinance, by Pope Urban the Sixth, as to the Vigil, or Eve, of the Nativity of the Virgin Mary, is not found in the text of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 339, l. 33.—"Res defertur in cœtum clericorum, . . "miraculi præmonstrati," is an addition, borrowed from MS. Harl. 3634, or its sources.

P. 340, l. 1.—"Per idem tempus, . . . illis solven- "darum, extorsit"; this account of the capture of Berwick Castle, in 1384, by the Scots, and its recovery by Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, is borrowed from MS. Harl. 3634, or its sources; in preference to the words used in MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.; the language of which, contrary to its usual tenor, is more severe upon John

of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, than is that of the Harleian Manuscript 3634.

P. 340, l. 18.—"Protelavit invisam vitam . . . in "dictis suis:"—an addition to the general account of the circumstances attending Wyclif's death, from MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.; being borrowed from the Harleian Manuscript 3634, or its sources.

P. 341, l. 21.—"In progressu versus Scotiam . . . sæ- "culo valefecit."—This account of the murder of the son of the Earl of Stafford by Sir John Holland, the confiscation of his lands, and the death of the Princess Joan, mother of Richard II., is borrowed from MS. Harl. 3634, or its sources; being adopted in preference to that in MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 342, l. 14.—"caperentur de nautis . . . ducenti "et viginti sex:"—the *number* of prisoners taken by the people of Calais, on the defeat of the French fleet in 1385, is derived from MS. Harl. 3634, or its sources; it being omitted, perhaps accidentally, in MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

P. 343, l. 17.—"Sub hiis diebus . . . infortunia "cognoverunt."—The account here given of the aid sent (in 1386) by the French King to Spain, against the Duke of Lancaster, and of the defeat of the French, is borrowed from MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., but it does not appear in the *Hist. Anglicana*, derived from that source.

Pp. 344, 5, ll. 35, 3.—"Quo cum pervenissent . . . "pacto naulo"; this account of the murder of English pilgrims by the Genoese, is extracted from MS. Harl. 3634, or its sources.

P. 346, l. 15.—"miles mercenarius," is an addition to the character given of Nicholas Brambre; being derived from neither of the MSS. previously mentioned.

P. 347, l. 5.—"Hic primo succrevit . . . nisi ficte," is an addition, from Walsingham's own observation, probably, as to the lasting enmity shown by King Richard to the Duke of Gloucester and the Earl of Arundel.

P. 349, l. 31.—Among the King's favourites who instigated him against his uncle, the Duke of Gloucester, the name of Alexander Nevyle, Archbishop of York, is added, from MS. Harl. 3634, or its sources: it does not occur in MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.

Pp. 350–352, ll. 23, 34.—"facinus introducentibus præ-" locutum . . . præsentibus apposuerunt, *et cætera;*" this list of questions on constitutional points, put to to the Justiciars by King Richard, at Nottingham, with their answers to the questions respectively, is an addition to the text from MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix.; derived probably from MS. Harl. 3634, in which it appears, in the same terms, or from its sources.

We here (A.D. 1387) lose sight, for some years, of any prior St. Alban's authority, to which, in addition to MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., Walsingham, in his compilation of the *Ypodigma*, may have been indebted.

P. 359, line 11.—" quod mirum est:"—is an interpolation in the account, given from MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., of the conclusion of a truce for three years by the Kings of England and France.

P. 359, l. 13.—"Eo tempore, Scoti combusserunt villam " de Tynemutha."—Either the writer is here indebted to the text of the work of the Monk of Evesham, edited by Hearne (1729), or it is an incorrect adaptation of the passage in MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., wherein it is stated that "the Scots laid waste, spoiled, and burnt, almost " the whole County [Comitatum] of Tynemouth." This attack on the vicinity of Tynemouth is not noticed in the *Hist. Anglicana* of Walsingham.

P. 360, l. 3.—"Temporibus malis ausus est esse bonus:" (an adaptation from the Poet Martial), is an addition to the account given, from MS. Bibl. Reg., of the stern course adopted by Henry Spencer, the warlike Bishop of Norwich, against the Lollards.

P. 360, l. 19,—" multa millia" before "librarum," in reference to the sum of ready money paid to the Duke

of Lancaster by the King of Castille, is an addition to the text of MS. Bibl. Reg.; the word "librarum" there having a blank left before it.

P. 360, l. 26.—"Qua læsione . . . Decembris:"—is an addition to the account given, from MS. Bibl. Reg., of the death of John de Hastyngges, Earl of Pembroke, from wounds inflicted in a tournament, by Sir John de St. John.

P. 360, l. 35.—"Edwardus," as being the name of the son of the Duke of York who was created Earl of Rutland, is also an addition to the text.

P. 363, l. 22.—"vel certe perturbationem . . regiam "incurrerunt"; an addition to the surmise in MS. Bibl. Reg., as to what was presaged by the appearance of a dolphin, on Christmas Day, near London Bridge.

At page 364, under the year 1392, the text of MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., comes to an end; and at this point, from the words (l. 30),—"Hoc anno, Rex Franciæ, malefi-"ciatus," Walsingham is mainly indebted, for his text, to the Chronicles (1) (2) and (5) in MS. No. vii. of the Parker Collection, at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; or rather, perhaps, to a compilation made from them, but little prior in date to this work. To the same compilation the writer of the Arundel Manuscript, No. vii. in the Catalogue of the College of Arms, from which the *Historia Anglicana* has been printed, was equally indebted. The Arundel Manuscript is, no doubt, of a later date than the manuscript of the *Ypodigma;* consequently, the latter could not have been borrowed from the former: on the other hand, there are several lacunæ and [1] deficiencies supplied in the text of the *Ypodigma,* which, (as is the case also in the Corpus Christi MSS.) are not filled up in the Arundel Manuscript, a proof that the writer of the latter was not acquainted with

[1] For example, the Earl of Kent slain in 1407 (not 1408), in Bretagne, is here rightly named Edmund (p. 425), whereas in the *Hist. Anglicana* (II. p. 279) and MS. Corp. Chr. vii. he is called "Thomas."

the text of the *Ypodigma*. The texts, however, of the *Ypodigma* and the *Hist. Anglicana* agree so exactly together, as to both selections from the Corpus Christi Chronicles, and omissions of matter therein, that they cannot have been otherwise than copied, each from a common source, [1] derived from, or connected with, those Chronicles.

The *Ypodigma*, as already noticed, professes to be dedicated to King Henry the Fifth; but, following in this the texts of the two Corpus Christi Manuscripts (1) and (5), it states (p. 364) that Charles the Sixth of France, on being attacked with madness, *never afterwards* fully recovered; thus speaking, apparently, after the close of his life. He survived Henry, however, nearly two months. We must, therefore, almost of necessity, come to the conclusion, that the assertion was made, in somewhat loose and random terms, towards, and not after, the close of the unfortunate Sovereign's life.

P. 366, l. 22.—"Causa iræ regiæ . . . urgebant;" this addition to the account given of the assault by Richard the Second upon the Earl of Arundel, in Westminster Abbey, is taken from MS. Cotton. [2] Faustina B. ix., or its source.

P. 367, l. 36.—"Sed hæc in sequentibus diffusius sunt "tractanda;" is taken from the text of MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (2). See the Volume containing Trokelowe, in this Series, p. 173.

P. 370, l. 28.—"et maxime ipso Rege,"—denoting the surprise of Richard the Second, upon his uncle, the Duke of Lancaster, marrying Katharine de Swynford, is an addi-

[1] As to the two Corpus Christi Chronicles, see *Hist. Anglicana*, Vol. II., Introd. p. viii., and p. 211, Note 5. These two Chronicles are styled (1) and (5) in Nasmith's Catalogue, though, strictly speaking, they are MSS. (1) and (3); see the Volume containing Trokelowe's *Chronicle*, in the present Series, Introduction, p. xxiv.

[2] See the Volume containing Trokelowe's *Chronicle*, in this Series, page 424.

tion to the texts of the Corpus Christi Chronicles, No. vii.

P. 373, l. 16.—The title of Master Edmund Stafford, as Bishop of Exeter, is derived from MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (2), or from MS. Cotton, Faustina B. ix.

P. 373, l. 29.—"Qui benedixit . . . ab eodem"; the fact that Abbot John Moot, on receiving benediction, at Saltwood, from Thomas de Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, was exempted from payment of fees, is an addition to the texts of the three Corpus Christi Chronicles.

P. 374, l. 3.—"Cognominavit autem Dux . . . *Beu-* "*fort*,"—an explanation of the origin of the name "Beaufort," is an addition to the texts of the three Corpus Christi Chronicles, No. vii.

Pp. 374, 5, ll. 35, 1.—"usque ad Parliamentum . . . "plectendos," is derived solely from MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (1).

P. 375, l. 30.—"Prolocutores præsentis Parliamenti . ". . . . . Hagiographia sciremus,"—the bad character here given to the Speakers of Parliament, is an addition to the texts of the Corp. Chr. Chronicles, No. vii.

P. 377, l. 31.—"Qui, mortis . . . læsæ majestatis;" this is a deduction, probably by Walsingham's own hand, from the circumstantial narrative of the Earl of Warwick's abject conduct, when accused, in presence of King Richard. See the Volume containing Trokelowe, pp. 219, 220.

P. 379, l. 13.—"Vir grandævus, simplex, et rectus"; the character given to John, Lord de Cobham, is an addition to the text of the Corp. Chr. Chronicles. His unwillingness to accept pardon, on his life being spared (l. 17),—"concessa . . . quam non optavit, venia, sive vita," is only noticed in MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (2).

P. 382, l. 29.—"Et ista redemptio '*Le plesunze*' voca- "batur:" the name given to the impost extorted by the King from seventeen Counties, is an addition solely from the text of MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (2).

P. 385, l. 9.—"et Johannes Russelle . . fugerunt"; this mention of Russell's name, as escaping from the vengeance of the Duke of Lancaster, is an addition to the texts of the Corp. Chr. Chronicles, No. vii.

The reign of Henry the Fourth, pp. 387–437.— Reign of Henry IV.

The history is derived from the same sources from which the history of the reign of Richard the Second has been taken, from the year 1392.

P. 403, l. 15.—"Dominus Cantuariensis"; the latter word is omitted in MSS. Corp. Chr. vii. (1) and (5), but is here supplied from the same Volume MS. (2): see the context more fully set forth in the Volume in this Series, containing Trokelowe, p. 403.

After the words "regales prohibiti," page 415, line 5, the MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (5), or a transcript of it, is Walsingham's only source for the history of the remainder of this reign.

The reign of Henry the Fifth, pp. 437–488.— Reign of Henry V.

The text from which the history of this reign is derived is solely MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (5), already mentioned, or a copy of it: the text of it is rigidly adhered to, and [1] one or two passages are given in the *Ypodigma*, which have been omitted by the transcriber of this reign in the *Historia Anglicana*.

In the *Historia Anglicana* (Vol. ii. p. 329), as in the present work (p. 488), there is an [2] hiatus of about a year in the history, from August 1418 to August 1419. The same occurs also in the MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (5), from which, or from a copy of it, the language of both works has been transcribed. At some little later date, probably, the Corpus Christi Manuscript vii. (5) has been

---

[1] See p. 460, Note 2, and the words "*villæ cives . . . parte* "*altera*," omitted in the text of the *Hist. Angl.* (Vol. II., p. 330), but found in the text of the *Ypodigma* (p. 488, line 18), as derived from MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (5).

[2] See the Introduction to the *Hist. Angl.*, Vol. II., p. xvi., Note.

continued for about three years, it ending with the death of King Henry the Fifth, in 1422.

It has been found impossible to enter into the preceding details in reference to authorities, through the agency of side-notes, and the use of larger or smaller print.

The *Ypodigma Neustriæ* was first published in the year 1574, under the auspices of Matthew Parker, Archbishop of Canterbury; and it again appeared, as part of the *Anglica, Normannica, Hibernica, Cambrica, a Veteribus scripta*, of William Camden, published at Frankfort, in folio, 1603. The latter version, which has been collated throughout for the present edition, is replete with mistakes in transcribing, and with typographical errors, many of them indicative of ignorance or carelessness of the most flagrant description. Further remark is, however, unnecessary here, as in the Introductions to the *Historia Anglicana* (Vol. i. p. ix. and Vol. ii. p. xvii.), to which the reader is referred, this subject has been more fully noticed.

Hiatus in in the manuscript of the *Ypodigma.*

At pp. 155 and 160, of this volume, in the foot-notes, notice will be found of a remarkable hiatus in the manuscript of the *Ypodigma*, not owing to the loss of a leaf or leaves, but occurring in the context, in the middle of a page; the history of 18 months' transactions, immediately succeeding the Battle of Lewes, and including the Battle of Evesham, being wholly omitted. As at this point Walsingham is transcribing from the *Annales* of Nicholas Trivet, there has been no difficulty in rectifying the oversight, by supplying the omitted matter from the text of that work. Except upon the principle suggested in the following lines, or on the supposition of inexcusable negligence, both in Walsingham and his copyist, the reason for this serious omission seems difficult to explain.

The Cotton MS. Claudius D. vi., formerly

At the time that Walsingham was residing at St. Alban's, and engaged in compiling the *Ypodigma*, there lay in the Abbey Library, no doubt, the Manuscript

volume, now known to the literary world, as an item of the Cottonian Collection, under the title of MS. Claudius D. vi. In this volume, between folios 97 and 114, is contained a small Chronicle, professing to have been written by Brother [1] William de Rishanger, a monk and historical writer of St. Alban's, who lived in the reigns of Edward the First and his successor; in the [2] title of which work it was, and is, stated, that its subject is the two Battles of Lewes and Evesham (A.D. 1264, 1265). Walsingham, it seems not improbable, would be acquainted with the existence of this work, and, on approaching the period in his *Ypodigma* when these battles and the resulting events become the subject of his pages, would direct his scribe to stay his hand in his transcript from Trivet, while Rishanger's work was subjected to a closer examination, with the view of inserting it in his text. Upon inspection, he would also probably find—what is really the fact—that it was, as a literary production, lame, disjointed, verbose, obscure, and, in places, almost unintelligible; little suited, in fact, for the narrative of the *Ypodigma*, which is terse, clear, and simple, throughout;—so far, at least, as the reigns of the English Sovereigns, beginning with the narrative from the text of Ralph de Diceto, are concerned. Disappointed at the result of his examination, he would instruct the scribe to proceed with the work, transcribing from Trivet, as before; and this the scribe would do, omitting, not improbably, by carelessness and oversight, the long passage in the text of Trivet which had been previously marked for omission, on the supposition that a context borrowed from the work of Rishanger might advantageously supply its place.

belonging to Saint Alban's.

Walsingham's probable intention to avail himself of its contents.

His abandonment of such intention not improbable.

Some account of the Manuscript (Claudius D. vi. fols. 97–114), containing this Chronicle of the Wars of the

Account of this Manuscript, given elsewhere.

[1] As to Rishanger and his other literary productions, see the Volume containing his *Chronica et Annales*, published in the present Series, and the Introduction thereto, pp. x.–xiii.

[2] See p. 491 of this Volume.

Barons, has been given in the Introduction (pp. xii., xiii.) to the Volume of Rishanger, before mentioned; and, as it is a St. Alban's work, this opportunity has been taken of giving it a place in the present Series, for what it is worth, and as an Appendix only; the singular obscurity of its style, its disjointed form, the badness of the writing, and the marvellous ignorance manifested by its scribe, detracting, to a very great extent, from the value which, if better executed, it might have possessed as an historical work. The copyist, in all probability, was some other person than Rishanger himself, who in his *Chronica*, (written in continuation of the History of Matthew Paris), has shown no such shortcomings as those now under notice. Be this as it may, as remarked by Mr. Halliwell in p. xxiv. of the Introduction to his edition, hereafter more fully noticed, the writer, at fol. 105 (p. 529 of this volume) leaves the Battle of Lewes, before its close, for events (p. 544) 15 months later, and occurring after the Battle of Evesham; while in fol. 110 (pp. 564, 5) after really ending the narrative, some two years later than the Battle of Evesham, he runs back, without any break, to the quarrel between the Earls of Leicester and Gloucester (p. 529), which occurred three years before, and soon after the Battle of Lewes. These mistakes in the chronological order are here rectified, and attention will be found called to them in the foot-notes to the respective pages already noticed, page 565 excepted, where the narrative ends. The reader will also not omit to notice, that in fols. 106b, 107 (pp. 550, 1) the copyist has gone so far afield, in his carelessness or ignorance, as to insert in the context relative to the siege of the Castle of Kenilworth, after the Battle of Evesham, nearly a whole page that was evidently intended for another work; an account of the Battle of Benevento, in the year 1266, where Manfred, King of Sicily, was defeated by Charles of Anjou, and slain.

Remarkable defects in the manuscript.

Rectification of mistakes in the manuscript.

Previous edition of

This so-called Chronicle, by Rishanger, of the Battles of

this so-called Chronicle of the Battles of Lewes and Evesham.

Lewes and Evesham, was published by the Camden Society, in 1840, under the Editorship of Mr. J. O. Halliwell: the book, like most works in a Series published by a private Society, has of course reached but comparatively few hands. For a first attempt upon a most repulsive and most difficult text, the Editor's labours, in their result, are deserving of commendation; but his text is rendered untrustworthy, at least to some extent, by the fact, that the alterations made in it by the Editor are not always brought to the reader's notice; indeed, but rarely so, taking into consideration the number that has been made. In the present edition, no divergence from the original, even in the smallest degree, is, it is believed, left unrecorded, and no pains have been spared to insure perfect correctness in the transcript.

H. T. R.

CORRIGENDA.

Page 4, Note 3, *for* "1205" *read* "1206."
„ 13, Side-note, *for* "Bergundy" *read* "Burgundy."
„ 23, Side-note, *for* "containg" *read* "containing."
„ 140, Side-note, *for* "Hugh" *read* "Hubert."
„ 163, Side-note, *for* "1278" *read* "1268."
„ 197, Side-note, *for* "Lincoln" *read* "Leicester and Lancaster."
„ 211, line 20, *for* "Roberto" *read* "Rogero."
„ 309, Side-note, *for* "Alexandra" *read* "Alexandria."
„ 322, line 3, *for* "egro" *read* "ergo."
„ 334, line 16, *for* "præsbyter" *read* "presbyter."
„ 380, line 4, *for* "Johannes" *read* "Johannem."
„ 383, Side-note, *for* "support" *read* "supplant."
„ 458, line 3, *for* "blaphemias" *read* "blasphemias."

SUMMARY OF THE CONTENTS

OF THE

YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ.

SUMMARY OF THE CONTENTS

OF THE

YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ.

Dedication, to Henry the Fifth, King of England,—p. 3.

Ancient law of the Danes; Danemarchia, so called by Antenor, the Trojan; Bier Iron Side driven from his home; why so called; Hasting accompanies him,—p. 6: sacrifice of human blood; ravages committed by the Danes; siege of Jumieges; its origin; flight of the monks; Rouen burnt; Nantes burnt; Angers burnt, —p. 7: Tours burnt; Orleans burnt; Lutetia of the Parisii burnt; many other cities destroyed; Hasting desires to crown Bier, and to gain possession of Rome; he mistakes another city for Rome,—p. 8: treacherous conduct of Hasting; details of his treachery; slaughter resulting therefrom; the Danes purpose to return to their own country,—p. 9: Bier is shipwrecked, and dies; Hasting obtains Chartres; a fresh expedition sails from Denmark; the Danes are aided by the English; they are defeated at Walcheren; Duke Rainier is taken by them, but is exchanged; the Danes reach Jumieges,—p. 10; they place the relics of St. Ametrudis in the Chapel of St. Vedast; Franco, the Archbishop of Rouen, makes terms with the Danes; they make Rollo their chief; Rollo contemplates the overthrow of Paris; Hasting is sent by Duke Rainald to treat with him; dialogue between Hasting and Rollo,—p. 11: Duke Rainald attacks Rollo, and is defeated; suggestions made by Count Theobald to Hasting; Hasting sells Chartres, and departs; defeat and death of Duke Rainald (A.D. 885),—p. 12: Rollo sails for Paris; Bayeux taken, and partly destroyed; he marries Popa, daughter of the Count of Senlis; Rollo leaves the siege of Paris for England; returns to France; he besieges Chartres, and is attacked by Richard, Duke of Burgundy; he is miraculously defeated (A.D. 911),—p. 13; further atrocities committed by Rollo against the Franks; peace is at length made between Rollo and Charles, King of France,—p. 14: Rollo is converted to Christianity, and baptized at Rouen, A.D. 912; "Robert," his new name; he marries the daughter of the King of

France; his law against theft; sample of his severity,—p. 15: his wife, Gisla, dying, Rollo takes back his first wife, Popa; Rollo resigns in favour of his son William (A.D. 927); his death, —p. 16.

Description of Duke William I.; Berengar and Alain attempting to revolt, he lays waste Bretagne,—p. 16: Alain flies to England; siege of Rouen by Rihulf (A.D. 933); Duke William defeats the insurgents; escape of Rihulf; the place called "Pré de la Ba- "taille;" news of a son borne to him by Sprota; his name, "Richard;" his fame spreads, and his Court is frequented; William, Count of Poitou, marries his sister,—p. 17: the Duke marries the daughter of Count Herbert; King Ethelstan negotiates on behalf of Louis of France and Alain of Bretagne; Alain is allowed to return, and Louis is crowned at Laon (A.D. 936); conspiracy against King Louis; he seeks the aid of Duke William,—p. 18: alliance in favour of King Louis brought about by Duke William; who is sponsor to his son (A.D. 941); he promises to restore the Abbey of Jumieges, after narrowly escaping death; he repairs the Abbey, and sends for monks to his sister, at Poitiers,—p. 19: conducts Abbot Martin and his monks to Jumieges; the Abbot refuses to allow him to become a monk; resistance of the people to his desire to retire to the Abbey of Jumieges; they do fealty to his son, Richard, as Duke,—p. 20: he is entrusted to Botho, to be taught the Danish language; Harold, King of Denmark, is established in the Côtentin; Arnulph, Count of Flanders, takes Montreuil from Count Herlouin; it is restored to him by Duke William,—p. 21: a conspiracy is formed by Count Arnulph, for the destruction of Duke William; an interview is held between them on the island of Picquigny; at the close of the interview, Duke William is murdered,—p. 22: a silver key is found on his body, to the casket containing his monk's stamen and cowl; he is buried at Rouen; his death, on the 17th December (A.D. 942),—p. 23.

He is succeeded by his son, Richard I.; sorrow of the French nobles for Duke William's death; King Louis, to further his own designs, visits Rouen (A.D. 943),—p. 23: he orders the young Duke to be brought to him; a tumult arising in consequence, the King shews the child to the people; he promises to leave to the child his inheritance, and to have him properly educated; Count Arnulph attempts to exculpate himself, and promises to slay the murderers of Duke William; his base proposal as to the young Duke,—p. 24: the King is moved by his gifts, and shews displeasure to the child; Osmund, the boy's tutor, makes preparations for his escape; a three days' fast, among the Normans; the young Duke is carried by Osmund to Couci, —p. 25: Osmund and Count Bernard obtain the aid of Duke

Hugh; advice given by Count Arnulph to King Louis, as to Hugh; Duke Hugh proves treacherous, and aids the King against the Normans; message sent to the King by Bernard the Dane; in compliance with the message, the King comes to Rouen,—p. 26: speech made to the King by Bernard the Dane; the King commands Duke Hugh to desist from the invasion of Normandy; Radulph Torta made, by King Louis, Seneschal of Rouen; Radulph destroys the monasteries; Bernard the Dane sends envoys to Harold, the Danish King,—p. 27: King Harold lays waste Normandy; conference between King Louis and King Harold; death of Count Herlouin; King Louis is defeated, and taken prisoner (A.D. 945),—p. 28: consternation of Queen Gereberga, wife of Louis; and her appeal for aid; she appeals to Duke Hugh; and, through his agency, King Louis is set at liberty; conference of King Louis and Duke Hugh, with the Normans, and peace finally made; the King's son, an hostage, dies at Rouen,—p. 29: Richard is ill-treated by Radulph Torta; who is expelled by him; King Harold returns to Denmark; Emma, daughter of Duke Hugh, is betrothed to Duke Richard; offer made by King Louis to King Otho thereupon; Otho wages war against Duke Hugh and the Normans; Otho's nephew lays siege to Rouen,—p. 30: Otho, hearing of the defeat and death of his nephew, treats of delivering Arnulph to the Normans; Arnulph departs, with his troops, at night; the siege is raised; slaughter of the besiegers; Duke Hugh, in his old age, commends his son, Hugh, to Duke Richard; Richard marries Emma (A.D. 960),—p. 31: Theobald, Count of Chartres, lays waste Duke Richard's territory; Theobald makes insinuations to Queen Gereberga; at the Queen's suggestion, an interview is proposed to the Duke, by Bruno, Archbishop of Cologne; the Duke receives a warning on the road, and returns to Rouen; the Archbishop returns, also, disappointed; treacherous message sent to the Duke by King Lothaire,—p. 32: the Duke at first assents to the King's suggestions; but afterwards withdraws to Rouen; the King returns to Laon; he takes Evreux; Duke Richard pursues the King,—p. 33: Theobald encamps at Hermondville; the Duke surprises, and routs, his troops; Theobald takes to flight; humanity of Duke Richard; Duke Richard sends envoys, to Harold, King of Denmark; the Danes arrive on the Seine, and are established at Fosse Givold (Jeu Fosse),—p. 34: they lay waste the country of Theobald; the Bishop of Chartres is sent to the Duke by a Synod of the Bishops, as a mediator; Theobald also treats with the Duke, and surrenders Evreux; peace is made with Lothaire, the French King,—p. 35: certain of the Danes wage war in Spain; death of Emma, wife of Duke Richard; he marries Gunnor; his children by her; Duke Richard builds a noble church at Fescamp;

and restores certain abbeys; the son of Duke Hugh succeeds to the throne of France (A.D. 987); his son, Robert, succeeds him (A.D. 996),—p. 36: description of Duke Richard's person and qualities; Duke Richard, sensible of his failing health, sends for Count Rodulph, his uterine brother; the Duke presents his son, Richard, to the nobles; who is accepted as his successor; death of Duke Richard I., A.D. 996,—p. 37.

Celebrity, as a promoter of the Christian religion, of Duke Richard II.; rising of the Norman peasantry; it is quelled by Count Rodulph; revolt of William, Count of Exmes, half-brother of Duke Richard II.; he is imprisoned,—p. 38: escape of William; he is forgiven by the Duke; the wife and children of William; expedition of Ethelred, King of England, against Normandy; Duke Richard to be taken prisoner,—p. 39: the English land in the Côtentin; they are defeated by Neel; one only escapes of those who had landed; report given thereon to the English King; Geoffrey, Count of Bretagne, marries the Duke's sister,—p. 40: King Ethelred's treachery against the Danes, in England (A.D. 1002); news thereof is carried to Sweyn, King of Denmark,—p. 41: King Sweyn prepares to invade England (A.D. 1003); leaving his troops in England, Sweyn visits Duke Richard, at Rouen; alliance between the Normans and the Danes; Yorkshire is ravaged by the Danes; Sweyn takes London, and Ethelred retires to Normandy (A.D. 1013),—p. 42: death of Sweyn; he is succeeded by his son, Cnute; Ethelred returns to England; defeat of the English by the Danes; Cnute besieges London; death of Ethelred (A.D. 1016),—p. 43: Cnute marries Queen Emma (A.D. 1017); his children by her; Cnute becomes King of England; Odo (or Eudes), Count of Chartres, marries Matildis, sister of Duke Richard; he refuses to surrender the castle of Dreux; Odo lays siege to Tillieres, a castle of the Duke,—p. 44: Odo is defeated, and takes refuge at Dreux; Hugh, Count of Maine, escapes by disguise; Duke Richard obtains the aid of the Kings of Norway and Sweden; landing in Bretagne, they defeat the Bretons by a stratagem; the Danes burn Dol, and sail up the Seine,—p. 45: through the agency of Robert, King of France, a treaty is made at Coudres (A.D. 1020); the two Kings being now dismissed, Olaf is converted to Christianity; Duke Richard marries Judith, sister of the Count of Bretagne,—p. 46: his children by her; the Duke is made guardian to the children of the Count; Walter, a knight, betrays the castle of Melun, belonging to Count Burchard, to Count Odo; the King of France and the Duke of Normandy lay siege to the castle; the castle is surrendered,—p. 47: the King orders Walter and his wife to be hanged; Henry, Duke of Burgundy, leaves the Duchy to Robert, King of France, who besieges Count Landric in Auxerre, aided

by Duke Richard; Count Rainald marries Adeliz, daughter of Duke Richard; Rainald is made prisoner by Hugh, Count of Chalons,—p. 48: Duke Richard commands his eldest son, Richard, to go to the rescue of Rainald; he invades Burgundy, and takes the castle of Menwald (or Mirmande); Count Hugh humiliates himself, and Rainald is liberated; Duke Richard's virtues; his declining health; universal sorrow thereupon,—p. 49: he appoints Richard his successor, and to his son, Robert, gives the County of Exmes,—p. 50.

Richard III. succeeds his father A.D. 1026; his virtues; rebellion of his brother, Robert; Robert is besieged in Falaise; the brothers are reconciled; death of Duke Richard, by poison, as some say, A.D. 1028 (A.D. 1027),—p. 50.

Duke Robert succeeds; his virtues; he besieges Archbishop Robert in Evreux,—p. 50: the Archbishop joins the King of France, but is soon reinstated; rebellion of William de Belesme, at his castle of Alençon; the Duke defeats him, and he humiliates himself; William again rebelling, his son Fulco is slain; death of William de Belesme,—p. 51; rebellion of Hugh, Bishop of Bayeux; who fortifies the castle of Evreux; the Duke takes the castle; Baldwin, Count of Flanders, obtains the daughter of the King of France for his son; the Count, being expelled by his son, takes refuge in Normandy; Duke Robert invades Flanders, and effects a reconciliation,—p. 52: death of Robert, King of France (A.D. 1031); conspiracy against Henry, King of France, who takes refuge with Duke Robert; who quells the rebellion; revolt of Alain, Count of Bretagne; Duke Robert ravages his country; defeat of the Bretons by the garrison of Avranches,—p. 53: request made to King Cnute by the Duke of Normandy, in favour of the two sons of Ethelred; but in vain; the Duke prepares a large fleet, for the invasion of England; it is driven to Jersey by a storm; the Duke abandons the expedition; he again invades Bretagne,—p. 54: through the intervention of Robert, Archbishop of Rouen, peace is made; envoys sent by King Cnute; the Duke contemplates a pilgrimage to Jerusalem; he obtains a recognition of his son, William, as his heir; proceeds upon the pilgrimage,—p. 55: visits the Holy Sepulchre; he dies at Nicæa A.D. 1034 (A.D. 1035),—p. 56.

Duke Robert is succeeded by his son William (II.); his glorious deeds; various risings and seditions in Normandy, at the beginning of his reign; Hugh de Montfort and Walcheline (de Ferrers) slain,—p. 56: Count Gilbert, William's guardian, is slain; the castle of Tillieres obtained by the French King, against the wish of Gilbert (? William) Crispin; the French King burns Argenton, and regarrisons Tillieres; rebellion of Turstin, Count of Exmes; the castle of Falaise besieged by the Duke,—p. 57;

Turstin goes into exile; death of Robert, Archbishop of Rouen, succeeded by Mauger, a son of Duke Richard II.; William d'Arques rises against the Duke, who blockades Arques; the King of France marches to the aid of Count William; his troops are defeated; the Count surrenders, and is banished,—p. 58: King Cnute dying, he is succeeded by his son, Harold (A.D. 1035); ineffectual attempt of Edward, son of Ethelred, to gain the English crown; Alfred, son of Ethelred, landing in England, is betrayed by Earl Godwin, and slain (A.D. 1036); death of Harold I., King of England (A.D. 1039); King Hardecnute recalls his brother, Edward, and makes him his heir,—p. 59: increasing virtues of Duke William; Guido, son of Rainald, Count of Burgundy, rises against him; he seeks the aid of the King of France; the King and the Duke defeat the enemy at the Val des Dunes (A.D. 1047); Guido is besieged by the Duke, at Brieuc,—p. 60: Guido surrenders, and places himself at the Duke's mercy; the rebels are universally quelled; Goisfrid Martel, Count of Anjou, takes Tours, and garrisons the castle of Domfront; the Duke besieges, and captures, Alençon; the castle of Domfront surrenders to him,—p. 61: he builds a castle at Avranches; Duke William marries Matildis, daughter of the Count of Flanders (A.D. 1054); Mauger, Archbishop of Rouen, resigns; Maurilius is appointed in his place; hostility of the Franks to the Normans; the French King invades Normandy,—p. 62: his troops are defeated at Mortemer; the Duke defeats the Count of Anjou; and the people of Maine submit to him; the King of France again invades Normandy; he is defeated,—p. 63; death of the King of France, and succession of his son, Philip (A.D. 1060); Edward, King of England, makes Duke William his heir; Harold is sent by him to the Duke; death of Edward, King of England, A.D. 1065 (A.D. 1066); Harold seizes the throne; remarkable appearance of a star,—p. 64: Duke William prepares a fleet at Saint Valery; lands in England, with his forces; engages with the English army, at Hastings; Harold is slain, and his troops take to flight; Duke William proceeds towards London; a judgment on the English, for the death of Alfred; the citizens of London submit to William,—p. 65: he is crowned King of England, on Christmas Day, A.D. 1066; King William returns to Normandy, and dedicates a church to St. Mary, at Jumieges, A.D. 1087; Eustace, Count of Boulogne, suddenly attacks Dover Castle, but is repulsed, —p. 66: King William delivers to his son, Robert, the charge of the Duchy of Normandy; he returns to England, and detects a conspiracy; the conspirators take refuge in the woods of Durham, awaiting the arrival of Sweyn, King of Denmark; they name Edgar King,—p. 67: the leaders of the revolt are defeated at York; two sons of Harold head an expedition from Ireland;

they are defeated by Brien, son of the Count of Bretagne; how William obtained the English crown; Earl Godwin gives his son and grandson as hostages to King Edward,—p. 68: Harold asks leave to bring them back from Normandy, whither they had been sent; he is taken prisoner, and sent to William, Duke of Normandy; William exacts certain promises from him; Harold makes oath on sacred relics; Harold returns to England with his nephew; his answer to William's envoy, on the death of King Edward,—p. 69: the Duke again appeals to Harold, but in vain; hence the invasion of England; William returns to Normandy, and takes with him Stigand, Archbishop of Canterbury; the Abbey of Battle; King William besieges, and takes, Exeter; Queen Matildis is crowned, A.D. 1068; the nobles of Northumbria, with Edgar Etheling, retire into Scotland, A.D. 1069,—p. 70: in a Council at Winchester, Stigand is deposed, A.D. 1070; reasons for his deposition; William deprives other prelates of their honours, and their liberty; Lanfranc is consecrated Archbishop of Canterbury, A.D. 1071 (A.D. 1070); honour paid to him by Pope Alexander II.,—p. 71: Lanfranc builds Christ Church, at Canterbury; King William defeats the insurgent barons in the Isle of Ely, but Hereward escapes, A.D. 1072 (A.D. 1071); Malcolm, King of Scotland, does homage to William, A.D. 1072; William takes Le Mans, A.D. 1073; Councils held at Rome by Pope Gregory VII., or Hildebrand, A.D. 1074, 5,—p. 72: great schism caused by the decisions thereof; other evils resulting therefrom; conspiracy of Roger, Earl of Hereford, and others, against King William (A.D. 1075); information is given to King William by Earl Waltheof,—p. 73: Ralph, Earl of East Anglia, is opposed, and flies to Bretagne; Earl Waltheof is beheaded, and others of the conspirators mutilated; William besieges Dol, in Bretagne, but is repulsed; Robert Curthose, with the aid of the King of France, wages war against the King, his father, A.D. 1076, 7; William is wounded in combat by his son, Robert, A.D. 1079 (A.D. 1078); he curses his son; Wales subjugated (A.D. 1081); Bishop Odo imprisoned (A.D. 1082),—p. 74: Survey of England made by the King's order; William burns Mantes, with two anchorites there, A.D. 1088 (A.D. 1087); on the approach of death, he releases his prisoners; and divides his territories; King William dies, and is buried at Caen (A.D. 1087); Matildis buried in her own monastery there,—p. 75.

William Rufus succeeds his father; he commits Wulnoth and Morcar to prison; dissensions in England, some favouring William, some Robert; Bishop Wulstan opposes the faction hostile to King William; a miracle wrought through him,—p. 76: King William obtains possession of certain castles in Normandy, A.D. 1090; he makes peace with Robert on certain terms, A.D.

1091; Malcolm, King of Scotland, is compelled to obedience; William rebuilds Carlisle, A.D. 1092; he is attacked with illness, and, in fear of death, promises to amend his life, A.D. 1093; Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury; death of Bishop Wulstan, A.D. 1095,—p. 77: he appears, at the moment of his death, to Robert, Bishop of Hereford; conspiracy of Robert de Mowbray and the nobles of England in favour of Stephen de Albemarle; Mowbray falls into the King's hands; William de Eu is vanquished in single combat, and barbarously mutilated, A.D. 1096, —p. 78: Robert pledges Normandy to William, and proceeds on a Crusade (A.D. 1096); proceedings of the Crusaders, at Nicæa and Laodicea; through Duke Robert's prowess, the enemy are defeated (at Dorylæum), 1st of July 1097; siege of Antioch; Battle of the Iron Bridge,—p. 79: prowess of Bohemund and Robert Fitz-Gerard; valour of Duke Robert, and of Duke Godfrey; defeat of the enemy; career of Anselm; born at Aosta; after studying in Gaul, he joins Lanfranc, Prior of Bec, and becomes a monk; he succeeds Lanfranc, both as Abbot and Archbishop; he is chosen Archbishop of Canterbury, in his 60th year,—p. 80: King William in declining health; he asks a sum of money from the Archbishop; who, from conscientious motives, declines; the Archbishop leaves Court; the leave being granted on certain terms; insult offered to him at Dover; patience shown by him; the property of his church is seized,—p. 81: he is received with honour by Pope Urban II.; present at the Councils at Bari and Rome; the Archbishop, during his exile, dwells at Lyons; Henry I. succeeds to the throne; who recalls Anselm; he enters Normandy, and meets the King at Bec; returns to England; King William passes over into Normandy,—p. 82: intrepidity shown by him in reference to the perils of the sea; King William takes Le Mans; he dismisses Count Helias, whom he had captured; the Christians suffer from famine, while besieging Antioch, A.D. 1098; having taken it, they are besieged in turn; the enemy are defeated in the Battle of Antioch, 28th of June,—p. 83: the Christians eat the bodies of the enemy; capture of Jerusalem, with much bloodshed, 15th of July, A.D. 1099; the Saracens are again defeated, 29th of July; King William is slain by Walter Tirel (A.D. 1100),—p. 84.

Henry, brother of William, is crowned King; death of Godfrey, Duke of Lorraine,—p. 84: Henry marries Matildis; Duke Robert remits to the King a yearly payment of 3,000 marks; banishment of William, Count of Mortaigne, A.D. 1104; successes of King Henry in Normandy (A.D. 1105); his interview with Anselm; Henry gains the Battle of Tenchebray, A.D. 1106; Duke Robert is taken prisoner; the Abbey of Ely made a Bishopric, A.D. 1110 (A.D. 1109),—p. 85: the King of France

invades Normandy, for one night; Baldwin VII., Count of Flanders, fatally wounded, A.D. 1118 (A.D. 1119); King Henry defeats the French (at Brenneville), A.D. 1120; Fulk, Count of Anjou, leaves his territory to his son, Geoffrey, and goes to Jerusalem, to be King there; valour of his successors; on the death of Matildis, Henry marries Adeliza of Louvaine (A.D. 1121), —p. 86: William, son of King Henry, is drowned, A.D. 1120; Princess Matildis married to Henry IV. [V.], A.D. 1114; the Order of Knights Templars founded (A.D. 1118); their ultimate opulence; final extinction of the Order, A.D. 1312; death of the Emperor, Henry IV. [V.], A.D. 1125; story in reference to his becoming a hermit; Matildis married to Geoffrey Plantagenet, Count of Anjou (A.D. 1127); oath made to the Empress; marriage of Matildis,—p. 87: on the death of Charles, Count of Flanders, Henry succeeds him; death of Robert, Duke of Normandy, A.D. 1133 (A.D. 1134); birth of Henry, son of Matildis, A.D. 1134 (A.D. 1133); Stephen, son of Adela, does fealty to Matildis; death of Henry I., and burial at Reading, A.D. 1135; names of Castles in Normandy, built by King Henry; Monasteries, also, founded by him,—p. 88.

Stephen, Count of Boulogne, is crowned King of England,—p. 88: assertion of Hugh Bigod, that King Henry had disinherited Matildis; William, Archbishop of Canterbury, crowns Stephen; castles in Normandy, taken by Matildis, A.D. 1136; Stephen exacts fealty; Stephen makes a treaty with the King of France, and a truce with Geoffrey of Anjou, A.D. 1137; David, King of Scotland, invades England, and is defeated, A.D. 1138; Stephen takes the Bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln; he besieges Lincoln, A.D. 1140,—p. 89: is defeated, and taken prisoner (A.D. 1141); Matildis is acknowledged Queen by the Londoners; but is soon repulsed by them; Matildis besieges the castle of the Bishop of Winchester; escapes, by a stratagem, to Gloucester; Stephen is exchanged for Earl Robert; Matildis besieged in Oxford by Stephen; she escapes, (A.D. 1142); Pope Lucius intends to make the Bishopric of Winchester an Archbishopric, A.D. 1142 (A.D. 1144),—p. 90: Count Geoffrey is acknowledged Duke of Normandy, A.D. 1143; Stephen seizes Ranulf, Earl of Chester, A.D. 1146; Louis VII., King of France, leaves Jerusalem, A.D. 1148; Geoffrey delivers the Duchy of Normandy to his son, Henry, A.D. 1150; King Louis receives his homage; death of Geoffrey (A.D. 1151); King Louis is divorced from Queen Alianor, A.D. 1151 (A.D. 1152); Henry marries her; Henry invades England, A.D. 1152,—p. 91: King Stephen makes Henry his successor, A.D. 1152; the castles, newly built in England, are destroyed; death of Stephen, and burial at Faversham, A.D. 1153 (A.D. 1154),—p. 92.

Henry II. is crowned at Westminster, 19th December (A.D. 1154); Henry crosses over, and takes Mirabel and Chinon, A.D. 1156; Malcolm, King of Scotland, surrenders Carlisle and other places; King Henry is crowned at Worcester,—p. 92: Thomas, the Chancellor, goes to the Court of France; Henry gains Rennes, A.D. 1158; he takes the castles near Toulouse, A.D. 1159; Margaret, daughter of the King of France, betrothed to Prince Henry; King Henry obtains Gisorz; takes the castle of Chaumont, A.D. 1160, 1; King Henry returns to England, A.D. 1163,—p. 93: homage is done to King Henry and his son by the King of Scotland; certain disseminators of false doctrine are branded, A.D. 1166; collection made for the relief of Jerusalem; a new dispute arises between the Kings of England and France; they eventually make peace (A.D. 1169); Henry obtains Constance, the heiress of Bretagne, for his son, Geoffrey, A.D. 1168,—p. 94: Henry holds his Court at Nantes, and escapes from a storm, on his return to England; the news of the assassination of Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury, A.D. 1070, is brought to King Henry; he visits Henry, Bishop of Winchester (A.D. 1171); King Henry lands in Ireland (A.D. 1171); certain of the petty kings submit to him,—p. 95: Henry, the King's eldest son, is excited to rebel against him, A.D. 1172; the King's troops in Ireland are attacked with sickness; the Irish chiefs ultimately submit to him, A.D. 1172; Council held at Lismore; Henry returns to England,—p. 96: proceeds to Normandy; allusion to his activity; oath made by Henry, as to his innocence of the murder of Archbishop Thomas; betrothal of John, the King's son, A.D. 1173; resort of nobles to King Henry's Court, in Auvergne,—p. 97: homage offered by the Count de St. Gilles, but delayed; Henry, the King's son, retires to the Court of King Louis; his younger sons, Richard and Geoffrey, follow their brother's example; irruption of Flemings into Normandy, and defeat; saying of King Louis thereupon,—p. 98: capture of Hugh de Gornai, and his son; defection of Robert, Earl of Leicester, William Chamberlain of Tankerville, and many others; who abandon King Henry; King Louis prepares to invade Normandy, and levies a tax for the purpose,—p. 99: invasion of Burgundy by Henry, the young King; perjury and death of Matthew, Count of Boulogne; King Henry at Rouen; daily defection from him; he sends a menacing message to King Louis,—p. 100: Louis retires within his own territories; invasion of England by William, King of the Scots; he is compelled to retreat; defeat of the young King's forces at Dol; and capture of the Earl of Chester, and others; the young King is repulsed at Seez,—p. 101: placing Normandy under guard, King Henry proceeds to Maine and Anjou; he defeats

the troops of his son, Richard, at Saintes; Philip, Count of Flanders, invades England on behalf of the young King; prayer of King Henry for a fair passage over to England,—p. 102: he lands at Southampton; does penance at Canterbury, and is scourged by the monks; the Martyr propitiated, his fortunes change for the better; capture of the King of Scotland; the fleet of the young King is dispersed; King Henry returns to London,—p. 103: he embarks for Normandy, taking with him the King of Scotland; on his approach, the King of France abandons the siege of Rouen; the French and the Flemings effect a reconciliation of the King with his sons (A.D. 1175); the King of Scotland does homage to King Henry (A.D. 1175); homage and allegiance done to King Henry by his sons (A.D. 1175); the castles of England put under ward by the King, A.D. 1176; the Earl of Gloucester makes Prince John his heir, —p. 104: the Kings of Castille and Navarre submit to the arbitration of King Henry; envoys from foreign potentates seek Henry's advice; removal of the secular Canons from Waltham Abbey; Henry crosses over to Normandy, A.D. 1177; Treaty made by the Kings of England and France; Prince Geoffrey receives knighthood, A.D. 1178,—p. 105: the Abbot of St. Augustin's, at Canterbury, receives exempt jurisdiction from the Pope, A.D. 1179; the King of France visits the tomb of St. Thomas; the young King swears obedience to his father, A.D. 1180; death of King Louis VII.; succeeded by Philip; conference held by four Kings, A.D. 1181; gift by King Henry, in aid of the Holy Land, A.D. 1182; the young King asks fealty to be done by his brother, Richard, who indignantly refuses, A.D. 1183,—p. 106: King Henry supports the claims of his eldest son; Geoffrey, Duke of Bretagne, does homage and allegiance to the young King; who levies an army against his brother Richard, but suddenly dies; Prince John goes to Ireland, A.D. 1185; some account given of Ireland; peopled by the descendants of Egyptians, by the way of Spain,—p. 107; the Earldom of Huntingdon given to William, King of Scotland; alleged origin of the name "Scotia"; Prince John returns to England; death of Geoffrey, Duke of Bretagne, A.D. 1186; birth of Arthur, Duke Geoffrey's posthumous son, A.D. 1187; the Holy Cross is captured; as also, Guido, King of Jerusalem, —p. 108; a Crusade thereupon; the Count of Tripolis, accused of treachery, dies mad; requests made by Prince Richard are refused by his father; interview between the Kings of England and France, A.D. 1189; attack by the King of France and Count Richard, on various castles of King Henry; Le Mans is surrendered to the King of France; peace is made between the Kings

of England and France,—p. 109: death of King Henry II., at Chinon; he is buried at Fontevraud,—p. 110.

Count Richard enters Normandy, and receives absolution from the Archbishops of Canterbury and Rouen; crosses over to England, and arrives at Winchester; Coronation of King Richard, —p. 110: threefold oath made by him thereat; homage by the King of Scotland; a tenth levied for aid to the Holy Land; King Richard sails, on the Crusade, from Messana, A.D. 1190; Richard lands in Cyprus, and takes the so-called Emperor prisoner; puts him in silver fetters,—p. 111: some description of Cyprus; the King of France lands at Acre; Richard sails from Cyprus, and takes a Saracen ship, drowning part of the crew, and retaining the rest,—p. 112: Richard lands at Acre, which is besieged, and surrendered, on terms; treachery of Saladin; 2,000 Saracens beheaded; the Crusade is abandoned by the King of France; Richard proceeds to Joppa; defeat of Saladin,— p. 113: the King of France returns to Paris; and invades the territories of King Richard; narrow escape of Richard; who is saved through the presence of mind of William des Preaux; successes of the English; King Richard takes Darum,—p. 114: Joppa is taken, and retaken; William des Preaux ransomed; a truce is made; the two Queens, of England and Sicily, set sail; Richard is taken captive, on his return, at Vienna; Letter from the Prince of the Assesini, to the effect that Richard was not guilty of the death of the Marquis of Tyre, A.D. 1193,—p. 115: John, on hearing of his brother's captivity, hopes to reign in England; makes a treaty with the King of France, against Arthur, Duke of Bretagne; Richard is sold to the Emperor, Henry,—p. 116: he is imprisoned at Trifels; Richard is brought to repent of his undutiful conduct to his father; the ransom of Richard discussed at Worms; 100,000 marks are extorted from the King; contributions made to the ransom by the Church,— p. 117: King Richard returns to England, A.D. 1194; he orders chalices to be made for the churches, which had given up theirs for his ransom; Richard crosses over to Normandy, hearing that King Philip is besieging Verneuil; he is reconciled to his brother John; Philip abandons the siege,—p. 118: King Richard proceeds to Tours; the King of France again takes to flight; spoil taken thereupon; successes of Richard in Poitou; Leopold, Duke of Austria, falls from his horse, and has his foot amputated, A.D. 1195,—p. 119: judgment upon him therein; great inundation of the Seine, at Paris, A.D. 1196; capture of the Bishop of Beauvais and William de Merlow, A.D. 1197; composition made between King Richard and the Archbishop of Rouen,—p. 120: Walter Mape, precentor of Lincoln, is made Archdeacon of

Oxford; the monks are restored to Coventry, A.D. 1198; monks of St. Alban's sent thereto; Castles in France, taken by King Richard; the King of France is defeated at Gisorz; Richard captures three knights,—p. 121: King Richard besieges the castle of Chaluz, near Limoges; he is mortally wounded, and dies; his appellation of *Cœur de Lion;* he is buried at Fontevraud,—p. 122.

Richard is succeeded, as king, by his brother John, surnamed "Lackland" by his father; he is crowned at Westminster; King Philip invades Normandy,—p. 122: Arthur does homage to King Philip for Anjou; Queen Alianor, for Acquitaine; King John, returning from Normandy, receives homage of the King of Scotland; treaty made between the Kings of England and France, A.D. 1200; Arthur does homage to King John, as Duke of Normandy,—p. 123: marriage of John to Isabel, daughter of the Count of Angouleme; said to have been before married; King John visits Paris, and is afterwards summoned thither by Philip, A.D. 1201; Philip invades Normandy, and incites Arthur against his uncle; King John wages war against Arthur, and his supporters; Arthur is captured, and imprisoned at Rouen,—p. 124: Prophecy of Merlin; release of the Bishop of Beauvais, A.D. 1202; Philip takes fortified places in Acquitaine; Pope Innocent III. commands the Kings to make peace, and rebuild the ruined abbeys; King Philip invades Normandy; alleged commencement of the Tartar rule; death of Arthur, A.D. 1203; hostages from Poitou hanged,—p. 125; the King of France overruns Normandy; general revolt of the Normans; Alianor, sister of Arthur, imprisoned at Bristol; death of Alianor, the King's mother, A.D. 1204; King Philip takes Rouen; capture of Arques and Verneuil, and subjection of Normandy; Angers taken by stratagem; John expelled from Anjou and Touraine, A.D. 1205,—p. 126; John lands at Rochelle, but returns; the head of John the Baptist deposited at Amiens; Saint Dominic preaches against the Albigenses; disagreement as to the election of Archbishop of Canterbury; Stephen Langton is appointed Archbishop, A.D. 1207; he is forbidden by the King to enter England; Otho, Duke of Saxony, elected Emperor, comes into England; Philip takes fortified places in Acquitaine,—p. 127: birth of Henry, son of King John; England laid under Interdict; Archbishop Stephen at Pontigny; Otho obtains the crown, Philip of Suabia being slain; birth of Richard, second son of John, A.D. 1209; John proposes to invade Scotland; a Crusade preached against the Albigenses; Simon, Count de Montfort; Pope Innocent excommunicates the Emperor Otho, and John, King of England, A.D. 1210,—p. 128: expedition to Ireland; tallage of the Abbeys; rising of the Welch, A.D. 1211; Stortforde Castle levelled;

Alexander of Scotland knighted; the Pope incites the King of France, and others, against John; King Philip discusses the invasion of England, A.D. 1212; John marches against the Welch; commencement of a defection of the Barons against King John, —p. 129: St. Francis, of Assisi, renounces the world; King Philip invades Flanders, A.D. 1213; an English fleet sent to the coast of Flanders; capture of a great part of the French fleet; King John at length permits Archbishop Stephen to come to his See; he makes his kingdom tributary to the Pope, —p. 130: he is absolved from sentence of excommunication; Pandulph, the Legate, forbids King Philip's intended invasion of England; King John lands at Rochelle; capture of the son of the Count de Dreux; relaxation of the Interdict, A.D. 1214; capture of Angers by the French,—p. 131: a truce made for five years; the Emperor Otho is defeated; Otho retires to his Duchy, for life, A.D. 1215; devoutness shown by him on his deathbed; a miracle, which then took place; King John engages to enter upon a Crusade; but is prevented by a rising of his Barons; who defy him,—p. 132: ransom of William, Earl of Salisbury; the City of London joins the Barons; many of the Barons captured at Rochester; Prince Louis is summoned to the aid of the Barons; Hugh de Boves and his mercenaries are shipwrecked; his body cast up at Yarmouth, in Norfolk; a pestilence arises from the bodies of the drowned; Council of Lateran,—p. 133: excommunication of the enemies of King John; Gualo, the Legate, warns King Philip against invading England, A.D. 1216; he vainly attempts to make peace between the King and the Barons; Prince Louis joined by the Barons, and is received in London; vain opposition made by Gualo; death of King John, at Newark, 19th October,—p. 134: is buried at Worcester; Monasteries founded by John,—p. 135.

Henry III., son of John, succeeds to the throne; he is crowned at Gloucester; the Tower of London is surrendered to Prince Louis; a truce made with him by the young King,—p. 135: he returns to France, and is deserted by many of the Barons; story told by some Chroniclers, as to the sinister intentions of Prince Louis; Prince Louis vainly besieges the castles of Dover and Windsor, A.D. 1217; he is defeated at Lincoln,—p. 136; death of the Count de Perches; and capture of Gilbert de Clare; the French fleet is defeated, under Eustace the Monk, who is slain; peace is made with Prince Louis; who enters into certain engagements; siege and capture of Damietta, by John, King of Jerusalem, and the Duke of Austria, A.D. 1218,—p. 137: a peace made for four years, as to Poitou, A.D. 1220; the King lays the first stone of the new works at Westminster; the See is removed from Old Sarum to New Sarum; Isabel,

the widow of King John, marries the Count de Marche, A.D. 1221; rebellion of William, Earl of Albemarle; who is excommunicated; Hubert de Burgh, Earl of Kent, made guardian of the King; recapture of Damietta by the Saracens,—p. 138: Council at Oxford; an apostate deacon, degraded and burnt; a rustic immured, for imitating the *Stigmata*; death of King Philip; succession of Louis VIII., A.D. 1223; King Louis breaks his oath, and takes Rochelle, through treachery, A.D. 1224; Faukes de Breauté, rising in insurrection, is crushed, and reduced to poverty; the King unable to recover former losses in France; successes in Gascoigne of the Earls of Cornwall and Salisbury, A.D. 1225,—p. 139: death of Louis VIII., and succession of Saint Louis; discord as to Hubert de Burgh; aid sent to the Earl of Cornwall, in Gascoigne; expedition against the Albigenses, and capture of Toulouse, A.D. 1227; King Henry sets sail for Bretagne, to recover his possessions, A.D. 1230; Henry returns from Bretagne, A.D. 1231; Hubert de Burgh imprisoned, A.D. 1232; Richard, Earl Marshal, rises against the King, A.D. 1233; Hubert de Burgh is dragged from sanctuary,—p. 140: Edmund of Abingdon, Archbishop of Canterbury; the Emperor Frederic marries Isabella, A.D. 1235; famine in Acquitaine; Henry marries Alianor of Provence (A.D. 1236); the Earl of Cornwall assumes the Cross; death of John le Scot, last Earl of Chester, A.D. 1237; gift of one thirtieth to the King; the Legate, Otto, is insulted by the scholars at Oxford; the University is thereupon dispersed, A.D. 1238; the Lord's crown of thorns, A.D. 1239; birth of Prince Edward; the Earl of Cornwall aids the French army, in the Holy Land, —p. 141: treaty with the Saracens; Hubert de Burgh surrenders four castles to the King; Simon de Montfort takes refuge in England, and is made Earl of Leicester, marrying the King's sister; the land of the Basceles [Biscay] acknowledged as of the fee of the King of France; the Emperor Frederic has Cardinal Otto and another arrested, A.D. 1240; Pope Gregory IX. is prevented from holding a Council; death of Edmund, Archbishop of Canterbury; a golden shrine for the remains of Edward the Confessor, A.D. 1241; Alfonso, Count of Poitou,—p. 142: death of the sister of Prince Arthur; the Earl of Cornwall returns from the Holy Land, A.D. 1242; King Henry crosses over, to aid the Count de Marche against the King of France; Battle near Saintes, and retreat of Henry; Henry takes the castle of Verrines, in Gascoigne, A.D. 1243; the Templars, at Acre, break the truce made by the Earl of Cornwall; suggestion made to the Pope by David, the Welch Prince,—p. 143: the Saracens defeat the Christians, and destroy Jerusalem and the Holy Sepulchre; birth of Prince Edmund; Council held at Lyons, A.D. 1245;

ineffectual attempt to release England from the tribute to Rome; complaint of the clergy, of the Italians taking the revenues of the Church; Master Martin is expelled; Richard, Earl of Cornwall, marries Sanchia, of Navarre,—p. 144: Canonization of Edmund, Archbishop of Canterbury; capture of Angers; payment by the English Church to the Pope, A.D. 1247; imprint of the Lord's footstep, brought into England, and deposited at Westminster, A.D. 1249; the King of France takes Damietta, and besieges Mansourah; the King of France is taken by the Saracens, A.D. 1250; Robert, Count of Artois, is drowned; William, Earl of Salisbury, slain,—p. 145: dream of the Abbess of Lacok, mother of Earl William; the King of France is liberated, on ransom; remains five years in the Holy Land; the shepherds of France unite, to fight the Saracens; but are dispersed at Bourges, A.D. 1251; Cardinals ordered to wear red hats, A.D. 1252; the kingdom of Apulia offered to the Earl of Cornwall by the Pope; long absence of rain; two Charters granted by King Henry, A.D. 1253,—p. 146: incursion of the sea, in Lincolnshire; death of Robert Grosteste; Prince Edward married to Alianor, daughter of Alfonso, King of Castille, A.D. 1254; the Barons cause notice to be given for the observance of the Charters of Liberties and the Forest, A.D. 1255; Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, ravages the County of Chester; Hugh, a boy, is crucified by the Jews,—p. 147: condemnation by Pope Alexander IV. of an opponent of the Mendicant Orders; his book burnt; Richard, Earl of Cornwall, crowned King of the Romans, A.D. 1257; gifts to Prince Edward; enactment of the Provisions of Oxford, various persons refusing their assent thereto, A.D. 1258; Henry demands of the King of France restitution of his territories,—p. 148: this is refused; but peace is made on certain terms; Henry renounces his right to Normandy and Anjou; repulse of the Justiciars Itinerant, as having violated the Provisions of Oxford, A.D. 1260; Pope Urban IV. succeeds Alexander IV., A.D. 1261; King Henry recalls certain articles of the Provisions of Oxford; ravages committed by the Welch Prince, A.D. 1262; Prince Edward raises troops against him, but is recalled, A.D. 1263,—p. 149: attack made upon the aliens, under Simon, Earl of Leicester; capture of Peter, Bishop of Hereford; capture of Worcester, Bristol, and Bridgenorth; insult offered to the Queen by the citizens of London; peace made, on certain conditions,—p. 150: Windsor Castle victualled; disaffection of the people of Bristol; the Bishop of Worcester accompanies Prince Edward to Windsor; the castle is surrendered to the Earl of Leicester; Llewelyn lays waste the County and March of Chester; a Parliament at London,—p. 151: Henry of Almaine deserts the Earl; Louis, King of France, offers to

arbitrate, but the Earl of Leicester declines the offer, A.D. 1264; Roger de Mortimer spoils his demesnes; Prince Edward takes certain castles of the Earl of Hereford; the castle of Brecknock surrendered to him; King Henry visits St. Frideswide's, at Oxford; superstitious notion as to such visits; the Justiciars imprisoned by the Londoners; names of the chief adherents of King Henry,—p. 152: Northampton is taken, with many supporters of the Earl of Leicester; the King proceeds to Nottingham; and to Lewes; many of the King's scouts are slain, while foraging; his army is divided into three parts; that of the Barons into four,—p. 153: Battle fought at Lewes; early success of Prince Edward, in the battle; flight of the Londoners; King Henry and his brother are taken prisoners; flight of the King's supporters; the royal troops in the castle hold out; message sent by the Barons to Prince Edward,—p. 154: the Princes, Edward and Henry, surrender to the Earl, in place of their fathers, respectively; slaughter of the Londoners, by the Earl's supporters, at Croydon; [1] [the Earl manifests a disinclination to make peace; his prisoners, how disposed of; rising of certain of the King's supporters against the Earl of Leicester,—p. 155: Prince Edward is removed from Dover to Hereford; making terms with certain nobles, the Earl proceeds southward; Pope Urban sends a Legate, the Bishop of Sabina; who pronounces sentence of excommunication against the enemies of King Henry; appearance of a comet; death of Pope Urban IV., at the time of its disappearance; succession of Pope Clement IV.; particulars of his previous life,—p. 156: Thomas Aquinas, and Bonaventura; discord arises between the Earls of Leicester and Gloucester, A.D. 1265; reasons thereof; the Earl of Gloucester allies himself with certain nobles, banished by order of the Earl of Leicester; ineffectual attempts made to reconcile them; Prince Edward escapes from Hereford,—p. 157: he is met by Roger de Mortimer and Roger de Clifford; Edward raises a great army; takes the town of Gloucester, and the castle; the Earl of Leicester levels Monmouth Castle; Edward takes the Earl of Oxford,—p. 158: Earl Simon, with King Henry, comes to Kemeseye; Earl Simon moves to Evesham; Prince Edward is joined there by the Earl of Gloucester, and Roger de Mortimer; the Earl of Leicester is defeated at Evesham, and slain; Knights bannerets slain; slaughter also of the Welch; Prince Edward orders burial of the slain; shews sorrow for the death of Henry de Montfort,—p. 159: the King summons a Parliament at Winchester; adopts severe measures against the City of London; depredations committed by those who are disherisoned; Cardinal Ottoboni is sent, as Legate,

[1] See the foot-note at page 155.

to England; Charles crowned King of Sicily; Crusade in support of him; defeat of an expedition of the Welch, under William de Berkele, into Somerset];[1] Dover Castle is taken by Prince Edward; and Guido de Montfort confined there, A.D. 1266,—p. 160: Guido escapes, to Tuscany; Simon escapes, to France; a captain appointed for each city; capture of Robert de Ferrers; surrender by the disherisoned, at Axiholm; single combat between Prince Edward and Adam Gurdoun; Gurdoun yields, and is received into Edward's favour,—p. 161: the King besieges certain of the disherisoned in the castle of Kenelwurth; enactment made as to the redemption of their lands by the disherisoned; surrender of the castle of Kenelwurth; certain of the disherisoned establish themselves in the Isle of Ely, A.D. 1267; Prince Edward effects an entry,—p. 162: the Earl of Gloucester opposes the King; he enters London, and expels the Legate from the Tower; the Earl is reconciled to the King; peace made between the King and Prince Llewelyn; reforms in the English Church enacted by the Legate, A.D. 1268; Prince Edward pledges Gascoigne; the body of Edward the Confessor translated,—p. 163: Alan la Souche slain by John de Warenne; the Statutes of Marleberge; Louis, King of France, again sets out for the Holy Land, A.D. 1269; he takes the port of Tunis; Prince Edmund marries the daughter of William de Albemarle; her early death; Princes Edward and Edmund set out for the Holy Land, A.D. 1270; death of King Louis,—p. 164: Prince Edward arrives at Tunis; and at Acre, which is rescued from the Saracens; punishment of merchants, for selling arms to the Saracens; Henry, son of the King of the Romans, slain; death of Richard, King of the Romans; his burial (A.D. 1272); escape of Prince Edward from assassination in the Holy Land, A.D. 1271, —p. 165: burning of the Cathedral at Norwich, by the citizens; severe punishment inflicted; death of King Henry III.; his character; his personal appearance,—p. 166.

Prince Edward, though absent, acknowledged King,—p. 166: Prince Edmund returns to England; King Edward leaves Spain, and arrives in Sicily, A.D. 1273; he visits the Pope, Gregory X.; the Pope excommunicates Guido de Montfort,—p. 167; Edward's prowess; he does homage to the King of France; puts down the rebellion of Gaston de Bierne; death of Henry, King of Navarre; marriage of his widow to Prince Edmund, A.D. 1274; the King of France made arbitrator between Edward and Gaston de Bierne,—p. 168: Edward now returns to England; his coronation; homage of the King of Scotland; humiliation, and ultimate release, of Gaston de Bierne, A.D. 1275; the Prince of Wales refuses to appear in England; Statutes against Mortmain,—

[1] See Note at page lxi. *ante*.

p. 169: King Edward proceeds to Chester; one fifteenth paid to the King; the son and daughter of the late Earl of Leicester are seized, A.D. 1270; Edward takes Rhudlan; Payen de Chensi in West Wales; submission of the West Welch; terms of the peace between the King of England and the Prince of Wales,—p. 170: subsidy to King Edward; marriage of the daughter of the Earl of Leicester to the Prince of Wales, A.D. 1278; the Archbishop of Canterbury made a Cardinal; the Jews hanged for clipping the coin; the Statutes of Gloucester; restoration of lands by the King of France; death of the Queen of Castille; visit of the King of Scotland; and letters granted to him; John Pecham, Archbishop of Canterbury; he arrives in England,—p. 172: alteration in the coinage; a Round Table held at Kenelwurth; the tomb of Henry III. adorned, A.D. 1280; rising of David, brother of Llewelyn, A.D. 1281; he seizes Roger de Clifford; Rhudlan besieged; Edward proceeds to Wales; capture of castles, by the Welch; Emeric de Montfort liberated,—p. 173; sentence of excommunication against Llewelyn by the Archbishop of Canterbury; singular appearance; Edward has a bridge built across to Anglesey, A.D. 1282; engagement with the Welch by the Earl of Gloucester; Llewelyn is slain; after some losses, Wales is nearly subdued by King Edward,—p. 174: grants made to the King; successes of King Edward in Wales; which is finally subdued, A.D. 1283; capture of David, brother of Llewelyn Cross of St. Neot, containing a portion of the real Cross; David is condemned, and executed; surrender of Rees Vazhan,—p. 175: a castle built, in place of the Abbey, at Abertoun (Conway); grants to the King; Guido de Montfort liberated by Pope Martin IV.; Parliament at Acton Burnell, and Statute; birth of Prince Edward (A.D. 1284); the crown of King Arthur; King Edward proceeds to Glamorgan and Bristol, A.D. 1284,—p. 176: death of Prince Alfonso; Statutes of Westminster, the 2nd, A.D. 1285; King Edward visits France, A.D. 1286; obtains concessions; which are soon revoked; Alianor, the King's mother, retires to Ambresbery; escape of the King and Queen from thunder and lightning, A.D. 1287; Edward proceeds to Aragon,—p. 177: Alfonso, of Aragon, desires to be reconciled to the Church; miracles wrought by the body of Thomas de Cantilupe; Charles, Prince of Achaia, is released from prison, A.D. 1288; Edward assumes the Cross; expels the Jews from Gascoigne; rising of Rees ap Meredith; death of William de Munchensi, and others; great abundance of corn; Edward returns to England, and expels the Jews,—p. 178: Justiciars deposed, and punished; Statutes of Westminster, the 3rd; death of Alexander III., of Scotland; his granddaughter, Margaret, is recognized as the heir to the Scottish throne; but dies; great tempest, and disastrous results

thereof; dearth for many years after,—p. 179: question as to the succession to the Scottish throne; death of Queen Alianor; burial at Westminster; honours paid to her memory; capture of Acre by the Soldan of Babylon, A.D. 1291; a Parliament held at Norham,—p. 180: enquiry as to Edward's right, as superior lord of Scotland,—p. 181: transactions at Norham, in reference to the Scottish crown,—p. 182: Letter of the claimants of the Scottish crown, signifying that they will abide by the award of King Edward; the Castles of Scotland are resigned into Edward's hands,—p. 183: Letter in sanction thereof,—p. 184: the Letters sent to the Monasteries; surety given by Edward that he will restore the same; award given in favour of John de Baliol; death of Alianor, the King's mother; Rees ap Meredith condemned; Edward sets out for Scotland,—p. 185: dissensions between England and France; persons appointed to examine the allegations of those claiming the Scottish throne; claim of Eric, King of Norway, to the crown of Scotland,—p. 186: a day given to the envoys of the King of Norway,—p. 188: their answer, when questioned thereon; award in favour of John de Baliol; his coronation, at Scone,—p. 189: his homage to the King of England; the kingdom of Scotland given up to Baliol; King Edward at Newcastle-on-Tyne, A.D. 1293; the Earl of Lincoln sent to treat with the King of France; a French fleet captured; restitution thereof demanded by the King of France,—p. 190: answer made by King Edward thereto; indignation of the King of France thereon,—p. 191: negotiations with the King of France, A.D. 1294; envoys sent to the King of France, renouncing homage on part of the King of England; alliance with the King of the Romans, and preparations for war with France; subsidy granted to the King; dearth in England; towns taken in Gascoigne; insurrection in parts of Wales,—p. 192: King Edward is repulsed; Robert de Winchelsee, Archbishop of Canterbury; abdication of Pope Cœlestinus V.; succeeded by Benedict Gaetano, as Boniface VIII.; his misfortunes, and miserable end,—p. 193: surrender of the city of Bayonne, A.D. 1295; King Edward is pressed by want of provisions, in North Wales; the Welch are defeated by the Earl of Warwick; Beaumaris Castle built, in Anglesey; Madoc taken prisoner,—p. 194: successes of the French and English; capture, and recapture, of St. Sever; two Cardinals, sent to treat of peace between England and France; Dover ravaged by the French; Cherburgh burnt; Spanish ships taken by the people of Portsmouth,—p. 195: John de Baliol enters into an alliance with France; twelve Peers of Scotland chosen; Baliol's property in England is confiscated; treason of Sir Thomas Turbervile, and execution; death of Gilbert, Earl of

Gloucester; death of William, Earl of Pembroke; King Edward prepares to punish the Scots,—p. 196: the French are defeated, near Bordeaux; defeat of Edmund, Earl of Lancaster; successes of the Count of Artois, against the English; John de Baliol, summoned to appear before King Edward, does not appear; treachery of Sir Robert de Ros; English troops slain by him,—p. 197: Carlisle besieged by the Scots; they raise the siege, and withdraw; King Edward enters Scotland, and takes possession of the town of Berwick; Baliol renounces his homage and fealty to Edward,—p. 198: King Edward orders the renunciation to be registered,—p. 199: the Scots ravage Hexham, and other places; Dunbar Castle betrayed to the Scots; the Scots are defeated, and the castle is regained; further successes of King Edward; he reaches the town of St. John [Perth]; Baliol sues for peace, and makes submission; form of such submission,—p. 200: Edward proceeds to the north of Scotland,—p. 201: the Coronation Stone is removed to Westminster; submission made by the nobles of Scotland at a Parliament at Berwick; form of submission,—p. 202: Warden, Treasurer, and Justiciar, of Scotland, appointed; Baliol confined in the Tower of London; a Parliament at Bury St. Edmund's,—p. 203: the clergy of England refuse a subsidy to the King; death of Peter de Murrone; a Parliament at London, A.D. 1297; measures of the King against the clergy and the Archbishop of Canterbury; John Saint John defeated by the Count of Artois; increase of the duty on wools; dissensions between King Edward and the English nobility,—p. 204: the Pope incites a Crusade against the Cardinals Colonna; successes of the French in Flanders; William de Ormesby, the Justiciar, with difficulty, escapes from William Waleys; his cruelties; Edward desires to aid the Count of Flanders; he takes measures against the Scots,—p. 205: the Earl of Warenne proceeding into Scotland, the Scots negotiate for submission; Parliament at London; the Archbishop of Canterbury pardoned; the Earl Marshal and Earl of Hereford refuse their service; Ralph de Moynhermer liberated, and restored to his wife,—p. 206: Scottish nobles liberated; Edward proceeds to Winchelsea, on his way to Flanders; grievances presented by the nobles of England to the King,—p. 207: answer of Edward thereto,—p. 208: Edward sails for Flanders, and lands at Sluys; occurrences at Bruges and Ghent; the King of France retreats; Pope Boniface takes measures to thwart the King of the Romans; opposition to King Edward by the Earl of Hereford and the Earl Marshal; Prince Edward represents his father,—p. 209: death of Adolph, King of the Romans (A.D. 1298); the Earl of Warenne vainly attempts to negotiate with William Waleys; the English are defeated by the Scots; flight of the Earl of Warenne; conditions of reconciliation proposed by the Earl of Hereford and Earl Marshal;

Articles to be added to Magna Charta,—p. 210: King Edward confirms the Articles; fresh proposals for peace made by the Pope, A.D. 1298; the King of England consents to a truce,—p. 212: sedition at Ghent against the English; the Earl of Warenne and the other Earls proceed towards Scotland; William Waleys raises the siege of Rokesburgh; the Scots desert the King of England in Flanders,—p. 213: the King of France demands the liberation of Baliol, which is refused; Parliament at York; an English army assembled at Rokesburgh; accident to King Edward; defeat of the Scots [at Falkirk]; death of Adolph, King of the Romans,—p. 214: submission to the Pope, of the Cardinals Colonna; peace established by the Pope, A.D. 1299; hesitation of the King of France; flight of the Cardinals Colonna; Parliament at London; re-confirmation of the Charters; the Pope demands the liberation of Baliol,—p. 215: Baliol is deprived of the regalia of Scotland; he is taken to Bailleul, in France; King Edward marries Margaret, sister of the King of France; the King and Queen visit the Abbey of St. Alban's; death of Edmund, Earl of Cornwall, and reversion of the County to the Crown, A.D. 1300,—p. 216; King Edward sends envoys to the Pope, to oppose the Scots; a truce is granted; birth of Prince Edmund, A.D. 1301; Philip, King of France, offends Pope Boniface; further offence given to the Pope by the King's envoy,—p. 217: Parliament at Stamford; Edward conciliates the nobles; Pope Boniface claims Scotland, in behalf of the Romish Church; grounds of the claim,—p. 218: demands made of King Edward by the Pope,—p. 219: Letter sent by King Edward to the Pope, declaratory of his right to the kingdom of Scotland,—p. 220: Letter addressed to the Pope on behalf of the people of England, in reference to the King's claim to the Crown of Scotland,—p. 230: King Edward proceeds to Scotland; he makes a truce with the Scots, A.D. 1302; Pope Boniface attempts to excite Edward against the King of France; Edward sends an army into Scotland; the people of Bordeaux expel the French; rebellion of the Scots, under William Waleys, A.D. 1303; Gascoigne is restored to the King of England; the Scots capture Sir John de Segrave; who is rescued; prowess of Robert de Nevill; gift by the Earl Marshal to the King; submission of the Scots to King Edward; he winters at Dumfermelyn,—p. 233: appeal of the King of France against Pope Boniface VIII.; maltreatment of Pope Boniface by the supporters of the King of France, and of the Cardinals Colonna; miserable end of Pope Boniface; succession of Benedict XI.; the Cardinals Colonna pardoned; siege of the castle of Strivelyn, A.D. 1304,—p. 234: surrender of the castle; the Bench and the Exchequer are removed from York to London; the King of France absolved from excommunication; death of Pope Boniface XI.; Piers de Gaverston banished; capture and

execution of William Waleys, A.D. 1305; election of Pope Clement V.,—p. 235: present made to the Pope by King Edward; Antony Beek, Patriarch of Jerusalem; grant of the tithes for two years to the King of England, for the Holy Land; avarice manifested by the Pope, as to the first-fruits; the Flemings expelled from England; John Comyn slain by Robert le Brus, A.D. 1306,—p. 236: he is crowned King of Scotland; the Countess of Bouhan kept in a wooden cage, at Berwick; Edward, Prince of Wales, is made a knight; he proceeds to Scotland; the King sets out for Carlisle; Scotland ravaged by the Prince; displeasure manifested by his father,—p. 237: Robert le Brus approaches the town of Saint John [Perth]; he is attacked by Aymer de Valence, and retreats to the isle of Kentyr; his wife and brother are captured; execution of many of the prisoners, by order of King Edward; Edward is absolved by the Pope from his oath to the Earls and Barons; Pope Clement removes his Court from Lyons to Bordeaux,—p. 238: Parliament at Carlisle, A.D. 1307; proposition for marriage of Prince Edward with a daughter of the King of France; capture and execution of two brothers of Robert le Brus; successes of Robert le Brus; summons to the English troops to meet at Carlisle; final sickness of King Edward,—p. 239; he dies at Burgh on the Sands; his two wives, and his children; victorious career of Edward; his last injunctions, as to the disposal of his body, until the final conquest of Scotland,—p. 240.

Succession of Edward of Karnervan; recall of Piers de Gaverston; account of him; Gaverston is made Earl of Cornwall; Edward marries Isabella, daughter of the King of France, A.D. 1308; Kings present at the royal marriage; undue favour shown by the King to Gaverston,—p. 241; Coronation of the King and Queen; the Templars arrested, throughout England; hostile feeling of the nobles, towards Gaverston, A.D. 1309; the Archbishop of Canterbury recalled from exile; Gaverston is banished to Ireland, A.D. 1310; he is recalled by the King, to marry the sister of the Earl of Gloucester,—p. 242: insolence and avarice shown by Gaverston; the Queen complains of his conduct; demands made of the King by the Barons; Gaverston abjures the kingdom (A.D. 1311); orders given in reference to him, by the King of France; Gaverston again returns to England (A.D. 1311); is welcomed by the King,—p. 243: counsels of the nobles, on Gaverston's return; request made by them to the King; the King takes to flight, with Gaverston; Gaverston is taken, and executed; he is finally buried at Langley; birth of a prince, who is named after his father; death of Archbishop Robert de Winchelsee, A.D. 1313; death of the Earl of Warwick, from poison, as reported (A.D. 1315),—p. 244: the King and Queen visit Paris;

the Scots ravage Northumberland, A.D. 1314; death of Pope Clement V.; succession of Pope John XXII.; the King proceeds to Scotland; the English are defeated by Robert le Brus [at Bannockburn]; the Earl of Gloucester slain; other losses in the battle,—p. 245: Sir Ralph Mounhermer is liberated; division of the Earl of Gloucester's domains among his sisters; courtesy shown by Robert le Brus; the Earl of Hereford exchanged for the wife of Robert le Brus; league of certain English with the Scots; burial of Gaverston, at Langley (A.D. 1315),—p. 246: enactment as to the price of victuals; Parliament summoned; but the nobles neglect to attend; Northumberland ravaged by the Scots; Edward le Brus sent with an army into Ireland; increased dearth,—p. 247: capture of Llewelyn Bren; the ordinances as to sale of victuals are repealed, A.D. 1315; the great lessen their households; rapine resulting from the famine; Parliament held at London (A.D. 1316); increase of the famine, followed by a pestilence; birth of John of Eltham (A.D. 1316); provision in London, as to brewing; the Pope reserves the first-fruits, in England,—p. 248: certain of the Northumbrians ravage the country; arrival of envoys of the Pope, for the purpose of establishing peace; the Cardinals are plundered by Gilbert de Middeltone and Walter de Selbye; and the Bishop of Durham is imprisoned, and forced to pay ransom,—p. 249: the clergy of England refuse to pay an impost, in requital of their losses; Gilbert de Middeltone is taken, and executed; renewed negotiations for peace between the King and the nobles, A.D. 1318,—p. 250: the Cardinals leave England; Parliament at London; an army raised and disbanded; Edward le Brus captured, and beheaded; Robert le Brus is excommunicated, and Scotland placed under Interdict; Berwick is betrayed, and besieged by King Edward, A.D. 1319,—p. 251: attempt of the Scots to capture the Queen; defeat of the English at Mytone on Swale; the King pursues the Scots, who escape; a truce for two years; murrain in England; birth of Princess Alianor; ravages committed in England by the Scots, A.D. 1320; charge of poisoning, against the lepers throughout Christendom; and against the Jews,—p. 252: dissensions between the Earl of Hereford and the Mortimers and the Despencers; the Barons unite, to take arms against the Despencers; they make certain demands of the King,—p. 253: the elder Despencer goes into exile; the younger Despencer joins the King; who levies an army against the Barons; the King summons his forces; and some of the Barons submit, the Mortimers among them, who are sent to the Tower, A.D. 1322; other nobles imprisoned; on seeing the King's forces, the Earl of Lancaster takes to flight,—p. 254: at Burghbridge, the Earl of Hereford is slain, and the Earl of Lancaster captured;

and afterwards executed; King Edward invades Scotland; he flies from the Scots; and reaches York; the Earl of Richmond captured; the elder Despencer made Earl of Winchester,—p. 255: death of Philip V.; King Edward is summoned by Charles V. of France, to do homage for the Duchy of Acquitaine; but he is kept in ignorance thereof; certain of his lands are seized, in default, A.D. 1323; envoys sent by Robert le Brus to the Roman Court; but, through the agency of King Edward, their object is frustrated; account of Sir Andrew de Hercle,—p. 256: he is captured by Antony de Lucy; and executed; a truce for 15 years, with Robert le Brus; inquisition made by the King as to public offenders; the Pope excommunicates the Emperor Louis of Bavaria,—p. 257: discussion in Parliament, as to the summons of the King to do homage to the King of France; a subsidy demanded for the Earl of Richmond, and refused; the possessions of the Templars granted to the Hospitallers; envoys sent to the King of France, but without result; Charles of Valois invades Acquitaine,—p. 258: a truce made between him and the Earl of Kent; escape of the younger Mortimer from the Tower; death of the elder Mortimer in prison; death of the Earl of Pembroke, sent as an envoy to France; another envoy narrowly escapes death; evils arising from the dissensions between the Kings of England and France,—p. 259: Parliament at Westminster; fresh negotiations are entered into with the King of France; the Queen of England passes over into France; final arrangement between the Kings of England and France; terms of such final arrangement,—p. 260: the Queen and Prince Edward refusing to return to England, they are banished; Robert de Walkefare escapes; and joins the Queen; the province of Agen restored to English rule by Sir Oliver de Ingham; capture of Norman ships by the English; Queen Isabella leaves France, and takes refuge in Hainault,—p. 261: Prince Edward is betrothed to Philippa of Hainault; the Queen and Prince embark for England, with a great force, A.D. 1326; they land at Herewych, and are joined by many adherents; the Queen's successful progress; King Edward demands the aid of the citizens of London; who give a qualified answer; he fortifies the Tower of London; and issues a proclamation against his enemies,—p. 262: the Queen issues a proclamation against the King's partisans; the citizens of London adopt the Queen's cause; murder of John Marchal, and Walter de Stapleton, Bishop of Exeter; Bristol is surrendered, and the elder Despencer executed; Thomas Blount, Steward of the King's household, joins the Queen,—p. 263: the King takes to flight, but is captured in Wales; he is taken to Kenelwurthe; certain of the King's adherents are executed; the younger Despencer is executed; Simon de Rading is executed; Robert de

Baldok dies in prison; the Queen goes to Walingforde; general support given to the Queen by the nobility,—p. 264: a Parliament held at London; the King is deposed, and Prince Edward chosen King; a deputation is sent to Kenelwurthe, to obtain Edward's sanction thereto; he gives a reluctant answer; the first day is named of the new reign,—p. 265.

Proclamation made by the new King,—p. 265: the young King is knighted; and is crowned at Westminster; an exorbitant grant made to the Queen; a grant made to the deposed King; who does not enjoy it for a year,—p. 266: according to common report, he is barbarously put to death; the young King marches against the Scots; who make their escape; narrow escape of the King from James Douglas; punishment of one of the murderers of the late King,—p. 267: death of Charles de Valois; death of Robert le Brus (A.D. 1329); death of Charles IV., King of France (A.D. 1328); Philip VI. assumes the French crown; Philippa, Queen of England, his niece; a Parliament held at Northampton (A.D. 1328); agreement for the marriage of David le Brus to the King's sister; a Council held by Simon, Archbishop of Canterbury, at London (A.D. 1329),—p. 268: King Edward does homage to the King of France, for the Duchy of Acquitaine; Parliament at Salisbury; creation of new peers; marriage of the Princess Johanna (A.D. 1328); Edmund, Earl of Kent, the King's uncle, executed, A.D. 1329; evil conduct of his household,—p. 269: process of the Pope against the Emperor, Louis IV.; death of Robert le Brus (A.D. 1329); birth of Prince Edward, A.D. 1330; arrest and execution of Roger de Mortimer; causes assigned for his execution,—p. 270: the grants made to the Queen Dowager resumed; tenths of goods of ecclesiastics granted; a Parliament at London, A.D. 1331; Edward de Baliol asserts his right to the crown of Scotland; he invades Scotland (A.D. 1332); the Scots are defeated, near Gledesmor; many of the English join Edward de Baliol,—p. 271: King Edward treats with the garrison of Berwick (A.D. 1333); Coronation of Edward de Baliol; King Edward defeats the Scots, near Hellidone, A.D. 1333; the Scots besiege the castle of Bamburgh, but afterwards take to flight; surrender of Berwick; the kingdom of Scotland given in charge to Baliol and others,—p. 272: a Parliament held by Edward de Baliol; Baliol does homage to the King of England, A.D. 1334; homage of the Duke of Bretagne for the County of Richmond; rising of the Scots; grant to King Edward, to oppose them; Edward enters Scotland; he relieves Henry de Beaumont, besieged by the Scots; King Edward lays waste even to the extreme north of Scotland, A.D. 1335; the King at Rokesburgh,—p. 273: a truce made with the Scots; a Parliament at York; peace made with the Earl of Athole; Sir Richard Talbot ransomed; the

Earl of Athole is slain; birth of Prince William, at Hatfeld, A.D. 1336; the County of Cornwall made into a Duchy, and bestowed upon Prince Edward (A.D. 1337); six Earls created,—p. 274: enactment against the use of cloth made out of England; fruitless treaty made with the Emperor Louis; an embassy sent to the King of France; who aids the Scots; siege of the castle of Dunbar; Southampton burnt by the French; discord between the Kings of England and France, A.D. 1337; Parliament held at Nottingham (A.D. 1336); enactments made therein,—p. 275: the goods of the Lombards, and Cluniac and Cistercian monks, confiscated; a comet; grant of a tenth by the ecclesiastics; favour shown to the King of France by the Cardinals who are sent as envoys; and remark thereon by the Archbishop of Canterbury, A.D. 1338; King Edward crosses over, to treat with the Duke of Brabant; Louis of Bavaria appoints Edward his Vicar,—p. 276: he assumes the arms of France, and lays waste that country; birth of Prince Lionel; Letter of King Edward to the Pope and Cardinals, as to his right to the throne of France, and answer thereto (A.D. 1339); King Edward at Antwerp, A.D. 1339; Edward returns suddenly to England; places many officials under arrest; a Parliament held at London (A.D. 1340); proposal made by the Duke of Austria,—p. 277: the French defeated by Oliver Ingham, at Bordeaux; grants made to the King by Parliament; the Earl of Salisbury and other nobles taken prisoners by the French,—p. 278: birth of John of Gaunt; King Edward receives intelligence of the designs of the French and Normans; a naval victory is gained by him over the French [at Sluys]; the English, with their allies, besiege Tournay.—p. 279: the adjoining country is laid waste by the English; a truce is concluded between the Kings of England and France; Flanders is placed under Interdict by the Pope; birth of the Princess Blanche; King Edward crosses over to Bretagne, A.D. 1341; two Cardinals propose a truce; tempest attributed to necromancers of the French King,—p. 280: birth of Prince Edmund; Louis of Bavaria revokes the Vicarship conferred upon Edward, A.D. 1342; Edward again crosses over to Bretagne, to aid John de Montfort against Charles de Bloys; a truce is made; accession of Pope Clement VI. (A.D. 1342); King Edward annuls the provisions made by him in England, A.D. 1343; tenths paid to the King,—p. 281: Pope Clement again makes provisions in England, for two Cardinals; Edward writes to the Pope, against Provisors; envoys sent to the Roman Court, to treat of Edward's right to the French crown; golden florins coined; a Round Table held at Windsor Castle by order of King Edward, A.D. 1344; a Round Table summoned by the King of France,—p. 282: the French King grants leave to fell trees for shipping; death of William, Earl of Salisbury; privileges granted to the clergy by

the King; discovery of a vast treasure, through the agency of a Saracen physician,—p. 283: birth of the Princess Mary; successes of Henry, Earl of Derby, in Gascoigne, A.D. 1345; his liberality, and its results; death of Richard de Bury, Bishop of Durham; he is succeeded by Thomas de Hatfeld; saying of the Pope relative thereto,—p. 284: death of Henry, Earl of Lancaster; the Scots ravage the English Borders; prowess of Robert Oggil, and the Bishop of Carlisle; defeat and flight of the Scots; King Edward crosses over to France, A.D. 1346; prowess of Thomas de Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick,—p. 285: knighthood conferred on the Prince of Wales; the Normans are defeated, at Caen; which is taken, and plundered; the King of France destroys the bridges, and retires to Paris; the English, under King Edward, cross the Seine; the English cross the Somme, —p. 286: capture of Crotoy, by Hugh le Spencer; defeat of the French at Cressy; the French pride themselves upon their retreat; fresh defeat of the French; prolonged siege of Calais by the English; the Scots invade England,—p. 287: they are defeated, with great slaughter, [at Nevill's Cross]; birth of the Princess Margaret; success of Thomas Dagwurthe in Bretagne, against Charles de Bloys,—p. 288: the French are defeated (A.D. 1347); defeat of Charles de Bloys; results of the fight,—p. 289: capture of Charles de Bloys, at La Roche Darien; the eldest son of the King of France abandons the siege of Aquilon; successes of Henry, Earl of Derby,—p. 290: he takes Poitiers; flight of the King of France, and capture of Calais by King Edward,—p. 291: effect in England of the successes gained in France, A.D. 1348; spoils of the French dispersed throughout England; great fall of rain; followed by pestilence; a great pestilence, followed by murrain, A.D. 1349; full remission granted by the Pope, by reason thereof; the French attempt to regain Calais, by treachery,—p. 292: but are repulsed by King Edward; the Spanish fleet is defeated by King Edward, off Winchelse, A.D. 1350; Year of Jubilee; groats and half-groats made, A.D. 1351; rise in prices, in consequence,—p. 293: Statutes as to the wages of labourers; prowess of Sir Walter Bentele, and defeat of the French, in Bretagne, A.D. 1352; marriage of William, Duke of Zeland; drought in England, and consequent famine, A.D. 1353; Dukedom of Lancaster, and Earldom of Stafford,—p. 294: Statutes as to wages of labourers, and other matters; but ineffectual; a treaty for peace with France is entered into; but broken off, A.D. 1354; King Edward lays waste France; disturbances at Oxford, the town being placed under Interdict; the staple of wool removed from Flanders to certain places in England,—p. 295: contemplated combat between the Dukes of Lancaster and Bruneswyk; death of Philip VI, King of France (A.D. 1350); Prince Edward

is created Duke of Acquitaine, A.D. 1355; he arrives in Acquitaine, and invades France; winters in Gascoigne; King Edward again enters France,—p. 296: the French King retreats, and Edward returns to Calais, laying waste the country; Berwick taken by the Scots; King Edward returns; grant made by Parliament; birth of Prince Thomas of Wodestok; the Scots surrender Berwick, A.D. 1356; Edward de Baliol transfers the crown and kingdom of Scotland to Edward,—p. 297: continued successes of Prince Edward in France; attempts made by the Pope's envoys to establish peace,—p. 298: fulfilment of a chance prophecy made by them; victory gained over the French by Prince Edward, at Poitiers, 19th of September,—p. 299: capture of John, King of France; Prince Edward returns to Bordeaux; the Duke of Lancaster takes Rennes; Prince Edward returns to England, A.D. 1357; enters London, with his captives; the Pope sends envoys to treat for peace; but ineffectually; part of France subdued by the Company "Without a Head,"—p. 300: proposition made for the ransom of the King of France; liberation of David le Brus; the Interdict on Oxford withdrawn; tournaments at London; Parliament at London; fruitless discussions on peace, A.D. 1358; charges against the Mendicant Orders by the Archbishop of Armagh; the Bishop of Ely makes complaint to the Pope against the Lady Blanche de Wake,—p. 301: King Edward is offended by the Pope's action therein; the envoys of the Bishop of Ely seized and punished; Normandy and Bretagne laid waste by Robert Cnollis and others; Provence and other parts of France laid waste by one of the Companies; marriage of John of Gaunt to Blanche of Lancaster, A.D. 1359; propositions again made for peace, but ineffectually; King Edward crosses over to France,—p. 302: he divides his army into three parts; he makes terms with the Duke of Burgundy; the Norman fleet plunders the town of Winchelsee: resistance contemplated by the clergy; King Edward marches towards Paris, A.D. 1360; destroys the suburbs,—p. 303: the Londoners equip a fleet, and gain successes against the French; propositions made by the French for peace; but ineffectually; great losses in the English army, through tempest and cold; fresh propositions are made for peace; and are accepted,—p. 304: the preliminaries ratified by oath; French hostages given to the King of England; King Edward returns to England; the King of France is set at liberty; a Treaty [of Bretigny] is finally made,—p. 305: the Greater Chronicle of Walsingham referred to; a Parliament assembled, A.D. 1361; the Treaty is confirmed; and ratified by oath; the Great Company, in France; the White Company, in Lombardy, —p. 306: marriage of the Prince of Wales; the Prince receives the Principality of Acquitaine, A.D. 1362; concessions made on

occasion of a Jubilee; provisors of victuals abolished, except for the royal family; grant made to the King; Parliament at London, A.D. 1363; sumptuary laws enacted,—p. 307: but to no purpose; three Kings visit England; the King of France dies in London A.D. 1364; a great frost; the King of Cyprus is plundered; dearth of wheat; defeat and death of Charles de Bloys, A.D. 1364,—p. 308: death of the King of France; the Lombard merchants accused of dishonesty to the King; the contemplated marriage of Prince Edmund prevented by the King of the Romans; a son born to the Prince of Wales, A.D. 1365; marriage of the Princess Isabella; capture of part of Alexandria, by the King of Cyprus; birth of Prince Richard, at Bordeaux, A.D. 1366,—p. 309: the King of France requests the aid of King Edward against the Great Companies; the possessions of the King of France are restored; the Great Company proceeds against Pedro, King of Spain; Henry, the Bastard of Spain, is made King; Prince Edward proceeds to the aid of Pedro, A.D. 1367,—p. 310: receives large reinforcements; numerous supporters of Henry's cause; Prince Edward attacks the enemy; Bertrand Cleykyn taken prisoner,—p. 311: victory gained by Prince Edward, at Najara; great slaughter of the enemy; Pedro is restored to his kingdom, —p. 312: Bertrand Cleykyn is liberated; Pedro is treacherously slain by his brother; the Prince of Wales is poisoned; marriage of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, A.D. 1368; and death; the French invade the territory of the English King; and endeavour to deceive him,—p. 313: King Edward becomes sensible of their treachery, and refuses their presents; Simon, Archbishop of Canterbury, is made a Cardinal; Parliament at London, A.D. 1369; Edward again claims the French throne; inactivity of the Duke of Lancaster; prowęss of the Earl of Warwick,—p. 314: his premature death; the Pope wages war with the Milanese; prowess of John Hawkwode; dearth of wheat; death of the Duchess of Lancaster; grant made by Parliament; large sums borrowed by the King, A.D. 1370; a great army is sent over to France,—p. 315: dissensions arise among the leaders; disastrous results thereof; accusations made against Robert Knollis, but discredited; rebellion of the city of Limoges; vindictive punishment of its inhabitants,—p. 316: the Prince of Wales returns to England; Sir John Chaundos is slain; sorrow of the King of France thereat; grant made by Parliament, A.D. 1371; priests' incomes assessed; ecclesiastics deprived of certain offices of state; the Pope attempts to establish peace; but ineffectually; a Parliament at Winchester, A.D. 1372,—p. 317: the Duke of Lancaster and Earl of Cambridge return to England; two Cardinals sent to treat of peace, but to no purpose; naval victory of the English over the Flemings; siege of Rochelle by the

French; the Earl of Pembroke captured by the Spanish fleet; reasons assigned for this misfortune,—p. 318: King Edward attempts to relieve Rochelle; the Duke of Lancaster passes through France with his army (A.D. 1373); suffers losses in Auvergne; ambassadors sent by King Edward to the Pope, with certain requests; enactment in Parliament as to the elections in Cathedral churches; grant made,—p. 319: ransom of Sir Thomas Percy; return of the Duke of Lancaster; revolt of Acquitaine, A.D. 1374; death of William, Archbishop of Canterbury; conference at Bruges; and agreement made between the King of England and the Pope; the Duke of Lancaster and others treat of peace, in Flanders,—p. 320: the English are duped by the French, and the negotiations are finally broken off; successes of the Duke of Bretagne and his English allies, A.D. 1375; their successes arrested by news of the truce; the island of Constantyn restored to the French; plenary remission granted during the plague; the Earl of Pembroke is released from captivity,—p. 321: he dies, before reaching Calais; a Parliament at London, called the "Good Parliament," A.D. 1376; spirited conduct of Peter de la Mare, the Speaker; certain officers of state are removed; complaint made against Alice Perers; her great effrontery,—p. 322: charges against certain citizens of London; disgrace of the Speaker; death of Edward, Prince of Wales; his son, Richard, succeeds to his titles; excesses committed by the people of the Earl of Warwick against the Abbey of Evisham,—p. 323; the Duke of Lancaster resumes the government; unheard-of taxes granted by the Parliament; Statutes of the Good Parliament abrogated; rise of John Wyclif; his doctrines on matters of religious belief,—p. 324: support given to him; the Pope takes cognizance of his Conclusions; silence enjoined on him by the Archbishop of Canterbury; the Londoners shew hostility to the Duke of Lancaster, and burn his hostel in the Saveye,—p. 325: the Duke takes refuge with the Prince of Wales; the treason and punishment of John Menstrewurthe; knighthood conferred on Prince Richard; death of King Edward III.,—p. 326.

A.D. 1377. Succession of Richard of Bordeaux, son of Edward, Prince of Wales; release of Peter de la Mare; the French burn the town of Rye; four new Earls created, at the King's Coronation; the Scots burn Rokisburgh; the French seize the Isle of Wight; Hastings assaulted, Wynchelsee burnt; the Prior of Lewys taken prisoner by the French,—p. 327: Arde surrendered, by treason, to the French; death of Pope Gregory XI., and succession of Pope Urban VI.; an Anti-Pope elected; a fleet fitted out by John Philippot, citizen of London, A.D. 1371; Cherburgh leased to the King of England by the King of Navarre; Hugh Calverlee recovers the castle of Merk; murder of Robert Haule,

in Westminster Abbey, p. 328: Berwick Castle taken by the Scots, and retaken; the French King oppresses the nobles of Bretagne; the French defeated by Sir John de Harlestone, A.D. 1379; report of the desire of the Bretons to recall their Duke; certain privileges restored to the church of Westminster; taxes levied upon the rich, by order of Parliament,—p. 329: treacherous conduct of certain Flemings, and their punishment; the Duke of Bretagne returns to his country; a Genoese merchant treacherously slain by the Londoners; pestilence in the north of England, and incursions of the Scots; John Schakel is restored to liberty, on certain conditions; singular fidelity shown by his prisoner,—p. 330: the Count of Flanders expelled by his subjects; Sir John de Arundel is drowned at sea; excesses said to have been committed by his people; grant made by Parliament, A.D. 1380; the Count de Saint Pol marries the Lady Joan de Curtenay; Priors of the Cells of St. Alban's not to be collectors of the King's tenths,—p. 331: duel between Sir John Anneslee and Thomas Katerington; aid sent from England for the Duke of Bretagne; death of Charles V., King of France; civil war thereupon; the Scots ravage Cumberland and Westmoreland; the French take Winchelsee,—p. 332: discord between the Count of Flanders and his people; Coronation of Charles VI. of France; commotion thereon; R. Kyrkeby hanged, for murder of a Genoese merchant; a poll-tax exacted by Parliament; Thomas, Bishop of Exeter, deprived of the office of Treasurer, A.D. 1381,—p. 333: doctrines promulgated by John Wyclif; a Cardinal arrives in England, to negotiate a marriage between the King and the sister of the King of Bohemia; his extortion; expedition in aid of the King of Portugal against the King of Spain; peace is made, and the English return,—p. 334: rising of the rustics and lower classes, under Walter Tyler; he is slain by William Walwurthe; the "Great Chronicle" of Walsingham referred to; marriage of King Richard to Anne of Bohemia, A.D. 1382,—p. 335: Statute for the summary arrêst of insurgents; customs of wool granted, called the "Maltot"; Sir Richard Scrop made Chancellor; John Wrawe, priest, an insurgent, is drawn and hanged; an earthquake in England; the King appoints the Bishop of London Chancellor, in place of Scrop; grant made by Parliament, but conditionally on part of the Church; ordinance as to the Eve of the Nativity of St. Mary,—p. 336: the Bishop of Norwich undertakes a Crusade against the Schismatics and the Flemings; his successes in Flanders; the King of France collects a great force, and besieges Burburgh; the Bishop comes to terms with the King of France, and returns to England,—p. 337: defeat of the French by the men of Portsmouth and Dartmouth; the Scots take the

castle of Werk; Pope Urban flies to Naples; victory of the English fleet; grant made by Parliament; the King seizes the temporalities of the Bishop of Norwich; his disobedient officers are imprisoned; a truce with France is effected by the Duke of Lancaster, A.D. 1384,—p. 338: the Duke of Lancaster and Earl of Buckingham invade Scotland; charge made by a Carmelite Friar against the Duke of Lancaster; the Friar is put to death; Sir William le Zouche is accused of inventing the charge, but denies it; grant made by Parliament; a miracle, on St. Oswin's Day, at Newcastle-on-Tyne,—p. 339: the Scots obtain Berwick Castle; the Earl of Northumberland is condemned for neglect of the castle; but is pardoned, and recovers it; death of John Wyclif, A.D. 1385; alleged judgment inflicted on him, at his death; Sir Edward Bourser takes command of the people of Ghent; dissension between the King and the Duke of Lancaster,—p. 340: the dissension is, for a time, set at rest; earthquake, and conjunction of Jupiter and Saturn; a French army joins the Scots; the King of France prepares for the invasion of England; the King of England invades Scotland, and returns; Sir John Holand slays the son of the Earl of Stafford; the mother of the King and of Sir John Holand dies from grief; another earthquake; capture of Dam by the people of Ghent,—p. 341: the King of France besieges the place; he enters, and finds it empty; the King of Portugal defeats the Spaniards; the French fleet suffers from a tempest; several vessels are taken by the people of Calais; the King of Portugal is poisoned by the Queen; grant made by Parliament; new titles conferred by the King; his temporalities restored to the Bishop of Norwich,—p. 342: visit of the King of Armenia to England; the people of Ghent submit to the King of France; the King of France sends aid to Spain against the Duke of Lancaster, but the French are defeated; the Duke sets out for Spain,—p. 343: the Duke relieves Brest, and reaches Spain; a force sent to Calais, under Sir Henry Percy and others; Percy called "Hatspore," from his alacrity in attacking the Scots; he returns to England; alarm of the Londoners, on hearing rumours of the contemplated invasion; certain vessels are seized, as belonging to the enemy; reparation is made to the Genoese owners of them,—p. 344: nefarious conduct of the Genoese; capture of part of a wooden wall, made for protection of the army of the King of France; Parliament at London; preparations against the French; the French are dispersed by tempests; they return home; the Earl of Oxford created Duke of Ireland, —p. 345: the Chancellor is found guilty of treason, and deprived of office; the King takes him back into favour; a plot is formed against the lives of the accusers, but they escape; a grant made

by Parliament; money raised by the King, for support of the Duke of Ireland's claims,—p. 346: Michael atte Pool is retained, with some others, in the King's favour; the Bishop of Ely appointed Chancellor; a new Treasurer is also appointed; the Earls of Arundel and Nottingham take command of the English forces, and defeat a combined fleet, A.D. 1387; they destroy the French fortifications at Brest; bad influence of the royal favourites upon the King,—p. 347: Walter Disse, a Carmelite Friar, is entrusted with the sale of certain privileges by the Pope; an Austin Friar is created a Papal chaplain, and becomes a Lollard; principal supporters of the Lollards,—p. 348: sacrilegious conduct of Laurence de Saint Martin; Robert de Veer repudiates his wife, and marries a woman of low station; the King still shews his favour; the King retires into Wales, with the Duke of Ireland; plot against the lives of the Duke of Gloucester and his supporters,—p. 349: certain parties summoned in support of the King; answer of the Sheriffs to the King's enquiries; certain questions put to the Justiciars by the King, at Nottingham; with the answers,—p. 350: the Justiciars set their seals to certain contemplated indictments,—p. 352: forces are raised, in support of the King; the Duke of Gloucester endeavours to assuage the King's anger; Michael atte Pool is rebuked by the Bishop of London; the King rebukes the Bishop; increased rancour of both parties; the Duke of Gloucester's supporters call the King to account,—p. 353: the Earl of Northumberland is sent to arrest the Earl of Arundel, but hesitates to do so; the Earl of Arundel escapes; the Lords arrange to hold a personal interview with the King; they charge certain parties with treason; the Duke of Ireland raises forces in Cheshire and Wales; his forces are routed, and he takes to flight,—p. 354: the nobles proceed, with their troops, to London; the King affects to treat their movements with indifference; determination shown by the Lords; who state their complaints to the King; he promises to meet them at Westminster, but changes his design; he finally meets them, and they state their demands; nobles banished from the Court, at their demand; certain persons arrested,—p. 355: Parliament at London; punishments inflicted on the adversaries of the Lords; victories gained at sea by the Earl of Arundel,—p. 356: the French invade the territory of the Duke de Geldres; the Scots invade England; Sir Henry Percy and his brother are taken prisoners; the Scots retire from England; a Parliament at Cambridge; the Greater Chronicle of Walsingham alluded to; Sir John Holland made Earl of Huntingdon,—p. 357: Episcopal changes, and promotions; the King asserts, before his Council, his right to govern for himself, A.D. 1389; William Wycham is appointed Chancellor; the Duke of Gloucester and Earl of War-

wick are dismissed from the Council,—p. 358; the Duke is maligned, but exculpates himself; a truce of three years made with France; the Scots are included in the treaty; the Pope appoints a Jubilee, to be held at certain intervals; death of Michael atte Pool; the Lollard priests claim the power of ordination,—p. 359: death of Pope Urban VI.; the Duke of Lancaster returns to England; early misfortunes in his Spanish campaign; death of John, Earl of Pembroke, at a tournament, A.D. 1390; Parliament at London; enactments therein; John, Duke of Lancaster, created Duke of Acquitaine,—p. 360: Adam, the English Cardinal, is restored to his rank by Pope Boniface IX.; declaration as to Bulls of Plenary Indulgence; exploits of Henry, Earl of Derby, in Lithuania; propositions for peace made by the King of France, A.D. 1391; King Richard demands horses and money of the Abbeys,—p. 361: the English are recalled from the Court of Rome; the Pope sends a Nuncio to England, who expostulates against certain Statutes; favourable answer given by the King; the Duke of Gloucester is compelled, by adverse weather, to return to England; Parliament at London,—p. 362: slight concession made to the Pope's demands; grants made by Parliament; the Earl of Northumberland made Warden of the March of Scotland; a dolphin seen at London Bridge, on Christmas Day, A.D. 1392; the Duke of Lancaster crosses over to France to treat of peace, and returns with a truce for one year; deliberation of the peers and commons at Stamford,—p. 363: a loan to the King is refused by the citizens of London; anger manifested by him thereat; the citizens resolve to submit themselves to the King's mercy; the King of France is attacked with madness; the former Duke of Ireland dies in poverty at Louvain,—p. 364: grant made in Parliament, at Winchester; the King's Bench and Chancery removed from London to York; Aubrey de Vere made Earl of Oxford; new appointments made William Scrop buys the Isle of Man; unsuccessful attempt to conclude peace with France; Henry Percy, the younger, Warden of Bordeaux; great inundation at Bury and Newmarket; Cherbourgh restored to the King of Navarre,—p. 365: Amurath of Turkey besieges Constantinople; Parliament at London; conditional grant; a truce of four years concluded with France; death of Constance, Duchess of Lancaster, and of the Countess of Derby; death of Queen Anne; the Earl of Arundel assaulted by the King at her funeral, in Westminster Abbey; death of the Duchess of York,—p. 366: the Irish in England are ordered to return to their own country; falling off of the revenues from Ireland; the King crosses over to Ireland; the rebellious Irish are compelled to submit; the King is requested to return, in consequence of the designs of the Lollards,—p. 367: Parliament at

Dublin; Parliament at London; grant made to the King, for his expenses in Ireland; the Lollards promulgate their doctrines; names of their principal supporters; the King returns to England, and threatens the supporters of the Lollards,—p. 368: piracy committed by the subjects of the Queen of Denmark; misfortunes of the men of Norfolk; extortionate demands of the Archbishop of Canterbury on the clergy; obituary for the year, —p. 369: the King orders the body of Robert de Veer to be buried at Colne, in Essex; the Duke of Lancaster recalled from Acquitaine, A.D. 1396: he marries Katharine de Swynford; the Pope requests the King's aid against the Lollards,—p. 370: interview between the Kings of England and France; oath made by the King of France; particulars of the interview,—p. 371: a chapel to be erected on the site of the interview; visits interchanged between the Kings; the daughter of the King of France given in marriage to the King of England; the Princess is conducted to Calais; the King of France dines with the King of England, and they then separate,—p. 372: Richard marries the French Princess; great expenditure of the King of England; he loses part of his baggage in a storm; obituary of the year: death of Thomas, Abbot of St. Alban's; John Moot succeeds as Abbot; he receives benediction from Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury, —p. 373: the issue of the Duke of Lancaster by Katharine de Swynford, is legitimized; the King recalls the banished Justiciars from Ireland; rumour that the King has been chosen Emperor; his singular conduct thereon; the Duke of Gloucester and the Earl of Warwick are suddenly seized and imprisoned; the Earl of Arundel is imprisoned,—p. 374: reason asserted by the King for this measure; the King suborns accusers of the imprisoned peers; malefactors from Chester summoned to the King's aid; Parliament at London,—p. 375: at demand of the Speakers of Parliament, the charters of pardon are annulled; the Archbishop of Canterbury is banished; Roger de Waldene appointed Archbishop; the Earl of Arundel is condemned to death,—p. 376: his rebuke to the Earl Marshal and the Earl of Kent; his execution; the King is conscience-stricken, upon the Earl's death; the multitude venerate the Earl as a Martyr; the King orders his place of burial to be concealed; the Earl of Warwick confesses his criminality; he is banished to the Isle of Man,—p. 377: the Duke of Gloucester, by the King's order, is suffocated; the King prevails on Parliament to delegate its powers, A.D. 1398; he orders the Rolls of Parliament to be altered; he creates new titles,—p. 378: adds to his shield the arms of Edward the Confessor; bestows part of the lands of the Duke of Gloucester and others; proceeds against the Lord de Cobham; proceedings annulled, of the Parliament of the 11th year of his reign; Papal

sanction thereof; the Duke of Hereford accuses the Duke of Norfolk; and a duel is arranged,—p. 379: the King interferes, and banishes the Duke of Hereford for ten years; the Duke of Norfolk for life; Henry Beaufort made Bishop of Lincoln; the Bishop of Lincoln refuses translation; the King consults the clergy as to arbitrary translations made by the Pope; a Nuncio from the Pope demands the repeal of certain Statutes; the laurels wither, and revive, A.D. 1399,—p. 380: prodigy near Bedford; the Earl of March is slain in Ireland; the King resolves to avenge his death; his rapacity renders him odious; the Pope aids in obtaining contributions for the Emperor of Constantinople; death of the Duke of Lancaster,—p. 381: the King changes the sentence of the Duke of Hereford to that of perpetual banishment; the King borrows large sums of money; he extorts money, on certain pretences, from 17 Counties; other acts of tyranny, on part of King Richard,—p. 382: the King embarks for Ireland; how attended; his intention to supplant Parliament; treasures carried with him to Ireland,—p. 383: at first, he is successful in Ireland; Henry, Duke of Lancaster, prepares to invade England; his adherents; he hovers about the coasts; the Duke of York takes counsel how to oppose the Duke of Lancaster; the members of his Council take to flight; the Duke of Lancaster lands, and is joined by many nobles,—p. 384: certain members of the Council are taken, and executed; King Richard, with certain of his nobles, returns to England; he determines not to fight, but dismisses his household, and takes to flight; offers to resign the crown, on certain conditions; surrenders to the Duke of Lancaster, —p. 385: is placed in the Tower of London; a Parliament at Westminster; Richard formally resigns the crown; expresses a desire that the Duke of Lancaster shall succeed him; articles of accusation read against him; the Duke of Lancaster claims the crown; form of the claim,—p. 386: his claim is admitted; a Parliament proclaimed; his deposition is announced to King Richard; his answer thereto,—p. 387.

Thomas, second son of King Henry, made Steward of England; children of King Henry; Coronation of Henry IV. at Westminster; account of the holy ointment, used at his Coronation; the King's eldest son created Prince of Wales; the Scots destroy the castle of Werk; death of the Duke of Norfolk,—p. 388: his complicity in the murder of Thomas, Duke of Gloucester; death of the Duchess of Gloucester; conspiracy of certain nobles to slay the King, A.D. 1400; he is informed thereof, and escapes; the nobles retire to Cirencester,—p. 389: they are taken, and beheaded; the Earl of Huntingdon flies from London; he is taken prisoner, and executed at Pleschi; the Earl of Gloucester is executed; the life of the Bishop of Carlisle is spared,—p. 390: the

late King said to have starved himself to death; he is buried at Langeley; the King ravages Scotland, and returns; rebellion in Wales, under Owen de Gleyndor; the King ravages part of Wales, and returns; the Emperor of Constantinople visits England, and is honourably entertained; Statute in Parliament, enjoining punishment of the Lollards, A.D. 1401; a false priest burnt at Smethefeld,—p. 391: the son of Bajazet is slain in battle; the Emperor of Constantinople leaves England; Queen Isabella returns to France; damage inflicted by Owen Gleyndor; the King escapes a plot to maim, or slay, him; death of John Moot, Abbot of St. Alban's; succession of Abbot William de Heywurth; appearance of a comet,—p. 392: Lord Reginald Grey is taken by Gleyndor; ineffectual conspiracy against the King; promoted by a priest, who is taken, and executed; the former Prior of Lawne is similarly punished, for being privy to the plot,—p. 393: a Minorite Friar executed for treason; appearance of the Devil, at Danbury in Essex; the church suffers from lightning; eight Minorite Friars executed; the men of Hereford defeated by Gleyndor, and Edmund Mortimer taken prisoner; atrocities practised on the bodies of the slain,—p. 394: marriage of a daughter of King Henry; Gleyndor prevails against the English, by magic devices, it is surmised; death of Edmund, Duke of York; the Scots are defeated by the Earl of Northumberland; Scottish nobles captured, and slain; Conclusions put forth by the Lollards,—p. 395: Sir Louis de Clifford, a supporter of the Lollards, informs against them; marriage of Edmund de Mortimer to the daughter of Gleyndor; sinister event at the birth of Gleyndor; grant made by Parliament; Henry marries the widow of the Duke of Bretagne, A.D. 1403; marvellous appearances near Bedford,—p. 397: Henry Percy, the younger, rises against the King; and is joined by the Earl of Worcester; grounds alleged by them for their rising; the King's answer to their complaints,—p. 398: he makes offer of a personal interview; Percy hastens to Shrewsbury, to join Gleyndor; he gives out that King Richard is still alive,—p. 399: the Earl of Dunbar instigates the King to immediate action; speech of Henry Percy, on the King's approach; the King offers terms to Henry Percy; ambiguous conduct of Sir Thomas Percy,—p. 400: fierceness of the combat; danger of the King; Prince Henry is wounded in the face; Sir Henry Percy is slain; Douglas is taken prisoner; and many others,—p. 401: numbers of the slain; executions at Shrewsbury; the Earl of Northumberland is stopped in his march; he returns to Werkworth; truce with France,—p. 402: the Earl of Northumberland meets the King at York; and is placed in safe keeping; the King is prevented by want of means from proceeding against the Welch; proposition for despoiling

the Bishops of their horses and money; grant made by the clergy; the Bretons burn Plymouth; successes of the English Western fleet,—p. 403: the French plunder the Isle of Wight; but are put to flight; the Earl of Northumberland is restored to his dignities, A.D. 1404; grant in Parliament; unusual nature thereof; the French demand tribute from the Isle of Wight, in the name of King Richard and Queen Isabella; which is refused, —p. 404: the French land at Dartmouth, and their leader is slain; prowess of the English women; many of the French slain, through ignorance of their tongue; the King rewards the peasants, and retains the French prisoners; conditional grant by the clergy, p. 405: Translation of the body of Saint John of Bridelingtone; ravages committed by Owen Gleyndor; the Bishop of St. Asaph joins him; capture of English ships by Bretons and Flemings; the Countess of Oxford spreads a report that King Richard is alive; and distributes his cognizances; report from Scotland to a like effect,—p. 406: Serle, a former chamberlain of King Richard, aids the impostors; the Countess is imprisoned, and Serle is hanged; the Earl of Northumberland obeys a summons to Pontefract; Sir William de Clifford brings Serle thither; confession of Serle as to the death of the Duke of Gloucester; and the alleged existence of King Richard,—p. 407: his detention by Sir William Clifford; particulars of his execution; Parliament at Coventry,—p. 408: proposal by the Knights of Parliament to confiscate the property of the Church for the King's necessities; altercation between the clerks and the laymen; the Archbishop of Canterbury threatens Sir John Cheyne, the Speaker; the Archbishop appeals to the King,—p. 409: the Archbishop censures the Knights of Parliament for their cupidity,—p. 410: he is supported by certain temporal peers; in return for his support on another occasion; the Knights of Parliament ask pardon of the Archbishop; other proceedings in Parliament; great inundation in Kent,—p. 411: similar inundations in Zealand, Flanders, and Holland; death of William Wykham; his foundations at Winchester and Oxford; death of Pope Boniface IX.; accession of Innocent VII.; the sons of the Earl of March stolen, but restored, A.D. 1405; Lady Despencer seized, and placed in confinement; the Peers decline making a grant to the King; a similar proposition is made, with the like result,—p. 412: the Archbishop of York and Earl Marshal rise, for the redress of grievances; support given to the Archbishop; the Earl of Westmoreland expostulates; the Archbishop's answer; the Earl proposes a conference, —p. 413: credulity of the Archbishop; he and the Earl Marshal are treacherously seized by the Earl of Westmoreland; they are beheaded at York,—p. 414: the Archbishop is venerated as a martyr; visits to his tomb are forbidden; disposal of the remains

of the Earl Marshal; the King marches against the Earl of Northumberland; the King of Denmark takes the King's daughter in marriage; the Earl of Northumberland flies to Scotland,—p. 415: Berwick Castle is surrendered to the King; he captures Alnewyk and other Castles; misfortunes overtake the King in Wales, through great inundations; he demands succour of the clergy; French forces arrive in aid of Owen Gleyndor; the French experience great losses,—p. 416: Roystone burnt; the Earl of Arundel marries the daughter of the King of Portugal; the King's daughter is proclaimed Queen of Denmark; death of Roger de Waldene, Bishop of London, A.D. 1406; his varying fortunes; the slayers of the Archbishop of York are excommunicated; prolonged sitting of Parliament,—p. 417: the Earl of Northumberland flies to Wales; civil war in Scotland, and truce with England, on land; the son of the King of Scotland is taken at sea, and delivered to King Henry; great losses of the French at sea,—p. 418: the Pope bestows the Archbishopric of York against the King's will; the young Queen of Denmark is escorted to Leyden; death of Henry le Spencer, Bishop of Norwich; the Duke of York restored to his former rank; marriage of the Earl of Kent; death of Pope Innocent VII.; compact of the Roman Cardinals for putting an end to the schism,—p. 419: election of Pope Gregory XII.; oath made by him, in conformity with the above agreement; four ships of Lynn are swallowed up by a whirlpool, on their voyage to Bordeaux,—p. 420: grant made by the laity to the King; misfortunes overtake the Duke of Orleans in Gascoigne, A.D. 1407; a punishment for his extreme vanity; great capture of French ships; death of the Bishop of Salisbury; statements circulated, that King Richard is alive; the inventor of the report punished; great pestilence,—p. 421: disastrous effects thereof in London and the country towns; ineffectual negotiations between the Pope and the Anti-Pope; captures by the French, and by the garrison of Calais; defeat of the King of Naples by the supporters of Pope Gregory; death of Sir Robert Knollis; bridge built by him over the Medewey; and other benefactions,—p. 422: death of Guy de Mone, Bishop of St. David's; promotions to vacant bishoprics; the Prince of Wales takes the castle of Aberustwythe; Parliament at London; severity of the winter; mortality among various kinds of birds, A.D. 1408; the Earl of Northumberland and Sir Thomas de Bardolf return to England,—p. 423: they are defeated by the Sheriff of York, and the Earl is slain; misfortunes of the family; indignities offered to the Earl's remains; the Bishop of Bangor taken prisoner; informers in the North of England; the King proceeds to the North; causes the Abbot of Hales to be hanged,—p. 424 a Council held at London; in reference to breach of his compact

by Pope Gregory; the Duke of Orleans slain; the Duke of Burgundy imprisoned, but released on condition of taking Calais; great fall of rain; the Earl of Kent is wounded in Bretagne; and dies; a Cardinal arrives in England, to represent the bad faith of Pope Gregory; the King of France takes cognizance of such representations, and determines to recognize neither claimant of the Papacy,—p. 425: the Cardinal is handsomely entertained in England; persons chosen to appear at the General Council of Pisa, A.D. 1409; English embassy sent to Pope Gregory; Letter to him from the King of England,—p. 426: the object of the King's letter; Letter to the Cardinals, from the King of England; election, at Pisa, of Pope Alexander V., A.D. 1410,—p. 427: privileges granted by Pope Alexander to the Priory of St. Bartholomew, in London; promotions to office; a layman burnt, in London, for heresy; Prince Henry attempts to convert him,—p. 428: at the last moment, he refuses to recant; attempt, in Parliament, to despoil the Church; representation as to the vast pecuniary resources of the Church; fallacy of such representations; which are opposed by Prince Henry; attempt to render the clergy amenable to secular jurisdiction,—p. 429: vain attempt for amelioration of the Statute against the Lollards; vain attempt by the King to obtain a grant for life; a grant of one fifteenth; death of the Earl of Somerset; the town and Abbey of St. Omer burnt; abominable provision made there for the capture of Calais,—p. 430: the town and Abbey designedly burnt; death of Pope Alexander V.; accession of John XXIII.; the people of Prussia harass the King of Cracow; he defeats them,—p. 431: shews leniency to them; dysentery at Bordeaux; and consequences thereof; Sir John Prendergest and William Longe clear the seas of pirates; but are persecuted, in consequence; Visitatorial rights asserted over Oxford; war between the Duke of Burgundy and the Duke of Orleans,—p. 432: ambassadors sent to England by the Duke of Burgundy; advice given to him by the King of England; a force of English is sent to Paris, and is welcomed by the Duke of Burgundy; the English defeat the Orleanists near Seynclo,—p. 433: the English, for a sum of money, give up their prisoners to the King of France; Parlialiament at London; envoys sent to England by the party of the Duke of Orleans, A.D. 1412,—p. 434: powers given to the envoys; particulars of their offers,—p. 435: their demands; price of pepper; the King sends aid to the Duke of Orleans, and withdraws his support from the Duke of Burgundy; the English lay waste Normandy,—p. 436: conference of the Duke of Clarence with the Duke of Orleans; Sir John le Blount defeats the Marshal of France; the King is seized with illness at Eltham; but

recovers, A.D. 1413; he dies, and is buried at Canterbury,—p. 437.

Henry, son of Henry IV., is crowned (as Henry V.); great storm at that time,—p. 437: virtuous conduct of the new King; Parliament at London; the Duke of Clarence returns from Acquitaine; Norwich partly burnt; funeral of King Henry IV.; decree as to the Feasts of St. George and St. Dunstan; death of Alexander, Bishop of Norwich; threatenings of the Lollards,—p. 438: Sir John Oldcastle, their leader, by courtesy called "Lord "Cobham"; charges in Convocation against Sir John Oldcastle; representations made to the King thereon,—p. 439: the matter is postponed for a time; the Archbishop of Canterbury attempts to cite Oldcastle; Oldcastle declines to be served with the citation; the Archbishop causes him to be publicly cited,—p. 440; he is excommunicated as contumacious; and is again cited; Oldcastle is taken in custody, and appears before the tribunal; he refuses absolution offered by the Archbishop, and reads a profession of his faith; the Archbishop puts further questions to him,—p. 441: he refuses to make further answer, and the Archbishop warns him; the Archbishop expounds the doctrines of the Church on certain points; and calls on him to make answer thereon; Oldcastle is again summoned,—p. 442; he refuses to ask absolution of the Church; he is called upon to answer the charges; his answer as to the Sacrament of the Eucharist, and other matters of faith,—p. 443: as to adoration of the holy Cross; Oldcastle warns the bystanders against his judges; the Archbishop again exhorts him; but to no purpose; the Archbishop adjudges him to be guilty of heresy,—p. 444: the Archbishop obtains further time for him, from the King, in order that he may relent; he escapes from the Tower, and summons his friends to his aid; a pestilence in England; the body of King Richard II. is removed from Langelee to Westminster,—p. 446: conspiracy of the Lollards, to seize or slay the King, who is warned, and escapes; the Lollards meet in St. Giles's Fields; the King takes measures to defeat their designs,—p. 447: the leaders are informed of this; alleged designs of the servants and apprentices of London; the Lollards take to flight; proof of the popularity of their opinions; capture and execution of many followers of Oldcastle,—p. 448: W. Murlee, of Dunstaple, a follower of Oldcastle, is hanged and burnt; his alleged designs against St. Alban's; other followers of Oldcastle similarly punished; prophecy in reference to them; death of Thomas de Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury; and promotions thereon,—p. 449: Henry Percy is received into the King's favour; and restored to the Earldom of Northumberland; envoys from the King of France, and the Duke of Burgundy; envoys sent to them;

the King begins the foundation of three Monasteries; Rule of the Brigittines,—p. 450: the ambassadors give notice of the treachery of the French; great Council held in London; representatives of the Clergy at the Council of Constance; the Earl of Warwick accompanies them; the three claimants of the Papacy resign their pretensions,—p. 452: Pope John suddenly leaves Constance, A.D. 1415; notwithstanding his promise, he refuses to return; the Duke of Austria screens him; but is compelled by the Emperor to give him up; Pope John is presented in his disguise, imprisoned, and his property plundered,—p. 453: Sentence of deprivation against the three claimants of the Papacy, promulgated by the Council of Constance,—p. 454: the King prepares for war with France,—p. 455: arrival of an embassy from France; its proposals are rejected; conspiracy, while the King is at Southampton; names of the conspirators; treachery of Sir Henry le Scroop,—p. 456; he is joined by the Earl of Cambridge and Sir Thomas Grey; they are executed; the King's clemency commended,—p. 457: rising of the Lollards; Oldcastle utters threats of vengeance; preparations alleged to have been made by him for the rising,—p. 458: he retires to his concealment; William Cleydone, a Lollard, burnt; King Henry lands in Normandy; besieges Harfleur; it surrenders; particulars of the surrender,—p. 459: negotiations thereon,—p. 460: the surrender is accepted; the Earl of Dorset is appointed Captain; deaths in the English army, from dysentery,—p. 461: death of Richard Courtney, Bishop of Norwich, and of Michael, Earl of Suffolk; other nobles, through illness, return to England; the King proceeds towards Calais; sufferings of the English, on their march,—p. 462: the French destroy the bridges on their route; the armies encamp near each other; contrast between the armies; threats of the French,—p. 463: King Henry marshals his troops; the French prepare for battle; King Henry exhorts his troops,—p. 464: the French meet the advance of the English,—p. 465: successes of the English archers; personal valour of King Henry; the French are utterly defeated,—p. 466: numbers of the French nobility slain; French nobles captured; losses of the English; the English baggage pillaged, and the English crown captured; great expectations of the French therefrom; King Henry returns thanks to God,—p. 467: his triumphal reception in London; obsequies, in London, of the Duke of York and others, slain at Azincourt; successes of the Earl of Dorset; successes of the King of Portugal; news of a victory near Harfleur, A.D. 1416; dolphins in the Thames,—p. 468; fight between the Earl of Dorset and the Count of Armagnac; the English baggage plundered; the Count of Armagnac demands the surrender of the English; the Earl of Dorset answers

in the negative; the English again defeat the French alleged impiety of the French,—p. 469: Genoese halfpence prohibited in England; the Emperor visits London; honours paid to him by King Henry; the Duke of Holland visits England; a succession of thunder and lightning; the French collect a fleet,—p. 470: the Duke of Bedford captures some French ships, and others are wrecked; alliance between the Emperor and the King of England; King Henry shews readiness to treat of peace; effects a reconciliation between the Emperor and the Duke of Burgundy; the Emperor leaves England; Benedict Wlleman executed; Parliament at London,—p. 471: the Earl of Dorset created Duke of Exeter, and honoured with a grant; grant to the King by the Clergy; alleged plot against the King, A.D. 1417; tracts of the Lollards distributed in certain towns; Resolution of the Council of Constance, for the election of a Pope,—p. 472: particulars of the election of a Pope, by order of the Council of Constance; the Electors are shut up in Conclave,—p. 475: the Cardinal Colonna is chosen Pope, as Martin V.; ceremonies of his consecration, —p. 476: his Coronation; procession through the City of Constance; the Jews of the city meet the Pope; King Henry lands at Touque, in Normandy, and captures the place; he takes cognizance of the case of a monk, who has been despoiled,—p. 477: proclamation made, that the religious shall be exempt from spoliation; frauds resulting thereupon; proclamation against other acts of violence; the King marches to Caen, and lays siege to it, —p. 478: the French propose burning the Abbey of St. Stephen; a monk of the place gives notice to the Duke of Clarence,—p. 479: the Duke captures the Monastery, and rescues it from destruction; the Monastery is found to command the town; the place is assaulted; valour of Sir Edmund Spring,—p. 480: his dreadful death; the Duke of Clarence scales the walls; the English capture the town; terms are granted to the garrison of the castle,—p. 481; the French make an ungrateful return for the King's generosity; Bayeux surrenders to the English; alleged treaty of Sir John Oldcastle with the Scots; the Scots besiege Rokesburgh; the Dukes of Exeter and Bedford hasten to meet the Scots; who take to flight,—p. 482: the Duke of Exeter's opinion of his troops; Oldcastle conceals himself at St. Alban's; indications of his opinions found in his place of concealment; hatred of the Lollards for the effigies and names of the Saints,—p. 483: successes of King Henry in France; death of the Bishop of Salisbury, at Constance; siege of the town of Falaise, and capture; the castle is surrendered; Sir John Oldcastle is captured, and wounded, —p. 484: Parliament summoned, in aid of the King; Oldcastle is brought to London, by Lord Powis; he is brought before Par-

liament; his address to Parliament; the Duke of Bedford commands him to answer the charges made against him,—p. 485; he alleges that King Richard is still living; he is put to death; his last words; surrender of Avranches, in Normandy, A.D. 1418; other places besieged; King Henry at Caen; the Duke of Exeter sets out for Normandy; the Count of Armagnac and others are murdered, by the partisans of the Duke of Burgundy,—p. 486; siege and capture of Louviers; siege of Evreux; three victories granted to the King, for his piety; particulars of those victories, —p. 487: A.D. 1419, capture of Pontoise by the Captal de la Bouche; great stores found there,—p. 488.

YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ;

A THOMA WALSINGHAM,

QUONDAM MONACHO MONASTERII S. ALBANI,

CONSCRIPTUM.

YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ;

A THOMA WALSINGHAM,

QUONDAM MONACHO MONASTERII S. ALBANI,

CONSCRIPTUM.

Dedication, to Henry the Fifth, King of England.

Magnificentissimo et illustrissimo Francorum et Anglorum Regi, Henrico, Normanniæ Conquæstori, Principi Walliæ serenissimo, Hiberniæ et Aquitanniæ Domino, Dei gratia, semper et ubique Victori, suorum minimus oratorum, Frater Thomas de [1] Walsigham, monachus Monasterii Sancti Albani, Anglorum [2] Protomartyris, humili cum recommendatione, salutem in Eo Qui dat salutem regibus.—

Cogitanti mihi, inter studia contemplationis claustralis, quantis virtutum dotibus, ac victoriarum titulis, Deus Omnipotens vos extulerit, quantis specialium gratiarum donis cumulaverit, ut hostes etiam vestram sapientiam prædicent, discretionem mirentur, et ubique commendent, justitiam laudum præconiis celebrent, fateor, spirituali jocunditate et interiori gaudio sum repletus atque refectus, multo suavius quam ab epulis exquisitis.

Sed inter hæc oritur in mente mea quoddam nubilum, quod obfuscat conceptum cordis mei jubilum, dum vereri cogor gentis morem solitum, quæ multotiens parvipendit etiam emissum votum [3] publicum, et solemne

---

[1] Sic in MS.

[2] *Prothomartiris* in MS.

[3] *pupplicum* in MS.

præstitum juramentum. Dumque memor fui dierum antiquorum, recolens fraudes, facinora, factiones, et scelera, commissa per hostes, anxiatus est in me spiritus meus, et in me turbatum est cor meum, et pene defecit in dolore vita mea: sciens quod cras poterunt fieri turpia, sicut heri, et, metuens ne forte quovismodo vestra circumveniretur innocentia, scrutatus sum in mente mea, quid maxime vestræ saluti suffragari posset, conversanti inter tot pericula.

Tandem occurrit, inter plurima, scribere vestræ Celsitudini, quam præcordialiter diligit anima mea, quicquam, per quod tutior, simul et cautior, esse possit: teste nempe [1] Poeta,

"Omnia vincit amor,"—

qui id in me efficit, ut non verear, licet inculto et impolito sermone, tam sapienti, tam glorioso, Principi balbutiendo proferre quæ mente tractavi, et vestræ Serenitati utcunque pandere quæ pro salute regia corde concepi. Hinc est, quod brevem tabulam compilare studui, quæ facit a principio Conquæstus Neustriæ per Normannos usque ad Conquæstum Angliæ per eosdem. Quam deduxi usque ad tempus, quo vestra [2] Majestas eandem Normanniam, abalienatam, contra fas et justitiam, a vestris progenitoribus, per annos circiter [3] ducentos et viginti, potenter et victoriose sub jugum venire compulit, et pro votis regaliter ordinavit.

Proinde, Domine mi, Rex inclyte, vobis in hoc opusculo conspicienda porrigo gesta præterita, bella varia, paces pactas mutuo, fœdera violata, firmata juramento, promissiones, sponsiones, oblationes factas antecessoribus vestris sub dolo, hostium deceptiones et [4] hypocrisim, et quicquid hostis adinvenire potuit exquisita calliditate,

---

[1] Virgil. *Ecl.* x. l. 69.

[2] *Magestas* in MS.

[3] Allusion is made to the submission of Normandy to Philip Augustus, King of France, in the year 1205.

[4] *ypocrisim* in MS.

per quod seducere posset nobile genus vestrum. Igitur, quia nullum magis decet plura scire quam principem, cujus doctrina maxime subjectis prodesse potest, hunc libellum, si placeat, inspiciendum vestræ Celsitudini, ego, pauper et modicus, devotus [1] obtuli; imponens illi nomen "Ypodigma Neustriæ," eo quod prædemonstret præcipue casus vel eventus illius patriæ, a tempore Rollonis, primi Ducis, usque ad annum felicis regni vestri sextum; quod Deus Omnipotens, pro sua magna pietate, ubique pacificet, et in omni prosperitate conservet. Amen.

[1] *optuli* in MS.

Ypodigma Neustriæ.

De consuetudine Danorum antiquitus frequentata.

Ancient law of the Danes.

Olim mos erat in Dacia, cum repleta esset terra hominibus, ut, sancita lege per reges illius terræ, cogerentur juniores de propriis sedibus emigrare. Quæ gens [1] idcirco multiplicabatur nimium, quoniam, luxui excessive dedita, multis mulieribus jungebatur. Nam pater adultos filios cunctos a se pellebat, præter unum, quem hæredem sui juris relinquebat. Quæ lex per multorum tempora regum mansit inconvulsa, quoadusque Lothbrocus Rex patri successit in regno; quem prædicant de stirpe Gothorum processisse. Ex quorum progenie jactitant Trojanos fuisse progressos, et [2] Antenorem ab urbis exterminio, cum duobus millibus et quingentis viris, ob proditionem illius ab eo perpetratam, evasisse, ac per multimodos amfractus ponti Germaniam appulisse, ac in Dacia expost regnasse, eamque, a quodam vocato "Danao," suæ stirpis rege, "Danemarchiam" nuncupasse.

Danemarchia, so called by Antenor, the Trojan.

Bier Iron Side driven from his home.

Igitur Rex Lothbrocus, excitus patrum legibus, sorte cogente, cum ingenti juvenum agmine, filium suum, nomine "Bier [3] Costæ Ferreæ," abdicat a suo regno, cum pædagogo suo, "Hastingo" nomine, viro per omnia fraudulentissimo, ut, externa petens regna, alias sedes sibi armis adquireret. Qui ideo "Costa Ferrea" vocabatur, quia, vehementissimis infectus veneficiis suæ matris, licet in acie staret inermis, omnem vim armorum illæsus sperneret.

Why so called.

Hasting accompanies him.

Hastingus ergo, a patria cum suo adolescente sic proscriptus, de finitimis provinciis milites, animo leves et belli cupidos, congregavit; Deo suo, pro thure, hu-

---

[1] *iccirco* in MS.
[2] *Anthenorem* in MS.
[3] *Costa Ferrea* in ed. Camden.

manum sanguinem delibavit, cujus cruorem libaminis omnes unanimiter potaverunt; et, vento flante secundo, [1] Vermendensem aggrediuntur portum; exsilientesque de navibus, totum Vulcano tradunt illico Comitatum. Sancti quoque Quintini Monasterium ferali comburunt rabie, de Christiano populo [2] nefarium ludibrium exercentes. [3] Nevionensis namque Præsul, "Emmo" nomine, cum suis diaconibus, eorum gladiis obtruncatur, fitque cædes in plebe, proprio viduata pastore. Sacrifice of human blood. Ravages committed by the Danes.

Dehinc fluvium Sequanam ingrediuntur, et apud Gemeticum obsidionem componunt. Qui locus jure vocatur "Gemeticus"; quia, velut gemma in [4] annulo, sic rutilat situ loci et fructuum ubertate. Hic Clodovei, Francorum Regis, tempore, a Beato Philberto, opitulante [5] Batilde Regina, constructus, in tanto incremento adolevit, [6] ut in nongentorum monachorum numero ejus quantitas suppleretur. Hujus loci monachi, vel incolæ, comperientes adventum paganorum, fuga lapsi, quædam sub terra occulentes, quædam secum asportantes, evaserunt. Pagani, locum reperientes vacuum, Monasterium Sanctæ Mariæ, Sanctique Petri, et cuncta ædificia, igne comburunt, in solitudinem omnia redigentes. Siege of Jumieges. Its origin. Flight of the monks.

Abhinc denique Sequanæ sulcantes alveum, Rotomagum adeunt, igneque comburunt, horrendum de Christiano populo ludibrium exercentes. Franciæ quoque interiora petentes, omnem fere Neustriam Northmannica [7] feritate invadunt. Urbem quoque [8] Nanneticam incendio cremavere. Episcopum, Sancto Sabbato Paschæ baptismum celebrantem, trucidavere, clerum et populum peremere. Deinde Andegavensem percurrentes regionem, ipsam quidem civitatem concremant, Pictavorumque castella atque vicos, omnemque patriam a mari usque Rouen burnt. Nantes burnt. Angers burnt.

---

[1] *Vermedoyse;* marginal Note in MS.
[2] *nepharium* in MS.
[3] *Noyon;* marginal Note in MS.
[4] *anulo* in MS.
[5] *Beatilda* in ed. Camden.
[6] *ut noningentorum* in ed. Camden.
[7] *ferocitate* in ed. Camden.
[8] *Nauntes in Britaine;* marginal Note in MS.

Tours burnt.

ad eandem Pictaviensem urbem, populantur et vastant, replentes cædibus universa. Sequenti namque tempore navigio Turonum [1] adeunt civitatem, eamque de more opplentes stragibus, ad postremum tradunt ignibus, populata omni circumquaque regione. Non longe post superiora Ligeris fluvii [2] navibus expetentes, [3] Aurelianis perveniunt, captamque urbem auro distrahunt; et, ad tempus recedentes, secundo adventu comburunt eandem.

Orleans burnt.

Lutetia of the Parisii burnt.

Et, ut concludam tragœdias infinitas brevibus, [4] Lutetiam, Parisiorum nobile caput, quondam resplendens gloria, [5] abundans opibus, in cineres redegerunt. Beluacus quoque, et Novionius, quondam Galliarum præstantissimæ civitates, eorum gladio concidere. Aquitannia quoque, quondam bellorum nutrix, tunc patuit præda gentibus alienis. Nec erat oppidum aut vicus in ea regione, [6] sed neque civitas, quæ non strage ferali horum conciderit Paganorum. Testatur id Pictavis, fœcundissima urbs Aquitanniæ, hoc Sanctonum, hoc Engolisma, hoc Petragoricum, hoc [7] Lemovicus, hoc certe Arvernus, ipsumque Avaricum, caput regni Aquitannici.

Many other cities destroyed.

Hasting desires to crown Bier, and to gain possession of Rome.

Hiis calamitatum malis Galliis per triginta fere annorum spatium detritis flebiliter, Hastingus Bier, dominum suum, provehere cupiens ad altiora, imperiali cum diademate coronare volebat. Proinde deliberavit cum suis complicibus Romam clandestina irruptione obtinere. Sed nimia exorta tempestate, ad urbem Lituis, vento impellente, devolvitur, quæ pro sui decore hoc nomine vocabatur. Porro cives, attoniti tanta classe, civitatem muniunt, et semetipsos hortantur ad resistendum. Quorum audaciam Hastingus ut comperit, ratus hanc Romam fore, omni conatu cœpit attentare, quo pacto posset eam dolo invadere. Denique Episcopo civitatis et [8] Comiti ministros suæ perfidiæ dirigit, asserens non

He mistakes another city for Rome.

---

[1] *ademit* in ed. Camden.
[2] *manibus* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Aurenam* in ed. Camden.
[4] *Hiteciam* in ed. Camden.
[5] *habundans* in MS.
[6] Om. in ed. Camden.
[7] *Lamonica* in ed. Camden.
[8] *Communitati* in ed. Camden.

sua sponte illuc appulisse, sed patriam suam repetere voluisse; pacificos se esse, pacem deinceps quærere, et se, letali pressum [1] languore, ab eis Christianum fieri supplici prece deposcere. Hiis auditis, Comes et Episcopus, gaudio [2] exhilarati, pacem cum [3] nefandissimo pacis inimico firmant, fitque communis utrique populo urbis ingressus. Treacherous conduct of Hasting.

Tandem scelestus ad ecclesiam fertur Hastingus, sacrosancto baptismate mergitur homo versutus, et rapacissimus exit lupus: quem, ad sui perniciem, a fonte Præsul et Comes excipiunt. Hinc quoque bajulorum manibus refertur ad navem, chrismate delibutus. Post hoc, intempestæ noctis medio, loricatus locatur in feretro, innuens cæteris, ut suas induerent loricas sub tunicis. Proinde fit luctus intolerabilis per exercitum, Hastingum obiisse neophytum; et resonat maris littus tanti ducis excessu. Details of his treachery.

Dehinc navi effertur, et ad ecclesiam bajulatur; sacra vestitur Antistes indumenta, mactaturus sacrosanctam hostiam pro defuncto; fit commendatio animæ, ut corpus, scelerum et perditionis in [4] barathro jam sepultum, tradatur sepulturæ. Sed ecce! prosilit de feretro, Episcopum et Comitem obtruncat gladio; dehinc lupina rabie cum suis grassatur in plebe. Hiis a funesto perpetratis, theatrum efficitur domus Domini, jugulantur juvenes, trucidantur senes, depopulatur civitas, et a fundamentis mœnia diruuntur. Slaughter resulting therefrom.

Hujus itaque peracta urbis subversione, comperientes pagani se Romam nullatenus cepisse, veriti ne ulterius quicquam proficerent, quippe cum Romanas aures, fama volante, eorum [5] profana opera jam occupassent, inito consilio, de regressu disponunt. Nam Bier, totius excidii signifer, et rex exercituum, dum nativum solum repeteret, naufragium passus, vix apud Anglos portum obtinuit, quamplurimis de suis naviculis tempestate The Danes purpose to return to their own country.

[1] *langore* in MS.
[2] *exhilerati* in ed. Camden.
[3] *nephandissimo* in MS.
[4] *baratro* in MS.
[5] *prophana* in MS.

Bier is shipwrecked, and dies.

submersis. Indeque petens Frisiam, illic obiit. Hastingus vero Carolum Simplicem, Regem Francorum, adiens, pacem petiit; quam adipiscens, urbem Carnotensem stipendii munere accepit ab illo. Et sic Francia a tumultuum fragoribus aliquandiu respiravit.

Hasting obtains Chartres.

A fresh expedition sails from Denmark.

Emensis expost plurimorum annorum interstitiis, Francia ab hiis tumultuum fragoribus paulisper sopita, Danemarchia, spargens iterato jure exterminii flammivomos titiones, plurimos tirones a se, juvenili flore vernantes, priscorum patrum lege secernit. Qui, profecti cum sex navibus plenis armato milite, apud Scanzam insulam applicant; indeque sublatis anchoris, spirantibus auris salubriter, Anglicam Britanniam aggrediuntur. Quibus Angli confestim obvii, multis suorum amissis, cum dedecore refugerunt.

The Danes are aided by the English.

Quibus compertis, illius regni Rex, Ethelstanus, missa legatione, protinus pacem petit, et adipiscitur; firmatisque fœderibus, amicitia indissolubili ad invicem connectuntur. A quo suæ expeditionis postulantes auxilium, parvo tempore contraxerunt non

They are defeated at Walcheren.

minimam armatorum manum. Abinde fluctivaga sulcantes æquora, cum magno vitæ periculo, ad locum vocatum "Walchras" devoluti sunt. Quibus mortem evadentibus, et de maris dispendio respirantibus, Rainerius Longi Colli, Hamoensis, sive Hasbaniensis,

Duke Rainier is taken by them, but is exchanged.

Dux, cum multitudine gravi bellum intulit. Sed suorum extinctis quampluribus, ipse victus capitur, et ad naves ducitur compeditus. In illa pugna duodecim Danorum bellatores a Reinerii militibus capiuntur, et uxori ejus præsentantur. Quæ, legatos ad Danos mittens, et ipsa suum virum, dato pro eo magno auri pondere, recipit, et Dani qui ab ipsa tenebantur liberi dimittuntur.

The Danes reach Jumieges.

[1] Octingentesimo sexto anno ab Incarnatione Domini, Dani, flantibus ventis ad vota, Gemeticum veniunt; ubi quamdam sacram virginem, nomine [2] "Ametrudem,"

[1] Correctly A.D. 876.

[2] *Gertrudem* in ed. Camden.

quam asportaverant a Britannia, in Capella Sancti Vedasti, quæ trans flumen est, super altare ponentes, ibidem reliquerunt: quæ Capella nomen virginis hactenus, Sanctæ Geretrudis, [1] nomen habet. Quorum adventum Franco, Rotomagensis Archiepiscopus agnoscens, et urbis suæ muros solo tenus hostica immanitate cernens dirutos, ac de juvamine ad resistendum omnino diffidens, adjudicavit salubrius ab eis pacem quærere, quam in aliquo illos ad sui perniciem provocare. Festinus igitur illos adiens, pacem petiit, et consequitur, inter se fœdere firmo pacto. Quo facto, Dani, festinantes, naves propellunt ad mœnia civitatis. Cujus præsidium sagaci mente terra marique considerantes, compendiorum lucris munitum, totius Comitatus caput illud fore concorditer deputavere. Deinde unum ex semetipsis sorte eligentes, [2] "Rollonem" nomine, dominum suæ militiæ, atque principem, pacta fidelitate, præficiunt.

They place the relics of St. Ametrudis in the Chapel of St. Vedast.

Franco, the Archbishop of Rouen, makes terms with the Danes.

They make Rollo their chief.

Rollo, prælatione potitus, tractavit sollicite cum suis de Parisiaca subversione; et, solventes classem, Sequanæ sulcant fluvium, stationemque navium apud Hasdans componunt. Tunc Rainaldus, Dux totius Franciæ, repentino paganorum adventu cognito, cum valida exercituum virtute, processit eis obvius, præmittens Hastingum, qui adhuc in Carnotena urbe morabatur, cum aliis legatis, quia et ipse peritus fuerat Danorum linguæ; qui talibus eos adorsus est verbis:—"Heus!" inquit, "robustissimi milites, quibus ab oris huc advecti "estis, vel quid in hac regione quæritis, aut qui ves- "trum senior censetur nomine? Edicite nobis; Franco- "rum sane Regis legati sumus, vobis directi." Cui interroganti, sic Rollo:—"Dani sumus, æquali dominio "fungimur; terræ hujus colonos exturbare venimus, "nostræ ditioni patriam subdere cupientes. Quis enim "es tu, qui tam facete nobis loqueris?" Ad hæc ille, —"Audistis," inquit, "aliquando de quodam Hastingo, "qui, a vestris partibus exul, cum multitudine navium

Rollo contemplates the overthrow of Paris.

Hasting is sent by Duke Rainald to treat with him.

Dialogue between Hasting and Rollo.

[1] Om. in ed. Camden. | [2] Om. in ed. Camden.

" huc adveniens, hoc Francorum regnum magna ex " parte pessumdedit, et in solitudinem redegit." Cui Rollo,—" Audivimus," inquit, " Hastingus [1] bono omine " cœpit, et cuncta malo fine complevit." Hastingus ad hæc,—" Vultis," inquit, " Karolo Regi subdi ? "—" Ne- " quaquam," Rollo intulit, " alicui subjiciemur; sed " quæcunque armis adquiremus, nostro juri vendi- " cabimus. Regi, cujus te legatum gloriaris, audita, si " vis, renuncia." Hæc Hastingus cuncta refert expeditius duci suo. Sane Rainaldus, citato exercitu, Northmannos inopinato impetu festinans invadere, super eos irruit. Quem Rollo, cum suis, audacter excipiens, prostrato Rollando, ejus signifero, plurimos Francigenas morti tradidit, aliosque in fugam vertit. Quibus peractis, Rollo, navibus festinus, municipium Mellende capit. Quo subverso, omnes incolas ense necat.

Duke Rainald attacks Rollo, and is defeated.

Igitur Theobaldus Comes, videns se tempus reperisse opportunum ad decipiendum Hastingum, talibus verbis falso appetit illum :—" Cur," inquit, " vir insignissime, " torpes ignavia ? Ignoras Regem Karolum te velle " perimere, ob Christianorum sanguinem a te olim " fusum injuste ? Reminiscitur enim malorum quæ illi " tunc improbe intorsisti, et ideo de terra te exterminare decernit. Manus [2] etiam tua, ut ipse ait, cum " Rollone pagano ad delendos Francos sentit; qua de re " in proximo pessime deleberis ab eisdem. Consule " ergo tibi, ne inconsultus puniaris."

Suggestions made by Count Theobald to Hasting.

Quibus verbis Hastingus territus, confestim Carnotenam urbem Theobaldo vendidit, et, distractis omnibus, peregre profectus, disparuit.

Hasting sells Chartres, and departs.

Dux autem Franciæ, Reinaldus, fugæ non ferens dedecus, iterum majori exercitu congregato, Rollonem aggreditur inopinate. Cujus conatus ipse præveniens, multos suorum obtruncat, multos fugat. Ipsum autem Rainaldum quidam piscator emisso jaculo interfecit. Dehinc subductis anchoris, Rollo celeri navigio Parisium

Defeat and death of Duke Rainald (A.D. 885).

[1] *inquit bono* in MS. | [2] *et tua* in ed. Camden.

petit. Cui quidam exploratores nunciant Baiocensem urbem carere defensoribus, et facile posse capi. Rollo vero, mox avulsis ab obsidione navibus, [1][urbem] Baiocensium velivolo venit cursu. Quam captam in parte subvertit, habitatoribus interfectis. In qua nobilissimam puellam, "Popam" nomine, filiam, scilicet, Guidonis, Comitis [2] Silvanectensis, capiens, non multo post, more Danico, id est, Paganico, copulavit. Ex qua genuit Willelmum Longam Spatam, filiamque, "Gerloc" nomine, decoram valde. Et sic urbe demolita, Rollo [3] concite Lutetiam regressus est. Cumque ad expugnandam eam diligenter intenderet, pars exercitus sui urbem Ebroicam captam exterminavit, cives extinxit, et cum præda maxima rediit ad ducem suum.

Rollo sails for Paris.

Bayeux taken, and partly destroyed.

He marries Popa, daughter of the Count of Senlis.

Interea legati Regis Anglorum, Ethelstani, ad Rollonem veniunt, deprecantes ut Regi quantocius auxilium, contra quosdam rebelles auxilium, ferat. Cujus anxietati compatiens, et de Parisiacæ urbis expugnatione diffidens, ob, videlicet, aditus difficultatem, et nimiam alimoniæ copiam intra eam, dimissa obsidione, Anglos aggreditur. Quo cum venisset, rebelles expugnans, cum austeritate coercuit, acceptisque obsidibus, Regi suo pronos fecit. Exhinc iterato, electa multitudine juvenum, cum magnis muneribus a Rege sibi collatis, in Franciam remeavit.

Rollo leaves the siege of Paris for England.

Returns to France.

Rollo cum redisset Northmanniam, Carnotenam urbem obsidione vallavit. Quam cum machinis et tormentis [4] impugnaret, Ricardus, Burgundionum Dux, cum suo Francorumque exercitu, adveniens, irruit super eum. Cum quo congressus, Rollo atrociter resistebat, quousque Walterius Episcopus, ex civitate cum armatis inopinate prosiliens, supparum Beatæ Mariæ, quam Karolus Calvus Constantinopoli, cum aliis reliquiis, advexerat, in modum vexilli, contra hostes, ferens manibus, a tergo

He besieges Chartres, and is attacked by Richard, Duke of Bergundy.

He is miraculously defeated (A.D. 911.)

---

[1] Omitted in MS.
[2] *Silvanietensis* in ed. Camden.
[3] *velociter Lutetiam* in ed. Camden.
[4] *oppugnaret* in ed. Camden.

eos cædendo invaderet. Illi tamen, ignorantes cujus esset camisia virtutis et reverentiæ, deridendo sagittaverunt ad eam. Sed non impune; nam subita cœcitate percussi sunt. Quod Rollo intelligens, a certamine declinavit, multis prius de ejus exercitu interemptis.

Further atrocities committed by Rollo against the Franks.

Hiis itaque Rollo infortuniis, militumque suorum morte, furibunde succensus, ad Francorum infestationem reliquos exaggerat, et ad perdendam patriam, ob sociorum perniciem, totis conatibus eos incitat. Quid plura? Ut lupi vespertini, vehuntur pagani ad oviculas Christi; succenduntur ecclesiæ, mulieres ducuntur captivæ, trucidatur populus, fit omnibus in commune luctus. Hiis denique Franci calamitatibus oppressi, questuosis clamoribus Karolum Regem appetunt; unanimiter conclamantes Christianum populum ob ejus inertiam paganorum incursibus deperire. Quorum querimoniis Rex permotus, [1] Antistitem Franconem, Archiepiscopum Rotomagensem, Rolloni festinanter dirigit; mandans, si Christianus efficeretur, terram maritimam ab Epte flumine usque ad Britannicos limites, cum sua filia, nomine "Gisla," se ei daturum fore. Qua legatione, Franco, suscepta, pagano duci per ordinem cuncta pandit. Cujus verba Rollo, consultu suorum, gratanter suscipiens, a vastatione paganica indulget Regi inducias trium mensium, ut in hoc dierum spatio stabiliretur fœdere firmo pax inter eos. Venientes igitur ad Sanctum Clerum, discurrentibus alternatim inter eos nunciis, pax, favente Christo, stabilitur; Rollone jurante Regi fidelitatem, et Rege illi filiam, cum terra prætitulata, donante. Superadditur, ad supplementa sumptuum, tota Britannia; jurantibus Rolloni super Sacramenta principibus ipsius terræ, Berengario et Alano. Nam terra maritima, quæ nunc vocatur "Northmannia," ob diuturnos excursus paganorum, silvis ubique adultis, a cultro et vomere torpebat inculta. Quibus nobili-

Peace is at length made between Rollo and Charles, King of France.

[1] *astitem* in MS.; *Astitum* in ed. Camden.

ter expletis, Rex lætus ad sua regreditur, et Rollo, cum Roberto Duce, ad Rotomagensis urbis mœnia proficiscitur.

Rollo is converted to Christianity, and baptized at Rouen A.D. 912.

Anno igitur Incarnationis Dominicæ nongentesimo duodecimo, benedicto fonte in Sanctæ Trinitatis nomine, Rollo baptizatur a Francone, Rotomagensi Archiepiscopo. Quem Robertus, Dux Francorum, a fonte suscipiens, imposuit ei nomen suum. Videntes autem pagani ducem suum Christianum esse, relictis idolis, Christi nomen suscipiunt, convolantes unanimes ad baptismum. Dehinc Robertus, Francorum Dux, rebus pro quibus venerat competenter gestis, Franciam, cum magna hilaritate, repetiit. Porro Dux Northmannorum, Robertus, præparato rerum nuptialium apparatu magno, supranominatam tanti regis filiam, Christiano more, in consortium sui tori duxit.

Robert, his new name.

He marries the daughter of the King of France.

His law against theft.

Post hæc, intra Northmannicos limites legem statuit, ut nullus assensum furi præberet; quod si deprehenderetur, ambo patibulis appenderentur. Contigit autem non multo post, in Longapetentis villa, quemdam agricolam, reficiendi causa, labore suspenso, domum redire, demissis loris in campo, cum cultro et vomere. Cujus uxor, tam infelix quam vesana, hæc cuncta clam sustulit, experiri volens edictum Ducis. Rusticus vero, ad campum regressus, rebus non inventis, uxorem an eas haberet inquirit; [1] qua negante, Ducem aggreditur, petens ut sua sibi reddantur utensilia. Qui mox, motus pietate, damnum viri, quinque solidis datis, relevare, et populum per circuitum ad examen [2] chalybis cunctum jussit compellere. Quo, Domino indicante, libertato, uxor rustici a ministris artatur; quæ, coacta verberibus, reatum profitetur. Dux vero rustico ait,—"Nove-
" ras," inquit, "ante hanc furem esse?" Et rusticus,
—"Noveram," ait. Ad hæc Dux intulit,—"Tuum os
" te [3] condemnat, serve nequam." Et continuo jussit

Sample of his severity.

[1] *quia* in MS.
[2] *calibis* in MS.
[3] *condemnavit* in ed. Camden.

ambos suspendi patibulo. Hiis et hujusmodi Robertus Dux populum suum frænans terroribus, Ducatum, sibi a Domino attributum, longo tempore pacifice gubernabat.

His wife, Gisla, dying, Rollo takes back his first wife, Popa.

Interea morte præventa uxore sua, Gisla, sine liberis, Dux primam uxorem, repudiatam, Popam, videlicet, ex qua filium, Willelmum, jam adultum, genuerat, iterum repetens, sibi copulavit. Verum fractis jam viribus laboribus et prœliis, in quibus consumpserat omne robur juventutis suæ, deliberare cœpit de sui Ducatus dispositione, cui, vel qualiter, illum relinqueret: convocatisque totius Northmanniæ proceribus, cum Alano et Berengario Britonibus, Willelmum, filium suum, pulcherrimæ juventutis flore vernantem, illis exponit, jubens ut eum sibi dominum eligerent, militiæque suæ principem præficerent.—"Meum est," inquit, "mihi illum sub-
" rogare, vestrum est illi fidem servare." Et cunctos suasibilibus demulcens verbis, filio suo, sub sacramento fidei, illos subegit. Et expost uno vivens lustro, consumptus senio, vivere desiit, felicem finem faciens sub titulo nominis Christiani.

Rollo resigns in favour of his son William (A.D. 927).

His death.

Description of Duke William I.

Duce Roberto ab onere carnis jam libero, filius ejus Willelmus, totius monarchiam Ducatus Northmannici sagaci regens moderamine, inconvulsam Christo Regi fidem servare satagebat. Erat quippe statura procerus, vultu decorus, micantibus oculis, benevolis mansuetus, quasi leo inimicis terribilis, ut gigas fortis in prœliis, terminos sui Ducatus per circuitum dilatare non desistens. Quæ res invasionis et audaciæ Francorum proceribus odii et invidiæ fomitem ministravit.

Berengar and Alain attempting to revolt, he lays waste Bretagne.

Sub eodem tempore, Berengarius et Alanus, Britones, a tenore fidei quam cum eo pepigerant dissidentes, ab ejus dominio, præsumptivo ausu, conati sunt recedere, Regi Francorum de cætero disponentes militare. Quorum temeritatem Dux impetu festinato comprimens, Britanniam tam diu vastavit hostiliter, eorum illic subvertens municipia, quoadusque totius nequitiæ incen-

sorem a regno exturbaret, Anglosque adire compelleret, Berengario sibi conciliato. Alain flies to England.

Sed hiis ita devictis, quidam, nomine "Rihulfus," succensus perfidiæ furiis, coadunatis plurimis infectis veneno discordiæ, a Ducatu eum funditus conabatur extrudere; adeo ut, collecta undequaque multitudine, circa Rotomagensis civitatis suburbana, transmeato alveo Sequanæ, componeret obsidionem, quatenus Ducem ab ea propelleret, aut captum nequiter perimeret, Northmannia sibi vendicata. Siege of Rouen by Rihulf (A.D.933).

Videns itaque Dux se a suis sic obsessum, cœpit meditari qualiter suæ saluti consuleret, et honori, et milites suos a tam audaci conspirationis motu cohiberet. Tandem cum [1] trecentis loricatis militibus irrumpens castra temeraria, maximam [2] eorum multitudinem, gladiis prostratum, Orco transmisit, aliosque per diversa silvarum lustra se occultantes in fugam vertit. Rihulfus [3] autem, commilitonum fiducia destitutus, inter profugos delitescens, fugæ subsidio evasit. Dux ergo, profugatis inimicis, suorum recensens numerum, reperit ex eis interisse nullum. Locus in quo hic fuit conflictus, "Pratum Belli" hactenus nuncupatur. Duke William defeats the insurgents. Escape of Rihulf. The place called "Pré de la Bataille."

Regresso igitur eo de prœlio, a præfecto Fiscannensis castri venit nuncius, qui sibi dixit filium natum fore, ex puella, nomine "Sprota," sibi Danico more juncta. Unde valde lætus effectus, fecit eum baptizari ab Henrico, Episcopo Baiocensi, Ricardumque vocari. News of a son borne to him by Sprota. His name, Richard.

Triumpho conspicuo de rebellibus Dux potitus, atque viribus convalescens, cœpit per exteras nationes multimode præclaram virtutum suarum famam spargere; in tantum, ut ex diversis mundi partibus regnorum proceres illius curiam frequentarent, et ab eo nobiliter munerati sedes suas [4] ovantes repeterent. Unde cognita Ducis magnificentia, Willelmus, Pictavensis Comes, sororem ejus, nomine "Gerloc," petiit, et accepit uxorem. His fame spreads, and his Court is frequented. William, Count of Poitou, marries his sister.

[1] *trescentis* in MS.
[2] *se eorum* in ed. Camden.
[3] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[4] *ornantes* in ed. Camden.

The Duke marries the daughter of Count Herbert.

Ipse vero Dux filiam Herberti Comitis, donante patre, ductam, Rotomagensibus intulit arcibus.

King Ethelstan negotiates on behalf of Louis of France, and Alain of Bretagne.

Audiens autem Ethelstanus, Rex Anglorum, tam magnificam inclyti Ducis famam, cum multis donariis legatos illi mittit, orans ut Lodowicum, videlicet, nepotem suum, Karoli Regis filium, (qui, Laudunensis Præsulis, Ascelini, captus decipulis, in custodia diem obierat,) satageret restituere regno paterno, Alanoque Britoni, sibi infenso, commissa, pro suo amore, ignosceret. Confugerat enim Lodowicus puer, cum matre Ogiva, ad eum, cum Francorum dolis pater ejus caperetur, ne pari modo in eum illorum sævitia grassaretur. Iste nempe Karolus, Rex Francorum, dictus "Simplex," Robertum, Ducem Parisiensium, invadentem regnum Francorum, cum multis, peremit. Ob quam causam, dictus Karolus, ab Herberto Comite captus, in custodiam [1] Peronæ truditur, et in custodia Herberti moritur.

Alain is allowed to return, and Louis is crowned at Laon (A.D.936).

Dux, igitur, ad preces Anglorum Regis, Adelstani, libenti animo, et Alano debita indulsit, et ad sua redire concessit, et Lodowicum, a partibus Anglorum revocatum, Hugone Magno favente, cum Episcopis, cæterisque Francorum primoribus, apud Laudunum, ab [2] Artallo Archiepiscopo, coronari procuravit.

Conspiracy against King Louis.

Sed Franci, quietis nescii, post quinquennium iterum adversus eum conspirant, molientes a regno illum pellere. Quorum improbitate coactus, Henrico, Transrhenano Regi, mittit nuncios; mandans quod vellet eum alloqui, et pactum amicitiarum stabile firmare cum eo. Quibus Rex respondit, se nullo modo ad hoc fœdus ineundum adquiescere, nisi Willelmi, Ducis Normannorum, astipulatione.

He seeks the aid of Duke William.

Hiis auditis, Lodowicus illico Ducem adiit, petiturus auxilium contra Francos. Quem Dux honorifice, prout regem decuit, excipiens, in regalibus epulis et vultu serenissimo honoravit. Et non multo post reges ad

[1] *Peroni* in ed. Camden.

[2] Correctly, *Artaldo*.

Alliances in favour of King Louis brought about by Duke William; who is sponsor to his son (A.D.941).

certum locum convenire procuravit, additis, ad hoc fœdus faciendum, principibus Francorum, Hugone Magno et Herberto. Willelmus vero, tam fidelissimus quam prudentissimus mediator, consilia tam utilia quam honesta dictans, amicitiarum tenorem, prout disposuit, ambo Reges inter se sacramentis confirmaverunt. Quibus ita gestis, Rex Lodowicus Duci Willelmo de rebus strenue consummatis per eum egit gratias; exorans ut nuper natum sibi filium de sacro fonte susciperet, et eum [1] Lotharium nominaret. Quod Dux gratanter adimplens apud Laudunum, Rotomagum reversus est.

He promises to restore the Abbey of Jumieges, after narrowly escaping death.

Sub eodem tempore, dum fuisset egressus ad venandum, invenit duos monachos, qui quondam, metu paganorum, fugerant a Gemmetico, illuc reversos, vastam loci heremum manibus suis purgantes et complanantes. Quos percunctatus, requirit ab eis quibus ab oris illuc advenissent, vel quæ tam præcipua ædificia quondam fuissent. Cui illi rei seriem detexere per ordinem, et [2] caritatem panis hordeacei et aquæ obtulerunt; quam cum, ob vilitatem panis et aquæ, sumere contempsisset, saltum ingressus, immanem aprum reperit, quem festine insequi cœpit, venabuloque percussit. Sed mox hasta venabuli fracta, fera impetu præcipiti in Ducem irruit, eumque prostratum vehementer attrivit. Qui post paulum, sensu recepto, ac sana mente, monachos repetiit, et, caritatem quam incaute spreverat ab eis recipiens, locum se restauraturum [3] spopondit.

He repairs the Abbey, and sends for monks to his sister, at Poitiers.

Immissis ergo ancionariis, a [4] rhamnis purgavit, et sentibus, Sanctique Petri quod aliquantisper deciderat monasterium, resarciens competenter, texit. Claustrum quoque et receptacula cuncta muniens, a sui magnitudine breviata, reddidit habitabilia. Interea legatos Pictavis sorori suæ, quam Willelmus Comes duxerat, destinavit, mandans ut monachos illi mitteret, quos præfato loco subrogaret. Cujus petitioni soror gratanti

[1] *Lotharinum* in ed. Camden.
[2] *karitatem* in MS.
[3] *spospondit* in ed. Camden.
[4] *spinis purgarit* in ed. Camden.

Conducts Abbot Martin and his monks to Jumieges.

favens animo, duodecim monachos, cum suo Abbate, "Martino" nomine, a Sancti Cipriani sublatos cœnobio, fratri destinavit. Quorum adventu nimium exhilaratus, eos Rotomagi cum ingenti recepit gaudio, et cum magno honore Dux ipse, militum septus cuneis, duxit Gemeticum; Abbatique locum tradidit, cum tota villa, quam [1] alodariis auro redemit, se voto obligans inibi monachum fieri. Satisque fecisset votis, nisi idem Abbas ejus animositati [2] obstitisset, eo quod filius ejus, Ricardus, adhuc puerulus esset; verens ne, propter illius imbecillitatem, quorundam iniquorum molimine patria turbaretur. Veruntamen cucullam et stamineam ab illo extorquens, secum asportavit; quæ reponens in [3] scrinio, clavem ejus argenteam cingulo suo appendit.

The Abbot refuses to allow him to become a monk.

Resistance of the people to his desire to retire to the Abbey of Jumieges.

Inde denique digressus, Rotomagum repetit, Abbatis prohibitum moleste ferens. Ascitis quoque Northmannicis atque Britannicis cunctis principibus, enucleati animi sui consultum pandit. Cujus verbis vehementer universi stupefacti, hærebant quid responderent, præ nimio stupore elingues effecti; et vix tandem, resumpto spiritu, in hanc vocem prorumpunt queruli:—"Cur "nos, serenissime Domine, tam repente dimittis, vel "cui dominium committes tui Ducatus?" Quibus Dux,—"Est mihi," inquit, "filius, nomine Ricardus; vos "oro, ut, si quando amoris affectum erga me habuistis, "mihi nunc æquo animo ostendatis, quatenus illum, "vice mei, vobis præficiatis: quia quod Deo vovi, in-"evitabiliter a me complebitur factis." Cujus voluntati non valentes contradicere, omnes ei, quamvis mœsti, proceres assensum præbuere, in hiis concordes. Missis quoque nunciis, puerum, a Fiscamio reductum, illis exponit. Cui fidelitatem sacramentis prono animo cunctis firmantibus, Dux totius Northmannici seu Britannici Ducatus est prælatus. Quem confestim pater Baiocas

They do fealty to his son, Richard, as Duke.

---

[1] *a lodariis* in MS., *a Lodariis* in ed. Camden.

[2] *obstetisset* in MS.

[3] *scrineo* in MS.

mittens, Botoni, suæ militiæ principi, nutriendum tradidit, ut, ibi lingua eruditus Danica, suis cæterisque hominibus sciret aptè dare responsa. Hæc de Gemeticensis loci relatu prætulimus, volentes ostendere quantam devotionem, quam pium animi propositum, Dux Willelmus habuerit circa eum. He is entrusted to Botho, to be taught the Danish language.

Interea tanti principis fortitudinem et pietatem audiens Haraldus, Rex Danorum, qui a filio suo, nomine "Sweno," pulsus fuerat regno suo, cum sexaginta navibus milite armato plenis, Northmanniam supplex adiit. Quem potentissimus ac liberalissimus Dux, congruo cum honore recipiens, Constantinensem ei ad præsidium concessit Comitatum; donec, fabricatis navibus, multiplicatoque exercitu, amissum regnum repeteret, cum militum validiori manu. Harold, King of Denmark, is established in the Côtentin.

Ea tempestate, Arnulphus, Flandrensis Comes, homo versutus, nequiens se cohibere intra sui juris terminos, illectus cupiditate, [1] fastu dominandi plurimos in vicino positos studuit conturbare. Et inter cætera suæ nequitiæ molimina, cuidam Comiti, vocabulo "Herlewino," gravissimum inferens detrimentum, castrum, quod vocatur "Monasteriolum," fraude abstulit. Qui penitus auxilio ab Hugone Magno, domino suo, [2] videlicet, destitutus, causa petendi auxilii Ducem Northmanniæ lugubris adiit. Cujus calamitati Dux compassus, congregato exercitu, municipium vallans obsidione cepit, et alimoniarum sumptibus instauratum reddidit Herlewino, et, strenue rebus gestis, Rotomagum ovans rediit. Quo tempore, Franco, Rotomagensis Archiepiscopus, moritur; cui successit Gunardus. Arnulph, Count of Flanders, takes Mountreuil from Count Herlouin. It is restored to him by Duke William.

Interea Comes Arnulfus, dolens de ablato municipio, cum multis Francorum principibus de Ducis morte corde tenus cœpit tractare. Qui, inhumani hominis et [3] nefandi homicidæ cavillatione infecti subdola, unanimiter conspirant in mortem optimi principis, constrin- A conspiracy is formed by Count Arnulph, for the destruction

[1] *et fastu* in ed. Camden.
[2] Om. in ed. Camden.
[3] *nephandi* in MS.

of Duke William.

gentes se sacramento ad tantum [1] nefas. Arnulphus autem, quod animo conceperat fraudulento opere explere cupiens, missis legatis Duci Willelmo, mandat se cum eo amicitiam velle habere, pacemque indelebilem confirmare, et Herelewino Comiti pro ejus amore infensa indulgere; et, nisi podagrico chiragricoque detineretur languore, ob hoc ad ejus curiam desideranter ire. Denique toto annisu rogat, ut locum denominare velit, quo valeat ei occurrere ad mutuum colloquium. Dux quoque, cupiens Ducatum suum pacatum reddere, eo quod monachicum toto conatu sitiret habitum, determinato loco apud Pinchiniacum, cum innumera manu electissimorum militum, super fluvium Sompne, ob tanti spem negotii, proficiscitur; ubi Arnulfi ex una parte fluminis, Willelmi vero ex altera, e regione, sedit exercitus. Erat quippe insula in medio fluvii, in qua, libatis osculis, ambo duces consederunt, de rebus pro quibus venerant tractaturi. Arnulfo etenim proditoris [2] Judæ morem imitante, et ambagibus diu telam texente araneæ, novissime post jurata amicitiarum sacramenta, et plurima pacis oscula, sole ruente ad occasum, ab invicem dirimuntur.

An interview is held between them on the island of Picquigny.

At the close of the interview, Duke William is murdered.

Sed ecce! meante fluvium Duce Willelmo, quatuor diaboli filii, milites Arnulfi, illum clamoribus revocantes, referunt dominum suum melioris [3] consilii omisisse [4] sacramentum. Quem, navem ad ripam retorquentem, mox ut terram tetigit, extractis gladiis, [5] proh dolor! interimunt innocentem, nullum juvamen de suis valentem habere, ob decurrentis aquæ profunditatem. Indeque protinus fugam arripientes, corpus Ducis potentissimi exanime reliquerunt. Berengerius quidem, atque Alanus, Britones, necnon Normannorum principes, dominum suum cernentes perimi, clamore et ululatu implentes littora, nullo juvamine illi valuerunt subvenire.

[1] *nephas* in MS.
[2] *inde* in ed. Camden.
[3] *consilio* in ed. Camden.
[4] *decretum* in ed. Camden.
[5] *proth* in MS.

Cujus corpus, post paululum ad se relatum, cum [1] disvestirent, argenteam clavem in ejus strophio reperiunt dependentem, satis ditissimum thesaurum sub se habentem, stamineam, [2] scilicet, et cucullam [3] monachalem; quæ proculdubio sumpsisset apud Gemeticum, effectus monachus, si comes ei vita fuisset. Imponentes autem illum feretro, quantocius cum multiplici luctu Rotomagum detulerunt, et in ecclesiam Sanctæ Mariæ Virginis intulerunt, et ibidem sepelierunt; illicque iterato tenorem fidei renovantes, unanimiter puero Ricardo fidem fecerunt, tradentes illum in custodiam Bernardi Dani; ut sub ejus tam provida quam fideli cura tutius custodiretur intra muros civitatis. Complevit autem sanctissimus Dux Willelmus vitæ suæ cursum sextodecimo Kalendas Januarii, Rege Lodowico regnum tenente Francorum, anno Christi nongentesimo quadragesimo [4] tertio.

A silver key is found on his body, to the casket containg his monk's stamen and cowl.

He is buried at Rouen.

His death, on the 17th December (A.D.942.)

Piissimo atque beatissimo Duce Willelmo inter electos Dei, ut credimus, translato, filius ejus, summæ ingenuitatis juvenis, omni probitati et prudentiæ dabat operam, custodibus suis, et curatoribus, ultro subditus in universis. At Francorum proceres, tam nefandam Arnulfi Flandrensis proditionem [5] [videntes,] lugubrem Willelmi Ducis necem plurimum doluerunt. Complices autem ipsius homicidæ, qui perantea se ficte amicissimos fatebantur, detectis [6] arcanorum intimis, virus, diu absconsum, in propatulo denudarunt.

He is succeeded by his son, Richard I.

Sorrow of the French nobles for Duke William's death.

Nempe Lodowicus Rex, æstimans jam sibi magni honoris januam patuisse, immemor beneficiorum et fidei a Duce semper illi impensæ, quasi consulturus apud Northmannos super illius morte, accelerato itinere venit Rotomagum festinanter. Quem Rodulfus, necnon et Bernardus, atque Anslech, tutores totius Ducatus Northmannici, suscipientes regaliter, se subegerunt ejus famu-

King Louis, to further his own designs visits Rouen (A.D.943).

---

[1] Sic in MS.
[2] *silicet* in MS.
[3] *monachilem* in MS.
[4] 4 in ed. Camden.
[5] Omitted in MS.
[6] *archanorum* in MS.

latui, pro fidelitate, videlicet, sui tantilli domini. Videns autem Rex terræ ubertatem, atque aquarum salubritatem, silvarumque plenitudinem, cupiditate captus fraudulenter promittere, quod aliter sibi disponebat retorquere, jussit ergo Ricardum puerum suis aspectibus præsentari. Quem egregia forma perspiciens decoratum, cum coætaneis pueris in suo palatio decrevit educandum.

He orders the young Duke to be brought to him.

Interea dirus rumor totam concussit urbem, Ricardum, suæ spei depositum, sub captura Regis indecenter detineri. Qua de re, cives, mixti cum turmis militaribus, strictis gladiis, per civitatem discurrentes, curiam Regis irrumpunt, ferinis conatibus illum interimere festinantes. Quorum tumultus ut comperit, vehementer territus, arreptum puerum in ulnis eorum conspectibus exhibuit, et sic eorum motus efferos compressit. Volens ergo Rex tumultuantes Northmannorum animos omnino sedare, suorum consultu, puero Ricardo paternam hæreditatem, pacta sibi inde fidelitate, concessit. Quem in sua fide suscipiens, [1] spopondit se eis, licet subdole, eum redditurum, imbutum decenter palatinis disciplinis.

A tumult arising in consequence, the King shews the child to the people.

He promises to leave to the child his inheritance, and to have him properly educated.

Hiis ita sedatis, Rex, dedecus quod a Northmannis [2] [accepit] sub occulto ferens ægre, cum Ricardo puero Franciam repetit, quasi vellet patris ejus mortem de Arnulfo Flandrensi protinus vindicare. Arnulfus itaque, metuens ne Rex hostiliter super eum irrueret, a crimine traditoris se expiare cupiens, missis legatis cum decem libris auri, a Willelmi nece se coram Rege fatetur immunem esse. Peremptores vero illius, si jubeat, proculdubio se exterminaturum pollicetur. Ait tamen reminisci debere contumeliarum et opprobriorum, quæ a Normannis tam longo tempore ipse et pater ejus perpessi fuissent. Et ideo dixit optimum fore consilium, ut Ricardum puerum, adustis [3] poplitibus, artaret gravi custodia, et gentem Normannicam gravissimis vectiga-

Count Arnulph attempts to exculpate himself, and promises to slay the murderers of Duke William.

His base proposal as to the young Duke.

[1] *spospondit* in ed. Camden.
[2] Omitted in MS.
[3] *poplicibus* in ed. Camden.

libus tam diu affligeret, quoadusque Danemarchiam, ex qua eruperat, coacta repeteret. Rex igitur, muneribus versuti proditoris cœcatus, et decipulis, ipsum, suspendio dignum, absolvit a scelere, et iram reflexit in innocentem puerum; exemplum Pilati imitatus, qui virum [1] homicidam dimisit, et Christum crucis damnavit patibulo. Unde cum apud Laudunum Clavatum moraretur, puerum, ab aucupio regredientem, acerbissimis confutans convitiis, meretricis filium, [2] ultro virum rapientis, eum vocavit; et nisi a talibus resipisceret, [3] cauterizatis genibus, omni illum honore [4] privari minatus est: deputatisque aliis custodibus, ne elabatur, sub magna cautela servari jubetur.

The King is moved by his gifts, and shews displeasure to the child.

Audiens denique Osmundus, ejus procurator, severissimam Regis sententiam, et futuros ei casus intelligens, consternatus animo, Normannis legatos mittit, mandans Ricardum, dominum suum, sub lugubri captivitatis jugo a Rege mancipari. Quibus compertis, confestim per totam patriam Normannorum indicitur triduanum jejunium, fitque continua oratio ab Ecclesia ad Deum pro eo. Enimvero, Osmundus, inito consilio, puerum hortabatur, ut, simulata ægritudine, lecto decumberet, et ita ægre ut ab omnibus desperaretur. Cujus monitis puer obtemperans, lecto decumbit, velut illico moriturus. Quod custodes videntes, neglecta ejus custodia, ad propria procuranda negotia huc illucque divertunt.

Osmund, the boy's tutor, makes preparations for his escape.

A three days' fast, among the Normans.

Forte in area domus jacebat herbæ fasciculus, in quo Osmundus puerum colligatum imponens humeris, velut equo laturus pabulum, cœnante Rege, nudatisque plateis a civibus, mœnia urbis egreditur, veniensque in domum sui hospitis, super equum [5] festinus insiliit, et, arrepto puero, fugiens quantocius, Cotidiacum venit. In quo commendato castellanis puero, nocte equitans Silvanectis venit. Quem Bernardus Comes intuens, tam mature venisse stupet, et qualiter erga nepotem suum, Ricardum,

The young Duke is carried by Osmund to Couci.

Osmund and Count Bernard

[1] *Luke* xxiii. 25.
[2] Qy. correctly "*alterius.*"
[3] *cauteriatis* in MS.
[4] *privare* in ed. Camden.
[5] *festinans* in ed. Camden.

obtain the aid of Duke Hugh.

res se habebat diligenter inquirit. Cui cum rei ordinem detexisset, et solito eum lætiorem fecisset, Hugonem Magnum statim celeri equitatu petiere; a quo detecto causæ consilio, sumpserunt sacræ fidei sacramenta ad adjuvandum puerum; et mox cum maximo exercitu festinanter veniunt Cotidiacum, eumque, inde sublatum, ad Silvanectensem urbem deducunt.

Advice given by Count Arnulph to King Louis, as to Hugh.

Rex autem Lodowicus, cernens votum suum fore irritum, misit ad Arnulphum Flandrensem, ut sibi festinus occurreret, de hiis omnibus consulturus. Cui dixit Arnulfus;—"Nostis," inquit, "Hugonem Magnum cum "Normannis diu sentire; et ideo vobis expedit illum "muneribus excœcare. Concedatis illi Ducatum Nor-"mannicum, reservando vobis urbem Rotomagensem, "quatinus, ejus privata juvamine, gens ista perfida a "patria penitus cogatur exire."

Duke Hugh proves treacherous, and aids the King against the Normans.

Hugo vero, cum audisset Regem de hac materia disputare, cupiditate cœcatus, elegit perjurus honore ampliari, quam suo amico, Ricardo, fidem servare. Quapropter jurantes adversus Normannos expeditionem, mox Rex Caltina, Hugo Baiocasina, territoria cœperunt rapinis et incendiis oppugnare. Quæ cum Bernardus Danus didicisset, Bernardi Silvanectensis usus consilio, confestim legatos dirigit Regi Lodowico, hujusmodi verbis instructos:—"Quare," inquit, "præpotentissime "Princeps, tuam patriam demoliris, præsertim cum sit "tibi quieta et pacifica, nemine obsistente? Desiste "igitur a tuorum rapinis, et militum Normannorum "utere militiis. Cur enim eos vexas incendiis, cum tibi "patula sit urbs Rotomagensis? Suscipe igitur bene-"volo animo eorum servitia, ut queas illorum subsidio "inimicorum vitare molimina."

Message sent to the King by Bernard the Dane.

In compliance with the message, the King comes to Rouen.

Hac itaque legatione Rex exhilaratus, prohibitis a præda militibus, ire festinat ad urbem quantocius. Cui venienti cunctus civitatis clerus et populus ad portam processit obvius, clamans,—"Benedictus qui venit in "nomine Domini." Inde Rex, ad regales accedens dapes, cœpit epulari splendide, Bernardo Dano minis-

trante. Cui inter prandendum, vino jam æstuanti, sic Bernardus ait:—"Hodie, Rex serenissime, illuxit nobis "dies lætitiæ, in qua cœpimus esse regales. Hactenus "militavimus Duci; ulterius invictissimo serviemus "Regi. Teneat sibi Bernardus Silvanectensis Ricar- "dum, nepotem suum; nos utinam longo tempore "habeamus te regem et dominum. Revera exitiabi- "liter consilium dedit, qui totius Normannici robur "exercitus amittere suasit. Quem vero inimicorum non "valuisses terrere robustissima illorum virtute? Sunt "enim, ut nos, tuo subjecti dominio, tibi militare "volentes corde volenti. Quare ergo viginti millibus "bellatorum in nos armasti inimicum tuum? Nonne "semper ipse infensus extitit tibi, et contra te rixator "assiduus?" Speech made to the King by Bernard the Dane.

Hujusmodi Rex placatus verbis, cum festinatione Hugoni Magno legatos mittit, qui eum compellant exire a Normannorum terminis; et ei dirigens verba ista,—stolidum quidem fore aliis tantam donare potestatem, quibus ad sui supplementum, quieto jure, nullo adversante, posset potiri. Quo audito, Hugo Magnus, exacerbatus valde, celerrime recessit, omissa expeditione, milites cohibens a Normannica vastatione. The King comamnds Duke Hugh to desist from the invasion of Normandy.

Rex autem, aliquandiu morans apud Rotomagum, Comitatui præfecit Rodulfum, cognomento "Tortam," qui vectigalia annuatim a subjectis exigeret, et in tota provincia jura et quælibet negotia decerneret. Qui, paganis deterior, cuncta monasteria ab ipsis exusta, quæ circa littora fuere Sequanæ, a fundamentis diruens, ad reparandam Rotomagensium civitatem, petras earundem asportavit. Rex autem, ad libitum rebus expletis, regreditur Laudunum gaudens. Radulph Torta made by King Louis, Seneschal of Rouen. Radulph destroys the monasteries.

Bernardus interea Danus, metuens ne, in regressu Rex Lodowicus cum Hugone, Duce, Normannos gravioribus pressuris opprimeret, Haraldo, Danorum Regi, adhuc degenti apud Cæsaris Burgum, legatos clam mittit; mandans ut, sociatis sibi Constantinensibus et Bernard the Dane sends envoys to Harold, the Danish King.

King Harold lays waste Normandy.

Baiocasinis militibus, expeditione terrestri, ipse a partibus marinis, cum hostica classe, direptionibus Normanniam concuteret; quatenus, tali occasione, Rex Lodowicus ejus colloquium expeteret, et ipse Haraldus satageret de inimicis amici sui, Willelmi Ducis, vindicare. Quod et factis mox Haraldus implere curavit. Fama proinde volans, more solito, paganos occupasse maritima littora, Francos perterruit. Sed et Bernardus Danus et Radulfus Torta Regi Lodowyco per nuncium hujus infortunii intimaverunt adventum; qui, validum congregans exercitum, quantocius venit Rotomagum; hincque Regi Haraldo mandat, ut sibi apud Lekherlewyn occurrat, scire cupienti cur infestet terminos regni sui. Quæ res Regi Haraldo vehementer complacuit, decernenti

Conference between King Louis and King Harold.

mortem Ducis toto animo suo ulcisci. Ubi cum Reges ambo die præfinito convenissent, et de Willelmi Ducis injusta nece inter se diutius disceptarent, quidam Danus Herlewinum, Monasterioli Comitem, pro quo idem Dux occubuerat, inter alios prospiciens, zelo amici succensus, confestim lancea [1] perfodit illum, mortuumque sub momento stravit. Cujus mortem Lambertus, ejus frater,

Death of Count Herlouin.

cæterique Franci, amare ferentes, concitatis animis, ad dimicandum super Danos repentino impetu proruunt. Quos pagani viriliter excipientes, sæviente Marte, decem et octo satrapas, cum innumeris aliis, truncatos gladiis, ignivomo transmittunt Orco, aliis hac illacque [2] nutabundis quærentibus vitæ suffragia. Rex vero Lodowicus, velocis equi cursu a Regis Haraldi captione lapsus,

King Louis is defeated, and taken prisoner (A.D.945).

in cujusdam militis manus incidit. Cui cum multa promitteret, ne ejus proditione hosti traderetur, tandem miles, victus Regis lacrymis, eum clam subduxit in quandam Sequanæ insulam. Quod ut Bernardus Danus agnovit, captum mox militem in vincula conjecit. Qui, coactus suimet necessitate, invitus coram protulit quem, pro obtentu muneris, eruere disponebat. Rex igitur, ab

[1] *profodit eum* in ed. Camden. | [2] *nutabudis* in MS.

insula sublatus, Bernardi jussu, apud Rotomagum artatur sub custodia vehementi.

Consternation of Queen Gereberga, wife of Louis; and her appeal for aid.

Gereberga, Francorum Regina, audiens Regem, virum suum, a Normannis captum, diriguit, et, consternata animo, celerrime aggreditur patrem suum, [1] Henricum, scilicet, Regem Transrhenanum; orans ut, exercitu congregato, Rotomagum obsideret, et inde virum suum violenter abstraheret. Cujus infortunium cum Rex Henricus audisset, jure illi hoc contigisse respondit; quia fidem quam Willelmo Duci olim juraverat, ejus filium capiendo, nefarie corruperat.—"Per tuos," inquit, "O filia, "stude illum juvare, quoniam de propriis oportet me "tractare."

She appeals to Duke Hugh; and, through his agency, King Louis is set at liberty.

Hiis auditis a patre, Regina concite Franciam revertitur, rebus nequaquam prospere gestis. Dehinc supplex adiens Hugonem Magnum, postulat ut a Normannis extorqueret dominum suum. Hugo vero Dux, misso Bernardo Silvanectensi, Normannos convocat ad colloquium apud Sanctum Clerum. In quo colloquio eo deductum est negotium, ut Rex Francis redderetur, eo tenore, ut Normanni reciproce filium Regis acciperent obsidem, cum duobus episcopis, Beluacensi et Suessionensi. Quibus pactis strenue, Rex lætus Laudunum regreditur, et Normanni Rotomagum sunt regressi.

Conference of King Louis and Duke Hugh, with the Normans, and peace finally made.

Post hæc præfinito tempore, revocato Ricardo puero, qui fuerat in tutela Bernardi [2] Silvanectensis, Rex Franciæ, cum suis magnatibus et magna militari manu, venit super fluvium Epte, et Hugo Magnus, cum eo, ad habendum colloquium cum Normannis; ad quem locum occurrere Normanni, cum puero Ricardo. Discurrentibus autem ab utraque parte internunciis, Christo favente, pax inter eos firmis fœderibus, juratisque sacramentis, stabilitur, et obsides redduntur, præter Regis filium, qui medio tempore mortuus est apud Rotomagum. Hiis rite explicitis, Rex regreditur Laudunum,

The King's son, an hostage, dies at Rouen.

[1] Henry had died some years before: King Otho is meant.

[2] *Silvatenensis* in ed. Camden.

Richard is ill-treated by Radulph Torta; who is expelled by him.

et puer Ricardus Rotomagum. Quem [1] Rodulfus Torta, urbis præfectus, male illico cœpit tractare, et domesticos ejus penuria famis affligere, nolens plus solvere ad quotidianum victum illis quam duodecim nummos. Quamobrem Dux juvenis, vehementer furore succensus, ab urbe illum festinanter pepulit, Parisiumque ad filium suum, civitatis Præsulem, ire coegit. Quibus ita peractis, Normannica tellus siluit a facie Ducis. Haraldus vero, Rex Daciæ, non multo post in regnum regreditur, reconciliato sibi filio suo, Swano.

King Harold returns to Denmark.

Emma, daughter of Duke Hugh, is betrothed to Duke Richard.

Hugo Dux, considerans puerum Ricardum viribus convalescere, consilio Bernardi Silvanectensis, filiam suam, nomine "Emmam," illi despondit; quæ res Lodowicum, Regem, Francorumque proceres, valde perterruit, sed maxime Arnulfum Flandrensem, totius fraudis incentorem. Lodowicus siquidem Rex, ut didicit hos magnarum virium duces amoris vinculo [2] fore constrictos, consilio Arnulfi Flandrensis, misit eundem ad Transrhenanum Regem, Othonem, mandans quoniam, si Hugonem Magnum omnino [3] contereret, et terram [4] Northmannicam suo dominio subigeret, proculdubio Lotharicum regnum illi contraderet. Qui, gavisus nimium, audito quod diu optaverat, præparatis omnibus quæ ad tantum negotium erant congrua ac necessaria, velut tempestas valida, regno suo egressus, adjunctis sibi Lodowici, Regis Franciæ, et Arnulfi Flandrensis, exercitibus, cum multis militum legionibus, super Hugonem Magnum irruit, consumptisque omnibus quæ illius erant extra oppida, omne robur belli super Normannos, a patria exturbandos, immisit; præmittens, cum multo milite, 'nepotem suum ad terrendam Rotomagensium urbem. Quam cum aggressus fuit, Normannos intra muros delitescentes reperiens, suspicatus est omnes imbelles fore. Proinde concitatis militibus, cœpit expugnare portas vehementissime. At Normanni,

Offer made by King Louis to King Otho thereupon.

Otho wages war against Duke Hugh and the Normans.

Otho's nephew lays siege to Rouen.

[1] Or "*Radulfus.*"
[2] *fore cognoscens* in MS.
[3] *conterreret* in ed. Camden.
[4] *Nothmannicam* in MS.

portis patefactis, impetu repentino animis efferatis proruentes, tanto turbine depopulati sunt adversarios, ut, prostrato super pontem nepote Regis Othonis, vix ulli a certamine elaberentur. Porro Rex Otho, cum Rege Lodowico ac Flandrensi Arnulfo, lento gradu subsecutus, dispositis militum legionibus, cum accessisset ad obsidendam urbem, perspexissetque eam inexpugnabilem, audita morte nepotis sui, clam cœpit cum suis consultare de distrahendo Arnulfo Normannis, intra ecclesiam Sancti Petri almique [1] Audoeni, quæ sita est in suburbio civitatis. Sed Arnulfus, eo traditionis laqueo, deprehenso, papilionibus tentoriisque complicatis, ac [2] sarcinariis oneratis, in conticinio noctis, cum suo exercitu festinus aufugit. Otho vero, atque Lodowicus, consurgentes diluculo, ut didicerunt Arnulfum fugisse, illico itinere quo venerant gressus retorquent, dimissa obsidione. Quos discedentes Normanni adeo sunt persecuti, gladiis perimentes, ut per diversa reperirentur itinera prostrati, quasi bidentes. Plurimi autem illorum, dum per silvarum devia oberrarent, capti, per patriam Normannorum sunt distracti. Hic extitit eventus Othonis, Germannorum Imperatoris; hic Lodowici Regis finis, non multo post hominem exuentis.

Otho, hearing of the defeat and death of his nephew, treats of delivering Arnulph to the Normans.

Arnulph departs, with his troops, at night.

The siege is raised.

Slaughter of the besiegers.

Hugo denique Dux, fessus senio, cum novissimum sui exitus diem cerneret imminere, ascitis principibus sui Ducatus, eorum consilio, Ricardo, Duci Normannorum, flore juventutis vernanti, filium suum, nomine "Hugonem," commendare studuit, ut, ejus patrocinio tutus, inimicorum fraudibus non caperetur. Post cujus obitum, Dux filiam ejus, "Emmam" nomine, olim sibi desponsatam, a paterna domo sublatam, cum maximo tripudio et honore, Rotomagensibus intulit mœnibus, eam sibi jungens jure conjugali.

Duke Hugh, in his old age, commends his son, Hugh, to Duke Richard.

Richard marries Emma (A.D.960).

Carnotensis interea Comes, Theobaldus, exortis quibusdam simultatibus, Duci Ricardo cœpit adversari,

Theobald, Count of Chartres,

[1] *Andoeni* in ed. Camden. | [2] *sarsinariis* in MS.

lays waste Duke Richard's territory.

terram suam demoliendo rapinis. Cujus ausus temerarios illico viriliter Dux compressit. Theobaldus autem, suum inceptum spe minus valere considerans,

Theobald makes insinuations to Queen Gereberga.

Gerbergæ Reginæ de Ricardo Duce malevola verba cœpit suggerere; asserens quod, eo vivente, Lotharius, filius suus, Francorum Rex, nunquam regnum suum pacatum teneret: qua de re summe fore necessarium, ut excogitaret qualiter e terra tantum hostem exterminaret.

At the Queen's suggestion, an interview is proposed to the Duke by Bruno, Archbishop of Cologne.

Quibus verbis Regina credula, confestim Brunoni, Archipræsuli Coloniensi, et Duci, videlicet, fratri suo germano, legatum mittit; mandans quatenus suo nepoti subveniat, capere satagens Ricardum, infestissimum ejus regni adversarium, si qua via possit. Continuo quidam Episcopus a Brunone mittitur, qui ei suadeat ut sibi occurrat apud pagum Ambianensem ad colloquium, cupienti reconciliare sibi Regem, Francorumque regnum subdere suæ tuitioni.

The Duke receives a warning on the road, and returns to Rouen.

Quibus verbis Dux deceptus subdole, iter festinus arripuit. Cui eunti obvii fuerunt duo milites Theobaldi, quorum unus,—"Quorsum" ait, "illustrissime viro-"rum, gressum tendis? Vis esse Dux Normannorum, "an, extra patriam, custos ovium?" Hiis dictis, conticuit.—"Cujus," ait, "milites estis?" Ad hæc alter, —"Quid tibi," inquit, "cujus? Nonne tui?" Animadvertens igitur Dux eorum verba sibi ad consulendum, ac necessario providendum, dirigi, illos quidem digna mercede remuneravit; suum vero celerrime gressum retorquens, venit Rotomagum. Hoc modo Bruno delusus, regressus est, detectis suæ nequitiæ fraudibus.

The Archbishop returns, also, disappointed.

Treacherous message sent to the Duke by King Lothaire.

Exinanitc itaque tanto dolo, Lotharius Rex ad aliud palliatæ proditionis argumentum, hortante Theobaldo, iterato devolvitur, destinando Duci legatum, hujusmodi verbis instructum.—"Quousque," inquit, "Dux, servitii "debitum mihi detrectas exhibere? An ignoras me "Regem Francorum esse, cui te militiam oportet im-"pendere, cujus edictis atque consultis te nequaquam

" oportet contraire? Nonne de nostra [1] dissensione mei
" tuique gratulantur inimici? Resipisce ergo jam-
" jamque ab his obstinati animi altercationibus, et,
" accelerato itinere, festina mihi occurrere, ut, fœderati
" indissolubilibus pacis vinculis, deinceps per mutuam
" concordiam fruamur competentibus commodis, gau-
" deatque Rex de tanto suo Duce, et Dux de suo
" [2] carissimo Rege."

The Duke at first assents to the King's suggestions; but afterwards withdraws to Rouen.

Quibus simulatæ legationis ambagibus Dux illectus, illico Regi mandat se ultroneo libitu affuturum. Super his Rex vehementer gavisus, accitis Ducis inimicis, Baldewino, scilicet, Flandrensi, atque [3] Gorsfrido, Andegavensi, necnon Theobaldo, Carnotensi, super fluvium Helne venit concitus ad placitum detestandum. E contra, Dux ex altera parte aquæ sedit, cum manu militari. Cupiens autem scire quæ apud Regem gererentur, misit quosdam, qui renunciarent qui fuere contubernales Regis. Qui, repertis illic dictis Comitibus, irruere super Ducem disponentibus, confestim pernici cursu regressi, Ducem hortantur, ut a loco recedat, ne in manus incidat suorum hostium [4] publicorum. Qui mox loco recedens, et iter continuans, Rotomagum, cum suis omnibus, est regressus; sic detecta in propatulo fraude Regis, animositatem [5] ejus circa se agnovit.

The King returns to Lâon.

Perspiciens ergo Rex propositum sui voti floccipensum fore, Laudunum regreditur furibundus; non multo post, Theobaldo suggerente, Normanniam hostiliter petiturus.

He takes Evreux.

Moxque congregatis Burgundionum et Francorum copiis, civitatem Ebroicam aggressus, civibus incautis, dolo capit, et statim tradit Comiti Theobaldo, ad circumjacentem patriam expugnandam.

Duke Richard pursues the King.

Rege vero ab urbe recedente, Dux Ricardus e vestigio eum prosequitur, vastans prædis et incendiis totum Dunensem, sive Carnotensem, Comitatum, consumptisque omnibus, quæ

[1] *dissencione* in MS.
[2] *karissimo* in MS.
[3] *Gorfrido* in ed. Camden.
[4] *pupplicorum* in MS.
[5] Om. in ed. Camden.

Theobaldi erant, cum innumera plebe, revertitur ad propria. Nec mora,—Theobaldus, vicissitudine reciproca, collecto clam exercitu, ad dedecus Ducis, papiliones fixit, et magalia, apud Vermentrudis villam, et infestissimorum hostium stationem componit ibidem. Unde Dux providissimus, intempestæ noctis silentio, alveo Sequanæ transmeato, diluculo super eos irruens, illos tanta strage profligavit, ut, sexcentis quadraginta peremptis, reliqui per diversa silvarum lustra diffugerent vulnerati. Ipse vero Theobaldus, dedecorose fugiens cum paucis, latitando per devia saltus Carnotum venit confusus. Quo die, Christo illi reddente vicem, filius ejus moritur, et tota Carnotena urbs incendio consumitur. Dux vero, ad campum belli regressus, mortuosque reperiens, misericordia motus, sepeliri eos jussit, ac vulneratos Rotomagum leniter deportari, et a medicis ibi curari, sanatos quoque Theobaldo remitti.

Theobald encamps at Hermondville.

The Duke surprises, and routs, his troops.

Theobald takes to flight.

Humanity of Duke Richard.

Dux itaque, videns tantarum fraudium Regis molimina super se imminere, Francorumque Comites unanimiter contra se sævire, Haraldo, Danorum Regi, legatos [1] dirigit; orans ut illi succurrat ocius, paganorumque multitudine Francorum rabiem solo tenus comprimat. Cujus legatos Rex gaudenter recepit, et muneribus ditatos maximis Duci remisit, seque missurum celerrime juvamen [2] spopondit. Quid plura? Mox ad tantæ expeditionis negotium paganica juventus præparatur, omnique armorum apparatu innumerabilis exercitus; qui, [3] celeri cursu navium permenso mari, ad Sequanica devolvuntur ora. Quibus mox obviam gaudenter Dux processit, atque, eo præeunte, sulcantes remigio alveum Sequanæ, ad Givoldi Fossam devehuntur; ibique fixis anchoris, consulunt de subversione Franciæ. Et ecce! repentino tumultu e navibus proruunt, totamque in circuitu patriam exitiali flamma comburunt. Dehinc distrahuntur viri, cum mulieribus concatenati, deprædantur vici, desolantur urbes, subvertuntur castra, in soli-

Duke Richard sends envoys to Harold, King of Denmark.

The Danes arrive in the Seine, and are established at Fosse Givold (Jeu Fosse).

[1] *mittit, orat* in ed. Camden.
[2] *spospondit* in ed. Camden.
[3] *sceleri* in MS.; *clerici* in ed. Camden.

tudinem redigitur omnis terra, fit luctus omnium in commune per Theobaldi Comitatum, nullo cane latrante; ubi vero illa deficiunt, regalia jura mox invadunt; quæ vero Francis subtrahunt, Normannis possidenda vili pretio conducunt. Manet libera a paganorum rapinis tellus Normannica; Francia, nullo resistente, distrahitur captiva.

They lay waste the country of Theobald.

Cum hæc agerentur, [1] synodalis Episcoporum conventus apud Laudunum [2] congregatur, investigaturus cur Christianus populus his cladibus affligatur. Mittentes denique quendam Carnotensem Præsulem Duci, sciscitantur ab eo, cujus rei causa tam execranda a Christianissimo piissimoque [3] viro processerit severitas. A quo cum Regis fraudes, et Theobaldi urbis Ebroicæ subreptionem, Pontifex didicisset, confestim a paganicis irruptionibus inducias petit, et adipiscitur, in quibus Præsules adducant loco [4] opportuno Regem Lotharium, de omnibus benevolo animo illi satisfacturum.

The Bishop of Chartres is sent to the Duke, by a Synod of the Bishops, as a mediator.

Igitur audiens Theobaldus absque suo consulto Regem pacem quærere, formidans ne totum seditionis pondus super eum incumbat, quemdam monachum Duci, cum festinatione, mittit, [5] mandans se in quibus illum offenderat valde pœnitere, Ebroicamque urbem illi reddere velle. Hiis Dux auditis, lætus efficitur, et, concessa securitate, copiam illi indulget ad se veniendi. Qui non solum illi urbem reddidit, verum etiam, firmatis amicitiis, cum multis donariis ab eo recessit gaudens. Imminente vero die præfiniti colloquii, Dux apud Givoldi Fossam in paganorum castris tentoria miræ magnitudinis construi jussit, in quibus Rex Lotharius, cum suis optimatibus, receptus est; illicque satisfecit Duci, pactis fœderibus, juratis sacramentis. His ita Dux expletis salubriter, paganorum plurimos ad Christi fidem convertit sacris monitis. Alios vero, in paganismo

Theobald also treats with the Duke, and surrenders Evreux.

Peace is made with Lothaire, the French King.

Certain of the Danes

[1] *sinodalis* in MS.
[2] *celebratur* in ed. Camden.
[3] *principe* in ed. Camden.
[4] *oportuno* in MS.
[5] *nuncians se* in ed. Camden.

wage war in Spain.

permanere disponentibus, transmisit ad Hispanias, ubi plurima bella perpetrantes, decem et octo diruerunt urbes.

Death of Emma, wife of Duke Richard.

He marries Gunnor.

His children by her.

Eo tempore, Emma, Ducis uxor, filia Magni Hugonis, moritur, absque liberis. Ipse vero, non multo post, quamdam speciosissimam virginem, nomine "Gunnor," ex nobilissima Danorum prosapia ortam, sibi matrimonio copulavit, Christiano more. Ex qua filios genuit, Ricardum, videlicet, et Robertum, atque Malgerium, et duos alios, necnon et tres filias; quarum una, "Emma" nomine, nupsit Egelredo, Regi Anglorum, de qua idem Rex Edwardum Regem, necnon Aluredum, Godwini Comitis longo post tempore dolis interemptum, procreavit. Secunda vero, "Hawisa" vocata, Gorsfrido Britannorum juncta Comiti, Alanum et Eudonem Duces progenuit. Tertia quidem Comiti Odoni, nomine "Ma-" tildis," de qua sermo orietur in posteris.

Duke Richard builds a noble church, at Fescamp; and restores certain abbeys.

Cum igitur Dux Ricardus multorum operum bonorum polleret incrementis, inter plurima, apud Fiscamium, miræ magnitudinis et pulchritudinis, in honorem [1] Deificæ Sanctæ Trinitatis, templum construxit, mirificisque ornamentis multimode adornavit. Quasdam etiam Abbatias instauravit; unam siquidem in suburbio Rotomagensi, in honorem Sancti Petri, aliamque Audoeni, aliam in monte qui dicitur [2] "Tumba," in venerationem Archangeli Michaelis, gregibus monachorum insignivit.

The son of Duke Hugh succeeds to the throne of France (A.D.987). His son Robert succeeds him (A.D.996).

Tempore sub eodem, mortuo Francorum Rege, Lotharrio, illius loco ab omnibus subrogatur Hugonis Magni Ducis, filius, adminiculante ei Duce Ricardo. Qui, cito post moriens, regnum Franciæ filio suo, Roberto, reliquit, viro piissimo ac religiosissimo. Dux Ricardus his beatitudinis prærogativis profusius floruit, ut quos audiebat discordes, aut per se aut per suos legatos concordes redderet, [3] Scriptura dicente,—"Beati pedes pacem

[1] *Dei et Sanctæ* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Tubæ* in ed. Camden.
[3] Probably, in reference to *Isaiah*. lii. 7, and *Nahum* i. 15.

" portantes." Erat autem statura procerus, vultu decorus, corpore integer, barba prolixa, cano decoratus capite ; providus clericorum suffragator, superborum contemptor, humilium amator, pauperum sustentator, orphanorum tutor, viduarum defensor, captivorum redemptor. Description of Duke Richard's person and qualities.

His et hujusmodi boni odoris flosculis Dux Ricardus in laicali habitu redolens, vera gemma Christi, corporis ægritudine cœpit vehementer aggravari ; convocatoque fratre suo uterino, Rodulfo Comite, consilium exigit de patriæ dispositione. Qui, nimio turbatus dolore, ac aliquantisper factus elinguis, novissime, resumpto spiritu, hæc responsa reddit Duci ;—" Quamvis, dulcissime " frater, atque serenissime senior, viribus corporis videa- " ris destitui, tamen dum in hac vita te gaudemus " amplecti, tuum est de totius patriæ statu disponere." Duke Richard, sensible of his failing health, sends for Count Rodulph, his uterine brother.

Quo audito, Dux, accitis undique suis optimatibus, Ricardum, suum filium, coram exponit, hoc eum commendans et præficiens eloquio :—" Hactenus, commili- " tones optimi, militiæ vestræ præfui ; nunc, vocante " Deo, morbo crudescente, compellor a vobis sepa- " rari. Proinde, si mei aliquando amatores fuistis, oro " vos, ut hunc meum filium, loco mei, vobis præficiatis, " eique fideles sitis, sicut semper mihi fuistis. Jam " enim, me ingrediente viam universæ carnis, ulterius " habere non potestis." The Duke presents his son, Richard, to the nobles ; who is accepted as his successor.

His ab eo lugubre prolatis, protinus tota domus concutitur lacrymis et gemitibus. Tandem sopitis fletibus, assensum præbent omnes Ducis voluntati, Ricardum adolescentem, pacta ei fidelitate, collaudantes principem. Deinde languore ingravescente, lecto prosternitur, et, libratis sursum oculis, inter verba orationis, plenus dierum spiritum efflavit. Obiit autem apud Fiscamium, nongentesimo nonagesimo sexto anno ab Incarnatione Domini Iesu Christi. Death of Duke Richard I., A. D. 996.

Ricardus, Ricardi Primi filius, fulgoris sui radios per diversos orbis cardines, post patris excessum, sparsit nomine glorioso, et totam pene Normannicam patriam unam Christi insignivit Ecclesiam. Qui in armis stre- Celebrity as a promoter of the Christian religion,

of Duke Richard II.

nuus, ubique armatas legiones militum rexit nobiliter, de inimicis victoriam semper accipere consuetus. Et quamvis sæculari actui foret deditus, totus tamen fuit fide Catholicus, et erga Domini cultores benevolus et devotus. Sub cujus moderamine plurima monachorum adolevere ovilia; qui, velut apes, ex multis sanctorum canistris actuum erumpentes, lucidissima in cœlestes thesauros intulerunt mella.

Rising of the Norman peasantry.

Cum igitur tantæ probitatis exuberaret copiis, in initio suæ juventutis contigit intra Ducatum Normannicum quoddam pestiferi [1] dissidii oriri seminarium. Nam rustici unanimes, per diversos totius Normannicæ patriæ Comitatus, agentes conventicula, juxta suos libitus vivere decernebant, quatinus, tam in silvarum compendiis, quam in aquarum commerciis, nullo obsistente obice perante statuti juris, legibus uterentur suis. Quæ ut rata manerent, ab unoquoque cœtu furentis vulgi duo eliguntur legati, qui decreta ad mediterraneum ferrent roboranda conventum. Quod ut Dux agnovit, protinus fratrem suum, Rodulfum Comitem, cum militum multitudine, illis destinavit, qui et agrestem comprimeret ferocitatem, et rusticam dirimeret concionem. Qui, non morans jussa, cunctos confestim legatos, cum nonnullis aliis, cepit; truncatisque manibus ac pedibus, inutiles suis remisit, qui eos a talibus ausis compescerent, et, ne deteriora paterentur, eventibus suis cautos redderent. His rustici expertis, concionibus omissis, festinato ad sua aratra sunt reversi.

It is quelled by Count Rodulph.

Revolt of William, Count of Exmes, half-brother of Duke Richard II.

He is imprisoned.

Eadem tempestate, Willelmus, frater Ducis ex [2] patre progenitus, cui Dux Oximensem Comitatum contulerat, spreto illius dominio, ab illius se cohibuit fidelitatis obsequio. Qui, dum per legatos a Duce sæpius ob id objurgaretur, et resipiscere nullo modo vellet, consultu et auxilio Rodulfi Comitis, in [3] turre Rotomagensis urbis detruditur, temeritatis pœnitudinem per quin-

---

[1] *discidii* in MS.
[2] *parte* in ed. Camden.
[3] *turrim . . . . civitatis* in ed. Camden.

quennium ibi luens. Illos vero qui seditionis causa fuere, vita privavit, alios consentientes exules de suis finibus exturbavit. Tandem, post quinquennium, Willelmus, cujusdam sui militis factione, longissimo func per eminentiorem fenestram a turre lapsus, fugam iniit; et post tempus aliquod, cum penes se deliberasset sibi fore salubrius cum vitæ discrimine fratris clementiam [1] attentare, quam cujuspiam regis aut comitis suffragium, nil sibi quandoque profuturum, expetere, contigit ut die quadam Ducem reperiret, se in saltu Vernensi ludis venatuum exercentem. Cujus vestigiis illico solo tenus provolutus, veniam commissi ab eo lugubris expetebat. Quem protinus Dux, misericordia motus, favente Rodulfo Comite, a terra erigens, et evasionis suæ, ipso narrante, casum agnoscens, non solum errata sibi indulsit, verum etiam benevolo animo, ut fratrem [2] carissimum, deinceps dilexit, et Comitatum [3] Ocensem illi donavit; dans insuper ei quamdam puellam speciosam valde, "Litselinam" nomine, filiam viri nobilissimi, [4] vocabulo "Turkettilli"; ex qua tres genuit filios, Robertum, [5] scilicet, post ejus mortem, Comitatus illius hæredem, et Willelmum, Suessionensem Comitem, et Hugonem, Luxoviensem Præsulem. Quibus ita sopitis, terra Normannica siluit a facie Ducis.

Escape of William.

He is forgiven by the Duke.

The wife and children of William.

Circa præsens tempus, Ethelredus, Rex Anglorum, Emmam, Ducis sororem, habens in conjugio, quibusdam exortis [6] dissensionum incentivis, Duci nocere sitiens, maximam navium multitudinem in mare jussit impelli, ac militibus ex omni regno mandavit, ut, constituto ab eo die, ad eas convenirent decenter armati. Quibus valida austeritate, regio more, præcepit, ut euntes totam Normanniam rapinis et incendiis exterminarent; solummodo Archangeli Michaelis Monti parcerent, ne tantæ sanctitatis et religionis locum igne concremarent: sed et Ricardum Ducem, captum, vinctis

Expedition of Ethelred, King of England, against Normandy.

Duke Richard to be taken prisoner.

---

[1] *attemptare* in MS.
[2] *charissimum* in MS.
[3] *Oxunensem ipsi* in ed. Camden.
[4] *vocati* in ed. Camden.
[5] Om. in ed. Camden.
[6] *dissencionum* in MS.

post tergum manibus, subjugata sibi patria, vivum suis conspectibus præsentarent.

The English land in the Côtentin.

His edictis, cum festinatione eos ire imperavit. Qui mox, velivolo sulcantes æquora vento, ad littora Sare devolvuntur, permenso maris limbo. Hinc prorumpentes e navibus, continuo maritima confinia exitiali Vulcano tradunt. Quod ut [1] Nigellus a speculatoribus comperit, militibus Constantinensibus congregatis, cum multitudine vulgi, repentino impetu super eos irruit, tantaque illos strage delevit, ut nullus penitus remaneret, qui facta posteris nunciaret. Nam unus illorum, cursu nimio fatigatus, a longe resederat, qui, videns sociorum infortunia, timore territus, corporisque imbecillitatem oblitus, ad naves concurrit quantocius, nuncians custodibus exitia sociorum. Qui pariter ex omnibus ad tres tutiores naves [2] se conferentes, intra sinum maris remigio se contulerunt, de vita diffidentes; pansisque velis in sublime, cursu citissimo Regem suum expetierunt, vento ad votum spirante. Quos ut vidit, protinus Ducem exigere cœpit ab eis. Cui illi,—"Nos," aiunt, "serenissime Rex, Ducem non vidimus, sed cum "unius Comitatus gente ferocissima, nostro cum interitu, "dimicavimus. Ubi non modo sunt [3] viri fortissimi "bellatores, sed et fœminæ pugnatrices, quosque hostium "vectibus [4] hydriarum suarum robustissimos excere-"brantes; a quibus scito tuos milites extinctos esse "omnes." Quibus Rex auditis, suam agnoscens insipientiam, tristis erubuit.

They are defeated by Neel.

One only escapes of those who had landed.

Report given thereon to the English King.

Geoffrey, Count of Bretagne, marries the Duke's sister.

Gaufridus, Comes Britanniæ, cernens Ducem Ricardum in omnibus prosperari, et ejus magnificentiam toto orbe dilatari, intra se deliberare cœpit, quod si [5] sororis Ducis, nomine "Hadwis," jungeretur connubio, inter eos nodus amoris fortior [6] necteretur; eam sibi dari toto annisu poposcit. Cujus voluntati Dux gra-

---

[1] *Rugellus* in ed. Camden.
[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[3] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[4] *hidriarum* in MS.
[5] *sorori* in ed. Camden.
[6] *nacteretur* in MS.

tanter favit, principibus Normannorum assensum præbentibus; celebratisque, Christiano more, cum inæstimabili honore, nuptiis, non multo post, cum immensis muneribus eos ovantes abire permisit. Ex qua dictus Gaufridus expost duos filios genuit, Alanum, videlicet, et Eudonem; qui, post ejus excessum, Britannicam patriam robusto vigore rexere longo tempore.

King Ethelred's treachery against the Danes, in England (A. D. 1002).

Cum, in statu supradicto, sub tam præclaro rectore Normannia polleret feliciter, Rex Anglorum, Ethelredus, regnum, quod sub magna potentissimorum regum gloria diu floruerat, tanto [1] nefariæ proditionis scelere polluit, ut etiam pagani [2] nefas tam execrabile horrendum judicarent. Nam Danos, per omne regnum unanimi concordia secum pacifice cohabitantes, mortis periculum minime suspicantes, subito furore, sub una die perimi [3] [jussit]; mulieres quoque, alvo tenus, terræ esse defossas, et, ferocissimis canibus concitatis, mamillas ab earum pectoribus crudeliter extorqueri. Lactantes vero pueros, ad domorum postes allisos, excerebrari jussit, nullis criminum existentibus culpis.

News thereof is carried to Sweyn, King of Denmark.

Cum igitur apud Londoniam, sub hujus decreti die, hæc congeries peremptorum, lictorum sævitia, in immensum cumularetur, quidam juvenes, agilitate pernices, ad quamdam navem se conferentes, fugæ præsidio, per Tamisæ alveum celeri remigio petierunt maris sinum. Permensoque prolixi ponti spatio, novissime cupitum applicant Danamarchiæ portum, Regi Sweno cruenta gentis suæ exitia nunciantes. Tunc Rex, dolore cordis tactus intrinsecus, accitis totius regni sui principibus, cunctam rei seriem illis exponit, quidque agendum consulerent, diligenter inquirit. Qui, amicorum et propinquorum [4] ærumnis atque luctu moti, quasi ex uno ore, omnes eorum sanguinem decreverunt totis viribus ulcisci debere.

---

[1] *nephariæ* in MS.
[2] *nephas* in MS.
[3] Omitted in MS.
[4] *erumpnis* in MS.

King Sweyn prepares to invade England (A. D. 1003).

Hiis Rex auditis, sub festinatione cunctos degentes sub suo regimine præparari [1] jussit; missisque hac illacque veredariis, milites lucri cupidos de exteris regnis ad hanc expeditionem, sub præfixo ab eo die, venire mandavit. Porro termino adveniente statuto, ad naves immensus illico concurrit exercitus. Dehinc in sublime [2] elevantes vexilla regalia, librantesque ventis vela, protensi maris intervallo velificato, ad Eboraca territoria devehuntur. Ibi quippe Rex, dimisso exercitu, cum nonnullis navibus, pacis gratia, apud Rotomagum Ducem Ricardum aggreditur. Quem cum Dux aliquanta mora tractaret regaliter, pacem inter se continuam firmaverunt; ea lege, videlicet, ut per succedentia Danorum Regum, Normannorumque Ducum, ac eorum hæredum, tempora, firma perpetualiter maneret inter eos, et quæ Dani abstulissent inimicis, emenda conferrent Normannis. Si quis vero Danorum, invalidus aut vulneratus, amicorum indigeret juvamine, apud Normannos, quasi in domo propria, sub securitate sanaretur. Quæ lex ut rata maneret ab utraque parte, sacramentorum tenore illam sanxerunt illorum principes.

Leaving his troops in England, Sweyn visits Duke Richard at Rouen.

Alliance between the Normans and the Danes.

Yorkshire is ravaged by the Danes.

Quibus Rex expletis ad votum, muneratus dignis a Duce muneribus, quantocius ad suos regreditur, qui remanserant prope civitatem Eboraci: ut vero suo junctus est exercitui, continuo Anglorum regnum ultricibus tradit flammis. Videntes itaque Eboracenses se a nullo juvari, datis obsidibus, illi se subdiderunt; et cum venissent Cantiam, gens illius patriæ simili modo [3] fecere. Dehinc circa Londonias obsidionem componit. Cujus impetum Londonienses non ferentes, jugo servitutis illius colla ferina inviti supposuere. Ethelredus autem Rex, apud Wintoniam degens, ut vidit se ab Anglis destitui, sublatis a terra thesauris, cum uxore

Sweyn takes London, and Ethelred retires to Normandy (A. D. 1013).

---

[1] *misit* in ed. Camden.
[2] *elivantes* in ed. Camden.
[3] Sic in MS., in the plural.

et filiis, Edwardo, scilicet, et Aluredo, in Normanniam Ducem Ricardum expetiit. A quo decenter exceptus, cum magnis opum apparatibus, omne sui incolatus tempus Rotomagi cum eo exegit.

Death of Sweyn (A. D. 1014).

Swenus igitur, dum apud Londoniam de regni tractaret dispositione, mortem obiit, interceptus ægritudine. Cujus corpus Dani deponentes in navi, aromatibus conditum, cum festinatione apud Danemarchiam devexerunt tumulandum. Quo tumulato, filius ejus, "Cnutus" nomine, arma illius sumens, exercitum viriliter roborat, et, ne ab iterata expeditione resipiscant, totis [1] nisibus exaggerat: missisque legatis, duos Reges evocat ad suum suffragium, Lacman Suanorum, et Olavum Noricorum.

He is succeeded by his son Cnute.

Ethelred returns to England.

Interea, dum hæc geruntur, audiens mortem Sweni, Ethelredus Rex, [2] præparatis omnibus ad navigandum, cum uxore lætus ad suum revertitur regnum, dimissis cum avunculis duobus suis filiis, Edwardo, [3] scilicet, et Aluredo. Rex itaque Cnutus, collectis undequaque militum legionibus, velut turbo validus, a regno suo egressus, procellosum mare tentat intrepidus, subductisque in altum navibus, velivolo cursu ad Anglos cum suis devehitur. Inde petens Tamisæ fluvium, celeriter appulit Londoniæ Comitatum. Cui, cum suis, egredienti de navibus, occurrentes Angli ex omni regno, apud Auxendunum congregati, ad suam perniciem, cruentissimum illi intulere bellum. Cum quibus Rex, efferatis legionum suarum animis, confligens atrociter, tanta eos internecione delevit, ut nullus hominum queat supputare quot millia die illa gentis Anglicæ corruere. Hinc Rex, celeri se movens fiducia, Londoniam circumdat obsidione; intra quam urbem Ethelredus Rex tunc temporis graviter ægrotabat, et, crudescente morbo corporis, non multo post hominem exuit.

Defeat of the English by the Danes.

Cnute besieges London.

Death of Ethelred (A. D. 1016).

---

[1] *viribus* in ed. Camden.
[2] *paratis* in ed. Camden.
[3] Om. in ed. Camden.

Cnute marries Queen Emma (A. D. 1017). His children by her.

Rex igitur Cnutus, audita morte Regis, suorum consultu fidelium, præcavens in futurum, Emmam Reginam, abstractam ab urbe, post aliquot dies, sibi junxit, Christiano more, dans pro illa cuncto exercitui in auro et argento pensum illius corporis. Ex qua, succedente tempore, genuit filium, nomine "Hardechnutum," postmodum Danorum regem, et filiam, vocabulo "Gunnildem," quæ nupsit Henrico, Romanorum Imperatori.

Cnute becomes King of England.

Diffidentes quoque Londonii de sua salute, quippe cum diuturna laborarent fame, patefacta urbe, se suaque omnia Regi sponte dedere. Quibus peractis, omne robur Anglici regni succubuit dominio Regis Cnuti. Hæc in hujus serie intexuimus, ut Edwardi Regis ortum ignorantibus monstraremus. Nunc vero ad propositum retorqueatur stilus, a quo paulisper digressi sumus.

Odo (or Eudes), Count of Chartres, marries Matildis, sister of Duke Richard.

Sub eisdem temporibus, Odo, Carnotensis Comes, Ducis Ricardi sororem, "Matilden" nomine, duxit in uxorem; cui Dux medietatem Dorcasini castri dedit, dotis nomine, cum terra super Arne fluvium adjacente. Sed illa post annos aliquot, sine liberis, moriente, Comes Odo Duci, repetenti dictam terram, cum castri tuitione Dorcasini, noluit quietam dimittere. Quapropter, Dux, accitis Britonibus, cum Normannorum legionibus, super Arne fluvium hostiliter veniens, castrum condidit, quod "Tegulense" vocavit; sumptisque ex Odonis Comitatu alimóniis, eandem munitionem abundantissime instauravit, relinquens ibidem custodes, de quorum fidelitate certus fuit.

He refuses to surrender the castle of Dreux.

Odo lays siege to Tillieres, a castle of the Duke.

Odo vero Comes, convocatis clam ad sui suffragium Hugone siquidem Cinomannensi, ac Walerando Mellentensi, cum multis copiis militum, tota nocte equitans, diluculo ad Tegulense castrum venit, signiferis præeuntibus. Quos ut viderunt proceres, quos illic Dux dimiserat, dimissis custodibus intra municipium, repentino impetu foras erumpentes cum suis, cum eis prœlium commiserunt. Quos ita prostraverunt, ut, multis peremptis, plurimis vulneratis, reliqui per

devia fugientes, opaca silvarum latibula quærerent nutabundi. Odo atque Walerandus, vitæ quærentes suffragium, se occuluerunt Dorcasini castri munitione. Hugo nempe, equo cui insederat, extincto, pede fugiens, ad caulas divertit ovium, loricam, quam indutus erat, sub sulco tegens telluris. Dehinc [1] chlamyde opilionis se amiciens, septaque gregium [2] indefatigabiliter humeris de loco ad locum ferens, Normannos hortabatur, ut quantocius persequerentur hostes, non longe ante eos turpiter abeuntes. Quibus recedentibus, prævio pastore, silvarum lustra carpens, tandem post triduum Cinomannis venit, vepribus et sentibus miserabiliter pedes ac tibias cruentatus.

Odo is defeated, and takes refuge at Dreux. Hugh, Count of Maine, escapes by disguise.

Dux igitur, videns Odonem Comitem ad tantam devolutum esse vecordiam, missis legatis, duos Reges, cum paganica multitudine, ex transmarinis partibus evocat, in suum auxilium, Olavum, scilicet, Noricorum, et [3] Lacmannum Suanorum. Qui, lætis animis cum suis exercitibus pariter congregati, cursu celeri [4] ad Britannorum finitima littora navigio devenere. Quorum repentinum Britones agnoscentes accessum, arbitrati sunt eos, ad prædam inhiantes, incautos præoccupare. Pagani vero, dolos eorum comperientes, quadam usi versutia, per campi planitiem, quo illos noverant fore venturos, profundissimos foderunt cuniculos, in superficie angustos, ut supervenientes equites, cruribus eqorum confractis, indecenter humo præcipitarentur, et sic facilius gladiis perimerentur. Venientes ergo Britones atrociter irruunt super hostes. Quorum mox prostrati decipulis, tantam illorum sævitiam sunt perpessi, ut vix e prœlio elaberentur perpauci. Inde prolixius pagani progredientes, castrum Doli obsident, captumque igne comburunt, interfectis ejus incolis, cum Salemone, Advocato loci. Deinde sublatis anchoris, repetentes mare, velificante classe, ad ora Sequanæ devehuntur; carpentes-

Duke Richard obtains the aid of the Kings of Norway and Sweden.

Landing in Bretagne, they defeat the Bretons by a stratagem.

The Danes burn Dol, and sail up the Seine.

[1] *clamide* in MS.
[2] *infatigabiliter* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Lacinam* in ed. Camden.
[4] *ab* in MS.

que fluminis alveum, pernici remigio applicant Rotomagum; quos Dux, vehementer gavisus, regaliter excepit honore competenti.

Through the agency of Robert, King of France, a treaty is made at Coudres (A. D. 1020).

Rex autem Francorum, Robertus, audiens paganos Britannis tanta probra intulisse, Ducemque Ricardum, ad confutandum Comitis Odonis contumaciam, eos accersisse, verens ne ab eis Francia demoliretur, convocatis satrapis sui regni, ambos discordes ad se, apud Coldras, convenire mandavit; ubi sopitis eorum animis, protinus illos concordes reddidit; eo quidem tenore, ut Odo Dorcasinum castrum teneret, et Dux præreptam terram reciperet reciproce, Tegulensi castro in suo statu perpetualiter persistente, in ejus, scilicet, suorumque hæredum, potestate.

The two Kings being now dismissed, Olaf is converted to Christianity.

Quibus Dux ad vota peractis, ad suos Reges regreditur lætus; muneratisque congruis donis regaliter, ovanter ad propria redire permisit, quandoque ad ejus juvámen reverti paratos. Rex autem Olavus, super Christiana religione oblectatus, spreto idolorum cultu, cum nonnullis suorum, hortante Archiepiscopo Roberto, ad Christi fidem conversus est; atque ab eo baptismate lotus, sacroque chrismate delibutus, de percepta gratia gaudens, ad suum regnum est reversus. Qui postea, a suis proditus, et a perfidis injuste peremptus, cœlestem regiam intravit, Rex et Martyr gloriosus, coruscans nunc apud géntem illam prodigiis et virtutibus.

Duke Richard marries Judith, sister of the Count of Bretagne.

His ita gestis, [1]Dux, de successione prolis sollicitus, audiens Goisfridum, Britannorum Comitem, habere quamdam sororem, "Judith" nomine, corpore elegantem, omnique morum honestate pollentem, hanc in connubium petit, per legatos. Cujus propositum Goisfridus ultroneo animo satagens accelerare, omnibus quæ ad tantum negotium erant congrua præparatis, eam illi deduxit usque ad limina Archangeli Michaelis; ubi

[1] *Dux Richardus* in ed. Camden.

Dux, illam suscipiens cum honore, eam sibi junxit legitimo jure. De qua tres genuit filios; scilicet, Ricardum, Robertum, atque Willelmum, (qui factus est monachus apud Fiscamium,) totidemque filias, quarum una, nomine "Adeliz," nupsit Rainaldo, Burgundionum Comiti; altera Baldewino, Flandrensi; tertia, jam adulta, obiit virgo. Porro Goisfridus Comes expost, orationis obtentu, Romam proficiscens, totam Britanniam, cum duobus filiis, Alano, videlicet, atque Eudone, reliquit sub Ducis advocatu. Qui, peragratis Sanctorum locis, in repatriando, præventus morte, diem obiit.

His children by her.

The Duke is made guardian to the children of the Count.

Tempore illo, cum Burchardus, Milidunensis castri Comes, moraretur apud curiam Regis Francorum, Roberti, quidam ejus miles, nomine "Walterus," cœcatus muneribus, illud ei dolo surripuit, Odonique Comiti clandestina proditione tradidit. Quod ut Rex comperit, Odoni mandavit, quatenus castrum sponte desereret, quod sibi usurpaverat minus juste. Sed ille, loci fisus munimine, ob decurrentis in gyro alveum Sequanæ, regiis legatis respondit, illud, vita comite, se nunquam ulli reddere. His Rex oppido exacerbatus verbis, Ricardum, Normannorum Ducem, ad colloquium accersivit; cui sui ruboris dedecus deposuit, orans ejus gratissimam fidelitatem subventuram sibi, ne tanto præsumptionum ludibrio premeretur a suis. Cujus opprobrium Dux non ferens, congregato miræ multitudinis exercitu, quantocius Milidunum venit, illudque obsedit ex una parte fluminis, et Rex, cum suis, ex altera, die noctuque illud quatientes cum turbine gravi, machinis, et tormentis.

Walter, a knight, betrays the castle of Melun, belonging to Count Burchard, to Count Odo.

The King of France and the Duke of Normandy lay siege the castle.

Videntes itaque Milidunenses se non posse tolerare tantam vim hostium, distracto Duci, tumido [1] rebellatori, portas repente aperiunt, eumque, cum suis, introducunt. Quorum Dux parcens multitudini, traditorem protinus Regi destinavit, mandans ut milites dirigeret, qui

The castle is surrendered.

[1] *rebellatore* in MS.

The King orders Walter and his wife to be hanged.

castrum in sua fidelitate custodirent. Quo Rex exhilaratus nuncio, continuo illud Burchardo reddidit, et proditorem, cum uxore propria, patibulo suspendi jussit, debitam reddens illis talionem pro præsumptione factionis. Post hæc, Dux, cum benedictione regali, ad propria remeavit. Cujus temporibus semper fuerunt assueti hostes fugare Normanni, terga vertere nulli.

Henry, Duke of Burgundy, leaves the Duchy to Robert, King of France; who besieges Count Landric in Auxerre, aided by Duke Richard.

Annis abhinc tribus emensis, Henricus, Burgundionum Dux, moritur absque liberis, Robertum, Francorum Regem, relinquens sui Ducatus hæredem. Quem suscipere Burgundiones, fastu supercilii, refutantes, Landricum, Nivernensem Comitem, intra Altissiodorum tamdiu obsedit, donec Landricum, cum urbe, obsidibus sumptis, suo dominatui subjugaret. Inde vero profectus, cum Duce Ricardo, pene totam vastavit Burgundiam robore vehementi. Quibus rite peractis, Rex, per cuncta castella custodibus deputatis, Robertum, filium suum, Ducatui subrogavit. Et sic arrogantia repugnantium cassata quievit. Post hæc, Rex in Franciam, et Dux regreditur cum suis in Normanniam.

Count Rainald marries Adeliz, daughter of Duke Richard.

Cognita quoque mirandorum operum Ducis opinione, Rainaldus trans Aone, fluvium Burgundionum, Comes, missis legatis, filiam ejus, nomine "Adeliz," sibi petiit in conjugium. Quam impetratam a paterna domo auferens in Burgundiam, cum magno duxit honore, suoque toro, Christiana lege, sociavit. Qui longo post tempore, obortis fomentis litium, a Comite Cabilonensi, "Hugone" nomine, dolo captus, sub diræ custodiæ ergastulo detruditur, compedibusque gravissimis artatur. Cujus incompetentem anxietatem Dux ut agnovit, illico legatos direxit Hugoni, mandans ut, pro amore suo, sineret generum suum abire liberum. Quam legationem Hugo tumide spernens, non modo eum reddere contempsit, verum etiam, custodibus adhibitis, vehementius custodiri jussit. Quod cum relatum Duci fuisset, protinus Ricardo, filio suo, imperavit, ut, coacto in unum Normannorum exercitu, Burgundiam adiret,

Rainald is made prisoner by Hugh, Count of Chalons.

Duke Richard commands his son,

suamque injuriam de funesto totis nisibus vindicaret. Quæ jussa adolescens libenter exequens, præparatis quæ ad [1] tanti itineris erant necessaria, velut tempestas procellosa, cuncta coram se proturbans, egressus a patria, confecto calle, Burgundiam invasit, cum innumerabilium multitudine Normannorum, castrumque Menwaldum cinxit obsidione. Quod captum, cum viris ac mulieribus, atque parvulis, comburunt terra tenus, eo quod incolæ, fidentes loci munimine, telis ac sagittis hostes, ad sui perniciem, provocaverant. Inde retorquentes gressum, patriam igne cremantes, iter dirigunt ad urbem Cabilonensem.

eldest son, Richard, to go to the rescue of Rainald. He invades Burgundy, and takes the Castle of Menwald (or Mirmande).

Considerans igitur Hugo, se nullatenus posse resistere contra tantum exercitum, ferens equestrem sellam in humeris, genibus provolutus, adolescentis Ricardi, prece supplici, veniam precabatur commissi. Qua indulta, Rainaldum reddidit, et, obsidibus datis, apud Rotomagum ex hoc se fore satisfacturum jurejurando Duci Ricardo spopondit. Quibus ad votum peractis, Ricardus juvenis ad patrem est regressus.

Count Hugh humiliates himself, and Rainald is liberated.

Dux ergo, quamvis præcellentissimorum actuum prærogativis longe lateque claruerat, tam cultor Christi extitit assiduus, adeo ut monachorum et clericorum jure vocaretur [2] pater piissimus, et pauperum sustentator indefessus. His et hujusmodi probitatum vigens titulis, ægritudine corporis cœpit vehementer aggravari; convocatoque apud Fiscamium Roberto Archiepiscopo, cum cunctis Normannorum principibus, indicavit se jam omnino resolvi. Igitur, per cuncta domus triclinia, fit illico luctus omnibus intolerabilis; lugebant et lamentabantur monachi atque clerici, lacrymabantur heroes, flebant egenorum catervæ, pro destitutione tanti ducis et patroni. Tandem accitum Ricardum, filium suum, consultu sapientum, suo ducatui præfecit, fratremque [3] ejus, Robertum, Comitatui Oximensi, ut inde illi debitum persolveret

Duke Richard's virtues.

His declining health.

Universal sorrow thereupon.

He appoints Richard his successor, and to his son, Robert,

[1] Sic in MS.
[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[3] *suum* in ed. Camden.

gives the County of Exmes.

obsequium; omnibusque quæ ad cultum Dei pertinere videbantur, strenue dispositis, millesimo vicesimo sexto anno Dominicæ Incarnationis, hominem exuit, viam ingrediens universæ carnis.

Richard III. succeeds his father, A.D. 1026. His virtues.

Ricardus juvenis, in Ducatu superstes genitoris, licet paulisper supervixerit, sicut in vocabulo nominis, ita ejus hæres extitit censura summæ ingenuitatis. Hic, in armis bellicis valde idoneus, totus tamen fuit fide Catholicus, et circa Dei cultores mansuetissimus, æquo libramine militares turmas moderans, pace continua frui gaudens. Sed pacis hostis perfidus non passus est diutius illum lætari, sed fratrem suum, Robertum, ad rebellionem quorundam malevolorum versutia concitavit.

Rebellion of his brother Robert.

Robert is besieged in Falaise.

The brothers are reconciled.

Hic enim post biennium, contempto ejus dominio, intra Falisæ castrum, cum suis satellitibus, se contulit ad resistendum. Quem Dux illico, cum magna multitudine, infra castri ambitum vallavit obsidione. Quem cum arietum et balistarum crebris ictibus expugnaret, Roberto tandem a perfidia resipiscente, datis dextris, in pristinam concordiam redierunt, firmiterque pace composita ab invicem recesserunt. Porro Dux post hoc, dimisso exercitu, Rotomagum regressus, millesimo vicesimo octavo ab Incarnatione Domini anno, cum suorum nonnullis, ut retulerunt plurimi, veneno mortem obiit, fratrem suum, Robertum, relinquens sui Ducatus hæredem.

Death of Duke Richard, by poison, as some say, A.D. 1028 (A.D. 1027).

Duke Robert succeeds. His virtues.

Robertus igitur, frater Ducis Ricardi, totius monarchiæ ducatui ab omnibus subrogatur. Qui, quamvis circa rebelles fuerit aliquanto ferocior, benevolus tamen extitit, lenis, et benignus, ergaque Dei cultum pius ac devotus. Quamobrem pacis oblectamento diutine frui meruit; præter id, quod, pravorum consilio, Robertum Archipræsulem habens suspectum, hostili obsidione vallavit, intra mœnia civitatis Ebroicensis. Qui tandem, nacta discedendi libertate, Robertum, Francorum Regem, exul, cum suis, adiit, Normannicam patriam feriens

He besieges Archbishop Robert in Evreux.

anathemate pontificali. Dux autem Robertus, recompensata improborum astutia, et perpendens se inconsulte gessisse omnia, Episcopum revocavit e Francia, et pristinum restituit in honorem, facti pœnitens, eumque, ut tantum virum decebat, suis deinceps ascivit consiliis, in reliquum persistens [1] illi fidelis. The Archbishop joins the King of France, but is soon reinstated.

Eliminatis denique a se totius litis incentoribus, sapientum cœpit uti tractatibus, et solerti industria ad summi honoris incrementa provehi. Cujus probos mores boni cœperunt efferre, nonnulli vero improbi ignaviæ ascribere. Ex quorum contubernio, Willelmus Bellemensis, animositatem ejus audens attentare, ex castro Alencio, quod jure beneficii tenebat, a servitii jugo [2] nisus est extorquere, sumpta rebellione. Ad cujus insolentiam conterendam, Dux adveniens, cum turmis militaribus, tam diu eum intra munitionem, suæ præsumptionis adjutricem, conclusit, donec ejus clementiam expeteret; nudis vestigiis, equestrem [3] sellam, ad satisfaciendum, ferens in humeris. Cui Dux, licet [4] ficte satisfacienti, non modo cuncta indulsit, verum etiam, reddito ei oppido, festinus a loco secessit. Rebellion of William deBelesme, at his Castle of Alençon. The Duke defeats him, and he humiliates himself.

Sed Willelmus, non multo post, iterum dissidii invectus furia, filios suos, Fulconem atque Robertum, cum copia militum dirigit, qui direptionibus Normanniam infestarent. Quibus ex domo Ducis plurimi audacter occurrentes expediti vernaculi, intra saltum Bavonis cruentum prœlium commiserunt; et ita, Domino favente, profecerunt, ut, jugulato Fulcone, prævaricatoris filio, vix frater ejus, Robertus, elaberetur a certamine, cunctis pene militibus interfectis. Quorum interitum ut idem Willelmus, graviter ægrotans, comperit, tactus dolore cordis intrinsecus, continuo animam exhalavit. Et sic profligatis Ducis inimicis, seditio pressa in partibus illis ultra disparuit. William again rebelling, his son Fulco is slain. Death of William de Belesme.

---

[1] *sibi* in ed. Camden.

[2] *visus . . . Dux veniens* in ed. Camden.

[3] *cellam* in ed. Camden.

[4] *ficta facienti* in ed. Camden.

Rebellion of Hugh, Bishop of Bayeux; who fortifies the Castle of Evreux.

Cum hæc gererentur, perspiciens Baiocasinæ urbis Episcopus, Hugo, Rodulphi Comitis filius, Ducem velle prudentum sectari consilia, suaque destitui, quadam usus doli versutia, Ebroicum castrum armis clam, alimoniisque, munivit, et, positis custodibus, ocius Franciam adiit, ut inde milites conduceret, qui illum ad repugnandum viriliter adjuvarent. Cujus fraudis molimina Dux comperiens, contractis Normannorum copiis, idem castellum præoccupavit obsidione, clausa egrediendi ab eo, sive ingrediendi, omnibus facultate. A cujus ingressu cum se Hugo videret extrusum, sollicitus de suis intra illud conclusis, libertatem abeundi per legatos a Duce petiit, et eos [1]inde protinus abjecit; ipseque, cum eis quos expetierat, diu permansit extorris. Dux autem castellum, deditione sibi redditum, custodibus et armis munivit.

The Duke takes the castle.

Baldwin, Count of Flanders, obtains the daughter of the King of France for his son.

Sub eodem tempore, Baldewinus, Flandrensis Satrapa, cupiens sobolem suam innormare regali prosapia, Robertum, Francorum Regem, expetiit, poscens ejus filiam dari suo filio, Baldewino; quam adeptam, a palatinis ferens tricliniis ad domum propriam, in cunis, asportavit, eam nutriens usque ad annos nubiles diligenti cura. Cujus filius, mox ut nubilis puellæ frui cœpit amplexibus, fretus affinitate regali, patrem a solo pepulit, Flandrensibus ab ejus fidelitate avulsis. Qui, indecenter a suis destitutus, Normannorum Ducis suffragia postulavit. Cujus calamitatem Dux miseratus, contractis militum viribus, velut turbo horridus; egressus a patria, Flandoniam est adorsus, illam exterminans flammis exitialibus; progrediensque ad castrum, quod "Cioca" vocatur, confestim illud subvertit, combustis omnibus in eo consistentibus. Quod videntes reliqui proceres, et similia pati formidantes, relicto filio, ad patrem sunt reversi, Duci obsides dirigentes. Ante cujus excursus intolerabiles, adolescens Baldewinus, intuens se non posse ullo modo subsistere, cum

The Count, being expelled by his son, takes refuge in Normandy.

Duke Robert invades Flanders, and effects a reconciliation.

[1] *idem* in ed. Camden.

precibus humillimis illi legatos dirigit, dicens se cupere, eo mediatore, patri suo reconciliari. Cujus desiderio vir summæ benevolentiæ favens, affectu gratulanti, utrosque, libato pacis osculo, in pristinam concordiam redire persuasit. Sic litibus compressis, ulterius in pace et amore, quo decuit, perstiterunt. Ipse vero Dux, demolitis rebus rebellium, cum incolumi exercitu Normanniam est reversus. Qua tempestate moritur Francorum Rex, Robertus; cui successit filius ejus, Henricus.

Death of Robert, King of France (A.D. 1031).

Rex etenim Henricus, patre Roberto vivente, Francorum regno potitus, tanto postmodum a matre Constantia novercali odio est affectus, ut, conspirantibus adversus eum Comitibus, a regali fastigio eum deponere conaretur, disponens Robertum, Burgundionum Ducem, illius loco subrogare. Ob cujus infesti animi insecutionem, consilio suorum fidelium, cum duodecim tantum famulis, confugit ad Normannorum Ducem, qui tunc morabatur apud Fiscamium; petens per debitum fidei, quatinus sibi in hac necessitate subveniret. Quod Dux complevit efficaciter, plexis rebellium cervicibus, consumptis eorum bonis omnibus; et per hoc infelicissimæ suæ matris conatibus exinanitis.

Conspiracy against Henry, King of France, who takes refuge with Duke Robert; who quells the rebellion.

Britannorum Comes, Alanus, elatus fastu proterviæ, a Ducis servitio se subtraxit; adversus quem Dux innumerabilem movens exercitum, invasit Britanniam, et flammis voracibus totum Doli tradidit Comitatum, et cum ingenti præda Normanniam est regressus. Post cujus abcessum, Alanus illatum sibi cupiens ulcisci [1] improperium, e vestigio illum prosequitur cum magno exercitu, ad demoliendum Abrincatensem Comitatum. Cui custodes illius castri, cum suis, occurrentes, tanta illico strage depopulati sunt Britones, ut per camporum plana viderentur prostrari, quasi bidentes. Ipse vero, sua tristis repetens, cum dedecore [2] Redonis venit.

Revolt of Alain, Count of Bretagne.

Duke Robert ravages his country.

Defeat of the Bretons by the garrison of Avranches.

[1] *opprobrium* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Rodonis* in ed. Camden.

Request made to King Cnute by the Duke of Normandy, in favour of the two sons of Ethelred; but in vain.

Tempore quippe, quo Ethelredus, Anglorum Rex, a Sweno, Dacorum Rege, regno pulsus, ut supra recitavimus, in Normanniam venit profugus, duos filios, Edwardum et Aluredum, non longo post patriam repetens, Ricardo, eorum avunculo, reliquit nutriendos. Qui, intra Normannici Ducis aulam educati, tanto honore a Duce sunt habiti, ut nexu amoris summi eos sibi, tanquam fratres, adoptaret. Quorum diuturno exulatui [1][compassus,] missis legatis, Regi Cnutoni mandavit, ut jam jamque eorum exterminio illis parceret, et sua eis vel sero, pro sui amoris obtentu, redderet. Qui, salubribus ejus non adquiescens monitis, legatos, infectis rebus, nihil lætum portantes, remisit.

The Duke prepares a large fleet, for the invasion of England.

Tunc Dux, succensus rubore vehementissimi furoris, convocatis sui Ducatus principibus, magnam classem navium festinato fabricari jussit. Quam, ex omnibus Normannici maris partibus coactam, infra spatium parvi temporis, in anchoris, hominibusque robustissimis, diligenter instructam, stare apud Fiscamium in littore ponti fecit.

It is driven to Jersey by a storm.

Inde quoque, signo dato, velisque pansis in sublime, nimia tempestate acti, ad insulam quæ vocatur "Gersui," cum magno periculo [2]pelagi, demum sunt devoluti.

The Duke abandons the expedition.

Quod puto ita factum esse, Deo auctore, pro Edwardo Rege, quem disponebat in futuro regnare sine sanguinis effusione. Ubi dum longo detinerentur tempore, vento adversus flante diutius, Dux, efferatus animo, incredibili cruciabatur mœrore. Novissime videns se nullo modo transfretare, gyratis proris navium, apud Sancti Michaelis Montem, remeato limbo maris, quantocius sunt appulsi.

He again invades Bretagne.

Sumens autem Dux quamdam partem classis, direxit ad affligendam Britanniam incendiis atque prædis. Ipse vero, contracto equestri exercitu, parabat ab altera parte eam aggredi. Alanus itaque, videns grave sibi discrimen imminere ab utrisque partibus, missa lega-

---

[1] Omitted in MS.

[2] *ponti pelagi* in ed. Camden.

tione, Robertum, utriusque avunculum, Normannorum, videlicet, Archipræsulem, ad se mandavit sub festinatione venire. Cui cum exitialem Britanniæ exterminationem, et concitati Ducis atrocem super se enarrasset expeditionem, sumens eum Præsul, fide sua interposita, ad Sancti Michaelis Montem adduxit, ad clementiam Ducis, illum invadere disponentis. Quorum præcordia, nimium rigida, propitiante Christo, illico ad quietem composuit, et, omni dissensionum motu sedato, serena eos univit concordia, Alanum in servitio Ducis, pacta fidelitate, supplicem omnino complicans. Post hæc, missis legatis, nautas a Britannica vexatione recedere jussit.

Through the intervention of Robert, Archbishop of Rouen, peace is made.

Quibus aliquandiu sopitis, ecce! assunt legati, a Chnutone Rege Duci directi, nunciantes illum medietatem Anglici regni velle reddere filiis et hæredi Regis, pace rata, in diebus suis, eo quod valida gravaretur incommoditate corporali. Sed Dux ad tempus differre decrevit navalem expeditionem, donec redisset ab Hierosolymis, quam peregrinationem diu optaverat. Quapropter, accersito Roberto, Archiepiscopo Rotomagensi, cum optimatibus sui Ducatus, illis diu conceptum propositum manifestavit. Qui mox omnes, vehementer attoniti, propter ejus absentiam, patriam perturbandam multimode formidabant. Exponens autem eis Willelmum, filium suum, quem unicum genuerat, ut hunc sibi suo loco dominum eligerent, militiæque suæ principem præficerent, ab eis attentissime exigebat. Qui licet sub tenerrima detineretur ætate, tam[en] de ejus consolatione omnes oppido exhilarati, cum prompta unanimitate delegerunt principem, pangentes illi fidelitatem inviolandis sacramentis. Quibus ad votum expletis, Dux sub tutoribus et actoribus, vigentibus sapientia, illum adusque legitimam ætatem subegit; et, dispositis competenter rebus ad patriæ moderamina congruentibus, pium vale dicens omnibus, cum suo nobilissimo comitatu, illam sanctissimam peregrinationem est aggressus. Quæ vero lingua vel sermo explicabit eleemosynarum exhibitiones, egenis ab eo cotidie distributas? Tan-

Envoys sent by King Cnute.

The Duke contemplates a pilgrimage to Jerusalem.

He obtains a recognition of his son, William, as his heir.

Proceeds upon the pilgrimage.

Visits the Holy Sepulchre.

dem, confecto itinere, ad illud pervenit Sepulcrum venerabile in quo Regis cœlestis sanctissimum corpus jacuit. Quis ergo hominum [1] enarrabit, quot per octonos dies lacrymarum rivulis illud eluerit, vel quot auri muneribus accumulaverit? Porro invictus Dux, pius, et Deo amabilis, adorato Christo, cum suspiriis internorum singultuum, et peragratis Sanctorum locis, felicissimum convertens iter, ad Nicenam regressus est

He dies at Nicæa, A.D. 1034 (A.D. 1035).

urbem. In qua correptus ægrimonia corporis, millesimo tricesimo quarto anno ab Incarnatione Domini, viam petens universi generis humani, gaudentibus [2] angelis, divinæ vocationis jussu, in fine occubuit. Cujus beata anima, plurimo jam optimorum operum splendore candidata, nunc, ut credimus, cœlo residet glorificata. Sepultus est autem in basilica Sanctæ Mariæ a suis, intra mœnia ipsius civitatis, cum honore.

Duke Robert is succeeded by his son, William.

Willelmus, Roberti Ducis filius, Roberto successit; qui quo sudore laboris inimicorum laqueos evaserit, suisque vestigiis eorum colla ferina substraverit, quibus victoriarum triumphis in Ducatu claruerit, prout ordo rerum, veracissime [3] compertarum, dictaverit, notificare libet futuris, ne tegantur segnitie, quæ gloriose micuerunt sub illius ætatis tempore.

His glorious deeds.

Various risings and seditions in Normandy, at the beginning of his reign.

Is itaque in puerilibus annis orbatus patre, sagaci tutorum providentia, liberalium morum instruebatur ad incrementa. Sub cujus ineunte ætate, plurimi Normannorum, ab ejus fidelitate aberrantes, per loca plura, erectis aggeribus, tutissimas sibi [4] construxere munitiones. Hinc diversi inter eos exoriuntur motus, concitantur seditiones, ac sæva patriæ perpetiuntur incendia. In tanto quippe dissensionum turbine, consumitur non modicus bellatorum cuneus, sæviente Marte; Hugone Montis Fortis cum Walchelino confligente, in quo certamine occisus est uterque. Porro

Hugh de Montfort, and Walcheline (de Ferrers) slain.

---

[1] *enarravit* in ed. Camden.

[2] *anglis* in MS., *Anglis* in ed. Camden.

[3] *computatarum* in ed. Camden.

[4] *construere* in ed. Camden.

eructante in majus quorundam rabie, tutor ipsius pueri, scilicet, domini, Occensis siquidem Comes, Gislebertus, non multo post perimitur. Deinde, diversis temporibus, Turoldus, ejus pædagogus, nec non Osbernus, procurator domus, novissime Henricus, Rex Francorum, immemor beneficii a patre Ducis sibi quondam impensi, dixit se ei placabilem nullo modo fore, Tegulensi castro in statu pristino persistente. Cujus fraudes, ob salutem pueri, Normanni in fide stantes decreverunt fieri; quod egisse postmodum pœnituere. Sed Gislebertus, cognomento "Crispinus," cui Dux Robertus olim illud castrum commiserat, mox ut molestissimum agnovit decretum, spretis eorum conatibus, cum valida manu armatorum, intra ipsum, ad resistendum, se illico conclusit; quem confestim Rex obsidione cinxit. Quid plura? Tandem Gislebertus, precibus victus Ducis, mœrens castrum reddidit; quod, sub oculis omnium, cum maximo dolore corporis, confestim igne concremari perspexit. Quibus Rex ad vota peractis, a loco secessit. Sed non multo post Oximensem Comitatum aggressus, Argentonium, Ducis vicum, cremavit, et, onustus præda, deseruit partes illas; regressusque via qua venerat, ad castellum Tegulense venit, atque sacramenta faciens irrita, quæ juraverat Duci, quod a nullo suorum reficeretur in quatuor annos, cum festinatione illud restaurans, militibus et alimoniis abundantissime munivit, hincque recessit.

Count Gilbert, William's guardian, is slain.

The Castle of Tilliers obtained by the French King against the wish of Gilbert (?William) Crispin.

The French King burns Argenton, and regarrisons Tilliers.

Perspiciens vero Thurstinus, Oximensis Præses, Ducem puerum cessisse Regi aliquantulum, et jam, quasi victum, regiæ manus oppressionem aliquantam utcunque perpeti, zelo succensus infidelitatis, regales milites stipendiis conduxit, quos complices ad muniendum Falisæ castellum, ne idem serviret Duci, sibi ascivit. Cujus conatus perfidos ut Dux comperit, legionibus Normannorum undequaque coactis, festinanter illud obsedit; concitatisque militibus, tanta mox magnanimitate pugnatum est, ut partem muri sub momento dejicerent, et nisi nox prœlium diremisset, proculdubio rem, quam

Rebellion of Turstin, Count of Exmes.

The Castle of Falaise besieged by the Duke.

Turstin goes into exile.

summe volebant, totam confecissent. Perpendens autem Thurstinus se tantas hostium copias non posse tolerare diutius, locum secedendi a Duce petiit, et sic, profugus a patria, extorris aufugit.

Death of Robert, Archbishop of Rouen; succeeded by Mauger, a son of Duke Richard II.

Quo tempore moritur Robertus, Archiepiscopus Rotomagensis; cui successit Malgerius, frater Roberti Ducis. Nam Ricardus Dux, Secundus, mortua Judith, aliam uxorem, nomine "Papiam," duxit; ex qua duos filios genuit, Malgerium, scilicet, Archipræsulem, et Willelmum Archasensem. Hic enim Willelmus a Duce, jam adolescente, Comitatum Tolagi percepit, obtentu beneficii, ut idem illi fidelis existeret. Qui, elatus nobilitate generis, castrum Archarum in cacumine ipsius montis condidit; quo, assumpta tyrannide, regioque fretus munimine, contra eundem Ducem calcaneum ausus est extollere. Quod Dux persentiens, quantocius [1] super eum venit, et, erectis aggeribus ad radicem montis, castrum stabilivit, quod, fortium virorum robore, inexpugnabile reddidit; sicque inde abiens vallatum alimoniis reliquit.

William d'Arques rises against the Duke, who blockades Arques.

The King of France marches to the aid of Count William.

His troops are defeated.

The Count surrenders, and is banished.

Quod audiens Rex Henricus, protinus sumptis Francorum copiis, causa muniendi superioris oppidi apertissime prope advenit, exercitum jubens apud Sanctum Albanum castrum metari. Cujus adventum milites Ducis comperientes, protraxerunt non minimam partem exercitus Regis in insidias, et, confligentes cum eis, plurimos peremerunt. Inter quos Ingalramus, Abbatis Villæ Comes, occiditur, et Hugo, cognomento "Bardul-" fus," cum multis aliis, capitur. Quod ut Rex agnovit, intromissis alimoniis castello, pro quo venerat, mœstus, propter milites amissos, recessit, cum dedecore. Willelmus quoque, non multo post, cum suis, affectus inedia, invitus castellum reddidit, et ipse a nativo solo in exilium discessit.

King Cnute dying, he is succeeded

Eadem tempestate, Anglorum Rex, Cnutus, diem obiit; cui successit Haroldus, ejus filius, ex concubina,

[1] *frater ad eum* in ed. Camden.

nomine "Elsiva," natus. Cujus diu cupitam mortem Edwardus Rex audiens, adhuc cum Duce degens, quantocius cum quadraginta navibus, milite plenis, superato mari, Hamptoniam appulit; ubi innumerabilem Anglorum multitudinem, ad sui perniciem se operientem, offendit. Qui protinus congressus cum eis, non minimam partem ex illis Orco transmisit. Ipse vero, victor existens, ad naves est regressus, cum suis. Videns autem non absque numero militum se posse regnum obtinere Anglorum, regyratis navium proris, Normanniam, cum præda magna, repetiit.

by his son Harold (A.D. 1035).

Ineffectual attempt of Edward, son of Ethelred, to gain the English crown.

Interea, frater ejus, Aluredus, [1] assumptis secum non parvi numeri bellatoribus, portum Widsandi petiit, et, inde transfretans, venit Doroberniam; et, inde regni penetrans interiora, obvium habuit Comitem Godwinum. Quem idem Comes in sua fide suscipiens, inde traditoris vicem implevit in illo, sub nocte eadem. Nam libato pacis osculo, et cum [eo] percepto cibo, medio intempestæ noctis, manibus post tergum ligatis, illum Haraldo Regi, apud Londoniam, cum suorum nonnullis, destinavit; milites autem suos partim per Anglorum regionem distraxit, partim dedecorose peremit. Quem Haraldus ut vidit, mox ejus socios decapitari jussit, ipsumque duci ad Eliensem insulam, ibique oculis privari, mandavit. Sicque nobilissimus vir, et optimus, Aluredus, occubuit, injuste peremptus.

Alfred, son of Ethelred, landing in England, is betrayed by Earl Godwin, and slain (A.D. 1036).

Haraldus, non diu post vivens, obiit in mortem; cui successit frater ejus, Hardecnutus, a Dacia regressus, ex Emma, matre Edwardi, natus. Qui, confirmatus in regni culmine, fratrem suum, Edwardum, a Normannia revocavit, et secum cohabitare fecit. Ipse vero non plenis duobus annis subsistens, exuit hominem, Edwardum totius regni relinquens hæredem. Sed de hiis hucusque; nunc stilus figatur in præfixa narrationis serie.

Death of Harold I., King of England (A.D. 1039).

King Hardecnute recalls his brother, Edward, and makes him his heir.

[1] *assumptis secum* omitted in ed. Camden.

Increasing virtues of Duke William.

Igitur Dux, jam flore vernans gratissimæ juventutis, cultum Dei cœpit amplecti ultroneo corde, imperitorum contubernia [1] a se eliminare, et sapientum consiliis adhærere, rebus pollere bellicis, et vigere prudentia sæculari. Cum vero his probitatum augmentaretur cotidie commodis, contigit illum quemdam crudelem convivam experiri, secum a puerilibus educatum annis, Widonem, videlicet, filium Burgundionum Comitis, Rainaldi, cui olim contulerat Castrum Brioci, quasi munere firmius astringendæ fidelitatis. Is etenim, fastu invectus superbiæ, plurimos proceres, velut [2] Absalon, ab ejus fidelitate cœpit avertere, et in voraginem suæ perfidiæ complicare; in tantum, ut Nigellum, Constantinensem Præsidem, in hac conspiratione annecteret, et a servitio Duci, sacramentorum obligatione, debito, cum multis aliis, funditus exturbaret. Quod videns Dux prudentissimus, verens ne a Ducatus fastigio abjiceretur, et ejus æmulus suo loco subrogaretur, necessitate coactus, Henricum, Francorum Regem, expetiit, pro subveniendi obtentu.

Guido, son of Rainald, Count of Burgundy, rises against him.

He seeks the aid of the King of France.

Tunc tandem Rex, memor beneficii a patre ejus quondam sibi impensi, coactis simul Francorum viribus, Oximensem Comitatum aggressus, Valesdunas venit, ubi innumerabilium armatorum exercitum infestissimo animo, strictis gladiis, prœlium sibi [3] iterantem, offendit. Quorum efferos impetus Rex, cum Duce, minime perhorrescens, facto [4] alterno concursu militum, bellum commisit, tantaque eos strage delevit, ut quos gladius non extinxit, Deo formidinem inferente, refugientes absorberet fluvius Olne. Wido vero, lapsus a prœlio, Briocum expetiit; in quo, obseratis portarum repagulis, cupiens liberari, se aliquandiu obstruxit. Quem Dux, Rege Franciam repetente, propere intra castelli ambitum sepsit obsidione, stabilitis munitionibus in utraque parte fluminis, quod vocatur "Risle."

The King and the Duke defeat the enemy at the Val des Dunes (A.D. 1047).

Guido is besieged by the Duke, at Brieuc.

---

[1] *a se* omitted in ed. Camden.
[2] In allusion to 2 *Samuel*, c. xv.
[3] *attemptantem* in ed. Camden.
[4] *alterna* in MS.

Videns profecto Wido, se nullo pacto a loco posse fugere, astrictus famis calamitate, per amicos compulsus est supplex, et commissi pœnitens, ejus clementiam exorare. Cujus Dux misertus miseriæ, illi clementer pepercit, et, recepto castello Brioci, cum suis domesticis, eum in sua domo manere jussit. Conspicientes itaque cuncti optimates, qui a Duce desciverant, illum omne fugæ præsidium partim destruxisse, partim interclusisse, datis obsidibus, colla rigida ei, ut domino, subdidere. Sicque ubique castellis eversis, nullus ultra ausus est erigere rebellem animum contra eum.

Guido surrenders, and places himself at the Duke's mercy.

The rebels are universally quelled.

Andegavorum quoque Comes, Goisfridus, cognomento "Martellus," per omnia vir versutus, vicinas sibi gentes frequenter afflixit, Comitemque Theobaldum, fraudulenter a se captum, tam diu custodiæ mancipavit, donec urbem Turonicam ab illo violenter extorqueret, cum nonnullis castellis aliis. Cœpit insuper rapinis Normanniam demoliri, immissis intra Danifrontis castrum custodibus seditiosis. Quod Dux, militari manu vallatus, visendi obtentu aggressus, ut vidit illud scopulis asperrimis et eminentibus in gyro circumdatum, et inaccessibile ad expugnandum, accitis Normannorum viribus, illud protinus firmissimis castellis cinxit, obtrusis aditibus egrediendi. In cujus præcinctu dum aliquandiu moraretur, ecce! assunt exploratores, nunciantes Alentium castrum eum posse capere sine detrimento suorum. Qui confestim, custodibus intra castrum positis, tota nocte equitans cum exercitu, diluculo venit Alentium; ubi in quodam municipio, trans flumen posito, quosdam reperit se convitiis subsannantes. Quod mox cepit, et flammis concremavit; illusores vero, coram omnibus infra Alentium consistentibus, manibus pedibusque privari jussit. Unde Alentii pavefacti, castellum Duci illico reddiderunt. Quibus peractis viriliter, militibusque suis intromissis, celerrime Danfrontem repetiit. Audientes igitur Danfrontani qualia Dux suis sociis intulerit, et considerantes se a nullo posse juvari, datis obsidibus, ejus se, cum castello, dominatui tradiderunt.

Goisfrid Martel, Count of Anjou, takes Tours, and garrisons the Castle of Domfront.

The Duke besieges, and captures, Alençon.

The Castle of Domfront surrenders to him.

He builds a castle at Avranches.

Inde vero, custodibus positis, egrediens, Abrincas venit, ad confutandum Comitem Goisfridum; ibique super ora fluminis castellum condidit, quod alimoniis et militibus sufficienter munivit. Quibus gestis, Rotomagum est regressus.

Duke William marries Matildis, daughter of the Count of Flanders (A.D. 1054).

Jam itaque, Duce juvenili vigente robore, cœperunt ejus optimates de prolis successione cum eo tractare. Quorum consultu, a Baldewino, Flandrensi Comite, filiam suam, Matthilden, regali ex progenie descendentem, corpore elegantem, animo liberalem, petiit in uxorem. Unde Baldewinus Satrapa multum gavisus, non solum decrevit petitam dari sibi, verum etiam, cum immensis muneribus, eam adusque Ocense castrum adduxit. Ubi Dux adveniens, stipatus catervis militum, illam sibi desponsavit, et cum maximo gaudio et honore Rotomagensibus intulit mœnibus. De qua filios filiasque genuit; ex quibus postmodum in Ducatu genitori Robertus successit, functus honore paterno.

Mauger, Archbishop of Rouen, resigns. Maurilius is appointed in his place.

Eo tempore Malgerius, Archiepiscopus Rotomagensis, cœpit desipere, et, insipientia ductus, Duci Archipræsulatum reddidit; quem postea Dux tradidit Maurilio, excellenti monacho, et multis virtutibus decorato, Synodali decreto.

Hostility of the Franks to the Normans.

Enimvero, ex quo Normanni arva Neustriæ cœperunt incolere, mos fuit Francis semper eis invidere, concitantes Reges contra illos insurgere, asserentes eos terras, quas possident, suis majoribus surripuisse violenter.

The French King invades Normandy.

Quibus Rex Henricus vehementer irritatus suggestionibus, duobus hostium agminibus Normanniam est aggressus, dirigens unum agmen virorum fortium ad subvertendum Caltinum territorium; cui præfecit fratrem suum, "Odonem" nomine, alteri vero [1] Goisfridum, Comitem Andegavorum, ut ipse demoliretur Comitatum Ebroicensem. Ut ergo Dux se suosque taliter vidit opprimi, magno et [2] nobili dolore tactus, protinus elegit

[1] *Goisfredo Comiti* in MS. [2] *nobile* in ed. Camden.

milites, qui subversores Caltini territorii comprimerent. Ipse autem, cum nonnullis suorum, circa Regem se contulit, quatinus pœnas lueret, si quem satellitum a latere Regis abstrahere aliquatenus prævaleret. Venientes quoque Normanni ad Francos, reperierunt eos apud Mare Mortuum, incendiis et mulierum ludibriis occupatos. Cum quibus illico mane commissum bellum, in continua cæde occumbentium, usque ad nonam est protractum. Novissime quippe victi Franci terga dedere Normannis, cum eorum signifero, Odone, videlicet, fratre Regis. In quo nimirum certamine concidit pars maxima nobilitatis Franciæ; partem vero reliquam oppressit captivitas ea vice. Quorum infortunium ut Rex agnovit, a Normannica infestatione concito gradu pedem retraxit.

His troops are defeated at Mortemer.

Hiis ita gestis, Dux, memor opprobrii a Comite Goisfrido sibi illati, ad urbem Cenomanicam post annos aliquot arma convertit. Quis igitur explicare poterit quot militum incursibus, quot legionum expeditionibus, illam afflixerit? Ad postremum nempe victi Cinomanni, jam castellis per cunctum Comitatum subactis, dextras dederunt Duci, fidem pangentes illi artissimis sacramentis. In quorum medio duo stabilivit municipia, ad domandam eorum insolentiam, quæ suis militibus custodienda commisit. Restiterat adhuc Meduanum castellum, quod erat cujusdam militis, nomine "Goisfridi;" quod et oppugnavit et combussit, et, iterum restaurans, illud custodibus mancipavit.

The Duke defeats the Count of Anjou; and the people of Maine submit to him.

Rex vero, Henricus, injuriam sibi a Duce illatam ulcisci cupiens, sumpto Goisfrido, Comite Andegavensi, copiosissimo cum exercitu, Normanniam ingreditur, iterata expeditione. Qui Comitatum pertransiens Oximensem, et penetrans Baiocensem, tandem reflexo calle redeundi, vadum Divæ appetiit. Quod Rege transeunte, media pars exercitus substitit, mari eructante, non valens transmeare ob redundationem fluminis; cum quibus Dux, alacriter superveniens, illico, vidente Rege,

The King of France again invades Normandy.

He is defeated.

congressus, tanta illos strage prostravit, ut quos gladius non extinxit, hos per Normannica compita constringeret diræ captivitatis violentia. Videns autem Rex suorum interitum, concito gressu recessit a Normannia, et ultra ad eos venire non apposuit. Qui tandem, post aliquot annos, moriens, Philippum, filium suum, in Francorum regno reliquit hæredem.

Death of the King of France, and succession of his son, Philip (A.D. 1060).

Edwardus quoque, Rex Anglorum, disponente Deo, prolis successione carens, olim miserat Duci Robertum, Archiepiscopum Cantuariæ, statuens illum hæredem regni a Deo sibi attributi. Sed et Haraldum illi postmodum destinavit, qui fuit maximus Comitum regni sui in honore, dominatione, et divitiis, ut ei de sua corona fidelitatem faceret, ac Christiano more sacramentis [1] firmaret. Qui, dum ob hoc negotio venire contenderet, velificato freto ponti, Pontinum appulit; ubi in manus Wydonis, Abbatis Villæ (scilicet, Abvile), Comitis, incidit: quem idem Comes captum, cum suis, confestim in custodiam trusit. Quod ut Dux comperit, missis legatis, violenter illum extorsit; quem, aliquandiu secum moratum, facta fidelitate de regno pluribus sacramentis, cum muneribus multis, Regi remisit.

Edward, King of England, makes Duke William his heir.

Harold is sent by him to the Duke.

Denique Rex Edwardus, completo termino felicis vitæ, sub anno millesimo sexagesimo quinto Dominicæ Incarnationis, migravit e sæculo: cujus regnum Haraldus continuo invasit, ex fidelitate pejeratus, quam Duci juraverat. Ad quem legatos direxit protinus, hortans ut ab hac vesania resipisceret, et fidem, quam juramento [2] spoponderat, cum digna subjectione servaret. Sed ille hoc non solum audire contempsit, verum omnem ab illo Anglorum gentem infideliter avertit.

Death of Edward, King of England, A.D. 1065 (A.D. 1066).

Harold seizes the throne.

In diebus illis, in parte circuli stella apparuit, quæ, tribus radiis longius protensis, maximam partem Austri, per quindecim noctium spatium, illustravit, mutationem, ut asseverant plurimi, designans alicujus regni. Con-

Remarkable appearance of a star.

[1] *confirmaret* in ed. Camden. | [2] *sposponderat* in ed. Camden.

siderans itaque Princeps, regio diademate jure coronandus, Haraldum cotidie viribus roborari, classem, ad tria millia navium, festinanter constructam, in Pontivo, apud Sanctum Walericum, in anchoris stare fecit, plenam tam valentibus equis quam hominibus robustissimis, cum galeis et loricis. Inde vero, flante [1] vento secundo, velis in sublime pansis, trans mare Peneveselle appulit; ubi firmissimo vallo castrum condidit, quod militibus committens, festinus Hastingys venit; ibique cito opere aliud firmavit. Quem Haraldus incautum accelerans præoccupare, contracta Anglorum innumera multitudine, tota nocte equitans, in campo belli apparuit summo mane. Dux vero, nocturnos præcavens excursus hostis, inchoantibus tenebris, ad gratissimam usque lucem exercitum in armis esse jussit. Facto autem diluculo, legionibus militum in tribus ordinibus dispositis, horrendo hosti intrepidus processit obviam. Cum quo committens bellum, sub hora diei tertia, in cædibus morientium diem protraxit in vesperum.

Duke William prepares a fleet at Saint Valery.

Lands in England, with his forces.

Engages with the English army, at Hastings.

Haraldus autem, in primo congressu militum cadens, occubuit, letaliter confossus vulneribus. Quod comperientes Angli, de sua diffidentes salute, jam nocte imminente, versa facie, fugæ subsidia petiere. Dux ergo fortissimus, ab inimicorum strage reversus, nocte media ad campum belli est regressus. Mane autem illucescente, spoliis hostium distractis, [2] et corporibus suorum carorum sepultis, iter arripuit, quod tendit Londoniam. Referuntur enim illo conflictu pugnæ multa millia Anglorum corruisse, Christo illis vicem reddente, ob Aluredi, fratris Edwardi Regis, necem, ab eis injuste perpetratam.

Harold is slain, and his troops take to flight.

Duke William proceeds towards London.

A judgment on the English, for the death of Alfred.

Denique felicissimus, atque consilio præcipue munitus, belli ductor, callem conficiens, ad [3] Walingford divertit urbem; transmeatoque vado fluvii, legiones ibi castrametari jussit. Inde vero profectus, Londoniam est

The citizens of London submit to William.

[1] Omtted in ed. Camden.
[2] *a* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Waringford* in MS.

aggressus; ubi præcursores milites venientes, in platea urbis, plurimos invenere rebelles. Cum quibus congressi, protinus non minimum luctum intulerunt urbi, ob plurima funera civium, ac filiorum eorundem. Videntes demum Londonii se diutius stare non posse, datis obsidibus, se suaque omnia nobilissimo victori suo, hæreditario domino, supposuere. Quo triumpho inter tanta eo ordine confecto pericula, Dux noster, inclytarum virtutum, et quem nostri præconia stili minime sufficiunt æquare, in die Natalis Domini, ab omnibus, tam Normannorum quam Anglorum, proceribus Rex electus, sacro oleo ab episcopis regni est delibutus, ac regali diademate coronatus, sub millesimo sexagesimo sexto ab Incarnatione Christi anno.

He is crowned King of England, on Christmas Day, A.D. 1066.

Paulo post hæc, Rex Willelmus, regressus in Normanniam, ecclesiam Sanctæ Mariæ, in Gemmetico, cum honore magno dedicari jussit. Quam dedicationem hii Episcopi, cum spirituali jocunditate, millesimo sexagesimo septimo Dominicæ Incarnationis anno, Kalendis Julii, compleverunt; [1] Maurilius, scilicet, Rotomagensis Archiepiscopus, Johannes Abrincatensis, Goisfredus Constantinensis, Hugo Luxoviensis, necnon Baldewinus Ebroicensis. Rex autem ipse, devotissimo animo, hiis nuptiis præsentialiter studuit interesse.

King William returns to Normandy, and dedicates a church to St. Mary, at Jumieges, A.D. 1067.

Cumque Rex in Normannia, circa pietatis opera, detineretur, Eustachius, Comes Boloniensis, quorundam Anglorum versutiis depravatus, Doroberniæ castellum involare nisus est. Qui, in noctis conticinio mare transfretans, diluculo cum copioso exercitu illud obsedit, et totis viribus expugnare cœpit. Perspicientes Odonis, Baiocasinæ urbis Episcopi, atque Hugonis Fortis Montis milites, quibus custodia illius castri fuit credita, absentibus dominis, sic se inopinato obsessos, liberalibus animis accensi, patefactis portis, repente unanimiter foras proruunt, consertoque certamine, cunctos, cum dedecore, ab obsidione repellunt. Eustachius autem, ad

Eustace, Count of Boulogne, suddenly attacks Dover Castle, but is repulsed.

[1] *Mauritius* in ed. Camden.

mare divertens, cum paucis, aufugit navigio indecenter. Cæteri vero ad devexum montis, qui rupibus ac scopulis asperrimis mari imminet, fugientes, omnes sese, Deo terrorem ingerente, inde dejecere deorsum præcipites, justas sceleris sui pœnas luentes. Sicque factum est, ut quos gladius non prostravit, hos discorporet horribilis asperitas prærupti montis, vindice superna sententia, perfidos et temerarios conterente.

King William delivers to his son, Robert, the charge of the Duchy of Normandy.

Rex ergo, jam pro voluntate rebus dispositis, pro quibus venerat, Roberto, filio suo, juvenili flore vernanti, Normannici Ducatus dominium tradidit. Ipse vero, in regnum Anglorum remeans iterato, plurimos ejusdem gentis reperit, quorum corda levia ab ejus fidelitate averterat conspiratio prævaricatrix. Conjuraverant enim latrunculi per totam patriam, ut milites, quos ad tuendum regnum reliquerat, in capite jejunii, quo solet usu pœnitens Christianorum religio ad ecclesiam festinare nudis vestigiis, incautos ubique perimerent, et sic ipsum, a Normannia regredientem, e regno facilius proturbarent.

He returns to England, and detects a conspiracy.

The conspirators take refuge in the woods of Durham, awaiting the arrival of Sweyn, King of Denmark.

Verum detectis eorum perfidiæ machinis, repentinum domini sui, magni debellatoris, formidantes adventum, furtim fuga lapsi in quandam cujusdam Comitatus partem, aquis pariter, et silvis, inaccessabilem, se contulerunt, firmissimo vallo erigentes castrum, quod propria lingua "Dunelmum" nuncupaverunt. Ex quo diversos crebrius agitantes excursus, aliquandiu inibi delituerunt, præstolantes Sweni, Danorum Regis, adventum, vel subventum, quem veredariis ad sui auxilium convocarant. Eboracenses enim per legatos asciverunt, ad exercenda suæ nequitiæ infausta commenta; quibus juncti, armorum simul et stipendiariorum copia, urbem munierunt, semetipsos corroborantes ad resistendum; quemdamque [1]puerum sibi præficientes regem, ex Edwardi Regis nobilitate genus ducentem.

They name Edgar King.

[1] Edgar Etheling is alluded to; son of Edward, and grandson of Edmund Ironside.

The leaders of the revolt are defeated at York.

Quorum conatus temerarios Rex ut agnovit, productis Normannorum copiis, ad confutandam eorum contumaciam quantocius ire perrexit. Seditiosi autem, audacia et viribus fisi, ex civitate prosilientes, contra regalem exercitum aciem illico direxerunt: a quo protinus ita sunt profligati, ut, quampluribus interemptis, reliqui compellerentur refugere intra mœnia civitatis. Quos vestigiis consecuti Normanni, muri ambitum, quo confugerant, cum ipsis irruperunt, et tam ferro quam igne, a puero usque ad senem, totam pene deleverunt urbem. Incentores namque totius doli, per Humbre fluvium, navibus mortis dispendium effugerunt.

Two sons of Harold head an expedition from Ireland.

Porro duo Haraldi Regis filii, se ab eorum contubernio subducentes, cum multis vernaculis patris, adierunt Regem Hiberniæ, nomine "Dirmetum," pro juvamine obtinendo. De cujus regno, ipso suffragante, parvo tempore non minimam militum sibi contraxere manum, et cum sexaginta sex navibus Anglos ocius repetierunt, in regione quam maxime opportunam judicabant, rapinis et incendiis, more sævissimorum piratarum, terræ populum exterminantes. Quibus Brienus, Eudonis, Ducis Britanniæ Minoris, filius, cum suis obvius, protinus cum eis, sub die una, duobus prœliis manum conseruit; cæsisque mille et septingentis bellatoribus, cum nonnullis regni proceribus, reliqui e certamine fugientes, navium præsidio necis exitium utrumque evaserunt, ex carorum amissione permaximum Hiberniensibus reportantes luctum. Qui profecto omnes mortis novacula abrasi fuissent, nisi nox prœlium diremisset.

They are defeated by Brien, son of the Duke of Bretagne.

How William obtained the English crown. Earl Godwin gives his son and grandson as hostages to King Edward.

Quod Rex Willelmus regnum Angliæ sit adeptus non eventu subito, aut incerto casu, sed Dei judicio provido, satis patet. Nam tempore Regis Edwardi orta est gravis dissensio inter ipsum Regem, Edwardum, et Godwinum, Comitem Cantiæ, patrem, scilicet, Haraldi, qui regnum tenuit post Edwardum. Sed Godwinus, tandem cum Rege pacificatus, dedit Regi obsides, filium suum, Wulnothum, et [1]Hacun, filium filii sui, Sweni;

[1] *Hacum* in ed. Camden.

quos Rex Edwardus transmisit in Normanniam, Willelmo Duci, custodiendos.

Post mortem vero Godwini, Haraldus petivit a Rege quatinus, cum licentia ejus, transfretaret in Normanniam, repetiturus fratrem suum et [1] nepotem, datos obsides. Cui Rex ait,—"Ad detrimentum totius Angliæ "transfretabis." Haraldus nihilominus, navem ascendens, et in Pontivum fluvium non prospero cursu perveniens, a domino illius terræ captivatur, et ad Willelmum, Ducem Normannorum, transmittitur. Post dies aliquot, Dux ait Haraldo;—"Rex Anglorum, Edwardus, "sororius tuus, dum adhuc esset juvenis, nutritus me- "cum hic in Normannia, interposita fide [2] sua, pollicitus "est, quod si Angliæ Rex foret, et sine prole discede- "ret, in me jus hæreditarium regni transferret. Tu ergo, "si te in hoc adminiculaturum mihi spoponderis, et "castellum apud Doveram, cum puteo aquæ, ad opus "meum feceris, et sororem tuam uni de principibus "meis dederis in uxorem, filiamque meam, [3] Alam, in "conjugem te accepturum juraveris, tunc et modo "nepotem tuum, et, cum in Angliam regnaturus venero, "recipies incolumem, fratrem tuum." Prolatis itaque sacrosanctis reliquiis, juravit Haraldus, se cuncta quæ Willelmus Dux proposuerat opere completurum.

Harold asks leave to bring them back from Normandy, whither they had been sent.

He is taken prisoner, and sent to William, Duke of Normandy.

William exacts certain promises from him.

Harold makes oath on sacred relics.

Et sic Haraldus, accepto nepote suo, reversus in Angliam, cum intra paucos dies Rex Edwardus obisset, contempto sacramento, regni diadema suscepit. Ad quem Dux Normannorum, Willelmus, cum direxisset nuncium, sic respondit;—"Soror mea, quam, juxta con- "dictum, expetis, mortua est. Quod si corpus ejus, "quale nunc est, vult Dux habere, mittam, ne judicer "sacramentum violasse. Castellum Doveriæ, et in eo "puteum aquæ, licet nesciam cui, explevi. Regnum, "quod necdum fuit meum, quo jure potui dare vel "promittere? Si de filia sua, quam debui in uxorem,

Harold returns to England, with his nephew.

His answer to William's envoy, on the death of King Edward.

[1] *nepotes* in ed. Camden.
[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[3] Qy. *Adelam*.

" ut asserit, ducere, agit, super regnum Angliæ mulie-
" rem extraneam, inconsultis principibus, me nec debere,
" nec sine grandi injuria posse, adducere, noverit."

The Duke again appeals to Harold, but in vain.

Reversus nuncius domino suo retulit hæc responsa. Quibus ille auditis, iterum ei amica familiaritate mandavit, quatinus, aliis omissis, servata fidei sponsione, saltem filiam suam uxorem duceret, alioquin promissionem successionis regni armis sibi proculdubio sciret se vendicaturum. Et ipse nec illud quidem se facere velle, nec hoc formidare, respondit. Unde factum est, ut, dictis facta compensans, Dux Willelmus intraret Angliam, ut præfertur, et, Deo sibi favente, regnum subjugaret.

Hence the invasion of England.

William returns to Normandy, and takes with him Stigand, Archbishop of Canterbury.

Adveniente Quadragesima, Anno Domini millesimo sexagesimo [1] septimo, Rex Willelmus petiit Normanniam, ducens secum Doroberniensem Archiepiscopum, Stigandum, et multos de primatibus Angliæ; constituens interim fratrem suum, Odonem, Baiocensem Episcopum, et Willelmum filium Osberni, quem Herefordiæ Comitem constituerat, custodes regni Angliæ; quibus præcepit, ut castella per loca firmarent. Circa quod tempus, fundare cœpit Abbathiam de Bello.

The Abbey of Battle.

King William besieges, and takes, Exeter.

Rediens autem de Normannia, Rex Willelmus importabile tributum Anglis imposuit. Deinde in Devoniam profectus, hostiliter civitatem Excestriam, sibi rebellem, obsedit, et infregit.

Queen Matildis is crowned, A.D. 1068.

Matildis, uxor Regis Willelmi, consecratur in Reginam Anglorum, die Pentecostes, ab Aldredo, Eboracensi Archiepiscopo, anno Gratiæ millesimo sexagesimo octavo.

The nobles of Northumbria, with Edgar Etheling, retire into Scotland, A.D. 1069.

Anno Gratiæ millesimo sexagesimo nono, principes Northanhumbrorum, timentes ferocitatem Regis Willelmi, assumpto secum Clitone Edgaro, Scotiam adierunt, et incitaverunt Danos, qui, cum ducentis quadraginta navibus, Angliam infestarunt; unde contigit, [2] quod hinc Normannis, hinc Northanhumbris, hinc Danis, Angliam incursantibus, fames prævaluit in hac terra.

---

[1] 1062 in ed. Camden.

[2] *ut* in ed. Camden.

In a Council at Winchester, Stigand is deposed, A.D. 1070.

Anno millesimo septuagesimo, Rex Willelmus monasteria totius Angliæ perscrutari, et pecuniam quam ditiores Angli in eis deposuerant auferri, et in ærarium suum deferri, jussit. In Concilio magno celebrato Wintoniæ, jubente et præsente [1] Rege Willelmo, Alexandro Papa consentiente, Stigandus, Doroberniensis Archiepiscopus, degradatur, tribus ex causis;—quia Episcopatum Wintoniæ, cum Archiepiscopatu, injuste possidebat; et quia, vivente Archiepiscopo Roberto, non solum Archiepiscopatum sumpsit, sed et ejus pallio, quod Cantuariæ remansit, dum injuste pulsus est ab Anglia, in Missarum celebratione, usus est; et post, a Benedicto, quem Romana Ecclesia excommunicavit, eo quod Apostolicam Sedem invasit, pallium suscepit. Nonnullos, tam episcopos quam abbates, quos, nulla evidenti causa nec Concilia, nec leges sæculi, damnabant, honoribus suis Rex Willelmus privavit, et usque in finem vitæ detinuit, custodiæ mancipatos.

Reasons for his deposition.

William deprives other prelates of their honours, and their liberty.

Lanfranc is consecrated Archbishop of Canterbury, A.D. 1071 (A.D. 1070).

Anno millesimo septuagesimo primo, Lanfrancus, Abbas Cadomensis, genere Longobardus, vir undecunque doctissimus, omnium liberalium artium, divinarumque simul, ac sæcularium, litterarum scientia peritissimus, consiliis quoque ac gubernatione rerum mundanarum æque prudentissimus, die Assumptionis Sanctæ Mariæ, Archiepiscopus Cantuariæ consecratur. Lanfrancus, pro pallio Romam iens, pervenit ad præsentiam Alexandri Papæ. Cui Papa, ad se intranti, assurgens, eum, ut gressum figeret, dulciter hortatus est; ac deinde subdens,—"Honorem," inquit, "exhibuimus tibi, non quem "Archiepiscopatui tuo, sed quem magistro, cujus studio "sumus imbuti in illis quæ scimus, debuimus. Hinc "quod ad te pertinet, ob reverentiam Beati Petri, te "exequi par est." Residente igitur Papa, Lanfrancus progressus humiliat se ad pedes ejus, sed mox ab eo ad osculum est erectus. Reversus in Angliam, Primas totius regni confirmatus est. Cujus tempore per totam

Honour paid to him by Pope Alexander II.

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

terram religio quamplurimum aucta est in novis monasteriorum ædificiis. Quorum structoribus ipse primum exemplum præbens, Ecclesiam Christi Cantuariæ, cum omnibus officinis quæ infra murum sunt ipsius curiæ, cum ipso muro, ædificavit.

Lanfranc builds Christ Church, at Canterbury.

Anno millesimo septuagesimo secundo, Rex Willelmus, audito quod Comites Morgarus et [1] Siwardus Barn, et Egelwinus, Dunelmensis Episcopus, latenter in insulam Eliensem confugerant, in Orientali insulæ plaga, omnem illis obstruxit exitum, et pontem duorum milliariorum in Occidentali fieri jussit; et omnes, excepto Herewardo, viro [2] strenuissimo, qui, cum paucis, per paludes evasit, sibi deditionem facere coegit, anno, scilicet, regni sui sexto.

King William defeats the insurgent Barons in the Isle of Ely, but Hereward escapes, A.D. 1072 (A.D. 1071).

Hoc anno, post Assumptionem Sanctæ Mariæ, Rex Willelmus profectus est in Scotiam, ut eam subjugaret; cui Rex Scotorum, Malcolmus, in loco qui dicitur "Abrenitici," occurrit, et homagium sibi fecit.

Malcolm, King of Scotland, does homage to William, A.D. 1072.

Anno millesimo septuagesimo tertio, Rex Anglorum Willelmus civitatem quæ dicitur "Cennomanis," et adjacentem provinciam, maxime Anglorum adjutorio, sibi subjugavit.

William takes Le Mans, A.D. 1073.

Anno millesimo septuagesimo quarto, Gregorius Papa, Septimus, prius vocatus "Hildebrandus," celebrato Synodo, simoniacos anathematizavit, uxoratos sacerdotes a divino removit officio, et laicis Missam eorum audire interdixit; novo exemplo, et, ut multis visum est, inconsiderato præjudicio, contra Sanctorum, patrum sententiam; qui scripserunt quod Sacramenta, quæ fiunt in ecclesia, baptismus, chrisma, corpus et sanguis Christi, Spiritu Sancto latenter operante, eorundem Sacramentorum effectum, seu per bonos, seu per malos, intra Ecclesiam dispensentur, tam quia Spiritus Sanctus mystice illa vivificat, nec bonorum meritis amplificantur, nec peccatis malorum attenuantur. Ex qua re tam

Councils held at Rome, by Pope Gregory VII., or Hildebrand, A.D. 1074, 1075.

---

[1] *Edwardus Barn* in ed Camden. | [2] *serenissimo* in ed. Camden.

grave oritur scandalum, ut nullius hæresis tempore Sancta Ecclesia graviori schismate discissa sit; hiis pro justitia, illis contra justitiam, agentibus; porro continentiam paucis tenentibus, aliquibus eam, modo causa quæstus ac jactantiæ, simulantibus, multis incontinentiam perjurio, aut multipliciori adulterio, cumulantibus. Ad hæc, hac opportunitate, laicis insurgentibus contra sacros ordines, et se ab omni ecclesiastica subjectione excutientibus, laici sacrosancta mysteria temerant, et de hiis disputant, infantes baptizant, sordido humore aurium, pro sacro oleo et [1] chrismate, utentes, in extremo vitæ, viaticum dominicum, et usitatum Ecclesiæ obsequium sepulturæ, a presbyteris conjugatis accipere parvipendunt; decimas presbyteris deputatas [2] igne cremant, et, ut in uno cætera perpendas, laici corpus Domini, a presbyteris conjugatis consecratum, sæpe pedibus conculcaverunt, et sanguinem Domini voluntarie effuderunt.

Great schism caused by the decisions thereof.

Other evils resulting therefrom.

Herefordensis Comes, Rogerus filius Willelmi, contra præceptum Regis, Comiti Est Anglorum, Radulpho, sororem suam conjugem tradidit; nuptiasque, cum plurima multitudine optimatum, in Cantabrigiensi Provincia, in loco qui dicitur "Ixingam," celebrantes, magnam conjurationem, plurimis assentientibus, contra Regem Willelmum ibi fecerunt; Comitemque Waltheofum, suis insidiis præventum, secum conjurare compulerunt. Qui, mox ut potuit, Lanfrancum Archiepiscopum adiit; pœnitentiamque ab eo, pro facto sacramento, licet non sponte, suscepit humiliter, ejusque consilio Regem Willelmum in Normannia petiit; eique rem ex ordine gestam pandens, illius misericordiæ ultro se dedit. Herefordensi vero Comiti, ne trans Sabrinam [3] Radulpho occurreret, restitit Wulstanus, Wigorniensis Episcopus,

Conspiracy of Roger, Earl of Hereford, and others, against King William (A.D. 1075).

Information is given to King William by Earl Waltheof.

---

[1] *crismate* in MS.
[2] *igni* in MS.
[3] *Rodulpho* in ed. Camden.

Ralph, Earl of East Anglia, is opposed, and flies to Bretagne.

et Egelwinus, [Abbas] Evishamensis, cum Ursone Vicecomite Wigorniæ, et Waltero de Laceio. Odo vero, Baiocensis Episcopus, frater Regis, et Gaufridus, Constantiensis Episcopus, Radulphum ad Minorem Britanniam cum exercitu fugere compulerunt.

Earl Waltheof is beheaded, and others of the conspirators mutilated.

Rex autem Willelmus, reversus de Normannia, eorum qui in illum conjuraverant quosdam exlegavit, quosdam, erutis oculis, vel manibus truncatis, deturpavit. Comitem vero Waltheophum indigne jussit decapitari. Cujus corpus, expost de terra levatum, magno cum honore Cruland sepeliendum deportatur; ubi prodentibus miraculis, se cum Christo regnare manifeste declarat. Post

William besieges Dol, in Bretagne, but is repulsed.

hæc, Rex Willelmus, in Britanniam Minorem transiens, castellum Radulphi Comitis, quod "Dol" dicitur, tam diu obsedit, donec Rex Francorum, Philippus, illum inde fugaret. Acta anno Christi millesimo septuagesimo quinto.

Robert Curthose, with the aid of the King of France, wages war against the King, his father A.D. 1076, 7.

Robertus Curthose, Willelmi Regis primogenitus, eo quod Normanniam, quam, ante Conquæstum Angliæ, coram Rege Francorum dederat, possidere non licebat, Franciam adiit, et, auxilio Philippi Regis, in Normannia magnas frequenter prædas agebat, et patri suo non parvam molestiam inferebat, sub annis millesimo septuagesimo sexto et millesimo septuagesimo septimo.

William is wounded in combat by his son, Robert, A.D. 1079 (A.D. 1078).

Anno millesimo septuagesimo nono, Rex Willelmus, pugnando cum Roberto, filio suo, vulneratus est ab ipso in brachio, et dejectus ab emissario. Sed Robertus, mox ut vocem illius audivit, festinus descendit, et illum suum caballum jussit ascendere, et sic abire permisit. Ille autem, multis suorum occisis, nonnullisque captis, ac filio suo Willelmo vulnerato, cum multis, fugam iniit. Maledixit igitur Rex Roberto, filio suo; quam maledictionem, antequam moreretur, evidenter

He curses his son.

perpessus est.

Wales subjugated (A.D. 1081).

Anno millesimo octogesimo, Rex Willelmus Walliam sibi subdidit, et Odonem, Episcopum Baiocensem, fratrem

Bishop Odo imprisoned (A.D. 1082).

suum, in carcere posuit.

Survey of England made by the King's order.

Anno millesimo octogesimo septimo, Rex Willelmus [1]misit justiciarios suos per unamquamque schiram Angliæ, et per jusjurandum fecit inquirere, quot hidæ, id est, jugera, uni aratro sufficientia per annum, essent in unaquaque villa, et quot animalia. Fecit et inquiri quid unaquæque urbs, castellum, vicus, villa, flumen, palus, silva, redderet per annum: et omnia, in chartis scripta, delata sunt ad Regem, et in thesauros reposita; ubi usque hodie servantur.

William burns Mantes, with two anchorites there, A.D. 1088 (A.D. 1087).

Anno millesimo octogesimo octavo, Rex Willelmus, regnum devastans Franciæ, castrum nobile, quod vocatur "Maante," combussit, et ecclesias quæ ibi erant, et plebem multam, et duos sanctos anachoritas, igni tradidit; quibus visum non fuit, etiam in tanto periculo, deserere cellas suas. Sed in ipso [2]reditu dirus dolor viscerum apprehendit illum. Cum autem diem sibi mortis imminere sensisset, fratrem suum, Odonem, Baiocensem Episcopum, et omnes quos in Anglia vel Normannia tenebat in vinculis, relaxabat. Terras vero suas sic divisit:—Roberto, primogenito suo, Normanniam, Willelmo, secundo filio suo, Angliæ monarchiam, Henrico, thesauri copiam. Pro quo cum Robertus vendidisset ei partem Normanniæ, thesauro habito, quod ei vendiderat iterum abstulit.

On the approach of death, he releases his prisoners; and divides his territories.

King William dies, and is buried at Caen (A.D. 1087).

Rex igitur Willelmus, postquam genti Anglorum præfuisset viginti annis, decem mensibus, et viginti et [3]octo diebus, quinto Idus [4]Septembris, die Jovis, regnum, cum vita, reliquit; et Cadomi, in [5]ecclesia Sancti Stephani, quam ipse a fundamentis construxerat, sepultus requiescit. Uxor vero sua, Matildis, Abbatiam sanctimonialium ibidem construxit, ubi et [6]ipsa requiescit. Hæc fuerat filia Baldewini, Comitis Flandrensis.

Matildis buried in her own monastery there.

[1] In allusion to the Domesday Survey; it was commenced A.D. 1080, and ended in A.D. 1086.

[2] *redditu* in ed. Camden.

[3] 7 in ed. Camden.

[4] He died on the 9th of September, 1087.

[5] *ecclesiam* in ed. Camden.

[6] *ipse* in ed. Camden.

William Rufus succeeds his father.

Willelmus, dictus "Rufus," Regis Willelmi filius, Angliam adiit festinanter, ducens secum Wulnothum et Morcharum, quos laxaverat pater suus. Sed mox ut venit Wintoniam, eos custodiæ mancipavit. Sexto vero Kalendas Octobris, Die Dominico, in Westmonasterio, a Lanfranco, Archiepiscopo, consecratus est in Regem.

He recommits Wulnoth and Morcar to prison.

Dissensions in England, some favouring William, some Robert.

Hoc anno inter primates Angliæ oritur magna discordia. Pars enim nobilior Normannorum favebat Regi Willelmo, sed minima; pars vero altera, Roberto Comiti, sed maxima, cupiens hunc sibi adsciscere in regnum, fratrem vero aut fratri vivum trādere, aut regno privare peremptum. Itaque res eo perducta est, ut partes essent ad conflictum paratæ. Sed pater reverendus, Wulstanus, jam quodammodo alter Moises, parat se, viriliter staturus pro populo et civitate sua, pro imminente periculo fundens precamina, exhortans quosque ne desperent de Deo, Qui non pugnat gladio neque hasta. Normanni igitur rogant sanctum Wulstanum, Episcopum, ut ab ecclesia ad eos transiret in castellum; ipse vero, pro Regis fidelitate, petitioni eorum adquievit. Castellani igitur, atque cives, licentia Episcopi, occurrunt hostibus trans Sabrinam. Quibus inquit,—"Ite, "filii, ite in pace, ite securi, cum Dei, et nostra, bene-"dictione. Confidens ergo in Domino, spondeo, vobis "hodie gladius non nocebit." Alacres ergo omnes unanimiter occurrunt hostibus. Hostes vero, contumaciter spernentes mandata pontificis, in terram ipsius posuerunt incendia. Unde a circumstantibus coactus, Episcopus gravi eos percussit anathemate. Res miranda, et Dei virtus, et viri bonitas! Nam statim hostes tanta membrorum percutiuntur debilitate, tanta oculorum attenuantur cœcitate, ut vix arma valerent ferre, nec socios, nec hostes, agnoscere; cæduntur pedites, capiuntur milites. Cæteris fuga elapsis, Regis fideles, sine ulla diminutione suorum, remeant ad propria, gratias Deo et Episcopo referentes.

Bishop Wulstan opposes the faction hostile to King William.

A miracle wrought through him.

King William

Anno millesimo nonagesimo, Rex Willelmus, regni sui

ulcisci paratus injurias, quas frater suus Robertus intulerat, muneribus datis, adquisivit sibi castellum Sancti Walerici, et Albamarle, et Ou, et Fiscamium. Comes vero Robertus, suorum infidelitate cognita, Regem Francorum, Philippum, in Normanniam venire fecit. Sed a Willelmo Rege non modica pecuniæ data quantitate, in Franciam remeavit. obtains possession of certain Castles in Normandy, A.D. 1090.

Anno millesimo nonagesimo primo, Rex Anglorum, Willelmus, cum fratre suo, Roberto, fecit concordiam: eo tamen pacto, ut castra illa, quæ frater ab eo adquisierat, Regi remanerent. Hoc [1] etiam statuerunt inter se, si alter sine hærede moreretur, hæreditas defuncti superstiti remaneret. He makes peace with Robert on certain terms, A.D. 1091.

Post hæc, simul venientes in Angliam, Regem Scotorum, Malcolmum, compulerunt obedire Regi Willelmo, sicut obedierat patri suo; et Rex Willelmus duodecim villas, quas in Anglia sub patre suo habuerat, Malcolmo redderet, et duodecim marcas auri singulis annis daret. Malcolm, King of Scotland, is compelled to obedience.

Anno sequenti, Rex Willelmus, profectus Northumbriam, civitatem Caerleil restauravit; quæ, a Danis Paganis ante ducentos annos diruta, usque ad id tempus mansit deserta. William rebuilds Carlisle, A.D. 1092.

Anno millesimo nonagesimo tertio, Rex Willelmus decidit in languorem, ut putaret se moriturum. Unde de cætero vitam suam corrigere, ecclesias non amplius vendere, nec ad censum ponere, sed illas regia tueri potestate, rectasque leges statuere, Deo promisit. Igitur Anselmo, Beccensi Abbati, suadentibus sibi suis Baronibus, quarto anno oppressionis Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, Doroberniensem Archiepiscopatum concessit; et Cancellario suo, Roberto Bloet, dedit Lincolniæ Præsulatum. He is attacked with illness, and, in fear of death, promises to amend his life, A.D. 1093. Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury.

Anno millesimo nonagesimo quinto, vir vitæ venerabilis, sanctus [2] Wulstanus, Episcopus Wigorniensis, migravit e sæculo; anno a primo die sæculi, certa Scrip- Death of Bishop Wulstan, A.D. 1095.

---

[1] *enim* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Wustanus* in MS.

He appears, at the moment of his death, to Robert, Bishop of Hereford.

turæ ratione, v^m.cc^o.xix. Cujus transitus hora, apparuit amico suo, quem specialiter dilexerat, Roberto, Herefordensi Episcopo, in villa quæ "Crekkelade" dicitur, [1] illicque, ad se tumulandum, Wigorniam properare mandavit. Annulum etiam suum, cum quo pontificalem susceperat benedictionem, neminem passus est digito extrahere, ne post mortem suam suos videretur fallere; quibus prædixerat sæpissime, nec illum se, vita comite, velle perdere, nec etiam sepulturæ suæ die.

Conspiracy of Robert de Mowbray and the nobles of England, in favour of Stephen de Albemarle.

Northumbrensis Comes, Robertus de Mulbraio, et Willelmus de Auco, cum multis aliis, Regem Willelmum conati sunt regno vitaque privare, et Stephanum de [2] Albamarlo, filium amitæ illius, regem constituere. Sed Rex, congregato exercitu, castella ejus obsedit, milites illius cepit, et ipse a Monasterio Sancti Oswini, quo fugerat, a militibus Regis captus est, et in custodia positus. Rex igitur non multo post illum ad Bamburgh, castellum, scilicet, ipsius Comitis, duci jussit, et oculos ejus erui, nisi uxor ejus, et propinquus ejus, Moreal, castellum redderent. Qua necessitate compulsi, castellum reddiderunt. Robertus autem Comes ad Windeleshoram ductus est, forti custodiæ mancipandus; Moreal vero factæ traditionis causam Regi detexit.

Mowbray falls into the King's hands.

William de Eu is vanquished in single combat, and barbarously mutilated, A.D. 1096.

Anno millesimo nonagesimo sexto, in Octavis Epiphaniæ, apud Saresbiriam, Rex Willelmus tenuit consilium, in quo jussit Willelmi de Auco, in duello victi, oculos eruere, et testiculos abscindere; et dapiferum illius, Willelmum de Alderi, filium amitæ illius, suspendi. Comitem Odonem de Campania, prædicti Stephani patrem, et quosdam alios, traditionis participes, in custodiam posuit.

Robert pledges Normandy to William, and pro-

Eo tempore, instante magna peregrinatione Ierosolymitana, Robertus, Dux Normannorum, missis in Angliam nunciis, petiit a Willelmo Rege, fratre suo, ut præstaret sibi, peregrinaturo, decem millia marcarum argenti, et

---

[1] *illigue* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Albamarlum* in ed. Camden.

ab eo Normanniam in vadimonium acciperet. Qui mox, petitioni ejus satisfacere cupiens, accommodata a majoribus Angliæ non modica pecunia, mense Septembri mare transiit, et sex millia sexcenta sex illi præstitit, et ab eo Normanniam vadem accepit. ceeds on a Crusade (A.D. 1096).

Anno millesimo nonagesimo septimo, primum bellum Christianorum fuit ad pontem [1] Pharphar fluminis, nono Kalendas Martii; secundum apud Nicæam, quam et ceperunt tertio-decimo Kalendas Julii; ceperunt et [2] Laodiceam. Cum vero essent plus quam trecenta millia armatorum, tanta eis suppetebat copia, ut aries uno nummo, bos vix duodecim nummis, venderetur. Cum igitur, post septem hebdomadas et tres dies, inde Antiochiam tenderent, diviso exercitu, circumdederunt unum eorum exercitum trecenta millia equitum, et Arabes, quorum non erat numerus. Mittitur ergo ad alium exercitum, et bellum geritur horrendum nimis; in quo Christiani vehementer attriti sunt. Quibus jam fugam meditantibus, occurrit Robertus, Dux Normanniæ, clamans magna voce:—"Quo, milites, quo fugitis? "Equi eorum sunt nostris velociores; melius est enim "bene mori quam male evadere; me sequamini." Dixerat, et in quemdam paganorum regem [3] lanceæ suæ direxit aciem, quæ lignum et æs, et corpus, æque diffidit, stravitque secundum et tertium. Qua occasione, cæteris principibus ministravit animum, et audendi fortia dedit exemplum. Unde factum est, ut Christiani victoria potirentur, licet damnosa, mensis Julii die prima. Proceedings of the Crusaders, at Nicæa and Laodicea. Through Duke Robert's prowess, the enemy are defeated (at Dorylæum), 1st July 1097.

Inde progredientes ceperunt plurimas civitates; tandem venerunt ad Pontem Ferreum, et Antiochiam, quæ caput est Syriæ, duodecimo Kalendas Novembris [4] obsederunt. In Februario, congregato mirabili paganorum exercitu ad Pontem Ferreum, apud Castellum Areth, Christiani sex acies in eos direxerunt; sed maxima vis Siege of Antioch. Battle of the Iron Bridge.

---

[1] See 2 *Kings* v. 12.
[2] *Laodiciam* in MS.
[3] *lanciæ* in MS.
[4] *obsiderunt* in ed. Camden.

Prowess of Bohemund and Robert Fitz-Gerard.

Valour of Duke Robert, and of Duke Godfrey.

Defeat of the enemy.

Paganorum eos invasit, tam acriter, ut paulatim jam cederent. At Boamundus, bellorum arbiter, Robertus [1] etiam, filius Gerardi, signifer, velut leones, proruunt in hostes. Dux igitur Normannorum gladio caput cujusdam magni viri, et dentes, et collum, et humeros, usque in pectora, diffidit. Dux Godefridus quemdam medium secavit; cum igitur pars terræ occidisset, partem aliam domini sui ferebat equus inter Paganos. Quo monstro perterriti, simul cuncti fugientes, in iram damnationis abierunt.

Ortum, vitam, et promotionem, [2] Anselmi, Beccensis Abbatis, in Archiepiscopum Cantuariæ, sequentia edocebunt.—

Career of Anselm.

Born at Aosta.

After studying in Gaul, he joins Lanfranc, Prior of Bec, and becomes a monk.

Anselmus, genere Longobardus, Augustæ civitatis indigena, a puero litteras edoctus, cum litteris bonos imbibit mores, studens in hoc firmare propositum, ne ab honesto reflecteret animum. Transcendens juga Alpium, in Gallia liberalibus disciplinis studuit per triennium. Inde transiens in Normanniam, adhæsit Lanfranco, Priori Beccensi, Scholas publicas regenti tunc temporis, permissu vel jussu Abbatis Herlewini. Sanam cujus doctrinam attendens, et mundialibus curis ex toto renuncians, habitum monachalem suscepit, vicesimum septimum ætatis agens annum. Quos imitari debuerat, bonis operibus jugiter inhærendo, cura solicitiore prævenit. Et cum in claustro jam continuum transegisset triennium, Lanfrancus, primo Cadomensis Abbas effectus, post Doroberniensis Antistes consecratus, in Prioratu Beccensi successorem reliquit Anselmum, qui postea, unanimi consensu fratrum, electus est in Abbatem loci prædicti.

He succeeds Lanfranc, both as Abbot and Archbishop.

He is chosen Archbishop of Canterbury, in his 60th year.

King William in

Expost, ut supra retulimus, post decessum Lanfranci, in Archiepiscopum Cantuariæ sublimatus est, procurante Rege Willelmo, anno ætatis suæ sexagesimo. Rex Willelmus, convalescens corpore de infirmitate, ægrotare cœpit in anima. Nam in propriis facultatibus disper-

[1] *et filius* in ed. Camden.

[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

gendis effusior, alienas perscrutari non destitit. Petiit igitur ab Archiepiscopo mille libras argenteorum, fiscalibus commodis applicandas: causam allegans, ut sibi videbatur justissimum, quoniam gratis in promotione sua promptum præbuisset assensum. Archiepiscopus vero, trahens ad indifferentiam, ante promotionem vel post, ob talem causam numerare pecuniam, pari sententia feriendum decrevit utrumque. Sed quia Regis saccos implere non poterat, nisi prius bonam conscientiam evacuasset, elegit potius Regis indignationem incurrere, quam dispendium famæ, quam periculum animæ, quam confusionem [1] in posterum, quam imprecationem multorum in ecclesia Dei, subire.

declining health.

He asks a sum of money from the Archbishop; who, from conscientious motives, declines.

Non multo post, cum maxima difficultate, vix obtenta a Rege licentia, non licentiosa, recessit a Curia. Nam si, propositis Evangeliis, repromitteret se nec Apostolorum limina visitaturum, nec pro quovis negotio Romanæ Sedis audientiam appellaturum, tunc poterat et suis atque suorum rebus cum omni tranquillitate prospicere, poterat et regni majoribus in omni dominatione præesse. Sin autem, poterat transfretare, sed sine spe revertendi recedere. Discedens Archiepiscopus venit ad mare. Ascensuro navem apud Doveram, accurrit [2] Willelmus Warwast, irreverenter, et pecuniam non in [3] ore saccorum solummodo, sed in ipsius Archiepiscopi manicis et clitellis, improbus perscrutator perquirens; sed, non invento quod quæsierat, sollicitudinem suam delusam vidit. Sed in hiis injuriis, nec sic ab Archiepiscopo vel verbum amaritudinis, vel signum offensionis, potuit extorquere. Transfretationem ejus illico apparitores potestatis prosequuntur, ecclesiæ bona fiscalibus ratiociniis per totam regionem addicentes.

The Archbishop leaves Court; the leave being granted on certain terms.

Insult offered to him at Dover.

Patience shown by him.

The property of his church is seized.

Limina visitans Apostolorum, ab Urbano, Papa, maximo cum honore receptus est Laterani. Cum quo

He is received with honour by

[1] *imposterum* in ed. Camden.

[2] The same person who was afterwards Bishop of Exeter.

[3] *Genesis* xliv. 1.

Pope Urban II. Present at the Councils at Bari and Rome.

postmodum, in [1] Barensi Consilio, Græcorum a fide Catholica dissidentium confutavit errorem. Habito [2] Romæ Concilio, quo rursus idem Papa resedit Urbanus, interfuit; in quo laicos [3] investituras ecclesiarum, more pristino, conferentes, et eas accipientes a laicis, et taliter, post adeptum honorem munus consecrationis impendere præsumentes, a communione fidelium Synodalis [4] auctoritas decrevit extorres.

The Archbishop, during his exile, dwells at Lyons. Henry I. succeeds to the throne; who recalls Anselm.

A Consilio rediens Archiepiscopus, dum exilium æquanimiter Lugduni subiret, effluxit triennium; prope cujus finem, Rex Willelmus vitæ fecit finem; cui frater suus, Henricus, successit in regno, qui mox revocavit Archiepiscopum, et liberam rerum suarum administrationem habere permisit. Sed tamen ut debitam libertatem ecclesiis conservaret, per duos annos et dimidium gravissimis affectus est injuriis. Nam bonis suis denuo confiscatis annus elapsus est, et dimidius. Ipse interim Lugduni moram traxit; ubi quasi in quadam schola virtutum præsidens, magisterio sanctæ conversationis enituit. Postmodum Archiepiscopus, a Rege rogatus, intravit Normanniam. Cum autem Becci Rex et Archiepiscopus convenissent, sub audientia virorum illustrium, tanquam in jure professus est Rex, se nihil juris, vel sibi vel hæredibus, [5] in posterum, in ecclesiarum investituris vendicaturum, nec in electionibus faciendis aliquid aliud quam solum assensum, sicut sacrorum Canonum censura præscribit. Quibus sic pacificatis, Archiepiscopus regressus est in Angliam, et in bona quiete consenuit.

He enters Normandy, and meets the King at Bec.

Returns to England.

King William passes over into Normandy.

Rex Willelmus dum in Nova Foresta venaretur, venit ei nuncius a Cenomannia, dicens ei familiam suam ibi obsideri. Illico Rex, ad mare veniens, naves introiit. Cui nauclerus et nautæ,—"Cur, regum for-

[1] The Council of Bari, held on the 1st of October 1098, concerning the Holy Ghost.

[2] The Council of Rome, 25th of April 1099, on discipline.

[3] *investuras* in ed. Camden.

[4] *authoritas* in ed. Camden.

[5] *imposterum* in ed. Camden.

" tissime, intolerabili tempestate maris alta lacessis, Intrepidity shown by him in reference to the perils of the sea.
" et mortis imminens periculum non formidas ?" Quibus Rex,—" De rege submerso fluctibus sermonem non
" audivi ; quin potius solvite retinacula navium, et
" videbitis elementa conspirare ad meum obsequium." Ergo mare transiens, spreto periculo, nihil, dum viveret, egit, unde tantam famam haberet.

Cenomanniam veniens, Heliam Consulem, qui, cum suis, urbem obsederat, cepit, fugatis reliquis. Adducto Helia coram se, ludibundus ait,—" Habeo te, Magister." At ille,—" Fortuito me cepisti ; sed si possem evadere,
" novi quid facerem." Hoc autem dixit, propter paucitatem militum regiorum. Tunc Rex, iratus,—" Abi," inquit, " fuge, concedo ut facias quodcunque volueris,
" sive poteris." Hoc autem dixit, ut readunaret exercitum. Sed nec ille fuit ausus redire cum exercitu, quamvis plures haberet milites quam Rex habebat, nec exercitus manus conserere cum Rege furente. Hiis ita gestis, Rex in Angliam est reversus.

King William takes Le Mans.
He dismisses Count Helias, whom he had captured.

Anno millesimo nonagesimo octavo, Christiani, obsessa Antiochia, in tantum attenuati sunt, propter omnium rerum penuriam, ut in toto exercitu vix centum boni equi invenirentur. Et tamen, quamvis ex desperatione multi sese subtraxerunt, multique repatriaverunt, nono tamen mense obsidionis, tertio Nonas Junii, capta Antiochia, Christiani a Paganis, versa vice, obsessi, tanta fame sunt afflicti, ut vix aliqui ab humanis carnibus abstinerent. Sed confortati a Deo per inventam ipsius lanceam, Sancto Andrea Apostolo revelante, in ecclesia Beati Petri, ipsa lancea eos præcedente, occurrunt obsessoribus, et Cirbaram, principem militiæ, aliosque, fugantes, occisis multis millibus, plenam victoriam reportarunt, quarto Kalendas Julii. Commissa Antiochia Duci Boamundo, Christiani, propter discordiam principum, in Syriam profecti, [1] expugnatis Marra

The Christians suffer from famine, while besieging Antioch, A.D. 1098.
Having taken it, they are besieged in turn.
The enemy are defeated in the Battle of Antioch, 28th of June.

[1] *expugnata* in MS.

The Christians eat the bodies of the enemy.

et Barra, ibi rursum fame afflicti sunt, ut corpora Saracenorum, jam fœtentia, comedere sunt compulsi.

Anno millesimo nonagesimo nono, exercitus Dei pervenit Ierosolymam, eamque obsidentes Christiani, cum laborarent pro victus, et maxime pro aquæ, penuria, omnes ex communi decreto nudis pedibus orando cotidie circuibant urbem. Octavo igitur talis humiliationis die, obsidionis autem tricesima nona, capta est Ierusalem [1] Idibus Julii, sexta feria, et in Templo Salomonis, et in porticu ejus, Christiani, cum Paganis bello conserto, tot incredulos occiderunt, ut in sanguine occisorum pene ad equorum genua equitarent. Civitate igitur ordinata, et principibus de reditu jam agentibus, ecce! Turci occurrerunt, cum centum millibus equitum, et quadringentis millibus peditum. Quibus cum occurrisset exercitus Domini, cum non pluribus quam quinque millibus equitum, et quindecim millibus peditum, Saraceni, solo Christianorum impetu territi, omnes, projectis armis, fugerunt. Et hoc octavo bello, quarto Kalendas Augusti, cæsa sunt centum millia Paganorum. In porta vero Ascaloniæ, ubi bellum commissum fuerat, ad duo millia suffocati sunt.

Capture of Jerusalem with much bloodshed, 15th July, A.D. 1099.

The Saracens are again defeated, 29th July.

King William is slain by Walter Tirel (A.D. 1100).

Rex Anglorum, Willelmus, anno Domini millesimo centesimo, dum in Nova Foresta venaretur, in [2] die Sancti Petri ad Vincula, a [3] Waltero Tirel sagitta percussus, occubuit, et Wintoniæ sepultus est, in ecclesia Sancti Petri.

Henry, brother of William, is crowned King.

Henricus, frater Regis Willelmi, consecratus est Rex Anglorum, apud Westmonasterium, a Mauritio, Londoniensi Episcopo, Nonis Augusti; cum quo, Thomas, Archiepiscopus Eboracensis, coronam capiti Regis imposuit.

Death of Godfrey, Duke of Lorraine.

Godfridus, princeps [4] Ierosolymitanorum, et Dux Lotharensium, diem clausit extremum.

---

[1] *Idus* in ed. Camden. The date was the 15th of July.

[2] August 1.

[3] *Gualtero* in ed. Camden.

[4] *Ierosolimorum* in MS.

Henry marries Matildis.

Henricus, Rex Anglorum, uxorem duxit Matildēn, filiam Malcolmi, Regis Scotorum.

Duke Robert remits to the King a yearly payment of 3,000 marks.

Anno Christi millesimo centesimo primo, Robertus, Dux Normanniæ, regressus de peregrinatione Ierosolymitana, venit in Angliam, et, Regis prudentia, condonavit Regi tria millia marcarum quæ sibi Rex debebat annuatim.

Banishment of William, Earl of Mortaigne, A.D. 1104.

Anno Christi millesimo centesimo quarto, Willelmus, Comes Moritoniensis, exhæreditatus ab Anglia, causa perfidiæ, discessit in Normanniam, et hominibus Regis Henrici bellum intulit, calamitate refertum.

Successes of King Henry in Normandy (A.D. 1105).

Anno millesimo centesimo sexto, Rex Henricus, transiens in Normanniam, fere subjugavit omnes principes Normannorum, exceptis Roberto de Beleasmo, Willelmo de Moritonio, et paucis aliis. Rex Henricus Beccum venit, ubi ipse et Anselmus Archiepiscopus in unum convenerunt, et tandem omnia quæ in diversa traxerant, pacem et concordiam invenerunt, et idem Archiepiscopus, jussu et rogatu Regis, rediit in Angliam.

His interview with Anselm.

Henry gains the Battle of Tenchebray, A.D. 1106.

Congregato exercitu, Rex Anglorum, Henricus, quoddam castrum Comitis de Moritonio, quod vocatur "Tenerchebray," perrexit, et obsedit. Interim venit Dux Robertus, frater Regis, super eum, cum exercitu, in Vigilia Sancti Michaelis, et cum eo Robertus de Beleasmo, et Comes Willelmus de [1] Moritonia; ubi concito pugnatum est. Sed victoria Regi favit; nam illic captus est Robertus, Dux Normanniæ, [2] et Comes de Moritonio; Robertus de Beleasmo in fugam versus est, et plures alii capti sunt. Igitur Normannia sub regia potestate disposita, Duceque Normannorum, Roberto, et Comite Moritonii, Willelmo, sub captione præmissis in Angliam, ipse ante Pascha in regnum reversus est.

Duke Robert is taken prisoner.

The Abbey of Ely made a bishopric, A.D. 1110 (A.D. 1109).

Anno millesimo centesimo decimo, Rex Henricus Abbathiam Eliensem ad episcopalem mutavit sedem, et Herveum præfecit ibidem.

[1] Sic in MS.

[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

The King of France invades Normandy, for one night.

Rex Francorum, et auxiliarii sui, hostiliter venerunt in Normanniam; ubi cum una nocte mansissent, formidantes Regis adventum [1] Angliæ, propere recesserunt.

Baldwin VII., Count of Flanders, fatally wounded, A.D. 1118 (A.D. 1119).

Anno Christi millesimo centesimo decimo octavo, Regis Francorum et Regis Anglorum longa concertatio gravissime regem vexavit utrumque, donec Baldewinus, Comes Flandriæ, apud [2] Ou letaliter vulneratus est.

King Henry defeats the French (at Brenneville), A.D. 1119.

Anno Christi millesimo centesimo decimo nono, Rex Anglorum, Henricus, pugnavit contra Regem Francorum. In quo bello Willelmus Crispinus, miles magnanimus, Regis Henrici caput bis gladio percussit, ita ut sanguis prorumperet. Unde Rex commotus, percussorem suum ita repercussit, ut equitem et equum prosterneret mole ictus, qui mox ante pedes regios captus est. Franci vero, horrore inspirato liquefacti, terga dedere. Henricus autem Rex perstitit in campo victor.

Fulk, Count of Anjou, leaves his territory to his son Geoffrey, and goes to Jerusalem, to be king there.

Regni Ierosolymitani principes, directis nunciis, Fulconem, Andegavensium Comitem, sollicitaverunt, quatenus loca Dominicæ Passionis adiret, accepturus uxorem filiam Regis Baldewini, quam unicam et hæredem reliquerat. Quibus adquiescens Comes, filio suo, Gaufrido Plantagenest, hæreditatem reliquit. Ierosolymam adiit; super solium David Regis in Ierusalem collocatus est; Christi crucis inimicos attrivit. Quod igitur incepit viriliter, sui successores [3] suo tempore suppleverunt. Quorum strenuitas, ordine successorio gubernacula regni Ierosolymitani nanciscens, et [4] Idumæorum compescuit ferocitatem, et [5] Babylonem, factam rebellem, sub ditione redegit, et Alexandriam reddidit tributariam, et, in nominis sui celebritate, totius populos Orientis effecit attonitos.

Valour of his successors.

On the death of Matildis, Henry marries Adeliza of Louvaine (A.D. 1121).

Mortua Matilde Regina, Rex Henricus duxit Adelizam, filiam Ducis Lovanniæ; quæ a Radulpho, Cantuariensi Archiepiscopo, consecrata est apud Windelishoram, anno millesimo centesimo vicesimo.

---

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[2] *On* in ed. Camden.
[3] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[4] *Ydumeorum* in MS.
[5] *Babilonem* in MS.

Eodem anno, Willelmus, filius Regis primogenitus, submersus est, cum multis nobilibus. Hic jactitaverat quod si aliquando dominium super Anglos acciperet, eos, quasi boves, ad aratrum trahere faceret. William, son of King Henry, is drowned, A.D. 1120.

Sub hoc tempore, Rex Henricus maritavit Matilden, filiam suam, Henrico Quarto, Teutonico Imperatori. Princess Matildis married to Henry IV. [V.], A.D. 1114.

Circa annum Domini millesimum centesimum vicesimum tertium, Ordo Templariorum incepit. Hii nempe, congregati ex reliquiis [1] Hospitalariorum, sedem sibi statuerunt in porticu Templi Ierosolymitani; qua de re vocati sunt "Milites Templi." Qui ex reliquiis [1] Hospitalariorum in cibis et armis sustentati, ad tantam rerum opulentiam devenerunt, ut filia ditata matrem videretur supergredi et suffocare. (Qui tandem, ob ignominiosam apostasiam, in Christum et blasphemiam, circa annum Gratiæ millesimum trecentesimum duodecimum, sub Papa Clemente Quinto, deleti sunt.) The Order of Knights Templars founded (A.D. 1118). Their ultimate opulence. Final extinction of the Order, A.D. 1312.

Anno Christi millesimo centesimo vicesimo quinto, Henricus Quartus obiit, Alemanniæ Imperator. De quo quidam dicunt, quod postquam incarceravit patrem suum carnalem, et patrem spiritualem, Papam, cum Cardinalibus, tandem ad cor rediens, ultroneus exul factus est: dimissa clam uxore sua, Matilde, Anglica, heremiticam vitam apud Cestriam duxit per decennium. Quo sic digresso latenter, Matildis Imperatrix ad patrem suum, Regem Henricum, in Normanniam rediit; ubi cito [2] post copulata est Galfrido Plantagenest, Comiti Andegaviæ, de quo suscepit Henricum Secundum, postmodum Regem Anglorum. Alii vero dicunt quod præfatus Henricus, Imperator Alemanniæ, sepultus sit apud Spiram, cum suis progenitoribus, cum hoc epitaphio,— Death of the Emperor, Henry IV. [V.], A.D. 1125. Story in reference to his becoming a hermit. Matildis married to Geoffrey Plantagenet, Count of Anjou (A.D. 1127).

"Filius hic, pater hic, avus hic, proavus jacet istic."

Primates Angliæ juraverunt Imperatrici, et, primus inter omnes, Stephanus, Comes Boloniæ. Oath made to the Empress.

Anno millesimo centesimo vicesimo septimo, Galfridus Marriage of Matildis.

[1] *Hospitaliorum* in MS.

[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

Plantagenest, Comes Andegavorum, duxit Imperatricem Matilden.

On the death of Charles, Count of Flanders, Henry succeeds him.

Anno millesimo centesimo vicesimo nono, mortuo Flandrensi Comite, Karolo, Henricus, Rex Angliæ, de beneplacito Regis Franciæ, successit jure consanguinitatis.

Death of Robert, Duke of Normandy, A.D. 1133 (A.D. 1134).

Anno millesimo centesimo tricesimo tertio, Robertus Curthose, quondam Dux Normanniæ, et frater Regis, obiit apud Kardif.

Birth of Henry, son of Matildis, A.D. 1134 (A.D. 1133).

Anno millesimo centesimo tricesimo quarto, natus est Cenomanniæ Henricus, primogenitus Galfridi Plantagenest, Comitis Andegavorum, et Matildis Imperatricis. Quo audito, Rex Henricus, convocatis regni sui principibus, filiam suam et hæredes filiæ suæ sibi instituit successores, super hoc sibi præstito sacramento a regni majoribus. Stephanus, filius [1] Adelæ, sororis suæ, apud Westmonasterium, [2] primo præstitit sacramentum.

Stephen, son of Adela, does fealty to Matildis.

Death of Henry I., and burial at Reading, A.D. 1135.

Annō millesimo centesimo tricesimo quinto, Henricus, Rex Anglorum, cum regnasset annis triginta quinque, et mensibus quatuor, decessit apud Sanctum Dionisium, in Silva Leonum, et in Anglia sepultus est, apud Radingum.

Names of Castles in Normandy, built by King Henry.

Nomina castellorum quæ in Normannia ex integro fecit Henricus Rex in margine ipsius provinciæ, sunt ista;—Drincurtis, Novum Mercatum, Vernolium, Nonanticurtis, Bommilius, Colun Mons, Pons Ursonis; fecit et Castrum Sancti Dionisii in Silva Leonum, Vallem Rodulii, Turrem Ebroicarum, Turrem Alencii, Turrem Osteriarum, Turrem Sancti Johannis, juxta Montem Sancti Michaelis. Monasterium Radingarum fecit in Anglia, Monasterium Canonicorum apud Circestre, Monasterium de Prato apud Rotomagum, Monasterium de Mortuo Mari.

Monasteries, also, founded by him.

Stephen, Count of Boulogne, is crowned King of England.

Stephanus, Comes Boloniæ, audita morte Regis Henrici, avunculi sui, transfretavit in Angliam, et a Willelmo, Cantuariensi Archiepiscopo, consecratus est in regem,

[1] *Alæ* in MS.

[2] *post præstitit* in ed. Camden.

apud Londoniam. Hugo nempe Bigod, veniens in Angliam, qui fuerat Senescallus Regis, coram Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, sacramento probavit, quod dum Rex Henricus ageret in extremis, ortis quibusdam inimicitiis inter ipsum et Imperatricem, ipsam exhæredavit, et Stephanum, Boloniæ Comitem, hæredem instituit. Willelmus igitur, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, nimis credulus verbis Senescalli, Stephanum, Moritonii Comitem, consecravit in regem, apud Westmonasterium, ut præfertur.

Assertion of Hugh Bigod, that King Henry had disinherited Matildis.

William, Archbishop of Canterbury, crowns Stephen.

Anno millesimo centesimo tricesimo sexto, Imperatrix castella quædam in Normannia, post mortem Regis, scilicet, Argentonium et Daunfrunt, cepit.

Castles in Normandy taken by Matildis, A.D. 1136.

Stephanus Rex, in Paschalibus diebus, apud Westmonasterium Consilium congregavit, fidelitates exegit, Regis Henrici thesauris non pepercit, in munerum largitione nimis effusus. Stephanus Rex duxit exercitum apud Excestriam, quam obsedit, et cepit. Baldewinum de Rivieres exhæredavit.

Stephen exacts fealty.

Anno millesimo centesimo tricesimo septimo, Stephanus Rex transiit in Normanniam, et fœdus iniit cum Rege Francorum. Galfridus, Comes Andegavensis, ingressus Normanniam, Regi Stephano treugas dedit, accipiens ab eo duo millia marcarum argenti singulis annis per tres annos.

Stephen makes a treaty with the King of France, and a truce with Geoffrey of Anjou, A.D. 1137.

Anno millesimo centesimo tricesimo octavo, David, Rex Scotorum, innumerabilem congregavit exercitum, tendens in Angliam, et terram usque ad flumen Teyse, cremando, cædendo, gravidas findendo, vastavit. Thurstanus, Eboracensis Archiepiscopus, auxilio Northanhimbrorum, ei restitit apud Alvertone, ubi duodecim millia Scotorum sunt occisa.

David, King of Scotland, invades England, and is defeated, A.D. 1138.

Anno millesimo centesimo tricesimo nono, Rex Stephanus cepit Episcopos Sarum et Lincolniæ, quoniam ipsi castella sua reddere noluerunt. Sequenti anno Rex Stephanus obsedit Lincolniam. Cum autem Die Purificationis Rex, ad Missam, cereum suum offerret, confracta est pyxis, et cecidit super altare, cum cor-

Stephen takes the Bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln.

He besieges Lincoln, A.D. 1140.

Is defeated and taken prisoner (A.D. 1141).

pore Christi; captusque est eo die Rex, et ductus ad Imperatricem, quæ dudum sollicitata fuerat venire in Angliam a quibusdam proceribus regni, et positus est Rex in custodia apud Bristow.

Matildis is acknowledged Queen by the Londoners; but is soon repulsed by them.

Imperatrix a Londoniensibus in dominam est recepta; ubi Regina Angliæ, conjux Stephani, eam interpellavit, ut Rex absolvi posset, ea conditione, ut, regno Imperatrici reddito, Rex alicubi posset monachari, [1] aut perpetuo peregrinari; sed non est exaudita. Interpellata est etiam a civibus Londoniarum, ut liceret eis uti legibus Sancti Edwardi, et non legibus patris sui, Henrici, quia graves erant. Sed illa non adquievit; et idcirco a Londoniensibus est expulsa. Illa vero, anno millesimo centesimo quadragesimo primo, assumpto secum avunculo suo, David, Rege Scotorum, obsedit turrim Episcopi Wintoniensis, ubi frater Regis erat. Sed superveniente Regina, cum Willelmo Yprensi, Imperatrix tanto timore resoluta est, ut, feretro imposita, acsi cadaver esset, equis deferentibus, ad urbem Gloverniæ delata est; et interim Comes Robertus, frater suus, in Exaltatione Sanctæ Crucis, captus est. Habito proinde mutua compensatione compeditorum, hinc Rex, hinc Comes, a vinculis absoluti, liberi recesserunt.

Matildis besieges the Castle of the Bishop of Winchester.

Escapes, by a stratagem, to Gloucester.

Stephen is exchanged for Earl Robert.

Matildis besieged in Oxford by Stephen.

She escapes (A.D. 1142).

Rex Stephanus obsedit Imperatricem apud Oxenforde, a Festo Michaelis usque ad Natale Domini. Illa vero, obsidionis diutinæ impatiens, occasionem fugæ ex temporis qualitate nacta, noctis et nivis beneficio, in veste alba Tamesæ fluvium, crassa glacie, transiit, superstratum.

Pope Lucius intends to make the Bishopric of Winchester an Archbishopric, A.D. 1142 (1144).

Anno millesimo centesimo quadragesimo secundo, Lucius Papa misit pallium Henrico, Wintoniensi Episcopo, cui proposuerat assignare septem episcopos. Sed, morte præventus, quod proposuerat non perfecit; nempe non amplius quam [2] undecim mensibus vixit in Papatu.

Count Geoffrey is acknowledged

Anno millesimo centesimo quadragesimo tertio, Galfridus, Comes Andegavensis, receptus Rotomagi, turrim

[1] *ac perpetuo* in ed. Camden. | [2] *duodecim* in ed. Camden.

obsedit et cepit, et extunc "Dux Normannorum" appellatus est. Duke of Normandy, A.D. 1143.

Anno millesimo centesimo quadragesimo sexto, Rex Stephanus cepit, in curia sua, Ranulphum, Comitem Cestriæ; nec liberari potuit, donec Castrum Lincolniæ reddidisset; et expost Rex Stephanus Lincolniæ coronatur. Stephen seizes Ranulph, Earl of Chester,[1] A.D. 1146.

Anno millesimo centesimo quadragesimo octavo, Lodowicus, Rex Francorum, de Ierusalem est regressus. Cui cum quidam clericus Papale Privilegium attulisset, quod in omni cathedrali ecclesia regni sui primam vacaturam haberet, cum fructibus medio tempore provenientibus, ille confestim combussit litteras, dicens se malle tales comburere litteras, quam animam suam in inferno torqueri. Louis VII. King of France, leaves Jerusalem, A.D. 1148.

Anno millesimo centesimo quinquagesimo, everso Monesteriolo, quod tribus annis obsessum fuerat, Galfridus Plantagenest reddidit Ducatum Normanniæ Henrico, filio suo, et Matildis Imperatricis. Geoffrey delivers the Duchy of Normandy to his son, Henry, A.D. 1150.

Lodowicus, Rex Franciæ, accepit homagium Henrici, filii Galfridi Plantagenest, de Ducatu Normanniæ et Comitatu Andegaviæ. Dum Galfridus Plantagenest, Comes Andegavorum, rediret Parisius a Curia [1] Regis Francorum, concessit in fata apud Castrum Lidii, et sepultus est Cenomannis, in ecclesia Sancti Juliani. King Louis receives his homage. Death of Geoffrey (A.D. 1151).

Anno millesimo centesimo quinquagesimo primo, celebratum est divortium inter Regem Francorum et Reginam Alienoram; quam confestim Henricus, Dux Normannorum et Comes Andegavorum, accepit in conjugem; et sic factus est, ratione conjugis, Dux Aquitannorum. King Louis is divorced from Queen Alienor, A.D. 1151 (1152). Henry marries her.

Anno millesimo centesimo quinquagesimo secundo, Henricus, Dux Normannorum, cum manu valida, intravit Angliam. Henry invades England, A.D. 1152.

Anno millesimo centesimo [quinquagesimo] tertio, evenit quod minime credebatur; siquidem Ducem Normannorum, Henricum, Rex Stephanus in filium King Stephen makes

[1] *Regis Francorum* omitted in ed. Camden.

Henry his successor, A.D. 1153. The castles, newly built in England, are destroyed.

arrogavit, eique, et in eum, jus [1] suum transtulit, et potestatem sibi, quoad vixerit, regiæ dignitatis solam imaginem reservavit. Et si propheticum illud attenderis, jam se induit genitore, jam Ducem arrogavit in filium. Et ut pax uberior vigeret in Anglia, munitiones de novo fundatæ destructæ sunt, ad numerum undecies et quindecim.

Death of Stephen, and burial at Faversham, A.D. 1153 (A.D. 1154).

Anno millesimo centesimo quinquagesimo tertio, Rex Stephanus obiit, octavo Kalendas Novembris, et sepultus est apud Feveresham, monasterium quod ipse a fundamentis construxit. Quo audito, Dux Normanniæ, Henricus, ascensis ratibus apud Barbefluvium, et inde in Angliam veniens, die Dominica ante Natale Domini, apud Westmonasterium, electus ab omnibus in regem, inunctus est a Theobaldo Archiepiscopo, præsente Archiepiscopo Eborum, et aliis Episcopis Angliæ: Rogerus, Eborum Archiepiscopus, manum non apposuit. Henricus, Wintoniensis Episcopus, absque licentia Regis, recessit ab Anglia, ideoque diruta sunt ejus sex castella. Natus est Henricus, Regis primogenitus.

Henry II. is crowned at Westminster, 19th December (A.D. 1154).

Henry crosses over, and takes Mirabel and Chinon, A.D. 1156.

Anno millesimo centesimo quinquagesimo sexto, Rex Henricus, transfretans apud Doveram, applicuit apud Widsand; ad quem venit Rotomagi Theodoricus, Comes Flandriæ, et Comitissa Sibilla, Regis amita. Rex Henricus cepit Castellum Mirabellum et Chinonem longa obsidione; Losdunum vero redditum fuit ei. Regina Alienora peperit filiam, quam vocavit "Matilden."

Malcolm, King of Scotland, surrenders Carlisle, and other places.

Anno sequenti Regina Alienora peperit filium, quem vocavit "Ricardum." Henricus Rex transfretavit in Angliam, et Malcholmus, Rex Scotorum, reddidit ei civitatem Kaerleil, Castrum Bamburghe, Novum Castrum super Tynam, et Comitatum [2] Lodonensem.

King Henry is crowned at Worcester.

Anno millesimo centesimo quinquagesimo octavo, Henricus, Rex Anglorum, coronatus apud Wigorniam, post celebrationem divinorum, coronam super altare posuit, nec ulterius coronatus est.

---

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden. | [2] *Londonensem* in ed. Camden.

Regina Alienor tertium peperit filium, scilicet, Gaufridum. Thomas, Regis Cancellarius, in apparatu magno venit Parisius, Margaritam, filiam Regis Francorum, accepturus uxorem Henrico, filio Regis Anglorum. Gaufrido, fratre Regis, mortuo, Rex, statim transfretans, accepit Rannetem. Thomas, the Chancellor, goes to the Court of France. Henry gains Rennes, A.D. 1158.

Anno millesimo centesimo quinquagesimo nono, Rex Anglorum, Henricus, duxit exercitum versus Tholosam, et cepit castella fortia vicina ejus, Rege Franciæ commorante interim jugiter in Tholosa; et, ob reverentiam ipsius præsentiæ, dictus est Rex Angliæ ipsam civitatem Tholosam non assiluisse. Rex enim Franciæ, ob gratiam Comitis Sancti Egidii, cujus sororem Comes uxorem duxerat, a Tolosa non recedebat; unde duo Reges inimici facti sunt. He takes the castles near Toulouse, A.D. 1159.

Anno millesimo centesimo sexagesimo, Henricus, Rex Angliæ, Margaritam, filiam Regis Francorum, quam apud se habebat in custodia, Henrico, filio suo, [1] desponsari fecit, et Castellum de Gisorz, diu desideratum, et jam ante, ex condicto duorum Regum, custodiæ militum Templi, usque ad diem illarum nuptiarum commissum, obtinuit. Quod quia præpropere, ut dicunt, factum est, Rex Franciæ, et fratres uxoris ejus, indignati, Regi Angliæ inimici facti sunt, et adversari cœperunt. Ad dedecus itaque Regis Angliæ, Rex Franciæ et Comes Theobaldus Calvum Montem, situm inter Blesim et Ambasium, firmaverunt. Rex autem Angliæ cum suis festinus adveniens, Rege Francorum et Comite Theobaldo fugatis, castrum obsedit, et cepit, captis illic intra castrum quinquaginta quinque militibus Theobaldi. Margaret, daughter of the King of France, betrothed to Prince Henry. King Henry obtains Gisorz. Takes the Castle of Chaumont, A.D. 1160, 1.

Anno millesimo centesimo sexagesimo tertio, Henricus, Rex Angliæ, finibus Normannorum, Britonum, Cenomannensium, Andegavorum, Turonensium, et Aquitannorum, ad voluntatem suam dispositis, in Angliam rediit. King Henry returns to England, A.D. 1163.

---

[1] *disponsari* in ed. Camden.

Homage is done to King Henry and his son by the King of Scotland.

Malcolmus, Rex Scotorum, Resus, Princeps Australium Walensium, [1] Audoenus Aquilonarium, et quinque majores de [2] Cambria, fecerunt homagium Regi Anglorum, et Henrico, filio suo, Kalendis Julii, apud Wudestoke.

Certain disseminators of false doctrine are branded, A.D. 1166.

Anno millesimo centesimo sexagesimo sexto, quidam pravi dogmatis disseminatores tracti sunt in judicium apud Oxonias, præsente Rege, præsentibus et Episcopis. Quos a fide nostra devios, et in examine superatos, facies [3] cauterizata notabiles cunctis exposuit, expulsos a regno.

Collection made for the relief of Jerusalem.

Collectam Ierosolymitanorum usibus destinandam truncus, in singulis deputatus ecclesiis, adacta sera, conclusit, præstito per Angliam publice sacramento, denarios quatuor a singulis marcatis emungens.

A new dispute arises between the Kings of England and France.

Anno millesimo centesimo sexagesimo septimo, Rex Francorum et Rex Anglorum facti sunt discordes. A Normannis Calvus Mons, vicinus Gisorz, succensus est. Multi milites, multi cives, ibi capti sunt. In ultionem hujus facti, Rex Francorum villam campestrem Rotomagensis Archiepiscopi, scilicet, Andeli, combussit, et ipsa die rediit in Franciam, amissis in itinere plusquam mille de suis. Postmodum in Pertico multi milites Francorum capti sunt a Normannis. Tandem duo Reges pacificati sunt; Ricardus siquidem, filius Regis Anglorum, Dux Acquitanniæ, filiam Regis Francorum accepit in sponsam.

They eventually make peace (A.D. 1169).

Henry obtains Constance, the heiress of Bretagne, for his son, Geoffrey, A.D. 1168.

Anno millesimo centesimo sexagesimo octavo.—Ex quo reges in Minori Britannia desierunt præesse, duo Comites in eisdem locis principari cœperunt. Sed quoniam,—[4] "Omnis potestas impatiens semper consortis "erit," sese variis sæpe [5] dissensionibus afflixerunt. Conanus tandem, jure successorio, nactus utrumque

---

[1] *Andoenus* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Kambria* in MS.
[3] *cauteriata* in MS.
[4] A mutilated quotation from Lucan's *Pharsalia*.
[5] *dissencionibus* in MS.

Comitatum, dum in fata concederet, ex sorore Regis Scotorum filiam reliquit hæredem. Quam Rex Anglorum filio suo Gaufrido uxorem accipiens, et in pace passim statuenda per Britanniam studiosus existens, clerum terræ illius sibi conciliavit, et populum.

Henry holds his Court at Nantes, and escapes from a storm, on his return to England.

Anno millesimo centesimo septuagesimo, in Natali Domini Rex tenuit curiam suam apud Nannetensem urbem, præsentibus Episcopis et Baronibus totius Britanniæ; ubi fidelitatem sibi et filio suo, Gaufrido, communiter juraverunt. Sequenti Quadragesima rediens in Angliam, multis suorum subita maris tempestate periclitatis, ipse, magno divinæ pietatis munere, evasit incolumis.

"Annus millenus centenus septuagenus
"Primus erat, Primas quo ruit ense Thomas."

The news of the assassination of Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury, A.D. 1170, is brought to King Henry.

Rex Angliæ morabatur apud Argentonium in Normannia, cum ad ejus notitiam rumor infaustus de nece Sancti Thomæ, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopi, quibusdam perferentibus, penetravit; qui statim, in primis [1] nefandi sermonis initiis, ad omnia lamentationum et miseriarum genera conversus, regiam prorsus majestatem quasi cilicio et cinere commutavit. Octavo Idus Augusti, Rex, pater Regis, appulsus est in Angliam. Qui visitavit in transitu Henricum, Wintoniensem Episcopum, jam in extremis agentem; qui eum pro morte gloriosi Martyris Thomæ durissime increpavit. Ob quam causam, ipsum multa prædixit adversa passurum.

He visits Henry, Bishop of Winchester (A.D. 1171).

King Henry lands in Ireland (A.D. 1171).

Rex, pater Regis, intravit Hiberniam, quinto decimo Kalendas Novembris, et Lismorum Episcopus, et Apostolicæ Sedis Legatus, Archiepiscopi et Episcopi, receperunt eum in regem et dominum, et fidelitatem ei juraverunt. Regulus de Limeleie, regulus de Chorc, regulus ille qui dicebatur "Monoculus," homagium fecerunt ei. Rodericus autem, regulus de Conmat, quia regio quam habitabat inaccessibilis est, paludibus nimiis interjacentibus, in quibus nec vada commoda,

Certain of the petty kings submit to him.

[1] *nephandi* in MS.

nec pervii pontes, nec navigatio tuta est, supersedit occurrere.

Henry, the King's eldest son, is excited to rebel against him, A.D. 1172.

Anno millesimo centesimo septuagesimo secundo, dum Rex moram faceret in Hibernia, Hugo de Seintemore et Radulphus de Faie, avunculus Reginæ Alienoræ, (consilio, sicut dicitur, ejusdem reginæ,) Regis, filii Regis, animum a patre suo cœperunt avertere; suggerentes incongruum videri quibuslibet regem esse, et dominationem regno debitam non exercere.

The King's troops in Ireland are attacked with sickness.

Recentium esus carnium, et haustus aquæ, tam incognitus quam [1] insolitus, plures de Regis exercitu, panis inedia laborantes, afflixit in Hibernia fluxu ventris.

The Irish chiefs ultimately submit to him, A.D. 1172.

Cum autem intellexissent Hibernienses in quantum circa pacem statuendam et conservandam Regis Angliæ tota versaretur intentio, qui nec indulgentiis crimina sublevabat, nec in mortem alicujus præcipitabat sententiam, convenerunt ad ipsum, rogantes quæ ad pacem sunt. Et quoniam inter eos publica potestas constituta non fuerat, quæ, metu pœnarum, impunitatem minime repromitteret, cum [2] pares suos mutuis cædibus interfectos sæpissime doluissent, ut in virtute Regis pax fieret in diebus suis, ei et in eum jus suum transtulerunt, et potestatem Archiepiscopi, et Episcopi, plebis sibi commissæ; plurimum et in plurimis attendentes errorem, sed in hiis maxime quæ circa matrimonium a majoribus definita noscuntur, quæ Anglia recipit et observat, se firmiter amplexuros, et inviolabiliter executuros, promittunt. Et, [ut] in singulis observatio similis regnum colligaret utrumque, passim omnes unanimi voluntate, communi assensu, pari desiderio, Regis imperio se subjiciunt.

Council held at Lismore.

Omnibus igitur hoc ordine consummatis, in concilio habito apud Lismor, urbes et castella quæ Rex redegerat in suam potestatem, fideli deputavit custodiæ.

Henry returns to England.

Et quoniam ipsum varia trahebant negotia, die Paschæ

[1] *solitus* in ed. Camden.

[2] *partes . . . mutuo* in ed. Camden.

navem ascendit, et in crastino appulsus est in Walliam, prope Sanctum David. Inde progressus est usque ad Porcestre, ubi navem ascendens Angliam salutavit a limine, et felici navigatione intravit Normanniam. Quod cum ad Regis Francorum notitiam pervenisset, vociferans ait,—"Rex Angliæ, modo in Hibernia, modo "in Anglia, modo in Normannia, volare potius judican- "dus est, quam vel equum vel navem conscendere."

Proceeds to Normandy.

Allusion to his activity.

Postquam Rex Anglorum appulsus est in Normanniam, ubi cum sub festinatione venisset ad Apostolicæ Sedis Legatos, juravit mortem gloriosissimi Martyris Thomæ nec voluntate sua, nec conscientia, perpetratam fuisse, nec suo artificio perquisitam. In facie igitur Ecclesiæ solemniter absolutus, promisit quod, ab instanti festo Pentecostes usque in annum, tantam pecuniam daret, unde possent ducenti milites conduci ad defensionem terræ Ierosolymitanæ per annum: et multa alia, quæ scribuntur plenius in Vita Sancti Thomæ.

Oath made by Henry, as to his innocence of the murder of Archbishop Thomas.

Anno millesimo centesimo septuagesimo tertio, Henricus, Rex Angliæ, Johanni, filio suo, cognomento "Sine Terra," vix septenni, filiam primogenitam Huberti, Comitis de Moriana, sponsam accepit, cum quatuor castellis, datis in dotem, et custodiæ Regis deputatis.

Betrothal of John, the King's son. A.D. 1173.

Aldefonsus, Rex Aragonum, Reymundus, Comes Sancti Ægidii, Girardus, Comes Viennensis, Hubertus, Comes de Moriana, tanquam ex condicto, convenerunt ad Curiam Regis Angliæ, ad Montem Ferandum, in Arvernia: fuit et ibi Henricus Rex, filius Regis Henrici; procerum, equitum, civium, quos varia trahebant negotia, non defuit multitudo numerosa. Prædictis itaque viris illustribus partes suas interponentibus, Comes Sancti Ægidii fecit homagium Regi Anglorum, Henrico, patri Regis Henrici, salva fide Lodowici, Regis Francorum. Sibi, suisque hæredibus, volens in futurum prospicere, Comitatum Tolosanum ex hoc et deinceps Acquitannico Duci in servitio militari, multisque aliis præstationibus

Resort of nobles to King Henry's Court, in Auvergne.

Homage offered by the Count de St. Gilles, but delayed.

in scripto redactis, obnoxium futurum esse sacramento firmavit. Sed quia Ricardus, Dux Aquitanniæ, cum facturus erat homagium Comes Sancti Ægidii, tunc temporis præsens non erat, usque ad Octavas Pentecostes negotii complementum dilationem accepit.

Henry, the King's son, retires to the Court of King Louis.

Henricus Rex, filius Regis, [1] abiens in consilio impiorum, animum suum avertit a patre; et, ab Argentonio noctu recedens, domesticis patris sui, qui ei necessaria ministrabant, ignorantibus, ad socerum suum, Lodowicum, Regem Francorum, secessit. Ipsa nocte pater suus, dormiens apud Alencium, cum, subito expergefactus, transfugium filii cognovisset, paucissimis secum assumptis, equum ascendit, et transitum habens per Marchiam suam, et castellorum custodes præmuniens, equis sæpe mutatis, sub ipso diei crepusculo, decimo Kalendas Aprilis, venit Gisorcium, quod filio suo, Regi, Rex Francorum, Lodowicus, cum filia sua, Margarita, nomine dotis contulerat. Ricardus, Dux Aquitanniæ, Gaufridus, Dux Britanniæ, juniores filii Regis, consilio matris suæ, Reginæ, scilicet, Alienoræ, sicut dicitur, fratrem potius elegerunt sequi, quam patrem. Fiunt undique conjurationes, fiunt rapinæ, fiunt incendia. Et, ut a tempore sumamus auspicium, eo tempore sumpsit arma filius contra patrem, quo, quibuslibet locis, ob reverentiam Dominicæ Passionis, arma Christiani deponunt.

His younger sons, Richard and Geoffrey, follow their brother's example.

Irruption of Flemings into Normandy, and defeat.

Septies viginti Flandrenses, irruptione facta, prope Pasceium, beneficio pontis, intraverunt Normanniam. Quibus obvii facti Normanni, quantocius eos cogitare de reditu coegerunt. Sed pons, quo transitum prius habuerant, effractus a quadam muliercula, in subsidium aquas opposuit profundissimas; quibus involuti, Flandrenses universi submersi sunt. Quod audiens Rex Francorum ait,—"Pro Normannis elementa decertant.

Saying of King Louis thereon.

" Nam alio tempore, cum intrassem Normanniam, pars " exercitus mei quamplurima pro aquæ penuria periit.

[1] In allusion to *Psalm* i. v. 1.

" Nunc nimiam possumus abundantiam aquarum cau-
" sari."

Hugo de Gornai, tam pater quam filius, et quater-viginti milites cum eis, capti sunt a Rege, filio, et castrum, in quo fuerant, succensum est, et burgenses ad redemptionem compulsi. Capture of Hugh de Gornai, and his son.

Robertus, Comes Legecestriæ, accipiens mutuam undequaque pecuniam, et verba pacis habens, transfretandi a Justiciariis impetravit licentiam: Willelmus Camerarius de Tankervilla fecit similiter. Uterque, sacramento corporaliter præstito, Regi patri fidelitatem juravit. Sed subito trans mare [1] currentes, cœlum illico mutaverunt et animum. Nam cum audissent quæ fiebant in terra, cœperunt et ipsi de transfugio cogitare. Plures etiam Comites, et mediæ manus homines, quos ex justis et probabilibus causis Rex pater exhæredaverat, Regis filii cesserunt in partem; non quia causam ejus justiorem attenderent, sed quia Rex pater, regiæ titulos dignitatis ampliare procurans, superborum et sublimium colla calcaret. Defection of Robert, Earl of Leicester, William Chamberlain of Tankerville, and many others; who abandon King Henry.

Lodowicus, Rex Franciæ, ad Normanniam penitus devastandam, innumerabilem congregavit exercitum, in Octavis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ; et primo impetu statuit delere Vernolium. Sed nunciatum est ei ab exploratoribus castrum inaccessibile, utpote fossatis circumdatum, cinctum muris, propugnaculis obfirmatum, viris bellicosis ebulliens, radiantibus armis refertum, victualibus multis abundans, et nisi longa obsidione obsessos coartarent, Franci poterant inani labore consumi. Ad sumptus igitur exercitus providendos, per totam Galliam fit descriptio generalis. Nullus immunitate gaudebat; a sedente in solio usque ad laborantem in mola, vel in prostibulo dormientem, manum extendere jubebantur regii exactores. Non sexus, non ordo, non dignitas, a muneribus sordidis vacationem King Louis prepares to invade Normandy, and levies a tax for the purpose.

[1] In allusion to the line of Horace, " *Cœlum, non animum, mutant, qui* " *trans mare currunt.*" 1 *Epist.* ii. 27.

habebat. Multi, ut exercitui necessaria ministrarent, distrahere patrimonia cogebantur.

Invasion of Normandy by Henry, the young King.

Rex filius, tractis in partem suam Comitibus Flandrensi et Boloniensi, intravit cum eis Normanniam in superbia magna; ubi cepit castellum de Albamarle, non sine nota proditionis quorundam custodum dicti castri. Cepit etiam castellum de Drivencourt, munitissimum, et militibus electis commissum.—[1] Nota qua captum fuerat castellum de Albamarle.—Cum inde progrederetur versus castrum Arches, Comes Boloniensis, Matthæus, in festo Sancti Jacobi, vulneratur ad mortem. Hic fidelitatem patris Regis juraverat, tactis sacrosanctis reliquiis, inter quas manus Sancti Jacobi præsentialiter habebatur; et idcirco [in] ultionem perjurii in die festo Sancti Jacobi letaliter vulneratus fuit, juxta multorum opinionem. Comes Flandrensis, Philippus, vulnerato fratre suo, Comite Boloniensi, ut præfertur, ad propria remeare maturavit. Rediit itaque per Comitatum Aucensem, quem jam Rex filius totum subjecerat potestati suæ.

Perjury and death of Matthew, Count of Boulogne.

King Henry at Rouen.

Rex pater eo tempore morabatur Rotomagi, ut populo videbatur, æquo animo ferens quæ fiebant in terra; frequentius solito venatui totus indulgens, et venientibus ad se vultum hilaritatis prætendens. Attamen hii quos domesticos prius habuerat, et familiarissimos, cotidie dilabebantur ab eo, credentes ejus dejectionem futuram in brevi, et filii dominationem arbitrantes procedere, juxta Regis Franciæ et principum voluntatem.

Daily defection from him.

He sends a menacing message to King Louis.

Ut autem audivit Rex Philippum, Flandrensem Comitem, a Normannia recessisse, confestim congregavit exercitum, ut, si Regem Franciæ intra fines Normanniæ reperisset, prœlium iniret cum eo. Venit igitur et fixit tentoria in loco ab exercitu Francorum non procul remoto, scilicet, apud Conchas. Dirigit ergo

---

[1] "*Inde Rex filius, cum Comitibus "Botomensi et Flandrensi, progrediens versus*,"—in ed. Camden.

nuncios, in mandatis habentes verbis pacificis dicere Regi Francorum, ut a Normannia, cum indemnitate suorum, recederet, alioquin visitaret eum ipsa die. Quod audiens Rex Franciæ, cum sciret Regem Angliæ fortissimum esse, et amaro animo, veluti si ursa, raptis catulis, sæviat in saltu, ascendens illico equum velocissimum, intra Galliam se cum festinatione recepit. Sicque, cunctis fugientibus, totus apparatus, ad obsidionem comportatus, in plaustris, quadrigis, bigis, sive summariis, Normannis et obsessis cessit in prædam, quinto Idus Augusti.

Louis retires within his own territories.

Rex Scotorum, Willelmus, Angliam intrans, et per fines Dunelmensium transitum faciens, cœpit Angliam depopulari, villas succendere, prædas agere, mulierculas captivas abducere, et a prægnantium uteris infantes semivivos extrahere. Quod audientes magnates Angliæ, arma, cum ea qua fieri potuit acceleratione, sumentes, Regem Scotiæ subito fugam arripere coegerunt, et inducias petere, vastata patria sua, compulerunt; et sic cum victoria redierunt.

Invasion of England by William, King of the Scots.

He is compelled to retreat.

Rege patre moram faciente Rotomagi, nunciatum est electam Regis filii militiam, apud Dolensem urbem, a Brebantinis suis circumclusam; qui statim, equi dorsum insiliens, et cum calcaribus urgens, sequenti mane venit in Britanniam, scilicet, ad Dol; ubi militiam filii, per dies aliquot repugnantem, insimul comprehendit. Inimicorum vero suorum permaxima multitudo, priusquam veniret, a Brebantinis fuerunt interempta. Ibi captus est Comes Cestrensis, cum aliis proceribus, et cum eis milites fere quater-viginti.

Defeat of the young King's forces at Dol; and capture of the Earl of Chester, and others.

Anno millesimo centesimo septuagesimo quarto, Rex, filius Regis, habens in comitatu suo tres Comites, et quingentos fere milites, Sagiensem urbem invasit: sed civibus, et sine principe, et sine duce, viriliter resistentibus, nihil profecit.

The young King is repulsed at Seez, A.D. 1174.

Rex pater, dubitans ne vel Rex filius, vel quilibet alii, Marchiæ vicinantes, intra suos irrumperent, et Normanniam devastarent, eam domesticis familiaribus cus-

Placing Normandy under guard,

King Henry proceeds to Maine and Anjou.

todiendam commisit; cupiensque experiri quo animo secum starent Cenomannenses et Andegavenses, terras illas ingreditur. Cenomanni, parati per omnia ad ejus obsequium, si vel bellum ingrueret, vel aliud immineret discrimen, vel etiam mortis instaret periculum, se promptos fore dicebant. Andegavenses celerius et celebrius occurrerunt domino suo Regi, omnia submittentes suo arbitrio quæcunque proponeret. Omnibus inibi pro voluntate completis, diem Pentecostes Pictavis celebravit; ubi cum audisset Ricardi, filii sui, militiam urbem Sanctonicam occupasse, sumptis secum Pictavensibus, ad eam liberandam cucurrit, et primum præsidium subjugavit, deinde majus præsidium, scilicet, capitellum. Ad ultimum, accessit ad majorem ecclesiam, militibus multis, et armatis, refertam, oppressam a sagittariis, a lenocinantibus conculcatam. In qua et in duobus aliis supradictis præsidiis cepit circiter sexaginta milites, et sagittarios quadringentos, commisitque sex viris illustribus Aquitanniam defendendam. Quibus gestis, rediit in Normanniam.

He defeats the troops of his son, Richard, at Saintes.

Philip, Count of Flanders, invades England, on behalf of the young King.

Interea Philippus, Comes Flandriæ, venit in Angliam, ut eam subjugaret Regi, filio Regis. Missum est igitur pro Rege patre per regni Justiciaros, quia videbant multa fieri mala in terra per Flandrenses, et quosdam alios Regis proditores. Rex vero, suis subvenire celerius cupiens, naves ascendit apud Barbefluvium. Et cum vidisset ventum contrarium, et sibi suisque imminere periculum, erectis in cœlum luminibus, palam dixit;[1]—"Si quæ ad pacem sunt cleri et "populi habeam in proposito, si pacem in adventu "meo reformandam Rex cœlorum disposuit; tunc, pro "sua misericordia, portum salutis indulgeat. Si autem "adversus fuerit, et regnum in virga visitare decre- "verit, nunquam mihi detur vel fines regionis attin- "gere." Exaudivit ergo Divinitas orationem Regis humiliati, et ipsa die, cum omnium indemnitate, appli-

Prayer of King Henry for a fair passage over to England.

[1] This prayer is given in somewhat different words by Matthew Paris.

care fecit feliciter in portu Hamonis. Qui ex tunc utens tenui dieta, pane, scilicet, et aqua, omnes curas abjiciens, nec aliquam civitatem ingrediens, non destitit donec ad Thomam, gloriosum Martyrem, pervenisset; ubi cum affluentia lacrymarum, cum gemitibus, nudus pedes, toto corpore prostratus, misericordiam et veniam precabatur; et ab Episcopis, qui præsentes tunc aderant, absolutionem petiit, et, carnem suam disciplinæ supponens, virgis cæsus est, a singulis religiosis, quorum multitudo convenerat, ternos ictus, vel quinos, excipiens. Surgens igitur, et vestibus resumptis, quas prius exuerat, muneribus pretiosis pretiosissimum honoravit, assignans insuper annuos redditus, quadraginta libras, ad luminaria jugiter circa [1] Martyrem, in ejus venerationem, concinnanda. Sicque deditus vigiliis et orationi, jejunium usque in diem tertium continuavit.

He lands at Southampton.

Does penance at Canterbury, and is scourged by the monks.

Quin Martyrem sibi placabilem jam reddidit, quoniam peccatum ejus translatum sit, non est qui dubitet. Nam ipsa die qua indulgentiam sibi dari postulabat a Martyre, sepulcrum Martyris frequenter deosculans, tradidit Dominus Willelmum, Regem Scotorum, in manus suas, custodiæ mancipatum, apud Richemount; ut adimpleretur illud propheticum,—" [2] Dabitur maxillis ejus frenum, " quod in Armorico sinu fabricabitur;" sinum vocans Armoricum, castellum de Richemount, ab Armoricis principibus, et nunc, et ab antiquis temporibus, hæreditario jure possessum. Ipsa etiam die, Rex filius, navibus quas congregaverat ad transfretandum in Angliam dissipatis, cœpit redire in Galliam. Votis orationum cum devotione completis, Rex pater redivit Londoniam, ubi reperit regni majores sibi occurrisse. Inde regrediens, rebelles domuit, hostes fugavit, munitiones cepit.

The Martyr propitiated, his fortunes change for the better.

Capture of the King of Scotland.

The fleet of the young King is dispersed.

King Henry returns to London.

Tandem per omnia regni sui confinia potentissimus naves ascendit, apud Porcestre, ducens secum Regem Scotorum, Comitem Leicestrensem, Comitem Cestrensem,

He embarks for Normandy,

[1] *matrem* in ed. Camden.

[2] These four words are probably used in allusion to *Isaiah* xxx. 28, so far as the form of expression is concerned. The prophecy was attributed to Merlin.

taking with him the King of Scotland.

et quosdam alios, quos habebat in vinculis; et prospera navigatione transvectus, venit Rotomagum, quam invenit obsessam a Lodowico, Rege Franciæ, et Henrico Rege, filio Regis Angliæ, Comiteque Flandrensi, Philippo. Cumque Rex Francorum Regem patrem in manu valida adventasse didicisset, versus est in stuporem. Et illico, de communi consilio, tam Franci quam Flandrenses, ignem machinis apponentes, avulsis tentoriis, mapalia succendentes, [1] et pergulas, non sine detrimento famæ, recesserunt ab urbe. Extremam partem castrorum Marchiones instanter impugnantes, arma plurima, necnon et impedimenta, diripuerunt in prædam.

On his approach, the King of France abandons the siege of Rouen.

The French and the Flemings effect a reconciliation of the King with his sons. (A.D. 1175.)

Franci, sumptibus tædiosis afflicti, Flandrenses, a suorum interemptione deterriti, damna suis illata conferebant ad invicem. Ut ergo suæ tranquillitati prospicerent, filios Regis Anglorum ad gratiam patris reducere studuerunt; quod et factum est.

The King of Scotland does homage to King Henry. (A.D. 1175.)

Willelmus, Rex Scotorum, in Normannia, pago Constantiensi, apud Valonias, homo Regis Anglorum devenit, de Scotia, et de omnibus terris suis; fecit et homagium Henrico, filio Regis, et fidelitatem, salva fide patris sui.

Homage and allegiance done to King Henry by his sons. (A.D. 1175.)

Ut filii Regis Anglorum, quos a sacris paternis consilia pravorum extraxerant, pristinam familiaritatem reciperent, homagium atque ligeantiam patri suo omnibus modis facere institerunt. Quod factum est primitus Cenomannis a Ricardo et Gaufrido, et postmodum in Normannia a Rege filio, apud Bur. Reges Angliæ, quos anno præterito capere latitudo regni non poterat, confœderatos ad invicem, navis eadem transvexit in Angliam.

The castles of England put under ward by the King, A.D. 1176.

Anno millesimo centesimo septuagesimo sexto, universa castella per Angliam et per Marchiam totam, ad imperium Regis patris, deputata sunt custodiæ.

The Earl of Gloucester makes Prince John his heir.

Willelmus, Comes Gloucestriæ, dum filium non haberet, ægre ferens hæreditatem inter filias dividendam, Johannem, filium Regis, hæredem instituit, apud Windeleshores.

[1] *omnia non* in ed. Camden.

The Kings of Castille and Navarre submit to the arbitration of King Henry.

Aldefonsus, Rex Castellæ, gener Regis, Sanctus, Rex Navarriæ, avunculus Aldefonsi, discordes, ad invicem in Regem Angliæ compromiserunt, et, directis in Angliam nunciis, se staturos Regis patris arbitrio juraverunt.

Envoys from foreign potentates seek Henry's advice.

Sub iisdem diebus, nuncium Manuelis, Constantinopolitani, nuncium Frederici, Romani, Imperatoris, nuncium Willelmi, Remensis Archiepiscopi, nuncium Henrici, Ducis Saxonici, nuncium Philippi, Flandrensium Comitis, quos varia trahebant negotia, tanquam ex condicto, simul in Curia Regis Anglorum conspiceres, apud Westmonasterium.

Removal of the Secular Canons from Waltham Abbey. Henry crosses over to Normandy, A.D. 1177.

Anno millesimo centesimo septuagesimo septimo, amotis ab ecclesia Walthamensi Canonicis Sæcularibus, subinducti sunt Regulares, auctoritate Summi Pontificis, sub præsentia Regis patris, in Vigilia Pentecostes. Rex vero, regno pro voluntate disposito, transfretavit in Normanniam, quinto Kalendas Septembris.

[1] [Post hæc, utrique Reges Angliæ et Franciæ hujusmodi inter se jusjurandum fecerunt]:—

Treaty made by the Kings of England and France.

" Ego, Lodowicus, Rex Francorum, et ego, Henricus, " Rex Angliæ, volumus ad omnium notitiam pervenire, " nos, Deo inspirante, promisisse ac jurasse, quod simul " ibimus in servitium Christianitatis, et Crucem susci- " piemus, ituri Ierusalem. Volumus enim, quod omnes " sciant, quod sic sumus, et animo volumus esse, " amici, quod uterque nostrum alteri nostrum conser- " vabit vitam et membra et terrenum honorem, contra " omnes homines, pro posse suo,[2] *et cætera.* Acta apud " Nonancurt, septimo Kalendas Octobris."

Prince Geoffrey receives knighthood, A.D. 1178.

Anno millesimo centesimo septuagesimo octavo, Rex pater Gaufridum, filium suum, Ducem Britanniæ, donavit cingulo militari apud Wudestoke.

The Abbot of St. Augustin's,

Anno millesimo centesimo septuagesimo nono, Rogerus, a Collegio Sanctæ Trinitatis ad curam assumptus Mo-

[1] Supplied from the printed text. | Matthew Paris.
[2] This treaty is given at length by |

at Canterbury, receives exempt jurisdiction from the Pope, A.D. 1179.

nasterii Sancti Augustini, ab Alexandro Papa, quinto Kalendas Februarii, Tusculani, benedictionem, et, in signum emancipationis indultæ, mitram, annulum, et chirothecas, suscepit. Cujus prædecessores debitam Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi obedientiam per annos quingentos per ante exsolverant.

The King of France visits the tomb of St. Thomas.

Lodowicus, Rex Francorum, venit in Angliam peregre, visitaturus Sanctum Thomam, Martyrem, quem quondam exulantem intra Galliam [1] Celticam pie fovit.

The young King swears obedience to his father, A.D. 1180.

Anno millesimo centesimo octogesimo, Henricus Rex, filius Regis, reliquiis præsentibus sacrosanctis, juravit, apud Radingum, quod dispositionem paternam in omnibus sequeretur.

Death of King Louis VII.: succeeded by Philip.

Lodowicus, rex Franciæ, naturæ solvit debitum quarto decimo Kalendas Octobris; cui successit in regno Philippus, filius ejus.

Conference held by four Kings, A.D. 1181.

Anno millesimo centesimo octogesimo primo, quatuor Reges ad unum colloquium pacifice convenerunt, et pacifice recesserunt; Philippus, Rex Franciæ, Rex Anglorum, Henricus, Rex Henricus, filius Regis Anglorum, et Willelmus, Rex Scotorum.

Gift by King Henry, in aid of the Holy Land, A.D. 1182.

Anno millesimo centesimo octogesimo secundo, Rex Anglorum, Henricus, ætatis annum inchoans quadragesimum nonum, necessitatibus Ierosolymitanorum quadraginta duo millia marcarum argenti, quingentas marcas auri, distribuit.

The young King asks fealty to be done to him by his brother Richard; who indignantly refuses, A.D. 1183.

Anno millesimo centesimo octogesimo tertio, Rex filius, ad instantiam Regis patris, Ricardo, fratri suo, Ducatum concessit Aquitanniæ, dummodo Ricardus, homagio sibi præstito, et ligantia facta, fidelitatem sibi, tactis sacrosanctis reliquiis, repromitteret. Ad hanc vocem Ricardus vehementer excanduit, incongruum esse dicens, cum ex eodem patre, cum eadem ex matre, traxisset originem, si fratrem primogenitum aliqua specie subjectionis superiorem agnosceret. Rex pater, hoc

King Henry sup-

[1] *Seltícam* in ed. Camden.

audiens, iracundiæ calore succensus, adversus Ricardum dura proposuit, et, ut ad edomandam Ricardi superbiam Rex filius totus insurgeret, constanter indixit; Galfridum quoque, Britanniæ Ducem, ut cum fratre suo, Rege, domino suo ligeo, fideliter staret, commonuit. Rex pater nempe parum ante jusserat filio suo Regi, ut de Ducatu Britanniæ, quem Galfridus, frater suus, possidebat, cum Constantia, filia Conani Ducis unica, simul et hærede legitima, homagium ejus reciperet, et ligantiam. Hoc enim vinculo debitæ subjectionis, de liberalitate Regum Franciæ, Ducibus Normannorum, ab antiquis temporibus, Comites, sive Duces, Britanniæ tenentur astricti. Quod ergo pater petiit, factum est Andegavis. Sed Ricardo detrectante subjici fratri suo majori, Rex filius copiosum congregavit exercitum, ut Ricardum, fratrem suum, ad debitæ servitutis coartaret obsequium. Sed nequicquam; quia quando cum fratre congredi debuisset, præcisa est, veluti a texente, vita ejus, cum complesset viginti et octo annos, quatuordecim septimanas, et sex dies. Sepultus est Rotomagi, prope majus altare, versus Aquilonem.

ports the claims of his eldest son.

Geoffrey, Duke of Bretagne, does homage and allegiance to the young King; who levies an army against his brother Richard, but suddenly dies.

Anno millesimo centesimo octogesimo quinto, Johannes, filius Regis, a patre militaribus armis accinctus, in Hiberniam est transmissus.

Prince John goes to Ireland, A.D. 1185.

Hibernia, post Britanniam, omnium insularum est optima. Quæ quamvis Britanniæ divitiis cedat, latitudine, salubritate, serenitate, præstat. Quæ sicut versus aquilonem brevior est, ita versus meridiem trans illius fines protenditur. Hæc autem proprie patria Scotorum est. Nam, sicut legitur, Ægyptiis in Mari Rubro submersis, illi qui superfuerunt, expulerunt a se quemdam nobilem Sciticum, qui degebat apud eos, ne dominium super eos invaderet. Expulsus ille, cum familia, pervenit ad Hispaniam; ubi et habitavit per annos multos, et progenies ipsius et familiæ suæ multiplicata est nimis. Inde venerunt Hiberniam post annos mille, duobus additis, a transitu filiorum Israel per Mare Rubrum; et de Hibernia pars eorum egressa, tertiam in Britannia

Some account given of Ireland.

Peopled by the descendants of Egyptians, by the way of Spain.

Britonibus et Pictis gentem addiderunt. Pars eorum, quæ remansit in Hibernia, "Navarri" vocantur, et adhuc eadem utuntur lingua. In Hispania nempe fluvius est Hiberus, a quo dicitur "Hibernia," dicuntur etiam et "Hibernienses."

The Earldom of Huntingdon given to William, King of Scotland.

Cum Simon, Comes, filius Simonis, Comitis de Norhamptona, sine liberis decessisset, Rex reddidit Comitatum Huntingdoniæ, cum omnibus pertinentiis suis, Willelmo, Regi Scotorum, qui fuit filius Henrici Comitis, [1] filii Regis David, qui fuit Regis Malcolmi, *et cætera*. Ab isto Malcolmo revolvunt genealogiam usque ad Noe.

Alleged origin of the name "Scotia."

A regione quadam quæ dicitur "Sicia," dicitur "Scita," "Sciticus," "Scoticus," "Scotus," "Scotia"; similiter, a regione quadam, quæ dicitur "Getia," dicitur "Geta," "Geticus," "Goticus," "Gotus," "Ostrogotus," "Witsi-"gotus."

Prince John returns to England.

Johannes, filius Regis Anglorum, vocatus "Hiberniæ "Dominus," rediit in Angliam.

Death of Geoffrey, Duke of Bretagne, A.D. 1186.

Anno millesimo centesimo octogesimo sexto, Galfridus, Dux Britanniæ, filius Regis Anglorum, cum a nativitate sua complevisset annum vicesimum octavum, diem clausit extremum. Sepultus est autem Parisius, in ecclesia Beatæ Virginis, intra chorum Canonicorum, scilicet, in sede majori. Reliquit autem idem Gaufridus, ex uxore sua, Constantia, filia Conani, [2] Ducis Britanniæ, duas filias.

Birth of Arthur, Duke Geoffrey's posthumous son, A.D. 1187.

Anno millesimo centesimo octogesimo septimo, Constantia, Comitissa Britanniæ, quam maritus suus, filius Regis Anglorum, Galfridus, vita decedens, reliquerat gravidam, die sancto Paschæ, peperit filium, quem Britones vocaverunt "Arthurum."

The Holy Cross is captured; as also, Guido, King of Jerusalem.

Sub eodem anno, capta est Sancta Crux a Turcis in bello. Quo etiam anno, Rex Ierusalem, Guido, captus est, et Christiani multipliciter flagellati in Terra Sancta, et pene tota regio est amissa. Facta est proinde Cruce-

---

[1] *filius* in MS. | [2] *Duce* in ed. Camden.

signatio pene per omnia regna Christianitatis. In qua Reges Angliæ et Franciæ crucesignati sunt. A Crusade thereupon.

Boamundus, Comes Tripolitanus, elapsis diebus quindecim postquam capta fuit Ierusalem, proditionis reus, amens factus est, et expiravit. The Count of Tripolis, accused of treachery, dies mad.

Ricardus, Pictavorum Comes, petiit a patre suo, quatinus sororem Regis Franciæ sibi daret in uxorem, in colloquio habito inter Reges, et terram suam sibi, velut hæredi suo, faceret juramento firmari. Quod etiam peti fecit per Regem Francorum. Rex Anglorum respondit, se nullatenus hoc facturum in tali statu, quin hoc potius videretur coactus facere, quam spontaneus. Requests made by Prince Richard are refused by his father.

Anno millesimo centesimo octogesimo nono, post Pascha, inter Reges Francorum et Anglorum, et Comitem Pictavorum, bis habitum est colloquium, prope Feritatem Bernardi. Sed tandem inimici ad invicem recesserunt. Rex Francorum et Comes, copiis undique congregatis, infra paucos dies, Feritatem Bernardi, Montem Fortem, Baalun, Bellum Montem, factis irruptionibus, occupaverunt; et a municipalibus circumquaque Comiti Ricardo fit deditio castellorum; multique proceres et magnates ad eundem Comitem transfugerunt. Interview between the Kings of England and France, A.D. 1189. Attack by the King of France and Count Richard, on various castles of King Henry.

Rege Angliæ Cenomannis residente, appropinquabant Rex Francorum et Comes Pictaviæ, cum armatorum multitudine. Rex vero Anglorum, quamvis militum copiam maximam haberet paratam ad resistendum hostibus, præcavens tamen obsidione vallari, reliquit Cenomanniam sufficienter refertam victualibus. Quam Rex Francorum et Comes Ricardus ingressi, recepti sunt in ecclesia majori cum processione solemni. Post diem decimum, turris civitatis, de mandato Regis Anglorum, Regi Francorum reddita fuit. Tandem pax inter tantos principes, magnorum consilio, reformata est; et Rex Angliæ [1] numeravit Regi Francorum viginti millia mar- Le Mans is surrendered to the King of France. Peace is made between the Kings of England and France.

[1] *muneravit* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1189. carum, expensarum nomine, quas fecerat circa Castrum Radulphi, ut firmior pax haberetur: facta sunt hæc in Vigilia Apostolorum Petri et Pauli. Postmodum, Rex Anglorum homagium fecit Regi Francorum; et quicquid in [1] Arvernia vel ipse vel antecessores sui possederant, quietum-clamavit Regi Francorum.

Death of King Henry II. at Chinon.

Deinde Rex Anglorum ad Chinonem venit, et, tactus dolore cordis intrinsecus, maledixit diei in qua natus fuerat. Et sic in dolore positus, et cordis angustiis, infra triduum post pacem factam, diem clausit extremum.

Is buried at Fontevraud.

Sepultus est autem apud Fontem Ebraudi, in Monasterio monialium quod ipse fundaverat, et multipliciter ditaverat: Turonensis et Treverensis Archiepiscopi celebravere divina, Ricardus Comes interfuit. Et quoniam sæpe vivens dixerat universum orbem uni non sufficere pro voto principi, inscriptio tumuli ipsius talis fuit,—

" [2] Sufficit hic tumulus, cui non suffecerat orbis.
" Res brevis est ampla, cui fuit ampla brevis."

Count Richard enters Normandy, and receives absolution from the Archbishops of Canterbury and Rouen.

Ricardus, Comes Pictavorum, dispositis omnibus, quæ tam ad pacem quam securitatem Aquitaniæ, vel Andegaviæ, vel Turoniæ, seu Cenomanniæ, spectare potius videbantur, intravit Normanniam, et, apud Sagium, inveniens Archiepiscopos Cantuariensem et Rotomagensem, quia, post fidem susceptam, arma moverat contra patrem, a prædictis Archiepiscopis beneficium absolutionis accepit. Inde Rotomagum veniens, ab Archiepiscopo Rotomagensi tam ensem quam vexillum de Ducatu Normanniæ, proceribus multis præsentibus, in ecclesia Beatæ Virginis, ante majus altare, suscepit; et inde tendens in Angliam, apud Wintoniam, in Assumptione Beatæ Virginis, solemni processione receptus est.

Crosses over to England, and arrives at Winchester, Coronation of King Richard.

Ad vocationem Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, convenerunt Suffraganei ecclesiæ supradictæ Londonias, ad coronationem novi Regis. Ricardus igitur, hæreditario

[1] *Armenia* in ed. Camden.
[2] A different epitaph is mentioned by Matthew Paris: the present version is from Ralph de Diceto.

jure promovendus in regem, involutus est triplici sacramento, scilicet, quod opem impendet pro viribus, ut Ecclesia Dei, populusque Christianus, veram pacem obtineret: quod interdicet omnibus rapacitatem; et quod in judiciis æquitatem præcipiet, et misericordiam. Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus celebravit divina. Radulfus de Diceto, qui [1] scripsit hæc, Londoniensis ecclesiæ Decanus, tam in oleo quam in chrismate, ministravit Archiepiscopo; quia tunc temporis [2] vacabat ecclesia Londoniensis. A.D. 1189. Threefold oath made by him thereat.

Rex Scotiæ, Willelmus, Cantuariæ fecit homagium Regi Ricardo. Homage by the King of Scotland.

A tempore Crucis susceptæ per Reges Franciæ et Angliæ, decimatio generalis rerum mobilium facta per Angliam, ad subventionem terræ Ierosolymitanæ, tam clerum quam populum exactione violenta perterruit, sub eleemosynæ titulo vitium rapacitatis includens. A tenth levied for aid to the Holy Land.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo, quarto Idus Aprilis, Rex Ricardus, Cruce-signatus, ascendit navem, cum exercitu suo, apud Messanam, habens secum naves centum quinquaginta, et galeas triginta novem, aliaque vasa multa. King Richard sails, on the Crusade, from Messana, A.D. 1190.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo primo, Rex Ricardus applicuit in Cypro, apud Limezun. Cursac autem, dominus terræ, qui se vocabat Imperatorem, occurrit ei, cum manu forti, portum prohibiturus, et quamplurimos hominum suorum afflictos afflixit, spoliavit naufragos, et in carcere reclusit, fame perituros. Quem captum Rex Ricardus, et vinctum, in castello prope Tripolim retrudi præcepit. Inierat autem cum Rege pactum prædictus Cursac, ne ferreis detineretur in vinculis. Quod Rex observans, eum compedibus artari fecit argenteis; filiam autem ejus unicam secum retinuit, cum duabus Reginis in thalamo honorifice custoditam. Richard lands in Cyprus, and takes the so-called Emperor prisoner. Puts him in silver fetters.

[1] Ralph de Diceto, the historian from whom Walsingham borrows, here speaks in his own language. He was Dean of St. Paul's.

[2] On the death of Robert Foliot, it was vacant two years.

A.D. 1191. Some description of Cyprus.

Situs [1] Cypri talis est:—primo venitur ad Paphum, quæ caput est regionis, versus meridiem. Secundo, venitur ad Limezun. Tertio, venitur ad Famagust, dictam quasi "Civitatem Augusti." Postea, caput Sancti Andreæ versus septentrionem extenditur, et e regione respicit Armeniam. Postea venitur ad Cheri, quo naves ascendunt, Ierosolymam visitaturi.

The King of France lands at Acre.

Rex Francorum applicuit apud Acon, in Paschalibus diebus, die Sabbati, duodecimo Kalendas Aprilis.

Richard sails from Cyprus, and takes a Saracen ship, drowning part of the crew, and retaining the rest.

Rex Anglorum, Ricardus, habens in comitatu suo tresdecim magnas naves, quas "buccas" vocant, triplici velorum expansione notabiles, dum sulcarent æquora, habens et centum naves onerarias, et quinquaginta galeas triremes, se vento commisit apud [2] Cyprum, et, inter navigandum, navem quamdam, quam Saphadinus, Saladini frater, Babyloniæ dominus, sumptibus magnis exstruxerat, ut Saracenis, apud Acon obsidione vallatis, succursum præstaret, casu fortuito velificantem inspexit, refertam omni genere victualium, armis bellicis ad quoslibet subeundos congressus instructam, ignis Græci, serpentium ignitorum, plena vasa plurima continentem, sicut dicebatur, hominum mille quingentorum suffragio roboratam. Instructis igitur in articulo temporis omnibus ad prœlium navale necessariis, galearum concursu, circa navem acerrimus undique fit insultus; quæ, venti destituta suffragio, stabat immobilis. Quidam itaque remigantium subtus aquas accessit ad navem, et eam terebra perforavit, rediensque ad galeam incolumis, sua resedit in sede. Modico tractu temporis, aqua subintrans omnia tabulata transcendit, et hominibus, qui prius in propugnaculis confidebant, evadendi spem omnem prorsus abscidit; quorum mille trecentos Ricardus, Rex Anglorum, in mari mergi præcepit, reservando ducentos.

Richard lands at Acre,

Tertio die post hæc, Rex intravit portum Acon, sexto Idus Junii. Cum igitur duo Reges circa civita-

[1] *Cipri* in MS. | [2] *Ciprum* in MS.

tem machinas erexissent, et magnitudine lapidum muros penitus attrivissent, Saraceni versi sunt in stuporem, nullam habentes fiduciam resistendi: qui, communicato cum suis consilio, cœperunt tractare de pace, talibus initis pactionibus;—quod Saladinus Sanctam Crucem certa die restitueret, et Christianos captivos mille quingentos, quos habebat in vinculis, liberos abire permitteret. Sic civitas, cum armis et impedimentis Saracenorum, salvis tantum corporibus ipsorum, Regibus duobus fuit reddita, quarto Idus Julii. Sed veniente die statuto, Saladinus nihil horum quæ promiserat adimplevit. In cujus perfidiæ ultionem, circa duo millia sexcenti Saraceni decapitati sunt. Subjugata civitate, Rex Francorum ad propria redire proposuit, quasi toto negotio consummato. Quod audiens Rex Anglorum, quicquid in argento vel auro, quicquid in victualium congregatione, quicquid in armis, vel equis, vel navibus, congregaverat, se pro parte dimidia Regi Francorum, tanquam domino suo, communicaturum obtulit, et sub quavis securitate firmiter repromisit; sed nequicquam. Toto Christianorum exercitu de ejus recessu graviter consternato, cum paucis suorum, repatriaturus navem ascendit.

A.D. 1191. which is besieged, and surrendered, on terms.

Treachery of Saladin.

2,600 Saracens beheaded.

The Crusade is abandoned by the King of France.

Post recessum Regis Francorum, Rex Anglorum, Ricardus, reparatis civitatis Acon ruinis, muris et fossatis, versus Joppen iter arripuit; et cum eo Dux Burgundiæ, cum suis Francigenis, et cum eo multi Comites et Barones, et populus innumerus. Sed antequam Rex venisset ad Joppen, Saladinus impetum fecit super ultimam aciem Christianorum; qui, favente divinæ miserationis gratia, in Vigilia Nativitatis Beatæ Mariæ, prope Assur, tantam stragem de nobilioribus Saracenis fecerunt, quantum Saladinus, annis quadraginta transactis, antea non sustinuit una die. Deinde, Domino ducente, Rex Anglorum Joppen pervenit, eandemque villam fossatis et muro firmavit.

Richard proceeds to Joppa.

Defeat of Saladin.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo secundo, Rex

The King

A.D. 1192. of France returns to Paris; and invades the territories of King Richard.

Francorum, a finibus Ierosolymitanis rediens, sexto Kalendas Januarii, Parisius solemni processione receptus est. Qui, immemor beneficiorum Regis Ricardi, et juramenti sibi præstiti, quod suis aut terræ suæ non noceret, quamdiu Rex Ricardus in peregrinatione maneret, nec etiam post reditum suum in terram suam ante dies quadraginta exactos, statim in reditu suo terras Regis Ricardi invasit.

Narrow escape of Richard; who is saved through the presence of mind of William desPreaux.

Rex Ricardus, cum die quadam spatiatum fuisset egressus, juxta Joppen, cum paucis familiaribus et falconibus suis, fatigatus ex itinere, in loco quodam sub dio dormivit; et ecce! repente cum impetu irruebant Turci, ut ipsum comprehenderent improvisum. Qui, ex adventientium strepitu expergefactus, equum ascendit, et, extracto gladio, cum suis Turcis obviam procedit. Quos, fugam simulantes, insequitur usque ad locum insidiarum ipsorum. Ubi subito erumpentes plurimi, Regem, cum paucissimis de suis, circumdederunt; quem, tunc omnino destitutum auxilio, comprehendissent, si ejus plenam notitiam habuissent. Sed ecce! confuso certamine contendentibus, unus sociorum Regis, nomine "Willelmus de Pratellis," exclamavit, idiomate Sarazenico, se Regem esse affirmans. Quod Turci credentes, ipsum Willelmum, comprehensum, confestim ad suum exercitum deduxerunt captivum. Fama facti, perveniens ad exercitum, ipsos ad arma commovit. Qui dum progrediuntur, Regem quæsituri, revertenti occurrunt. Abierant enim Turci longius, putantes se Regem abducere, cujus quatuor socii in bello ceciderant interfecti. Caterva Saracenorum, dum a Babylonia tenderet Ierusalem, armis abundans, et omni genere victualium, intercipitur a Christianis. Quod quisque Francorum diripuerat, suos cessit in usus; quod Templares, quod Hospitalarii, quod exteræ gentes, invaserant, cessit ad arbitrium Regis Anglorum.

Successes of the English.

King Richard takes Darum.

Pridie Idus Maii, Rex Anglorum, veniens ante Darum, castellum obsedit, et infra quintum diem, capto castello, plusquam quinque millia hominum captivavit.

Pridie Kalendas Augusti, captum fuit oppidum Joppen a Saracenis; quod mox, Kalendis Augusti, Rex Ricardus recuperavit. A.D. 1192. Joppa is taken, and retaken.

Rex Ricardus, pro Willelmo de Pratellis redimendo, qui se capi fecerat pro rege suo, decem de nobilioribus Turcis commutavit. Hinc inde datæ sunt induciæ inter Christianos et Saracenos, a Pascha sequente per tres annos, per tres menses, per tres hebdomadas, et tres horas. William des Preaux ransomed. A truce is made.

Die festo Sancti Michaelis, duæ Reginæ, tam Angliæ, scilicet, quam Siciliæ, navem ascenderunt apud Acon. Rex vero navem ascendit die festo Sancti Dionysii, et post longam navigationem, infausto omine, terram Ducis Austriæ subintravit. A quo captus est, in civitate, quæ "Wena" dicitur, tertio decimo Kalendas Januarii. The two Queens, of England and Sicily, set sail.

Habebat autem Dux eum exosum pro morte Marchisi Ducis [1] Tyri, de qua suspectum habebat Regem Ricardum. De hac tamen morte Princeps [2] Assesinorum, a quibus interfectus est Marchisus, Regem Ricardum literaliter excusavit.— Richard is taken captive, on his return, at Vienna.

"Limpoldo, Duci Austriæ, Vetus de Monte, salutem. Letter from the Prince of the Assesini, to the effect that Richard was not guilty of the death of the Marquis of Tyre.
"Cum plurimi reges et principes ultra mare Ricardum,
"Regem Angliæ, et dominum, de morte Marchisi inculpent, juro per Dominum, Qui regnat in æternum, et
"per legem quam tenemus, quod in ejus morte nullam
"culpam habuit. Est siquidem causa [3] mortis ipsius
"Marchisi talis.—Unus ex fratribus nostris in unam
"navem de Sataleia ad partes nostras veniebat, et
"[4] tempus illum forte ad Tyrum appulit: et Marchisus A.D. 1193.
"fecit illum capere et occidere, et magnam pecuniam
"ejus rapuit. Nos vero Marchiso nuncios nostros misi-
"mus, mandantes ut pecuniam fratris nostri nobis
"redderet, et de morte fratris nostri nobiscum se con-
"cordaret; et noluit, necnon et nuncios nostros spre-

[1] *Tiri* in MS.
[2] *Assesmorom* in ed. Camden.
[3] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[4] "*tempestas*" in some MSS. of the *Itinerarium Ricardi*, in this Series, "*tempus*" in another.

A.D. 1193. " vit, et mortem fratris nostri super Reginaldum, Do-
" minum Sidonis, posuit. Et nos tantum fecimus per
" amicos nostros, quod in veritate scimus, quod ille fecit
" illum occidere, et pecuniam rapere. Et iterum alium
" nuncium nostrum, nomine 'Edrisum,' misimus ad
" eum; quem in mari mergere voluit, sed amici nostri
" illum a Tyro festinanter fecerunt recedere; qui ad nos
" cito pervenit, et ista nobis nunciavit. Nos quoque
" ex illa hora Marchisum desideravimus occidere; tunc-
" que duos fratres misimus ad Tyrum, qui eum aperte,
" et fere coram omni populo Tyri, occiderunt. Hæc
" ergo fuit causa mortis Marchisi, et bene dicimus
" vobis in veritate, quod Dominus Ricardus, Rex An-
" gliæ, in hac Marchisi morte nullam culpam habuit;
" et qui propter hoc Domino Regi Angliæ malum
" fecerunt, injuste fecerunt, et sine causa. Sciatis pro
" certo, quod nullum hominem hujus mundi pro mer-
" cede aliqua, vel pecunia, occidimus, nisi prius nobis
" malum fecerit. Et sciatis quod litteras fecimus in
" domo nostra ad castellum nostrum Messiat, in dimi-
" dio Septembris, anno ab Alexandro millesimo quin-
" gentesimo quinto."

John, on hearing of his brother's captivity, hopes to reign in England. Makes a treaty with the King of France, against Arthur, Duke of Bretagne. Richard is sold to the Emperor, Henry.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo tertio, Johannes, Comes Moritonii, cum audisset fratrem suum, Regem, tentum in vinculis, illectus est spe magna regnandi. Multos itaque per totum regnum alliciens, plurima promittebat; munitionibus suis celeriter obfirmandis sollicitus intendebat. Mare transiens, fœdus iniit cum Rege Francorum, ut Arthurum, Ducem Britanniæ, nepotem suum, ab ea spe quam Britones super ejus promotione conceperant, prorsus excluderet.

Feria tertia post Ramos Palmarum, Dux Austriæ Regem Angliæ tradidit Imperatori Romano, sub pactione pecuniæ persolvendæ. Postmodum, ut Imperator ad immoderatam pecuniæ quantitatem, nomine redemptionis, solvendam, Regem Anglorum terroribus et exemplis impelleret, eum retrudi præcepit in loco qui

"Trivallis" dicitur; a quo carcere nullus ante dies illos exivit, qui vinctus ibidem intravit. De quo dicit [1] Aristoteles, Libro Quinto,—"Bonum est mactare patrem "in Trivallis": de quo loco rursus metrice scriptum est,— A.D. 1193. He is imprisoned at Trifels.

"Sunt loca, sunt gentes, quibus est mactare parentes,
"Vel mos, vel pietas, cum sera supervenit ætas."

Hoc enim non fortuito, sed ultione divina, provisum est, et salubriter ordinatum, ut Ricardus Rex ad pœnitentiam et satisfactionem congruam revocaretur, super excessu quo patrem suum carnalem, scilicet, Henricum Regem, decumbentem in lecto, tam auxilio quam consilio Regis Francorum, apud urbem Cenomannicam obsidione vallavit; et, licet eum ferro non mactaverit, eum tamen crebris et sævis assultibus compulit inde recedere. Richard is brought to repent of his undutiful conduct to his father.

Totius Alemanniæ magnates apud [2] Wormatiam convenerunt, ubi tractatum est de redemptione Regis Anglorum. Tandem sub audientia plurimorum propalatum est pretium appretiati, quem appretiavit Henricus, Imperator Romanus, ab Austriæ Duce, Limpoldo, scilicet, quinquaginta millia marcarum argenti; sed, ut Imperator, egregius fœnerator legitimarum usurarum, summa quæ per annum [3] æquiparatur sorti per unum diem in duplum excederet, centum millia marcarum, sibi suo tempore solvendarum, extorsit a Rege. Summa igitur redemptionis Regis Anglorum, centum millia librarum argenti ad pondus Coloniæ, monetæ publicæ et probatæ. Quæ pecunia certis temporibus, et distinctis, quinquaginta datis obsidibus, persolvebatur. The ransom of Richard discussed at Worms. 100,000 marks are extorted from the King.

Cum de redemptione Regis agendum sit, proferamus in medium, quam devotionem ei sui fideles exhibuerunt, incipientes a Domo Dei.—Majores quidem ecclesiæ thesauros ab antiquis congestos temporibus, ecclesiæ Contributions made to the ransom by theChurch.

---

[1] *Aristotiles* in MS. An incorrect allusion to the *Topica*, l. ii. c. 11.

[2] *Warmaciam* in MS.

[3] *æquiparantur* in MS.

A.D. 1193. parochiales argenteos calices, promiserunt. Statutum est insuper, assensu communi, Archiepiscopos, Episcopos, Abbates, Priores Conventualium Ecclesiarum, Comites, Barones, quartam partem annuorum reddituum, monachos Cistercienses, Canonicos Ordinis Albi, totam lanam unius anni, clericos viventes de decimis, decimam partem de redditibus provenientem, persolvere.

King Richard returns to England, A.D. 1194.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo quarto, Rex, prospero cursu tendens in Angliam, tertio decimo Kalendas Aprilis, cum exultatione magna, tam cleri quam populi, processione solemni receptus est, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli, Londoniis.

He orders chalices to be made for the churches, which had given up theirs for his ransom.

Cum Rex Ricardus advertisset nonnullas ecclesiarum campestrium argenteis carere calicibus, et didicisset eos suæ redemptionis occasione sublatos, hoc sibi, tanquam reo, imputans ad culpam, quod divina minus digne in hac parte celebrarent officia, jussit fieri per loca diversa calices quamplurimos, et eos ecclesiis indigentibus distribui, sine mora.

Richard crosses over to Normandy, hearing that King Philip is besieging Verneuil.

Cum autem apud Westmonasterium, in aula sua, quæ dicitur "Parva," die quodam pranderet, accepit rumores quod Philippus, Francorum Rex, ingressus Normanniam, Vernolium obsideret; quo audito, jurasse fertur, se nunquam aversurum faciem, quousque Regi Francorum occurreret, pugnaturus. Unde effracto muro e directo, per aperturam factam, cujus usque hodie vestigium ostenditur, egressus, acceleravit ad mare, et in Normanniam transfretavit. Ubi obviam habens Johannem, fratrem suum, eidem, misericordiam petenti super commissis, culpam incunctanter indulgendo, hoc dicitur respondisse; — "Utinam apud me delictum tuum in "oblivionem transeat, ita quod apud te permaneat in "memoria quod fecisti."

He is reconciled to his brother John.

Philip abandons the siege.

Tendens Vernolium, audivit Regem Francorum castellum obsidione vallasse, et per dies octo obsessos indicibiliter afflixisse. Cumque Rex Francorum audisset, quod Rex Anglorum in crastino superventurus

esset, accinctus ad prœlium, timore perterritus, potius elegit fugere quam pugnare, et sub omni festinatione, non sine damno et opprobrio, recessit a castris. A.D. 1194.

King Richard proceeds to Tours.

Postquam Rex Francorum recessit Vernolio, Rex Anglorum, veniens Turonis, a Castelli Novi burgensibus, ubi requiescit Beatus Martinus, duo millia marcarum, xeniorum nomine, suscepit, nulla conditione præmissa.

The King of France again takes to flight.

Rex Francorum, fines intrans Turoniæ, prope Vindocinum fixit tentoria. Quo cum Regem Anglorum cognosceret supervenisse, summo mane, tentoriis avulsis, cum festinatione recessit. Rex autem Anglorum eum subsecutus est, et quadrigas ipsius, Comitum et Baronum, et magnatum, sub eo militantium, impedimenta tota, sub captione conclusit. Aurum et argentum, in scriniis et in aliis locis repositum, tentoria quoque, balistas, et res innumeras, quarum æstimatio crescit in immensum, sine damno suo, cepit, secumque reduxit. A festo Pentecostes, quo Rex Francorum, Philippus, a Vernolio nocte recedens, fuga sibi consuluit, elapsi sunt dies triginta et septem ad illum usque diem, quo quiescens prope Vindocinum, exterritus, summo mane, cum gravi jactura suorum, Castellum Duni tremefactus recessit.

Spoil taken thereupon.

Successes of Richard in Poitou.

Rex Anglorum, potitus victoria, transiit in Pictaviam, et intra paucos dies Tailebrugh, et totam terram Gaufridi de Rancina, totam quoque terram Comitis [1] Engolismensini, sua sub potestate recepit; ut, a castello Vernolii, quousque veniatur ad Crucem Karoli, nullus ei rebellis extiterat.

Leopold, Duke of Austria, falls from his horse, and has his foot amputated, A.D. 1195.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo quinto, Limpoldus, Dux Austriæ, in die Sancti Stephani, cum apud [2] Granum dies natalitios celebraret, et, juxta consuetudinem regionis, sui corporis agilitatem inter suos commilitones ostenderet, militaribus armis accinctus, flexis in gyrum frenis, equo cecidit, et pedis attritione subita

[1] *Engolismentium* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Gramni* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1195. Judgment upon him therein.

sauciatus ad necem. Artissima tandem necessitate compulsus, consilio medicorum, pede truncatus est; ut qui Regis Anglorum, Ricardi, Ierosolyma redeuntis, et Crucis adhuc mortificationem in suo corpore gestantis, et animum habentis ad Terram Sanctam redire, pedes constrinxerat, nec licentiam abeundi quo vellet habere permitteret, in ultionem tanti facinoris, pede proprio mulctaretur.

Great inundation of the Seine, at Paris, A.D. 1196.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo sexto, aquarum inundatio subita, vehemens, et fluctibus procellosis involvens omnia circa Sequanam adjacentia, tam lignea quam lapidea, Philippum, Regem Francorum, Mauritium, Parisiensium Episcopum, commorantes Parisius, non parum exterruit. Unde Rex, relinquens palatium, cum domestica familia, pernoctare decrevit apud Sanctam [1] Genevefam. Episcopus vero, ut sibi provideret, et suis, apud Sanctum Victorem quievit.

Capture of the Bishop of Beauvais and William de Merlow, A.D. 1197.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo septimo, Marcadeus, miles soldarius Ricardi Regis, Brabantinorum vallatus catervis, cepit Philippum, Belvacensem Episcopum, Willelmum de [2] Merlow, et multos alios, jure belli. Qui, videlicet, Episcopus erat in armis vir strenuus, et Regis Francorum consanguineus, homo Marti plus deditus quam cultor Martyrum. Quem, in concaptivis durissimis conscriptum vinculis, transmisit Rotomagum.

Composition made between King Richard and the Archbishop of Rouen.

Ricardus Rex, advertens villam Andeliaci, et quasdam alias adjacentes, ad jus ecclesiæ Rotomagensis pertinentes, hostium irruptionibus nimium opportunas, commutationem fecit cum Archiepiscopo et dicta ecclesia; dans pro dictis villis molendina sua apud Rotomagum, ita quod Archiepiscopus solvat eleemosynas de eis ab antiquo statutas; villamque de Depe, et villam de Busseles, ita quod solvat eleemosynam assignatam, trecentas septuaginta duas libras Ande-

[1] *Genevesam* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Meloto* in Trivet.

gavensis monetæ. Dedit eis etiam manerium de Loveres, et forestam de Alermond, cum feris et omnibus pertinentiis suis. A.D. 1197.

Walterus Mape, (de quo multa referuntur jocunda,) ex Præcentore Lincolniensi, Oxoniensis Archidiaconus est effectus. Ricardus Rex, apud Andeliacum, castrum construxit insigne. Walter Mape, Precentor of Lincoln, is made Archdeacon of Oxford.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo octavo, Hubertus, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, auctoritate fultus Apostolica, [1][expellens], clericos quos Hugo, Cestrensis Episcopus, ejectis monachis, apud Coventreiam posuerat, reintroduxit monachos. Ad quorum instructionem et supplementum, septem monachi Monasterii Sancti Albani illuc destinati sunt; unde contigit illa duo monasteria artissima familiaritate conjungi, et indissolubili fœdere adunari. The monks are restored to Coventry, A.D. 1198. Monks of St. Alban's sent thereto.

Ricardus, Rex Angliæ, intravit terram Regis Francorum cum magno exercitu, et cepit castellum de Curcell, et de Burriz, et castrum Sirefontanum. Die crastina Rex Francorum venit de Mantua, cum quadringentis militibus, et multis aliis, ad succurrendum dicto castro de Curcellis, quod non putavit esse captum. Rex igitur Anglorum, ex quo eum venire cognovit, insecutus est eum, in fugam conversum, et in tanta districtione posuit in portam Gisortii, quod pons fractus est sub illo, submersis de suis viginti militibus; ipseque Rex, nisi attractus fuisset a custodibus Gisortii, fracto sub eo ponte, submersus fuisset. Interim Rex Angliæ propria lancea prostravit tres milites, et captos detinuit. Capti sunt cum eis insuper usque ad centum milites, et servientes, quorum non est numerus. Ducenti quoque capti sunt dextrarii, quorum septies viginti cooperti sunt ferro. Castles in France taken by King Richard. The King of France is defeated at Gisorz. Richard captures three knights.

Anno millesimo centesimo nonagesimo nono, Ricardus Rex, cum militem quemdam super inventione thesauri King Richard besieges

[1] Omitted in MS.

A.D. 1199. the castle of Chaluz, near Limoges.

convenire voluisset, ille, veritus severitatem regiam, ad Vicecomitem Lemovicensem fugit. Qui rogatus a Rege ut militem redderet, cum parere neglexisset, Rex, terras ejus ingressus, castrum quoddam, quod "Caluca" dicitur, juxta Lemovicas, obsedit, ac fortiter impugnavit; septimo vero Kalendas Aprilis, dum castrum considerando circuiret inermis, subito balistæ jaculo in humero sinistro letali confoditur vulnere, a quodam milite, qui "Petrus Basilii" dicebatur. Sequentibus diebus undenis languens ex vulnere, die duodecimo, octavo, videlicet, Idus Aprilis, ætatis suæ anno quadragesimo secundo, diem clausit extremum. Hic, propter magnanimitatem cordis, cognominatus est ab Anglicis et Normannis "Cor Leonis." Sepultus est autem apud Fontem Ebraudi, in Monasterio monialium, ad pedes patris sui, Henrici Regis; cum regnasset annis novem, mensibus totidem, sexque diebus.

He is mortally wounded, and dies.

His appellation of *Cœur de Lion.*

Is buried at Fontevraud.

Johannes, filius junior Henrici Secundi, Regis Anglorum, ex Alienora, Ducissa Aquitanniæ, non modo jure propinquitatis, sed in testamento fratris sui, Ricardi, designatus successor, post mortem ejusdem, anno Domini millesimo centesimo nonagesimo nono, regnum obtinuit Anglicanum. Hic a patre "Johannes Sine terra" cognominatus est, quia, fratribus ejus ad amplissimos honores sublimatis, puta, Henrico in Regem Angliæ coronato, Ricardo Ducatu Aquitannico, et Galfrido Ducatu Britannico, insignitis, ipse nihil habebat; quanquam postea ditatus fuerat Comitatibus Moritoniæ in Normannia, et Gloverniæ in Anglia, collatis insuper a patre terris omnibus in Hibernia conquisitis. Triginta duorum erat annorum, cum in Octavis Paschæ, apud Rotomagum, Ducatus Normannici gladio cingeretur. In Angliam vero veniens, infra Octavas Ascensionis, apud Westmonasterium coronatus est.

Richard is succeeded, as King, by his brother John, surnamed "Lackland" by his father.

He is crowned at Westminster.

Porro Philippus, Francorum Rex, defuncto Rege Ricardo, omnia quæ libuit sibi licere reputans, non deferens indueiis quas juramento firmaverat, Norman-

King Philip invades Normandy.

niam ingressus, cepit urbem Ebroicam, terrasque Regis Angliæ, usque Cenomannis, undique devastavit. A.D. 1199.

Arthurus autem, nepos Regis Johannis ex fratre Galfrido, Duce Britanniæ, aspirans ad regnum Angliæ, Regi Francorum Cenomannis occurrit, cum manu valida Andegavensium, et pro Comitatu Andegaviæ eidem fecit homagium. Alienora quoque Regina pro Ducatu Aquitanniæ, quem jure possedit hæreditario, eidem Regi homagium fecit, cum Turonis advenisset. Arthur does homage to King Philip for Anjou; Queen Alianor, for Aquitaine.

Johannes Rex, coadunato exercitu magno, in Normanniam transfretavit; sed cito post in Angliam rediens, apud Lincolniam, in conspectu totius populi, Regis Scotorum suscepit homagium; qui, super crucem Cantuariensis Archiepiscopi, fidelitatem juravit eidem. King John, returning from Normandy, receives homage of the King of Scotland.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo, Johannes Rex iterum in Normanniam transfretavit; ubi inter Reges in forma subscripta pax et concordia reformatur. — Restitutis nempe Regi Angliæ civitate Ebroica, cum toto comitatu, castellis, pagis, et prædiis, quæ Rex Francorum occupaverat violenter, præstitoque a Rege Angliæ homagio Regi Francorum, et eidem fidelitate jurata, Lodowicus, Regis Franciæ primogenitus, nobilem puellam, "Blanchiam" nomine, Hildefonsi, Regis Castillæ, filiam, Regis Angliæ, ex sorore Alienora, neptem, accepit uxorem. Cui Rex Johannes concessit omnes munitiones et possessiones a Rege Francorum sibi noviter restitutas; annuens etiam eidem omnes terras suas, quas in regno Franciæ possidebat, post decessum suum, si absque hærede de corpore suo contingeret eum mori. Treaty made between the Kings of England and France, A.D. 1200.

Firmata inter Reges pace et concordia, Arthurus, Comes Britanniæ, patruo suo, Johanni, Regi Angliæ, fecit homagium pro Comitatu Britanniæ, qui spectat ad feodum Ducatus Normanniæ, et aliis terris suis, quas in Anglia vel Aquitanniæ Ducatu habebat. Arthur does homage to King John, as Duke of Normandy.

Eodem anno Johannes Rex uxorem accepit Isabellam, Comitis Engolismensis filiam et hæredem; quæ octavo Idus Octobris coronata est, Londoniis, in Reginam. Hanc Marriage of John to Isabel, daughter of

A.D. 1200. the Count of Angouleme; said to have been before married.

ferunt quidam prius Vicecomiti Toartensi, Hugoni Brun, nupsisse, ipsumque, propter uxorem violenter ablatam, a fidelitate Regis Angliæ discessisse.

King John visits Paris; and is afterwards summoned thither by Philip, A.D. 1201.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo primo, Johannes, Rex Angliæ, venit Parisius, et honorifice a Rege Francorum receptus est, et donatus variis donis pretiosis. Tenuis tamen inter eos erat amicitia; quia, Rege Anglorum uxorato, evacuata videbatur illa sponsio, quam de terris suis in regno Franciæ fecerat Lodowico. Unde non multo post habito inter Reges colloquio inter Vernonam et insulam Andeliaci, Rex Francorum, occasiones quærens fidei non servandæ, et initi fœderis infringendi, Regem Angliæ submonuisse fertur, ut Parisius in quindena Paschæ compareret, super hiis quæ adversus eum proponeret, pro Ducatu Aquitanniæ, Comitatuque Andegaviæ, responsurus.

Philip invades Normandy, and incites Arthur against his uncle.

Æstate sequenti, Rex Francorum, Philippus, hostiliter ingressus est Normanniam, ubi munitiones quasdam cepit, et villas subegit; et, ut acriores Regi Angliæ inimicitias concitaret, Arthuro, [1] nepoti ejus, militaribus armis cincto, Comitatum Britanniæ tradidit, præcipiens ut Pictavensium et Andegavensium sibi Comitatus acquireret; tradens ei ducentos in subsidium milites, et largiens ei pecuniæ magnam summam.

King John wages war against Arthur, and his supporters.

Johannes Rex, undique lacessitus injuriis, resumpto animo in Arthurum nepotem, quem domesticum hostem ferebat gravius, et fautores ejus, quorum præcipui erant Hugo Brunus et Galfridus de Ladunano, convertit exercitum. Quos bello victos, et obsessos, ad deditionem coegit. Cepit etiam postea Vicecomitem [2] Lemovicensem, aliosque quamplures, qui ab ejus fidelitate desciverant, Arthuroque adhærentes. Quorum nonnullos transmisit in Angliam, per diversa castra servandos, quosdam, acceptis obsidibus, remisit ad propria. Arthurum vero misit Rotomagum, sub artiori custodia

Arthur is captured; and imprisoned at Rouen.

[1] *nepote* in MS. | [2] *Lemoniensem* in ed. Camden.

detinendum. Ob istam victoriam multi putant sibi convenire illud Merlini fatidici,—"Capite Leonis coronabitur"; et iterum illud,—"Linguas taurorum abscindet, et colla rugientium onerabit [1] catenis." A.D. 1201. Prophecy of Merlin.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo secundo, Johannes Rex Philippum, Beluacensem Episcopum, quem captum in prœlio supra retulimus, diebus Ricardi Regis, a custodia liberavit, et ad propria redire permisit. Release of the Bishop of Beauvais, A.D. 1202.

Philippus, Rex Francorum, in exhæredationem Regis Angliæ totis viribus laborans, ingressus Aquitaniam, cepit munitiones, militum Pictavensium, Britonumque, favore. Philip takes fortified places in Aquitaine.

Papa Innocentius, pro pace inter Reges reformanda, misit Abbatem de Casa Marii, qui, adjuncto sibi Abbate Trium Fontium, auctoritate Apostolica, præcepit utrique Regi, ut, convocatis Episcopis et principibus regni, salva utriusque justitia, pacem facerent, et abbathias, cæterasque ecclesias, per eorum bella destructas, in statum debitum reparárent. Pope Innocent III. commands the Kings to make peace, and rebuild the ruined abbeys.

Philippus Rex, non obstante Apostolico mandato, Normanniam ingreditur, et, Rudipontem obsidens, expugnavit, et cepit; Castrum quoque Gaylardi, quod in excelsa rupe super Sequanam fortissimum Ricardus Rex firmaverat, sex mensium obsidione subegit. King Philip invades Normandy.

Hoc anno, ut a plerisque traditur, cœpit Tartarorum dominium; qui sub montibus Indiæ, in regione Tartara, constituti, dominum suum Regem Indiæ, "David" nomine, filium Johannis Presbyteri, occidentes, ad depræ-dationem processerunt aliarum terrarum. Alleged commencement of the Tartar rule.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tertio, Arthurus Rotomagi moritur; de cujus morte Regem Johannem quidam ejus æmuli infamaverunt. Death of Arthur, A.D. 1203.

Rex Johannes obsides Pictavensium, propter eorum falsitatem, suspendi fecit. Philippus vero, Rex Francorum, a cœptis non desistens, castra Normannica, et Hostages from Poitou hanged.

---

[1] *cathenis* in MS.

A.D. 1203. The King of France overruns Normandy.

totam fere terram circumpositam, usque ad Montem Michaelis, in suam ditionem accepit. Normanni, a fidelitate Regis [1] desciscentes, Regisque Francorum favorem quærentes, civitates et castra, commissa suæ custodiæ, sine ulla resistentia, reddiderunt; videlicet, Constantiam, Baiocas, Luxovium, Abrincas, cum suburbanis et pagis. Jamque nihil Regi Angliæ in Normannia, fraudibus suorum a se alienata, remansit, exceptis civitate Rotomagi, et duobus castris, Vernolio atque Archis.

General revolt of the Normans.

Alianor, sister of Arthur, imprisoned at Bristol.

Johannes Rex Alienoram, sororem Arthuri, in Angliam transulit; quæ, in castro Bristolliæ honorifice exhibita, ibidem consenuit. Mater ejus, Constantia, hæres Britanniæ, post mortem viri sui, Galfridi, nupsit Guidoni de Toarto, qui de ea unicam filiam generavit; quam postea duxit Petrus, Roberti, Comitis Drocharum, [2] [filius,] cognomento "Mauclerk," accipiens cum eadem Britanniæ Comitatum.

Death of Alianor, the King's mother, A.D. 1204.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quarto, Alienora, Ducissa Aquitanniæ, mater Regis Angliæ, ex hac luce migravit.

King Philip takes Rouen.

Civitas Rotomagensis, a Gallicis obsessa, cum jam fere per annum se fortiter defendisset, de subsidio desperans Regis Angliæ, Philippo, Regi Francorum, se reddidit; qui statim muros ejus diruens, ne unquam reædificarentur in posterum, civibus interdixit.

Capture of Arques and Verneuil, and subjection of Normandy.

Redditis etiam duobus castellis, Archis et Vernolio, totam ex integro Normanniam habuit subjugatam. Nec hiis Rex Philippus contentus, ulterius progreditur, et Cenomanniam, Turoniam, atque Pictaviam, sine difficultate occupat, nemine resistente.

Angers taken by stratagem.

Capta est etiam dolose civitas Andegavensis a Willelmo de Rupibus, ducente milites suos armatos sub capis, velut fuissent mercatores ad nundinas accedentes.

John is expelled from Anjou and Touraine, A.D. 1205.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinto, Philippus, Francorum Rex, captis fortissimis castris [3] Archis et Chinone, a dominio Andegaviæ et Turoniæ exclusit totaliter Regem Anglorum.

---

[1] *desciventes* in MS.
[2] Omitted in MS.
[3] *Lochis* (correctly) in Trivet.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexto, Johannes, Rex Angliæ, in Aquitanniam transfretavit, et innumeras apud Rupellam copias secum duxit; sed adveniente illuc Rege Francorum, cum exercitu, absque conflictu, munita villa, in Angliam remeavit. A.D. 1206. John lands at Rochelle, but returns.

Hoc tempore, clericus quidam, "Walo" nomine, a Constantinopoli rediens, faciem Sancti Johannis Baptistæ secum deferens, eam reposuit Ambianis. The head of John the Baptist deposited at Amiens.

Sanctus Dominicus, fere per decennium, in continuatione prædicationis perseveravit contra hæreticos Albigenses. Saint Dominic preaches against the Albigenses.

Monachi Cantuarienses, in [1] electione futuri Pontificis discordes, alii Magistrum Reinerium, Suppriorem suum, alii Johannem de Gray, Norwicensem Episcopum, elegerunt. Disagreement as to election of Archbishop of Canterbury.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo septimo, Innocentius Papa, cassatis utrisque electis, Cantuariensi ecclesiæ Magistrum Stephanum de Langetone, tituli Sancti Chrysogoni Presbyterum Cardinalem, postulantibus monachis, eidem ecclesiæ præficiens, in Archiepiscopum consecravit. Super quo indignatus Rex Johannes, qui partem Norwicensis fovebat Episcopi, per Falconem de Cantilupo et Petrum de Cornhulle, monachos de suo monasterio expulit, et Stephano Archiepiscopo, ne accedendo ad suam ecclesiam intraret, Angliam interdixit. Quinimmo prælatos, tam majores quam minores, clericos quoque quoscunque, faventes Archiepiscopo, coegit in exilium, rebusque eorum omnibus confiscatis. Stephen Langton is appointed Archbishop, A.D. 1207. He is forbidden by the King to enter England.

Per id tempus, Dux Saxoniæ, Otho, in Regem Romanorum quamvis in discordia electus, in Angliam ad Regem Johannem, avunculum suum, venit. Pro cujus subsidio, Rex Angliæ et a clericis et a laicis tertiam decimam partem bonorum extorsit. Otho, Duke of Saxony, elected Emperor, comes into England.

Philippus, Francorum Rex, in exhæredationem Regis Angliæ non agens segniter, ut qui prædatur non prædaretur, multas ei in Aquitannia munitiones abstulit. Philip takes fortified places in Aquitaine.

[1] *electionem futuram* in MS.

A.D. 1208. Birth of Henry, son of King John.

Eodem anno, apud Wintoniam, in die Sancti Remigii, natus est Regi Johanni filius; quem vocavit "Henricum," nomine patris sui.

England laid under Interdict.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octavo, Anglia per Papam Innocentem Interdicto supponitur, undecimo Kalendas Aprilis, exequentibus Papale mandatum Willelmo, Londoniensi, et Malgerio, Wigorniensi, Episcopis; quia Rex Johannes Archiepiscopum Stephanum ad suam ecclesiam accedere non permisit. Qui tempore sui exilii mansit in Monasterio Pontiniacensi, Beati Thomæ Martyris vestigia imitatus.

Archbishop Stephen at Pontigny.

Otho obtains the crown, Philip of Suabia being slain.

Otho, Dux Saxoniæ, nepos Regis Angliæ ex sorore, regnum Alemanniæ pacifice obtinuit; Philippo, Duce Suaviæ, qui cum Othone diu contenderat de imperio, a Landegravio Turingiæ interfecto.

Birth of Richard, second son of John, A.D. 1209.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nono, Johanni Regi natus est filius secundus, in Vigilia Epiphaniæ; quem, in fratris sui memoriam, vocavit "Ricardum."

John proposes to invade Scotland.

Johannes Rex, audito quod Willelmus, Rex Scotorum, filiam suam Comiti Boloniæ junxisset connubio, ejus assensu non requisito, ægre tulit. Propter quod, eum bello aggredi proposuit. Sed tandem, reformata pace, acceptis duabus filiabus Regis Scotiæ obsidibus, rediit, proposito immutato.

A Crusade preached against the Albigenses.

Crux contra Albigenses hæreticos, ex mandato Domini Papæ, in Francia prædicatur; multitudo ergo Gallicorum, contra fidei refugas profecta, adjuncto sibi Comite Tholosano, [1] Viterpin primo adeundo, Carcasonam obsident, et expugnant: moxque reversuri ad propria, toti regioni præficiunt Simonem, Comitem Montis Fortis.

Simon, Count de Montfort.

Pope Innocent excommunicates the Emperor Otho, and John, King of England, A.D. 1210.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo decimo, Innocentius Papa in Othonem, Imperatorem, Ecclesiæ Romanæ rebellem, excommunicationis sententiam fulminavit, principesque Teutoniæ ab ejus fidelitate absolvit; ac ne quis eum "Imperatorem" appellaret, sub interminatione anathe-

[1] *Viterim* in Trivet. Beziers is meant.

matis, interdixit. Excommunicavit etiam Johannem, Regem Angliæ, pro eo quod Archiepiscopum Stephanum ad ecclesiam suam accedere non permisit. A.D. 1210.

Johannes Rex, eodem anno profectus in Hiberniam, in suam ditionem redegit totam terram, Catolo, Rege Conactiæ, triumphato. Rediens vero de Hibernia, de abbatiis, aliisque religiosorum domibus, et præcipue Cistercensium, exegit tallagium nimis grave. Expedition to Ireland. Tallage of the Abbeys.

Johannes Rex, anno millesimo ducentesimo undecimo, Wallenses rebelles subegit; qui nihilominus, resumptis viribus, in eodem anno Angliam infestabant. Rising of the Welch, A.D. 1211.

Castrum de [1] Stortforde, quod erat Londoniensis Episcopi, a Rege evertitur. Stortford Castle levelled.

Alexander, Regis Scotorum primogenitus, Londonias veniens, a Rege Johanne militaribus armis accingitur. Alexander, of Scotland, knighted.

Innocentius Papa, videns Regem Johannem ecclesiastica disciplina nullatenus emolliri, scripsit Regi Francorum et aliis principibus conterminis, ut Regem Angliæ inquietarent; quatenus rigorem animi sui per tales molestias remitteret, et ad obedientiam Romanam rediret. The Pope incites the King of France, and others, against John.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo duodecimo, Philippus, Rex Francorum, cum suis proceribus tractare cœpit de transfretando in Angliam, ad debellandum Regem Johannem; quod colorabat sub specie justitiæ, eo quod esset Romanæ rebellis Ecclesiæ. King Philip discusses the invasion of England, A.D. 1212.

Rex Johannes duxit exercitum in Walliam, incursus Wallensium repressurus, et regreditur cum honore. John marches against the Welch.

Eodem tempore, cœperunt Barones a Rege Johanne deficere, prætendentes libertates eis debitas minime observari. De quibus acti sunt in exilium Robertus filius Walteri et Stephanus Ridel, qui in Galliis morabantur; Galfridus etiam de Norwico carceri mancipatur. Hii tres creduntur fuisse contra Regem capitanei factionis. Commencement of a defection of the Barons, against King John.

Hoc anno Beatus Franciscus, natione Tuscus, de civi- St. Francis, of Assisi,

[1] *Stotford* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1212. renounces the world.

tate Assisii, post lasciviam juvenilis ardoris, et negotiorum sæcularium vanitatem, mente compunctus, abiit, et, venditis universis quæ habuit, pecuniam cuidam sacerdoti obtulit, ad suæ ecclesiæ reparationem. Quam cum sacerdos renueret, Franciscus, monetam abjiciens, Christo in paupertate voluntaria servire decrevit, octavo anno ab eo quo cœpit Sanctus Dominicus prædicare.

King Philip invades Flanders, A.D. 1213.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tertio decimo, Philippus, Francorum Rex, coadunato navigio apud Kalesiam, perpendens Ferrandum, Flandrensem Comitem, Regi Angliæ, Johanni, favere, divertit in Flandriam, ut, ea prius subjugata, liberius deinde Angliam occuparet.

An English fleet sent to the coast of Flanders.

Interim Rex Angliæ, copiosa navium classe parata, et præpositis eidem Willelmo de Longa Spata, Saresbiriensi, et Reginaldo de Dammartino, Boloniensi, Comitibus, ac nobili viro Hugone de Nova Villa, cum viris navalis belli peritis, transmisit eam in Flandriam, ut Regis Francorum navigium destruerent, et ipsum ab impugnatione Flandrensis Comitis impedirent. Ingressi igitur prædicti nobiles portum Damonis, cum classe sua tota, totam fere multitudinem navium Gallicorum, victualibus onustarum, et armis, in Angliam abduxerunt. Rex Francorum, tam subito consternatus eventu, pauculas naves relictas, timens ne in usum cederent adversariorum, in ira vehementi præcepit comburi; et expost Parisius dirigit iter suum.

Capture of a great part of the French fleet.

King John at length permits Archbishop Stephen to come to his See.

Johannes, Rex Angliæ, videns barones suos contra se insurgere, utpote qui cum Rege Francorum per litteras suas ligeas fecerant, spondentes regnum Angliæ Lodowico, filio Regis ejusdem; videns etiam offensam Domini Papæ super se de die in diem aggravari, flexus est animo; et inprimis Archiepiscopum Stephanum ad suam permisit Sedem accedere, ac libere in omnibus fungi sibi debita dignitate. Cupiens etiam contra hostes, tam domesticos quam extraneos, ecclesiastica protectione muniri, procurante Pandulfo, Apostolicæ Sedis Legato, totum regnum suum Angliæ et Hiberniæ Deo et Beato Petro, Apostolo, ejusque Vicario Catholico,

He makes his kingdom tributary to the Pope.

Innocentio, Papæ, Tertio, successoribusque ejus Catholicis, in remissionem peccatorum suorum, totiusque generis sui, in mille marcis, scilicet, pro Anglia, septingentis, et pro Hibernia trecentis, constituit censuale, ut patet in charta super hiis confecta, et sigillo regio consignata. A.D. 1213.

Hiis peractis, Johannes Rex a sententia excommunicationis absolvitur publice in Ecclesia Cathedrali Wintoniensi, præstita juratoria cautione de restitutione ablatorum tam clericis quam laicis facienda, et recipiendis omnibus in plenam gratiam et amorem. He is absolved from sentence of excommunication.

Exinde Pandulfus, Legatus, in Galliam transiens, Francorum Regi, Philippo, sub anathematis interminatione, prohibuit ne transiret in Angliam, seu Regem Angliæ, jam reconciliatum Ecclesiæ, quominus regnum suum possideret pacifice, aliquatenus per se vel per alios infestaret. Duravit tamen adhuc Interdictum in Anglia, clero illud relaxari nolente, quousque de ablatis satisfactum esset ad plenum. Pandulph, the Legate, forbids King Philip's intended invasion of England.

Johannes Rex, eodem anno transfretans, susceptus est honorifice in Rupellam; nec multo post, reconciliatis sibi Comite Marchiæ et Galfrido de Laudanano, cepit urbem Andegavim, et castrum quod dicitur "Bellum Forte," aliasque munitiones quamplures. King John lands at Rochelle.

Turba militum suorum missa trans Ligerim, ad prædandum, Robertum, Comitis Drocharum filium, et milites cum eo quatuordecim, in armis sibi occurrentes, ceperunt. Capture of the son of the Count de Dreux.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quarto decimo, Johannes Rex, impetrata a Sede Apostolica quinque annorum induciis super restitutione ablatorum, ita quod singulis annis usque ad complementum una pecuniæ portio solveretur, invito clero, relaxationem obtinuit Interdicti, quod jam sex annis, mensibus tribus, et diebus decem et septem, duraverat. Relaxation of the Interdict, A.D. 1214.

Urbs Andegavis, Regi Johanni infida, Lodowico, primogenito Regis Francorum, se reddidit; qui muros ejus, noviter a Rege Johanne constructos, ad solum diruens, complanavit. Attendens autem Rex Johannes Picta- Capture of Angers by the French.

A truce made for five years.

A.D. 1214. vensium duplicitatem, et Andegavensium penes se mobilitatem, qui plus faverent parti Gallicæ quam suæ, in treugas quinquennales, a Rege Franciæ impetratas per amicos, [1] concessit.

The Emperor Otho is defeated.

Otho ab imperio, judicio Ecclesiæ depositus, a Rege Francorum bello victus est, captis in hoc prœlio Ferrando Flandrensi, Willelmo de Longa Spata, Saresbiriensi, et Reginaldo de Dammartino, Boloniensi, Comitibus, multisque Baronibus, et aliis personis ordinis militaris.

Otho retires to his Duchy, for life, A.D. 1215.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinto decimo, Otho, quondam Imperator, adversante sibi fortuna, post bellum proxime supradictum in Saxoniam reversus, privatam vitam toto ævo suo duxit in Ducatu, qui sibi jure hæreditario competebat. Tandem [2] dysenteriæ morbo laborans, convocatis Episcopis, alioque clero, instanter cum lacrymis absolutionem super sua rebellione petiit, et accepit. Miles quidam Anglicus, dictus "Philippus de Bona Villa," qui sub isto Othone plurimis annis militaverat, sæpe de illo cum magna devotione referre solebat. Cum, instante morte, viaticum recipere, quia nihil retinere poterat, non auderet, tamen corpus Christi, ad instantiam ejus, ut illud videret, allatum, humiliter adoravit. Et cum, quasi amplexaturus, [3] brachiis expansis, nudato pectore, approximaret, hostia illa in loco ubi cor latuit, facta apertura, intravit, prosiliens de manibus sacerdotis, et absque omni cicatricis vestigio reclusus est locus; sicque decumbens spiritum reddidit.

Devoutness shown by him on his deathbed.

A miracle, which then took place.

King John engages to enter upon a Crusade; but is prevented by a rising of his Barons; who defy him.

Johannes, Rex Angliæ, una cum Comitibus Cestriæ, Derbiæ, aliisque nobilibus, Crucem accepit a Willelmo, Londoniensi Episcopo, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli. Verum adversante sibi fortuna, non licuit ei tam utili vacare proposito; insurgentibus contra eum Baronibus suis, eo quod libertates et jura ab eo petita, et, ut dicebant,

[1] Qy. *consensit.*
[2] *dissenteriæ* in MS.
[3] *bracchiis* in ed. Camden.

promissa, non persolvit, nec impleverat in effectu. Unde et per quemdam Canonicum Regularem ipsum diffidarunt, apud Radingiam, tertio Nonas Maii. A.D. 1215.

Johannes Rex Willelmum de Longa Spata, Comitem Sarum, a Gallicis captum, mutatione Roberti, filii Comitis Drocharum, redemit. Ransom of William, Earl of Salisbury.

Civitas Londoniarum, a Rege deficiens, sexto decimo Kalendas Julii, se transtulit ad Barones. The City of London joins the Barons.

Rex Johannes multos de Baronibus et militibus in castro Roffensi, quod post aliqualem obsidionem redditum fuerat, cepit, et ad castrum insigne de Corf captivos transmisit. Many of the Barons captured at Rochester.

Barones Lodowicum, Regis Francorum filium, in suum evocant subsidium, promittentes ei regnum Angliæ, Rege Johanne expulso. Prince Louis is summoned to the aid of the Barons.

Hoc anno, mense Septembri, multi viri nobiles, Britanni et Flandrenses, Regis Johannis allecti stipendiis, volentes in Angliam transfretare, naufragio perierunt. Horum dux fuit miles quidam, dictus "Hugo de Boves," vir vitiis plenus, et crudelitate, qui in partibus transmarinis sexaginta millia armatorum, in auxilium Regis, collegerat. Sed, Deo miserante, hii omnes a pelago sunt absorpti. Cadaver Hugonis apud Gernemutam in Northfolchia est ejectum, ubi cum maxima multitudine militum mersorum, et servientium, est repertum. Ejecta sunt etiam in locis diversis super littus maris corpora mulierum, et parvulorum in cunis jacentium, quorum omnium multitudo ita maris occupavit littora, quod, ex infectione aeris, morbus et pestis invaluit inter provinciales. Habuerant autem in proposito, ut, expulsis indigenis a toto regno, terram jure perpetuo possiderent. Dederat namque Rex Johannes duci eorum, Hugoni de Boves, per chartam suam, provincias Northfolchiæ et Southfolchiæ, prout dicebatur. Sed propositum eorum annullavit divina clementia, ut præfertur. Hugh de Boves and his mercenaries are shipwrecked. His body is cast up at Yarmouth, in Norfolk. A pestilence arises from the bodies of the drowned.

Hoc anno, mense Novembri, sub Papa Innocentio Lateranense celebratur Concilium; in quo lata est ex- Council of Lateran.

A.D. 1215. communicationis sententia in omnes qui Johannem, Regem Angliæ, satagebant de regno suo modo quolibet exturbare.

Excommunication of the enemies of King John.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexto decimo, Gualo, Apostolicæ Sedis Legatus, venit Parisius, Philippum Regem studiose exhortans, ut filium suum, Lodowicum, a transitu in Angliam [1] cohiberet. Super quo etiam, nihilominus, auctoritate Apostolica, ipsum monuit Lodowicum, denuncians tam patri quam filio sententiam excommunicationis, latam in Lateranensi Concilio, in omnes qui Johannem, Regem Angliæ, ut a regno dejicerent, expugnabant. Lodowicus, spreta monitione Legati, a cœptis nequaquam destitit, sed apud Kalesium, Flandriæ portum, classem adunari præcepit, pro exercitu in Angliam transportando.

Gualo, the Legate, warns King Philip against invading England.

A.D. 1216.

Gualo, Legatus, in Angliam tendens, et Lodowicum præveniens, sategit inter Regem et Barones pacem componere; licet frustra.

He vainly attempts to make peace between the King and the Barons.

Lodowicus, perveniens Sandwicum, habuit obvios Barones suæ parti faventes, qui deduxerunt eum usque Rofam, cujus castrum statim redditum est eidem. Feria quinta in hebdomada Pentecostes veniens Londonias, cum processione solemni receptus est in ecclesia Sancti Pauli. Ubi cum suscepisset homagium civium, usque Westmonasterium transiens, suscepit homagium procerum adhærentium parti suæ. Cum quibus progrediens, cepit castrum de Reigate, Gildeford, et Farnham, et multas alias munitiones.

Prince Louis is joined by the Barons, and is received in London.

Gualo, Legatus, Lodowico plurimum conabatur resistere, excommunicando et interdicendo. Sed parum proficere potuit, populo fere toto in regis sui odium provocato.

Vain opposition made by Gualo.

Interim, Johannes, Rex, valido collecto exercitu, proposuit cum Lodowico et ejus fautoribus prœlio decertasse, sed in ipso belli apparatu morbo correptus decubuit; et, post paucos dies, defungitur apud Newerk,

Death of King John at Newark, 19th October.

[1] *prohiberet* in ed. Camden.

quarto decimo Kalendas Novembris, cum regnasset annis decem et septem, mensibus quinque, decemque diebus. Sepultus est autem Wigorniæ, coram altari magno, in medio inter sacrosancta corpora Oswaldi et Wulstani, Pontificum bonorum. A.D. 1216. Is buried at Worcester.

Iste Rex Johannes Abbathiam Cisterciensis Ordinis in Wintoniensi Diœcesi, quæ "Bellus Locus" dicitur, et Monasterium virginum apud Godstow, in Lincolniensi Diœcesi, pro anima Rosamundæ, quæ aliquando patris fuerat concubina, fundavit. Propter quod, nonnulli putant ad illum Merlini fatidici vaticinium referri, quo dixit;—"Virginea munera virginibus donabit; promere-" bitur inde favorem Tonantis, et inter beatos collo-" cabitur." Monasteries founded by King John.

Henricus, filius Johannis Regis ex Ysabella, filia Comitis Engolismensis, annum ætatis agens decimum, post patrem defunctum, anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo sexto decimo, sublimatur in Regem; et, præsentibus, Gualone, Apostolicæ Sedis Legato, cum Episcopis, Jocelino Bathoniensi, Willelmo Coventrensi, aliisque prælatis pluribus, Reginaque Ysabella, cum Comitibus Willelmo Marescalli, Willelmo de Ferrariis, magnaque aliorum nobilium multitudine, per Petrum, Wintoniensem Episcopum, in die Apostolorum Simonis et Judæ, in Ecclesia Beati Petri, monachorum Gloverniæ, inunctus in Regem, solemniter coronatur. Henry III., son of John, succeeds to the throne. He is crowned at Gloucester.

Lodowicus, Regis Francorum filius, cum jam castrum Doveriæ obsedisset diebus quindecim, nihil proficiens, Londonias revertitur, ubi in die Sancti Leonardi redditur ei Turris. Progressus vero de Londoniis, castrum de Hertford cepit, in die Sancti Andreæ, Apostoli, et castrum de Berkhamsted, in die [1] Sanctæ Luciæ; et exinde acceptæ sunt treugæ inter Regem juvenem, Henricum, et Lodowicum, usque in festum Martyrum Fabiani et Sebastiani. Quibus firmatis, Lodowicus in The Tower of London is surrendered to Prince Louis. A truce made with him by the young King.

[1] *Sancti* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1216. He returns to France, and is deserted by by many of the barons.

Gallias transfretavit. Interim vero, multitudo magna baronum et militum, rupto fœdere quo se Lodowico [1]astrinxerant, ea mentis levitate qua a patre descive-rant, ad filium revertuntur.

Story told by some Chroni-clers, as to the sinister intentions of Prince Louis.

Narrant tamen quidam Chronici, quod quidam miles de regno Francorum, qui cum Lodowico venerat ad subjugandum Angliam, jam, fatis urgentibus, ad extrema perductus, cum novisset infallibiliter se moriturum, as-civit ad se presbyteros et barones quosdam regni Angliæ, qui tunc, ob civitatis custodiam, in urbe Londoniarum morabantur; et coram omnibus lacrymabiliter ista dixit: —"Doleo super miseria et desolatione vestra, quod vos "pericula quæ vobis imminent non videtis. Juravit," inquit,—"Lodowicus, et duodecim Comites de regno "Franciæ, et barones sui, quod si contingat eum An-"gliam subjugare, et in Regem coronari, ipse omnes "barones et nobiles Angliæ, qui nunc cum ipso mili-"tant, et Regem Johannem persequuntur, perpetuo "damnabit exilio, ut sui domini proditores, et omne "genus eorum, usque ad ultimam generationem, de "terra delebit. Et ne hoc vobis vertatur in dubium, "ego, qui hic decumbo, continuo moriturus, vobis "affirmo, in periculo animæ meæ, me unum ex illis "esse, qui hoc cum Lodowico juraverunt. Unde sum-"mopere vobis consulo, ut vobis salubriter provideatis." Quibus dictis, continuo spiritum exhalavit.

Prince Louis vainly be-sieges the castles of Dover and Windsor, A.D. 1217. He is de-feated at Lincoln.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo decimo septimo, Lodo-wicus, in Angliam rediens, post lapsum treugarum, ob-sedit iterum castrum Doveriæ, sed nihil profecit. Simili quoque sorte, a castro de Windeleshores est re-pulsus. Quapropter, ordinatis dietis, versus Lincolniam dirigit, cum exercitu, iter suum: ubi superveniens ex-ercitus Regis juvenis ei bellum indixit. Gravissimo proinde conserto prœlio, fiunt victores Anglici, fugiente Lodowico. Quadringenti milites de parte Lodowici

[1] *astrixerant* in ed. Camden.

fuerunt occisi: inter quos cecidit nobilis ille Comes, Thomas, de Perticis, tam Regis Francorum quam Anglorum consanguineus. Feruntur etiam captivati quinquaginta duo milites de complicibus Lodowici; de quorum numero erat Gilbertus de Clare, vir inclytus, quem cepit Willelmus Marescalli, et Gloverniam deduci fecit, custodiæ mancipandum. Cui postea, sedatis rebus bellicis, paceque reflorente, Isabellam, filiam suam, matrimonio copulavit. A.D. 1217. Death of the Count de Perches; and capture of Gilbert de Clare.

Lapsis post hoc prœlium paucis diebus, cæsus est ab Anglicis navalis exercitus Lodowici. Huic præerat Eustachius, ut fertur, monachus; qui, ut decebat apostatam, ostendens suam inconstantiam, sæpe de uno rege transivit ad alium, et, tanquam de monacho factus dæmoniacus, dolo et perfidia plenus fuit. Cujus caput, abscissum, delatum est per diversa loca Angliæ, super palum. The French fleet is defeated, under Eustace the Monk, who is slain.

Lodowicus, Londoniis receptus, terra marique sibi comperiens detrimenta augeri, et partem inveniens Regis indies roborari, pacem petiit, necessitatis articulo compellente. In præsentia igitur Domini Walonis, [1] Apostolicæ Sedis Legati, et prælatorum atque procerum hujus regni, præstitit juramentum, quod mandatis pareret Ecclesiæ; et sic a sententia excommunicationis est absolutus. Insuper, renuncians regno Angliæ, et præstito juramento, quod, adepto regno paterno, omnia per patrem suum Regibus Angliæ injuste ablata restitueret, liber, cum suis omnibus, remeavit. Peace is made with Prince Louis; who enters into certain engagements.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo decimo octavo, multi Francorum et Anglorum, devotione allecti, peregrinationem Ierosolymitanam sunt aggressi. Johannes, Rex Ierusalem, et Dux Austriæ, coadunato exercitu valido ex multitudine peregrinorum, nationum diversarum, civitatem Damiatam obsederunt, et anno sequenti ceperunt. Est autem Damiata civitas Ægypti maritima A.D. 1218. Siege and capture of Damietta, by John, King of Jerusalem, and the Duke of Austria.

[1] *Apostolici* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1218. in [1] terra Gossen, inter Ramesse et Campotaneos sita, antemurale totius Ægypti, dicta quondam [2] "Helio-"polis."

A truce made for 4 years, as to Poitou, A.D. 1220.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo, treugæ quatuor annorum inter Philippum, Francorum, et Henricum, Anglorum, Reges, pro Pictavia sunt acceptæ.

The King lays the first stone of the new works at Westminster.

Hoc anno inchoatum est novum opus Westmonasterii; cujus, in propria persona, Rex primum posuit lapidem fundamenti. De singulis autem [3] carucatis Angliæ dati sunt Regi duo solidi pro relevamine status sui.

The See is removed from Old Sarum to New Sarum.

Hoc anno, clerici qui infra castrum Regis apud Veterem Sarum manebant, una cum Sede episcopali, ad villam Episcopi, (quæ nunc "Nova Sarum" dicitur, et privilegio civitatis donata est,) a Rege Henrico transferuntur; procurante negotium Episcopo Saresbiriensi, Ricardo, et eodem Rege devotius annuente.

Isabel, the widow of King John, marries the Count de Marche, A.D. 1221.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo primo, Ysabella, mater Regis Angliæ, irrequisito filii, vel Consilii sui, consensu, transfretans in Gallias, nupsit Comiti Marchiæ, filio Hugonis [4] Broun; qui statim, quædam castra Regis in Pictavia in manu expugnans valida, occupavit.

Rebellion of William, Earl of Albemarle; who is excommunicated.

Eodem anno, Willelmus de Fortibus, Comes de Albamarla, in Comitatu Lincolniæ multos ad rebellionem commovit. Qui dum ad pacem Regis venire contemnit, a Pandulpho, Apostolicæ Sedis Legato, excommunicatur. Fuerunt et alii viri magni, qui munitiones et castra, possessionesque alias Regis dominicas, injusto dominio usurpabant. Hii tandem coacti sunt omnia resignare regiæ voluntati.

Hubert de Burgh, Earl of Kent, made guardian of the King.

Hubertus de Burgo, Comes Canciæ, ob probitatem et fidelitatem eximiam, custos Regis juvenis, et totius Angliæ Justiciarius, factus est, assensu omnium majorum regni.

Recapture of Damietta by the Saracens.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo secundo, Damiata, cum maximo Christianorum capta labore, et

[1] See *Exodus*, viii. 22.
[2] *Eliopoleos* in MS.
[3] *carucis* in MS.
[4] *Bromz* in ed. Camden.

Christianis per annum possessa, Saracenorum dominio iterum est subjecta. A.D. 1222.

Stephanus, Cantuariensis Præsul, primum Consilium suum tenuit Oxoniæ; in quo diaconus quidam, apostata convictus, degradatus est, et, [1] manui sæculari traditus, flammis ultricibus est absumptus. Council at Oxford. An apostate deacon, degraded and burnt.

Rusticus etiam quidam, seipsum crucifigens, et Stigmata vulnerum Christi superstitione quadam circumferens, perpetuo immuratur. A rustic immured, for imitating the *Stigmata*.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo tertio, obiit Philippus, Francorum Rex; cui successit filius ejus, Lodowicus. Death of King Philip; succession of Louis VIII., A.D. 1223.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo quarto, Lodowicus, Francorum Rex, postposito juramento quod olim in Anglia præstiterat, cœpta patris contra Regem Angliæ prosequens, villam Sancti Johannis Angeliaci cepit, et castrum de Mordun, in Pictavia. Obsedit etiam Rupellam, et cepit eam, traditione Savarici de Malo Leone. Qui, timens tantæ proditionis pœnas sibimet imminere, factus transfuga, ad Regem Franciæ se convertit. King Louis breaks his oath, and takes Rochelle, through treachery. A.D. 1224.

Eodem anno, Falkasius de [2] Breute, insurgens contra Regem Angliæ, illico est oppressus: et infra annum ad tantam egestatem deductus, ut qui paulo ante Angliæ proceres divitiarum gloria anteire videbatur, jam actus in exilium, tenuem in Galliis quæritando victum, etiam capitis reclinatorium non haberet. Faukes de Breauté, rising in insurrection, is crushed, and reduced to poverty.

Suppressis sibi per Angliam inimicis, cœpit Rex pacifice administrare regnum. Sed nondum ei ad recuperanda perdita in partibus Galliarum suppetebat facultas. The King unable to recover former losses in France.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo quinto, Ricardus, Comes Cornubiæ, frater Regis, et Willelmus, Comes Sarum, avunculus ejus, cum multis proceribus, proficiscentes in Wasconiam, prospere res gesserunt. Successes in Gascoigne of the Earls of Cornwall and Salisbury, A.D. 1225.

---

[1] *manu* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Breus* in MS.; corr. from Trivet.

A.D. 1226. Death of Louis VIII.; and succession of Saint Louis.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo sexto, moritur Lodowicus, Francorum Rex; et succedit eidem filius ejus, Sanctus Lodowicus, coronatus in Regem cum esset annorum quatuordecim.

Discord as to Hubert de Burgh.

Discordia orta est inter Regem et Barones, propter Hubertum de Burgo, quem Barones ab officio dejicere, Rege contradicente, volebant.

Aid sent to the Earl of Cornwall, in Gascoigne.

Rex Henricus Ricardo, fratri suo, moranti in Wasconia, quingentos transmisit Wallenses, et pecuniæ magnam summam.

Expedition against the Albigenses, and capture of Toulouse, A.D. 1227.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo septimo, Lodowicus, Francorum Rex, de consilio Blanchiæ, matris suæ, episcopos et milites in terram Albigensium misit; per quos urbem Tolosam cum toto obtinuit Comitatu.

King Henry sets sail for Bretagne, to recover his lost possessions, A.D. 1230.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo, Henricus, Anglorum Rex, transfretavit in Britanniam, suadente Petro, Duce Britanniæ, ut a Rege Francorum terras, per patrem ejus, et avum, sibi et progenitoribus suis injuste ablatas, repeteret. Qui, die quo naves ascensurus erat, pauperes et infirmos humiliter visitans, leprososque deosculans, largas eis eleemosynas erogavit.

Henry returns from Bretagne, A.D. 1231.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo primo, Henricus, Rex Angliæ, intento suo frustratus, de Britannia in Angliam remeavit.

Hubert de Burgh is imprisoned, A.D. 1232.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo secundo, Hubertus de Burgo, Comes Canciæ, quibusdam gravibus contra eum propositis, carceri mancipatur.

Richard, Earl Marshal, rises against the King, A.D. 1233.

Hugh de Burgh is dragged from sanctuary.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo tertio, Ricardus Marescalli, contra Regem insurgens, Walliam commovit ad guerram. Qui etiam Hubertum de Burgo, qui de castro de [1] Divisis evaserat ad Ecclesiam, vi captum, in Walliam secum duxit. Hic etiam, in Hibernia contra Regem consurgens, ibidem deceptus, occiditur. Cui successit in Comitatu germanus ejus, Gilbertus.

---

[1] *Dimsis* in ed. Camden.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo quarto, Magister Edmundus de Abendonia in Cantuariensem Archiepiscopum sublimatur. A.D. 1234. Edmund of Abingdon, Abp. of Canterbury.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo quinto, Imperator Fredericus sororem Henrici Regis, nomine "Ysabellam," uxorem accepit. The Emperor Frederic marries Isabella, A.D. 1235.

Fames admodum magna invaluit in Gallia, maxime in partibus Aquitanniæ; ita ut homines herbas campestres, sicut animalia bruta, comederent. Famine in Aquitaine.

Henricus, Rex Angliæ, Alienoram, filiam secundam Comitis Provinciæ, apud Cantuariam, desponsavit. Henry marries Alianor of Provence (A.D. 1236).

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo sexto, Ricardus, frater Regis, Cornubiæ Comes, et Comes Marescalli Gilbertus, cum multis aliis, Crucis characterem susceperunt. The Earl of Cornwall assumes the Cross. A.D. 1236.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo septimo, Johannes Scotus, ultimus Comes Cestriæ, moritur, et, deficiente hærede, devolutus est in possessionem regiam Comitatus. Death of John le Scot, last Earl of Chester, A.D. 1237.

Otho Legatus venit in Angliam. Data est Regi hoc anno a clero et populo tricesima pars bonorum. Gift of one thirtieth to the King.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo octavo, Otho, Apostolicæ Sedis Legatus, cum ad Abbathiam de Osney, juxta Oxoniam, receptus fuisset, insultum passus a scholaribus, ad campanile transfugit. Qui postea, Londoniis, in Scholares Oxoniæ sententiam excommunicationis fulminavit, Studiumque dispersit. Unde factum est, ut quidam villam Northamptoniæ, quidam novam civitatem Sarum, ad Studium elegerunt. The Legate, Otto, is insulted by the scholars at Oxford. The University is thereupon dispersed, A.D. 1238.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo nono, corona Domini spinea allata est in Franciam. The Lord's crown of thorns, A.D. 1239.

Henrico Regi natus est filius, et vocatus "Edwardus." Birth of Prince Edward.

Ricardus, Regis Anglorum germanus, Comes Pictaviæ et Cornubiæ, una cum Willelmo de Longa Spata, profectus in Terram Sanctam, exercitum Francorum invenit, sub Rege Navarriæ, Theobaldo, plurimum deso- The Earl of Cornwall aids the French army, in the Holy Land.

A.D. 1239. Truce with the Saracens.

latum. Quibus compatiens, cum Sarazenis treugas iniit, omnibus Christianis, qui captivi tenebantur, liberatis.

Hubert de Burgh surrenders 4 castles to the King.

Comes Canciæ, Hubertus de Burgo, judicio contra eum procedente, quatuor castra dominationi regiæ cogitur resignare.

Simon de Monte Forti, filius Simonis de Monte Forti, qui anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo nono crucesignatus est contra Albigenses, Reginam Blancham, Regis Francorum matrem, sibi timens offensam, aufugit in Angliam; ubi gratiose receptus a Rege, Leycestriæ obtinuit Comitatum, cum Senescallia Angliæ, et Regis sororem, quæ prius castitatem publice voverat, in manu Episcopi, uxorem accepit. Qui etiam, postea Senescallus Wasconiæ factus, Regem Angliæ induxit, ut terram Basclorum, cui caput est civitas Baiona, et olim regnum fuerat, recognosceret de feodo Regis Franciæ; ut sic Regis Castellæ actionem excluderet, qui terram illam ad feodum regni Hispaniæ asseruit pertinere.

Simon Montfort takes refuge in England, and is made Earl of Leicester; marrying the King's sister.

The land of the Basceles [Biscay] acknowledged as of the fee of the King of France.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo, Fredericus, Imperator, Romipetis ponens insidias, Jacobum, Prænestinum Episcopum, de Francia, et Othonem, Diaconum Cardinalem, de Anglia, ad Curiam revertentes, capi fecit, et in custodia detineri.

The Emperor Frederic has Cardinal Otto and another arrested, A.D. 1240.

Gregorius Papa, cum Concilium tenere voluisset, captis per diversas partes prælatis ab Imperatoris fautoribus, a suo proposito impeditur. Inter quæ mala, ad extremam horam veniens, in Domino obdormivit.

Pope Gregory IX. is prevented from holding a Council.

Beatus Edmundus, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, in Galliis, apud villam de Soysi, præsentem miseram vitam exuens, ad æternæ viriditatis pascua introivit.

Death of Edmund, Abp. of Canterbury.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo primo, Rex Angliæ capsam auream, pro reponendis exuviis sanctissimi Regis et Confessoris, Edwardi, in ecclesia Westmonasteriensi fecit parari.

A golden shrine for the remains of Edward the Confessor, A.D. 1241.

Alphonsus, frater Regis Franciæ, Comes Pictaviensis efficitur.

Alfonso, Count of Poitou.

Soror Arthuri apud Bristollum obiit; ubi cum annis

Death of

multis duxisset vitam cœlibem, tandem moritura corpus suum inter sanctimoniales Ambresbiriæ sepeliendum legavit. Quibus, annuente Rege, manerium de Molkesham, cum pertinentiis suis, dedit. A.D. 1241. the sister of Prince Arthur.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo secundo, Ricardus, frater Regis Angliæ, cum Comite Willelmo de Longa Spata, revertitur de Terra Sancta. The Earl of Cornwall returns from the Holy Land, A.D. 1242.

Lodowicus, Francorum Rex, Hugonem Broun, Comitem Marchiæ, qui matrem Regis Angliæ duxerat in uxorem, infestavit, propter homagium Alphonso, Pictaviensi Comiti, denegatum. In cujus subsidium transfretans Rex Angliæ, una cum Ricardo, fratre suo, Cornubiensi Comite, Comitatumque Pictaviæ, ex donatione patris, vendicante, juxta Sanctonas, cum Rege Franciæ pugnam commisit. Videns vero Pictavenses a se deficere, quorum fiducia ad illas partes accesserat, prœlio se subtrahens, in quoddam castrum se recepit. Urbem namque Sanctonas sibi infidam præsentiens, utpote quæ statim post pugnam Regi Francorum se reddidit, ingredi recusavit. Cecidit in hoc tumultu miles illustris, Gilbertus de Clare, aliique nonnulli. Exercitus etiam Francorum, rege suo infirmato, ingravescenteque penuria victualium, ad propria remeavit. King Henry crosses over, to aid the Count de Marche against the King of France. Battle near Saintes, and retreat of Henry.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo tertio, Henricus, Rex Angliæ, munitiones quasdam in Wasconia, rebellantes, subegit: inter quas erat castrum de Viterna. Henry takes the Castle of Verrines, in Gascoigne, A.D. 1243.

Templarii in Acon, Hospitalarios etiam persequentes crudeliter, treugas cum Soldano Babyloniæ, per Ricardum, fratrem Regis Angliæ, initas, in eorum infregerunt odium; cum Soldanis aliis, ut dicitur, fœdere sociati. The Templars, at Acre, break the truce made by the Earl of Cornwall.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo quarto, David, Princeps Walliæ, [1][Regis Angliæ] ex sorore nepos, Innocentio Papæ suggessit, principatum Walliæ ad Ecclesiæ Romanæ feodum pertinere, seque de Rege Suggestion made to the Pope, by David, the Welch Prince.

[1] Omitted in MS.; supplied from Trivet.

A.D. 1244. Angliæ tenere compulsum injuste. Propter quod, scripsit Summus Pontifex Abbati de Abertoun super hoc negotio. De quo plenius informatus, sub dissimulatione transivit.

The Saracens defeat the Christians, and destroy Jerusalem and the Holy Sepulchre.

Soldanus Babyloniæ, super treuga interrupta graviter indignatus, conductis Corasinis, qui inter Sarazenos pugnatiores putantur, Christianos bello aggreditur, ac de eis multitudinem magnam cruentissima cæde stravit. In quo prœlio, tam Prior Hospitalis, quam Magister Militiæ Templi, ab hostibus captivantur, Saracenique civitatem Ierusalem, Sepulcrumque Dominicum, destruxerunt.

Birth of Prince Edmund.

Natus est Regi filius secundus, et dictus est "Edmundus."

Council held at Lyons, A.D. 1245.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo quinto, Innocentius Papa celebravit Concilium apud Lugdunum; ad quod missi sunt per Regem Angliæ, de consilio Prælatorum, Comitum, et Baronum, viri nobiles quatuor, dato eis advocato, Magistro Willelmo de Powyk, ut concessioni Regis Johannis de censu annuo pro Anglia et Hibernia contradicerent, eo quod de regni assensu non processerat, sed et per Cantuariensem Archiepiscopum fuerit reclamatum, vice totius regni. Sed Papa, hoc indigere morosa deliberatione respondens, negotium posuit in suspenso.

Ineffectual attempt to release England from the tribute to Rome.

Complaint of the clergy, of the Italians taking the revenues of the Church.

Prælati Angliæ, hoc anno, conquesti sunt Regi de oppressione Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, cujus fere proventus omnes, et redditus, Italici occupabant. Propter quod, Magistro Martino, Domini Papæ consanguineo, qui major inter cæteros, aliorumque tutor in hujusmodi negotiis, videbatur, et defensor, ut regnum indilate evacuet, regio mandatur edicto.

Master Martin is expelled.

Richard, Earl of Cornwall, marries Sanchia of Navarre.

Ricardus, frater Regis Angliæ, defuncta priore uxore, Isabella, relicta quondam Gilberti de Clara, de qua filium genuerat, "Henricum" nomine, tertiam filiam Comitis Provinciæ, nomine [1] Senchiam, accepit uxorem.

[1] *Seuchiam* in ed. Camden.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo sexto, Beatus Edmundus, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, ab Innocentio canonizatur Lugduni. A.D. 1246. Canonization of Edmund, Abp. of Canterbury.

Karolus, frater Regis Franciæ, Andegavensium obtinet civitatem. Capture of Angers.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo septimo, Ecclesia Anglicana, pro relevamine status sui, undecim millia marcarum Domino Papæ solvit. Payment by the English Church to the Pope. A.D. 1247.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo octavo, Rex Franciæ, in Terram Sanctam proficiscens, et per Lugdunum transiens, a Domino Papa litteras prohibitorias ad Regem Angliæ, ne terras suas inquietaret, peregrinationis tempore, impetravit. The King of France obtains letters prohibitory from the Pope, A.D. 1248.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quadragesimo nono, passus Dominicus, per quemdam Fratrem de Ordine Prædicatorum allatus in Angliam, repositus est in Conventu Ordinis ejusdem apud Bristollum. Quem Rex Henricus, a Fratribus præsentatum, contulit Ecclesiæ Westmonasteriensi, ubi usque in præsens in veneratione habetur. Imprint of the Lord's footstep, brought into England, and deposited at Westminster, A.D. 1249.

Rex Francorum cepit Damiatam, et in ea æstatem peregit; mense vero Novembri procedens ad civitatem Massoram, eam obsedit, ubi de exercitu Christiano per Saracenos plurimi occiduntur. The King of France takes Damietta; and besieges Mansourah.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo, Rex Francorum, exercitu suo in obsidione Massoræ peste laborante, et fame, dum Damiatam revertitur, superveniente Sarazenorum exercitu, in itinere captus est, cum duobus fratribus suis, Alphonso, Pictavensi, et Karolo, Andegavensi, Comitibus, multisque aliis viris nobilibus. The King of France is taken by the Saracens, A.D. 1250.

Robertus vero, Attrabatensis Comes, tertius frater Regis, submergitur fugiendo. Multi etiam prœlio decertando occiduntur; de quorum numero erat Willelmus de Longa Spata, Comes Saresbiriensis, qui viriliter dimicando cecidit, aggravata manu hostium super eum. Robert, Count of Artois, is drowned; William, Earl of Salisbury, slain.

Abbatissa de Lakok, fœmina magnæ sanctitatis, quæ mater erat Willelmi de Longa Spata, nocte præcedente diem quo filius ejus interfectus est, vidit cœlos apertos, Dream of the Abbess of Lacok, mother of

A.D. 1250. Earl William.

et filium suum armatum, ab angelis elevatum, cum gaudio introire. Hujus Willelmi [1] filiam unicam, et hæredem, duxit Henricus de Lacy, Comes Lincolniæ, Saresbiriensem, cum eadem, accipiens Comitatum.

The King of France is liberated, on ransom.

Rex Francorum, procurante Regina Blanca, matre ejus, cui custodiam reliquerat, dato pretio, et restituta Damiata Sarazenis, liberatur, una cum fratribus et aliis concaptivis. Qui, remissis in Franciam fratribus, transfretavit in Acon; cujus muros, ac civitatum Joppæ et Sidonis, reparans, in terra illa per quinquennium moram fecit.

Remains five years in the Holy Land.

The shepherds of France unite, to fight the Saracens; but are dispersed at Bourges, A.D. 1251.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo primo, pastores in Francia, coadunata multitudine, dicebant se [2] Angelica visione monitos, ut proficiscerentur in Terram Sanctam, contra Sarazenos et incredulos pugnaturi. Transeuntes vero Parisius, venerunt Bituricas, ubi suborta discordia, cum civibus fit conflictus, et, multis occisis, reliqui disperguntur.

Cardinals ordered to wear red hats, A.D. 1252.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo secundo, Papa Innocentius statuit ut Cardinales capellis rubeis uterentur.

The kingdom of Apulia offered to the Earl of Cornwall by the Pope.

Magister Albericus, Domini Papæ Notarius, mittitur ab eodem ad Ricardum, fratrem Regis Angliæ, offerens ei regnum Apuliæ, quo privaverat Fredericum, una cum Imperio. Sed Ricardo Comite negotium differente, supervenienteque cito post morte Papæ, non est res sortita effectum.

Long absence of rain.

A primo die Martii usque ad Assumptionem Beatæ Mariæ, in Anglia, nulla cecidit pluvia super terram.

Two Charters granted by King Henry, A.D. 1253.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo tertio, Henricus, Rex Angliæ, ad instantiam Prælatorum, Comitum, et Baronum, Chartas duas, unam de Libertatibus, quæ "Magna," et aliam, quæ dicitur "De Foresta," concessit.

---

[1] His grand-daughter, according to Nicolas's *Synopsis of the Peerage.*

[2] *Anglica* in ed. Camden.

In partibus Angliæ quæ [1]dicuntur "Holand et "Holdernesse," alluvione maris insolita, magna terræ portio, cum domibus, et earum inhabitatoribus, est deleta. A.D. 1253. Incursion of the sea, in Lincolnshire.

Moritur Robertus, Episcopus Lincolniensis, qui cognominatus est a pluribus "Grossum Caput." Death of Robert Grosteste.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo quarto, Henricus, Rex Angliæ, cum Regina Alienora, transfretans in Wasconiam, Edwardum, filium suum primogenitum, cum jam esset annorum quindecim, transmisit ad Aldefonsum, Regem Castellæ, ut cum nobili puella, Alienora, ejusdem Regis sorore, iniret connubium. Quem Aldefonsus Rex, ad civitatem Hispaniæ, quæ vulgo "Bures" dicitur, venientem, cum gaudio et honore suscipiens, militaribus armis cinxit; et, nuptiarum celebratis solemniis, valde honoratum, cum uxore, ad patrem remisit. Prince Edward married to Alianor, daughter of Alfonso, King of Castille, A.D. 1254.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo quinto, Comites et Barones Angliæ, assentientibus prælatis, denunciari fecerunt per singulos Comitatus, ut Chartæ de Libertatibus et de Foresta inviolabiliter observentur. Ad quorum instantiam, Archiepiscopus Bonifacius de Sabaudia, Reginæ Angliæ consanguineus, sententiam excommunicationis tulit in omnes earum spontaneos transgressores. The Barons cause notice to be given for the observance of the Charters of Liberties and the Forest, A.D. 1255.

Lewlinus, Princeps Walliæ, cum manu valida, intravit Comitatum Cestriæ, quem Rex nuper Edwardo, filio suo, contulerat, et omnia cæde atque incendio, usque ad portas urbis Cestriæ, devastavit, et fecit hominum magnam stragem. Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, ravages the County of Chester.

Hoc anno, puer quidam Christianus, nomine "Hugo," a Judæis Lincolniæ captus est, et, in opprobrium Christi nominis, crudeliter crucifixus. Hugh, a boy, is crucified by the Jews.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo sexto, Alexander, Papa, Magistrum Willelmum de Sancto Condemnation by Pope

[1] *dicitur* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1256. Alexander IV. of an opponent of the Mendicant Orders. His book burnt.

Amore, Canonicum Belvacensem, suumque Capellanum, propter persecutionem injuste commotam contra religiosos Mendicantes, et præcipue Prædicatores, [1] Anagniæ condemnavit, privans eum capellanatu suo, et omni beneficio ecclesiastico, habito et habendo. Libellum etiam, [2] [quem] "De Mundi Periculis" intitulavit, in quo contra Ordines pauperum multipliciter invehit, reprobans in ecclesia cathedrali comburi fecit, excommunicans omnes qui retinent librum illum. Cæteros etiam Magistros, per dictum Willelmum concitatos, coegit Fratres ad pacem recipere, et secundum legem caritatis tractare.

Richard, Earl of Cornwall, crowned King of the Romans, A.D. 1257. Gifts to Prince Edward.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo septimo, Ricardus, frater Regis Angliæ, Comes Cornubiæ, in Alemanniam transiens, Aquisgrani in Regem Romanorum solemniter coronatur.

Rex Angliæ filio suo, Edwardo, Wasconiam, Hiberniam, villamque Bristolli, dedit.

Enactment of the Provisions of Oxford; various persons refusing their assent thereto, A.D. 1258.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo octavo, Rex Angliæ Parliamentum Oxoniæ convocat; ad quod convenientibus Prælatis, Comitibus, et Baronibus, facta sunt Statuta, quæ usque in præsens "Provisiones Oxoniæ" appellantur. Ad quas inviolabiliter observandas Rex coactus est corporale præstare sacramentum, cum omnibus fere post jurantibus illud idem. Aymerus autem, Wintoniensis electus, Willelmus de Valentiis, Guido et Galfridus de Lizenim, fratres Regis uterini, nolentes jurare cum aliis, discedunt, insequentibus eos aliquibus Baronibus: sed illi, cum equis et armis, mare, versus Gallias, transeunt indilate.

Henry demands of the King of France restitution of his territories.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo quinquagesimo nono, Rex Anglorum, transfretans in Gallias, a Rege Francorum petiit restitutionem terrarum sibi ac patri suo injuste ablatarum per avum ejus, Philippum, et patrem, Lodowicum, et ab ipso injuriose hactenus detentarum.

---

[1] *Anagninæ* in ed. Camden. | [2] Omitted in MS.; corr. from Trivet.

Sed Gallicis multa contra Regem Anglorum alleganti- A.D. 1259.
bus, et specialiter donationem Normanniæ antiquam
non fuisse spontaneam, sed per primum Ducem, Rol- This is re-
lonem, a Rege Francorum vi extortam, nec Regi An- fused; but
glorum tutum videbatur jam prœlio decertare, cum peace is
sui in procinctu essent insurgendi contra eum, pacem made on
subscriptam, quodammodo compulsus, admisit. — So- certain
lutis namque sibi a Rege Francorum trecentis millibus terms.
librarum parvorum Turonensium, promissaque restitu-
tione terrarum ad valorem viginti millium librarum
annui census, omnibus terris in manu Regis Francorum Henry re-
existentibus resignavit plene et pure. Exinde vero nounces his
litterarum suarum abbreviavit titulum, ut nec Ducem right to
Normanniæ, nec Comitem Andegaviæ, deinceps se vo- Normandy
caret. and Anjou.

Repulse of
Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo, Justiciarii the Justi-
Regis Angliæ, qui dicuntur "Itineris," missi Here- ciars Itine-
fordiam pro suo exequendo officio, repelluntur; alle- rant, as
gantibus hiis qui Regi adversabantur, ipsos contra having vio-
formam [1] Provisionum nuper Oxoniæ factarum ve- lated the
nisse. Provisions
of Oxford,
A.D. 1260.

Pope Ur-
Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo primo, Alex- ban IV.
andro Papæ succedit Urbanus, natione Gallicus, de succeeds
civitate Trecensi. Alexan-
der IV.
A.D. 1261.

King Hen-
Rex Angliæ, impetrata a Domino Papa absolutione ry recalls
juramenti quod pro observandis [2] Provisionibus Oxoniæ certain ar-
invitus præstiterat, multos earum articulos publice re- ticles of the
vocavit. Provisions
of Oxford.

Ravages
Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo secundo, committed
Princeps Walliæ, Regis Angliæ adversarius, cœpit in by the
terris Edwardi, filii Regis, cædes et incendia exercere. Welch
Prince,
A.D. 1262.

Prince Ed-
Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo tertio, Ed- ward raises
wardus, filius Regis Angliæ, cum collegisset exercitum troops
copiosum contra Principem Walliæ, et ille, ad nemo- against
rosa et palustria fugiens, copiam pugnæ non faceret, a him, but is
patre suo in Angliam revocatur. recalled,
A.D. 1263.

[1] *Promissionum* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Promissionibus* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1263. Attack made upon the aliens, under Simon, Earl of Leicester. Capture of Peter, Bishop of Hereford.

Simon, Leycestriæ Comes, capitaneus Baronum contra Regem insurgentium factus, prædari cœpit bona Regi adhærentium, et præcipue eorum, qui, Reginæ attinentes, per eam introducti fuerant in Angliam; quos "alienigenas" appellabant. Quidam, Baronum de parte, Herefordensem Episcopum, Petrum, natione Burgundum, in ecclesia sua cathedrali captum, duxerunt ad castrum de Erdesleya, thesaurum suum inter se pariliter dividentes. Deinde, duce Simone, Comite, progreditur exercitus Gloverniam; cujus castri custodia fidelissimo militi, Matthiæ de Bessilles, fuerat per Regem commissa. Occupata villa, cum, castro dantes insultum, Barones portam primam versus urbem confregissent, Matthias, ut sibi essent auxilio, incarceratos dissolvit: quorum proditione, cum ex altera parte castri patefactus esset ingressus, Matthias in turrim confugit; ubi et captus est, et abductus quo volebant. Exinde Comes, Wigorniam accedens, illam cepit; inde Brugiam obsedit, et cepit: deinde proficiscitur Comes ad partes regni australes.

Capture of Bristol, Worcester, and Bridgnorth.

Insult offered to the Queen by the citizens of London.

Rex interim, et Regina, Londoniis morabantur; quæ cum, se transferre volens ad castrum de Wyndeleshores per flumem Tamisii, in scapham ascenderet, multitudo civitatis plebeia, ad pontem sub quo transitura erat congregata, convicia et maledicta confuso clamore congessit, et jactu luti et lapidum ad Turrim reverti coegit.

Peace made, on certain conditions.

Igitur sub istis conditionibus inter Regem et Comitem pax formatur.—Ut, inprimis, Henricus, Regis Alemanniæ filius, qui tunc, parti Comiti contra Regem adhærens, captus fuerat, et in custodia detentus, liberetur. Deinde, ut castra Regis omnia, per totam Angliam, Baronum custodiæ traderentur. Item, ut Provisiones Oxoniæ inviolabiliter observentur. Item, quod omnes [1] alienigenæ infra certum tempus regnum eva-

[1] *alieniginæ* in ed. Camden.

cuarent, exceptis hiis, quorum moram fideles de regno unanimi assensu acceptarent. Postremo, ut [1]indigenæ regno fideles, et utiles negotiis regni, de cætero sub Rege disponerent.—Sed hiis non obstantibus, milites quidam de parte Regis castrum de Windeleshores victualibus et armis munierunt. A.D. 1263. Windsor Castle victualled.

Edwardus, filius Regis, ad castrum Bristolli venit; ubi inter milites suos et villanos suborta discordia, avertitur ab eo villa, jam parans obsidionem ponere circa castrum. Quod advertens Edwardus, Walterum, Wigorniensem Episcopum, qui partem Baronum fovit, accersiri fecit, ut in ejus conductu patris adiret Curiam, spondens se patri, et ejus Consilio, ea quæ pacis erant efficaciter suadere. Profectus igitur cum Episcopo, cum appropinquaret castro de Windeleshores, ingressus est illud. Quod suspectum habens Episcopus, male tulit. Comiti autem Simoni, cum suis adhærentibus, volenti castrum obsidere, Edwardus occurrit, quasi media via citra villam de Kingestone, pacis offerens tractatum eidem. Sed Comes, fretus consilio præfati Episcopi Walteri, Edwardum, proposito frustratum, redire volentem, detinuit; redditumque est castrum de Windeleshores Comiti, concessa custodibus ejus ad recedendum cum suis omnibus, quo volebant, libera potestate. Alienigenis etiam volentibus, transito mari, redire ad propria, salvus datur conductus. Disaffection of the people of Bristol. The Bishop of Worcester accompanies Prince Edward to Windsor. The castle is surrendered to the Earl of Leicester.

Leolinus, Princeps Walliæ, Comiti Simoni confœderatus, Comitatum Cestriæ, et Marchiam ejus, interim devastavit, et duo castra Edwardi, Dissard et Gannok, solo tenus complanavit. Llewelyn lays waste the County and March of Chester.

Post hæc, Parliamentum Londoniis convocatur, in quo multi, qui hactenus Comiti adhæserant, ad partem Regis se transferunt; inter quos præcipuus erat, Henricus de Almannia, Ricardi, Regis Romanorum, de A Parliament at London. Henry of Almaine

[1] *indiginæ* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1263. prima uxore filius. Et tunc potestas regia cœpit aliquantulum respirare.

deserts the Earl.

Louis, King of France, offers to arbitrate; but the Earl of Leicester declines the offer,

Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo quarto, Sanctus Lodowicus, Francorum Rex, Anglicani regni desolationi compatiens, procurante Archiepiscopo Bonefacio, qui Regis Angliæ et Comitis Leycestriæ processus et gesta declaravit coram Rege et omni populo, in concordatorem amicabilem, pacisque arbitrum, se venire promisit. Sed Comes Leycestriæ, se subtrahens, pacis

A.D. 1264. negotium conquassavit. Ex tunc ergo cœpit Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, in rebus bellicis miles expertus, Comitis Leycestriæ dominica deprædari. Contra quem Comes, adjuncto sibi Principe Walliæ, progressus, castrum de Radenore obsedit, et cepit.

Roger de Mortimer spoils his demesnes.

Prince Edward takes certain castles of the Earl of Hereford.

Edwardus, filius Regis Angliæ, de Parisius regressus, quo transfretaverat, ad parendum arbitrationi Regis Franciæ, si Comes adfuisset, castra Comitis Herefordiæ, Hay et Huntendone, cepit. Castrum vero Breconiæ, sibi redditum, Rogero de Mortuo Mari custodiendum tradidit, cum territorio adjacenti; multaque mala facta sunt utrobique.

The castle of Brecknock surrendered to him.

King Henry visits St. Frideswide's, at Oxford.

Henricus Rex de Francia rediit, et personaliter adivit Oxoniam, orationis gratia, ad Sanctam Fredeswidam. Armatus nempe fide recta, non veritus est superstitiosam opinionem illorum qui putant illicitum regibus villam intrare, ultionem in eos virgine exercente. Ad quem cum venisset Edwardus, filius ejus, coadunato exercitu, disposuit hostes in manu valida propulsare. Interim, Londonienses, Justiciarios Regis, ac Barones de Scaccario, capientes, carceri mancipa-

Superstitious notion as to such visits.

The Justiciars imprisoned by the Londoners.

runt.

Names of the chief adherents of King Henry.

Rex vero, habens secum illustres principes, Ricardum, germanum suum, Regem Alemanniæ, et filium suum, Edwardum, Willelmumque de Valentiis, fratrem uterinum, clarissimosque milites, Johannem Comyn, de Scotia, cum multitudine Scotorum, Johannem de Balliolo, Dominum Galwidiæ, Robertum de Brus, dominum

de Valle Anandiæ, Rogerum de Clifforde, Philippum [1] Marmioun, Johannem de Vallibus, Rogerum de Leiborne, Henricum Percey, Philippum Basset, Rogerum de Mortuo Mari, cum exercitu progrediens, villam Northamptoniæ obsedit et cepit, et in illa milites vexilliferos quindecim, scilicet, Simonem [2] juniorem, Willelmum de Ferrariis, Petrum de Monte Forti, Baldewinum Wake, Adam de Novo Mercato, Rogerum Bertrandi, Simonem filium Simonis, qui primo vexillum contra Regem erexerat, Berengarium de Watervyle, Hugonem [3] Gubiun, Thomam Mansel, Rogerum Butevileyn, Nicholaum Wake, Robertum de Newintone, Philippum de Driby, Grimbaldum [4] Paunsevout; de quibus Simonem [5] juniorem ad castrum de Windeleshores, reliquos ad alia castra, transmisit captivos. Capti sunt et milites minoris gradus circiter quadraginta, scutiferique non pauci. Perrexit inde Rex versus [6] Notingham, maneria Baronum cæde vastans, et incendiis; ubi auctus est suorum numerus vehementer. Tandem illatis hinc inde multis malis, pervenit ad Lewes, ubi Rex ipse receptus est in Prioratu, et filius ejus in castro.

A.D. 1264.

Northampton is taken, with many supporters of the Earl of Leicester.

The King proceeds to Nottingham; and to Lewes.

Appropinquantes Comites et Barones ad villam de Lewis in manu armata, regios satellites, qui pro quæritando equorum pabulo egressi fuerant, invadentes, plurimos peremerunt. Præmonitus ergo Rex de adventu repentino Comitum et Baronum, obviam pergit cum exercitu, in tres partes [7] diviso; quarum primæ præerat Edwardus, Regis primogenitus, cum Willelmo de Valentiis, Penbrochiæ, et Johanne de Warenna, Surreyæ et Southsexiæ, Comitibus: secundæ, Rex Alemanniæ, cum filio suo, Henrico: tertiæ vero, Rex ipse Henricus. Baronum vero acies in quatuor divisa erat acies; quarum primæ Henricus de Monte Forti,

Many of the King's scouts are slain, while foraging.

His army is divided into three parts.

That of the Barons into four.

---

[1] *Marmioumy* in ed. Camden.
[2] *minorem* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Gubins* in ed. Camden.
[4] *Pauosuont* in ed. Camden.
[5] *minorem* in ed. Camden.
[6] *Nortingham* in ed. Camden.
[7] *deviso* in ed Camden.

A.D. 1264. Battle fought at Lewes.

cum Comite Herefordiæ; secundæ, Gilbertus de Clare, cum Johanne filio Johannis, et Willelmo de Monte [1] Canusii; tertiæ, in qua erant Londonienses, Nicholaus de Segrave; quartæ, ipse Comes Simon, cum Thoma de Pelvestone, præfuerunt. Edwardus igitur, et acies sua, cum tanto impetu in hostes irruit, ut eos retrocedere cogeret; quorum multi submersi sunt, usque ad numerum sexaginta militum, ut quidam dicunt. Londonienses etiam in fugam versi sunt; quos dum Edwardus insequitur ad spatium quatuor milliarium, gravissimam cædem inferendo, a reliquo exercitu separatus, diminuit robur ejus. Interim de acie Regis occisi sunt plurimi, captique, Rex Alemanniæ, Robertus de Brus, et Johannes Comyn, qui Scotos adduxerant. Rex etiam Henricus, dextrario ejus occiso, captus, et in Prioratu, adhibita custodia, est reclusus. Reversus Edwardus, gravi prœlio excipitur, fugeruntque Comes Warennæ, Willelmus de Valentiis, Guido de Liziniaco, fratres Regis uterini, Hugo Bigod, cum militia quæ ad quadringentos loricatos ascendit, omnes ad castrum de Peveneseye tendentes.

Early success of Prince Edward in the battle.

Flight of the Londoners.

King Henry and his brother are taken prisoners.

Flight of the King's supporters.

Cum autem et hinc et inde multi corruissent, Edwardus, villam circuiens, cum patrem non invenisset in castro, Prioratum ingressus, pervenit ad eum. Interim dato insultu ad castrum, cum inclusi viriliter se defenderent, subtrahunt se Barones. Edwardus, audacia castrensium animatus, recollectis suis, voluit iterum prœliari. Quo cognito, miserunt Barones mediatores pacis, promittentes se in crastino velle de pace tractare cum effectu.

The royal troops in the castle hold out.

Message sent by the Barons to Prince Edward.

In crastino, discurrentibus inter partes Fratribus Prædicatoribus et Minoribus, sic actum est, ut, feria sexta sequente, Edwardus et Henricus pro patribus suis, Regibus Angliæ et Alemanniæ, se Comiti Simoni traderent, sub spe pacis et quietis; ita ut cum delibe-

The Princes, Edward and Henry, surrender to the Earl, in place

[1] *Camisii* in ed. Camden.

ratione tractaretur, quæ Provisionum et Statutorum essent, pro utilitate regni, tenenda, et quæ delenda; et quod interim hinc inde captivi absque ullo pretio redderentur. Sequenti Sabbato, Rex omnes qui sibi adhæserant licentiavit ad propria; scripsitque, de voluntate Comitis Simonis, hiis qui erant de munitione de Tunbrigge, quod redeuntes ad sua Barones nullatenus molestarent. Sed illi, hoc non obstante, armati procedentes, Londonienses qui de bello fugerunt, receptos apud Croydone, illuc properantes, multis peremptis, eorum spolia abstulerunt. Exinde tendebant usque Bristollum, ubi ad liberationem Edwardi in præsidio remanserunt.[1]

A.D. 1264. of their fathers, respectively.

Slaughter of the Londoners, by the Earl's supporters, at Croydon.

[Comes vero Symon Regem Angliæ, filiumque ejus Edwardum, secum circumduxit, quousque castra terræ fortiora omnia occupasset, et ex tunc ad tractandum de pace, secundum formam præmissam, difficiliorem se exhibuit, eo quod Regem et regnum totum in sua habuit potestate. Denique Ricardum, Regem Romanorum, in Turri Londoniarum, Edwardum vero, et Henricum, Regum filios, in castro Dovoriæ, sub custodia posuit, Regem Angliæ, Henricum, secum continue circumducens.

The Earl manifests a disinclination to make peace.

His prisoners, how disposed of.

Interim milites inclyti, et in armis expertissimi, videlicet, Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, Jacobus de Audeliaco, Rogerus de Leyborne, Rogerus de Clifford, Haymo Extraneus, Hugo de Turberville, cum aliis plurimis, indigne ferentes Regem, regiamque sobolem, sic tractari, unanimi contra Comitem Leicestriæ insurgunt consensu. Ad quorum compescendam audaciam, Comes Symon, associato sibi Principe Walliæ, Lewelino, castrum Herefordiæ intravit, illucque Edwardum captivum de Do-

Rising of certain of the King's supporters against the Earl of Leicester.

Prince Edward is removed

[1] At this point the rest of this year's history and that of the year 1265, with the Battle of Evesham, are omitted (fol. 61). The context is here supplied from the *Annales* of Nicholas Trivet, from whom Walsingham has borrowed this portion of his present compilation.

A.D. 1264. voria transtulit. Deinde castrum Comitis Herefordiæ, quod "Hay" dicitur, recuperavit, et castrum de Lodelawe cepit, devastandoque terras Rogeri de Mortuo Mari, progreditur versus Montem Gomeri; ibique facta pace inter Comitem Symonem et prædictos nobiles, datis ab eis obsidibus, Comes ad partes australes revertitur, ut occurreret militiæ, quæ de partibus Gallicanis, in Regis subsidium, dicebatur ventura.

from Dover to Hereford.

Making terms with certain nobles, the Earl proceeds southward.

Urbanus Papa, turbationi regni Anglicani compatiens, Legatum misit, Dominum Sabinensem Episcopum Cardinalem; qui, Angliam intrare non valens, navigio Quinque Portuum mare occupante, quosdam Episcopos Angliæ ad se, primo Ambianis, deinde Boloniam, evocavit; quibus sententiam excommunicationis et Interdicti, auctoritate Papali, in civitatem Londoniarum et Quinque Portus, omnesque pacem Regis Angliæ turbantes. fulminatam, publicandam, exsequendamque, commisit. Dissimulaverunt nihilominus Episcopi negotium, de cujus causa, non satis certa, diversa varie opinantur.

Pope Urban sends a Legate, the Bishop of Sabina; who pronounces sentence of excommunication against the enemies of King Henry.

Hoc anno apparuit cometa, tam notabilis, ut scribit Frater Martinus, in Chronicis suis, quod nullus tunc vivens talem ante viderit. Ab Oriente enim cum magno fulgore surgens usque ad medium hemisphærii, versus Occidentem, comam perlucidam pertrahebat; et licet in diversis mundi partibus multa forte significaverit, hoc tamen unum pro certo compertum est, ut cum plusquam per tres menses duraverit, ipso primo apparente Papa Urbanus infirmari cœpit, et eadem nocte qua Papa mortuus est cometa disparuit. Obiit autem Perusii, et sepultus est ibidem.

Appearance of a comet.

Death of Pope Urban IV., at the time of its disappearance.

Urbano successit Clemens Quartus, natione Provincialis; qui primo uxorem habens, et filios, famosus fuit advocatus, et consiliarius Regis Francorum. Mortua vero uxore, propter vitam bonam, sanctam, et laudabilem, primo Podiensis Episcopus efficitur, ac deinde Archiepiscopus Narbonensis, tandem ad Cardinalatum assumptus, fit Episcopus Sabinensis; qui, cum a Papa

Succession of Pope Clement IV.

Particulars of his previous life.

Urbano missus fuisset Legatus in Angliam pro pacis reformatione, absens electus est in Papam. A.D. 1264.

Clarent his temporibus Parisiis doctores eximii, Frater Thomas de Aquino, inter Prædicatores, Bonaventura, inter Minores. Thomas Aquinas, and Bonaventura.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo quinto, inter Comites, Leicestriæ, Symonem, et Gloverniæ, Gilebertum, hac occasione dicitur suborta simultas. Comes enim Leicestriæ non est contentus Regem Angliæ a se captivum detineri, verum castra regia in ditionem propriam accepit, disponens pro libitu suo regnum totum, et, (quod præcipue offendebat), proventus regni, redemptiones captivorum, emolumentaque alia, quæ inter eos æqua sorte, secundum conventionis formam, dividi debebant, sibi soli totaliter vindicabat. A filiis quoque ejus, in superbiam erectis, contemptui videbatur haberi. Super his per Comitem Gilebertum requisitus, rogatusque ut Regem Alemanniæ, quosdamque alios captivos nobiles, per ipsum et suos in bello captos, sibi redderet, cum leviter respondisset, inchoata discordia radicitus est firmata. Discedens quippe cum indignatione, Comes Gilebertus milites nobiles de Marchia, quorum supra facta est mentio, quos jam Comes Symon, edicto publico, regnum evacuare jusserat, accersitos fœdere sibi jungit. Auxerunt eorum societatem Joannes de Warenna, Surreyæ et Sussexiæ, et Willelmus de Valentiis, Penbrochiæ, Comites, in Occidentales partes Walliæ per mare devecti, et Penbrochiæ applicantes.

Discord arises between the Earls of Leicester and Gloucester, A.D. 1265.

Reasons thereof.

The Earl of Gloucester allies himself with certain nobles, banished by order of the Earl of Leicester.

Comes Symon, Regem secum ducens, Herfordiam proficiscitur, collecta manu valida, prædictos milites potenter disponens opprimere. Interim per quosdam elaboratum est prælatos, ut Comites Leicestriæ et Gloverniæ ad pristinam reducerentur unitatem; sed nihil proficere potuerunt. Dum autem hæc aguntur, Edwardus, filius Regis, in castro Herfordiæ sub custodia detentus, equorum cursu se exercere in prato quodam extra urbem a custodibus permittitur, gratia spatiandi;

Ineffectual attempts made to reconcile them.

Prince Edward escapes from Hereford.

A.D. 1265. qui, tentatis pluribus et currendo fatigatis, tandem unum, quem electum sciebat, ascendens, dextrarium urgensque eum calcaribus, custodibus valedixit, transitoque flumine quod "Wey" dicitur, cum duobus militibus et quatuor scutiferis, propositi sui consciis, versus castrum de Wiggemor dirigit iter suum. Insequentes vero eum custodes, cum vidissent vexilla Dominorum Rogeri de Mortuo Mari et Rogeri de Clifford, Edwardo, in salutis præsidium, occurrentium, delusi Herfordiam revertuntur. Factum est istud in hebdomada Pentecostes, consilio et industria militum prædictorum.

He is met by Roger de Mortimer and Roger de Clifford.

Edward raises a great army.

Edwardus, igitur, a custodia liberatus, coadunato exercitu magno, multis ad eum confluentibus, Comitatus Herfordensem, Wigorniensem, Salopiensem, Cestrensem, suæ parti confœderat, et subjicit, cum pagis et villis, civitatibus et castellis; villam etiam Gloverniæ, quam nuper Comes Symon optime munierat, expugnavit, et cepit, fugientibus ad castrum custodibus; qui, post dies quindecim, reddito castro, et præstito juramento quod contra Edwardum arma de cætero non portarent, liberi dimittuntur. Comes vero Leicestriæ castrum Monumetæ, quod Comes Gloverniæ nuper ceperat, et munierat, coactis ad deditionem custodibus, ad solum prostravit; ingressusque terram ejusdem Comitis, quæ "Glomorgancia" dicitur, occurrente sibi Principe Walliæ in subsidium, omnia vastavit incendio atque cæde. Interim vero, Edwardus, audiens quod multi de parte Comitis Symonis ad castrum quod "Kenilworth" dicitur, confluerent, adjuncto sibi Comite Gloverniæ, sero de Wigornia illuc tendens, citatoque gradu subito superveniens, cepit Comitem Oxoniæ, cum militibus vexilliferis circiter tredecim, antequam castrum essent ingressi, in quo se jam receperat Symon, Comitis Symonis filius.

Takes the town of Gloucester, and the castle.

The Earl of Leicester levels Monmouth Castle.

Prince Edward takes the Earl of Oxford.

Earl Simon, with King Henry,

Symon, Comes Leicestriæ, Regem semper habens in sua comitiva, de Australi Wallia reversus, in festo Sancti Petri ad Vincula venit ad manerium Wigorni-

ensis Episcopi, quod "Kemeseya" dicitur, et ibidem in crastino morabatur. Edwardus de Kenilworth rediit Wigorniam, quæ a prædicto manerio distat milliaribus tantum tribus. Cujus adventu cognito, Comes Symon, cum Rege, in ipso noctis crepusculo discedens, in oppido quod "Evesham" dicitur, fato substitit infelici. In crastino namque, qui erat dies Inventionis Sancti Stephani, Edwardus, movens se de Wigornia, transito fluvio juxta oppidum quod dicitur "Clive," viam Comiti versus filium, qui erat in castro de Kenilworthe, filiique ad patrem, cum suo exercitu interclusit. In crastino vero appropinquavit oppido Eveshamiæ ex parte una, veneruntque ex duabus partibus aliis Comes Gloverniæ, cum acie sua, et Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, cum sua turma; ita ut Comes Leicestriæ, undique conclusus, necesse habuerit vel se spontanee dedere, vel cum istis prœlio decertare.

A.D. 1265. comes to Kemeseye.

Earl Simon moves to Evesham.

Prince Edward is joined there by the Earl of Gloucester, and Roger de Mortimer.

Feria igitur sexta, quæ Nonis Augusti contigit, occurrunt sibi ambo exercitus in campo extra oppidum spatioso; ubi gravissimo conserto prœlio, cœpit pars Comitis succumbere; qui, aggravato super eum pondere prœlii, ibidem cecidit interfectus. Ceciderunt in ea pugna milites vexilliferi duodecim, videlicet, Henricus, filius ejus, Petrus de Monte Forti, Hugo de Dispensariis, Justiciarius Angliæ, Willelmus de Maundevilla, Radulphus Basseth, Walterus de Crepynge, Willelmus de Eboraco, Robertus de Treggoz, Thomas de Hostele, Johannes de Bello Campo, Guido de Balliolo, Rogerus de Roules: alii quoque minoris gradus in multitudine magna, cum scutiferorum et peditum, et maxime Gallensium, numero excessivo.

The Earl of Leicester is defeated at Evesham, and slain.

Knights bannerets slain.

Slaughter also of the Welch.

Edwardus, potitus victoria, monachis illius loci, post prœlium, mandavit, ut corpora defunctorum, et præcipue majorum, decenter humari curarent. Interfuit autem personaliter exequiis Henrici de Monte Forti, quem pater ejus, Rex, de fonte sacro levaverat, et ipse, secum nutritum a puero familiariter, dilexerat; cujus etiam funeri dicitur lacrymas impendisse.

Prince Edward orders burial of the slain.

Shews sorrow for the death of Henry de Montfort.

A.D. 1265. The King summons a Parliament, at Winchester.

Denique triumphatis hostibus, Rex, potestati regiæ restitutus, Wintoniam, de consilio filii, victoris, aliorumque, Parliamentum convocat, in Nativitate Virginis gloriosæ; ubi inito consilio, civitatem Londoniarum, ob suam rebellionem, privavit omnibus privilegiis libertatibusque antiquis, capitaneosque factionis contra Regem, juxta voluntatem suam, plectendos, jubet carceri mancipari. In Festo vero Sancti Edwardi Regis, omnes qui contra dominum suum, Regem, cum Comite Symone steterant, edicto publico exhæredantur; quorum mox terras Rex illis qui sibi fideliter adhæserant contulit, pensatis meritis singulorum. Exhæredati vero, coadunantes se, passim deprædationes et incendia exercebant.

Adopts severe measures against the City of London.

Depredations committed by those who are disherisoned.

Eodem anno, Ottobonus, Tituli Sancti Adriani Diaconus Cardinalis, a Domino Papa, Clemente, Legatus in Angliam destinatur. Carolus, frater Regis Francorum, Romam navigio devectus, a Domino Papa, Clemente, in Regem Siciliæ coronatur. Multitudo Gallicorum, crucesignata contra Manfredum, habens capitaneos, Guidonem, Autissiodorensem Episcopum, et Robertum, filium Comitis Flandrensis, et Bocardum, Comitem Vindemiensem, in subsidium Caroli, Romam pervenit.

Cardinal Ottoboni is sent as Legate, to England.

Charles crowned King of Sicily. Crusade in support of him.

Hoc anno, Dominica ante bellum Eveshamiæ, multitudo Wallensium, Somersetiam deprædatura, capitaneum habens Willelmum de Berkele, militem nobilem, sed malefactis famosum, apud Mineheued, juxta castrum de Dunnestore, applicuit; quibus occurrens custos castri, dictus "Adam Gurdun," plurimos occidit gladio, plurimosque, cum eorum capitaneo, compellens in fugam, demergi coegit.][1]

Defeat of an expedition of the Welch, under William de Berkele, into Somerset.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo sexto, castrum Doveriæ redditum est Edwardo, in quod Guidonem de Monte Forti transtulit, sub custodia detinendum. Cujus custos, corruptus, ipsum post Pascha liberum dimisit, mare transiens cum eodem. Guido vero, partes

Dover Castle is taken by Prince Edward; and Guido de Montfort confined there, A.D. 1266.

[1] See Note in page 155 *ante*.

Tusciæ adiens, adhæsit Rufo Comiti; cujus favorem, propter militiæ probitatem, in tantum adeptus est, ut filiam suam, et hæredem, sibi daret in conjugem. Simon vero, frater ejus senior, paulo ante, tempore Quadragesimali evadens e carcere, transfugit in Gallias. A.D. 1266. Guido escapes, to Tuscany. Simon escapes, to France.

Rex in singulis civitatibus capitaneum unum constituit, qui, una cum Vicecomite, prædonum—qui plurimum abundabant—violentias coerceret. A captain appointed for each city.

In Vigilia Pentecostes, Robertus de Ferrariis, Comes de Derby, captus est per milites regios, sociis, quos ad prædandum acciverat, per fugam dispersis. Capture of Robert de Ferrers.

Exhæredatorum quidam, insulam de Axiholm occupantes, per dominum Edmundum, fratrem Regis, ad deditionem coguntur. Surrender by the disherisoned, at Axiholm.

Miles quidam in partibus [1] Wintoniæ, Adam, dictus cognomento "Gurdoun," exhæredatus cum cæteris qui Simoni Comiti adhæserant, ad pacem Regis venire renuens, juxta viam inter villam de Aultone et castrum de Fernham, locum, scilicet, prædonibus opportunum, cum suis resedit, patriam rapinis infestans, et [2] præcipue terras illorum qui parti regiæ adhærebant. Cujus vires et probitatem, ex fama cognitas, Edwardus, Regis filius, experiri cupiens, cum manu forti supervenisset eidem, se ad pugnam præparanti, præcepit Edwardus, ne quis inter eos impediret singulare certamen. Congressi itaque mutuos ictus ingeminant, parique sorte, neutro cedente alteri, diutius dimicant. Delectatus tandem Edwardus virtute militis, inter pugnandum consuluit, ut se redderet, vitam pollicens, et fortunam. Cui miles adquiescens, abjectis armis, se illico reddidit; quem eadem nocte Gildefordiam Edwardus transmisit, regiæ Majestati, cum recommendatione supplici, præsentandum. Quem, expost hæreditati restitutum, Edwardus semper carum habuit, atque fidum. Single combat between Prince Edward and Adam Gurdoun. Gurdoun yields, and is received into Edward's favour.

[1] *Windon* in ed. Camden. [2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1266. The King besieges certain of the disherisoned in the Castle of Kenelwurth.

Eodem anno, multi de exhæredatis, castrum de Kenelwurth ingressi, victualibus munierunt, et armis, disponentes defendere illud contra Regem. Rex, illuc properans, in crastino Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, obsidionem posuit circa castrum. Qua durante, Rex duodecim personas fecit eligi, quibus commisit, ut, providendo paci Regis et regni, in exhæredatos sententiam moderarent, jurejurando spondens, se eorum ordinationem per omnia servaturum. Convenientes igitur personæ electæ apud Coventreiam, unanimi decreverunt assensu, ut exhæredati pœna pecuniaria suas hæreditates redimerent, ab hiis qui eas occupaverant dono Regis; ita tamen, quod hæc redemptio proventus hæreditatum in septennium non excederet, nec unius anni proventibus minor esset; sed inter hos taxaretur terminos, secundum quantitatem delicti. Ab hac tamen redemptione filii Simonis Comitis, et Robertus, Comes Derbeyæ, quorum exhæredationem censuerunt fore perpetuam, excluduntur. Qui autem modo prætaxato mulctandi, pecuniam sic taxatam, id est, redemptionem, solvere nequirent, terras suas in manu possessorum relinquerent, quousque de earum fructibus redemptio levaretur.

Enactment made as to redemption of their lands by the disherisoned.

Surrender of the Castle of Kenelwurth.

Castrum de Kenelwurthe ante Natale Regi Angliæ redditum est, penuria victualium compellente; vita et membris, et supellectili necessaria, hiis qui tenuerant illud salvis.

Certain of the disherisoned establish themselves in the Isle of Ely, A.D. 1267.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo septimo, quidam exhæredatorum in Anglia, non ferentes ordinationem de redemptione hæreditatum, apud Kenelwurthe factam, quorum princeps et capitaneus erat Johannes de Eyvyle, cum cepissent civitatem Lincolniæ, et spoliassent Judaismum, mediamnem insulam Eliensem occupant contra Regem. Quorum egressum et impetum cum Rex plurimum impendisset, Edwardus, filius Regis, factis ex cratibus et tabulis pontibus in locis opportunis, prout eum incolæ regionis illius instruxerant, insulam, cum

Prince Edward effects an entry.

suis militibus, est ingressus. Cui quidam se dediderunt, aliis fugiendo dispersis. A.D. 1267.

Dum hæc aguntur, Comes Gloverniæ, infidus Regi, collecto exercitu in Wallia in favorem exhæredatorum, Londonias adiit, et occurrente sibi Johanne de Eyvile, cum magna manu complicium suorum, civitatem, faventibus civibus, occupavit; moxque Legato, qui Turrim pro hospitio habuit, mandavit Comes per nuncios, ut eam sibi redderet indilate. Et ut hoc maturaret facere, interdixit ne quis sibi victualia venderet quovismodo. Legatus, dissimulato negotio, a Turri discedens, prædicaturus Crucem, procedit ad ecclesiam Sancti Pauli.

The Earl of Gloucester opposes the King.

He enters London, and expels the Legate from the Tower.

Post paucos dies, Comes Regi reconciliatur, per mediationem Ricardi, Regis Romanorum, ac illustris militis, Philippi Basset; posita pœna decem millium marcarum, si Comes in posterum aliquem tumultum commoveret.

The Earl is reconciled to the King.

Circa festum Sancti Michaelis, Rex, cum magno exercitu, venit Salopiam, contra Principem Lewlinum, qui partem Comitis foverat contra Regem. At ille, missa legatione, rogavit ea quæ pacis sunt, concedens Regi triginta duo millia librarum sterlingorum pro pace habenda. Sicque, interveniente Legato Ottobono, restituta est Principi terra Quatuor Cantredorum, quam Rex ei abstulerat, jure belli.

Peace made between the King and Prince Llewelyn.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo octavo, Ottobonus Legatus, Londoniis convocans Concilium, multa statuit ad reformationem Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ. Non multo post, Crucesignatis apud Norhamptonam filiis Regis, Edwardo et Edmundo, ac Comite Gloverniæ, cum multis nobilibus, ad Curiam est reversus.

Reforms in the English Church enacted by the Legate, A.D. 1278.

Edwardus Sancto Lodowico, Francorum Regi, impignorat Wasconiam, accipiens ab eo pecuniam necessariam pro itinere Terræ Sanctæ.

Prince Edward pledges Gascoigne.

Corpus Beati Edwardi, Regis et Confessoris, instante Rege Angliæ, in feretrum aureum, quod ei paraverat, est translatum.

The body of Edward the Confessor translated.

A.D. 1268. Alan la Souche slain by John de Warenne, The Statutes of Marleberge.

Johannes de Warenna, Comes Surreyæ, Alanum la Souche, Regis Justiciarium, in Aula Westmonasteriensi, subortis inter eos verbis, manu propria interfecit.

Hoc anno, Rex Angliæ, in Octavis Sancti Martini, Parliamentum tenuit apud Marleberge; in quo, de assensu Comitum et Baronum, edita sunt Statuta, quæ "De "Marleberge" vocantur.

Louis, King of France, again sets out for the Holy Land, A.D. 1269.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo nono, Sanctus Lodowicus, Rex Francorum, non territus præteritis laboribus et expensis quas fecerat ultra mare magnum, iterato, cum filiis duobus, adjuncto sibi Rege Navarriæ, et quamplurimis ecclesiarum prælatis et baronibus, pro recuperatione Terræ Sanctæ iter Ierosolymitanum capere maturavit. Verum ad hoc, ut Terra Sancta facilius recuperaretur, incidit illis consilium, ut Tunicium regnum, quod, in medio consistens, non parvum dabat transfretantibus impedimentum, primitus Christianorum subjicerent potestati. Applicantes igitur in regno, Tunicii portum, et Carthaginem, ad parvum redactum oppidum, juxta Tunicium, de facili occuparunt.

He takes the port of Tunis.

Prince Edmund marries the daughter of William de Albamarle.

Her early death.

Hoc anno, sexto Idus Aprilis, Edmundus, filius Regis, duxit uxorem filiam Willelmi de Albamarle, Comitis de Holdernesse, nomine "Avelinam," quæ hæres erat hæreditatis, et etiam, maternæ; cujus ratione, Comitatum Devoniæ et Vectæ Insulæ dominium fuerat habiturus. Sed, cum tota prole, mortem parentum prævenit.

Princes Edward and Edmund set out for the Holy Land, A.D. 1270.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo, Edwardus, filius Regis Angliæ, cum Edmundo, germano suo, aliisque nobilibus pluribus, iter peregrinationis in Terram Sanctam arripuit, mense Maio.

Death of King Louis.

Mense vero Augusto, invalescente peste in exercitu Christiano, multi mortis debitum persolverunt. Inter quos, Beatus Lodowicus, Francorum Rex Christianissimus, in crastino Sancti Bartholomæi Apostoli, de regno temporali transiit ad æternum.

Edwardus, filius Regis Angliæ, cum sua comitiva, salvus pervenit Tunicium; ubi licentiato consanguineo suo, Henrico de Alemannia, volente redire in Angliam, vela sua direxit in Acon, illucque, post quindenam Paschæ, devenit. Quo nisi advenisset, infra quartum diem ab adventu suo, fuisset, ut dicebatur, urbs reddita Saracenis. A.D. 1270. Prince Edward arrives at Tunis; and at Acre, which is rescued from the Saracens.

Quidam mercatores Veneti, apud Edwardum accusati, quod Saracenis arma et victualia detulissent, comperta veritate, secundum sua merita puniuntur. Soldanus vero Babyloniæ, qui civitatem Accon cœperat oppugnare, cum exercitu revertitur ad propria, spe fraudatus. Punishment of merchants, for selling arms to the Saracens.

Henricus, filius Regis Romanorum, transiens per Tusciam, cum apud Viterbium Missarum solemniis interesset, in ecclesia Sancti Laurentii, a Guidone de Monte Forti occiditur. Henry, son of the King of the Romans, slain.

Ricardus, Rex Romanorum, frater Regis Anglorum, quarto Nonas Aprilis, apud castrum de Berkhamstede, viam universæ carnis ingressus est. Cujus cor in ecclesia Fratrum Minorum Oxoniæ, corpus vero in ecclesia Monachorum Cisterciensium de Hayles, quam ipse construxit, impensis propriis, sepelitur. Death of Richard, King of the Romans. His burial (A.D. 1272).

Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo primo, Edwardo, filio Regis, in Accon commorante, Hassacinus quidam, qui sæpius ad eum, nuncius Admiralii Joppensis, venire consueverat, fingens se velle quædam secreta ei referre, omnibus a camera exclusis, ipsum, ad fenestram quandam appodiantem, ex improviso cultello [1] vulnerat venenato. Quem Edwardus, pede percussum, et ad terram prostratum, extorto de manibus ejus cultello, occidit. In extractione vero cultelli violenta, semetipsum in manu vulnerat, et in fronte. Vulnera vero ejus, grassante veneno, multis variis adhibitis remediis, vix curantur. Escape of Prince Edward from assassination, in the Holy Land, A.D. 1271.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo secundo, Burning of the Cathe-

[1] *vulnerat . . . . cultello* om. in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1272. mense Augusti, cives Norwicenses, Prioratum monachorum invadentes, combusserunt ecclesiam cathedralem. Super qua re indignatus admodum Rex Henricus, ad vindictam malefactorum, misit illuc Justiciarium, militem quemdam, dictum "Thomam Trivet," qui et Justiciarius Itineris fuerat de corona. Unde factum est, ut, urgente mandato regio, et horrore facinoris, magna multitudo convicta de scelere tanto, ad caudas equorum tracta, suspendio judicatur.

dral at Norwich, by the citizens.

Severe punishment inflicted.

Death of King Henry III.

Henricus, Anglorum Rex, mense Novembri infirmitate correptus, in die Sancti Edmundi Confessoris, obdormivit in Domino, et apud Westmonasterium honorifice tumulatus est. Iste Rex quantum in actibus sæculi videbatur minus prudens, tanto apud Dominum majori devotione pollebat. Singulis namque diebus tres Missas cum nota solebat audire, et, privatim plures audire cupiens, assidue assistebat celebrantibus. Contigit autem aliquando, Sanctum Lodowicum, Francorum Regem, cum eo super hoc conferentem, dicere, quod non semper Missis, sed frequentius sermonibus, audiendis, esset vacandum. Qui, faceta urbanitate respondens, ait se malle amicum suum sæpius videre, quam de eo loquentem, licet bona dicentem, audire.

His character.

His personal appearance.

Erat autem staturæ mediocris, compacti corporis, alterius oculi palpebra demissiore, ita ut partem nigredinis pupilli celaret; robustus viribus, sed præceps in factis: in quibus tamen, quia fortunatos et felices exitus habuit, putant eum multi apud Merlinum fatidicum per Lyncem designatum, omnia penetrantem.

Prince Edward, though absent, acknowledged King.

Edwardus, Regis Anglorum, Henrici Tertii, ex Alienora, filia Comitis Provinciæ, primogenitus, ætatis suæ triginta tres annos et quinque menses impleverat, die quo patri suo, defuncto, anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo secundo, in regno fuerat successurus. Qui, tempore quo pater defunctus est, in Terra Sancta commorans, obsequio Crucis insistebat. Propter quod, die proximo post patris sepulturam, Frater Ro-

bertus de Kilwardby, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, et Gilbertus, Gloverniensis Comes, cum aliis prælatis ac regni proceribus, Londini, apud Novum Templum, convenientes, Edwardum, absentem, dominum suum ligeum recognoverunt, paternique successorem honoris ordinaverunt; atque, de assensu Reginæ matris, custodes regni, ministrosque fideles, qui regio fisco præessent, et proventus regni ad opus Regis novi ex integro reservarent, cujus pacem facerent per Angliam ubique proclamari. A.D. 1272.

Eodem anno, Edmundus, frater Regis, Comes Lancastriæ, de Terra Sancta venit in Angliam. Prince Edmund returns to England.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo tertio, Edwardus in Acon, Christianorum et Tartarorum auxilio diutius frustra expectato, relictis ad terræ defensionem stipendiariis nonnullis, naves repatriaturus ingrediens, cursu velivolo Siciliam usque pervenit; ubi a Rege Karolo susceptus honorifice, primo rumores audivit de morte filii sui, Henrici, ac postmodum de morte patris sui. Qui dum mortem patris anxius quam filii sui plangéret, a Rege Karolo, vice consolatoris assistente, plurimumque mirante, super hoc requisitus, dicitur respondisse, —jacturam filiorum facilem, cum quotidie multiplicentur; parentum vero mortem fore irremediabilem, quia nequeunt restaurari. King Edward leaves Syria, and arrives in Sicily, A.D. 1273.

Denique Karolus discedentem Edwardum conduci fecit per Karolum, filium suum, usque ad ultimos terminos regni sui. Cum autem ad Veterem Urbem, ubi Papa cum sua Curia residebat, advenisset, occurrentibus ei Cardinalibus omnibus, cum honore maximo ad Domini Papæ præsentiam est deductus. Hic, primo dictus, "Theobaldus Placentinus," Leodiensis Archidiaconus, devotionis causa, transierat cum Domino Edwardo in Accon, absensque electus est in Papam, et "Gregorius Decimus" appellatus. Huic super morte consanguinei sui, Henrici de Alemannia, anxiam deposuit querimoniam, quem non modo, in offensam juris humani, constabat interfectum a Guidone de Monte He visits the Pope, Gregory X.

The Pope excommunicates Guido de Montfort.

A.D. 1273. Forti, dum [1] Missarum solemniis assisteret, sed in contemptum Ecclesiæ, et scandalum nominis Christiani. Papa igitur, hiis commotus, Guidonem excommunicavit, omnesque eum receptantes, et, quousque Ecclesiæ satisfieret, terras eorum supposuit Interdicto.

His prowess. Ingressuro Sabaudiam occurrerunt ei prælati et proceres Anglicani; qua pertransita, ad ludum militarem, qui vulgo "torneamentum" dicitur, per Kabilonensem Comitem invitatur. In quo, cum suis, se gessit tam strenue, ut Comitem supradictum dedere se sibi cogeret.

He does homage to the King of France. Deinde venit Edwardus in Franciam, et, a Philippo, Francorum Rege, susceptus magnifice, homagium fecit ei pro terris suis, quas de eo tenebat; sub conditione restitutionis terrarum patri suo, in venditione Normanniæ, promissarum.

Puts down the rebellion of Gaston de Bierne. Post hæc, in Wasconiam proficiscitur, ad compescendum novos motus quorundam, quos Gasto de Bierna concitaverat ad rebellionem. Cujus terras Edwardus cum exercitu potenter ingressus, ipsum in fugam coegit, et quodam forti castro receptum obsedit.

Death of Henry, King of Navarre; marriage of his widow to Prince Edmund, A.D. 1274. Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo quarto, Henricus, Navarorum Rex, moritur; cujus uxor, Regina, postea nupsit Edmundo, germano Regis Angliæ; qui de ea tres procreavit filios; primogenitum, Thomam, Comitem Lankastriæ; secundum, Henricum de Lankastria, Dominum Monumutæ; tertium, Johannem, qui, cum sorore, in Galliis morabatur.

The King of France made arbitrator between Edward and Gaston de Bierne. Gasto de Bierna, a Rege Anglorum obsessus, cum omnis jam via evadendi sibi præcluderetur, et attenderet rem esse in foribus, ut ad deditionem cogeretur, super negotio quod inter Regem Edwardum et ipsum vertebatur, appellationem interponit ad Curiam Regis Francorum. Cui deferens Rex Edwardus, nolens Regem Francorum, quem nuper dominum suum pro terris

[1] See page 165 *ante*.

suis in Francia recognoverat, contra se partem facere, dissentientibus multis de suis, obsidionem amoveri jussit, ministris suis committens, ut in Curia Regis Francorum causam prosequerentur contra Gastonem. In qua tandem, injuriosæ rebellionis convictus per Regem Francorum, Regis Angliæ adducitur voluntati. A.D. 1274.

Edwardus Rex, postquam obsidionem dimiserat, ordinatis pro articulo temporis rebus Wasconiæ, in Angliam properavit; ubi a clero et populo cum gaudio receptus est, et maximo cum honore. Edward now returns to England.

Dominica infra Octavas Assumptionis Virginis gloriosæ, in ecclesia Westmonasteriensi, una cum Alienora, consorte sua, a Fratre Roberto, Cantuariensi Archiepiscopo, inungitur in regem, et solemniter coronatur. In crastino coronationis suæ, recepto a Rege Scotorum, Alexandro, homagio, ipsum dimisit ad propria, plurimum honoratum. His coronation. Homage of the King of Scotland.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo quinto, Gasto de Bierna, in Angliam veniens, cum resti circa collum, ad Regis præsentiam est deductus; quem ad suam Rex misericordiam recipiens, morte condonata, in castro Wintoniæ per annos aliquot custodiæ mancipavit. Qui tandem, per Regis gratiam, liber dimissus ad propria, Regi Angliæ semper in posterum gratus extitit, et fidelis. Humiliation, and ultimate release, of Gaston de Bierne, A.D. 1275.

Rex Principem Walliæ, qui coronationi suæ, licet invitatus, noluit interesse, vocari fecit, pro homagio sibi debito faciendo. Qui, fingens se non ausum Angliam intrare, quibusdam majoribus sibi insidiantibus, pro securitate sua, filium Regis, et Gilbertum, Gloverniæ Comitem, Robertumque Burnell, Regis Cancellarium, obsides postulavit. Quod Rex indigne ferens, dissimulato negotio, Londonias accessit, Parliamentumque tenuit; ubi contra Manum Mortuam Statuta edidit, quæ vocantur "Statuta Westmonasterii Prima." The Prince of Wales refuses to appear in England. Statutes against Mortmain.

Post Parliamentum, Rex, ut Principi Walliæ liberior sibi pateret accessus, Cestriam usque progreditur, quæ King Edward pro-

A.D. 1275. ceeds to Chester.

in confinio Walliæ sita est; mittitque nuncios, qui ab eo homagium exigant iterato. Quo mandatis regiis parere detrectante, Rex exercitum convocat, disponens Principem expugnare.

One fifteenth paid to the King.

Hoc anno, populus solvit Regi quintam-decimam partem bonorum, quæ patri suo dicebatur concessa.

The son and daughter of the late Earl of Leicester are seized, A.D. 1276.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo sexto, Comitissa Leycestriæ, quæ, marito occiso, cum suis in Galliam fugerat, et in domo Sororum de Ordine Prædicatorum, apud Mountargys, a sorore viri sui fundata, morabatur, filiam suam transmisit in Walliam, Principi, sicut, patre puellæ vivente, sub certis pactis conventum fuerat, maritandam. Ducem vero itineris, ac procuratorem negotii, Aymericum, filium suum, germanum puellæ, constituit, assignata eisdem comitiva honesta. Qui suspectum habentes iter per Angliam, a littore Gallico navigantes, ad insulas Siluias, quæ terminos Cornubiæ e vicino respiciunt, devehuntur; ubi a quatuor navibus Bristolliensibus, ex insperato supervenientibus, comprehensi, ad Regis præsentiam deducuntur; qui, retenta puella honorifice in Comitiva Reginæ, Aymericum, fratrem suum, sub custodia libera detinuit, sed secura.

Edward takes Rhudlan. Payende Chensi in West Wales.

Rex Angliæ, de Cestria in Walliam progrediens, cepit castrum quod dicitur "Rodolanum," misitque in Walliam Occidentalem militem nobilem, Paganum de [1] Canusiis, qui cuncta cæde incendioque vastavit.

Submission of the West Welch.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo septimo, Wallenses Occidentales, ad pacem Regis Angliæ venientes, Pagano, militiæ Regis in partibus illis capitaneo, castrum de Stredewy, cum adjacenti patria, reddiderunt.

Terms of the peace between the King of England and the Prince of Wales.

Princeps etiam Walliæ, videns se Regi Angliæ non posse resistere, pacem petiit, et obtinuit, sub hac forma; —videlicet, quod omnes captivi, quos hactenus, ratione Regis Angliæ, detinuit [2] in vinculis, sine calumnia liberarentur. Item, pro pace [2] et benevolentia Regis habenda,

[1] *Camusiis* in MS., *Amirsiis* in ed. Camden.

[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

daret quinquaginta millia librarum sterlingorum; quo- A.D. 1277.
rum tamen solutio in voluntate et gratia Regis foret. Item, quod terra Quatuor Cantredorum, sine omni contradictione, Regi Angliæ et suis hæredibus, cum omnibus terris conquisitis per Regem, hominesque regios, excepta insula Angleseia, in perpetuum remaneret. Insula enim Angleseia concessa est Principi, ita quod solveret pro ea, singulis annis, Regi mille marcas, et pro ingressu quinque millia marcarum daret. Et si Princeps sine hærede de corpore suo moreretur, insula illa in Regis Angliæ possessionem rediret. Item, quod Princeps veniret in Natali Domini in Angliam, ad Regem, pro homagio faciendo. Item, quod omnia homagia Walliæ remanerent Regi, præterquam quinque Baronum qui in confinio Snowdoniæ morabantur; se enim "Princi- "pem" convenienter vocare non posset, nisi sub se aliquos Barones haberet. Item, quod nomen Principis tantum haberet ad vitam suam, et post mortem ejus, quinque prædictorum Baronum homagia Regi Angliæ fierent, et suis hæredibus in æternum. Pro assecuratione istorum, tradidit Princeps decem obsides de melioribus Walliæ; et viginti meliores jurabunt, quod quandocunque Princeps aliquem prædictorum articulorum infregerit, nisi, admonitus, se correxerit, abalienabunt se ab eo, et eidem in omnibus quæ [1] poterunt hostes fient. Item, præter hæc, Princeps fratres suos, quos læsit, placabit. Habuit enim tres fratres, quorum Owenum et [2] Rodericum incarceraverat; sed tertius, videlicet, David, fuga lapsus, multis annis in Anglia stetit; cui Rex contulit in Wallia castrum de Dimby, cum terris ad valorem mille librarum annui redditus; insuper et uxorem dedit filiam Comitis Derbeyæ, quæ nuper alio viro fuerat viduata. Owenus ergo, favore regio, liberatur a carcere, quem paulo ante fregerat. Rodericus, fratrem fugiens, in Anglia morabatur. Rex autem in Occidentali Wal-

[1] *poterint* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Rodernum* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1277. lia, apud Lampadervaur, ad cohibendum irruptiones Wallenses, castrum ædificavit insigne.

Subsidy to King Edward. In subsidium hujus werræ, concessa est Regi a populo vicesima pars bonorum.

Marriage of the daughter of the Earl of Leicester to the Prince of Wales, A.D. 1278. Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo octavo, Rex Angliæ filiam Comitis Leycestriæ, apud insulas Silliuras captam, Principi Walliæ uxorem dedit; nuptiarum solemnitatem impensis propriis agens, suaque ac Reginæ præsentia illas honorans.

The Archbishop of Canterbury made a Cardinal. Frater Robertus, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, ad Cardinalatum assumptus, factus est Episcopus Portuensis.

The Jews hanged for clipping the coin. Judæi, pro tonsura monetæ, in magna multitudine ubique per Angliam suspenduntur.

The Statutes of Gloucester. Rex Parliamentum tenuit Gloverniæ in Octavis Sancti Johannis, Baptistæ, in quo edita sunt Statuta, quæ "Gloverniæ" appellantur.

Restoration of lands by the King of France. Rex, in Galliam transiens, restitutionem aliquarum terrarum obtinuit, non tamen omnes, quæ, in venditione Normanniæ, promissæ fuerant patri suo.

Death of the Queen of Castille. Obiit hoc anno Regina Castellæ, mater Reginæ Angliæ; ad quam jure hæreditario, post matris mortem, devolutus est Comitatus Pontivi.

Visit of the King of Scotland; and letters granted to him. Rex Scotorum, Alexander, antequam Rex Angliæ transiret in Gallias, in Angliam veniens, Regem consuluit de negotiis arduis terræ suæ. Putant eum quidam tunc suum fecisse homagium, quod alii verius in crastino Coronationis Regis Angliæ asserunt esse factum. Impetravit autem a Rege litteras, testificantes auxilium in werra Walliæ præstitum non nomine servitii factum esse.

John Pecham, Archbishop of Canterbury. Frater Johannes Pecham fit Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, provisione Domini Papæ.

He arrives in England. Anno millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo nono, Frater Johannes Pecham, de Ordine [1] Minorum, conse-

[1] *Offinorum* in ed. Camden.

cratus a Domino Papa in Archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, venit in Angliam. A.D. 1279.

Moneta Angliæ, per tonsuram nimis deteriorata, ex mandato regio, renovatur. Obolus, qui prius formam habebat semicirculi, tanquam pars denarii, in medio divisi, fit rotundus; juxta vaticinium Merlini, dicentis; —"Findetur forma commercii, dimidium rotundum erit." Alteration in the coinage.

Illustris miles, Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, apud Kenelwurthe ludum militarem, quem vocant "Rotundam Ta-"bulam," centum militum et tot dominarum, constituit; ad quam, pro armorum exercitio, de diversis regnis confluxit militia multa nimis. A Round Table held at Kenelwurth.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo, Edwardus, Rex Angliæ, de lapidibus pretiosis iaspidum, quos secum attulerat de partibus Gallicanis, patris sui sepulcrum, apud Westmonasterium, fecit nobiliter honorari. The tomb of Henry III. adorned, A.D. 1280.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo primo, David, germanus Lewlini, Principis Walliæ, immemor beneficiorum Regis Angliæ, qui eum promoverat, et contra fratrem, persequentem, protexerat, concitavit pene totam Walliam ad rebellandum contra Regem; cepitque proditiose Rogerum de Clifford, militem nobilem, et famosum, quem Rex fecerat Justiciarium totius Walliæ, in castro suo de Hawardyn, Dominica in Ramis Palmarum; et quosdam milites ejus, volentes resistere, inermes occidit. Exinde reversus ad fratrem suum, Principem, collecto exercitu, una cum eo, Rodolanum venit, obsidionemque posuit circa castrum. Hiis auditis rumoribus, Rex in manu forti Walliam est ingressus; cujus adventu cognito, Princeps Walliæ, obsidione soluta, longius se subtraxit. Rising of David, brother of Llewelyn, A.D. 1281. He seizes Roger de Clifford. Rhudlan besieged. Edward proceeds to Wales.

Interim captum est castrum de Lampadervaur, et alia plura castra in illis partibus, per nobiles Wallensium, hiis diebus. Capture of castles, by the Welch.

Eodem tempore, procurante Fratre Johanne de Pecham, Cantuariensi Archiepiscopo, [F]Aymericus de Monte Forti, quem Rex in custodia detinuerat, liberatur; sed cito postea defunctus est. Emeric de Montfort liberated.

A.D. 1281. Sentence of excommunication against Llewelyn by the Archbishop of Canterbury.

Sub eodem tempore, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, profectus in Snowdoniam, Principem Walliæ, et germanum suum, sategit ad pacem reducere; quibus monita sua spernentibus, regressus in Angliam, in eos excommunicationis sententiam fulminavit.

Singular appearance.

Hoc anno, mense Februario, apparuerunt octo semicirculi circa solem, dorsatim conjuncti.

Edward has a bridge built across to Anglesey, A.D. 1282.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo secundo, Rex Edwardus, cum exercitu valido, de Rodolano per Angleseyam, quam per nautas Portuum capi fecerat, versus Snowdoniam progrediens, ut viam pararet exercitui, ultra maris brachium quod insulam dividit a continente, juxta [1] Bangoriam, constituit pontem fieri ex navibus invicem colligatis.

Engagement with the Welch by the Earl of Gloucester.

Eo tempore, Gilbertus, Comes Gloverniæ, magnas prædas Wallensium cum militia sua faciens, juxta Lantilowhyr, facta copia apertæ pugnæ, cum eisdem duro prœlio dimicavit. In quo peremptis multis de parte Wallensium, ipsemet Comes quinque milites amisit, de quorum numero erat Willelmus de Valentiis, junior, consanguineus Regis Angliæ. Discedente autem Comite Gloverniæ, Princeps Walliæ intravit terras de Cardigan et Stredewy, devastavitque terras Resi filii Mereduci, qui cum Rege contra Principem tenuit in hoc bello. Progrediens deinde versus terram de Bueld, se cum paucis ab exercitu reliquo separavit. Cui cum sua militia superveniéntes viri nobiles, Johannes Giffardi et Edmundus de Mortuo Mari, inopinate ipsum cum sociis pugna aggredientes, occiderunt. Cujus caput, abscissum, positum est super Turrim Londoniarum, hedera coronatum.

Llewelyn is slain.

After some losses, Wales is nearly subdued by King Edward.

Hoc anno, Rex, de consilio [2] Baronagii, intravit Walliam, ubi amisit, per irruptionem Wallensium, vexilla quatuordecim. Non multo post, Rex, superior effectus, pene totam Walliam subjugavit, cum insula de Angleseya; villas et terras quæ erant in meditullio Walliæ suis

[1] *Langoriam* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Baronum* in ed. Camden.

proceribus distribuit, sed retinuit maritima castra sibi; unde magna tranquillitas tempore sequenti provenit. A.D. 1282.

Hiis diebus, clerus et populus primo quintam-decimam, et postmodum tricesimam, bonorum suorum Regi Angliæ in subsidium concesserunt. Grants made to the King.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo tertio, Rex Angliæ, ponte jam perfecto, cum exercitu in Snowdoniam transiit; castra ejus omnia cepit, et combussit. Comes vero Pembrochiæ castrum de Bere, quod erat quondam Lewlini Principis, cepit; et cito post, tota Wallia, cum omnibus castris suis, subacta est regiæ voluntati. Successes of King Edward in Wales; which is finally subdued, A.D. 1283.

Ante festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, David, frater Principis Walliæ, captus est per exploratores regios, et Rodolanum adductus. Quem Rex ad sui conspectum admittere noluit, licet ipse David hoc instantius flagitasset. Rex igitur transmisit eum Salopiam, carceri mancipandum. Capture of David, brother of Llewelyn.

Eo tempore, per quemdam secretarium Principis, allata est Regi crux, dicta "Neoti," magnam de ligno Crucis Christi continens portionem; quæ ideo "Neoti" dicitur, quod per quemdam sacerdotem, sic vocatum, antiquitus de Terra Sancta fuit in Walliam deportata. Cross of St. Neot, containing a portion of the real Cross.

Post Festum Sancti Michaelis, in Parliamento tento Salopiæ, David, quondam frater Lewlini, Principis Walliæ, judicialiter condemnatus, tractus et suspensus est, visceribusque combustis, corpus capite truncatum, et in quatuor partes est divisum. Quibus in civitatibus Angliæ nobilioribus suspensis, caput Londoniis super palum fixum est, ad terrorem consimilium proditorum. David is condemned, and executed.

Resus autem [1] Vazhan, Wallensium nobilissimus, Comiti Herefordiæ se dedit, Regique redditus, ad Turrim Londoniarum missus, carceri mancipatur. Surrender of Rees Vazhan.

Abbathia de Abertoun translata est per Regem ad locum alium, et constructum est in eo loco quo Ab- A castle built, in place of

[1] *Vazham* in MS.

A.D. 1283. the Abbey, at Abertoun (Conway).

bathia fuerat, castrum valde forte, ad irruptiones Wallensium compescendas. Et Rex in Comitatu Cestriæ fecit construi aliam Abbathiam Monachorum Cisterciensium, quam, multis ditatam prædiis, "Vallem Regalem" voluit appellari.

Grants to the King.

Hoc anno, Regi conceditur a populo, in subsidium werræ suæ, tricesima, et a clero vicesima, pars bonorum.

Guido de Montfort liberated by Pope Martin IV.

Eo tempore, Papa Martinus, Guidonem de Monte Forti a carcere liberans, in quo per Gregorium Decimum, Papam, positus fuerat, propter homicidium in Ecclesia commissum, in Henricum Regis Alemanniæ filium, cognatum Regis Angliæ, misit in Romaniolam, quam pene totam obtinuit eo anno. Cito post, de licentia Papæ, Tusciam rediit, [1] ut hæreditatem uxoris suæ, patre ejus, Comite Rufo, mortuo, occuparet.

Parliament at Acton Burnell, and Statute.

Rex Angliæ apud Acton Burnell tenuit Parliamentum, post festum Sancti Michaelis; in quo editum est Statutum quod a loco cognominatum est. Natus est Regi filius, apud Carnervan in Wallia, die Sancti

Birth of Prince Edward (A.D. 1284).

Marci, et vocatus est "Edwardus." Et Rex Edwardus fecit leges Anglicanas per Walliam observari, Viceecomites ponens in ea. Sub eodem tempore, apud Karnervan, inventum est corpus patris Constantini Imperatoris, scilicet, Constantii [2] Senatoris, et, Rege jubente,

The crown of King Arthur.

honorifice in ecclesia collocatum. Corona etiam quondam famosi Regis Britonum, Arthuri, Regi Angliæ, cum aliis jocalibus, reddebatur, et sic ad Anglos gloria Wallensium, Dei providentia, est translata.

King Edward proceeds to Glamorgan and Bristol, A.D. 1284.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo quarto, Rex, de Snowdonia per Walliam Occidentalem progrediens, intravit Glamorgantiam, quæ ditioni Comitis Gloverniæ subjecta fuit; deinde venit Bristolliam, ubi festum Dominicæ Nativitatis tenuit eo anno.

---

[1] Repeated in ed. Camden. | [2] Qy. *Senioris*.

Alfonsus, filius Regis Angliæ, moritur apud [1]Windeleshores, et apud Westmonasterium sepelitur. A.D. 1284. Death of Prince Alfonso.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo quinto, tenuit Rex Parliamentum Londoniis, in quo edita sunt Statuta, quæ "Westmonasterii Secunda" dicuntur. Et quia prius statuerat ne religiosæ personæ in sæcularibus possessionibus crescerent, nunc statuit ut prius habita non minorarent. Statutes of Westminster, the 2nd, A.D. 1285.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo sexto, Rex Angliæ, in Gallias transiens, Ambianis cum honorifica turba pervenit; cui occurrit ibidem, honoris gratia, Rex Francorum; et Rex Angliæ fecit homagium Regi Franciæ, pro terris quas de eo in regno Franciæ tenere debebat, Parisius, et interfuit Parliamento quod Rex Francorum tunc tenuit Parisius; in quo multa, quæ pro libertate terrarum suarum, injuste oppressarum, petivit, [2]obtinuit; licet ipsa concessio Regis Francorum, et parium, diu in suo robore non maneret. Expectavit autem Parisius Rex Edwardus festum Pentecostes, et post festum in Wasconiam est profectus. King Edward visits France, A.D. 1286. Obtains concessions; which are soon revoked.

Eo tempore, Alienora Regina, mater Regis Angliæ, spreta pompa sæculi, apud Ambresbiriam induit habitum monacharum, dote sua per Papam et Regem sibi in perpetuum confirmata. Alianor, the King's mother, retires to Ambresbery.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo septimo, cum die quadam Rex et Regina convenissent in unam cameram, et super lectum sedendo pariter confabularentur, ictus fulminis per fenestram, quæ eis erat a dorso, ingressus, et inter eos transiens, ipsis penitus illæsis, duos domicellos, qui in eorum stabant præsentia, interfecit. Stupefacti cæteri qui affuerunt, ex evidenti, quod contigerat, perpendebant miraculo, divini protectionem numinis saluti regiæ non deesse. Escape of the King and Queen from lightning, A.D. 1287.

Eo anno, Rex Angliæ profectus est in Arragoniam, ut consanguineum suum, Karolum, filium Karoli, quon- Edward proceeds to Aragon.

[1] *Kideleshores* in ed. Camden.
[2] *et obtinuit* in MS.; corrected from Trivet.

A.D. 1286. dam Regis Siciliæ, ab Alfonso, rege Arragoniæ, detentum in carcere, liberaret.

Alfonso, of Aragon, desires to be reconciled to the Church.

Alfonsus, Rex Arragoniæ, missis ad Curiam Romanam nunciis, reconciliari petivit Ecclesiæ, de hiis quæ per patrem suum facta fuerant se excusans.

Miracles wrought by the body of Thomas de Cantilupe.

Thomas de Cantilupo, quondam Episcopus Herefordensis, qui nuper versus Romanam Curiam, contra Fratrem Johannem Pecham, Cantuariensem Archiepiscopum, causam ecclesiæ suæ prosecuturus, proficiscens, obiit, et in Angliam per suos relatus, ac in ecclesia sua traditus sepulturæ, cœpit multis et inauditis miraculis coruscare.

Charles, Prince of Achaia, is released from prison, A.D. 1288.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo octavo, Karolus, filius Regis Karoli quondam Siciliæ, Princeps Achaiæ, procurante Rege Angliæ, liberatur a carcere. Quo facto, Rex Angliæ revertitur in Wasconiam, et apud Blankeforde Crucis suscepit [1] characterem: et mox Judæos omnes, tanquam Crucis hostes, expulit de Wasconia, et aliis terris suis omnibus quas in regno Franciæ habebat.

Edward assumes the Cross. Expels the Jews from Gascoigne.

Rising of Rees ap Meredith.

Interim Resus, filius Mereduci, Walliam conturbavit, impugnareque cœpit aliqua Regis castra; contra quem Edmundus, Comes Cornubiæ, cui Rex Angliæ, in sua absentia, commiserat regni custodiam, magnum ducit exercitum. Et cum quoddam castrum Resi, dictum "Drusselan," obsideret, et muros ejus suffodi faceret, casu murorum subito, vir nobilis, [2] [Willelmus] de Monte Canisii, et alii milites plurimi, et scutiferi, opprimuntur.

Death of William de Munchensi, and others.

Great abundance of corn.

Tanta fuit hoc anno in Anglia frugum abundantia, ut quarterium frumenti alicubi pro viginti, alicubi pro sexdecim, alicubi pro duodecim, denariis venderetur.

Edward returns to England, and expels the Jews.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo nono, Rex Angliæ, reversus de Wasconia, Londoniis solemniter recipitur a clero et omni plebe. Qui, Judæos omnes

[1] *carecterem* in MS. [2] Omitted in MS.

eodem anno expellens de Anglia, datis expensis in Gallias, bona eorum reliqua confiscavit. A.D. 1289.

Eo tempore, Rex, auditis multorum querimoniis, fere Justiciarios omnes, de falsitate deprehensos, a suo officio deposuit, puniens eos juxta demerita gravi mulcta. Justiciars deposed, and punished.

Hoc anno, tenuit Rex Parliamentum Londoniis, in quo edita sunt Statuta quæ dicuntur "Westmonasterii "Tertia;" in quo etiam Parliamento, pro expulsione Judæorum, concessa fuit Regi a populo quinta-decima pars bonorum. Statutes of Westminster, the 3rd.

Cum Rex Scotorum, Alexander, uxorem suam, filiam Comitis Flandriæ, quam post Margaretam, filiam Regis Angliæ, duxerat, nocte quadam obscura, visitare voluisset, equo cespitante, lapsus, et collisus graviter, expiravit. Hic de secunda uxore nullam, de prima vero prolem geminam, filium, scilicet, Alexandrum, et filiam, genuit, nomine "Margaretam." Alexander, absque prole, patrem immatura morte prævenit. Filia vero Margareta, Regi Norwagiæ desponsata, filiam unicam peperit, nomine "Margaretam," quæ matri mortuæ supervixit. Hanc, consulto Rege Angliæ, magnates Scotiæ recognoverunt hæredem. Quæ accersita per nuncios Regis Angliæ, cum per navigium tenderet in Scotiam, infirmata in mari, apud [1] Orcades insulas est defuncta. Death of Alexander III., of Scotland. His granddaughter, Margaret, is recognized as heir to the Scottish throne; but dies.

Nocte Sanctæ Margaretæ, descendit tempestas imbrium, tonitrui, et fulguris, a retro sæculis vix audita, sata concutiens, et demergens; unde factum est, ut Londoniis modius tritici, qui prius ad tres denarios vendebatur, extunc paulatim ad duos solidos excresceret. Sicque per quadraginta ferme annos, usque ad obitum Regis Edwardi, post Conquæstum Secundi, dicti "de Karnervan," extitit bladorum caristia, et præcipue frumentorum; ita ut aliquotiens Londoniis modius frumenti ad decem solidos venderetur. Great tempest, and disastrous results thereof. Dearth for many years after.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo, mortua Margareta, filia Regis Scotorum, Alexandri, ad quam, Question as to the succession

[1] *Orkadas* in MS.

A.D. 1290. to the Scottish throne.

jure hæreditario, defunctis avo, patruo, et matre, regnum Scotiæ devolvi debebat, quis foret justus hæres Scotiæ, apud omnes in dubium vertebatur. Propter quod, Rex Edwardus versus Scotiam, dijudicaturus de justo hærede, tanquam superior dominus, dirigit iter suum.

Death of Queen Alianor.

Sed dum finibus Scotiæ appropinquaret, Regina consors defungitur in villa de [1] Herdeby, juxta Lincolniam. Propter quod, Rex, dimisso itinere cœpto versus Scotiam, Londonias, funus deducendo, revertitur,

Burial at Westminster.

cum mœrore. Conditum est ergo corpus, cum aromatibus, in ecclesia Westmonasterii, cum honore, cor vero in choro Fratrum Prædicatorum, Londoniis, est humatum. In omni loco et villa quibus corpus pausaverat, jussit Rex crucem miro tabulatu erigi, ad Reginæ memoriam, ut a transeuntibus pro ejus anima deprecetur; in qua cruce fecit Reginæ imaginem depingi. Fuerat hæc Regina, dicta "Alienora," soror Aldefonsi, Regis Castellæ, nobilis genere, sed multo nobilior morum gravitate.

Honours paid to her memory.

Capture of Acre by the Soldan of Babylon, A.D. 1291.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo primo, civitas Acon capitur a Soldano [2] Babyloniæ; qui muros ejus destruxit, cum turribus, et evertit ecclesias, cum domibus civitatis.

A Parliament held at Norham.

Eo anno, post Pascha, Rex Angliæ, appropinquans Scotiæ, Parliamentum tenuit apud [3] Norham; ubi consultis prælatis ac utriusque juris peritis, revolutis priorum temporum annalibus, vocari fecit prælatos ac majores regni Scotiæ, et coram eis, in ecclesia parochiali de [3] Norham, jus suum in superius dominium regni Scotiæ fideliter declaravit; petivitque ut hoc recognoscerent, protestando se jus coronæ suæ, usque ad effusionem sanguinis, defensurum.

Enquiry as to Edward's right as

Ob quam causam, Rex fecerat omnia Monasteria Angliæ, Scotiæ, et Walliæ, perscrutari, ad dignoscendum

---

[1] *Herdeley* in MS.
[2] *Babilone* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Northumb* in ed. Camden.

quale jus posset sibi competere in hac parte. Et repertum est in Chronicis Mariani Scoti, Willelmi Malmesburiensis, Rogeri de Hovedene, Henrici de Huntingdone, Radulfi de Diceto, quod anno Domini nongentesimo decimo Rex Edwardus Senior subegit sibi Reges Scotorum et [1] Cumbrorum. Item, ibidem, quod anno Domini nongentesimo vicesimo primo, prædictæ gentes elegerunt sibi Edwardum prædictum in dominum ac patronum. Item, ibidem, anno Domini nongentesimo vicesimo sexto, Rex Angliæ, Adelstanus, devicit Regem Scotorum, [2] Constantinum, et iterum sub se permisit regnare. Item, Edredus, frater Adelstani, Rex Angliæ, devicit Scotos et Northanhumbros; qui se submiserunt ei, et fidelitatem juraverunt. Item, ibidem, Edgarus, Rex Angliæ, superavit Kinadum, filium Alpini, Regem Scotorum, [3] qui juravit ei fidelitatem. Item, ibidem, Rex Angliæ et Daciæ, Kanutus, anno regni sui sexto decimo, perdonavit Malcolmum, Regem Scotorum, et ex tunc factus est Rex quatuor regnorum, scilicet, Angliæ, Scotiæ, Daciæ, et Norwagiæ. Item, ibidem, Sanctus Edwardus regnum Scotiæ dedit Malcolmo, filio Regis [4] Cumbrorum, de se tenendum. Item, Willelmus Bastard, anno regni sui sexto, vicit Malcolmum, Regem Scotiæ, et accepit ab eo sacramentum fidelitatis. Item, Willelmus Rufus fecit similiter erga Malcolmum, Regem Scotiæ, et duos filios Malcolmi, successive regnantes. Item, Alexander successit fratri suo, Edgaro, in regnum Scotiæ, de consensu Regis Henrici Primi. Item, David, Rex Scotiæ, fecit homagium Regi Stephano. Item, Willelmus, Rex Scotiæ, fecit homagium [5] Henrico Tertio, filio Regis Henrici Secundi, in coronatione sua, et iterum Henrico, patri, anno regni sui vicesimo; sicut patet in

A.D. 1291. superior lord of Scotland.

[1] *Cambrorum* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Constantium* in ed. Camden.

[3] From this word down to "*Regem Scotorum*" the context is omitted in the *English History* of Walsingham.

[4] *Cambrorum* in ed. Camden.

[5] The eldest son of Henry II., who was crowned as joint king with his father.

A.D. 1291. conventione inter eos facta inde. Item, dicit Rogerus Hovedene quod Willelmus, Rex Scotiæ, venit ad dominum suum, Regem Henricum, in Normanniam; et similiter fecit Regi Ricardo, et etiam Johanni Regi, apud Lincolniam. Item, in Chronicis Sancti Albani, reperitur, quod Alexander, Rex Scotiæ, apud Eboracum, desponsavit Margaretam, filiam Regis Henrici, anno regni sui tricesimo quinto, et fecit ei homagium. Item, reperitur in Chartis Regum Scotiæ. Item, repertum est in Bullis Papalibus Scotiæ directis, Reges Scotorum excommunicatos fuisse, quia noluerunt obedire dominis suis, Anglorum Regibus.

Transactions at Norham, in reference to the Scottish crown.

Convenientibus igitur apud [1] Norham, in finibus Anglorum versus Scotiam, Rege Anglorum, cum suis peritis, et Scotorum valentioribus, cum suis prudentioribus, petivit inprimis Rex Angliæ, ut Scoti pacifice assentirent suæ ordinationi super Rege Scotiæ; præsertim cum sibi competeret ratione sui dominii capitalis. Scoti respondebant, se ignorare quod talis superioritas Regi Angliæ competeret; nec posse, sine capite regni, ad talia respondere, cui incumberet talem denunciationem audire; nec aliud responsum ad præsens debere reddere testabantur, propter juramentum, excommunicatione vallatum, quod post mortem Regis Alexandri sibi invicem fecerunt. Unde, deliberatione habita, fecit Rex Edwardus Scotis litteras suas patentes, quibus recognovit adventum Scotorum in Angliam citra aquam Twede non debere alias illis vertere in præjudicium iterum veniendi in Angliam. Post hæc, majores Scotiæ et Angliæ, qui vendicabant jus successionis in regnum Scotiæ, per litteras suas patentes recognoverunt, se velle sponte recipere justitiam coram dicto Rege Edwardo, tanquam coram capitali domino, et firmum tenere quicquid ipse decreverit in præmissis.

Letter of the

Tenor autem litterarum dominorum utriusque regni,

[1] *Northumb* in ed. Camden.

qui jus successionis vendicabant in Scotorum dominium, erat talis :— A.D. 1291. claimants of the Scottish crown, signifying that they will abide by the award of King Edward.

"Omnibus præsentes litteras visuris, vel audituris, " Florentius, Comes Holandiæ, Robertus le Brus, Do- " minus Vallis Anandiæ, Johannes de Balliolo, Domi- " nus Galwidiæ, Johannes de Hastingges, Dominus " Abergavenniæ, Johannes Comyn, Dominus de Bade- " naw, Patricius de Dunbar, Comes Marchiæ, Johannes " de Vesci, vice patris sui, Nicholaus de Sules, Willelmus " de Ros, salutem in Domino. Cum nos in regno Scotiæ " jus habere credamus, et jus illud coram illo qui po- " tiorem habet potestatem, jurisdictionem, et rationem, " examinandi jus nostrum habet, declarare, vendicare, " et probare, intendamus ; nobilisque Princeps, Dominus " Edwardus, Dei gratia, Rex Angliæ, per bonas suffi- " cientesque rationes nos informaverit, quod ad eum " spectat, et habere debet, superius dominium regni Sco- " tiæ, et cognitionem in audiendo, examinando, et diffi- " niendo, jus nostrum : nos, de propria nostra voluntate, " sine omni violentia et coactione, volumus, annuimus, " et concedimus, ut recipiamus jus coram eo, tanquam " coram superiori domino terræ. Volumus insuper, et " promittimus, quod habebimus et tenebimus firmum " et stabile factum suum, et quod ille habebit regnum, " cui coram eo jus potius illud dabit. In testimonium " istorum, nos litteris istis apposuimus sigilla nostra. " Data apud [1] Norham, feria tertia post Ascensionem," *et cætera.*

Facta itaque recognitione superioris dominii, et submissione recipiendi quod coram Rege Angliæ fuerit diffinitum, petivit Rex castra et terram totam sibi reddi, ut per seisinam pacificam jus superioris dominii, quod jam per suas litteras recognoverant, claresceret universis. Annuerunt statim regiæ petitioni ; confectis super hoc litteris, habentibus hunc tenorem.— The Castles of Scotland are resigned into Edward's hands.

"Omnibus præsentes litteras visuris, vel audituris, Letter in

[1] *Northumb* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1291. sanction thereof. " Florentius, Comes Holondiæ, *et cætera,* salutem in " Domino. Quia de bona voluntate nostra, et communi " assensu, annuimus et concessimus nobili Principi, " Domino Edwardo, Dei gratia, Regi Angliæ, quod " ipse, tanquam superior dominus terræ Scotiæ, possit " audire, examinare, et diffinire, vendicationes nostras, " et petitiones, quas intendimus ostendere et probare, " pro jure nostro recipiendo, coram eo, tanquam supe- " riori domino terræ; promittentes insuper, quod factum " suum habebimus firmum et stabile, et quod ille ob- " tinebit regnum Scotiæ, cujus jus potius declaratur " coram eo. Cum autem non possit præfatus Rex An- " gliæ isto modo cognitionem facere, nec complere, sine " judicio; nec judicium debeat esse sine executione; nec " executionem possit debito modo facere sine posses- " sione et seysina ejusdem terræ, et castrorum ejus; " volumus et annuimus, et concedimus, quod ipse, tan- " quam dominus superior, ad perficiendum prædicta, " habeat seysinam totius terræ Scotiæ, et castrorum " ejus, quousque jus in regnum petentibus fuerit satis- " factum. Ita tamen, quod antequam habeat seysinam, " bonam et sufficientem securitatem faciat petitoribus " et custodibus, et communitati, regni Scotiæ, restituendi " idem regnum, cum tota regalitate, dignitate, dominio, " libertatibus, consuetudinibus, justitiis, legibus, usibus, " possessionibus, et quibuscunque pertinentiis, in eodem " statu in quo erant ante seysinam sibi traditam; et " liberabit illam, cui jure debebitur, secundum judicium " regalitatis, salvo Regi Angliæ homagio illius qui Rex " erit. Et debet hæc restitutio fieri infra duos menses " a die quo fuerit hoc jus discussum atque firmatum. " Exitus terræ prædictæ medio tempore recipiantur, et " in salvo deposito reponantur, et bene custodiantur, per " manum Camerarii regni Scotiæ, qui nunc est, et " illius quem assignabit ad hoc Rex Angliæ; et hoc, " sub sigillo eorum, salva rationabili sustentatione " terræ et castrorum, ministrorumque regni. In testi- " monium istorum omnium prædictorum, apposuimus

" sigilla nostra, *et cætera.* Data apud [1] Norham, die " Mercurii, *et cætera.*" A.D. 1291.

Has duas litteras misit Rex Angliæ ad diversa monasteria, ad facti memoriam servandam. The letters sent to the Monasteries.

Igitur ex parte Regis Angliæ facta securitate de restituendo, prout præfertur, regno [2] Scotiæ infra duos menses illi cui de jure hoc competeret, sub pœna centum millium librarum sterlingorum, Romæ, in subsidium Terræ Sanctæ, solvendarum, ac etiam sub pœna excommunicationis et Interdicti in Regis personam et regnum Angliæ, si non restitueret, [3] fulminandi, Scoti, per chartas suas, tradiderunt Regi Edwardo regnum Scotiæ, cum castellis, juribus, et consuetudinibus; posueruntque custodes, qui medio tempore exitus et [4] approviamenta terræ, ad opus illorum quorum intererat, custodirent, quousque, videlicet, debita discussione habita, de legitimo constaret hærede. Quo facto, Rex Angliæ, post longas disceptationes vendicantium illud regnum, discussis juribus, prætulit Johannem de Baliol; qui recognovit Regem Angliæ fore capitalem dominum Scotiæ, fecitque ei homagium, et fidelitatem juravit, prout in gestis anni sequentis plenius declaratur. Surety given by Edward that he will restore the same. Award given in favour in John de Baliol.

Circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Alienora, mater Regis, Ambresbyriæ est defuncta; propter quod, Rex de Scotia rediit in Angliam, [5] ut funus maternum debito cum honore curaret. Death of Alianor, the King's mother.

Post festum Sancti Michaelis, Rex, iterum tendens in Scotiam, cum Eboracum venisset, Resus filius Mereduci, captus, illucque deductus, judicialiter condemnatur. Deinde Rex, profectus in Scotiam, omnibus in regnum Scotiæ jus vendicantibus imposuit, ut in festo Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, proximo futuro, coram se comparerent, et quo jure regnum illud vendicabant, plenius declararent. Rees ap Meredith condemned. Edward sets out for Scotland.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo secundo,

[1] *Northumb* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Scotia* in ed. Camden.
[3] *fulminandum* in MS.
[4] *appromamenta* in MS.
[5] *et* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1292. Dissensions between England and France.

suborta est discordia inter Anglicos et Francos, hujuscemodi occasione.—Duo nautæ, quorum unus erat Anglicus, alter Normannus, convenerunt apud Gartoniam, ad quendam fontem, ut haurirent aquam; ubi dum quisque nititur prius haurire, facta est contentio inter utrosque. Post multa jactata convicia, Normannus, educto gladio, ferire nitebatur Anglicum; qui, vitato periculo, pugnum Normanni tenuit, volens eripere de manu sua pugionem; quibus sic colluctantibus, Normannus, corruens super mucronem suum, casu proprio confossus fuit. Quo cognito, Normanni persecuti sunt Anglicum, ut in eum necem socii vindicarent. Sed nautæ, Anglici consortes, contuentur socium, et Normannos repellunt. Normanni vero, de casu prædicto coram Philippo, Rege Franciæ, gravem deposuere querimoniam. Quibus Rex jussit, ut ubicunque obviarent Anglicis, de nece consocii sumerent ultionem; unde factum est, ut, dum Normanni sollicitius maris observarent semitas, navigium Anglicanum conspiciunt a remotis. Cum quo mox congredientes, quamdam navem Anglicam uncis attrahentes, Anglicum quemdam rapientes de navi sua, in summitate mali cujusdam puppis Normannicæ suspenderunt; quibus causis crevit tumor et invidia populis utriusque regni.

Persons appointed to examine the allegations of those claiming the Scottish throne.

Rex Angliæ, post festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, in Scotiam veniens, receptis eorum qui regnum Scotiæ vendicabant allegationibus, pro jure suo, eligi fecit quadraginta personas; videlicet, viginti de Anglia, et viginti de Scotia, qui istas allegationes deliberata diligentia discuterent; sententiam finalem usque in festum Sancti Michaelis proximo venturum differens proferendam.

Claim of Eric, King of Norway, to the crown of Scotland.

Eo tempore, Ericus, Rex Norwagiæ, venit coram Consilio Domini Regis Angliæ, per attornatos suos, et protulit quoddam scriptum, in hæc verba:—

"Omnibus præsentes litteras inspecturis vel audituris, "pateat evidenter, quod nos, Ericus, Dei gratia, Rex "Norwagiæ, tenore præsentium, fecimus, constituimus,

" et ordinavimus, prout de jure et facto melius facere A.D. 1292.
" potuimus, nostros veros et legitimos attornatos, et
" procuratores et nuncios speciales, nobilem virum,
" Aduenum de Hagr', et Magistrum Henricum, Pleba-
" num plebis, de Castellione Arretino, Domini Papæ
" Capellanum, et Magistrum P. Algorum, ad compa-
" rendum pro nobis, et vice nostra, coram excellenti
" Principe, Domino, Dei gratia, Edwardo, [1] Rege An-
" gliæ illustri, et superiori domino regni Scotiæ; ad
" petendum nomine nostro, tanquam per superiorem
" dominum regni Scotiæ, nobis adjudicari regnum Sco-
" tiæ supradictum, cum omnibus juribus et pertinentiis
" suis; cum ipsum regnum, per mortem Dominæ [2] Mar-
" garetæ, filiæ nostræ, olim Dominæ et Reginæ regni
" Scotiæ, sit ad nos pleno jure devolutum hæreditario,
" legitime. Item, ad petendum nomine nostro adju-
" dicari nobis, et præfatis attornatis et procuratoribus
" nostris assignari, pro nobis, fructus [3] et redditus
" regni Scotiæ quatuor annorum, qui fluxerunt a
" tempore mortis Domini Alexandri, bonæ memoriæ,
" quondam Regis Scotiæ, usque ad diem mortis Dominæ
" Margaretæ, filiæ nostræ, olim Dominæ Reginæ Sco-
" torum, qui percepti [3] [sunt,] vel percipi potuerunt, de
" dicto regno, cum ad nos dicti fructus seu redditus
" pleno jure pertineant; tum, quia fuimus legitimus
" administrator Reginæ præfatæ, cum viveret; tum
" etiam, quia gravium expensarum et sumptuum onera
" sustinuimus propter eam, dum in regno Norwagiæ
" moram traxit, et postmodum mittendo eam ad regnum
" Scotiæ supradictum. Item, ad petendum nomine
" nostro condemnari universitatem regni Scotiæ, et
" ipsum regnum, ad solvendum nobis, seu dictis attor-
" natis et procuratoribus nostris, recipientibus vice
" nostra, pœnam centum millium librarum sterlingorum,
" in quam inciderunt universitas præfata et regnum
" supradictum, non recipiendo libere dominam præfa-

[1] *Regi* in MS.
[2] *Margretæ* in ed. Camden.
[3] Omitted in MS.

A.D. 1292. " tam, Margaretam, filiam nostram, in Dominam et " Reginam regni Scotiæ, nec ei obediendo in aliquo. " Et ad petendum supplementum septingentarum mar- " carum, quas habere debemus a regno Scotiæ, occasione " dotis Dominæ Margaretæ, olim filiæ nostræ, et uxoris " Regis Scotiæ prædicti; cum fructus et redditus præ- " dicti, nobis [1] assignati pro septingentis marcis annuis, " ad quingentarum marcarum summam non ascendant. " Item, ad agendum et defendendum, lucrandum et " perdendum, coram præfato Principe, Domino Edwardo, " Rege Angliæ, superiore domino regni Scotiæ, debita " quomodocunque et qualitercunque, etiam ex quacun- " que causa vel causis nobis debeantur, et a quibus- " cunque personis, loco, vel universitate, et quocunque " nomine illa jura censeantur; et ad omnia alia et " singula faciendum, quæ veri et legitimi attornati, " seu procuratores, et nuncii, facere possent in præ- " missis, et quolibet præmissorum, si mandatum etiam " exigerint speciale, et quæ nosmet facere possemus, " si præsentes essemus: promittentes, sub [2] hypotheca " et obligatione omnium bonorum, ratum, firmum, et " gratum, habere et tenere perpetuo, ac non contrave- " nire aliquo ingenio vel modo, quicquid per prædictos " attornatos seu procuratores nostros, vel duos saltem ex " eis, actum vel procuratum fuerit in præmissis, vel quo- " libet præmissorum. Data Tonsborgiæ, anno Domini " *et cætera*, et anno regni nostri decimo tertio. In cujus " rei testimonium, has litteras fieri fecimus, et nostri " sigilli munimine roborari."

A day given to the envoys of the King of Norway.

Requisitum fuit de eisdem attornatis, quid volunt addere, minuere, vel mutare, et quod in petitione sua danda declararent. Qui dicunt, quod nolunt declarare, antequam habuerint colloquium cum dicto Domino Rege Angliæ, superiori domino regni Scotiæ; nec aliquid aliud proponere vel dicere, ea vice. Et hæc requisitio fuit facta, quia alias in petitione sua, quæ coram

[1] *assignari* in MS. | [2] *ypotheca* in MS.

ipsis fuit ibidem lecta, reservarunt sibi beneficium addendi, minuendi, et mutandi, prout plenius ex tenore ipsius petitionis apparet. Et datus est eis dies ad diem Mercurii proximum sequentem, ad audiendum Domini Regis Angliæ voluntatem. A.D. 1292.

Postea, die Mercurii proximo post festum Beati Martini, venerunt prædicti attornati Regis Norwagiæ coram Consilio prædicti Domini Regis Angliæ, et superioris Domini Scotiæ; et dictum fuit eis per Consilium dicti Domini Regis, quod declararent manifeste actionem Domini Regis Norwagiæ, per quam intendunt recuperare regnum Scotiæ, tanquam jus domini sui. Qui responderunt, et dixerunt quod voluerunt prius habere colloquium cum domino suo, Rege Norwagiæ, et ipsum super actione et petitione prædictis consulere, antequam ulterius prosequerentur. Et multotiens requisiti, quod petitionem præfati domini sui manifestius declararent, tandem dixerunt præcise, quod petitionem supradicti domini sui noluerunt declarare, nec ulterius super hoc aliud dicere, antequam eundem dominum suum consulti fuerunt in præmissis. Ideo datus est eis dies, de die in diem, coram præfato Domino Rege Angliæ, superiore Domino dicti regni Scotiæ, ad audiendum judicium suum de eo quod noluerunt ulterius prosequi petitionem domini sui prædicti, *et cætera*. Their answer, when questioned thereon.

Igitur, post diligentem hujus negotii discussionem, inter cæteros, de assensu communi, Johanni de Baliolo, qui de filia David, Regis Scotorum, descenderat seniore, adjudicavit Rex ex integro regnum ipsum. Robertus nempe de Brus, inter quem et ipsum Johannem de Baliolo, exclusis cæteris, quæstio vertebatur, licet uno gradu esset propinquior, tamen descendit a filia Regis David secunda. Award in favour of John de Baliol.

Johannes de Baliolo, in festo Sancti Andreæ sequenti, collocatus super lapidem regalem in ecclesia Canonicorum Regularium de Scone, solemniter coronatur; moxque venit ad Novum Castrum super Tynam, et fecit homagium Regi Angliæ, sub hiis verbis:— His coronation, at Scone.

A.D. 1292. His homage to the King of England.

"Domine Edwarde, Rex Angliæ, superior Domine "regni Scotiæ. Ego, Johannes de Balliolo, Rex Scotiæ, "recognosco me hominem vestrum ligeum de toto regno "Scotiæ, et omnibus pertinentiis, et hiis quæ ad hoc "spectant; quod regnum meum teneo, et de jure debeo "et clamito tenere, hæreditarie, de vobis et hæredibus "vestris, Regibus Angliæ, de vita et membris, et ter-"reno honore, contra omnes homines qui possint "vivere et mori."

The kingdom of Scotland given up to Baliol.

Et Rex Angliæ recepit homagium in forma prædicta, suo et alterius jure salvo. Quo facto, Rex Angliæ eidem regnum Scotiæ, integraliter, cum omnibus pertinentiis, restituit indilate.

King Edward at Newcastle-on-Tyne, A.D. 1293.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo tertio, Rex Angliæ tenuit Natale apud Novum Castrum super Tynam; ubi suscepit homagium Johannis de Balliolo, Regis Scotorum.

The Earl of Lincoln sent to treat with the King of France.

Per idem tempus, mercatores Angliæ, lacessiti per Francos, super mercium suarum amissione Regi Angliæ conqueruntur. Quapropter, Rex Comitem Lincolniæ, Henricum de Lacy, transmisit ad Regem Franciæ; petens humiliter, ut per utriusque Regis Consilium, de assensu communi, contra hujusmodi dispendia provideretur de remedio competenti. Sed dum Comes responsum expectat, classis [1] [navium] ducentarum Normannicarum, onusta vino, virisque bellatoribus, a sexaginta navibus Anglicanis capitur, in portu Sancti Matthæi, in Minori Britannia, et in Angliam adducitur; in quo conflictu feruntur occisa quindecim millia Gallicorum.

A French fleet captured.

Restitution thereof demanded by the King of France.

Rumor facti Regem Franciæ, non tam admiratione quam indignatione vehementi, commovit. Qui, missis nunciis, petiit a Rege Angliæ, ut absque mora naves cum mercibus, [2] per homines suos raptas, et in regno suo receptata, restitueret, si vellet sua negotia pro terra Wasconiæ, in Curia Regis Franciæ, favorabiliter expediri.

---

[1] Omitted in MS. | [2] *et* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1293. Answer made by King Edward thereto.

Rex igitur, habito cum suis consilio, Ricardum, Londoniensem Episcopum, cum aliis viris prudentibus, direxit ad Regem Franciæ, cum hoc responso;—videlicet, quod Rex Angliæ Curiam suam habet nulli subjectam; ideo, si qui de regno Franciæ læsos se senserint, et injurias suas declaraverint, Rex eis celerem fieri justitiam ordinabit, et eisdem, eundo per terram suam, et redeundo, salvum dabit conductum; vel, si hoc Regi Francorum non placeat, eligantur hinc inde arbitri, qui, pensatis damnis utriusvis partis, provideant quomodo querelantibus satisfiat; et Rex Anglorum dicto eorum, et laudo, sub certa obligatione, se submittet, dum tamen Rex Franciæ se submittat et obliget pari modo. Si vero aliquid occurrat, tam arduum, quod [1] per arbitros discindi nequeat, diffiniendum Regibus reservetur. Et Rex Angliæ, habito conductu, ad Regem Franciæ, accedentem ad aliquam villam maritimam, veniet, et, assensu mutuo, finis negotio imponetur. Quod si nec istud Rex Francorum acceptaverit, in Summum Pontificem negotium transferatur; vel, quia tunc Sedes vacabat Apostolica, ad Cardinales omnes, vel aliquos, committatur.

Indignation of the King of France thereon.

Sprevit hæc omnia Consilium Franciæ, nec nunciis, instanter flagitantibus, dignatum est aliquod respondere. Misit denique Rex Francorum ad civitatem Agennum, quæ pertinet Ducatui Aquitanniæ, et ibi nominatim citari fecit Regem Angliæ, ut die certa Parisius compareret, de injuriis et rebellionibus factis in terra Wasconiæ responsurus. Quem, ad diem præfixum non comparentem, Rex Francorum, in propria persona pro tribunali sedens, sententiam protulit, Regem judicans in defectu. Moxque præcepit Constabulario Franciæ, ut in manu armata Ducatum Aquitanniæ, Regis Francorum nomine, occuparet, caperetque, vel expelleret, quoscunque per Regem Angliæ illius custodiæ deputatos. Siquidem paulo ante miserat illuc Rex Angliæ Johannem

[1] *pro arbitrio descidi* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1293. de Sancto Johanne, militem in armis strenuum et discretum, qui civitates et castra per totum Ducatum munivit armis et victualibus, et viris strenuis ad bellandum.

Negotiations with the King of France, A.D. 1294.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo quarto, cum Edmundus, frater Regis Angliæ, diu, sed inaniter, tractasset de pace cum Consilio Regis Franciæ, et manifeste seductus fuisset Francorum falsitate, ad maximum damnum fratris sui, Regis Angliæ, regressus est in Angliam, referens Regi, totique Consilio, totam rerum gestarum seriem. Quapropter, Rex, convocato Londoniis Parliamento, cui Johannes, Rex Scotorum, interfuit, de consilio prælatorum et procerum, censentium terram, sub dolo sibi ablatam, recuperandam gladio, Rex Angliæ misit nuncios ad Regem Franciæ; mandans ei per eosdem, quod cum pacta inter progenitores eorum habita, et ipsos, necnon et secretos tractatus, quos, mediante germano suo, cum eo habuit, violasset; non videbatur sibi, quod ipsum Regem Angliæ, Ducemque Aquitanniæ, hominem suum reputabat, nec ipse homagio suo astringi ulterius intendebat.

Envoys sent to the King of France, renouncing homage on part of the King of England.

Alliance with the King of the Romans, and preparations for war with France.

Eodem tempore, Rex Angliæ, misso in Teutoniam Antonio, Dunelmensi Episcopo, confœderavit sibi Adulphum, Regem Romanorum; et in Wasconiam transmisit exercitum, cui præfecit milites prudentes, et in bellicis rebus expertes, et navigium, ad maris custodiam forte satis, ordinavit.

Subsidy granted to the King. Dearth in England.

Hoc anno, concessa fuit Regi, in subsidium werræ suæ, medietas a clero, sexta a civibus, et a reliquo populo decima, pars bonorum; non obstante quod fames in terra prævaluerat, annonæ caristia, et pauperes passim, afflicti lienteria, morerentur.

Towns taken in Gascoigne.

Navalis exercitus Regis Angliæ cepit tres villas in Wasconia muratas; cepit, scilicet, Burgum supra Mare, ac Blavium, atque Risuncium.

Insurrection in parts of Wales.

Sub eisdem diebus, Wallenses, insurgentes contra Regem in diversis partibus, diversos sibi principes præfecerunt; Aquilonares quemdam, "Madocum" nomine,

de genere Lewlini, Principis ultimi, qui villam et castrum de Karnervan combusserunt, magna Anglicorum multitudine, quæ ad nundinas venerat, interfecta. Occidentales Wallenses quendam, "Maylgonem" nomine, sequebantur, mala plurima perpetrantes. Tertius, "Mar-" ganus" dictus, Wallenses Australes concitans, Comitem Gloverniæ, Gilbertum, qui progenitores suos exhæredaverat, de terra sua, quæ "Glomergan" dicitur, expulit, et fugavit. A.D. 1294.

Rex Angliæ, auditis hiis rumoribus, Walliam cum exercitu est ingressus, sed mox occurrentibus sibi Wallensibus, exceptus gravi prœlio, repulsus est. King Edward is repulsed.

Robert de Winchelsee, Doctor Sacræ Paginæ, Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis a Cœlestino Papa confirmatur, et, in Angliam veniens, Johanni de Monemutha, Magistro Theologiæ, contulit episcopatum Landafensem, [1] auctoritate Papali, qui jam vacaverat multis annis. Robert de Winchelsee, Archbishop of Canterbury.

Cœlestinus Papa, prius dictus "Petrus de Murrone," de Ordine Sancti Benedicti monachus, et anachorita, se sentiens minus sufficientem ad tantum onus suffe-rendum, de consilio Benedicti Gaietani, cessit Papatui, edita prius Constitutione super cessione Pontificum Romanorum. Huic successit idem Benedictus, de quo expost prophetavit, eo quod eum ad cedendum subdole induxiset, idem Cœlestinus, ita:—"Ascendisti ut vul-" pes, regnabis ut leo, morieris ut canis." Contigitque prout vir sanctus prophetavit. Quia rigide Cardinales de Columpna tractavit, et quosdam deposuit, Regique Francorum in multis obstitit, et eum totis viribus elaboravit deponere, idem Rex Franciæ, confœderatis fratribus de Columpna, misso Senescallo Franciæ, [2] Willelmo de Longareto, comprehendit eum, et in equum effrenem, versa facie ad caudam, posuit. Quem sic discurrere usque ad novissimum halitum compulit; ac tandem, ad hæc omnia, Cardinalibus prædictis consen- Abdication of Pope Cœlestinus V. Succeeded by Benedict Gaetano, as Boniface VIII. His misfortunes, and miserable end.

[1] *authoritate* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Gulielmus* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1294. tientibus, fame necavit.—Sed hæc in sequentibus, cum tempus occurrerit rei gestæ. Ipse vero Constitutionem de cessione Romanorum Pontificum, editam per prædecessorem suum, factus Papa, revocavit.

Surrender of the city of Bayonne, A.D. 1295.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo quinto, in die Circumcisionis Domini, reddita est Domino Johanni de Sancto Johanne civitas Bayonensis, quam die præcedenti ceperant nautæ fortiter expugnatam. Obsidionem vero posuit circa castrum, quod post dies octo cepit; multæque munitiones et castra se reddiderunt Anglicis, cognita fraude Gallorum, ita quod exercitus Anglicorum excrevit ad quatuor millia peditum, et equitum ducentos.

King Edward is pressed by want of provisions in North Wales.

Rex Angliæ, transito flumine de Conewey, cum parte exercitus, infortunate captis bigis et curribus onustis victualibus, penuria coartatur; ita ut donec veniret ad eum reliqua pars exercitus, aquam melle mixtam biberet, paneque, cum salsis carnibus, vesceretur. Comes Warwici, cognito quod Wallenses in magna multitudine inter duo nemora in quadam planitie se adunassent, assumpta secum electa multitudine, cum balistariis et sagittariis, de nocte superveniens, eos undique circumcinxit; qui, fixis in terra lanceis, cuspides in oppositum irruentium dirigunt, ut sic se ab impetu equitum tuerentur. Sed Comes, inter duos equites posito uno balistario, ac jaculis balistarum magna parte eorum qui lanceas tenebant [1] prostrata, cum turma equitum in reliquos irruens, tantam stragem intulit, quanta eis una vice illata non creditur temporibus retroactis.

The Welch are defeated by the Earl of Warwick.

Beaumaris Castle built in Anglesey. Madoc taken prisoner.

Interim Rex Angliæ castrum construxit in insula Angleseyæ; quod "Bellum Mariscum" voluit appellari. Succisa sunt etiam nemora in Wallia quæ belli tempore indigenis parabant latibula; et firmata sunt castra maritima circa loca. Et cito post hæc captus est Madocus prædictus, capitaneus Wallicorum. A quo tempore werræ quieverunt in Wallia, et Wallenses more

[1] *prostratis* in MS.

Anglicorum pene cœperunt vivere, thesauros congregantes, et rerum damna temporalium metuentes. A.D. 1295.

Karolus, germanus Regis Franciæ, Wasconiam ingressus, Risuncium obsedit, et cepit. Eo tempore reddita est Anglis villa Sancti Severi. Karolus, germanus Regis Franciæ, eversis villa et castro Risuncii, [1] [properat obsidere Sanctum Severum,] quam Hugo de Veer, capitaneus, tresdecim septimanis tenuit, in magnum Gallorum dispendium, et tandem reddidit, salvis omnibus sua supellectili, et dato conductu usque ad duas dietas ab exercitu. Karolus, positis in villa custodibus, cum exercitu, reversus est in Franciam: post cujus discessum, mox capta est villa ab Anglicis iterato. Successes of the French and English. Capture, and recapture, of St. Sever.

Duo Cardinales, missi a Papa Bonifacio pro pace reformanda inter Reges, primo venerunt ad Regem Franciæ, deinde ad Regem Angliæ, petentes treugas biennales. Quibus respondit Rex Angliæ, quod non potuit treugas inire, propter fœdus initum, et juramento firmatum, inter ipsum et Regem Romanorum, sine consensu ejusdem. Quapropter Regem rogaverunt, ut Regis Romanorum consensum in inducias impetraret; quod Rex, ob reverentiam Curiæ Romanæ, fecit. Cardinales vero in Gallias sunt reversi. Two Cardinals, sent to treat of peace between England and France.

Circa præsens tempus, classis Gallicana, Doveriam veniens, spoliavit Prioratum, et ibidem perempto uno monacho veterano, magnam partem oppidi incenderunt. Quorum aliqui, priusquam potuerunt naves repetere, sunt occisi; captaque est una galea, plurimis interfectis de parte Gallorum. Dover ravaged by the French.

Nautæ Gernemuthenses Cæsaris Burgum, id est, Cherburgh, in Normannia, incendio [2] vastaverunt, spoliataque Abbathia Canonicorum Regularium, canonicum quendam, senem, in Angliam adduxerunt. Portesmouthenses ceperunt quindecim naves Hispanicas, onustas vino. Cherburgh burnt. Spanish ships taken by the people of Portsmouth.

[1] Omitted in MS.; supplied from Trivet.

[2] *vestaverunt* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1295. John Baliol enters into an alliance with France.

Johannes, Rex Scotiæ, [1] conversus in arcum pravum, destinatis ad Regem Francorum nunciis, iniit cum eo fœdus contra Regem Angliæ; petens, in affirmationem negotii, matrimonium contrahi inter filium suum, Edwardum, et puellam nobilem, Johannam, filiam Karoli, germani Regis Francorum; spondens se velle Regem Angliæ totis viribus impugnare, sicut in scriptis inter utrosque [2] reges confectis plenius continetur.

Twelve peers of Scotland chosen.

Scoti, per idem tempus, elegerunt sibi duodecim pares, quorum consilio Rex regnum suum gubernare debebat; per quos etiam, ut in præmissam consentiret proditionem, fuit inductus. Nempe horum consilio, et præcipue Abbatis de Meuros, cum ad Parliamentum venisset Regis Angliæ, illicentiatus clam discessit, tanquam fugitivus, ad magnum dedecus personæ suæ. Ob quam causam Rex Angliæ jussit omnia bona sua, mobilia et immobilia, quæ habebat in Anglia, confiscari; qui eo tempore plures villas et prædia pinguia possidebat.

Baliol's property in England is confiscated.

Treason of Sir Thomas Turbervile, and execution.

Thomas Turbervile, miles, captus in Wasconia, et Parisius, inter alios captivos, detentus, liber dimittitur, sponsione juramento firmata, quod contra Regem Angliæ Walliam commoveret. Qui, cum venisset in Angliam, proditionis convictus, tractus et suspensus fuit.

Death of Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester.

Gilbertus, Comes Gloverniæ, dies suos clausit, relictis ex uxore sua, Johanna, filiabus tribus, et unico filio, minoris ætatis, nomine "Gilberto."

Death of William, Earl of Pembroke.

Willelmus de Valentiis, Comes Pembrochiæ, concessit in fata; cui successit filius suus, Aymerus.

King Edward prepares to punish the Scots.

Rex Angliæ, Scotorum comperta proditione, disposuit regnum Scotiæ vi subjicere, nisi possent ab hiis quæ referebantur se legitime excusare.

The French are

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo sexto, Edmundus, germanus Regis Angliæ, et Henricus, Comes

[1] *fidelitatis immemor, destinatis,* in ed. Camden.

[2] *regis* in ed. Camden.

Lincolniæ, cum exercitu valido, in Wasconiam transfretarunt, ubi reddita sunt eis castra plura; cumque venissent prope Burdegaliam, ad duo milliaria, exercitus Gallorum, egressus de Burdegalia, velut inopinato, eis occurrit; commissoque gravi prœlio, Galli retrocedentes ad urbem fugiunt. Quos dum insequuntur tres milites et duo vexilliferi Johannis de Britannia et Alani la Souche, Galli, portis clausis, ceperunt. Comites vero magnam partem suburbii combusserunt. Et non multo post, Edmundus Comes vitæ finem fecit; fuerat autem Comes Leycestriæ et Lankastriæ. Post cujus mortem, exercitus Anglicanus obsedit urbem Aquensem; sed penuria victualium compellente, negotium est infectum.

A.D. 1296, defeated near Bordeaux.

Death of Edmund, Earl of Lincoln.

Eo tempore, Comes Attrabatensis, per Regem Francorum missus in Wasconiam, munitiones aliquas de manibus Anglorum extorsit.

Successes of the Count of Artois, against the English.

Per id tempus, Rex Angliæ, immenso coadunato exercitu, venit ad Novum Castrum super Tynam; ad quem locum fecerat Johannem, [1] regem Scotorum, citari per edictum publicum, ut de hiis quæ sibi debebant objici responderet. Quo ad diem præfixum nec per se comparente, nec per nuncium se excusante, Rex, de consilio suorum, decrevit ulterius procedendum. Interim, quidam miles, Robertus de Ros, dominus castelli de Werk, non obstante fidelitate quam Regi Angliæ juraverat, ad Scotos transfugit. Cujus germanus, Willelmus de Ros, Regem præmuniens de fratris perfidia, petivit sibi mitti subsidium, quo posset castrum defendere contra Scotos. Rex vero misit illuc mille viros; qui recepti in villa quadam, dicta "Prestfen," omnes eadem nocte a Scotis, quorum capitaneus erat præfatus transfuga, Robertus de Ros, interfecti sunt, exceptis paucis, qui dilapsi sunt fuga. Quo audito, mox Rex cum exercitu ad castrum illud properat, gavisus in hoc,

John Baliol, summoned to appear before King Edward, does not appear.

Treachery of Sir Robert de Ros.

English troops slain by him.

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1296. ut fertur, quod Scoti primo cœperunt hostilia exercere. Rex itaque [1] apud prædictum castrum de Werk Paschalem solemnitatem peregit. Quo tempore, septem Comites Scotiæ, videlicet, de Bowhan, de Menteth, de Stratherne, de Lewenes, de Ros, de Athel, de Mar, cum exercitu grandi, feria secunda Paschæ, Angliam sunt ingressi, vastantes omnia cæde et incendio, non parcentes sexui vel ætati; venientesque Karleolum urbem, ipsam obsidione cinxerunt. Viri vero civitatis, et fœminæ, lapidibus et telis Scotos a muris propulsabant, urbem viriliter defendentes. Videntes autem Scoti nil se proficere, feria quarta, omissa obsidione, in Scotiam redierunt.

Carlisle besieged by the Scots.

They raise the siege, and withdraw.

King Edward enters Scotland, and takes possession of the town of Berwick.

Eadem die, scilicet, feria quarta Paschalis hebdomadæ, Rex, cum exercitu, transito flumine Twede, pervenit prope Berwycum. Die vero Veneris, cum videret cives ad pacem redire nolle, factis insultibus tam per aquam quam per aridam, villam occupat, unico tantum de suis militibus interfecto. Nocte sequente, dormivit Rex in castro; jussitque Rex fodi fossam profundissimam inter Scotos et Berwicum, quæ esset terrori hostibus, et eosdem arctaret ab incursibus repentinis. Cumque Rex villam Berwici novo fossato muniret, venerunt ad eum duo Fratres Minores, de villa de Rokesburgh, deferentes litteras Johannis, Regis Scotiæ, tenorem hujusmodi continentes:—

Baliol renounces his homage and fealty to Edward.

"Magnifico Principi, Domino Edwardo, Dei gratia, "Regi Angliæ, Johannes, eadem gratia, Scotiæ Rex. "Cum vos ac illi de regno vestro, non ignorantibus "vobis, vel ignorare non debentibus, per [2] violentam "potentiam, nobis ac regni nostri incolis graves, immo "intolerabiles, injurias, contemptus, gravamina, necnon "enormia damna, contra nostras ac regni nostri liber-"tates, ac contra Deum et justitiam, notorie et fre-"quenter intuleritis; nos extra regnum, ad levem sug-

[1] *ad* in ed. Camden.

[2] *violentiam* in ed. Camden.

" gestionem, pro libitu vestræ voluntatis, citando, et A.D. 1296.
" indebite vexando; castra nostra, ac terras, possessio-
" nesque nostras, et nostrorum, infra regnum vestrum,
" sine nostris demeritis, occupando; bona nostra, ac
" subditorum nostrorum, tam per terram quam per
" mare, rapiendo, et infra regnum vestrum receptando;
" mercatores, et alios regni nostri incolas, occidendo;
" hominesque nostros de regno nostro violenter abdu-
" cendo, ipsosque ibidem detinendo et incarcerando;
" super quibus reformandis nuncios nostros sæpe trans-
" misimus; quæ non adhuc solum remanent incorrecta,
" verum etiam de die in diem per vos et vestros
" prioribus deteriora cumulantur: vos namque jam, cum
" innumerabili multitudine armatorum, vestro exercitu
" publice convocato, ad exhæredandum nos, et regni
" nostri incolas, ad fines regni nostri hostiliter accessistis;
" et, ultra progredientes, in regno nostro strages et
" incendia, necnon insultus et invasiones violentas, tam
" per terram quam per mare, commisistis inhumana.
" —Nos, dictas injurias, contemptus, et gravamina et
" damna, necnon et hostiles impugnationes, ulterius
" sustinere non valentes; nec in fidelitate et homagio
" vestro, licet per violentam impressionem impressam
" extortis, manendo; contra nos etiam ad defensionem
" nostram, et regni nostri, cujus defensioni et tuitioni
" vinculo juramenti sumus astricti, nos volentes eri-
" gere, fidelitatem et homagium, tam a nobis quam ab
" aliis quibuscunque regni nostri incolis, fidelibus nos-
" tris, ratione terrarum quas in vestro regno tenebant,
" et etiam ratione menagii seu retentionis vestræ,
" nomine nostro, ac nomine eorundem omnium ac sin-
" gulorum, vobis reddimus, per præsentes."

Rex Angliæ, audita præsenti littera, resignationem homagii sui admisit, et Cancellario suo præcepit hanc litteram registrari, ad perpetuam memoriam rei gestæ. King Edward orders the renunciation to be registered.

Septem Comites Scotiæ, prænominati superius, cum eorum comitiva, profecti sunt in Angliam, vastantes The Scots

A.D. 1296. ravage Hexham, and other places.

omnia cæde et incendio; inter quæ, Prioratum, cum tota villa, de Hexam, incendio destruxerunt; progressique ad domum Monialium de Ramelay, domos quasdam incenderunt, et cum ingenti præda in Scotiam sunt reversi.

Dunbar Castle betrayed to the Scots.

Patricius de Dunbar se Regi Angliæ, cum tota sua potestate, submisit. Castrum de Dunbar, cito post obsessum a Scotis, fraude quorundam in eo existentium, redditum est eisdem. Ad quod recuperandum, Comes Surreyæ et Southsexiæ, Johannes, et Willelmus, Comes Warwici, a Rege mittuntur, cum manu forti. Quibus superveniens Scottorum exercitus, ut obsessis ferrent auxilium, excipitur dura pugna, in qua dicunt occisa Scotorum decem millia. Sabbato sequenti, Regi advenienti redditum est castrum; in quo capti sunt tres Comites, sex Barones, cum militibus viginti novem, scutiferis octoginta tribus: quos Rex ad diversa castra Angliæ transmisit, arctius detinendos. Post captionem castri de Dunbar, reddita sunt ei castra de Rokesburgh et Edingburgh; castellum vero de Strivelin invenit vacuum, custodibus in fugam dilapsis. Transgressus vero mare Scoticum, venit ad villam Sancti Johannis, in festo Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, ubi per aliquot dies mansit.

The Scots are defeated, and the castle is regained.

Further successes of King Edward.

He reaches the town of St. John [Perth].

Baliol sues for peace, and makes submission.

Rex Scotorum, Johannes, videns se Regi Edwardo non posse resistere, pacem [1] supplex, et misericordiam, imploravit; venitque, ad mandatum Regis Angliæ, cum suis magnatibus, ad Castrum de [2] Brithin. Qui, post multos variosque tractatus, nude et pure subjecerunt se et regnum Scotiæ regiæ voluntati. In cujus subjectionis firmamentum, Rex Scotiæ filium suum obsidem tradidit, litterasque confecit, continentes in Gallico hunc tenorem:—

Form of such submission.

"Johannes, Dei gratia, Rex Scotiæ, omnibus præ-
"sentes litteras visuris vel audituris, salutem. Quia

[1] *suplex* in MS.

[2] *Brithni* in ed. Camden.

" nos, per malum consilium, falsumque, simplicitatem- A.D. 1296
" que nostram, graviter offendimus Dominum nostrum,
" Edwardum, Dei gratia, Regem Angliæ, Dominum
" Hiberniæ, Ducem Aquitaniæ, in multis, videlicet, in
" eo, quod, existentes et manentes in fide sua et suo
" homagio, alligavimus nos Regi Franciæ, qui tunc
" hostis ejus erat, et adhuc est, matrimonium procuran-
" tes fieri cum filia Domini Karoli, fratris ejus; et
" dominum nostrum gravaremus, Regemque Franciæ
" juvaremus, cum omni potestate nostra, per werram,
" modisque aliis. Deinde per nostrum perversum con-
" silium antedictum, diffidavimus dominum nostrum,
" Regem Angliæ, et posuimus nos extra fidem et ho-
" magium suum, reddendo ei homagium suum; et misi-
" mus gentes nostras in terram Angliæ, ad incendia
" facienda et prædas abducendas, homicidia et alia
" damna plurima perpetranda; et terram Scotiæ, quæ
" est de feodo suo, contra eum muniendo, ponentes et
" stabilientes gentes armatas in villis, castris, et alibi,
" ad defendendum terram contra eum [1] de feodo suo;
" pro quibus transgressionibus, dominus noster, Rex
" Angliæ antedictus, ingressus terram Scotiæ in forti-
" tudine sua, eam conquisivit et cepit, non obstante
" omni eo quod facere potuimus contra eum, sicut
" potest de jure facere, tanquam dominus, de feodo suo;
" quia nos homagium nostrum reddidimus, et fecimus
" rebellionem antedictam. Nos igitur, existentes adhuc
" in plena potestate nostra, et libera voluntate, reddi-
" mus ei terram Scotiæ, et gentem nostram, cum
" homagiis. In cujus rei testimonium, *et cætera.*"

Consignata littera, fractoque sigillo communi regni Scotiæ, processit Rex, ut videret montana Scotiæ, præcedente eum semper per unam dietam Episcopo Dunel- Edward proceeds to the north of Scotland.

[1] " *contra eum, et ad bladum suum* " *deforciandum. Propter ea, et pro* " *transgressionibus supradictis, do-* " *minus noster, etc;*" reading in the copy given in the new Edition of Rymer's *Fœdera.*

A.D. 1296. The Coronation Stone is removed to Westminster.

mensi. In redeundo autem, transivit per Abbathiam de Scone; ubi sublato lapide quo Reges Scotorum, tempore coronationis, solebant uti pro throno, transtulit illum usque Westmonasterium, jubens [1] inde fieri celebrantium cathedram sacerdotum.

Submission made by the nobles of Scotland, at a Parliament at Berwick. Form of submission.

Eo tempore, Rex, apud Berwicum facto Parliamento, omnium magnatum Scotiæ fidelitates recepit, et homagia; qui, ad rei gestæ memoriam perpetuam, confecerunt super hoc litteras patentes, eorum sigillis munitas, continentes in Gallico hunc tenorem:—

" Omnibus præsentes litteras visuris, vel audituris,
" Johannes Comyn, de Badenau, *et cætera*. Quia ad
" fidem et voluntatem illustrissimi principis, ac caris-
" simi domini nostri, Domini Edwardi, Dei gratia, Re-
" gis Angliæ, Domini Hiberniæ, ac Ducis Aquitaniæ,
" venimus, promittimus, pro nobis et hæredibus nostris,
" sub pœna corporum nostrorum et [2] catallorum, et
" omnium quæ habere possumus, quod nos serviemus
" ei bene et fideliter contra omnes gentes quæ vivere
" et mori possunt, omnibus vicibus quibus requiremur
" et præmuniemur per antedictum dominum nostrum,
" Regem Angliæ, vel hæredes suos. Et quod nos non
" sciemus damnum eorum, quin illud impediemus om-
" nibus viribus nostris, et eos præmuniemus. Et ad
" ista tenenda et servanda, obligamus nos et hæredes
" nostros, et omnia bona nostra. Insuper, et juravimus,
" tactis Sacrosanctis Evangeliis; et postea, nos omnes,
" et quilibet nostrum per se, fecit homagium domino
" nostro, Regi Angliæ, in hæc verba:—'Ego vester
" 'homo ligeus efficior de vita et membris, et terreno
" 'honore, contra omnes homines qui possunt vivere et
" 'mori.' Et idem dominus [3] noster, Rex recepit hoc
" homagium, sub hiis verbis:—'Nos illud recipimus
" 'pro terris quibus estis nunc seysiti, salvo jure nostro,
" 'aut alterius, et exceptis terris quas Johannes de

[1] *idem fieri* in ed. Camden.
[2] *catellarum* in MS.
[3] *noster, Rex* omitted in ed. Camden.

" ' Baliolo, quondam Rex Scotiæ, nobis contulit, post- A.D. 1291.
" ' quam [1] ei regnum Scotiæ liberavimus, si forte aliquas
" ' terras dedit.' Insuper, nos omnes, et singuli nos-
" trum, per se, fecimus fidelitatem domino nostro, Regi
" prædicto, in his verbis :—' Ero fidelis et legalis, fidem-
" ' que et legalitatem servabo, Edwardo, Regi Angliæ,
" ' et hæredibus suis, de vita et membris, et terreno
" ' honore, contra omnes homines qui possunt vivere
" ' et mori ; et nunquam pro aliquo portabo arma, nec
" ' ero in consilio vel auxilio, contra eum, vel hæredes
" ' suos, in aliquo casu qui possit contingere ; sed fide-
" ' liter recognoscam, et fideliter faciam, servitia quæ
" ' pertinent ad tenementum quod de eo tenere clamito.
" ' Sicut me Deus adjuvet, et omnes Sancti ejus.' In
" harum rerum testimonium, factæ sunt istæ litteræ
" patentes, et sigillis nostris signatæ. Data apud Ber-
" wicum, anno regni Regis Angliæ Edwardi, domini
" nostri, vicesimo quinto."

Warden, Treasurer, and Justiciar, of Scotland, appointed.

Hiis ita gestis, ordinavit Rex Custodem Scotiæ, Johannem de [2] Warenna, Surreyæ et Southsexiæ Comitem, Thesaurarium Hugonem de Cressingham, Justiciarium Willelmum de Ormesby ; cui mandavit Rex, ut omnes tenentes de Rege terras aliquas vocaret, et eorum homagia fidelitatesque reciperet.

Baliol confined in the Tower of London.

Johannem vero, Scotiæ quondam Regem, misit ad Turrim Londoniarum, assignata sibi decenti familia ; liberumque concessit exitum ad viginti milliaria circa urbem. Johannem vero Comyn de Badenhau, et alium de Bowhan, cæterosque terræ illius magnates, transtulit in Angliam ultra Trentam, interdicens reditum in Scotiam, sub pœna capitali, quousque guerra sua cum Rege Franciæ finiretur.

A Parliament at Bury St. Edmund's.

Post hæc, Rex Edwardus, veniens in Angliam, apud Sanctum Edmundum, Parliamentum tenuit, in crastino Animarum : in quo a civitatibus et burgis concessa est Regi octava, a populo vero reliquo duodecima, pars bonorum.

---

[1] *et* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Karenna* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1296. The clergy of England refuse a subsidy to the King.

Clerus, ob Constitutionem Bonifacii Papæ, hoc anno editam, quæ prohibet, sub pœna excommunicationis, ne talliæ vel exactiones a clero per sæculares principes quocunque modo exigantur, vel eis solvantur, de rebus Ecclesiæ, Regi, pro guerra sua petenti subsidium, denegavit. Rex autem, ut de meliori responso deliberarent, negotium in aliud Parliamentum, tenendum Londoniis, in crastino Sancti Hilarii, distulit.

Death of Peter de Murrone.

Hoc anno, Frater Petrus de Murrone, quondam Papa Cœlestinus, per Bonifacium Papam captus, et in arta detentus custodia, soluto præsentis vitæ ergastulo, ad cœlestia regna migravit.

A Parliament at London, A.D. 1297. Measures of the King against the clergy and the Archbishop of Canterbury.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo septimo, Parliamentum coactum est Londoniis, post festum Sancti Hillarii; in quo, clero persistente in denegatione subsidii, Rex ipsum a sua protectione exclusit. Pro qua tamen redimenda, multi per se, multi per mediatores, Regi bonorum suorum dederunt postea quintam partem. Rex, Archiepiscopum in hac parte rigidiorem comperiens, terras ejus omnes seysivit, et de bonis ejusdem debita, in rotulis Scaccarii inventa, præcepit cum celeritate levari. Nam idem Archiepiscopus, de consensu cleri, procuraverat a Papa inhibitionem, ne quis clericorum Regem respiceret de bonis Ecclesiæ.

John de Saint John defeated by the Count of Artois.

Per idem tempus, Comes Attrabatensis in Wasconia, in quodam conflictu, vicit Johannem de Sancto Johanne, custodem illarum partium, et captivum misit Parisius, cum aliis octo militibus, et scutiferis nonnullis, in pompa triumphi.

Increase of the duty on wools.

Hoc anno auxit Rex tributum de lanis, accipiens de quolibet sacco quadraginta solidos, cum prius ultra dimidiam marcam non daretur.

Dissensions between King Edward and the English nobility.

Rex, congregatis ad consilium [apud] Sarum quibusdam regni magnatibus, rogavit ut eorum aliqui in Wasconiam transfretarent. Quibus renuentibus, inter utrosque discordia pullulavit. Rex proinde citari fecit omnes qui debebant sibi servitium, cæterosque omnes qui viginti libratas terræ, et amplius, tenebant, ut parati

essent Londoniis in festo Sancti Petri ad Vincula, cum equis et armis, transfretaturi cum eo, et regiis stipendiis militaturi. A.D. 1297.

Per hoc tempus, Cardinales de Columpna, per Papam Bonifacium depositi, ad urbem se conferunt Nepesinam. Contra quos, damnatos tanquam schismaticos, et excommunicatos, Papa viros bellatores in Italia cruce-signavit. The Pope incites a Crusade against the Cardinals Colonna.

Philippus, Francorum Rex, ingressus Flandriam, partem patriæ devastavit. Comes vero Attrabatensis, reversus de Wasconia, et ingressus Flandriam, commisso bello, juxta Furnas, factus est superior, et villam de Furnas cepit. Successes of the French in Flanders.

Willelmus Waleys, latro publicus, Scotos ad rebellionem concitavit. Qui factus dux Scotorum, associato sibi Willelmo Douglas, Willelmum de Ormesby, Justiciarium, apud Scone opprimere cogitabat. Sed ille, licet tarde, præmunitus, suis omnibus pene relictis ad spolia hostium, eorum insidias vix evasit. Willelmus ergo Waleys, cum suis, palam debacchando in Anglicos, quoscunque invenire potuit, trucidavit. De quibus viros [1] religiosos, ligatis ad dorsum manibus, coegit saltare in fluvium; eorum submersionem in ludibrium convertendo. William de Ormesby, the Justiciar, with difficulty escapes from William Waleys. His cruelties.

Medio tempore, Rex audiens afflictionem Flandrensium, doluit vehementer; habensque maxime cordi iter in Flandriam, ad juvandum amicum suum, Comitem, sibi nuper confœderatum, totam militiam ultra fluvium de Trent assignavit Comiti de Warenna; ut Scotorum audaciam reprimeret, conatusque fastuosos. Scripsit etiam Johanni Comyn de [2] Badenau, et Comiti de Bowhan, ut, memores fidelitatis suæ, reverterentur in Scotiam, et populi sui suscitatum jam tumultum sedarent. Qui, juxta Regis mandatum, revertentes in Scotiam, quæ pacis erant segniter executi sunt. Edward desires to aid the Count of Flanders. He takes measures against the Scots.

---

[1] *religisos* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Badenam* in MS.

A.D. 1297. The Earl of Warenne proceeding into Scotland, the Scots negotiate for submission.

Comes de Warenna, profecturus in Scotiam, nepotem suum, Henricum de Percy, cum militia Karleoli, ante se præmisit; viditque ultra quendam lacum [1] considentem Scotorum exercitum; quorum capitanei erant Episcopus Glascuensis, Andreas de Morima, Senescallus Scotiæ, et Willelmus Waleys. Miles autem quidam, Ricardus de Lundi, qui Regi Angliæ nunquam homagium fecerat, relictis Scotis, factus transfuga, se statim Anglicis sociavit. Reliqui, pacem petentes, dediderunt se, salvis eis vita et membris, catallis et terris; ita ut omnia usque in hanc diem essent simpliciter condonata. Quam pacem, promissis obsidibus, et [2] inde scripto confecto, admisit Henricus Percy; si tamen hoc Regi placeret. Rex, super hoc consultus, ne [3] a cœpto impediretur itinere, annuit postulatis. Episcopus Glascuensis in Castro de Rokesburgh, Willelmus vero Duglas, in castro Berwici, custodiæ mancipantur.

Parliament at London; the Archbishop of Canterbury pardoned.

Parliamentum factum est Londoniis, in festo Sancti Petri ad Vincula; in quo Rex recepit Archiepiscopum in gratiam suam, omnibus quæ ejus erant restitutis eidem; et de exactionibus in regno factis per necessitates guerrarum se erga populum excusavit. Magnatibus vero, qui tunc aderant, præcepit ut fidelitatem filio suo facerent, ipsumque regni hæredem recognoscerent.

The Earl Marshal and Earl of Hereford refuse their service.

Comes Marescallus, et Hereforthensis, cum vocarentur ut sua officia, transfretando in Flandriam, exercerent, se subtraxerunt, et super hoc se per nuncios excusabant.

Ralph de Moynhermer liberated, and restored to his wife.

Rex Radulphum de Moynhermer, militem, quem filia sua, Johanna, Comitissa Gloverniæ, clam maritum acceperat, in gravem patris offensam, de castro Bristolliæ fecit educi, et uxori suæ reddi, restituendo ei omnes terras spectantes ad Comitatum Gloverniæ; imponens eidem servitium quinquaginta militum in terram Flandriæ. Liberavit etiam de carcere Comites de Asceles

[1] *consedentem* in MS.
[2] *idem scripto* in ed. Camden.
[3] "*accepto*" in the *Hist. Angl.* of Walsingham.

et de Menteth, et Johannem Comyn, cum quibusdam aliis militibus de Scotia, qui in castro de Dunbar capti fuerunt; ut secum in Flandria militarent. A.D. 1297. Scotch nobles liberated.

Collecto denique exercitu, Thoma de Berkeley Constabulario, et Galfrido de [1] Joinivilla Marescallo, factis, in Flandriam profecturus, iter suum dirigit, atque juxta Winchelseiam, ubi portum elegerat, consedit; illic viros bellatores, adventuros ad se de diversis partibus, per aliquot dies expectando. [2] Rege adhuc moram faciente apud Winchelsee, venerunt ad eum nuncii ex parte Comitum regni, petitiones in scriptis hujusmodi proponentes:— Edward proceeds to Winchelsea, on his way to Flanders.

" Hæc sunt nocumenta, quæ Archiepiscopi, Episcopi, " Abbates et Priores, Comites et Barones, et tota terræ " communitas, monstrant domino nostro, Regi, et humi- " liter rogant eum, ut ea, ad honorem suum, et salva- " tionem populi sui, velit corrigere et emendare. In " primis, videtur toti communitati terræ, quod præmu- " nitio facta eis per breve domini nostri Regis, non " erat satis sufficiens; quia non exprimebatur certus " locus quo debebant ire; quia, secundum locum, opor- " tebat facere providentiam, et pecunias habere. Et " sive deberent servitium facere, sive non, quia dictum " est communiter, quod dominus noster vult transfre- " tare in Flandriam, videtur toti communitati, quod ibi " non debent aliquod servitium facere; quia nec ipsi, " nec prædecessores sui, seu progenitores, unquam fece- " runt servitium in terra illa. Et quamvis ita esset, " quod deberent ibi servitium facere, vel alibi, tamen " non habent facultatem faciendi; quia nimis afflicti " sunt per diversa tallagia, auxilia, prisas, videlicet, de " frumento, avenis, braseo, lanis, coriis, bobus, vaccis, " carnibus salsis, sine solutione alicujus denarii, quibus " debuerant se sustentasse. Præter hæc, dicunt, quod " auxilium non possunt facere, propter paupertatem in " qua sunt, propter tallagia et prisas antedictas; quia Grievances presented by the nobles of England to the King.

[1] *Monibilza* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Regi* in MS.

A.D. 1297. " vix habent unde se sustentent, et multi sunt, qui " nullam sustentationem habent, nec terras suas colere " possunt. Præter hæc, tota communitas sentit se " valde gravatam, quia non tractantur secundum leges " et consuetudines terræ, secundum quas antecessores " sui tractari solebant; nec habent libertates quas sole- " bant habere, sed voluntarie excluduntur. Sentiunt " etiam se multi gravatos super hoc, quod solebant " tractari secundum articulos contentos in Magna Charta, " cujus articuli omnes sunt omissi, in majus damnum " populo universo. Propter quod, rogant Dominum " nostrum, Regem, quod velit ista corrigere, ad hono- " rem suum, et populi sui salvationem. [1] Præter " hæc, communitas terræ se sentit nimis gravatam de " vectigali lanarum, quod nimis est onerosum; videlicet, " de quolibet sacco quadraginta solidos, et de lana " fracta, de quolibet sacco septem marcas. Nam lana " Angliæ ascendit fere ad valorem medietatis totius " terræ, et vectigal quod inde solvitur, ascendit ad " quintam partem valoris totius terræ. Quia vero com- " munitas optat honorem et salutem Domino nostro " Regi, sicut tenetur velle, non videtur eis, quod sit " ad bonum Regis, quod transeat in Flandriam, nisi " plus esset assecuratus de Flandrensibus, pro se et " pro gente sua; et simul cum hoc, propter terram " Scotiæ, quæ rebellare incipit, ipso existente in terra; " et æstimant, quod pejus facient, cum certificati fue- " rint, quod Rex mare transierit. Nec solum pro terra " Scotiæ, sed etiam pro terris aliis, quæ non sunt " adhuc modo debito stabilitæ."

Answer of Edward thereto.

Rex ad præmissa respondit, se talibus non posse, sine suo Consilio, respondere; cujus pars aliqua jam trans-

[1] At this point the following passage in the "Grievances" is omitted, as given in Rishanger's *Chronicle*, and Walsingham's *Hist. Angl.*:— " *Propter hæc communitas terræ* " *sentit se nimis gravatam de As-* " *sisa Forestæ, quæ non est custo-* " *dita, sicut consuevit; nec Charta* " *Forestæ observatur; sed fiunt at-* " *tachiamenta pro libitu extra assi-* " *sam, aliter quam fieri consuevit.*"— The context, *Sentiunt etiam . . . . fieri consuevit,* is omitted in ed. Camden.

ivit in Flandriam, pars aliqua Londoniis est relicta. Rogavit ergo, per eosdem nuncios, præfatos Comites, quod si secum transire nollent, saltem regno suo in sua absentia non nocerent; sperabat autem, Deo favente, reverti, et regnum suum modo debito obtinere. A.D. 1297.

Duodecimo Kalendas Septembris, Rex, naves ingressus, velificavit usque Flandriam, et sexto die sequente applicuit juxta Sclusam; ubi facta dissensione inter Portismuthenses et Gernemuthenses, ventum est ad pugnam. Succumbentibus Gernemuthensibus, de navibus eorum viginti quinque incendio consumuntur. Edward sails for Flanders, and lands at Sluys.

Rex vero, ut venit ad Brugiam, comperit Brugenses plus inclinatos Gallicis, quam sibi, vel suo domino naturali. Quapropter, versus Gandavum dirigit iter suum; ubi dum moraretur, orta est discordia apud villam Sainonem, inter villanos et Anglicos; qui armati villam ipsam, multis interfectis, deprædati sunt, ad magnam displicentiam Regis nostri. Occurrences at Bruges and Ghent.

Rex Francorum, audito adventu Regis Anglorum in Flandriam, vehementer consternatus, ad unius dietæ spatium se subtraxit. The King of France retreats.

Papa Bonifacius scripsit interim principibus Alemanniæ, ut Regem Romanorum, Adulphum, qui nuper confœderatus fuerat Regi Angliæ, ne transiret in Flandriam, in auxilium Regis Angliæ, bellis quibus possent inquietarent, et ab invasione Gallorum modis omnibus impedirent. Pope Boniface takes measures to thwart the King of the Romans.

Comites Herefordiæ et Marescalli, cum suis complicibus, inhibuerunt Thesaurario et Baronibus de Scaccario, ne levari facerent octavum denarium a populo, qui Regi concessus fuerat apud Sanctum Edmundum. Induxerunt insuper cives Londoniarum, ut pro recuperandis suis libertatibus secum starent. Opposition to King Edward by the Earl of Hereford and the Earl Marshal.

Rege Angliæ in Flandria commorante, locum ejus in Anglia tenuit filius suus, Edwardus, adhibitis sibi tutoribus, viris providis et discretis. Prince Edward represents his father.

Eodem anno, Adulphus, Rex Alemanniæ, qui pactum quod pepigit cum Rege Angliæ prævaricaverat, orta Death of Adolph, King of the

A.D. 1297. dissensione inter ipsum et Albertum, filium Rodulphi, Ducis Austriæ, belloque indicto, juxta Maguntiam corruit sauciatus. Et regnavit idem Albertus pro eo.

Romans (A.D. 1298).

The Earl of Warenne vainly attempts to negotiate with William Waleys.

Exeunte mense Augusto, cum Comes Warennæ frustratam vidisset Scotorum promissionem, misit nuncios ad Willelmum Waleys, et Scotos qui cum eo erant, qui invitarent eos ad pacem, et pro retroactis sponderent impunitatem. Qui responderunt, se ad pugnam, non ad pacem, venisse.

The English are defeated by the Scots.

Commissum est ergo bellum juxta pontem de Strivelyn, satis inconsulte, in quo plures ex Anglicis sunt perempti. Comes Warennæ, Custos Scotiæ, fugiens ad Berwicum, commisit custodiam castri de Strivelyn Marmeduco de Twenge, qui, inter paucos qui evaserant, se salvavit. Senescallus Scotiæ et Comes de Lewenes, videntes Anglorum stragem, transfugerunt ad Scotos. Cecidit autem in hoc conflictu Hugo de Cressingham, Thesaurarius Scotiæ; quem Scoti, ob odium speciale, excoriantes, pellem ejus in particulas diviserunt. Comes Warennæ de Berwico fugit in Angliam, ad filium Regis, Edwardum; post quem fugerunt et cæteri qui in Berwico fuerant, villam Scotis relinquentes vacuam. Custodes autem castri, illud tenentes, viriliter defenderunt.

Flight of the Earl of Warenne.

Conditions of reconciliation proposed by the Earl of Hereford and Earl Marshal.

Cum hæc agerentur a Scotis, suasum est filio Regis a Consilio suo, ut Comites Herefordiæ et Marescalli vocaret, et, si quo modo posset, ad pacem alliceret. Qui hanc formam pacis, et nullam aliam, admittere voluerunt, videlicet:—

Quod Dominus Rex Magnam Chartam, cum cæteris Articulis adjectis, et Chartam de Foresta, annuat et confirmet; et quod nullum auxilium vel vexationem exigat a clero vel populo in posterum, absque consilio et assensu; et quod omnem offensam Comitibus, et eorum confœderatis, dimittat.

Articles to be added to Magna Charta.

Articuli adjecti ad Magnam Chartam sunt isti.—

"Nullum tallagium vel auxilium per nos vel hæredes "nostros de cætero in regno nostro imponatur, seu "levetur, sine voluntate et assensu communi Archi-

" episcoporum, Episcoporum, Abbatum, et aliorum Præ- A.D. 1297.
" latorum, Comitum, Baronum, Militum, burgensium,
" et aliorum liberorum hominum.

" Nullus minister noster, vel hæredum nostrorum, in
" regno nostro, capiat blada, lanas, coria, aut aliqua
" alia bona, cujuscunque, sine voluntate et assensu
" illius cujus fuerint. Nihil capiatur de cætero, nomine
" vectigalis, de sacco lanæ. Volumus etiam, et conce-
" dimus, pro nobis et hæredibus nostris, quod omnes
" clerici et laici de regno nostro habeant omnes leges,
" libertates, et omnes consuetudines, ita libere et in-
" tegre, sicut eas aliquo tempore consueverunt melius
" pleniusque habere. Et si contra illas, vel quemcun-
" que Articulum in præsenti Charta contentum, Statuta
" fuerint edita per nos, vel antecessores nostros, vel
" consuetudines introductæ, volumus et concedimus,
" quod hujusmodi Statuta vacua [1] sint, et nulla, in
" perpetuum.

" Remisimus etiam Humfrido de Boun, Comiti Here-
" fordiæ et Etssexiæ, Constabulario Angliæ, Roberto
" Bigod, Comiti Northfolciæ, Marescallo Angliæ, et aliis
" Comitibus, Baronibus, Militibus, Armigeris, Johanni
" de Ferrariis, ac omnibus aliis de eorum societate,
" confœderatione, et concordia, existentibus, necnon
" omnibus viginti libratas terrarum tenentibus, in regno
" nostro, sive de nobis, sive de alio quocunque, in
" capite, qui ad transfretandum nobiscum in Flandriam
" certo die notato vocati fuerunt, et non venerunt,
" rancorem nostrum, et malam voluntatem, quam, ex
" causis prædictis, erga eos habuimus, et transgressiones,
" si quas nobis vel nostris fecerint, usque ad præsentis
" Chartæ confectionem. Et ad majorem securitatem
" hujus rei, volumus et concedimus, pro nobis et hære-
" dibus nostris, quod omnes Archiepiscopi Angliæ, et
" Episcopi, in perpetuum, in suis Cathedralibus ecclesiis,

[1] *sunt* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1297. " habita præsenti Charta, et lecta, excommunicent pub-
" lice, et in singulis ecclesiis suarum Diœcesium ex-
" communicari faciant, [1] seu excommunicatos denunciare,
" bis in anno, omnes qui, contra tenorem præsentis
" Chartæ, vim, et effectum, in quocunque articulo
" scienter fecerint, aut fieri procuraverint, quovis-
" modo."

King Edward confirms the Articles.

Missis ergo in Flandriam nunciis ad ipsum Regem, confirmationem omnium istorum sub sigillo suo, (tanquam ab illo qui in arto positus erat, et cedendum malitiæ temporis [2] censuit,) obtinuerunt. Pro confirmatione harum rerum omnium, dedit populus Anglicanus Regi denarium nonum bonorum suorum; clerus vero Cantuariensis decimum, et clerus Eboracensis quintum, quia propior damno fuit.

Fresh proposals for peace made by the Pope, A.D. 1298.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo octavo, tenuit Rex Edwardus festum Natalis in Flandria, apud Gandavum; ad quem venerunt ex parte Papæ nuncii, rogantes eum, sub eadem forma qua ante ex parte Papæ rogaverant Regem Franciæ, ut nuncios solemnes ad Curiam Romanam, concessa eis plena potestate tractandi, ordinandi, et perficiendi, omnia quæ pacis reformationem tangerent, destinaret; et ipse Apostolicus, non tanquam judex, sed ut bonus pacis mediator, in nullius præjudicium, satageret ad pacem et tranquillitatem regnorum, Regum amicitiam in statum pristinum reformare. Et quia hoc absque treugis fieri non posse judicavit Summus Pontifex, ideo per hos nuncios biennales inducias, quas per Cardinales imploraverat, indixit de novo, sub pœna excommunicationis et Interdicti terrarum suarum.

The King of England consents to a truce.

Rex Angliæ, perpendens se in Francia periculose commorantem, illucque per informationem Comitis Flandriæ minus prudenter attractum, regnumque proprium intestina seditione turbatum, fiduciamque suam

[1] *se* in MS. | [2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

de Rege Romanorum per Papam, sibi minus benevolum, regnum Teutoniæ turbantem, frustratam, consensit in treugas indictas. Transmittunt ergo Reges utrique solemnes nuncios, cum plena potestate, ad Romanam Curiam, ut per mediationem Apostolici, non tanquam judicis, sed amicabilis compositoris, discussis negotiis, pax inter Reges, et concordia, reformaretur. A.D. 1298.

Post hæc, apud Gandavum suscitata est seditio per filios Comitis Flandriæ et villanos, contra Anglicos; quorum villa per Wallenses incensa fuisset, nisi Rex, accurrente ad eum Comite, concitatum impetum impedisset. Sedition at Ghent against the English.

Eo tempore, Comes Warennæ, Custos Scotiæ, ac Comites alii, juxta mandatum regium, apud Eboracum convenientes, publicata confirmatione chartarum, articulorumque adjectorum, versus Scotiam processerunt. Majores Scotorum, Eboracum non venientes, secundum vocationem regiam, se intra terræ suæ terminos tenuerunt. The Earl of Warenne and the other Earls proceed towards Scotland.

Willelmus Waleys castrum de [1] Rokesburgia jam multis diebus obsederat, sed, audito adventu Anglorum, diffugit. Comites vero regni, pervenientes Rokesburgiam, munito castro, et consolatis obsessis, audierunt a Rege de reditu suo, [2] jubente ne ante adventum suum aliquid in Scotia attentarent, per quod possent discrimen incurrere quovismodo. William Waleys raises the siege of Rokesburgh.

Rex Angliæ, reversurus ad propria, cum venisset ad villam vocatam [3] "Ardeburgiam," Scoti fere cuncti quos secum in Flandriam duxerat, ab ipso decedentes, Parisius abierunt. Cumque Rex venisset in Angliam, misit ad Regem Francorum pro liberatione captivorum, juxta formam condictam. Convenerat nempe inter eos, ut captivi interim, taxata eorum redemptione, liberentur hinc inde, ea conditione, ut, si pax non fieret, redirent ad suas custodias, vel redemptionem solverent jam taxatam. Rex vero Francorum exegit a nunciis libera- The Scots desert the King of England in Flanders.

[1] *Rokesburiæ* in ed. Camden.
[2] *jubentes* in MS.
[3] *Ardeburgia* in MS.

A.D. 1298. tionem Johannis, quondam Regis Scotiæ, qui de suis
The King of France demands the liberation of Baliol, which is refused. fuerat, ut asseruit, alligatis. Rex Angliæ respondit conventionem tantum de illis captivis factam, qui in werra Wasconiæ capti fuerant hinc et inde; quapropter, dilata est in annum sequentem liberatio captivorum.

Parliament at York. Rex Edwardus, ad reprimendum Scotorum rebelliones, Parliamentum tenuit Eboraci, vocatisque Scotorum majoribus, cum non venirent, indixit suis, ut, cum equis

An English army assembled at Rokesburgh. et armis, parati essent Rokesburgiæ, in festo Sancti Johannis Baptistæ. Tempore præfixo affuit Rex, paratus ad proficiscendum, profectusque est, cum exercitu, ad quamdam villam vocatam "Temple [1] Histone"; ubi dum moraretur Scotorum exercitus, putans Anglos confectos inedia, venit prope locum. Quod Rex prænoscens, processit Scotis obviam, et nocte jam cœca in quadam campi planitie cum armato consedit exercitu. In aurora, clamor factus est horribilis, tanquam Scoti castra

Accident to King Edward. regia occupassent. Regis dextrarius, tumultuoso actus clamore, Regem jam ascendentem recalcitrando dejecit, ejusque lateri calces posteriores allidens, duas ei costas confregit. Qui nihilominus ascendens equum alium, exercitum progredientem ad bellum comitari non omisit. In die Beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ, commisso inter

Defeat of the Scots [at Falkirk]. Anglos et Scotos cruentissimo bello, Scoti terga dedere, occisis ex eis sexaginta millibus ea die. Willelmus Waleys et majores Scotiæ ab isto discrimine ad nemora confugerunt. Post hæc, vastata est villa Sancti Andreæ per Anglos, et captum castrum de Louhmaban. Cum autem venisset Rex Carleolum, Comites Herefordiæ et Marescalli, licentia accepta, ad propria redierunt. Rex vero, revertendo, pervenit ad [2] Coldingham, ubi festum Natalis Domini expectavit.

Death of Adolph, King of the Romans. Hoc anno, Albertus, Dux Austriæ, contra Adulphum, Regem Romanorum, dimicans, ipsum [3] interfecit in campo, et sibi successit, in Regem solemniter coronatus.

---

[1] *Historie* in ed. Camden.
[2] Now Cottingham.
[3] See p. 210 *ante*.

Petrus et Jacobus de Columpna, quondam Cardinales, ab exercitu Papæ Præneste obsessi, tandem se humiliant, et, venientes ad Papam, veniam postulant de commissis. A.D. 1298. Submission to the Pope, of the Cardinals Colonna.

Anno millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo nono, Papa Bonifacius, receptis Regum submissionibus, pacem et concordiam inter Reges ordinavit; ita ut Rex Angliæ sororem, et filius ejus filiam, Regis Francorum ducerent, certis pro utrisque dotibus diffinitis; et Ducatus Aquitaniæ in manus Domini Papæ traderetur, quousque, discussa utriusque justitia, justo domino redderetur; et quod Rex Angliæ naves superstites, cum mercibus, de illis quæ raptæ fuerant, restitueret. Sed super hiis duobus articulis intercedit magna dilatio, Rege Francorum partem quam in Wasconia occupaverat, tradere renuente. Peace established by the Pope, A.D. 1299. Hesitation of the King of France.

Petrus et Jacobus de Columpna, timentes, iterum fugiunt, et toto tempore Bonifacii Papæ se occultant. Flight of the Cardinals Colonna.

In principio Quadragesimæ, Rex Edwardus tenuit Parliamentum Londoniis; in quo rogatus a Comitibus sæpedictis, ut Chartarum confirmationem renovaret, secundum quod in Scotia promiserat, post aliquas dilationes, annuit eorum petitioni, hac conditione,—"Salvo "jure coronæ nostræ," in fine adjecta. Quam cum audissent Comites, cum displicentia, ad propria recesserunt. Sed revocatis ipsis ad quindenam Paschæ, ad vota eorum absolute omnia sunt concessa. Parliament at London. Re-confirmation of the Charters.

Nuncii Papales venere Cantuariam, Regem rogantes, ut Johannem, quondam Regem Scotiæ, suæ liberaret custodiæ, spondentes quod Regem et regnum ab omni quod per hanc posset contingere liberationem periculo præservarent. Quorum petitioni Rex condescendens, respondit se ipsum Johannem, tanquam seductorem, falsum et perjurum, ad Papam missurum. Ad quæ nuncii responderunt,—"Et nos eum pro tali suscipimus, "Summo Pontifici præsentandum." Cumque dictus Johannes, cum præfatis nunciis, venisset Doveriam, et The Pope demands the liberation of Baliol.

A.D. 1299. cistæ suæ in navem inferrentur, quidam regales, qui eos ad mare deduxerant, clitellas dicti Johannis aperiri fecerunt; in quibus inventa est una corona regia regni Scotorum aurea, et multa vasa aurea et argentea, et pecuniæ non parva summa; quæ universa Regi Angliæ sunt allata. Rex illico coronam auream offerri jussit Beato Thomæ Martyri, et sigillum commune Scotiæ, quod repertum est ibidem inter cætera, jussit sibimet reservari; pecuniam vero totam remisit dicto Johanni, ad expensas itineris. Quod factum nuncii plurimum commendarunt. Johannem vero in terram Balioli, quam habuit in regno Franciæ, transtulerunt, et ibidem, sub certa prælatorum custodia, reliquerunt. Post hæc, et alii captivi, a Regibus detenti, hinc inde, secundum conditiones in treugarum [2] concessione positas, liberantur.

Baliol is deprived of the regalia of Scotland.

He is taken to Bailleul, in France.

King Edward marries Margaret, sister of the King of France.

Rex Angliæ sororem Regis Franciæ, Margaretam, Cantuariæ, duxit uxorem. His nuptiis interfuere Dux Burgundiæ, Comes Britanniæ, et cuncti fere principes nominati, qui citra Hispaniam morabantur. Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus solemnizationem matrimonii consummavit.

The King and Queen visit the Abbey of St. Alban's.

Rex venit ad Sanctum Albanum, petens humiliter orationes et suffragia fratrum illius loci: post cujus recessum, accessit Regina ad monasterium, et obtulit duos pannos aureos Beato Albano; ubi etiam perhendinavit per tres hebdomadas, cum familia magna nimis. Ante recessum suum, ingressa Capitulum, suscepit beneficium sororitatis, cum magna devotione.

Death of Edmund, Earl of Cornwall, and reversion of the County to the Crown, A.D. 1300.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo, obiit, sine prole, Edmundus, Comes Cornubiæ, filius Ricardi, quondam Comitis Cornubiæ, et Regis Alemanniæ. Qua de causa, rediit Comitatus ille ad coronam. Corpus Edmundi Comitis apud Assherugge, locum quem fundaverat, est humatum.

---

[1] *possessione* in MS.

Rex Angliæ direxit ad Papam nuncios, qui declararent injurias sibi irrogatas per Scotos, et eorum falsitatem manifestarent; insuper et eundem deprecarentur, ne Scotis, mendacii fabricatoribus, proditoribus, et homicidis, de cætero sinum aperiret protectionis, quorum fraudulenta persuasio Papalem sollicitudinem circumvenerat. Sed Papa, cujus stomachus a corruptione Scotorum nondum digestus fuerat, Regi supplicat, necnon et mandat, ut, sui contemplatione, Scotis treugas indulgeat a die Omnium Sanctorum usque ad festum Pentecostes; et factum est ita. A.D. 1300. King Edward sends envoys to the Pope, to oppose the Scots. A truce is granted.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo primo, natus est Regi filius ex Margareta Regina; quem vocavit "Edmun-"dum." Birth of Prince Edmund, A.D. 1301.

Appamiensis Episcopus, de conspiratione contra Regem Franciæ accusatus, et ad Curiam Regis vocatus, in custodia detinetur. Mense vero Februario, ad mandatum Papæ liberatus, jubetur, una cum nuncio Domini Papæ, regnum evacuare, infra certum terminum a Rege præfixum. Quo facto, Papa sic exasperatus est, ut omnes gratias, a se vel suis prædecessoribus concessas Francorum Regibus, revocaret, et in eundem Regem excommunicationis sententiam fulminaret: quam tamen Regi nemo ausus est nunciare, vel in regno Franciæ publicare. Fecit etiam Papa citari cunctos prælatos de regno Franciæ, necnon et omnes Magistros in Theologia, et in Jure, tam Canonico quam Civili, Doctores, ut coram eo Romæ, in Kalendis Novembris, comparerent. Rex vero Franciæ publico prohibuit edicto, ne quis aurum vel argentum, seu merces quascunque, asportaret de regno suo, sub forisfactione omnium bonorum, adjecta nihilominus pœna gravi; misitque Domino Papæ nuncium, dictum "Petrum de Flote," qui mandata Regis constantissime coram Papa prosequebatur. De cujus audacia Papa exasperatus, dicto Petro respondit:—"Nos habe-"mus," inquit, "utramque potestatem." Et illico Petrus, pro sûo domino, respondit,—"Utique, Domine, sed Philip, King of France, offends Pope Boniface. Further offence given to the Pope by the King's envoy.

A.D. 1301. " vestra est verbalis, nostra autem realis." Quo responso tantum excanduit ira Papæ, ut diceret se movere contra eum cœlum et terram.

Parliament at Stamford. Rex Angliæ tenuit Parliamentum Staunfordiæ, ad quod convenerunt Comites et Barones, cum equis et armis; eo proposito, prout dicebatur, ut executionem Chartæ de Foresta, dilatam hactenus, extorquerent. Edward conciliates the nobles. Rex vero eorum voluntati in omnibus condescendit.

Pope Boniface claims Scotland, in behalf of the Romish Church. Eodem anno, Papa direxit litteras Regi Angliæ, quibus asseruit regnum Scotiæ ad jus Romanæ Ecclesiæ pertinere, Regemque Angliæ subjectionem ejus contra Deum et justitiam, et in præjudicium Sedis Apostolicæ, vendicare; allegans subscriptas ratiunculas. — Grounds of the claim. " Primo; " quia cum Rex Henricus, pater istius, obtinuisset " auxilium, in werra sua contra Simonem de Monte " Forti, a Rege Scotorum, Alexandro, ne hoc auxilium " jure subjectionis cujuslibet, aut debiti, petitum aut " præstitum putaretur, idem Henricus, per litteras suas " patentes, recognovit non ex debito recepisse, sed ex " gratia speciali. Item, ad Coronationem hujus Regis " vocatus per litteras, ut ei præsentiam amicabilem in " tantis solemniis amicus exhiberet, non venit ex debito, " sed ex gratia speciali. Insuper, pro terris de Tyn- " dale et Penreth, in regno Angliæ positis, cum Rex " Scotiæ ad præsentiam Regis Angliæ se personaliter " contulisset, eidem fidelitatem impensurus pro eisdem " terris tantum, in Anglia sitis, non ut Rex Scotiæ, nec " pro regno Scotiæ, fidelitatem eandem exhibuit; quia " palam coram populo protestatum est, quod pro regno " Scotiæ fidelitatem aliquam Regi Angliæ facere non " debebat. Item, quod prædictus Rex Alexander reliquit " puellam hæredem, nomine 'Margaretam,' neptem Re- " gis Angliæ, tunc minoris ætatis; cujus custodia non " ad Regem Angliæ velut dominum supremum perve- " nit; sed ad cæteros ejusdem regni Scotiæ proceres, " ad hoc electos. Redarguebat etiam Papa Regem, eo " quod post mortem dicti Alexandri Regis, Scotos,

" tanquam acephalos, et ducis suffragium non habentes, A.D. 1301.
" ipsos per vim sibi subjugavit, et metum, in præju-
" dicium, et gravamen non modicum, Romanæ Ecclesiæ;
" adjiciens, quod cum Dominus Papa officium legatio-
" nis alicui committit exequendum in regno Angliæ,
" causa solutionis decimæ, vel etiam quavis alia causa
" rationabili, et hujusmodi legatio litteris et privilegio
" speciali dictæ Sedis Apostolicæ, ad dictum regnum
" Scotiæ se non extendat, resistendum est, et obstan-
" dum, hujusmodi legationi; prout tempore felicis
" recordationis contigit evidenter. Nam Legatus ipse
" ad prædictum regnum Scotiæ aliquatenus admissus
" non fuit, donec per Litteras Apostolicas speciales sibi
" legationis officium fuit in eodem commissum. Item,
" addidit, quod regnum per Beati Petri Apostoli vene-
" randas reliquias, non sine superni dono muneris, con-
" versum extitit ad fidei Catholicæ unitatem. Et
" qualiter etiam antiquis temporibus Eboracensis Archi-
" episcopus, qui tunc erat, mota per eum super jure
" metropolitano adversus prælatos Scotiæ quæstione,
" pro se nequivit sententiam obtinere."

Demands made of King Edward by the Pope.

His propositis, monuit Papa Regem per litteras suas, quod Episcopos, Abbates, electos, et omnes alios regni Scotiæ, quos detinebat captivos in carcere, libere abire permitteret; et quod officiales suos de regno Scotiæ memorato revocaret, quos, in præjudicium et injuriam, et grave scandalum, fidelium populorum, et oppressionem justorum, in dicto regno statuerat et ordinaverat; ita quod acceptior et gratior fieret Deo, et favorem Apostolicæ Sedis in hoc sibi acquireret plenius. Et si in eodem regno Scotiæ, vel aliqua ejus parte, jus aliquod habere se assereret, per procuratores et nuncios suos, ad hoc specialiter constitutos, cum omnibus juribus et munimentis hujusmodi negotium tangentibus, ad Sedem Apostolicam destinaret, super præmissis plenæ complementum justitiæ recepturus.

Letter sent by King Edward to

Rex Angliæ, litteris Apostolicis ex deliberato, apud Lincolniam convocato Consilio, pro jure suo declarando,

A.D. 1301. the Pope, declaratory of his right to the kingdom of Scotland.

litteram hujus tenoris rescripsit, centum sigillis signatam:—"Sanctissimo in Christo Patri, Domino B[onifacio], divina Providentia, Sanctæ Romanæ Ecclesiæ Summo Pontifici, Edwardus, Dei gratia, Rex Angliæ, Dominus Hiberniæ, Dux Aquitanniæ, salutem, et devota pedum oscula beatorum. Infra scripta, non in forma, nec in figura judicii, sed omnino extra judicium proferenda sanctæ Paternitatis vestræ conscientiæ, vobis transmisimus exhibenda. Altissimus, inspector cordium, vestræ scrinio memoriæ indelebili stylo novit inscribi, quod antecessores et progenitores nostri, Reges Angliæ, juris superioris et directi dominii, ab antiquissimis retro temporibus, regno Scotiæ, et omnibus ipsius Regibus, in temporalibus, et annexis eisdem, [1] præfuerunt; et ab eisdem pro regno Scotiæ, et ejusdem proceribus, a quibus habere volebant, legalia homagia receperunt, et fidelitatis debita juramenta. Nos, juris et dominii possessionem continuantes pro tempore nostro, eadem tam a Rege recepimus, quam a proceribus ipsius regni. Quinimmo tanta juris et dominii prærogativa super regnum Scotiæ, et ejusdem Regem, gaudebant, quod regnum ipsum suis fidelibus conferebant. Reges etiam ex justis causis amovebant, et constituebant sub se, loco ipsorum, alios regnaturos. Quæ proculdubio notoria fuisse et esse creduntur apud omnes, licet aliud forsan paternis vestris auribus per pacis æmulos, et rebellionis filios, fuerit falsa insinuatione suggestum; a quorum machinosis et imaginariis figmentis ut vestræ Sanctitatis oculus avertatur, suppliciter quæsumus, et paternam clementiam et excellentiam devotis affectibus exoramus. Sub temporibus Hely et Samuelis Prophetæ, vir quidam, strenuus et insignis, 'Brutus' nomine, de genere Trojanorum, post excidium urbis Trojæ, cum multis nobilibus Trojanorum,

[1] This and the three following words are omitted in ed. Camden.

" applicuit in quandam insulam, tunc 'Albion' appel- A.D. 1301.
" latam, quæ tunc temporis solos gigantes habitatores
" habuit. Quibus devictis et occisis, eam, de nomine
" suo, 'Britanniam,' sociosque suos 'Britones,' appellavit.
" Qui, moriturus, regnum suum tribus filiis suis dele-
" gavit. Locrino, primogenito, dedit illam partem, quæ
" quondam 'Loegria,' nunc vero 'Anglia,' nominatur.
" Albanacto, filio natu secundo, dedit Albaniam, quæ
" nunc 'Scotia' vocitatur. Cambro vero, tertio filio,
" dedit Kambriam, quæ modo 'Wallia' nomen habet;
" reservata Locrino, seniori, regia dignitate. Biennio
" post mortem Bruti, applicuit in Albania Rex Hun-
" norum, 'Humber' nomine, qui Albanactum, fratrem
" Locrini, peremit. Quem mox Locrinus fugere com-
" pulit ad fluvium, in quo submersus est, qui, ab ejus
" prænomine, nunc usque 'Humber' dicitur: et sic
" Albania devolvitur ad Locrinum. Expost, Dunwallus,
" Rex Britonum, Staterium, Regem Scotiæ, sibi rebel-
" lem, occidit, et terram in deditionem accepit. Item,
" duo filii Dunwallonis, sive Dunwalli, scilicet, Beli-
" nus et Brennius, inter se regnum patris sui divise-
" runt, ita quod Belinus, senior, diadema insulæ, cum
" Britannia, Wallia, possedit, et Cornubia. Brennius
" vero accepit Scotiam, sub eo regnaturus. [1] Item, Ar-
" thurus, Rex Britonum famosissimus, Scotiam, sibi
" rebellem, subjecit, et fere totam gentem delevit; et
" expost quemdam, nomine 'Anguselum,' præfecit in
" regem Scotiæ; qui in famoso suo convivio, apud Ur-
" bem Legionum, servitium pro regno suo exhibens de-
" bitum, gladium Arthuri detulit coram eo; et succes-
" sive omnes Reges Scotiæ Regibus Britonum subjecti
" fuere. Succedentes autem Reges Angliæ in eadem
" insula ipsius monarchiam et dominium possedere.
" Edwardus, dictus 'Senior,' filius Alfredi, Regis An-
" gliæ, Scotorum, Cumbrorum, et Stregwallorum, Reges,

---

[1] " *Petebat enim Trojana consue-*
'tudo, ut dignitas hæreditatis primo-
genito perveniret."—See Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.* Vol. I. p. 88.

A.D. 1301. " tanquam superiori domino, subjectos habuit, et sub-
" missos. Adelstanus, Rex Angliæ, Constantinum, Re-
" gem Scotorum, sub se regnaturum constituit, dicens,
" 'Gloriosius esse regem facere, quam regem esse.' Et
" est dignum memoria, quod idem Adelstanus, inter-
" cedente Sancto Johanne de Beverlaco, quondam Ar-
" chiepiscopo Eborum, Scotos, rebellantes ei, devicit.
" Qui, gratias agens Deo, Beatoque Johanni, deprecа-
" tus est, ut, interveniente Beato Johanne præfato, ei
" aliquod signum evidens ostenderet, per quod tam
" succedentes quam præsentes cognoscere possent, Sco-
" tos Anglorum regno jure debere subjici. Et videns
" quosdam scopulos prope Dunbar, in Scotia, extracto
" gladio, percussit prominentiorem scopulum; et mox,
" silex, ictu mucronis, virtute Dei, ita cavata fuit, ut
" mensuram ulnæ in longitudine contineret. Quod mi-
" raculum, velut omni hebdomada, per totum annum,
" in Legenda Sancti Johannis, in rei gestæ memoriam,
" recitatur, quando servitium fuit de Sancto Johanne,
" in Beverlacensi ecclesia. Item, Constantinus, Rex
" Scotorum, et Eugenius, Rex Cumbrorum, ad prædic-
" tum Regem Angliæ, Ethelstanum, post aliquam dis-
" sensionem inter eos habitam, venientes, se, cum suis
" regnis, eidem Adelstano dedidere; cujus facti gratia,
" filiam Constantini ipse Adelstanus de sacro fonte sus-
" cepit. Item, Edredo, Regi Angliæ, Scoti sine bello se
" subdiderunt, et eidem Regi Edredo, tanquam domino,
" fidelitatem juraverunt; quodam Iricio Rege super eos
" constituto. Item, cum Edgarus, Rex Angliæ, Regem
" Scotorum, Kynadium, et Cumbrorum, Malcolmum,
" Regem Insularum, Malkerium, et alios quinque sub-
" regulos, scilicet, Duneualdum, Syfoth, Hunewaldum,
" Jacob, et [1] Inchillum, subjugasset, et, remigando per
" fluvium Dee, juxta Cestriam, in quadam die, prope
" proram sedisset, et navim ipsemet gubernasset, fertur
" ipsum dixisse, successores suos posse gloriari se

[1] Qy. *Ruchillum*, as in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.* Vol. I. p. 89.

" Reges Anglorum esse, cum tanta honoris prærogativa A.D. 1301.
" fruerentur, quod subjectam haberent tot Regum po-
" tentiam. Post dictum Edgarum, regnaverunt succes-
" sive Reges Angliæ, Sanctus Edwardus Martyr, Egel-
" redus, frater ejus, Edmundus, dictus 'Yrenside,' filius
" Egelredi, et Cnutus, qui, eorum temporibus, regnum
" Scotiæ in sua subjectione pacifice tenuerunt: hoc
" duntaxat excepto, quod quinto decimo anno Cnuti
" prædicti, idem Cnutus, [1] Scotia rebellante, expedi-
" tione illuc ducta, Regem Scotiæ, Malcolmum, parvo
" subegit negotio, subditusque est eidem præfatus Mal-
" colmus. Cui Haraldus, filius ejusdem Cnuti, et Har-
" decnutus, frater ejus, unus post alium, Reges Angliæ,
" successerunt; quibus sic regnantibus, subjectionem
" pacificam regni Scotiæ habuerunt. Item, Sanctus
" Edwardus, Rex Angliæ, regnum Scotiæ Malcolmo,
" filio Regis Cumbrorum, dedit, de se tenendum. Item,
" Willelmus Bastardus, Rex Angliæ, a Malcolmo, Rege
" Scotiæ, tanquam a suo homine, sibi subdito, re-
" cepit homagium. Item, Willelmo Rufo, Regi Angliæ,
" Malcolmus, Rex Scotorum, juramento fidelitatis sub-
" jectus fuit. Item, prædictus Willelmus Dunwaldum
" de regno Scotiæ, ex justis causis, amovit, et Dun-
" canum, filium Malcolmi, regno Scotiæ præfecit, et
" recepit ab eo fidelitatem et juramentum. Dictoque
" Duncano dolose perempto, dictus Rex præfatum Dun-
" eualdum, qui iterum regnum Scotiæ invaserat, amovit
" ab eodem, et Edgarum, filium dicti Malcolmi, Regem
" Scotiæ constituit, et regnum illud donavit eidem.
" Cui successit Alexander, frater Edgari, consensu
" Regis Angliæ, Henrici Primi, fratris dicti Regis
" Willelmi Rufi. Item, Matildi Imperatrici, filiæ et
" hæredi Regis Henrici prædicti, David, Rex Scotiæ,
" fecit homagium. Item, Regi Angliæ, Stephano, Henricus,
" filius dicti Regis David, homagium fecit. Item, Rex
" Scotorum, Willelmus, pro regno Scotiæ, et David, frater

[1] *Scotiam rebellantem* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1301. " ejus, et Comites et Barones regni Scotiæ, devene-
" runt homines Regis Henrici, filii Regis Angliæ,
" Henrici Secundi, in crastino Coronationis prædicti
" Henrici, filii Regis Henrici Secundi, patre vivente;
" et fidelitatem ei juraverunt contra omnes homines,
" salva fidelitate patri viventi. Anno vero vicesimo
" regni Regis Henrici prædicti, Secundi, prædictus Wil-
" lelmus, Rex Scotiæ, rebellare incipiens, venit in
" Northumbriam, cum exercitu magno, et exercuit in
" populo stragem magnam. Cui occurrentes milites
" Comitatus Eboracensis, ipsum ceperunt, et dicto Hen-
" rico, Regi Angliæ, reddiderunt. Anno sequenti, quinto-
" decimo Kalendas Martii, idem Rex Willelmus per-
" missus est libere abire; et eodem anno, septimo-de-
" cimo Kalendas Septembris, idem Willelmus, Rex Sco-
" torum, de consensu Prælatorum, Comitum, et Baronum,
" procerum, et aliorum magnatum regni Scotiæ, do-
" mino suo, Henrico, Regi Angliæ, filio Matildis Im-
" peratricis, suis litteris patentibus, cavisse noscitur,
" quod ipse, et hæredes et successores sui, Reges Sco-
" tiæ, Episcopi et Abbates, Priores, Comites et Barones,
" et alii homines regni Scotiæ, de quibus Dominus
" Rex Henricus habere voluerit, facient Domino Regi
" homagium, fidelitatem, et ligeamentum, et, ut ligeo
" domino suo, contra omnem hominem obedient: et, in
" signum subjectionis, capellum suum, et sellam atque
" lanceam, super altare Beati Petri Eborum obtulit;
" quæ in eadem ecclesia usque in hodiernum diem re-
" manent, et servantur. Item, Episcopi, Comites, et
" Barones, regni Scotiæ, conventionaverunt, ut verbis
" utamur hujusmodi conventionis, Domino Regi Angliæ,
" et Henrico, filio ejus, prædictis, quod si Rex Scotiæ,
" aliquo casu, a fidelitate Regis Angliæ, et conventione
" prædicta, recederet, ipsi cum Rege Angliæ tenebunt,
" sicut cum ligeo domino suo, contra Regem Scotiæ,
" quousque ad fidelitatem Regis Angliæ redeat. Quam
" quidem Compositionem felicis recordationis Gregorius,
" Papa, Quintus, in diversis rescriptis, Regibus An-

" gliæ et Scotiæ directis, mandavit firmiter observari; A.D. 1301.
" continentibus etiam, quod Willelmus et Alexander,
" Reges Scotiæ, Regibus Angliæ, Henrico et Henrico,
" ligeum homagium et fidelitatem facerent, quæ te-
" nentur successoribus eorum, Comitibus et Baronibus
" regni ipsius, sibi et successoribus suis exhibere. Et
" item, quod cum idem Rex Scotiæ homo ligeus sit
" ipsius Henrici, Regis Angliæ, et eidem præstiterit fide-
" litatis juramentum, ad quod se principaliter astringit,
" in ipsius Regis et regni Angliæ detrimentum, nihil
" debeat penitus attentare. Et Papa Clemens, scribens
" Regi Angliæ, pro Johanne, Episcopo Sancti Andreæ,
" expulso ab episcopatu suo per Regem Scotiæ, inter
" cætera, rogabat, quod Willelmum, Regem Scotiæ, mo-
" neret et induceret, et, si necesse foret, districtione
" regali, qua ei [1] præeminebat, et, de concessa suæ re-
" giæ Celsitudini potestate, compelleret, ut dicto Epi-
" scopo omnem rancorem remitteret, et episcopatum
" suum in pace habere permitteret. Et præter Con-
" ventionem prædictam in ecclesia Beati Petri Eborum,
" coram prædictis Regibus Angliæ et Scotiæ, David,
" fratre suo, et universo populo, Comitibus, et Baroni-
" bus, milites de terra Regis Scotiæ juraverunt Regi
" Angliæ, Henrico, et Henrico, filio suo, et hæredibus
" eorum, fidelitatem contra omnem hominem, sicut li-
" geis dominis suis. Et idem Willelmus, Rex Scotiæ,
" ad mandatum Regis prædicti, venit apud Northamp-
" tonam, ad Parliamentum domini sui, adducens secum
" omnes Episcopos, Abbates, et Priores, totius regni sui.
" Venit etiam, ad ejusdem Regis mandatum, in Nor-
" manniam. Et idem Willelmus Rex, post decessum
" Regis Henrici, veniens Cantuariam, Regi Angliæ, Ri-
" cardo, filio et hæredi dicti Henrici, fecit homagium.
" Quo Ricardo defuncto, sæpedictus Willelmus Johanni,
" Regi Angliæ, fratri et hæredi dicti Ricardi, extra

[1] *præminebat* in MS.

A.D. 1301. " civitatem Lincolniæ, super quemdam montem, in con-
" spectu omnis populi, fecit homagium et juramentum
" fidelitatis super crucem Cantuariensis Archiepiscopi,
" Huberti, et eidem domino suo per chartam suam
" concessit, quod Alexandrum, filium suum, sicut homi-
" nem ligeum suum, maritaret; promittendo firmiter in
" charta eadem, quod idem Willelmus, Rex Scotiæ, et
" Alexander, filius suus, Henrico, filio Johannis, Regis
" Angliæ, tanquam ligio domino suo, contra omnes
" homines mortales fidem et fidelitatem tenerent. A quo
" quidem Willelmo, Rege Scotiæ, postmodum, pro eo quod
" desponsaverat [filiam] Comiti Boloniæ, præter Regis
" Johannis, domini sui, assensum, pro transgressione et
" temeraria præsumptione hujusmodi debitam satisfac-
" tionem sucepit. Item, Alexander, Rex Scotiæ, sororius
" noster, Regi Angliæ, patri nostro, pro regno Scotiæ,
" et postea nobis, fecit homagium. Vacante deinde
" regno Scotiæ, per mortem Alexandri, Regis illius, et
" subsequenter per mortem Margaretæ, ejusdem Sco-
" tiæ Reginæ et Dominæ, proneptis nostræ, Episcopi,
" Abbates, Priores, Comites et Barones, et cæteri no-
" biles et communitates totius regni Scotiæ, ad nos,
" tanquam ad defensorem, ducem, aurigam, capita-
" neum, et dominum capitalem, ejusdem regni, sic va-
" cantis, gratis et spontanea voluntate accedentes,
" prout tenebantur de jure, jus nostrum, progenitorum
" et antecessorum nostrorum, ac possessionem superioris
" et directi dominii in regno eodem, et ipsius regni
" subjectionem, ex certa scientia, pure et simpliciter, et
" absolute, recognoverunt; et præstitis ab eis nobis, tan-
" quam superiori et directo domino Scotiæ, debitis et
" consuetis fidelitatis juramentis, ac civitatibus, burgis,
" villis, castris, et cæteris mansionibus ejusdem regni,
" in manu nostra traditis, ad custodiam ejusdem regni,
" certos de jure nostro regio officiales et ministros de-
" putavimus, quibus ipsi, tempore vacationis hujus,
" fuerant concorditer obedientes, et intendentes regiis

" nostris præceptis et mandatis. Postmodum autem, A.D. 1301.
" diversæ personæ super successione in dictum regnum
" Scotiæ jure hæreditario inter se contendentes, ad nos,
" tanquam ad superiorem dominum regni Scotiæ, acces-
" serunt, petentes super successione regni prædicti sibi
" per nos exhiberi justitiæ complementum; volentes, et
" expresse consentientes, coram nobis, tanquam superiori
" et directo domino, in omnibus ordinandis stare et
" obtemperare. Ac demum, sententialiter propositis, et
" sufficienter auditis, rimatis, examinatis, ac diligenter
" intellectis, partium juribus, finaliter, in præsentia
" omnium prælatorum et nobilium, quasi totius regni
" Scotiæ, et de voluntate et assensu expresso eorundem
" procedentes, Johannem de Baliolo debite præfecimus
" in Regem Scotorum; quem tunc in successione ejus-
" dem regni hæredis jura invenimus habere potiora.
" Qui quidem prælati, Comites, et Barones, communi-
" tates, ac cæteri regni ipsius incolæ, sententiam nos-
" tram acceptaverunt, approbaverunt, et ipsum Johan-
" nem, de mandato nostro, virtute hujus judicii, in
" regem suum admiserunt; ac idem Johannes, Rex
" Scotiæ, pro regno suo prædicto, nobis homagium
" debitum et consuetum fecit, et fidelitatis juramentum
" præstitit; et extunc, tam in Parliamentis quam Con-
" siliis nostris, tanquam subditus noster alius de regno,
" interfuit, et nostri, tanquam domini sui superioris,
" beneplacitis et mandatis in omnibus obediens et in-
" tendens extitit, quousque idem Johannes, Rex Scotiæ,
" et Prælati, Comites, et Barones, nobiles, communita-
" tes, et cæteri incolæ majores ejusdem regni, ex præ-
" concepta malitia, et prælocuta ac præordinata pro-
" ditione, communicato consilio cum tunc inimicis
" nostris, capitalibus et notoriis, amicitias copularunt,
" ac pactiones, conspirationes, et conjurationes, in ex-
" hæredationem nostram, et hæredum nostrorum, ac
" regni nostri, contra debitum homagium, in crimen
" læsæ majestatis nequiter incidendo, fidelitatis jura-

A.D. 1301. " mentum inierunt cum eisdem. Verum cum præmissa
" relatio et fama publica ad aures nostras devenissent,
" volentes futuris periculis præcavere, quæ ex hiis et
" aliis possent nobis, regno nostro, et regni nostri incolis,
" verisimiliter provenire, pro assecuratione regni nostri,
" accessimus ad confinium regni utriusque, pluries man-
" dantes eidem Johanni, tunc Regi Scotiæ, ut ad certa
" loca in confinio prædicto ad nos accederet, super præ-
" missis et aliis, assecurationis statum, tranquillitatem,
" et pacem, regni utriusque, contingentibus, tractaturus.
" Qui, spretis mandatis nostris, in sua persistens per-
" fidia, ad bellicos apparatus, cum Episcopis et Prælatis,
" Comitibus et Baronibus, regni Scotiæ, ac etiam aliis
" exteris conductitiis, contra nos, regnum nostrum, et
" regni nostri incolas, hostiliter se convertens, accinxit,
" et, ad hostiles aggressus et incursus procedens, reg-
" num nostrum invasit, et quasdam villas regni nostri
" Angliæ per se et suos deprædatus est, easque vasta-
" vit incendio, homines nostros interfecit, et, nonnullis
" nautis nostris per eos peremptis, naves hominum nos-
" trorum regni Angliæ comburi fecit, et e vestigio ag-
" gredi. Redditisque nobis homagio et fidelitate, tam
" pro se, quam aliis quibuscunque regni sui incolis, per
" litteras ejusdem Regis, verba offensionum exprimentes,
" et inter alia verba diffidationis continentes, Comitatus
" nostros Northumbriæ, Cumbriæ, et Westmerelandiæ,
" regni nostri Angliæ, congregato exercitu ingenti, hos-
" tiliter per se et suos invasit, stragem innumeram
" hominum nostrorum, incendia monasteriorum, eccle-
" siarum, et villarum, inhumane perpetrando, et patriam
" undique depopulando. Infantes in cunabulis, mulieres
" in puerperio decubantes, gladio trucidarunt, et, quod
" auditu horrendum est, a nonnullis mulieribus mamil-
" las atrociter absciderunt, parvos clericulos, primam
" tonsuram habentes, et grammaticam addiscentes, ad
" numerum circiter ducentorum, in scholis existentes,
" obstructis ostiis scholarum, igne supposito, cremave-

" runt. Nos quoque, cernentes tot damna, opprobria, A.D. 1301.
" facinora, et injurias, in exhæredationem nostram, et
" destructionem populi nostri, proditionaliter irrogari,
" nec valentes, ratione juramenti, quo ad conservationem
" jurium coronæ regni nostri sumus astricti, præmissa
" facinora ulterius concelare, nec nostra relinquere inde-
" fensa, cum per leges ipsum Johannem, tunc Regem
" Scotiæ, gentemque suam, nobis subditam, justificare
" non possemus, nec ipsum regnum Scotiæ, quod a lon-
" gissimis temporibus, sicut superius exprimitur, nobis
" et progenitoribus nostris [1] feodale extitit, in causis
" præmissis, contra dictum Johannem, et gentem Sco-
" torum, vires potentiæ nostræ extendimus, prout de
" jure nobis licuit, et processimus contra ipsos, tanquam
" hostes nostros, et proditores. Subjecto itaque regno
" Scotiæ, et jure proprietatis nostræ ditioni subacto,
" præfatus Johannes, quondam Rex Scotiæ, ipsum reg-
" num Scotiæ, quatenus de facto tenuit, sponte, pure,
" et absolute, reddidit in manum nostram, proditiones
" et scelera memorata, coram nobis et proceribus nos-
" tris, publice recognoscens. Quo peracto, præfati Co-
" mites et Barones, nobiles et communitates, regni Sco-
" tiæ, quos ad pacem nostram regiam suscepimus,
" subsequenter homagia et fidelitates nobis, tanquam
" immediato domino, ac proprio, ejusdem regni Scotiæ,
" nobis fecerunt et præstiterunt, ac etiam redditis no-
" bis ejusdem regni civitatibus, villis, castris, munitio-
" nibus, ac cæteris locis omnibus ad dictum regnum
" spectantibus, officiales nostros, et ministros, ad regimen
" ejusdem regni præfecimus, jure nostro. Cumque jure
" pleni dominii in possessione ejusdem regni existere
" dinoscimur, non possumus, nec debemus, quin insolen-
" tiam subditorum nostrorum rebellium, si quos invene-
" rimus, præeminentia regia, prout expedire viderimus,
" reprimamus. Quia vero ex præmissis et aliis constat

[1] *fœodale* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1301. " evidenter, et notorium existit, quod prælibatum reg-
" num Scotiæ, tam ratione possessionis, quam proprie-
" tatis, ad nos pertinet, pleno jure, nec quicquam fece-
" rimus vel caverimus, scripto vel facto, sicuti nec
" possemus, per quæ juri ac possessioni prædictis de-
" beat aliqualiter derogari, Sanctitati vestræ humiliter
" supplicamus, quatenus, præmissa provida meditatione
" pensantes, ex illis vestrum motum animi dignemini
" informare, suggestionibus contrariis æmulorum in hac
" parte nequaquam fidem adhibendo; quinimmo statum
" nostrum, et jura nostra regia supradicta, habere ve-
" litis, si placeat, promptis affectionibus commendata."

Quantum vero ad hoc quod Papa petivit, quod si Rex Angliæ jus haberet in regno Scotiæ, vel in aliqua ejus parte, procuratores et instructos mitteret, et fieret eis justitiæ complementum, Rex per se noluit respondere; sed hoc commisit Comitibus, aliisque terræ proceribus; qui super hoc Domino Papæ hujus tenoris litteras rescripserunt:—

Letter addressed to the Pope in behalf of the people of England, in reference to the King's claim to the Crown of Scotland.

" Sancta Romana [1] jure Ecclesia, per cujus ministe-
" rium fides Catholica in suis actibus, cum ea, ut fir-
" miter credimus et tenemus, maturitate procedit, quod
" nulli præjudicare, sed singulorum jura conservari
" velit illæsa. Sane convocato nuper per Serenissimum
" Dominum nostrum, Edwardum, Dei gratia, Regem
" Angliæ illustrem, Parliamento apud Lincolniam gene-
" rali, idem dominus noster quasdam Litteras Aposto-
" licas, quas super certis negotiis conditionem et statum
" regni ex vestra parte receperat, in medio exhiberi ac
" seriose nobis fecit exponi. Quibus auditis, et diligen-
" tius intellectis, tam sensibus admiranda quam hactenus
" inaudita, in eis audivimus contineri. Scimus enim,
" Pater Sanctissime, et notorium [2] [est] in partibus nos-
" tris, ac nonnullis non ignotum, quod a prima insti-

[1] "*Mater Ecclesia*" in the copies in Hemingburgh, or Hemingford, and Matthew of Westminster.
[2] Omitted in MS.

" tutione regni Angliæ, Reges ejusdem regni, tam tempo- A.D. 1310.
" ribus Britonum quam Anglorum, superius et directum
" dominium regni Scotiæ habuerunt in possessione, vel
" capitanei superioritatis et recti dominii ipsius Scotiæ
" successivis temporibus extiterunt; nec ullis temporibus
" ipsum regnum in temporalibus pertinuit, vel pertinet,
" quovismodo ad Ecclesiam supradictam. Quinimmo
" idem regnum Scotiæ progenitoribus dicti Regis nos-
" tri, regibus Angliæ, atque sibi, feodale extitit ab
" antiquo. Nec etiam Reges Scotorum et regnum aliis
" quam Regibus Angliæ subfuerunt, vel subjici consue-
" verunt, neque Reges Angliæ super juribus suis in
" regno prædicto, aut aliis suis temporalibus, coram ali-
" quo judice, ecclesiastico vel sæculari, ex præeminentia
" status suæ regiæ dignitatis et consuetudinis, cunctis
" temporibus irrefragabiliter observatæ, responderunt,
" aut respondere debebant. Unde habito tractatu et
" deliberatione diligenti super contentis in litteris ves-
" tris memoratis, communis, concors, et unanimis, om-
" nium nostrum et singulorum consensus fuit, et erit,
" inconcusse, Deo propitio, in futurum; quod præfatus
" Dominus noster, Rex, super juribus regni Scotiæ, aut
" aliis suis temporalibus, nullatenus respondeat judi-
" cialiter coram vobis, nec judicium subeat quoquo
" modo, aut jura sua prædicta in dubium quæstionis
" deducat, nec ad præsentiam vestram procuratores
" aut nuncios ad hoc mittat; præcipue cum præmissa
" cederent manifeste in exhæredationem juris coronæ
" regni Angliæ, et regiæ dignitatis, ac subversionem
" status ejusdem regni notoriam, necnon in præjudicium
" libertatis, consuetudinum, et legum paternarum, ad
" quarum observationem et defensionem ex debito præ-
" stiti juramenti astringimur, et quæ manibus tenebimus
" toto posse, totisque viribus, cum Dei auxilio, defen-
" demus. Nec etiam permittimus, nec aliqualiter per-
" mittemus, sicut non possumus, præmissa tam insolita,
" tam indebita, præjudicialia, et alias inaudita, præli-

A.D. 1301. " batum Dominum nostrum, Regem, etiamsi vellet, fa-
" cere, seu modo quolibet attentare. Quocirca, Sancti-
" tati vestræ reverenter et humiliter supplicamus,
" quatenus eundem Dominum nostrum, Regem, qui inter
" alios principes orbis terræ Catholicum se exhibet, et
" Romanæ Ecclesiæ devotum, jura sua, libertates, et
" consuetudines, et leges prædictas, absque diminutione
" et inquietudine, pacifice possidere, ac illibata persis-
" tere, benignius permittatis."

King Edward proceeds to Scotland.

In festo Pentecostes, finitis treugis quæ cum Scotis initæ fuerant, Rex, circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, in Scotiam, cum exercitu, profectus est. Qui dum in Scotia hyemaret, sui multos equos nobiles amiserunt, pabulo deficiente.

He makes a truce with the Scots, A.D. 1302.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo secundo, Rex, ad instantiam Regis Francorum, cujus sororem duxerat, Scotis treugas, usque ad festum Omnium Sanctorum, concessit; et idcirco, ordinatis rebus Scotiæ, reversus est in Angliam.

Pope Boniface attempts to excite Edward against the King of France.

Eo tempore, Papa Bonifacius, per litteras suas, Regem Anglorum interpellavit, ut Regi Francorum guerram commoveret, pollicens sibi ingens subsidium. Sed Rex Angliæ, alias Domini Papæ affectus expertus, rem distulit, malens recuperare sua per viam aliam, si quo modo posset.

Edward sends an army into Scotland.

Post festum Omnium Sanctorum, elapsis treugis concessis Scotis, Rex Angliæ Johannem de Segrave, militem nobilem, cum armata manu, misit in Scotiam, committens ei ejusdem terræ custodiam.

The people of Bordeaux expel the French.

His diebus, cives Burdegalenses, non ferentes Gallicorum dominium, illos de civitate sua, contra Natale Domini, expulerunt.

Rebellion of the Scots, under William Waleys, A.D. 1303.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tertio, Scoti, duce Willelmo Waleys, cœperunt rebellare contra Regem Angliæ; propter quod, Rex, cum exercitu, ingressus Scotiam, totam terram pervagatur, nemine apertæ pugnæ sibi copiam faciente.

A.D. 1303. Gascoigne is restored to the King of England.

Eodem anno, Rex Francorum, ob detentionem Wasconiæ injustam, timens sibi a Rege Angliæ, per Dominum Papam ad hoc instigato, guerram parari, ut ejus sibi amicitiam compararet, quicquid Wasconiæ tenebat in manu sua, eidem sponte restituit, prout videbatur ignorantibus veritatem. Tunc etiam et Burdegalia Regi Angliæ sponte se subjecit.

The Scots capture Sir John de Segrave; who is rescued.

Hoc anno, Scoti, latentes in insidiis, Johannem de Segrave, cum paucis armatis equitantem, subito invaserunt, et ipsum Johannem, ab eis graviter vulneratum, cum nonnullis aliis militibus, commisso cruento conflictu, ceperunt. Sed inopinate supervenientes milites alii de Anglorum cohortibus, ipsum Johannem, a suis ereptum custodibus, abduxerunt. Dum hæc omnia fierent, miles quidam nobilis, dictus "Robertus de Ne- Prowess of Robert de Nevill.
"vyle," solemnia Missarum audiens,—erat enim Dominica Prima Quadragesimæ,—quæ gesta fuerant penitus ignorabat. Post Missam vero egressus, cum audisset a redeuntibus Scotos in Anglos prævaluisse, mox illuc cum suis properans, multos peremit, multosque fugavit, et captivos aliquos secum reduxit. Nec de hiis qui Missæ cum eo interfuerant, quisquam captus fuit, aut graviter vulneratus; sed neque corruit unus solus.

Gift by the Earl Marshal to the King.

Comes Marescalli, offensus fratri suo, Johanni, captans Regis benevolentiam, omnes terras suas Regi donavit; ita ut ei, adjectis mille libratis terrarum, redonarentur ad vitam.

Submission of the Scots to King Edward.

Rex Angliæ, audita rebellione Scotorum, ex edicto publico, exercitum adunavit, et, a Rokesburgia progrediens parvis dietis, totam terram usque Catenesiam, quæ est in finibus Scotiæ, perlustravit, nemine resistente. Videntes itaque Scoti se non posse resistere, pacem Regis humiliter petierunt; et ut permitteret, quod possent, dato pretio, redimere terras suas ab hiis quibus Rex eas contulerat. Quorum precibus Rex acquievit, et rediens, castrum de Strivelyn, quod quidam de Scotis tenuerunt, per suos obsedit; ipse vero apud Dunfermelyn hiemavit.

He winters at Dunfermelyn.

A.D. 1303. Appeal of the King of France against Pope Boniface VIII.

Circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, milites quidam, in præsentia cleri et populi, Parisius congregati, Papæ Bonifacio imposuerunt plura enormia; puta, hæresim, simoniam, et homicidia; propter quæ, per Regem Franciæ appellatum est contra eum ad illum cujus interest, donec, convocato Consilio, se a criminibus purgaret objectis.

Maltreatment of Pope Boniface by the supporters of the King of France, and of the Cardinals Colonna.

Bonifacius Papa, sibi timens, Anagniam, originis suæ urbem, venit, et tutelæ civium se commisit. Quo pervenientes Regis familiares Franciæ, una cum fautoribus Cardinalium Columpnensium, comprehenderunt Papam, et in equum effrenem posuerunt, ad caudam versa facie; et sic discurrere fere ad novissimum halitum coegerunt, et tandem pene fame necaverunt, donec eum populus Anagnensis liberasset. Revera cum persecutores eum in quodam palatio reclusissent, ad decem millia populi civitatis concurrerunt, et palatium infregerunt, et, expulsis atque peremptis custodibus, liberaverunt, et Romam, cum armatorum multitudine, perduxerunt. Cumque pervenisset ad Sanctum Petrum, ex timore quem conceperat, quando captus fuit, et mœrore rerum inæstimabilium perditarum, cito defecit; et sic completa est in eo prophetia prædecessoris sui, qui dixit:—"Ascendisti ut vulpes, regnabis ut leo, morieris ut canis."

Miserable end of Pope Boniface.

Succession of Benedict XI.

Cui successit Benedictus Undecimus, natione Lumbardus. Columpnienses, de suis latibulis emergentes, venerunt ad Papam Benedictum, misericordiam implorantes; quos ille benigne suscipiens, clementer absolvit, atque bonorum suorum tribuit facultatem.

The Cardinals Colonna pardoned.

Siege of the castle of Strivelyn, A.D. 1304.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quarto, tenuit Rex Natale apud Dunfermelyn, in Scotia; cui interfuit exercitus Anglicanus. Transacta hyeme, Rex, ad obsidionem castri de Strivelyn accedens personaliter, diversis præparatis machinis, illud solito fortius impugnavit. Obsessi vero, castrum fortiter defendentes, cum machinis plurimos occiderunt. Quadam die, cum Rex considerando obequitaret, et infra jactum balistarum incaute venisset, jaculum quoddam, de castro emissum, superiori

ejus armaturæ affixum est, sine ulla sui corporis læsione. In quod, extractum, Rex expuens, conversa ad castrum facie, celsa voce, ei qui jaculum illud emiserat, ostenso telo, suspendium minabatur. Tandem, in die Beatæ Margaretæ, obsessi pure et simpliciter se dedidere regiæ voluntati; quorum capitaneum, Willelmum Olifardi, militem, misit ad Turrim Londoniarum, reliquos ad alia castra diversa. A.D. 1304. Surrender of the castle.

Rex Edwardus, subacta Scotia, commissaque ejus custodia Johanni de Segrave, in Angliam est reversus; cumque venisset Eboracum, jussit sessionem Justiciariorum, qui dicuntur "de Banco," et Scaccarium, quæ jam septennio manserant Eboraci, transferri Londonias, ad antiquum locum. The Bench and the Exchequer are removed from York to London.

Papa Benedictus, considerans pium esse ovem errantem, etiam licet invitam, ad ovile reducere, Regem Francorum, non petentem, a sententia excommunicationis, per prædecessorem suum lata in eum, absolvit. The King of France absolved from excommunication.

Nonis Julii obiit Papa Benedictus, Perusii; post cujus obitum, cum Cardinales in electione Summi Pontificis [1] dissiderent, a civibus, secundum Constitutionem Gregorii Decimi, includuntur. Death of Pope Benedict XI.

Rex Edwardus fecit Petrum de Gavereston abjurare regnum Angliæ, quia dedit filio suo malum consilium. Piers de Gaverston banished.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinto, Willelmus Waleys, qui Scotiam commoverat frequenter ad rebellionem, per milites Regis captus est, et Londonias usque deductus; ubi judicialiter condemnatus, trahitur, suspenditur, et ultimo decollatur. Cujus caput Londoniis, in loco eminenti, figitur super palum, corpus, in Scotiam reportatum, divisum est in quartas, quæ in diversis urbibus suspenduntur. Capture and execution of William Waleys, A.D. 1305.

Circa dies istos, Bertrandus, Burdegalensis Archiepiscopus, natione Vasco, in Papam electus, "Clemens "Quintus" dictus est. Qui mense Octobri, in Lugduno, Election of Pope Clement V.

[1] *diffiderent* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1305. convenientibus illuc Cardinalibus, Regeque Francorum, Philippo, suam exhibente præsentiam, Papali diademate coronatur.

Present made to the Pope by King Edward.

Rex autem Angliæ misit Domino Papæ omnia utensilia, quibus ministrabantur in camera et in mensa, ex auro puro, per Episcopos Lichefeldensem et Wigorniensem, et Comitem Lincolniæ. Porro Dominus Papa Episcopum Dunelmensem, Dominum Antonium Beek, propter dapsilitatem et cordis magnificentiam quas in eo reperit, fecit Patriarcham Ierosolymitanum, et electos Eborum et Londoniarum remisit ad propria confirmatos.

Antony Beek, Patriarch of Jerusalem.

Grant of the tithes for two years to the King of England, for the Holy Land.

In illo tempore, Papa concessit Regi Angliæ decimas ecclesiasticas per biennium, pro negotio Terræ Sanctæ; sed tamen in usus alios expendebantur. Dominus vero Papa, attendens quod [1] charitas incipit a se ipsa, [2] primos fructus sibi per totam Angliam reservavit, inductus per avaritiam Episcoporum regni Angliæ, postulantium primas vacationes per annum in suis Diœcesibus sibi concedi. Nempe Summus Pontifex, advertens quia, quod petit inferior, postulare potest et superior, appropriavit sibi ipsi per triennium omnes proventus de primo vacantibus ecclesiis, per totam Angliam; videlicet, de primo anno, primos fructus tam de Episcopatibus, Abbathiis, Prioratibus, et præbendis, personatibus, vicariis, quam de cæteris minutis beneficiis.

Avarice manifested by the Pope, as to the first-fruits.

The Flemings expelled from England.

Hoc anno misit Rex Franciæ ad Regem Angliæ, rogans ut Flandrenses ab Anglia expelleret, sicut et ipse, ad suam instantiam, Scotos de Francia ejecerat, paulo ante. Cujus Rex precibus acquiescens, Flandrenses omnes de Anglia exbannivit.

John Comyn slain by Robert le Brus, A.D. 1306.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexto, Robertus le Bruus, aspirans ad regnum Scotiæ, nobilem virum, Johannem Comyn, quia suæ proditiosæ factioni assentire noluit, apud villam de Dunfrez, in cujus castro Justiciarii

[1] *karitas* in MS. | [2] *primo* in ed. Camden.

Regis Angliæ tunc sedebant, in ecclesia Fratrum Minorum, sacrilegus interfecit, quarto Kalendas Februarii. In festo vero Annunciationis Beatæ Virginis, in Abbathia Canonicorum Regularium de Scone, se fecit in Regem solemniter coronari. Uxor Comitis de Bouhan a marito suo tunc furtive discessit, omnes equos ejus magnos secum abducens, et properans usque Scone, ut diadema imponeret capiti novi Regis; quia frater ejus, Comes de Fyf, ad quem, jure hæreditario, spectabat hoc officium, tunc in Anglia fuit absens. Hanc autem viraginem, eodem anno captam ab Anglicis, cum quidam perimere voluissent, non permisit Rex; sed in domuncula quadam lignea super murum castri Berwici posita est, ut possent eam conspicere transeuntes.

A.D. 1306. He is crowned King of Scotland. The Countess of Bouhan kept in a wooden cage, at Berwick.

In festo Pentecostes, Edwardus, filius Regis Angliæ, patre, cum multis aliis nobilibus, militaribus armis accinctus est. Ob quam causam, datus est Regi tricesimus denarius a populo et clero, et a mercatoribus vicesimus denarius datus fuit. Dedit autem Rex filio suo Principatum Walliæ, et Cestriæ Comitatum; unde Wallici maxime sunt gavisi. Edwardus proinde, Regis filius, cum novellorum tyronum multitudine, profectus est Scotiam, ad reprimendum conatus Roberti le Brus, invasoris regiæ dignitatis. Præcesserat ante eum Aymerus de Valentiis, Comes Penbrochiæ, Robertus de Clifford, et Henricus Percy, missi a Rege cum manu armata, ad novis motibus resistendum. Ipse vero Rex lento gradu secutus est, usque Karleolum. Edwardus, filius Regis, cum venisset Karleolum, ante patris adventum, sumptis secum novis tyronibus, qui omnes devoverant se mortem Johannis Comyn vindicaturos, præcessit patrem suum in Scotiam semper per unam dietam, et tantam fecit vindictam, ut nec sexui parceret, nec ætati; villas etiam, et casalia, ubicunque pervenit, incendit; quod multum dicitur displicuisse patri suo, eo maxime, quod, divitibus fuga lapsis, vulgus miserum luit pœnas majorum: unde et filium suum increpans, jussit ut misericors semper esset pauperibus et com-

Edward, Prince of Wales, is made a knight. He proceeds to Scotland. The King sets out for Carlisle. Scotland ravaged by the Prince. Displeasure manifested by his father.

A.D. 1306. munibus, quia nihil pene moliuntur aut faciunt sine suorum principum jussione.

Robert le Brus approaches the town of Saint John [Perth].

Interim Robertus le Bruus, circuiens terram, et homagia multorum recipiens, coadunato exercitu copioso, appropinquavit villæ Sancti Johannis; in cujus præsidium nuper advenerat Eymerus de Valentiis supradictus. Equites autem Scotorum omnes lineis operimentis super arma sua, ne discernerentur, de præcepto novi sui principis, erant induti. Misit ergo Robertus le Bruus, invitans Aymerum ad congressum; qui respondit, quod cum eo non illo die, sed in crastino, dimicaret. Igitur, subtrahente se Roberto, cum suis, [1] ad spatium unius milliarii, et reficere se volente, appropinquante hora vespertina, Aymerus, cum suis armatis, egreditur, et, subito superveniens, multos e Scotis occidit inermes. Robertus, hæc videns, cum suis, fugit ad insulam dictam "Kentyr." Aymerus vero, putans Robertum se recepisse in castro illius insulæ, illud obsedit; sed expugnato castro, non invenit eum, sed uxorem et fratrem suum, Nigellum, cepit ibidem, cum quibusdam aliis; qui omnes cito post tracti sunt, et suspensi, ac ultimo decollati, præter uxorem Roberti le Bruus; quam Rex jussit, juxta statum suum, tractari decenter. Comes vero de Athel jam secundo, contra fidelitatem suam, Regi rebellans, tandem proditionis suæ meritas pœnas luit. Insuper Simon Frissell, in quo pendebat Scotorum tota fiducia, tractus, suspensus, decapitatus, et combustus, fuit. Episcopi Glascuensis et Sancti Andreæ, capti, cum Abbate de Scone, missi sunt in Angliam, ad diversa castra.

He is attacked by Aymer de Valence, and retreats to the isle of Kentyr.

His wife and brother are captured.

Execution of many of the prisoners, by order of King Edward.

Rex Angliæ obtinuit a Domino Papa absolutionem a juramento quod invitus præstiterat super observantia libertatum, alias a Comitibus et Baronibus exactarum.

Edward is absolved by the Pope from his oath to the Earls andBarons.

Per idem tempus, Clemens Papa transtulit Curiam a Lugduno usque Burdegaliam, ubi Episcopum Pictavensem, qui sibi, dum Archiepiscopus fuerat, adversabatur,

Pope Clement removes his Court from Lyons to Bordeaux.

[1] *ad spatium . . . Roberto, cum suis,* omitted in ed. Camden.

a pontificali depossit dignitate. Primatum etiam Aquitanniæ de [1] Bituricensi transtulit ad ecclesiam Burdegalensem. A.D. 1306.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septimo, qui est annus regni Regis Edwardi, a Conquæstu Primi, tricesimus, tenuit Rex Parliamentum Karleoli; ad quod accessit quidam Cardinalis, dictus "Petrus Hispanus," transmissus a Papa pro matrimonio consummando inter filium Regis Angliæ et filiam Regis Franciæ, secundum quod a Papa Bonifacio, tanquam mediatore pacis, olim fuerat ordinatum. Cui per Regem responsum est, paratum se fore quæ ordinata sunt implere, dummodo Rex Francorum velit, ex parte sua, quæ ad ipsum pertinent adimplere. Dederat nempe Rex Franciæ, dum adhuc detineret Wasconiam, cuidam militi castrum, quod "Malileonis" dicitur, qui illud, nec ad mandatum Regis Franciæ, curabat restituere. Ob quam causam fertur illud matrimonium hactenus fuisse dilatum. Parliament at Carlisle, A.D. 1307. Proposition for marriage of Prince Edward, with a daughter of the King of France.

Robertus le Brus, interea pervagatus patriam, plures sibi rebelles peremit; misitque, cum parte exercitus, duos fratres suos, Thomam, militem, et Alexandrum, clericum, ad aliam terræ partem, qui illarum partium habitatores allicerent ad se blanditiis atque minis. Qui, Anglicis de nocte supervenientibus, capti sunt, et ad Justiciarios Regis ducti, ac condemnati, tracti sunt, et suspensi. Capture and execution of two brothers of Robert le Brus.

Post Pascha, Robertus le Brus, congressus cum Aymero de Valentiis, ipsum in fugam compulit, et, infra triduum sequens, Comitem Gloverniæ, Gilbertum, fugavit. Tunc Rex Angliæ, missis nunciis, præcepit, sub gravi pœna, ut omnes qui sibi debebant servitium, parati essent apud Karleolum, in tres septimanas post festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ; filium vero suum remisit in Angliam, ut, secundum ea quæ de Rege Franciæ audiret, proficisceretur ad connubium cum filia ejusdem contrahendum. Post cujus discessum, cœpit Successes of Robert le Brus. Summons to the English troops to meet at Carlisle. Final sickness of King Edward.

[1] *Bituriensi* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1307. Rex vexari dysenteria. Movit de Karleolo nihilominus, quinto Nonas Julii, parvis dietis versus Scotiam proficiscens. Pridie vero Nonas Julii, venit usque Burgum super Sandes; ubi invalescente infirmitate, die crastina, scilicet, sexta feria, diem clausit ultimum, dies suos in bono, et annos suos in gloria, consummavit. Regnavit autem annis triginta quatuor, mensibus septem, diebus viginti uno, complevitque ætatis suæ annos sexaginta octo et dies viginti. Duxerat autem duas uxores, Alienoram, videlicet, sororem Regis Hispaniæ; de qua suscepit filios, Johannem, Henricum, Alfonsum, et Edwardum, qui sibi successit: alii tres moriebantur ante patrem. Filias vero genuit ex eadem Alienora; scilicet, Alienoram, quam Dominus Willelmus de Bares cepit in uxorem, et Johannam de Acres, quæ nupsit Gilberto de Clare, Comiti Gloucestriæ, et, post mortem Comitis, elegit, inconsulto patre, Radulphum de Mounhermer in maritum. Tertia filia, dicta "Margareta," copulata fuit Domino Johanni, Duci Brabantiæ. Quarta vero, Maria, apud Ambresbury suscepit habitum monialem. Quintam Regis filiam, nominatam "Elizabeth," Comes Holandiæ accepit uxorem; quo defuncto, Dominus Humfridus de Boun, Comes Herefordiæ, duxit eandem. De secunda sua, Margareta, sorore Philippi, Regis Franciæ, genuit duos filios, Thomam, dictum "de Brothertone," et Edmundum; et filiam, nomine "Margaretam."

He dies at Burgh on the Sands.

His two wives, and his children.

Fuerat autem Rex Edwardus armis strenuus, bellicosus, et victoriosus. Totam Angliam de manu Simonis de Monte Forti, et eidem adhærentium Comitum et Baronum, acquisivit; Walliam de manu Leulini recepit in usus suos proprios: Aquitaniam de manu Regis Franciæ sapienter extorsit; Scotiam sæpius subjugavit; sed ea capta per Robertum de Brus, ipse, in lecto fatali decumbens, ex cordis magnanimitate, jussit corpus suum ibi remanere inhumatum, et deferri in exercitu, donec tota Scotia esset finaliter subjugata.

Victorious career of Edward.

His last injunctions, as to the disposal of his body, until the final conquest of Scotland.

[Edwardus Secundus.]

Post mortem, toti mundo deflendam, Edwardi, Regis invicti, suscepit regnum pro eo filius suus Edwardus, cognomento "de Karnervan;" qui mox revocavit ab exilio Petrum de Gaverestone, contra vetitum patris sui, qui dudum, assensu communi procerum, fuerat exilio perpetuo condemnatus. Iste Petrus filius fuit cujusdam militis generosi, sed alienigenæ, qui in obsequio militaverat laudabiliter Regis patris. Cujus obsequii gratia, Rex hunc Petrum, puerulum, in suam suscepit Curiam, adjungens eum filii sui Curiæ, cum quo a pueritia adolevit. Quorum lapsu temporis in tantum crevit amor, ut nunquam disjungi possent.

A.D. 1307. Succession of Edward of Karnervan. Recall of Piers de Gaverston. Account of him.

Revocato, prout diximus, ab exilio præfato Petro, contra voluntatem procerum, contulit illi Comitatum Cornubiæ, et insulam Guboniæ, quæ vulgariter "Mannia" nominatur.

Gaverston is made Earl of Cornwall.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octavo, tenuit Rex Natale apud Wy, manerium Abbatis de Bello; nondum tamen susceperat regni coronam. Paucis post Natale diebus transactis, transfretavit, ut Regis Francorum filiam, nomine "Ysabellam," duceret in uxorem; quæ paulo plus annis duodecim habuit in ætate. Regni vero custodiam commisit prædicto Petro; ob quam causam proceres indignati sunt.

Edward marries Isabella, daughter of the King of France, A.D. 1308.

Nuptiis in Francia celebratis solemniter, apud Boloniam, quibus quatuor Reges interfuere, scilicet, Rex Franciæ, et Rex Navarriæ, filius Regis Franciæ, Rex Alemanniæ, et Rex Siciliæ, reversus est in regnum Angliæ, cum uxore. Quibus occurrunt regni proceres, certantes quis propensiorem possit illis honorem impendere; sed Petrus antedictus in omni apparatu cæteros transcendebat. Quem Rex etiam in amplexus specialius admittebat, et familiarius respiciebat. Invidebant proinde proceres, et vindictam in tempus aliud differebant.

Kings present at the royal marriage. Undue favour shown by the King to Gaverston.

A.D. 1308. Coronation of the King and Queen.

Sexto Kalendas Martii, die, videlicet, Sancti Matthiæ, Rex et Regina, apud Westmonasterium, solemniter [1] coronantur.

The Templars arrested, throughout England.

Hoc anno capti fuerunt omnes Templarii per totam Angliam, præcepto regio, uno die; propter plurima inhonesta et enormia, fideique Catholicæ adversantia, de eis dicta et probata; et in diversis regni castellis carcerali custodiæ deputati.

Hostile feelings of the nobles towards Gaverston, A.D. 1309.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nono, regni proceres et nobiliores, videntes se contemni, et Petrum de Gaverestone cunctis anteferri, accesserunt ad Regem, humiliter rogantes, ut Baronum suorum vellet consiliis tractare regni negotia, quibus, a periculis sibi imminentibus, non solum cautior, sed tutior, esse posset. Quorum votis facie tenus Rex annuit, et Parliamentum Londoniis instituit fieri, ad quod omnes qui interesse debebant venire mandavit.

The Archbishop of Canterbury recalled from exile.

Robertus, Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, jubente Rege, revocatur ab exilio; qui jam per biennium exulaverat, propter offensam Regis Edwardi, patris Regis præsentis.

Gaverston is banished to Ireland, A.D. 1310.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo decimo, decreto Parliamenti, tenti Londoniis, ad Baronum instantiam, Petrus de Gaverstone in Hiberniam exilio relegatur. Soluto Parliamento, cunctis gaudenter ad sua discedentibus, Rex remansit tristis, cogitans et disquirens cum Privato suo Consilio, qualiter posset ipsum ab exilio revocare. Suggestumque fuit ei, quod si sororem Comitis Gloverniæ, qui pro tunc erat juvenis, toti regno delectus, et sub tutela Regis, præfato Petro daret in conjugem, posset ipsum intrepide revocare. Rex, hiis auditis, cum omni festinatione, missis nunciis, accersivit eum, et inter ipsum et sororem Comitis fecit celebrari nuptias, licet multum Comiti displicerent. Exinde Petrus, superbiens plus solito, regni nobiles vilipendit,

He is recalled by the King, to marry the sister of the Earl of Gloucester.

[1] *coronatur* in ed. Camden.

subsannabat proceres, mediocresque despexit. Et quia Rex permiserat sibi facultatem pene faciendi quæ vellet, quantum ad ea quæ respiciebant personam regiam, cœpit, sicut prius, thesaurum Regis colligere, et negotiatoribus ultramarinis accommodare, non ad usus quidem regios, sed suos usus proprios. Qui in tantum expilavit Regem, ut non haberet unde solveret expensas solitas domus suæ. Regina vero tantum rebus necessariis artabatur, ut Regi Franciæ, patri suo, lacrymabiliter quereretur honore debito se privatam. Barones igitur, considerantes quod eorum tolerantia Petro malignandi præstabat audaciam, Dominò Regi denunciaverunt, assensu communi, ut vel dictum Petrum a sua propelleret comitiva, Articulosque provisos effectui manciparet, vel ipsi certe in eum, tanquam perjurum, insurgerent. Durus videbatur hic sermo Regi, quia Petro carere nescivit; sed plus periculi cernebat emergere, si petitionibus procerum non obtemperaret. Petrus igitur abjurat regnum, Regis plus permissione, quam beneplacito; addita a Baronibus conditione, quod si de cætero posset inveniri in Anglia, vel aliqua terra Regi subjecta, caperetur, et, velut hostis publicus, damnaretur.

A.D. 1310.

Insolence and avarice shown by Gaverston.

The Queen complains of his conduct.

Demands made of the King by the Barons.

Gaverston abjures the kingdom (A.D. 1311).

Igitur, sub præmissa conditione, dato sibi conductu, Angliæ regnum lugens deseruit, et Franciam est ingressus. Quo [1] audito, Rex Francorum jussit suis, ut eum caperent, si quo modo possent, et diligenter custodirent, ne rediret in Angliam, et proceres, sicut prius, turbaret, et filiam. Petrus, de hiis præmunitus, fugit in Flandriam, ibi quæsiturus requiem; nec invenit. Tandem, cum suis consortibus alienigenis, redivit in Angliam, de amicitia confisus Comitis Gloverniæ, cujus sororem duxerat in uxorem. Parum ante festum Natalis Domini, Regis se præsentavit obtutibus; qui, præ gaudio sui adventus, juramenta, pacta, promissa, negligens, tanquam cœleste munus, hilariter suscepit eum, et secum detinuit, cum familia sua tota.

Orders given, in reference to him, by the King of France.

Gaverston again returns to England (A.D. 1311).

Is welcomed by the King.

[1] *adito* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1312. Counsels of the nobles, on Gaverston's return.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo undecimo, post Natale, rumore vulgato de Petri reversione, regni magnates et plebeii conturbati sunt. Qui, necessitate ducti, elegerunt sibi Thomam de Langkastria in ducem et defensorem, ut periculis consulerent, et malis futuris. Nobiliores vero regni, de communis decreti sententia, miserunt honorabiles Domino Regi nuncios, exorantes ut vel dictum Petrum eis traderet, vel, ut ordinatum fuerat, ipsum regnum evacuare juberet. Rex vero, sinistro ductus consilio, Baronum supplicationes parvipendens, ab Eboraco recessit ad Novum Castrum.

Request made by them to the King.

The King takes to flight, with Gaverston.

Magnates proinde sub omni celeritate ad Novum Castrum iter arripuere. Quod cum Rex audisset, quasi proscriptus aut exul, fugit, cum dicto Petro, Tynemutham, et inde [1] Scardeburgiam, ubi habebatur castrum regale; ubi præcepit castellanis, ut custodiam Petri susciperent, et castellum victualibus instaurarent; Rege se alias transferente, nec opem ferre valente, quin caperetur, et reduceretur usque ad villam de Dadingtone; ubi Comes Warwici, Guido de Bello Campo, fecit eum decollari, tanquam legum regni subversorem, et publicum proditorem. Cadaver ejus humatum est apud Langeleye, regale prædium, ubi Rex de regio fisco construxit Fratribus Jacobitis habitaculum pro anima dicti Petri.

Gaverston is taken, and executed.

He is finally buried at Langley.

Birth of a prince, who is named after his father.

Die Sancti Bricii, Ysabella, Regina, peperit Regi filium, apud Wyndeleshores, cui nomen patris fuit impositum; licet magnates Franciæ, qui tunc aderant, pusiolo nomen Regis Franciæ imponere voluissent.

Death of Abp. Robert de Winchelsee, A.D. 1313.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo duodecimo, obiit Magister Robertus de Winchelsee, quondam Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus; qui nobiliter toto suo tempore rexerat Ecclesiam Anglicanam, et firmus exactor fuerat regni libertatum. Hoc anno Dominus Guido de Bello Campo, Comes Warwici, fato ferali succubuit, impotionatus, ut fertur.

Death of the Earl of Warwick, from poison, as reported (A.D. 1315).

[1] *Scadeburgiam* in ed. Camden.

Rex et Regina transfretavere Parisius, cum multis regni nobilibus, ut interessent Coronationi Domini Philippi, Regis Franciæ, in Regem Navarriæ, coronandi, die Pentecostes. A.D. 1313. The King and Queen visit Paris.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo decimo tertio, Scoti, intrantes Northumbriam, deprædati sunt patriam, trucidantes incolas, et villas plurimas incendentes. The Scots ravage Northumberland, A.D. 1314.

Clemens Papa diem clausit ultimum, et vacavit Sedes per biennium. Cui tandem successit Jacobus, Episcopus Avinoniæ, et vocatus est "Johannes Vicesimus "Secundus." Death of Pope Clement V. Succession of Pope John XXII.

Post Pascha, Rex accinxit se versus Scotiam, cum exercitu, pervenitque Berwicum: cunctisque illuc properantibus, qui sibi debebant servitium, præter Thomam, Comitem de Lankastria, et Comites Warwichiæ et Arundeliæ, qui supersedere venire, eo quod quosdam Articulos, petitos et concessos, Rex detrectabat ad effectum perducere, disposuit militiæ suæ turmas, ad dissolvendum obsidionem castri de Strivelyn. Cumque fixisset prope locum tentoria, quidam de Regis exercitu, facientes equitationem, Scotos atrociter provocabant; quibus illi viriliter occurrentes, multos Anglorum nobiles, in Vigilia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, peremerunt. Quo casu Anglici nimis exacerbati, in crastino vindicari firmiter proponebant. Crastino vero, circa horam diei tertiam, Robertus le Brus, qui se Regem nominavit, præcessit, pedes, Scotorum exercitum, dans illis exemplum, ut nemo de fuga cogitaret. Cumque ventum fuisset ad actum, ut manus consererent, discrimini patuit pars Anglorum. Ibi nempe corruit nobilis ille miles, Gilbertus, Comes Gloverniæ, ante mortem suam crudelem, sumens de Scotis suis manibus ultionem. Nobilis etiam Baro, Robertus de Clifforde, cum multis viris aliis nobilibus, in hoc funesto conflictu peremptus est; ibi ceciderunt milites et scutiferi ad numerum septingentorum. Rex, in hostes desæviens, et sui ipsius oblitus, per suos educitur a loco discriminis, et ad se

The King proceeds to Scotland.

The English are defeated by Robert le Brus [at Bannockburn].

The Earl of Gloucester slain.

Other losses in the battle.

A.D. 1314. subtrahendum compellitur. Comes Herefordiæ fugiendo capitur, cum Baronibus viginti duobus, et militibus sexaginta octo. Dominus Radulphus Mounhermer, qui desponsaverat sororem Regis Angliæ, et Comitissam Gloverniæ, et captus fuerat in ferali certamine, invenit gratiam in oculis Regis Scotorum, ratione familiaritatis cum eodem præhabitæ; ita quod redemptio sua sibi fuit perdonata per eundem. Qui, rediens in Angliam, reportavit secum Domini Regis targiam, captam a Scotis, usu tamen ipsius primitus interdicto.

Sir Ralph Mounhermer is liberated.

Division of the Earl of Glouces-ter's do-mains among his sisters.

Gilbertus, Consul Gloverniæ, infausta pugna vita privatus, tres [1] sorores superstites dereliquit; quarum primam duxit Dominus Hugo Despencer; secundam Dominus Hugo de Audele, quam prius habuerat Dominus Petrus de Gaverestone, quondam Comes Cornubiæ. Tertiam duxit Dominus Rogerus de Tamary, quam prius desponsaverat Dominus Johannes de Burgo, filius et hæres Comitis Ultoniæ, de Hibernia. Et sic divisus est Comitatus nobilissimus in tres Baronias.

Courtesy shown by Robert le Brus.

Post bellum de [2] Strivelyn, Robertus le Brus interfectorum spolia suis distribuit larga manu; captivos tractavit civiliter, corpora Comitis Gloverniæ et Baronis de Clifford transmisit Regi Angliæ, apud Berwycum commoranti, sine pretio, pro suæ voluntatis beneplacito sepelienda. Quibus ex causis, corda multorum in sui amorem allexit. Comitem vero Herefordiæ, facta commutatione pro sua conjuge, quæ jam diu in custodia Regis Angliæ detenta fuerat, liberum abire permisit. Quibus gestis, Rex se transtulit ad partes australes. Eo tempore, plures ex Anglicis, facti transfugæ, se Scotis confœderaverunt; reversique cum Scotis, plurima damna Northumbrensibus irrogaverunt.

The Earl of Hereford exchanged for the wife of Robert le Brus.

League of certain English with the Scots.

Burial of Gaverston, at Langley (A.D. 1315).

Anno millesimo trecentesimo decimo quarto, Rex, convocatis Cantuariensi Archiepiscopo et aliis quatuor pontificibus, cum multis prælatis aliis, corpus Petri de

[1] *filias* in MS.

[2] *Strivelinæ* in ed. Camden.

Gaverestone transferri fecit Langleyam, et inter Fratres Prædicatores honorifice tumulari. A.D. 1314.

In crastino Purificationis, convenerunt Londoniis, ad Parliamentum, prælati pene regni omnes, cum proceribus, ut, quia vix potuit vivere plebs communis, præ karistia rerum venalium, providerent tantæ necessitati remedium. Statutum est igitur, ut melior bos vivus venalis, crassus, non pastus de grano, pro sedecim solidis venderetur: de grano vero pastus, viginti quatuor solidis; vacca melior viva, crassa, duodecim solidis venderetur; porcus duorum annorum, pinguis, pro tribus solidis quatuor denariis; multo tonsus, crassus, quatuordecim denariis, lanatus vero, crassus, viginti denariis; auca crassa, duobus denariis et obolo; capo bonus, duobus denariis; gallina bona pro uno denario, venderetur; duo pulcini pro uno denario. Columbellæ quatuor pro uno denario, ovaque quatuor et viginti pro uno, de cætero venderentur. Et si vendentes aliter facerent, res venales Regi forisfactæ remanerent. Enactment as to the price of victuals.

In quindena Paschæ, per Regis brevia, citatæ sunt generaliter omnes Parliamentales personæ pro Parliamento tenendo Londoniis; sed multis proceribus prætendentibus impedimenti causas, nihil hac vice factum fuit. Parliament summoned; but the nobles neglect to attend.

Scoti per hoc tempus, crudeles et inhumani, flamma, rapinis, et cædibus, partes occidentales Northumbriæ, a Lugubalia usque ad Eboracum, sine resistentia devastarunt; factaque fuit patria longo tempore Scotis tributaria, donec miseri patriotæ nil haberent unde tributa penderent. Northumberland ravaged by the Scots.

Eodem anno, Robertus le Brus in Hiberniam transmisit exercitum; cui ducem constituit Edwardum, fratrem suum uterinum, ut terras Regis Angliæ in illis partibus occuparet, et Anglos ibidem pro viribus infestaret. Edward le Brus sent with an army into Ireland.

Hoc in tempore, velut Deo displicerent Statuta præcedentis Parliamenti, omnia venalia plus solito facta sunt cara; animalia grossa mactabilia, capones et aucæ, vel ova, rarissime videbantur. Oves peste peribant, Increased dearth.

A.D. 1314. porci nutriri nequibant, quarterium frumenti, fabarum, et pisarum, viginti solidis vendebatur. Quarterium brasii una marca, salis quarterium vendebatur triginta quinque solidis.

Capture of Llewelyn Bren.

Lewlinus Bren, Wallicorum capitaneus, qui multas villas combusserat, et Anglos interfecerat, captus est, cum duobus filiis, per quosdam aulicos, et Regi Londoniis præsentatus.

The ordinances as to sale of victuals are repealed. A.D. 1315.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinto decimo, in Parliamento tento Lincolniæ, de consensu Baronum, Statuta de venditione victualium revocantur; permissumque fuit, ut quisque sua victualia, meliori foro quo posset, venderet in futurum.

The great lessen their households.

Hoc anno, prævalente fame, magnates et divites suas minuere familias, et fercula superflua subtraxere.

Rapine resulting from the famine.

Qui fuerunt expulsi a curiis, effecti sunt vespiliones, et in tantam succrevere multitudinem, ut vix fuit aliquis tutus a despoliatoribus in hac terra.

Parliament held at London (A.D. 1316).

Circa festum Paschæ, factum fuit Parliamentum Londoniis, et, ante Festum Assumptionis Beatæ Virginis, quarterium frumenti quadraginta solidis vendebatur.

Increase of the famine; followed by a pestilence.

Famem, totam terram invadentem, mortalitas est secuta pauperum, et pecora esu herbarum putrefactarum cadebant; unde contigit, ut esus carnium cunctis esset suspectus. Nec valuit contra pestem hominum solertia physicorum; quia medicinales herbæ, propter elementorum inæqualitatem, effectæ degeneres, virus pro virtute reddebant.

Birth of John of Eltham (A.D. 1316).

In festo Assumptionis, natus est Regi filius, apud Eltham, qui vocatus est "Johannes."

Provision in London, as to brewing.

Londonienses, quia frumentum inbrasiatum multum adauxit karistiam, statuerunt ne frumentum de cætero in cervisiam verteretur. Rex etiam idem proclamari jussit per totum regnum.

The Pope reserves the first-fruits, in England.

Johannes Papa, Vicesimus Secundus, reservavit sibi primos fructus beneficiorum vacantium in Anglia, per triennium.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexto decimo, videntes quidam Northumbrenses impune Scotos debacchari, nec quemquam obviare volentem eorum insolentiis, velut in defectu Regis et procerum, sumunt arma, et resistere Scotis parant. Et cum per tempus aliquod id probe fecissent, tandem deficientibus tam victualibus quam pecunia, de tyronibus facti sunt tyranni, de defensoribus destructores, de propugnatoribus proditores. Despoliabant domi ruricolas, in campis accolas, eorum boves rapientes, et ad cibaria sua mactantes; multiplicatusque est in tantum eorum numerus, ut neminem in illa regione timerent; continuaveruntque sua scelera in illa provincia per quatuor fere annos.

A.D. 1317. Certain of the Northumbrians ravage the country.

Sub istis diebus applicuerunt in Anglia Cardinales, rogatu Regis, directi nuncii Domini Papæ, Johannis Vicesimi Secundi, ut pacem inter regna Angliæ reformarent, et Scotiæ, et ut Comitem Lankastriæ, Thomam, Regi pacificarent. Attulerunt etiam secum bullas, quibus Dominus Papa Scotos excommunicavit, eo quod descivissent a domino suo, Rege Angliæ, nisi redirent ad pacem ejus. Qui, prout moris est Romanorum in exteras regiones venientium, semet ostentare volentes, contulerunt se, sub omni festinatione, in partes boreales, ut Dominum Lodowicum de Bello Monte, cui Dominus Papa, ad Regis instantiam, Dunelmensem contulerat Episcopatum, Electo ejusdem loci cassato, cum pompa Romana, intronizarent; quamvis præmoniti fuissent, ut in Comitatu Eboraci se continerent, et ultra progredi non præsumerent, nisi regia manu fulti. Cumque venissent prope villam de Derlingtone, subito de valle quadam erumpentes, dicti grassatores, ducibus Gilberto de Middeltone et Waltero de Selbye, inopinate irruerunt in familiam Cardinalium, et Lodowici, futuri Episcopi Dunelmensis, et, nulla reverentia habita ad tantas personas, eos de thesauris et equis suis spoliarunt. Lodowicum vero, Episcopum Dunelmensem, ducentes ad villam de Morpath, ad redemptionem gravis-

Arrival of envoys of the Pope, for the purpose of establishing peace.

The Cardinals are plundered by Gilbert de Middeltone and Walter de Selbye; and the Bishop of Durham is imprisoned, and forced to pay ransom.

A.D. 1317. simam compulerunt. Henricus de Bello Monte, qui cum illis venerat, captus, cum equis et thesauris plurimis, ductus est ad castrum de Mitforde, ibique detentus, donec magnam summam pecuniæ persolvisset. Cardinales autem, cum sua familia, Dunelmiam pervenerunt, ubi per dies aliquot perhendinantes, et Scotorum arbitrium præstolantes, infecto negotio pro quo venerant, reversi sunt, sub conductu regio, Eboracum; ibique horribilem tulere sententiam in malefactores Northumbriæ, et [1] omnes eis quomodolibet adhærentes; quam sententiam publicari fecerunt per totam Angliam. Redeuntes vero Londonias, petierunt a clero octo denarios de marca sibi dari, pro damnis suis, et expensis, non habentes respectum ad quatuor denarios sibi de marca prius concessos. Sed clerus huic petitioni noluit obedire.

The clergy of England refuse to pay an impost, in requital of their losses.

Gilbert de Middeltone is taken, and executed.

Gilbertus de Mideltone, post plura damna illata Prioratui de Tynmuthe, et patriotarum deprædationes, captus est, et, vinculis artatus, una cum fratre suo, transmissus Londonias; ubi judicialiter condemnatus, in oculis Cardinalium quos spoliaverat, tractus et suspensus est. Qui sibi famulatum præbuerant, audientes eum captum, ad Walterum de Seleby, consortem suæ malitiæ, qui vicinis similem inferebat injuriam, se contulerunt. Cardinales per id temporis fecerunt pacem, sub certis conditionibus, inter Regem et Comitem Langkastriæ, Thomam; quas cito postea Rex infregit, ut dicebatur, injuste.

Renewed negotiations for peace between the King and the nobles, A.D. 1318.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septimo decimo, Scoti ad Eboracum et Lancastriam, comburendo, prædando, vastando, pervenerunt. Quapropter, prælati regni, accitis sibi Cardinalibus, Regem deprecantur, ut tantis malis velit remedia providere: quod confestim posset effici, si Baronum suorum petitionibus acquiesceret, ut dicebant. Quorum supplicationibus Rex inclinatus, diem

[1] *omnibus* in MS.

præfixit, quo, apud Leycestriam, petitiones Baronum, et articuli, confirmarentur. Quibus concessis per Regem, Cardinales, quasi grande quid patrassent in regno, ad Curiam redierunt, quæ tunc extitit Ambianis. Post lapsum temporis, Regis concessio frivola videbatur, et inanis. A.D. 1318. The Cardinals leave England.

Circa festum Sancti Michaelis, in Parliamento tento Londoniis, fuit ordinatum, ut Rex haberet contra Scotos auxilium de qualibet civitate, vel villa regia, quæ homines exhibere posset. Qui congregati magnum conflaverunt exercitum; cumque pervenissent Eboracum, suborta discordia, redire jussi sunt ad propria, infecto negotio. Parliament at London. An army raised and disbanded.

Edwardus le Brus, frater Regis Scotorum, qui jam per triennium Hiberniam infestaverat, et, nullo jure, se ibidem in Regem coronaverat, captus est ab Anglicis et Regis fidelibus, et apud Dundalk decollatus; occisis in conflictu quo captus fuit viginti novem baronettis de Scotia, et quinque millibus et octingentis aliis, Primate de Armakh, pro Rege Anglorum, capitaneo existente. Edward le Brus captured, and beheaded.

Robertus le Brus, invasor regni Scotiæ, auctoritate Romanæ Curiæ, excommunicatus est solemniter et publice in toto regno Scotiæ, et omnibus terris adjacentibus, eo quod venit contra fidelitatem Regi Anglorum ab antiquo debitam; regnumque Scotiæ Generali supponitur Interdicto. Robert le Brus is excommunicated, and Scotland placed under Interdict.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octavo decimo, quidam proditor, dictus "Petrus de Spalding," qui fuit custos Berwici, accepta pecunia, Scotos intrare permittebat ipsam villam; unde Rex est graviter contristatus. Mox ergo properavit illuc pergere, villamque cingere obsidione. Et cum id fecisset, Scoti, adunati ad numerum viginti millium, per partes obliquas intraverunt Angliam, proponentes Reginam capere, [1] quæ in illis Berwick is betrayed, and besieged by King Edward, A.D. 1319.

[1] *qui* in MS.

A.D. 1319. Attempt of the Scots to capture the Queen.

partibus moram traxit, sibi venditam per quosdam Angliæ proditores. Attamen, Deo volente, fraudati sunt a desiderio suo, perdita tam pecunia, quam ipsa præda. Quapropter, versi in omnem rabiem, inæstimabilia damna in illis partibus perpetraverunt.

Defeat of the English at Mytone on Swale.

The King pursues the Scots, who escape.

Eboracenses, collectis decem millibus patriotarum, Scotis obviant apud villam de Mytone; et, facto congressu, superantur a Scotis, de nostris ad tria millia hominum interemptis. Cujus facti rumor cum pervenisset ad aures Regis, illico dimissa obsidione Berwici, festinavit Scotis occurrere, priusquam proprios limites reintrarent. Sed tamen, illi, præmoniti, per aliam viam reversi sunt in regionem suam.

A truce for two years.

Treugæ biennales acceptæ sunt inter Anglos et Scotos.

Murrain in England.

Hoc anno, fuit pestis boum, qui tam letifere fuerunt infecti, ut canes, de cadaveribus eorum comedentes, et corvi, quasi toxicati veneno, intumescerent, et mortui caderent. Quamobrem nemo fuit ausus comedere carnes bovinas aut vaccinas.

Birth of Princess Alianor.

Regina peperit filiam suam primogenitam, Alienoram, apud Wudestoke.

Ravages committed in England by the Scots, A.D. 1320.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo decimo nono, Rege existente Eboraci, Scoti intraverunt Angliam, et illuc usque penetraverunt, et suburbana civitatis cremaverunt, et captivos ceperunt Dominum Johannem de Bretayne, Comitem Richemundiæ, et plures alios; quos omnes ad gravissimam redemptionem compulerunt.

Charge of poisoning, against the lepers throughout Christendom; and against the Jews.

Leprosi per totam Christianitatem diffamati fuere, quod iniissent fœdus cum Saracenis, ad toxicandum Christianos ubique terrarum, ponentes venenum in fontibus, puteis, et cisternis. Super quo multi de Francia et Provincia convicti, combusti sunt; et Judæi detenti et incarcerati propter auxilium eis præstitum, et consensum.

Dissension between the Earl of

Anno millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo, quidam miles, dictus "Willelmus de Brewes," quamdam portionem

terræ, ipsum contingentem, jure hæreditario, in Marchia Walliæ, diversis dominis obtulit ad emendum; quæ terræ portio "Terra de Goweres" antiquitus vocabatur. Comes Herefordiæ, quia dicta terra contigua fuit terris suis, conventione facta cum dicto Willelmo, disposuit, cum Regis licentia, dictam terram ingredi, tanquam propriam possessionem. Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, scilicet, avunculus, et Rogerus, nepos, nescientes de pacto prælocuto, ad dictum Willelmum de Brewes accedentes, cum eo convenerunt de dicta terra sibi et suis habenda; et quasi securitatem bonam de præfato Willelmo reportarunt. Dominus Johannes de Mounbray, qui filiam dicti Willelmi duxerat in uxorem, quæ fuit unica hæres de tota terra præfata, tanquam uxori suæ hæreditario jure debita, securior existebat. Novissime, ad omnium malorum cumulum, Hugo Despencer, junior, terram illam, exclusis omnibus aliis, comparavit: quo cognito, præfati proceres irati sunt valde. Comes vero Herefordiæ, Humfridus de Boun, conquestus est, super injuria sibi illata, Thomæ, Comiti de Langkastria. Qui allicientes cæteros pene cunctos Comites et Barones in partem suam, duce Thoma de Langkastria, venere Schireburniam; indeque Barones, vexillis explicatis, venerunt ad villam de Sancto Albano. Ibi per triduum, cum suis armatis exercitibus, perhendinantes, miserunt ad Regem, Londoniis commorantem, solemnes nuncios, Saresbyriensem, Eliensem, Herefordensem, et Cicestrensem, Præsules, qui tunc ad Sanctum Albanum convenerant pro pace reformanda; mandantes ut Dominus Rex Hugonem et Hugonem le Spencer, regni proditores, per communitatem regni in multis condemnatos articulis, exilium meritum subire permitteret, et Baronibus, ac omnibus qui in eorum comitiva arma sumpserant, indemnitatis patentes literas concederet. Quibus petitionibus cum Rex nollet condescendere, Barones, cum fastu nimio, Londonias adierunt. Tandem Rex, ad instantiam Reginæ et præfatorum Pontificum, eorum petitionibus

A.D. 1321. Hereford and the Mortimers and the Despencers.

The Barons unite, to take measures against the Despencers.

They make certain demands of the King.

A.D. 1321. The elder Despencer goes into exile.

acquievit; edictoque super hiis per Comitem Herefordiæ in aula Westmonasterii publicato, Hugo senior in exilium actus est; sed junior Hugo in diversis locis latitavit, nunc in terra, nunc in mari, nec potuit apprehendi.

The younger Despencer joins the King; who levies an army against the Barons.

Circa festum Omnium Sanctorum, Hugo Despencer, junior, filius Hugonis senioris, ascendit e mari, et pervenit ad Regem; cujus consilio, et quorundam aliorum, Rex mandavit brevia sua ad omnes regni Vicecomites, ad congregandum exercitum contra Barones, cupiens vindicari de despectu et rebellione nuper sibi factis Londoniis. Barones, hæc audientes, ad se defendendum protinus paraverunt.

The King summons his forces; and some of the Barons submit, the Mortimers among them, who are sent to the Tower, A.D. 1322.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo primo, tenuit Rex Natale apud Cirecestriam, cum magna militum, scutiferorum, et arcitenentium, numerositate, proponens aut mori viriliter, aut, velut rex, [1] super suos subjectos imperialiter dominari. Quidam Baronum, hiis cognitis, animo conciderunt, et, neglecto juramento quod in commune præstiterant, Regis gratiæ se submisere. Inter quos erant præcipui duo Rogeri de Mortuo Mari; qui, contra suam opinionem, missi sunt ad Turrim Londoniarum, ibidem detinendi, donec prævidisset quid de eis fieri decrevisset.

Other nobles imprisoned.

Eo tempore, Dominus Hugo de Audele, senior, et Dominus Mauricius de Berkele, in manus Regis incidentes, missi sunt ad castrum Walingford, conservandi. Nulla fuit interim requies, donec uterque exercitus, Regis, scilicet, et Baronum, juxta villam de Burtone super Trent convenisset. Sed Thomas, conspecto Regis exercitu suis præstare et numero et virtute, dedecorose fugit. Rex autem fugientes persequitur, donec venisset ad Burghbrige, ubi Boreales advenerant, ad supplementum Regis exercitus. Cumque Dominus Humfridus de Boun, Comes Herefordiæ, pontem ibidem transisse voluisset, a

On seeing the King's forces, the Earl of Lancaster takes to flight.

[1] *superbos subjectos* in ed. Camden.

quodam, sub ponte, lancea transfixus est, et peremptus ibidem. Thomas de Lancastria, non valens sustinere pondus prœlii imminentis, nec de loco fugere, captus est ab Andrea de Herkle, custode Karleoli, milite mediocris fortunæ, cum multis aliis, et ductus ad Regis præsentiam, qui tunc fuit apud Pontem Fractum, cum utroque Hugone Despencer, seniore et juniore. Tertio vero die a captione sua, sederunt principes, et adversus eum dictavere sententiam, adjudicantes eum tractioni, suspensioni, et decollationi; sed, indulgentia Regis, solummodo decollatus est; sectatores tamen dicti Thomæ, qui capti fuere, tracti sunt, et suspensi.

A.D. 1322. At Burghbrige, the Earl of Hereford is slain, and the Earl of Lancaster captured; and afterwards executed.

Rex, elatus de tanta victoria, collegit exercitum, quantus non fuerat perante visus, ut Scotos, suos adversarios, debellaret, et, cum magna pompa, transiit ad partes boreales. Cujus adventu Scotis præcognito, se, cum suis victualibus, ad tutas latebras transtulerunt; sicque factum est, ut Rex nec resistentiam nec victualia reperiret. Periit ergo fame magna pars exercitus, et Rex redire coactus est inglorius. Commorante Rege minus caute in loco qui dicitur "Regalis Vallis," Scoti, latenter ingressi regnum Angliæ, Regem incautum capere meditati sunt; sed, Deo volente, Rex, præmunitus, recessit a loco; quem, velut fugientem, Scoti insecuti sunt usque ad Abbathiam de Byland. Sed cum nec ibi tute perhendinare posset, propter Scotorum violentiam, Rex, arreptis armis, fugit celeriter Eboracum, thesauro suo, victualibus, et utensilibus, direptioni derelictis. Scoti vero, in hac pervagatione prosperantes, patriam incenderunt, obvios occiderunt, captivos abduxerunt: inter quos, virum nominatissimum, Johannem de Bretayne, Comitem Richemundiæ, captivum traxerunt, et, cum multis spoliis, domum prospere redierunt.

King Edward invades Scotland. He flies from the Scots. And reaches York. The Earl of Richmond captured.

Hoc anno, Dominus Hugo Despencer, pater, factus est Comes Wintoniæ; datis sibi, dono Regis, Castro et Honore de Doningtone, quod fuit de Comitatu Lincolniæ.

The elder Despencer made Earl of Winchester.

A.D. 1322. Death of Philip V.

Philippus, Rex Franciæ, moritur; cui succedit in regno Karolus, frater ejus, qui prius fuerat Comes Marchiæ.

King Edward is summoned by Charles V., of France, to do homage for the Duchy of Aquitaine; but he is kept in ignorance thereof. Certain of his lands are seized, in default, A.D. 1323.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo secundo, venerunt ad Regem Angliæ nuncii novi Regis Francorum, Karoli, ad citandum eum, ut, infra certum tempus, accederet ad Regem Franciæ, et homagium sibi faceret pro Ducatu Aquitanniæ; quos cum Hugo Despencer, junior, et Robertus de Baldok, Cancellarius, convenissent, ne Regi notificarent adventus sui causam, ipsi tamen, in recessu suo, monuerunt eum, quasi consulendo, ut veniret infra certum tempus ad homagium faciendum. Super qua monitione, sive citatione, subdola, fecit quidam notarius, qui fuit unus ex nunciis, publicum instrumentum; virtute cujus, Rex Franciæ fecit processum contra Regem, et terras plures Wasconiæ seysiri fecit, in pœnam contumaciæ Regis Angliæ, qui fuit informatus per malos consiliarios, quod ipsum præfata citatio, vel monitio, non artabat.

Envoys sent by Robert le Brus to the Roman Court; but, through the agency of King Edward, their object is frustrated.

Eodem anno, Episcopus Glascuensis, et Thomas Rondolf, Comes Moraviæ, missi sunt per Robertum le Brus et totum regnum Scotiæ, ad Romanam Curiam, pro habenda relaxatione excommunicationum et Interdicti sententiarum in regnum et regnicolas Scotiæ per Cardinales, [1] auctoritate Papæ, latarum. Contra quos Rex Angliæ misit quemdam clericum, qui obtulit coram Papa se probaturum Scotorum manifestam et notoriam offensam, non solum contra Regem et regnum Angliæ, sed etiam contra Sedem Apostolicam, fore contractam; ita quod, sine satisfactione, non possent a dicta censura relaxari de jure; evenitque, clerici supradicti solertia, quod Scoti, infecto negotio, redierunt.

Account of Sir Andrew de Hercle.

Per idem tempus, Andreas de Hercle, ob notam probitatis, accinctus Regis manibus gladio militari, et donatus Consulatu Karleoli, descivit a fidelitate quod

[1] *authoritate* in MS.

domino suo Regi juraverat, et Scotis, Regis hostibus, se conjunxit. Et in tantum sibi Scotos allexit, ut, de communi consilio, vellent illi sororem Regis Scotiæ conjugio copulare. A.D. 1323.

Rex, ista non ignorans, doluit se tam ingrato, necnon perfido, tot beneficia contulisse. Erat eo tempore, in partibus borealibus, miles quidam strenuus, dictus "Antonius de Lucy," qui, captans favorem regium, Andream, per insidias inopinate captum, misit ad Regem, Londonias, catenatum; ubi quadrifario judicio condemnatus est. Nempe, primo, degradatus est, amputatis securi calcaribus ad talos suos; expost, discinctus est [1] balteo militari; exinde detracti sunt ei calcei, et chirothecæ. Novissime, tractus, suspensus, decapitatus, et in quartas divisus est, et partes quatuor principalioribus civitatibus Angliæ sunt transmissæ; caput ejus super pontem Londoniarum fixum est, versus partes respiciens Scotianas. He is captured by Antony de Lucy. And executed.

Robertus le Brus petit treugas a Rege Angliæ per solemnes nuncios; et concessæ sunt ei treugæ, per annos tresdecim duraturæ. A truce for 13 years, with Robert le Brus.

Circa festum Michaelis, Rex circuivit Comitatus Eboraci et Lankastriæ, Marchiam Walliæ, faciens inquisitiones de pacis perturbatoribus, de vulgi communis oppressoribus, de provinciarum prolocutoribus et ductoribus, qui per nundinas, sive fora, soliti fuerant concitare seditiones, fovere partes contra partes, manutenere malefactores; et omnes tales, captos et convictos, punivit, juxta suæ demerita pravitatis. Inquisition made by the King as to public offenders.

Eodem anno, Papa citavit Ducem Bavariæ, electum in Imperatorem, ut veniret ad Curiam, et de electione et jure suo doceret; et quia non venit in termino limitato, excommunicavit eum, et pronunciavit eum nullum jus habere in Imperio, vel ad illud, et, si quod habuit, privavit eundem. The Pope excommunicates the Emperor Louis of Bavaria.

[1] *baltheo* in MS.

A.D. 1324. Discussion in Parliament, as to the summons of the King to do homage to the King of France.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo tertio, in Parliamento, tento Londoniis, quæsitum est, quid foret respondendum Regi Franciæ, qui Regem Angliæ jam pluries vocaverat ad faciendum homagium sibi pro Wasconia, et cæteris terris quas tenebat in dominio Regis Francorum. Super quo consultum est per regni proceres, ne Rex transiret in persona propria, sed prius mitteret solemnes nuncios, si forte vel hac vice de non comparendo posset obtinere dilationem, vel omnimodam excusationem. Præterea, Rex petiit in præfato Parliamento pecuniare subsidium pro redemptione nobilis viri, Johannis de Britannia, Comitis Richemundiæ, nuper capti per Scotos, apud Abbathiam de [1] Byland; sed non obtinuit.

A subsidy demanded for the Earl of Richmond; and refused.

The possessions of the Templars granted to the Hospitallers.

In eodem Parliamento, terræ, possessiones, et dominia, quondam Templariorum, assensu communi totius cleri et populi, Hospitalariis [2] conceduntur, jure perpetuo, per omnes regni provincias, possidenda.

Envoys sent to the King of France, but without result.

In eodem Parliamento, electi sunt viri nobiles, Comes, videlicet, Canciæ, germanus Regis, Edmundus de Wodestoke, et Archiepiscopus Dublinensis, ad excusandum Regem Angliæ penes Regem Franciæ, ut superius dictum est. Qui cum diu inutiliter tractassent cum Rege Franciæ, ejusque Consilio, demum, sine suæ legationis fructu, reversi sunt.

Charles of Valois invades Aquitaine.

Rex Franciæ, per idem tempus, misit Dominum Karolum de Valoys, patruum suum, in Wasconiam, cum magno exercitu, ad invadendum possessionem totius Ducatus Aquitanniæ; quia Rex Angliæ non venit ad faciendum homagium suum Regi Franciæ pro Ducatu et Comitatu Pontivi, quem seysivit; ad quod faciendum fuit vocatus, ut superius est expressum. Karolus ergo perequitavit totam [3] Agennam, et illas partes seysivit, usque ad villam de Regula, in qua tunc fuit dictus

A truce made between him and the

---

[1] *Ryland* in ed. Camden.
[2] *concedentibus* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Agemmam* in ed. Camden.

Edmundus, frater Regis Angliæ, Comes Canciæ, tenens eam. Finaliter, treuga inita inter eos, usque ad tempus quo possent de pace tractare, reddita est illa nobilis villa de Regula Karolo supradicto, et utraque pars ad propria remeavit. A.D. 1324. Earl of Kent.

Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, Dominus de [1] Wigemor, qui cum Rogero, avunculo suo, in guerra Baronum, Regis gratiæ se submiserat, et in Turri Londoniarum clausus fuerat, data suis custodibus soporifera potione, evasit per omnes Turris custodias, et pervenit ad flumen; ubi quamdam cymbam reperiens, a quodam coadjutore sibi paratam, illam intravit, et cum summa felicitate mare transiit, et in regnum Franciæ, sine quovis impedimento, pervenit; ubi diu degens gratiam reconciliationis expectavit. Rogerus, avunculus hujus Rogeri, fere per quinquennium squalore carcerali detentus ibidem satis inhumaniter, tandem diem clausit extremum; cujus corpus delatum Bristolliam sepelitur. Escape of the younger Mortimer from the Tower. Death of the elder Mortimer, in prison.

Circa tempus istud, missus est ad Regem Franciæ Dominus Aymarus, Comes Penbrochiæ, ad tractandum de pace prælocuta. Sed cum pervenisset ad villam de Sancto Richerio, inopinato languore correptus, inter brachia domesticorum, expiravit. Missi sunt et alii pro causa præfata, scilicet, Dominus de Suliaco, et Magister Johannes Schordych. Sed Johannes de Suliaco, ibi de quadam transgressione accusatus, vix, interventu Reginæ Franciæ, mortem evasit; collega suo, sine fructu sui itineris, domum [2] remisso. Death of the Earl of Pembroke, sent as an envoy to France. Another envoy narrowly escapes death.

Interim, commeatus interdicuntur inter regna, sicque, quod neque Francis in Anglia, nec Anglis in Francia, negotiari licebat. Familiares Reginæ, quotquot erant, oriundi de Francia, sine spe reversionis, regnum exire coguntur; terræ præterea, et castella Reginæ, seisita sunt in manum Regis, datis Reginæ statis stipendiis de bursa Regis. Religiosi etiam, et beneficiati, de gente Evils arising from the dissensions between the Kings of England and France.

[1] *Higemor* in ed. Camden.

[2] *reverso* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1324. Francorum, in maxima miseria vitam transigere compelluntur, eorum beneficiis confiscatis, et exilissimo victu eis de rebus propriis deputato.

Parliament at Westminster.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo quarto, in Octavis Sancti Hillarii, in Parliamento tento Londoniis, tractabatur de salvatione Ducatus Britanniæ, quæ jam per Gallos fuit multipliciter lacerata. Pro qua causa missi sunt solemnes nuncii ad Regem Franciæ, Wintoniensis et Norwicensis Episcopi, et vir illustris, Dominus Johannes de Britannia, Comes de Richemund; qui, post multas disceptationes, tandem quamdam pacis formam a Rege Franciæ receperunt. Wintoniensis Episcopus, collegis in Gallia remanentibus, remissus est in Angliam, nunciaturus Regi quæ facta sunt. Regale Consilium decrevit Reginam mittendam ad Regem Franciæ, fratrem suum, pro pacis negotio confirmando. Quæ cum transfretasset, cum parva familia, scilicet, Johanne de Crounwelle, et tribus aut quatuor militibus, effecta mediatrix præsentis negotii, tali fuit pacto finaliter concordatum; videlicet, ut Rex Angliæ daret filio suo primogenito, scilicet, Edwardo, Ducatum Aquitaniæ et Comitatum Pontivi, et Rex Franciæ reciperet homagium ab eodem.

Fresh negotiations are entered into with the King of France.

The Queen of England passes over into France.

Final arrangement between the Kings of England and France.

Terms of such final arrangement.

Rex Angliæ fecit chartam suam filio suo prædicto, de dictis Ducatu et Comitatu habendis et tenendis, sibi et hæredibus suis, Regibus Angliæ; et si contingeret ipsum mori in vita patris sui, terræ redirent ad ipsum patrem; ita quod Rex Franciæ non posset dictum filium maritare, nec tutorem aut curatorem sibi dare. Quibus ita peractis, Edwardus, filius Regis, mare transiit, cum familia competenti; et, circa festum Sancti Matthæi, fecit homagium avunculo suo, Regi Franciæ, sub quibusdam protestationibus. Et etiam, ex parte Francorum protestatum est. Acta sunt hæc in Francia, apud prædium Regis Franciæ quod dicitur [1] "Boydevincens."

[1] *Boydenicens* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1324. The Queen and Prince Edward refusing to return to England, they are banished.

Eodem anno, moram faciente Regina in partibus Franciæ, cum filio, ultra Regis placitum, nec volente redire, sine Domino Rogero de Mortuo Mari, et aliis nobilibus ex Anglia profugatis, et quam maxime propter odium duorum Dispensatorum, Hugonis et Hugonis, qui procuraverant, anno præcedente, ab ipsa removeri familiam suam,[1] Rex, indignatus, bannivit tam Reginam quam filium proprium, cum omnibus qui illis adhæserant de regno suo.

Robert de Walkefare escapes, and joins the Queen.

Eodem tempore, Robertus de [2] Walkefare, miles, vir versutus, et magnus dissidii suscitator, sed tamen manu fortis, evasit de castro de Corf, interfecto Constabulario, et ad Reginam, tunc exulem, se contulit, ultra mare, ubi multipliciter indies fugitivorum numerus augebatur.

The province of Agen restored to English rule, by Sir Oliver de Ingham.

Hoc anno, Dominus Oliverus de Ingham, miles, juvenis, factus Custos Aquitanniæ per juvenem Ducem Edwardum, de consensu patris sui, collecto grandi exercitu de stipendiariis militibus, Hispanis, Arragonicis, et Gasconensibus, provinciam Agennensium, occupatam per Regem Franciæ, contra pactum, invasit, et dominio Regis Angliæ integraliter restituit.

Capture of Norman ships by the English.

Sub eisdem diebus, navigium Regis Angliæ centum naves Normannicas cepit, et in Angliam secum traxit. Qua de causa succrevit odium inter Reges et regna, et damna utrobique pro viribus inferebantur.

Queen Isabella leaves France, and takes refuge in Hainault.

In fine anni præsentis, percipiens Regina magnates Franciæ fore corruptos Anglorum muneribus, et nusquam tutam fidem, festinavit egredi de calore domus [3] Recab, et Francos latenter fugere ; contulitque se, cum filio, ad Comitem Hanoniæ, ab eo auxilium petitura. A quo, cum filio et suis omnibus, magnifice est suscepta, et, prout tantam Reginam decuit, honorifice exhibita pro tempore perhendinationis suæ.

Prince Edward is betrothed

Anno millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo quinto, Ysabella, Regina Angliæ, contractis sponsalibus inter filium

[1] *Rex indignatus* omitted in ed Camden.

[2] *Balbesare* in ed. Camden.

[3] 1 *Chron.* ii. 55.

A.D. 1325. to Philippa of Hainault. suum primogenitum, Edwardum, et filiam Comitis Hanoniæ, "Philippam" nomine, assumptis secum filio suo, quatuordecim annos ætatis habente, et Domino Edmundo de Wodestok, Comite Canciæ, germano Regis Angliæ, Dominoque Rogero de Mortuo Mari, et aliis multis viris illustribus, de regno Angliæ profligatis, duce Domino Johanne, viro strenuo, fratre Comitis Hanoniæ, [1] quem sequebantur milites stipendiarii de Normania et Hanonia plures valde. Proinde parata classe per Comitem Hanoniæ, Regina pervenit ad mare, cum suis auxiliariis, qui fuere duo millia septingenti quinquaginta septem viri, sufficienter armati.

The Queen and Prince embark for England, with a great force, A.D. 1326.

They land at Herewych, and are joined by many adherents.

Regina transfretando pervenit ad portum de Herewych. Confestim occurrere Comites Marescalli et Leycestriæ, cum Lincolniensi, Herefordensi, Dublinensi, et Eliensi, Episcopis; qui, juncti Reginæ, magnum exercitum confecere. Alii [quidam Episcopi, et præcipue Cantuariensis,] W[alterus], sibi pecunias ministravere. Recreato exercitu apud Sanctum Edmundum, processit Regina, suos regnique adversarios quæsitura, neminem lædens in bonis aut catallis, nisi solum adversarios quos quærebat; quorum bona reperta suis usibus applicabat, et prædia destruebat.

The Queen's successful progress.

King Edward demands the aid of the citizens of London; who give a qualified answer.

Rex, cum hæc audisset, petiit Londonienses, ut sibi præberent auxilium. Qui responderunt, quod ipsum Dominum Regem, Reginam, et filium eorundem, hæredem regni legitimum, honorare vellent obsequio debito, et extraneis, regnique proditoribus, portas clauderent, et resisterent, juxta vires; exire vero civitatem suam se nolle fatebantur ad pugnam, nisi possent, juxta libertatem eis concessam, ipso eodem die reverti, ante solis occasum. Quo audito, communivit Turrim Londoniarum armis et victualibus, relinquens ibi filium suum juniorem, scilicet, Johannem de Eltham; fecitque proclamari Londoniis, ut unusquisque, sub forisfactura, restiteret applicatis, et eos invaderet, et occideret, si quo modo posset, exceptis solummodo Regina et filio

He fortifies the Tower of London. And issues a proclamation against his enemies.

[1] *quem sequebantur . . . . . Comitem Hanoniæ* omitted in ed. Camden.

suo, Edwardo, Comiteque Canciæ, germano suo. Item, quicunque caput Rogeri de Mortuo Mari Regi deferret, mille libras reciperet pro mercede. E contra, de parte Reginæ fuit proclamatum, ut omnes de pace bonam spem haberent, exceptis regni perturbatoribus, scilicet, Despenceres, patre et filio, et Roberto de Baldok, Regis Cancellario, et fautoribus eorundem. Item, proclamatum est, ut nullus caperet, invito possessore, valorem trium denariorum, sub pœna mutilationis digiti, nec valorem sex denariorum, sub pœna manus amputandæ; nec valorem duodecim sterlingorum, sub pœna decapitationis. Et quicunque caput Hugonis Despencer Reginæ deferret, reciperet duo millia librarum de Regina. A.D. 1326. The Queen issues a proclamation against the King's partisans.

Londonienses, per idem tempus, fecerunt conjurationem, ut adversantes Reginam, sine delectu, captos, sententia plecterent capitali; comprehendentesque unum de suis civibus, dictum, "Johannem Marchal," decapitaverunt, et ejus bona rapuerunt, quia nimis familiaris fuerat Domino Hugoni Despencer, juniori. Apprehensum insuper Magistrum Walterum de Stapultone, Episcopum Exoniensem, decollaverunt, cum duobus de sua familia, scutifero et valetto; pro eo, ut dicebant, quod collegerat multitudinem exercitus ad resistendum Reginæ. Claves etiam Turris Londoniarum extorserunt de manibus Constabularii dictæ Turris, et omnes incarceratos deliberaverunt. The citizens of London adopt the the Queen's cause. Murder of John Marchal, and Walter de Stapleton, Bishop of Exeter.

Regina interim obsedit villam et castrum de Bristollia, quod fuit cito sibi redditum, cum dicta villa; et in crastino adventus ejus, ad clamorem vulgi, fuit Hugo Despencer, pater, tractus et suspensus ibidem, in armis propriis, super communi furca latronum. Bristol is surrendered, and the Elder Despencer executed.

Dum hæc ita geruntur, Rex vagabundus, nunc hic, nunc ibi, pro varietate locorum, in spem erectus, et de spe dejectus, in magna sollicitudine versabatur. Senescallus domus regiæ, Dominus Thomas Blount, cum tota sua familia, assumptis secum victualibus et armis, cum dextrariis multis valde, se contulit ad Reginam. Thomas Blount, Steward of the King's household, joins the Queen.

A.D. 1326. The King takes to flight, but is captured in Wales.

Rex vero, cum Hugone Despencer, juniore, et Roberto de Baldok, disposuit confugisse in Hiberniam; sed inter pelagi constitutus pericula, miserabiliter per unam hebdomadam vacillavit. Tandem applicuit in Wallia, cum suis familiaribus; et, fraude Wallensium, captus est, in die Sancti Edmundi Archiepiscopi, juxta castrum de Lantrussan. Capti sunt etiam Hugo Despencer, junior, Robertus de Baldok, et Simon de Radingia; et Rex quidem Domino Henrico, Comiti Lankastriæ, consanguineo suo, conservandus committitur, et ductus per eundem ad castrum de Kenelwurthe. Dominus Hugo Despencer, Robertus de Baldok, et Simon de Radingia, ad Reginæ præsentiam, quæ tunc fuit Herefordiæ, sunt deducti. Comes de Arundell, Johannes Daniel, et Thomas de Mucheldevere, procurante Rogero de Mortuo Mari, sine quo nihil pene Regina gessit, ante eorum adventum, fuerunt decollati.

He is taken to Kenelwurthe.

Certain of the King's adherents are executed.

The Younger Despencer is executed.

Post hæc, Dominus Hugo prædictus, apud Herefordiam, mortis accepit sententiam, sine responso; ubi tractus, et suspensus in furca habente quinquaginta pedes in altitudine, et expost decapitatus et quarterizatus, est. Eodem die, Simon de Radingis tractus fuit, et suspensus, in eadem furca, sed inferius per decem pedes. Hic de familia Regis fuerat, et multa convitia irrogaverat sæpe Reginæ. Robertus de Baldok obiit in carcere et tormentis.

Simon de Radingis executed.

Robert de Baldok dies in prison.

The Queen goes to Walingforde.

Regina, præmissis expeditis, se transtulit, cum filio suo, Duce Aquitanniæ, Dominoque Rogero de Mortuo Mari, et aliis, ad castrum de Walingforde, ante festum Natalis.

General support given to the Queen by the nobility, A.D. 1327.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo septimo, et regni Regis Edwardi, a Conquæstu Secundi, vicesimo, et ultimo, tenuit Regina Natale, cum filio, Walingfordiæ; cui festo præsentes fuere duo regni Archiepiscopi, sexque Episcopi, cum prælatis multis, regnique proceribus et nobilibus, virisque famosis. Exacto Natali,

venit Regina, cum filio suo, Londonias, ante festum Epiphaniæ, ubi cum magno gaudio suscepta fuit. Convenerunt illic etiam tota regni nobilitas, citata prius ad Parliamentum tenendum ibidem in crastino dicti festi; ubi communi decreto censuerunt Regem indignum diademate, et, propter plures articulos, deponendum, et Edwardum, filium ejus primogenitum, in Regem unanimiter eligendum. Quod etiam consequenter factum fuit, et electio in Aula Magna publice divulgata. Missi sunt igitur, de parte totius Parliamenti, tres Episcopi, duo Comites, et duo Abbates, quatuor Barones, et de quolibet Comitatu tres milites, et etiam de civitatibus et magnis villis, atque de Portubus, ad certum numerum virorum honorabilium, ad Regem, degentem apud Kenelwurthe; qui nunciarent electionem filii sui, et requirerent ab eo, ut renunciaret dignitati regiæ et coronæ, atque permitteret filium suum regnare pro eo; alioquin ipsi redderent sibi homagia, [1] et procederent in prætactis. Rex, hiis auditis, respondet cum lacrymis, se multum dolere, quod sic demeruit erga populum regni sui: sed ex quo res ista fuit imprevertibilis, ab omnibus veniam precabatur, et gratias agebat ex corde, quod filium suum primogenitum elegissent. Nuncii vero, redeuntes ad Parliamentum cum Regis responso, et insigniis, plebem lætam fecere. Mox tota regni communitas Edwardum juvenem, quatuordecim annos ætatis habentem, in Regem promptissime admiserunt, et vicesimum septimum diem Januarii diem primum regni sui esse decreverunt; et in omnibus regni [2] communitatibus pacem ejus proclamari fecerunt, sub hac forma:—

A.D. 1327.

A Parliament held at London.

The King is deposed, and Prince Edward chosen King.

A deputation is sent to Kenelwurthe, to obtain Edward's sanction thereto.

He gives a reluctant assent.

The first day is named of the new reign.

"Edwardus, Dei gratia, Rex Angliæ, Dominus Hi-
" berniæ, et Dux Aquitanniæ, Vicecomiti N., salutem.
" Quia Dominus Edwardus, nuper Rex Angliæ, pater
" noster, de communi consilio et assensu Prælatorum,
" et Comitum, et Baronum, et aliorum magnatum, nec-

Proclamation made by the new King.

[1] *et procederent* omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *communitatis* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1327. " non et Comitatuum totius regni prædicti, spontanea " voluntate, se amovit a regimine dicti regni, volens et " concedens quod nos, tanquam ipsius primogenitus et " hæres, ipsius regni gubernationem et regimen assu- " mamus ; nosque ipsius patris nostri beneplacito, in hac " parte, de consilio et avisamento Prælatorum, Comitum, " et Baronum, magnatum et comitatuum prædictorum, " annuentes, gubernacula suscepimus dicti regni, et " fidelitates et homagia ipsorum prælatorum et magna- " tum recepimus, ut est moris.—Desiderantes igitur " pacem nostram, pro quiete et tranquillitate populi " nostri, inviolabiliter observari, tibi præcipimus, quod, " statim visis præsentibus, per totam baliviam tuam " pacem nostram facias publice proclamari; universis " et singulis, ex parte nostra, inhibendo, sub pœna et " periculo exhæredationis, et amissionis vitæ et mem- " brorum, ne quis dictam pacem nostram infringere seu " violare præsumat; sed quilibet actiones et querelas " suas, absque violentia quacunque, prosequatur, secun- " dum leges et consuetudines regni nostri. Nos enim " parati sumus, et semper erimus, omnibus et singulis " conquerentibus, tam divitibus quam pauperibus, in " curiis nostris plenam justitiam exhibere."

The young King is knighted.

Kalendis Februarii, die Dominica in Vigilia Purificationis, Edwardus juvenis suscepit arma militaria, cum multis aliis adolescentibus generosis, per Dominum Henricum, Comitem Lankastriæ; et eodem die coronatus est, apud Westmonasterium, per Walterum, Archiepiscopum Cantuariensem.

And is crowned at Westminster.

An exorbitant grant made to the Queen.

Reginæ, matri Regis, assignata fuit dos talis ac tanta, quod Regi, filio suo, pars regni tertia vix remansit.

A grant made to the deposed King; who does not enjoy it for a year.

Regi deposito, per singulos menses, assignatæ fuerunt per Consilium centum marcæ. Sed non permissus est per unius anni spatium gaudere tantilla remuneratione; nam nequiter atque crudeliter a suis custodibus interfectus, prout dicitur, vivere desiit ante finem anni. Nempe, si vulgo credendum est, tortores immites eum dejectum

obruerunt quodam ostio ponderoso, detinentes eum ne surgeret, donec tortores imposuissent cornu in secreto egestionis suæ loco, et per foramen immisissent ignitum veru in viscera sua; ne, videlicet, vestigia adustionis in cute sua aliqualiter apparerent. De cujus meritis, an inter Sanctos connumerandus sit, frequens est in vulgo disceptatio; sicut et de Thoma, Comite Lankastriæ, quondam fuit. A.D. 1327. According to common report, he is barbarously put to death.

Eodem anno, juvenis Rex Angliæ, cum matre sua, et stipendiariis suis alienigenis, et aliis multis regnicolis, versus Scotiam properavit, pervenitque ad Stannoppark, ubi exercitus Scotorum fuit. Et quia fuit ei exercitus multo major et fortior quam ipsis Scotis, obsedit ess in eodem loco, scilicet, in Werdale, diebus quindecim; sed mediante proditione quorundam magnorum Angliæ, sine læsione fugerunt. Unde Rex, cum dolore maximo, reversus est, remittens ad partes proprias Hannonienses, et stipendiarios quos conduxerat. The young King marches against the Scots. Who make their escape.

Jacobus autem Douglas, dum Rex, ut præfertur, Scotos [1] obsidendo circumsederet, nocte quadam, cum paucis, latenter penetravit ad Regis tentoria, ut eum caperet, vel occideret, si fortuna faveret. Sed capellanus Regis, vir cordatus et fortis, Regem defendit, cum quibusdam aliis, donec idem presbyter caderet interemptus. Jacobus vero, dux Scotorum, prævidens sibi imminere periculum, fugam cepit, et vix ad suos illæsus evasit. Narrow escape of the King from James Douglas.

Dominus Johannes [2] Mautravers et Thomas Gurnay, metuentes pœnas solvere pro morte Regis, repente fugerunt. Sed dictus Thomas, post tres annos, notus et captus apud Marsiliam, remissus est versus Angliam, pœnam pro demeritis recepturus. Qui tamen illuc non pervenit; sed in mari decapitatus fuit, sub quodam colore, ne forte magnas quasdam personas regni de consensu regiæ necis, vel [3] conniventia, accusaret. Dominus Johannes Mautravers se transtulit in Alemanniam, et ibi mansit per plures annos. Punishment of one of the murderers of the late King.

---

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[2] *Mantravers* in ed. Camden.
[3] *conneventia* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1327. Death of Charles de Valois. Hoc anno obiit Karolus de Valoys, patruus Regis Franciæ.

Death of Robert le Brus (A.D. 1329). Eodem anno obiit Robertus le Brus, Rex Scotorum, relicto parvulo filio suo, Davit, octo annorum, quem Scoti receperunt pro Rege suo.

Death of Charles IV., King of France (A.D. 1328). Obiit etiam Rex Francorum, Karolus, tertius frater, [1] qui fuit germanus serenissimæ Dominæ Ysabellæ, Anglorum Reginæ, matris Edwardi, Regis præsentis; per cujus mortem devolutum fuit regnum Franciæ, jure successorio, ad Edwardum, Regem Angliæ, qui nunc regnat; sed per Dominum Philippum de Valoys, filium patrui dicti Domini Karoli, per vim et potentiam se intrudentem, contra justitiam occupatum.

Philip VI. assumes the French crown. Philippus de Valoys occupat Francorum regnum.

Philippa, Queen of England, his niece. Edwardus, juvenis Rex Angliæ, duxit Philippam, filiam Comitis Hannoniæ, in uxorem; quæ fuit filia sororis Philippi de Valoys, nunc occupantis Franciam; licet illa affinitas, aut ulla alia cum Francis contracta, Angliæ nunquam profecisset.

A Parliament held at Northampton (A.D. 1328). Parliamentum tentum apud Northamptonam, in quo facta fuit turpis pax inter Anglos et Scotos; ita quod David, filius Roberti le Brus, duxit sororem Regis Angliæ in uxorem; et Rex Angliæ, cum matre, licet infra ætatem existens, fecit Scotis chartas, quarum tenor ab Anglicis ignoratur. Sed hæc omnia facta sunt per ordinationem Reginæ, et Rogerum de Mortuo Mari, et Jacobum Douglas, Scotum.

Agreement for the marriage of David le Brus to the King's sister.

A Council held by Simon, Archbishop of Canterbury, at London (A.D. 1329). Anno millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo octavo, Magister Simon, Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, tenuit Concilium Provinciale Londoniis; in quo ordinavit, quod in die Parasceues, et in die Commemorationis Animarum, ab omni opere cessaretur. Item, statuit, de consensu Concilii, quod festum Conceptionis Beatæ Mariæ principaliter celebretur. Item, ipse, et omnes prælati tunc præsentes, excommunicarunt, et excommunicatos denun-

---

[1] "*qui post mortem Philippi, patris sui, regnavit:*" supplied from Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.* Vol. I. p. 190.

ciaverunt, omnes illos qui Walterum de Stapultone, Episcopum [1] Exoniæ, interfecerunt, seu in eum manus violentas quomodolibet injecerunt, et omnes qui eis opem, assensum, vel consilium, præbuerunt. A.D. 1328.

Circa festum Ascensionis Dominicæ, Rex Angliæ transivit mare, et fecit homagium Regi Franciæ pro toto Ducatu Aquitanniæ, et Comitatu de Pontyf, sub quibusdam protestationibus: quod homagium suscepit Rex Franciæ sub aliis conditionibus; videlicet, quod non admisit homagium pro terris quas pater suus, Karolus, equitavit, quousque esset sibi satisfactum pro damnis et expensis. King Edward does homage to the King of France, for the Duchy of Aquitaine.

Circa festum Michaelis, in Parliamento tento Saresbiriæ, fecit Rex tres Comites, scilicet, Dominum Johannem de Eltham, fratrem suum, Comitem Cornubiæ, et Dominum Rogerum de Mortuo Mari, Comitem Marchiæ Walliæ, et Pincernam Hiberniæ, Comitem de Ormund. Parliament at Salisbury. Creation of new Peers.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo nono, David, filius Roberti le Brus, Johannam, sororem Regis Angliæ, duxit uxorem. Marriage of the Princess Johanna (A.D. 1328).

Hoc anno, procurante Regina, et Rogero de Mortuo Mari, Dominus Edmundus de Wodestok, patruus Regis, Comes Canciæ, decollatus fuit, propter quasdam confessiones et litteras apud se repertas, licet nullæ confessionum vel litterarum earundem, etsi veræ fuissent, deberent causam tribuere morti ejus. Qui cum tristem accepisset sententiam, hora diei prima, in Parliamento tento Wyntoniæ, extra portas tamen stetit usque ad Vesperas, condemnatus, nullo in eum volente manum mittere; donec miser aliquis de Marescalcia eum jussus est decapitare. Qui eo minus deploratus fuit, quod familiam malam habuit, quæ supra modum afflixerat populares. Edmund, Earl of of Kent, the King's uncle, executed, A.D. 1329. Evil conduct of his household.

Sub hiis diebus, Papa fecit graves processus iterato contra Ducem Bavariæ, electum in Imperatorem, et Process of the Pope against the

[1] *Oxoniæ* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1329. Emperor, Louis IV.

adhærentes sibi; et, pro sustinenda guerra contra eum, omnes fructus beneficiorum vacantium per quadriennium reservavit.

Death of Robert le Brus (A.D. 1329).

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo, [1] Robertus le Brus, qui se Regem Scotorum fecerat, lepra percussus, obiit. Ipso anno, natus Regi Edwardo filius primogenitus, "Edwardus" vocatus, de nomine patris sui.

Birth of Prince Edward, A.D. 1330.

Arrest and execution of Roger de Mortimer.

Hoc anno, dum Parliamentum teneretur apud Notingham, captus fuit de nocte, in camera Reginæ, matris Regis, Dominus Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, Comes Marchiæ, per Dominum Willelmum de Monte Acuto, et alios, ipso Rege præsente; et mox Londonias missus fuit, ubi mortis excepit sententiam, suspensus apud Elmes, super communi furca latronum. Causæ quæ imponebantur eidem, prout accepimus, istæ fuere:—

Causes assigned for his execution.

Prima causa,—quod fuit consentiens morti Regis Edwardi, in castro de Berkeleye. Secundarie,—impositum fuit ei, quod ipse impedivit honorem Regis et regni, apud Stannoppark, ubi Scoti fugerunt; qui capi et interfici potuerunt. Tertio,—quod ipse recepit viginti millia librarum a Scotis, et illos tunc permisit evadere, et turpem pacem postmodum inter Scotos et Regem juvenem fieri procuravit; et super hoc chartam Regis fieri fecit eisdem. Et etiam illud vile matrimonium, contractum inter sororem Regis et David, filium Roberti le Brus, consummari consuluit, et procuravit. Quarto,—quod male consumpsit totam pecuniam in thesauris patris hujus Regis, et Domini Hugonis Despencer, inventam; et omnia bona regni, postquam Angliam Regina intravit, suæ dispositioni subegit, ita quod ipse et Regina abundabant, et Dominus Rex egebat. Quinto,—quod appropriavit sibi custodias et maritagia nobiliora per totam Angliam; et quod fuit malus consciliarius Regis et Reginæ, matris; et nimis secretus cum ea, ut de aliis taceamus.

The grants made to

Rex Edwardus, de consensu procerum, recepit in manu

[1] See above *sub anno* 1327, p. 268; the year of his death was 1329.

A.D. 1330. the Queen Dowager resumed.

sua omnes terras prius matri suæ concessas; et ordinavit ut singulis annis perciperet mille libras.

Tenths of goods of ecclesiastics granted.

Papa concessit Regi Angliæ decimas omnium bonorum ecclesiasticorum per quadriennium, medietate sibi retenta.

Parliament at London, A.D. 1331.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo primo, fuit Parliamentum tentum Londoniis; in quo concessa fuit a populo quinta-decima, et a burgensibus decima, per unum annum.

Edward de Baliol asserts his right to the crown of Scotland.

Circa festum Sancti Laurentii, venit in Angliam Dominus Edwardus de Baliol, dicens se jus habere in regnum Scotiæ; cui adhæserunt Dominus Henricus de Bello Monte, David Comes de Atheles, Gilbertus Umfrevyle, Ricardus Talbot, et alii multi nobiles, asserentes se jus habere ad terras et possessiones in dicto regno, [1] vel ratione juris hæreditarii, vel ratione suarum conjugum; volentes ingredi Scotiam per regnum Angliæ; quod Rex noluit permittere, contemplatione sororis suæ, nuptæ David, filio Roberti le Brus. Quapropter ipsi intraverunt per mare Scotiam, juxta Dunfermelyn, ubi mox in littore maris resistentiam invenerunt, ac tam Scotos resistentes fugaverunt Anglici pedites, et plurimos occiderunt, priusquam gentes de armis naves egredi potuerunt. Expost infra dies paucos, commiserunt prœlium juxta Gledesmor, ubi duo millia Anglicorum vicerunt quadraginta millia Scotorum, præ multitudine semet opprimentium, et pressura. Ibi interempti sunt, de parte Scotorum, quinque Comites, et multi alii interfecti.

He invades Scotland (A.D. 1332).

The Scots are defeated, near Gledesmor.

Many of the English join Edward de Baliol.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo secundo, continuata fuit guerra in Scotia, per Dominum Edwardum Baliol et nobiles antedictos; ad quos accesserunt plures alii viri nobiles de regno Angliæ voluntarie, propriis sumptibus militaturi; qui villam et castrum de Berwyk obsederunt. Rex Angliæ, considerans multa vituperia sibi et antecessoribus suis per Scotos illata, et quod concordia facta inter ipsum et Scotos fuit irrita per

[1] *vel . . . . hæreditarii* omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1332. proditionem, ipso in minori ætate notorie constituto, et in custodia matris suæ existente, jam, contra consilium matris suæ, collecta multitudine armatorum, ad Berwyk potenter accessit; ubi tenentes castrum et villam multos dolosos tractatus habuere cum eo, ut ab extra adjutorium expectarent. Sed hæc de Regis Angliæ profectione gesta sunt anno sequenti.

King Edward treats with the garrison of Berwyk (A.D. 1333).

Coronation of Edward de Baliol.

Eodem anno quo supra, Edwardus, filius Johannis de Baliolo, apud Scone, in Regem Scotiæ coronatur.

King Edward defeats the Scots, near Hellidone, A.D. 1333.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo tertio, in festo Sanctæ Margaretæ Virginis, venerunt Scoti in magna multitudine, volentes dissolvere obsidionem Berwici. Quibus, cum suis, occurrit Rex Angliæ vultu alacri, et, commisso bello, occidit ex eis octo Comites, mille et trecentos equites, et de popularibus triginta quinque millia. Hos ad discrimen impulerat quidam miles, vocatus "Willelmus Keuth," ad locum juxta Berwycum, qui dicitur "Boothulle," juxta Hellidone.

The Scots besiege the castle of Bamburgh, but afterwards take to flight.

Miserant interea dolose Scoti quosdam de suis in Angliam, qui [1] obsiderent castrum de Bamburgh, in quo tunc temporis Regina fuit. Sed auditis rumoribus de prætacta victoria, obsidione de [2] Bamburgh dimissa, Scoti fugerunt ad nota latibula; et est dictu mirabile, quod in dicto bello, ubi corruerunt tot Scotorum millia, non ceciderunt ex Anglicis nisi miles unus, armiger unus, et duodecim pedites. Quibus visis, oppidani de [3] Berwyco villam, cum castro, Regi Angliæ reddiderunt.

Surrender of Berwick.

The kingdom of Scotland given in charge to Baliol and others.

Rex, relictis custodibus in villa castroque de [4] Berewyk, quæ sua fore dixit jure hæreditario, et etiam ex conquæstu antecessorum suorum, dimisit Edwardum [5] de Baylol, cum aliis nobilibus qui secum erant, ad custodiam regni Scotiæ.

Hoc anno, Dominus Edwardus [5] de Baliol, Rex Scotiæ,

---

[1] *obsederent* in MS.
[2] *Hamburgh* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Barwico* in ed. Camden.
[4] *Barwick* in ed. Camden.
[5] *le* in MS.

tenuit Parliamentum post festum Michaelis; ad quod venerunt nobiles regni Angliæ, terras et possessiones ibidem habentes; et, finito Parliamento, in pace reversi sunt. A.D. 1333. A Parliament held by Edward de Baliol.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo quarto, in festo Sanctorum Gervasii et Prothasii, Edwardus [1] de Baliolo, verus Rex Scotiæ, fecit homagium Edwardo, Regi Angliæ, apud Novum Castrum super Tynam, in præsentia trium Episcoporum, Comitum et Baronum, ac copiosæ plebis. Baliol does homage to the King of England. A.D. 1334

Eodem fere tempore, Rex Angliæ cepit homagium Ducis Britanniæ pro Comitatu Richemundiæ. Homage of the Duke of Bretagne for the County of Richmond.

Post festum Exaltationis Sanctæ Crucis, dum fieret Parliamentum Londoniis, nunciatum fuit quod Scoti omnes insurrexerunt, et ceperunt Dominum Ricardum Talbot, et sex alios milites, et multos pedites peremerunt. Unde Rex commotus, promisit se iturum in Scotiam, pro Scotorum malitia refrenanda. Ob quam causam, populus concessit ei quintum-decimum denarium, et cives atque burgenses decimum denarium providerunt. Rising of the Scots. Grant to King Edward, to oppose them.

Post festum Michaelis, Rex transtulit se versus Scotiam, et sub hieme gelida intravit Galwediam, et devastavit, usque mare Scoticum, totam patriam. Audito quod Comes de Adhelis transfugit ad Scotos, iratus est valde; et cum didicisset quod Dominus Henricus de Bello Monte in quodam castro fuit obsessus per Scotos, obsidionem fecit celeriter amoveri. Edward enters Scotland. He relieves Henry de Beaumont, besieged by the Scots.

Hoc anno, Rex Angliæ, Edwardus, et Henricus, filius Henrici, Comitis Lancastriæ, ultra montes Scotiæ processit, cum exercitu, deprædantes et incendentes per plura milliaria amplius quam unquam fecerat Rex Edwardus, [2] avus Regis Edwardi. King Edward lays waste even to the extreme North of Scotland.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo quinto, fuit Rex, ad festum Natalis, apud Rokesburgh, cum manu potenti. A.D. 1335. The King at Rokesburgh.

[1] *le Baliol* in ed. Camden.

[2] *annis Regis* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1335. A truce made with the Scots. A Parliament at York.

Scotis concessæ sunt treugæ, usque ad Natale Sancti Johannis Baptistæ proxime futurum duraturæ. Quo tempore fuit tentum Parliamentum apud Eboracum, super illis treugis et aliis concernentibus statum regni. In quo fuit ordinatum, quod Rex, cum exercitu, transiret mare Scoticum; quod cito postea factum est. Scoti proinde finxerunt se pacem habere velle, et, circa festum Michaelis, quidam ad pacem venerunt; inter quos, Comes de Adtheles pacem petiit, et impetravit. Comes de Moryf, qui pacem petierat, et ad pacem venire contempserat, captus [1] expost, carceri mancipatur. Eodem tempore, Dominus Ricardus Talbot, pro duobus millibus marcarum, redemptus fuit.

Peace made with the Earl of Athole.

Sir Richard Talbot ransomed.

Comes de Asselis, volens se ostendere vere reversum ad Anglicos, fecit equitationem contra Scotos; et subito dissipata comitiva sua, a multitudine Scotorum, cum tresdecim personis mediocribus, est occisus.

The Earl of Athole is slain.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo sexto, Domina Philippa, Regina, peperit filium suum secundum, dictum "Willelmum," apud Hatfeld; qui, cito post moriens, sepultus est apud Eboracum.

Birth of Prince William, at Hatfield, A.D. 1336.

Circa festum Sancti Gregorii, in Parliamento tento Londoniis, Rex Edwardus de Comitatu Cornubiæ fecit Ducatum; quem contulit primogenito suo, Edwardo, tanto donativo Comitatum Cestriæ superaddens. Dominus nempe Johannes de Eltham, frater Regis, qui fuit Comes Cornubiæ, obierat perante.

The County of Cornwall made into a Duchy, and bestowed upon Prince Edward. (A.D. 1337.)

In eodem Parliamento, fecit sex Comites, videlicet, Henricum de Lankastre, juniorem, Comitem de Derby, Willelmum de Monte Acuto, Comitem Sarum, Hugonem de Audele, Comitem Gloverniæ, Willelmum de Clinton, Comitem Huntingdoniæ, [2] [Willelmum de Boun, Comitem Northamptoniæ,] Robertum de Ufford, Comitem Suthfolchiæ.

Six Earls created.

---

[1] *est post* in ed. Camden. | *Hist. Angl.*
[2] Supplied from Walsingham, |

Statutum [1] est in hoc Parliamento, quod nullus uteretur panno extra Angliam operato, exceptis Rege, Regina, et liberis eorundem; neque pellura transmarina, nisi valentes centum libras reddituum annuatim. A.D. 1336. Enactment against the use of cloth made out of England.

Hoc anno, Edwardus, Rex Angliæ, fœdus iniit infructuosum cum Lodowico de Bavaria, se "Imperatorem" appellante. Fruitless treaty with the Emperor Louis.

Nuncii directi sunt ad Regem Franciæ, ex parte Regis Angliæ, ad tractandum de pace inter regna, et conveniendum Regem Franciæ, eo quod injuste fovit partem Scotorum contra Regem Angliæ, dominum eorundem. Adhuc dictis nunciis in Francia moram trahentibus, directa est per Regem Franciæ magna classis, armatis onusta, ad auxiliandum Scotis. An embassy sent to the King of France. Who aids the Scots.

Dominus Willelmus de Monte Acuto, Comes Sarum, obsedit castrum de Dunbar, in Scotia, cum aliis magnatibus regni Angliæ; quos Rex ibidem dimiserat pro custodia illius terræ, dum interim ipse redisset in Angliam, pro regni sui negotiis exequendis. Sed cum cognovisset quod Scoti dictum castrum obsidione vallassent, illuc celeriter properavit. At quia cuncta male ministrarat, impeditus in itinere, quosdam de suis amisit. Siege of the castle of Dunbar.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo septimo, villa de [2] Southamptone per galeas Regis Franciæ totaliter est combusta. Grandis discordia orta est inter Reges Angliæ et Franciæ, propter terras quas Rex Franciæ, satis injuste, in Wasconia usurpaverat. Qua de causa, Rex Angliæ plures oblationes humiles Francorum Regi porrexerat, si saltem sic posset recuperare terras suas; sed nil profecit. Ob quod negotium, in Parliamento apud Notingham, exegit quintum-decimum denarium de communi plebe, decimumque de burgis. In hoc Parliamento statutum fuit, ut omnes lanifici Flandriæ, aliarumque terrarum, volentes inhabitare Angliam, pacifice advenirent. Revera, per annos elapsos, inter- Southampton burnt by the French. Discord between the Kings of England and France, A.D. 1337. Parliament held at Nottingham (A.D. 1336). Enactments made therein.

[1] *est hoc anno* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Southamptonæ* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1337. dictum fuit passagium de lanis; ut sic retunderetur superbia Flandritarum, qui plus saccos quam Anglos venerabantur.

The goods of the Lombards, and Cluniac and Cistercian monks confiscated.

Hoc anno, propter instantem guerram, Rex Angliæ confiscari fecit bona Longobardorum, et monachorum Cluniacensium atque Cisterciensium, per totum regnum.

A comet.

Circa Kalendas Augusti, cometa apparuit.

Grant of a tenth by the ecclesiastics.

Hoc anno, concessa fuit decima Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ per tres annos sequentes.

Favour shown to the King of France by the Cardinals, who are sent as envoys; and remark thereon by the Archbishop of Canterbury.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo octavo, Cardinales, scilicet, Petrus Hispanus et Dominus Bernardus de Monte Faventiæ, qui pro pace venerant reformanda inter Reges Angliæ et Franciæ, plus faverunt Regi Franciæ quam Regi Angliæ, ut patebat in sermone unius Cardinalis ad clerum habito. Quapropter, continuo surrexit [1] Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, et prædicavit publice assertiones Cardinalis fore frivolas atque vanas. Et post modicum temporis manifeste dicebatur per totam Angliam, quod Rex Angliæ habuit jus in regnum Franciæ, quod prosequi intendebat.

A.D. 1338.

King Edward crosses over, to treat with the Duke of Brabant.

Louis of Bavaria appoints Edward his Vicar.

Circa festum Translationis Sancti Thomæ, Rex Edwardus, cum Philippa Regina, prægnante, et duabus filiabus suis, et exercitu copioso, mare transiit, ad tractandum cum Duce Brabantiæ, et aliis alligatis suis, de aggrediendo regnum Franciæ, sibi jure successorio, per mortem, celebris memoriæ, Domini Karoli, Regis ultimi, fratris germani Dominæ Ysabellæ, matris dicti Domini Regis Edwardi, devolutum, et per Dominum Philippum de Valesio, filium patrui dicti Domini Karoli, injuste hactenus occupatum. Cumque pervenisset ad portum de Swyne, Flandrenses occurrerunt ei unanimiter, offerentes se paci ejus, et fidelitati. Indeque transiit in Brabantiam, ubi Dux Brabantiæ suscepit eum cum gloria et honore. De Brabantia pervenit prope Coloniam, et locutus est cum Duce Bavariæ, qui se vocavit Imperatorem; qui constituit eum Vicarium suum

[1] John Stratford.

de toto imperio citra Coloniam, et omnibus imperium suum tangentibus. Quibus expletis, Rex Brabantiam est regressus, ubi per annum jugiter moram traxit; et per hanc moram, consilio Brabantinorum et Flandrensium, arma Franciæ suis armis immiscuit, et boreales partes Franciæ, usque ad Tornacum, incendit et vastavit. A.D. 1338. He assumes the arms of France, and lays waste that country.

Eo tempore, natus est Regi filius tertius, apud Andwerp, et vocatus est "Lionellus." Birth of Prince Lionel.

Hoc anno, Rex Edwardus se Regem Franciæ et Angliæ constituit appellari; et Domino Papæ ac Cardinalibus scripsit epistolam, jus quod habebat in regnum Franciæ declarantem; quæ sic incipit:—"Amabilium "domino patrum." Cui Papa rescripsit epistolam, cujus initium tale est:—"Dudum te, fili, clara imitari ves-"tigia," *et cætera.* Letter of King Edward to the Pope and Cardinals, as to his right to the throne of France, and answer thereto (A.D. 1339.)

Anno millesimo trecentesimo tricesimo nono, Rex Edwardus tenuit Natale in Selandia, apud Andwerp, cum Regina Philippa, et multis proceribus illarum partium, et exercitu Anglicano. King Edward at Antwerp, A.D. 1339.

Circa festum Purificationis, Rex Edwardus redivit in Angliam, dimittens uxorem suam, cum liberis, in Selandia, quasi in sui [1] reditus assecurationem; pervenitque ad Turrim Londoniarum nocte subito, et non invenit in ea, cum esset media nox, nisi pueros suos, et tres servientes. Quapropter, Constabularium et plures alios incarcerari mandavit. Edward returns suddenly to England. Places many officials under arrest.

In Parliamento celebrato Londoniis, indixit Rex tributum quintæ partis bonorum suorum, et [2] lanas omnium occupavit, nonamque garbam de omni gleba regni suis expeditionibus deputavit; de quarum proventu dominos vicinarum villarum respondere fecit. A Parliament held at London (A.D. 1340).

Eo tempore, Otto, Dux Austriæ, petiit magnis precibus a Rege Angliæ filiam ejus suo filio desponsandam. Proposal made by the Duke of Austria.

Per id temporis, civitas Burdegaliæ per militiam Regis Franciæ fuit obsessa; cives vero, tanquam inva-

[1] *redditus* in ed. Camden.

[2] *lanæ nonum vellus* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1339. The French defeated by Oliver Ingham, at Bordeaux.

lidi ad resistendum, cautelose finxerunt se velle reddere dictis Francis, et, apertis januis, intromiserunt multos de Gallicis, et arma Regis Franciæ in turribus erexerunt. Quod videntes Franci, tam qui intraverant, quam qui foris erant, deposuerunt arma sua, civitatem captam, et eis redditam, existimantes. Dominus vero Oliverus Ingham, miles nobilis, ac custos dictæ civitatis et terræ, repente, cum manu potenti, irruit super Gallos inermes, et, cum civium adjutorio, magnam eorum multitudinem interemit.

Grants made to the King by Parliament.

Concessum nempe fuit Regi per biennium nonum vellus, nona garba, ab omnibus qui baronias tenebant, et ad Parliamentum venire, de consuetudine vel de jure, venire tenebantur. Qui vero religiosi, vel clerici, non consueverunt ad Parliamentum accedere, solum decimas, perante Regi concessas, solverunt. Pro præmissa concessione, remisit Rex, et condonavit, omnia catalla felonum et fugitivorum, evasiones incarceratorum, fines, exitus, et forisfactiones, et amerciamenta murdrorum, et omnia delicta de viridi, de venatione, de vasta, et quæcunque alia delicta infra forestas facta, adjudicata vel adjudicanda, relevia, scutagia, usque ad passagium suum versus Brabantiam, videlicet, [1] octavo die Julii, anno regni sui duodecimo; et insuper, faciendi filium suum militem, et filiam suam maritandam, pro tempore suo. Confirmavit etiam Magnam Chartam [2] et Chartam de Foresta, et alia multa condonavit.

The Earl of Salisbury and other nobles taken prisoners by the French.

Comes Sarum, Willelmus de Monte Acuto, et Comes Southfolchiæ, Robertus de Ufford, post recessum Regis Angliæ, continuantes moram in transmarinis partibus, dum minus consulte Martem lacessere tentant, a nimia Gallorum multitudine sunt oppressi, capti, et ad Regem Franciæ, in Ramis Palmarum, destinati, et, ejus jussu, carcerali custodiæ destinati.

---

[1] "*sextum decimum*" in the *Hist. Anglicana* of Walsingham, Vol. I., p. 225. This is the reading in Hemingburgh, or Hemmingford.

[2] *et Chartam de* omitted in ed. Camden.

Hoc anno, nascitur Regi filius quartus, apud Gandavum, qui vocatus est "Johannes." A.D. 1340. Birth of John of Gaunt.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo, cum Rex Edwardus firmiter statuisset in animo iterum transfretare, Comes de Gileres per nuncios certificavit eum de conspiratione Francorum et Normannorum; qui jam, cum ducentis navibus et multis galeis, necnon et viginti millibus electorum pugnatorum, portum de Sclus occupaverant, et parati erant ad eum capiendum, et Philippo, Regi Franciæ, juxta tenorem juramenti quod sibi præstiterant, vivum vel mortuum præsentandum. Rex, de imminenti periculo præmunitus, naves congregat et ipse ducentas, sive plures, et in Vigilia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ ingressus mare, velificare cœpit versus Flandriam; ubi sub brevi tempore conspexit classem Gallicam terribiliter instructam contra eum. Qua de causa, per totum diem illum cum suis deliberans, in crastino mane, superveniente nobili milite, Roberto de Murleya, cum boreali classe Angliæ, commisit bellum navale cum suis hostibus cruentissimum; in quo Galli, cum Normannis, sagittis terebrati, securibus dejecti et prostrati, gladiis bisacutis vulnerati, Anglorum Regi victoriam concessere. Ceciderunt ergo die illa de adversariis triginta millia hominum armatorum, quorum multi saltu præcipiti in pelago perierunt. Captæ sunt autem in dicto conflictu naves ducentæ, reliquis in fugam versis. [1] Inventa sunt in una navi quadringenta corpora mortuorum.

King Edward receives intelligence of the designs of the French and Normans.

A naval victory is gained by him over the French [at Sluys].

Rex Angliæ, mensibus Julii, Augusti, et Septembris, assistentibus sibi Duce Brabantiæ, et Comite Hanoniæ, et auxiliaribus datis sibi de villa de Brugis, de Gaunt, et de Ypres, boreales Franciæ ingreditur iterato, civitatemque Tornacensem obsidione vallat.

The English, with their allies, besiege Tournay.

Interea Comes Hannoniæ, et Domini Walterus Manny et Reginaldus de Cobham, amplius quam trecentas vil-

The adjoining country is laid waste

[1] This sentence is omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1340. by the English.

las majores et minores, captis prædis et spoliis, hominibusque armorum plusquam mille peremptis, ignibus cremaverunt.

A truce is concluded between the Kings of England and France.

Rex Francorum interim, cum magno exercitu, se tenuit a remotis; qua tempestate, Galli plurimi, de Regis Francorum cuneis, fame sitique perierunt. Quapropter, per duos Cardinales treugas sibi dari petiit, quas et accepit, in ecclesia de Espletelyn, die Lunæ, vicesimo quinto die Septembris, anno Domini supradicto. Rex autem Anglorum, ob defectum pecuniæ, quam sui segnes procuratores in Anglia misissent, obsidione dimissa, citius in treugas concessit, et sic uterque ad propria remeavit.

Flanders is placed under Interdict by the Pope.

Sub istis diebus, cum Papa vidisset Regem Angliæ in suis actibus prosperari, Flandriam supposuit Interdicto, eo quod descivissent a domino suo capitali, et Anglorum Regi auxilia præstitissent. Quam sententiam Flandri parvipendentes, responderunt quod quamvis Philippo de Valoys, eo quod se Regem esse prætendebat, homagium fecerant, tamen non Regi, cum ipse injuste coronam detineret, et regni dominationem indebite vendicaret.

Birth of the Princess Blanche.

Hoc anno, peperit Regina Philippa, postquam in Angliam est reversa, filiam, in Turri Londoniarum, "Blanchiam" appellatam; quæ, cito defuncta, apud Westmonasterium est sepulta.

K. Edward crosses over to Bretagne.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo primo, Rex Edwardus transfretavit in Minorem Britanniam, ubi, per cibos et potus incongruos, plures de suis amisit.

A.D. 1341. Two Cardinals propose a truce.

Hoc tempore, missi sunt ad eum duo Cardinales, ex parte Papæ, qui treugas triennales indixerunt inter Reges; sub quo spatio, de jure quod Rex Angliæ vendicavit in regnum Franciæ discuti posset ad plenum.

Tempest attributed to necromancers of the French King.

In redeundo vero de Britannia, perpessus est maxima, per marinam tempestatem, incommoda; quæ utique dicebatur per nigromanticos Regis Franciæ suscitata.

Birth of

Hoc anno, Regina peperit quintum filium, apud

Langele, quem baptizavit Dominus Michael, Abbas de Sancto Albano; et nominatus est "Edmundus." A.D. 1341. Prince Edmund.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo secundo, Lodowicus de Bavaria, qui se Imperatorem appellavit, fœdifragus atque inconstans, Vicariatum citra Coloniam, susceptum a Rege Angliæ, per suas litteras revocavit; et, spretis fœderibus Regi Angliæ sacramento firmatis, amicitias contraxit cum Rege Francorum. Louis of Bavaria revokes the Vicarship conferred upon Edward. A.D. 1342.

Rex Edwardus, suscepto homagio, pro Ducatu Britanniæ, de Johanne de Monte Forti, germano quondam Johannis, Ducis Britanniæ, sine hærede legitimo de suo corpore defuncti, ipsum, vasallum suum, juvare cupiens, contra Karolum de Bloys, qui desponsavit filiam alterius fratris germani, qui, dicto Johanne Duce vivente, decessit, mense Octobri, transfretavit in Britanniam; ubi multos magnates sibi conciliavit, plures villas et munitiones, atque castra, rebellantia, manu potenti cepit, villam de Vanes obsedit, quamvis Rex Franciæ illuc cum multo milite occurrisset. Ibi mediantibus duobus Cardinalibus, captæ sunt treugæ in Prioratu de Malestreyt, tricesimo die Januarii. Sed tamen, treugis non obstantibus, remansit villa de Vanes Regi Angliæ subjugata. Edward again crosses over to Bretagne, to aid John de Montfort against Charles de Bloys. A truce is made.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo tertio, [1] Clemens Papa, quondam Rothomagensis Archiepiscopus, successit Benedicto Duodecimo; vir insignis litteraturæ, sed prodigalitatis profusissimæ; adeo ut dignitates ecclesiasticas, vacantes in Anglia, suis conferret Cardinalibus, novosque pro eis in Anglia titulos imponere moliretur; unde nimis offensus, Rex Angliæ provisiones per eum factas cassavit, et, ne quis de cætero tales provisiones afferret, sub pœna carceris atque capitis, interdixit. Accession of Pope Clement VI. (A.D. 1342.) King Edward annuls the provisions made by him in England. A.D. 1343.

Isto anno, per totum regnum Angliæ, decimæ tam temporalium, quam spiritualium, Regi solutæ sunt. Tenths paid to the King.

[1] Clement VI.; his election took place in 1342.

A.D. 1343. Pope Clement again makes provisions in England, for two Cardinals.

Eodem anno, Papa Clemens iterum fecit in Anglia provisiones duobus Cardinalibus de beneficiis proximo vacantibus, præter episcopatus et abbathias, ad extentam duorum millium marcarum; quod Rex et nobiles noluerunt pati, sed procuratores dictorum Cardinalium, sub pœna carceris, Angliam exire jussere; nec multo post Rex direxit Papæ illam famosam epistolam pro libertate Anglicanæ Ecclesiæ contuenda, quæ sic incipit: —"Pensata Sedis Apostolicæ clementia," *et cætera.* Cujus tenor Dominum Papam et omnes Cardinales, pro sui elegantia, non solum vertit in admirationem, sed etiam in stuporem.

Edward writes to the Pope, against Provisors.

Envoys sent to the Roman Court, to treat of Edward's right to the French crown.

Per idem tempus, Rex Angliæ misit procuratores ad Romanam Curiam, Dominum Henricum de Lankastria, Comitem de Derby, cum multis aliis viris nobilibus, tam ecclesiasticis quam temporalibus, ad tractandum coram Summo Pontifice de jure suo in regnum [1] Franciæ, non ut judice, sed privata persona, et amico communi, non in forma, nec in figura judicii, *et cætera.*

Golden florins coined.

Hoc anno, apud Turrim Londoniæ, jussit Rex aureos florenos fieri, scilicet, denarium, obolum, et quadrantem.

A Round Table built at Windsor Castle by order of King Edward. A.D. 1344.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo quarto, Rex Edwardus fecit convocari plures artifices ad castrum de Wyndeleshores, et cœpit ædificare domum, quæ "Rotunda Tabula" vocaretur. Habuit autem ejus area a centro ad circumferentiam, per semidiametrum, centum pedes, et sic diameter ducentorum pedum erat. Expensæ per hebdomadam erant primo centum libræ; sed expost, propter guerras inchoandas, fuerunt subtractæ et imminutæ usque ad viginti libras hebdomadatim.

A Round Table commenced by the King of France.

Eodem tempore, Philippus de Valoys, Rex Franciæ, provocatus facto Regis Angliæ, cœpit et ipse Rotundam construere Tabulam in terra sua; ut sic alliceret militiam Alemanniæ et Italiæ, et impediret ne ad Regis [2] Angliæ Tabulam properarent.

[1] *Angliæ* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Angliam* in MS.

A.D. 1344. The French King grants leave to fell trees for shipping.

In diebus illis, idem Rex Franciæ concessit suis hominibus licentiam [1]prosternendi arbores pro navibus faciendis, in omnibus boscis suis; factumque est, ut infra breve tempus maxima navium copia fabricaretur; quæ cito postea Anglicis multa intulit damna.

Death of William, Earl of Salisbury.

Obiit Dominus Willelmus de Monte Acuto, Comes Sarum, Rex Mannæ, et Marescallus Angliæ; de cujus virtuosis gestis digne scribere opus foret commendabile.

Privileges granted to the clergy by the King.

Clerus Anglicanus concessit Regi decimas triennales; cui Rex reconcessit, per chartam suam, tale privilegium;—"Quod nullus Archiepiscopus, vel Episcopus, sit "arreynatus coram Justiciariis nostris, causa cujuscunque criminis, si non specialiter [2]nos præceperimus, "quousque aliud remedium ordinetur. Item, quod "nullus clericus sit arreynatus coram Justiciariis nostris, sive ad sectam nostram, sive partis, si clericus "suæ clerimoniæ se submittat, dicens se membrum "esse Ecclesiæ, et non debere ipsis Justiciariis respondere. Et si sibi imponatur, quod duas uxores duxerit, "sive unam, viduam, quod super hoc Justiciarii non "habeant commissionem, nec potestatem ad triandum "per inquisitionem, vel alio modo, bigamiam; sed mittatur Curiæ Christianæ."

Discovery of a vast treasure, through the agency of a Saracen physician.

In illo tempore, venit Sarazenus quidam, arte medicus, ad Comitem de Warenna, petens licentiam capiendi quemdam serpentem in dominio quod habebat in partibus Walliæ, loco qui "Brunsfeld" appellatur. Qui cum per incantationes cepisset serpentem, dixit esse, in loco vicino cavernæ ubi serpens habitaverat, magnam summam thesauri. Quo audito, viri de Hereford, consilio cujusdam Lumbardi, qui vocabatur "Petrus Py-"kard," illuc fodiendo [3]penetrarunt, et comperientes verum fore Sarazeni vaticinium, noctanter opus [4]acturi sæpius convenerunt, donec per famulos Comitis

[1] *consternandi* in ed. Camden.
[2] *non* in MS.
[3] *penitrarunt* in ed. Camden.
[4] *facturi* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1344. deprehensi, capti sunt, et carceri mancipati. Comes, ut fertur, ex hoc facto lucrum non modicum nundinatus est.

Birth of the Princess Mary. Regina Philippa peperit filiam, "Mariam" nomine; quæ fuit expost copulata Duci Britanniæ; sed de medio sublata est præmature.

Successes of Henry, Earl of Derby, in Gascoigne. A.D. 1345. Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo quinto, Dominus Henricus de Lankastria, Comes de Derby, transfretavit in Wasconiam, cum sexcentis hominibus de armis, et totidem sagittariis. Qui primo insultu villam munitissimam de Brigerak cepit, et undecim nobiles, in ea protinus existentes; et [1] plurimos de plebeiis captivavit. Urbes insignes et villas, numero quinquaginta sex, Regis Angliæ ditioni subjecit. Exercitum Regis Francorum, contra se venientem, contrivit; captis viginti tribus viris illustribus, cum aliis viris armorum, velut innumeris, cæteris mucrone peremptis, aut turpiter actis in fugam. Hujus liberalitas et munificentia remotarum partium tyrones allexit, in amorem juvenis; ut quisque dulce reputaret militare sub eo. Nempe cum villam aliquam vi et armis occupasset, parum aut nihil sibi retinuit, sed exercitui universa permisit.

His liberality, and its results.

Death of Richard de Bury, Bishop of Durham. Hoc anno obiit Ricardus de Bury, Episcopus Dunelmensis; cui successit Thomas de Hatfeld, Regis secretarius, mediantibus Regis litteris apud Papam, in magnum ipsius Regis opprobrium. Revera, cum [2] ante Rex et nobilitas [3] institissent pro electionibus libere faciendis et confirmandis, jam Rex, directe contra tenorem suarum litterarum, et vota procerum, hunc pontificem fieri flagitavit. Papa vero, non invitus, hanc petitionem Regi concessit, sed a Cardinalibus quibusdam calumniantibus dictum Thomam fore levem et laicum, sic respondit;—"Vere," ait, "si Rex hac vice supplicasset "pro asino, obtinuisset."

He is succeeded by Thomas de Hatfeld.

Saying of the Pope relative thereto.

[1] *plurimis* in ed. Camden.
[2] *aut Rex* in ed. Camden.
[3] *instetissent* in MS.

Eodem anno, obiit Dominus Henricus, Comes Lankastriæ, pater Henrici, Comitis de Derby, et sepultus est Leycestriæ, in monasterio Canonicorum, cum honore. Cujus filius, ut præfertur, eo tempore, actus martios in Wasconia strenue exercebat. A.D. 1345. Death of Henry, Earl of Lancaster.

Scoti, sub hiis diebus, collecto exercitu quasi triginta millium, duce Willelmo Douglas, apud Westmarland, hostiliter Angliam sunt ingressi, Karleolumque, et Penreth, et multas villas alias, combusserunt. Quapropter, Episcopus Lugubaliensis, et Thomas de Lucy, miles nobilis, et Robertus Oggill, scutifer valentissimus, cum parva manu ex omni parte Scotorum exercitum gyraverunt in noctibus, et lituis ac cornibus, atque nocturnis clamoribus, sic hostes inquietaverunt, ut nec auderent exire pro victualibus, nec membra dare sopori. Sed tandem, cum Scotos omnino perurgeret necessitas, Alexander Stragan, audacioribus suæ gentis adunatis, pabulatum exire disposuit. Cui mox [1] Episcopus Karleolensis fit obviam, cum Roberto Oggil; qui, cogens dextrarium, cum lancea præacuta ipsius Alexandri corpus perforavit. Victi sunt proinde Scoti, multis occisis, et plurimis captivatis. Reliqui vero, cognito adventu Dominorum de Percy et de Nevyle, ex una parte, et Domini de Lucy, ex alia, et virorum bellicosorum de Comitatu Lankastriæ, ex tertia, meticulose fugerunt. The Scots ravage the English Borders. Prowess of Robert Oggil, and the Bishop of Carlisle. Defeat and flight of the Scots.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo sexto, Rex Edwardus, missis ad Curiam Romanam litteris, in quibus asseruit per Regem Franciæ, et ejus complices, certis rationibus assignatis, treugas fore violatas, mense Julii naves ingressus, apud Hogges, in Normannia, salvus applicuit, ubi diebus sex moram traxit. King Edward crosses over to France, A.D. 1346.

In scandendo terram apud Hogges, mira patuit probitas Domini Thomæ de Bello Campo, Comitis Warwycensis; qui, ante cunctos navem [2] egressus, cum uno armigero et sex [3] arcitenentibus, equo vectus debili, Prowess of Thomas de Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick.

[1] John de Kirkeby.
[2] *ingressus* in ed. Camden.
[3] *architenentibus* in MS.

A.D. 1346. quem tunc negotii festinantia sibi ministravit, contra centum homines de armis audacter manus erexit, et hostili hastiludio obvium quemque prostravit, et uno solo impetu, cum suis septem servientibus, sexaginta Normannos interemit, et toti exercitui facultatem fecit naves egredi, omni impedimento remoto. Ibi Rex Angliæ fecit Principem militem, et alios plures nobiles accinxit balteo militari.

Knighthood conferred on the Prince of Wales.

Vicesimo sexto die Julii, in Cadomo, apud Pontem Feretti, munitum cum Normannis, fortem conflictum habuit, adeo quod in vicis, hortis, et domibus, illic Normanni, quasi sine numero, perierunt, Comes de Warwicke; et Dominus de Tankervile, centumque milites, et quamplures homines de armis, capti sunt, et villa usque ad ipsos nudos parietes, fuit omnibus portatilibus spoliata. Quibus ita gestis, Rex ultra progrediens, totam patriam, per viginti milliaria in latitudine, vastavit incendio, captis spoliis et præda magna.

The Normans are defeated, at Caen; which is taken, and plundered.

Rex interim Francorum, cum magno exercitu constitutus in Rotomago, ad duo milliaria juxta eum, et hæc omnia non ignorans, non audebat pertransire flumen Sequanæ, nec sibi occurrere quovis pacto; sed omnes pontes constructos super Sequanam, a Rotomago usque Parisius, confringi fecit, nec quievit donec Parisius pervenisset. Rex vero Edwardus, perveniens Pusiacum, pontem ibidem fractum infra triduum reparavit.

The King of France destroys the bridges, and retires to Paris.

Interea Comes de Northamptonia, Sequanæ flumen transiens, interfecit de Gallis, nitentibus impedire refectionem pontis, quingentos; et Rex Edwardus, in crastino Assumptionis Beatæ Mariæ, transivit Sequanam, iter arripiens versus Cressy, villas devastando, et habitatores earum.

The English, under King Edward, cross the Seine.

In festo vero Beati Bartholomæi, totus exercitus Anglicanus transivit illæsus aquam de Summe, ubi nunquam perante fuit transitus; ibique peremit duo millia Gallicorum, qui conabantur ejus transitum impedire.

The English cross Somme.

Eodem die capta fuit villa de Crotoy per Dominum Hugonem le Spencer, et interfecti fuere per eundem, de Gallis, homines armorum quadringenti. A.D. 1346. Capture of Crotoy, by Hugh le Spencer.

Hoc anno, vicesimo sexto die mensis Augusti, Rex Edwardus, habens tres acies gentis Anglicæ, commisit bellum cum præfato Philippo, Francorum Rege, sibi occurrente cum quatuor aciebus, quarum minima Anglorum numerum excedebat. In quo bello cecidere duo Reges, Bohemiæ et Majoricarum, Duces [1] Lotharingiæ et de Burbon, Comites de Alasoun, de Harecourt, de Aumarle, de Savoye, de Bloyes, de Mountbillard, de Nyveres, et de Flandria, et Summus Prior Hospitalis Franciæ, cum multis dominis et baronibus, et duobus fere millibus hominum nominatorum de armis; de communibus vero numerus ignoratur. Defeat of the French at Cressy.

Philippus, Francorum Rex, dum suos animare satagit, ut fertur, in gutture vulneratur, et femore, et bina vice per Regem Angliæ equo suo dejectus est, eo die. Quapropter, cum residuo sui exercitus excessivi, pulcherrime, prout dicunt Galli, se retraxit; quæ fuga vocatur a Gallis vulgariter "*Beu retret*," usque in hodiernum diem. Mane autem facto, Franci redierunt, cum una acie valde magna, circa solis ortum. Quibus occurrerunt Comites de Northamptona, de Warwyck, et de Southfolchia, et, prœliando satis acriter, peremerunt plusquam duo millia de eisdem, captivos trahentes multos milites et armigeros, ac fugientes per tria milliaria persequentes. The French pride themselves upon their retreat. Fresh defeat of the French.

Tertia die post bellum, Rex Edwardus arripuit iter versus Kalesiam, supponendo totam patriam vastitati; et nono die post bellum cinxit obsidione villam Kalesiæ, ab olim sibi regnoque suo semper infestissimæ. Quam obsidionem per annum et amplius protelavit. Prolonged siege of Calais by the English.

Anno quo supra, obsidione durante Kalesiæ, David, Rex Scotorum, sollicitatus per litteras Philippi, Regis The Scots invade England.

[1] *Utharing* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1346. Francorum, venit in partes [1] Northanumbriæ, cum exercitu sexaginta millium, reseditque juxta Dunelmiam, in parko vocato "Beu Repeyr"; ubi fixit tentoria sumptuosa, qualia perantea in hiis partibus non sunt visa. Quibus cognitis, Archiepiscopus Eboracensis, Dominus Willelmus la Zouche, Comes de Angos, Domini de Percy, Mounbray, Nevyle, Deyntcurt, Maule, Leyburne, Scrop, Musgrave, Vicecomites de Euerwyk, Dominus Robertus de Bertram, Vicecomes Northumbriæ, et alii nobiles Baronetti, coadunaverunt se apud Richemund, et, septimo decimo die mensis Octobris, Dunelmiam pervenerunt; commissoque gravi prœlio cum Rege superbo, et gente sua, victi sunt hostes, et interempti pro majori parte; capto Davide Rege per Johannem Coupelond, et tribus Comitibus, de parte Scotorum. Ex parte Anglorum recensebatur summa virorum bellatorum, cum [2] arcitenentibus et communibus, triginta duo millia; de parte vero Scotorum, summa totalis excrevit ad sexaginta duo millia.

They are defeated, with great slaughter [at Nevill's Cross.]

Eodem anno, Regina peperit filiam, nomine "Mar-
"garetam."

Birth of the Princess Margaret.

Anno quo supra, Carolus de Bloys, qui se dixit Ducem Britanniæ, per medium jus uxoris suæ, cum mille ducentis hominibus armatorum, et sexcentis hominibus armatis, et duobus millibus balistariorum, et sex millibus brigantinorum, ac triginta millibus peditum Britonum et aliorum, veniens ad obsidendum castrum, sive villas munitas quas Anglici tuebantur, habuit repente obviam nobilem militem, Dominum Thomam Dagwurthe; qui non habuit secum plures quam octoginta homines de armis, et centum sagittarios, proponens adire villas quæ pertinebant Regi Angliæ, et in eis escas ponere, et arma, contra insultus dicti Karoli, si forsan aliquid moliretur contra eas: ut autem vidit dictus Thomas se non posse transire quo proposuerat,

Success of Thomas Dagworth, in Bretagne, against Charles de Bloys.

[1] *Nouthumbriæ* in ed. Camden. | [2] *architenentibus* in MS.

cepit locum pugnæ. Quo facto, supervenit dictus Karolus, cum prædictis cohortibus, nono die Junii, hora prima diei, et circumdedit dictum Thomam, ex omni parte, viris armatis et balistariis. Cum quibus dictus Thomas commisit acriter, prœliando ab hora diei prima usque ad horam nonam; et factum est, Dei virtute, Qui vincere facit in paucis æque ut in multis, ut hostes, non ferentes Anglorum constantiam, relinquerent Domino Thomæ campum. In hoc conflictu capti sunt Dominus Galeys de le Husce et Dominus Paganus de Fontaneto, qui fuere graviter vulnerati. Illic occisi fuere Dominus Guido de Rocheforde et plures alii milites generosi; de aliis vero quasi sine numero corruere. Reliqui, se subtrahentes, ad magnum vexillum, sive standardum, se contulere. A.D. 1346. The French are defeated. (A.D. 1347.)

Perseveravit autem Dominus Thomas, cum suis, in loco belli usque ad horam vespertinam. Qua quidem hora, Karolus, recollectis suis hominibus, venit, ut leæna catulis suis orbata, contra dictum Thomam, cum tribus magnis aciebus; quarum una venit contra eum, et una retro, et tertia ad sinistram ejus, omnes pariter peditando. In ante fuit Vicecomes de Roan, Dominus de Leyacer, Dominus Rollandus de Dynaule, et Dominus de Muntaban. A latere venit [1] Dominus Karolus de Bloys, Dominus de Rocheforde, Dominus de Quintiyn, et Vicecomes de Soymes. Post tergum vero venit Dominus de Rothren, Dominus de Bewmaneres, et plures alii. Qui intulerunt ei tam grande prœlium ex omni parte, quod ipse suique quorsum se verterent ignorabant. Duravit igitur iste conflictus diutissime, donec, Omnipotenti Deo miserante, non sine evidenti miraculo, tota potestas illa victa fuit, et campus gloriose remansit nostris. Defeat of Charles de Bloys.

In hoc postremo conflictu, plures domini, barones, et milites, capti fuere, qui omnes tam graviter erant vulnerati, ut de vita eorum desperaretur. Et cum tot Results of the fight.

[1] *Tho. Carolus de Boys* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1347. cecidissent de exercitu Karoli, quod pro tædio numerari nequirent, tamen, laudes Deo, nullus miles vel generosus ex Anglicis fuit occisus in hiis diris conflictibus, licet omnes pene fuissent graviter vulnerati; sed non ad mortem.

Capture of Charles de Bloys, at La Roche Darien.

Eodem anno, idem Thomas Dagwurth, cum trecentis armatis et quadringentis arcitenentibus, et non pluribus, Karolum de Bloys, in obsidione Rupis Dyrianæ laborantem, duodecimo Kalendas Julii, in aurora diei, superveniens, aggressus est; prostravitque multitudinem ad prœlium præparatam, et ejus adventum præstolantem; captivavitque, cum multis nobilibus, dictum Karolum de Bloys, qui vendicavit totam Britanniam, per medium Ducatum, quod fuit uxoris suæ, ut dicebat. Fuere autem in exercitu Karoli milites et armigeri mille ducenti, et de aliis armatis hominibus sexcenti, balistariorum duo millia; peditum vero numerus ignoratur.

The eldest son of the King of France abandons the siege of Aquilon.

Sub hoc tempore, cum Dominus Henricus de Lankastria, Comes de Derby, tuncque Senescallus Wasconiæ, teneret consilium cum magnatibus illarum partium, apud Brigerak, et Dominus Johannes, primogenitus Regis Francorum, obsideret villam de Aquilon, et peteret treugas a dicto Comite de Derby, Comes ad concedendas treugas noluit consentire; unde consternatus et valde confusus, dictus Johannes, eo quod per ante juraverat se non recessurum priusquam villam intrasset, relictis sarcinolis et tentoriis, nocte recessit. Post cujus fugam, Comes de Derby dictam villam de Aquilon, villamque de Reas, et alias multas villas, cum castellis de Ageneys et de Toningges, fidelitatem Regi Angliæ jurare fecit.

Successes of Henry, Earl of Derby.

Deinde progrediens per Sanctoniam cum mille viris armatis, pernoctavit in villa de Salveterre, quæ se sibi reddiderat, duodecimo die mensis Septembris. Post hæc, villas Sancti Johannis de Angeleyn et de Lisyngham insultibus magnis cepit, cum castro ipsius villæ de

Lisyngham; veniensque ad civitatem Pictavensem, obsedit eam. Cujus capitaneus, vilipendens paucitatem obsidentium, egressus est audaciter ad inferendum eis in campo bellum; cumque per tempus aliquod manus conseruissent, victi Pictavenses fugerunt. Quos Anglici sequentes e vestigio, mixti civibus, portas intraverunt, donec totus exercitus introisset. Perempti sunt ergo de civibus et auxiliariis, indiscrete venientibus illic, perplurimi, et multi captivati. Episcopus quidam, et Barones quatuor, cum plurimis aliis, evaserunt, fugientes ex alia parte civitatis. Comes vero de Derby se suosque refocillavit ibidem per dies octo, et, captis spoliis infinitis, rediit Burdegalam, cum triumpho. A.D. 1347. He takes Poitiers.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo [1] septimo, cum Rex Angliæ, Edwardus, artius obsideret Kalesiam, Rex Francorum, juxta promissionem quam fecerat, venit prope Kalesiam, ad dissolvendum obsidionem, si quo modo posset, vicesimo septimo die Julii. Sed cum vidisset se non posse votis suis satisfacere in hac parte, ultimo die dicti mensis Julii, hora Vesperarum, fecit offerri Regi Angliæ, quod quandocunque sibi placeret extra locum obsidionis venire ad bellum, extunc, usque ad horam Vesperarum tertiæ diei sequentis, bellum contra se proculdubio inveniret. Quam oblationem Rex Edwardus gratanter acceptavit: quod ut audivit a referendariis Rex Francorum, eventum belli noluit expectare, sed omni festinatione noctanter, immisso igne in tentoriis suis, combussit ea, vecorditerque recessit. Quo comperto, Kalesienses, tertio die sequenti, videlicet, die tertio mensis Augusti, villam, cum castro, reddiderunt, se et sua voluntati regiæ submittentes. Rex vero, paucis de majoribus captivatis, totam communitatem, cum suis portatilibus, sive mobilibus, libere permisit abire, dictamque villam, cum castello, retinuit suo imperio subjugatam. Quibus gestis, per mediationem Flight of the King of France, and capture of Calais by King Edward.

[1] *octavo* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1347. duorum Cardinalium, ibidem captæ sunt treugæ, vicesimo octavo die mensis Septembris, anno quo supra, et Rex cum triumpho rediit glorioso.

Effect in England of the successes gained in France, A.D. 1348.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo octavo, composita pace, per totam Angliam videbatur incolis, quasi novus sol oriri super eos, propter pacis abundantiam, et cunctarum rerum copiam, ac tantarum ubique quæsitarum victoriarum gloriam. Nam pene nullius nominis erat [1] fœmina, quæ non aliquid de manubiis Cadomi, Kalesiæ, et aliarum urbium transmarinarum, vestes, furruras, culcitas, et utensilia, possidebat: mappæ mensales, linthea, et lintheamina, sparsim per Angliam in singulorum domibus visebantur. Tunc cœperunt matronæ superbire in apparatibus matronarum Galliæ; et, velut illæ dolebant de rerum suarum amissione, sic istæ gaudebant de dictarum rerum acquisitione.

Spoils of the French dispersed throughout England.

Great fall of rain; followed by pestilence.

Hoc anno fuit magna pluviæ redundatio, quæ duravit a festo Sancti Johannis Baptistæ usque ad Natale Domini; quam secuta est mox mortalitas, tam sæva, ut vix vivi possent suos mortuos sepelire.

A great pestilence; followed by a murrain, A.D. 1349.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quadragesimo nono, fuit tanta mortalitas hominum, ut multi periti putarent decimam partem humani generis relictam fuisse superstitem; hanc quoque pestilentiam mox lues animalium est secuta.

Full remission granted by the Pope, by reason thereof.

Sæviente, ut præfertur, in Anglia tanta peste hominum, Dominus Clemens Papa concessit plenam remissionem omnibus vere confessis et contritis, morientibus in hac epidemia, per totum regnum.

The French attempt to regain Calais by treachery,

Eodem anno, quidam miles, nomine "Galfridus Char-"neys," unus de secretariis Regis Franciæ, corrupto fulvi metalli ingenti pondere quodam Januensi, custode castri [2] Kalesiæ, misit armatos plurimos, qui, juxta pactum, in castrum [3] admitterentur, ipso foris villam cum grandi exercitu præstolante. Quibus dictum castrum arrogan-

[1] *mulier* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Walesiæ* in ed. Camden.
[3] *admitteretur* in ed. Camden.

ter ingressis, pons ligneus ante fores, ex præordinata cautela, subtiliter elevatus, ingressos detinebat inclusos. Rex Edwardus per idem tempus advenerat ad illas partes, Francis id ignorantibus, et mox egressus foras pugnavit cum Gallicis, plusquam ducentos electissimos viros armatos perimens, et omnes alios ad fugam cogens. In quo conflictu captus est, cum multis aliis, dictus Galfridus Charneys. Sicque dolus dolo delusus est, dolosusque cecidit in foveam quam ipse fecit. A.D. 1349. but are repulsed by King Edward.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo, commissum est bellum navale inter Anglicos et Hispanos, in festo Decollationis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, juxta villam de Winchelse. Qui anno præcedenti quamplures Anglicos, venientes de Wasconia, cum vinis et aliis mercimoniis, crudeliter interfecerant, raptis spoliis eorundem. Quorum sanguinem Rex Edwardus vindicare cupiens, personaliter ipse obviavit Hispanis; et, commissa pugna, peremit omnes Hispanos, qui fuerant in viginti quatuor magnis navibus, licet fuissent armati peroptime, et omni genere defensionis instructi. Maluerunt nempe, præ cordis duritia, mori quam subjici. Captæ sunt igitur naves viginti sex magnæ, reliquis submersis, vel in fugam versis. The Spanish fleet is defeated by King Edward, off Winchelse, A.D. 1350.

Annus iste fuit Jubilæus, quo plures utriusque sexus, pro suorum peccaminum remissione, Romam profecti sunt. Year of Jubilee.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo primo, Willelmus de Edingdone, Wintoniensis Episcopus, regni Thesaurarius, vir magnæ prudentiæ, sed qui plus Regis dilexit commodum quam communitatis, excogitavit, et fecit insculpi, novam monetam, scilicet, grossum et dimidium grossi; sed hæc erant minoris ponderis quam correspondens summa sterlingorum. Cujus rei causa, expost, victualia, cæteraque mercimonia, fuere magis cara per totum regnum. Servientes, operarii, et artifices, callidiores [1]fraudulentiores solito sunt effecti. Contra quorum astutiam, nequitiam, et avaritiam, ordinata sunt Groats and half groats made, A.D. 1351. Rise of prices in consequence.

[1] *victu dulciose solito . . . . facti* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1351. Statutes as to the wages of labourers.

Statuta per Parliamentum tentum apud Westmonasterium, anno regni Regis Edwardi, Tertii a Conquæstu, vicesimo octavo, et tricesimo quinto; sed parum aut nihil communibus profuerunt.

Prowess of Sir Walter Bentele, and defeat of the French, in Bretagne, A.D. 1352.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo secundo, in Vigilia Assumptionis Beatæ Mariæ, Dominus Walterus [1] Bentele, miles egregius, et Custos Britanniæ Armoricæ, juxta Mauron, inter villas de [2] Reynes et Plumerel, cum trecentis hominibus armorum, totidemque sagittariis, debellavit et vicit Marescallum Franciæ, venientem hostiliter contra se in numero excessivo: nempe de parte Francorum cæsi sunt ibidem viri nobiles et domini tresdecim, milites vero centum quadraginta, scutiferi quoque centum; tot autem pedites, quod eorum numerus non poterat facile deprehendi. Capti sunt insuper ibidem novem domini, milites et armigeri centum quadraginta. Quo eventu, Gallici et Britones consternati sunt.

Marriage of William, Duke of Zeland.

Willelmus, Dux Selandiæ, duxit in uxorem filiam Henrici, Comitis Lankastriæ.

Drought in England, and consequent famine, A.D. 1353.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo tertio, tanta fuit siccitas a mense Martii usque ad mensem Julii, ut vix per totum tempus illud plueret super terram; unde contigit sata perire, et annonam in regno rarescere. Cui penuriæ condolens Willelmus, Dux Selandiæ, misit Londonias naves plures onustas siligine; quæ non parum profuit incolis regionis.

Relief given by the Duke of Zeland.

Dukedom of Lancaster, and Earldom of Stafford.

Hoc anno, Henricus, Comes Derbyæ et Lankastriæ, apud Westmonasterium, Dux Lankastriæ est creatus, et Radulphus de Stafford Comes Staffordiæ factus est.

Statutes as to wages of labourers, and other matters;

Parliamentum tentum fuit Londoniis; in quo edita sunt Statuta de stipendiis operariorum, de longitudine et latitudine pannorum venalium, de molendinis et impedimentis navium et [3] cymbarum, per rivos aquarum omnium per totum regnum. Sed quia non sunt

[1] *Bentewe* in MS.
[2] *Reymes* in MS.
[3] *limborum* in MS.

executioni mandata, plus inde quicquam scribere supersedeo. A.D. 1353. but ineffectual.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo quarto, facta est concordia, et juramento firmata, inter Reges Angliæ et Franciæ; excepto quod sigilla eorum ad scripta indentata non sunt apposita. In quibus continebatur, quod Rex Angliæ haberet omnes terras suas Ducatus Aquitanniæ, quas sibi Rex Franciæ injuste usurpaverat, si Rex Angliæ totum jus et clameum quibus regnum Franciæ vendicabat, Regi Francorum remitteret, ac in perpetuum renunciaret eisdem. Super quo negotio, ex parte Regis Angliæ, missi sunt solemnes nuncii ad Romanam Curiam, videlicet, Dominus Henricus, Dux Lankastriæ, Ricardus, Comes Arundeliæ, Willelmus, Norwicensis Episcopus, et Guido de Bryan, miles, ut Dominus Papa dictam concordiam confirmaret. Sed dolo fraudeque Gallorum, quibus jugiter adhærebant, una cum [1] conniventia Domini Papæ, a concordia est discessum; unde Rex Edwardus non modicum exasperatus, copioso exercitu congregato, regnum Franciæ intravit hostiliter, ac illud vastare cœpit. A treaty for peace with France is partly entered into, but broken off, A.D. 1354. King Edward lays waste France.

Eo anno, propter seditionem quam laici Oxoniis concitaverant, et damna quæ scholaribus illic irrogaverant, villa supposita fuit Interdicto, et regimen totius villæ concessum est Cancellario, ita quod nullus alius, saltem laicus, illud in posterum obtineret. Disturbances at Oxford, the town being placed under Interdict.

Eodem tempore, per consilium Regis Angliæ, stapulum de lanis revocatur a Flandria, cum omnibus ad eam pertinentibus; et stabilitur in Anglia, per diversa loca [2] scilicet, Westmonasterii, Cantuariæ, Leicestriæ, Bristolliæ, Lincolniæ, et Hull, in omnibus libertatibus, consuetudinibus, et juribus, eisdem concessis in perpetuum. The staple of wool removed from Flanders to certain places in England.

Per idem tempus, transfretaverat Dominus Henricus, Dux Lankastriæ, cum magnificentia et honore, ad in- Contemplated combat between the

[1] *legato Domini* in ed. Camden.
[2] *scilicet . . . Bristolliæ*, omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1354. Dukes of Lancaster and Bruneswyk.

eundum singulare certamen, Parisius, cum Duce de Bruneswyk, qui res suas deprædatus est, cum rediret de Romana Curia. Sed intervenientibus dominis et amicis, sine duello discessere.

Death of Philip VI., King of France. (A.D. 1350.)

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo quinto, nunciatum est Regi Angliæ, Philippum, Regem Francorum, diem clausisse ultimum, et Johannem, ejus filium, in Regem Franciæ coronatum; eundemque Johannem Karolo, filio suo seniori, qui dictus est "Dol-"phinus de Vienna," Ducatum Aquitanniæ contulisse.

Prince Edward is created Duke of Aquitaine, A.D. 1355.

Unde Rex indignatus, advocato coram regni proceribus Domino Edwardo, suo primogenito, assignavit illi Ducatum Aquitanniæ, qui sibi jure hæreditario pertinebat, præcipiens ut se contra suos adversarios tueretur. Princeps vero Edwardus, jussis paternis obediens, comitantibus eum Comitibus de Warwyk, Sarum, de Suthfolk et Oxoniæ, et mille hominibus armorum, totidemque sagittariis, in Nativitate Beatæ Virginis, velificare cœpit, prosperoque cursu venit Aquitanniam, et a nobilibus regionis honorifice susceptus est. Quibus adventus sui causam notificans, optima deliberatione habita, decimo die Octobris equitare cœpit, transiens per patriam de Juliak, sibi subjectam, deinde per patrias de Armanak, de la Ryvere, Cuningg, Slee, Tolouse, Karkason, et Nerbon, juxta mare Græcum, per octo septimanas, villas multas valde, quasdamque muro clausas, eundo et redeundo, cepit, spoliavit, et devastavit, per incendia, nulla resistentia sibi facta. Quibus gestis, in Wasconia hiemavit. Exercitus tamen ejus interea non vacavit otio; sed plures bonas villas muratas, et castra fortia, sibi subjugavit; multique magnates illarum partium se, cum suis villis et castris, Domino Principi submisere, et fidelitatem juravere.

He arrives in Aquitaine, and invades France.

Winters in Gascoigne.

King Edward again enters France.

Hoc anno, circa principium mensis Novembris, Rex Edwardus transfretavit, assumptis secum duobus filiis suis, scilicet, Leonello, Comite Ultoniæ, et Johanne, Comite Richemundiæ, Domino Henrico, Duce Lancastriæ,

Comitibusque Northamptoniæ, Marchiæ, et Staffordiæ, aliisque magnatibus, et hominibus armorum, ad numerum duorum millium. A.D. 1355.

Secundo die mensis Novembris, egressus Kalesiam, profectus est versus Sanctum Audomarum, ubi putabat Regem Franciæ ejus adventum, cum ingenti exercitu, expectare, paratum ad dandum sibi bellum, prout ante sibi fuerat nunciatum. Sed appropinquante Rege Angliæ, Rex Francorum eventum belli noluit expectare; sed illico retrocessit, destruendo victualia, ne nostrates fruerentur eisdem. Quem, meticulose fugientem, Rex Angliæ prosecutus est, usque Heden; sed, pro penuria victualium, reversus est, per decem dies destruendo patriam, eundo, videlicet, et redeundo. The French King retreats, and Edward returns to Calais, laying waste the country.

Dum Rex Edwardus ageret in transmarinis partibus, Scoti fraudulenter et subdole ceperunt villam de Berwyk; castrum tamen capere nequiverunt. Ob quam causam, Rex in Angliam cum festinatione reversus est. Berwick taken by the Scots. King Edward returns.

Eodem anno, in Parliamento, apud Westmonasterium, concessum fuit Regi, ut [1]haberet de quolibet sacco lanæ, per sex annos proximo sequentes, quadraginta solidos. Grant made by Parliament.

Septimo Idus Januarii, natus est Edwardo novissimus filius, apud Wodestok, et vocatus est "Thomas." Birth of Prince Thomas of Wodestok.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo sexto, Rex Edwardus adivit partes boreales, cum grandi exercitu, ut villam suam de Scotorum manibus recuperaret; quam Scoti tertio decimo die Januarii, sine ulla resistentia prævia, reddiderunt. The Scots surrender Berwick. A.D. 1356.

Die vicesimo quinto Januarii, Dominus Edwardus de Baliol, Rex Scotiæ, apud villam de Rokesburgh, regnum et coronam ejusdem transtulit in Edwardum, Regem Angliæ, litteris suis patentibus et [2]authenticis inde confectis. Edward de Baliol transfers the crown and kingdom of Scotland to Edward.

[1] *haberent* in MS. | [2] *autenticis* in MS.

A.D. 1356. Continued successes of Prince Edward in France.

Eodem anno, Dominus Edwardus, primogenitus Regis Angliæ, et Princeps [1] Walliæ, existens in Wasconia, consuluit Burdegalenses, et proceres illius patriæ, de aggrediendo regno Franciæ. Cujus propositum Comes de Armenak, domini sui proditor, confestim Regi Franciæ nunciavit, et quæ mala regno Franciæ imminebant. Quæ cum audisset Rex Franciæ, statim jussit destrui pontes constructos super fluvium de Leyre, quos veteres, non sine magnis expensis, extruxerant. Princeps, hæc audiens, exercitu congregato, sexto die Julii, cœpit proficisci de Burdegalia, transiens per patrias de Ageneys, Peregor, Limosyn, Berry, et de Saloygne. In quo transitu plures villas, sibi rebelles, incendit, et multas, cum castris et munitionibus sibi redditas, obtinuit sub tributo. In hac equitatione, plus quam sex millia hominum armorum captivavit; in patria vero de Saloygne, capta villa de Remorantyn, castrum ejusdem villæ sex diebus obsedit, et cepit; captis ibidem Domino de Cron, et Brusigando, aliisque militibus, et armorum hominibus, octoginta. Deinde progressus est per Toreigne et [2] Peytou, et ibi, prope Chaveny, proceres sui, septimo decimo die Septembris, conflixere cum Gallicis; in quo certamine centum homines armorum ex Gallicis peremerunt; ceperuntque Comites de Aunser et de [3] Juny, cum Senescallo Regis Franciæ, et hominibus armorum centum.

Attempts made by the Pope's envoys to establish peace.

Eodem anno, decimo nono die Septembris, [4] vel, ut quidam volunt, vicesimo primo die mensis ejusdem, Princeps Walliæ, quasi in fine anni adventus sui in Wasconiam, occurrit Regi Franciæ, juxta [5] Peyteres, non amplius quam mille nongentis hominibus armorum, totidemque sagittariis, venienti contra se, cum septem millibus electis armorum hominibus, aliisque armatis,

---

[1] *Angliæ* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Peyton* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Synny* in *Hist. Angl.* I., p. 281.
[4] 19th of September was the date.
[5] *Peyteis* in ed. Camden.

pavisariis, ac balistariis, in numero excessivo. Aderant A.D. 1356.
tunc ibidem duo Cardinales, missi per Dominum Papam pacem facere inter partes; qui, a Domini Papæ præsentia recessuri, promiserunt eidem, dicentes, — "Vere, "Sancte Pater, aut habebimus pacem, aut lapides cla- Fulfilment of a chance prophecy made by them.
"mabunt." Evenitque juxta vaticinium corundem, nescientium quod dicebant. Revera cum sagittarii Principis omnes sagittas suas expendissent in Gallicos, et jam stare viderentur otiosi, quia campus belli lapidosus extitit, moniti sunt per [1] Comitem Southfolchiæ lapides tollere, et in Francos mittere. Unde contigit quod magna multitudo Gallorum, ictibus saxorum prostrata, periit; attonita nimirum collisione lapidum in galeas et cassides impactorum; et sic quodammodo lapides clamaverunt. Igitur, cum Cardinales inter utrumque Victory gained over the French by Prince Edward, at Poitiers, 19 September.
populum diligentissime discurrissent, nec pacem persuadere potuissent, indignantes recesserunt. Tunc confestim acies convenerunt; ubi primo fractis lanceis, cum gladiis, securibus, et bipennibus, rem egerunt. Ibi claruit virtus et probitas Domini Jacobi de Audelee, generosi militis, qui potenter et audacter confregit et perforavit Francorum aciem, et fuit occasio necis plurimorum hostium ea die. Ibi patebat fides et constantia Comitum de Warwyk et de Suthfolk, et cæterorum procerum, qui tam animose, tam acriter, tam atrociter, tam perseveranter, pugnaverunt, donec manus eorum gladiis et securibus obrigescerent. Nec minus laudabilis erat ipse dux belli, Princeps serenissimus; qui non solum se ducem exhibuit in hoc bello, sed probatum militem, et expertum; universa tentans, audens, et faciens, quæ miles faceret animosus. Nec momentanea seu brevis fuit ista pugna, sed tribus vicibus eo die, præ multitudine supervenientium hostium, oportebat Anglicos prœlium instaurare. Tandem, Omnipotenti Deo nostris tribuente longanimitatem, et Gallis immittente formidolositatem, insistentibus Anglicis, Galli

[1] Robert de Ufford.

A.D. 1356. fugerunt, occisis ibidem prius Duce de Burbon et Athenis, Episcopo de Chaluz, et aliis dominis et nobilibus ad numerum viginti duorum; militibusque peremptis, et hominibus armaturæ electis, duobus millibus, et de communibus octingentis. Rex insuper Franciæ captus est ibidem, et Philippus, filius ejus junior; capti sunt etiam Domini Jacobus de Burbon, de sanguine regio, et Archiepiscopus Senonensis, ac Comites undecim, domini nobiles viginti duo, milites et homines armorum, plusquam duo millia. Expedito finitoque præfato bello, Princeps rediit Burdegaliam, cum glorioso nobilique triumpho, Johannem, Regem Franciæ, secum ducens. Dominus Henricus, Dux Lankastriæ, dum hæc agerentur, obsedit in Britannia civitatem Ranensem; quam et cepit.

Capture of John, King of France.

Prince Edward returns to Bordeaux.

The Duke of Lancaster takes Rennes.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo septimo, Dominus Edwardus, Princeps Walliæ, rediit in Angliam, cum Johanne, Rege Franciæ, et filio suo, Philippo, quinto die mensis Maii, applicans in portu de Plummouthe, cum præda nobili captivorum. Et cum pervenisset Londonias, cum prædictis captivis, circa horam diei tertiam, tanta ruit ad tantum spectaculum populi multitudo, ut vix valeret post meridiem, præ compressione plebis, ad Westmonasterium pervenire.

Prince Edward returns to England, A.D. 1357.

Enters London, with his captives.

Cito post hæc, missi sunt per Papam in Angliam duo Cardinales, pro pace reformanda inter regna; tertius vero Cardinalis venit, gratia visitandi Regem Francorum. Qui frequenter colloquentes cum Regibus, et eorum Consiliis, sed nil proficientes, post moram in Anglia biennalem, tandem, infecto pacis negotio, recesserunt.

The Pope sends envoys to treat for peace; but ineffectually.

Sub hiis diebus, successit in Francia illa famosa, magnaque Comitiva, quæ "Gens sine capite" vocabatur. Hæc, in initio parva tentans, et mox aggressa majora, magnam Franciæ partem occupans, expulsis vel subactis locorum dominis, suis legibus subjugavit. Erat autem non tantum de una gente vel natione, sed de pluribus regionibus congregata.

Part of France subdued by the Company "Without a Head."

Concessum fuit etiam Domino Johanni, Regi Franciæ, pro redemptione sua solvere sexcenta millia florenorum, citra festum Sancti Martini; et, ad habendam majorem securitatem istius summæ solvendæ, petiit Rex Angliæ obsides de valentioribus personis regni Francorum; sed huic petitioni noluerunt Gallici consentire. Quamobrem vicesimo die Novembris, responsum est Francis, ut se defendant, et præparent ad bellum. A.D. 1357. Proposition made for the ransom of the King of France.

[1] Circa festum Omnium Sanctorum, David le Brus, Rex Scotorum, liberatur a diutina custodia qua detentus fuerat in castello de Odiham, taxata redemptione sua ad centum millia marcarum, solvendarum in proximo sequentibus decem annis, præter expensas hospitii. Liberation of David le Brus.

Eodem anno, relaxatum fuit Interdictum Oxoniæ, quod, auctoritate Episcopi Lincolniensis, propter clericidium et sacrilegia, anno proximo præterito fuit illatum. The Interdict on Oxford withdrawn.

Hastiludia facta sunt Londoniis, præsentibus Regibus Angliæ, Franciæ, et Scotiæ, et plebe multa. Tournaments at London.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo octavo, tentum fuit Parliamentum Londoniis, ubi de pace reformanda inter duo regna persæpe tractabatur; sed nullus effectus de tot tractatibus sequebatur. Parliament at London; fruitless discussions on peace, A.D. 1358.

Armachanus facit processum contra quatuor Ordines Mendicantium, coram Papa, demonstrans eos multis rationibus manifeste a suis regulis deviasse. Charges against the Mendicant Orders by the Archbishop of Armagh.

Frater Johannes Lyle, Eliensis Episcopus, ut dicitur, injuste fatigatus per Dominam Blanchiam de Wake, transfretavit ad Romanam Curiam, contra voluntatem Regis. Dominus vero Papa, auditis ejus querelis, fecit excommunicari publice omnes adversarios dicti Episcopi; mandavitque per litteras suas Lincolniensi Episcopo, et aliis quibusdam prælatis Angliæ, ut si quos noverint dictorum excommunicatorum mortuos et sepultos, a sepulturis extraherent; quod et factum est. Unde Rex indignatus, quia dictorum excommunicatorum quidam The Bishop of Ely makes complaint to the Pope against the Lady Blanche de Wake. King Edward is offended by

[1] The whole of this paragraph is omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1358. the Pope's action therein. The envoys of the Bishop of Ely seized and punished.

erant de Consilio suo, dictos prælatos graviter infestabat. Qua de causa, venerunt quidam de Curia Romana missi, ex parte dicti Episcopi Eliensis, obviantes Domino J[ohanni], Roffensi Episcopo, regnique Thesaurario, armati; tradentes Litteras Apostolicas violenter dicto Thesaurario, quarum tenor hactenus ignoratur; et illico disparuerunt. Quos regales insequentes, quosdam captos incarcerabant, et, coram Regis Justiciariis condemnatos, in carcere et furca necabant.

Normandy and Bretagne laid waste by Robert Cnollis and others.

Eodem anno, Neustria et Britannia Armorica gravi clade vastantur, per Philippum, fratrem Regis Navarriæ, Dominum Jacobum de la Pype, et Robertum Cnollis, aliosque quamplures Anglicos, qui ductores fuere Magnæ Comitivæ, et in hiis regionibus per tres annos et amplius hostiliter debachati sunt, contra Regis Angliæ voluntatem. Ex quibus, Robertus Cnollis, ex vulgari valetto, fortuna favente, ditatus, mox factus ductor militum, multa miranda gessit in terra; cujus gesta tractatus exigunt speciales.

Provence and other parts of France laid waste by one of the Companies.

Eodem tempore, quidam, natione Wasco, vulgariter nuncupatus "Archipresbyter," duxit aliam Comitivam per diversas partes Franciæ, ipsas devastando hostiliter, sed potissime Provinciæ regionem.

Marriage of John of Gaunt to Blanche of Lancaster, A.D. 1359.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo quinquagesimo nono, quarto decimo Kalendas Junii, Dominus Johannes de Gaunt, filius Regis Edwardi, Comes Richemond, Blanchiam, filiam Domini Henrici, Ducis Lankastriæ, consanguineam suam, de dispensatione Curiæ, apud Radinggum, duxit uxorem.

Propositions again made for peace, but ineffectually.

Sub eodem tempore, Dominus Johannes, Rex Franciæ, sub umbra pacis, dolose contulit Regi Angliæ Flandriam, Pykardiam, Acquitaniam, aliasque terras quas equitaverat et vastarat; pro quibus omnibus ratificandis, idem Rex Edwardus in Franciam nuncios suos direxit. Quibus omnibus Franci contradixerunt; unde Rex Edwardus indignatus, cum classe mille et centum navium mare transiit, habens secum paulo minus quam mille

King Edward crosses over to France.

currus, pervenitque Kalesiam vicesimo [1] septimo die mensis Octobris; et quarto die mensis Novembris, diviso exercitu suo in tres turmas, commisit unam, fortem valde, Domino Henrico, Duci Lankastriæ; Edwardo vero Principi turmam deputavit aliam, fortiorem; sibi ipsi turmam fortissimam reservavit. Qui profecti pervenerunt ante civitatem Remensium in festo Sanctæ Luciæ; ubi moram traxerunt inutilem usque in diem Sancti Hillarii, nihil proficientes ibidem. A.D. 1359. He divides his army into three parts.

Eodem die signa convertit versus Burgundiam; cui occurrit Dux Burgundiæ, promittens septuaginta millia florenorum, solvendorum sibi fideliter, si toti Burgundiæ parceret, et contineret ab incendiis et rapinis. Quod Rex concessit eidem; mansitque juxta civitatem Remensem usque in quintum diem post Festum Sancti Gregorii Papæ. He makes terms with the Duke of Burgundy.

Interim Normanni, cum [2] [non] modica classe navium, apud Winchelsee applicuerunt; ipsamque villam, Idibus Martii, invaserunt, et in parte combusserunt; ac resistentes interfecerunt, sexui, ætati, vel ordini, non parcentes. Quapropter, prælati in Anglia undique confluxerunt ad arma, cum clericis et laicis, ut dictis resisterent inimicis. Sed cum se et suos præparavissent ad pugnam, nihil actum est, hostibus valefacientibus illis cum cachinno. The Norman fleet plunders the town of Winchelsee. Resistance contemplated by the clergy.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo, tenuit Rex Angliæ Natale juxta Remensium civitatem, mansitque ibidem, ut præfertur, usque ad festum Sancti Gregorii, et duodecimo die Aprilis Parisius se convertit. Et cum appropinquasset Parisius, exercitum in novem disposuit aciebus, et creavit ibidem milites quadringentos. Deinde mittitur Dominus Henricus, Dux Lankastriæ, ad portas civitatis, proferens hiis qui intus erant bellum campestre; sub hac conditione, ut si Rex Angliæ devictus foret ibidem, nunquam expost regnum Franciæ vendicaret. Sed Galli bellum committere detrectabant: quapropter, tyrones novelli, militesque veterani, armati, King Edward marches towards Paris, A.D. 1360. Destroys the suburbs.

[1] *quarto* in ed. Camden.

[2] Supplied from the *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1360. cum aliis, dederunt insultum civitati, et confestim ejus suburbana destruxerunt.

The Londoners equip a fleet, and gain successes against the French.

Londonienses, per idem tempus, cum cæteris regni incolis, affectantes vindicare dedecus nuper acceptum per Francos apud Wynchelsee, cum classe octoginta navium, et quatuordecim millibus hominum, cum sagittariis, perscrutando adversarios quæsierunt: et tandem applicantes in terra hostili, ceperunt insulam quæ "Caus" vulgariter appellatur. Franci, prævenire cupientes hos rumores, præordinaverunt Dominum Abbatem Cluniacensem, Comitem de Tankervyle Senescallum Franciæ, Brusigaldum Constabularium, et nonnullos alios viros venerabiles, de consensu Domini Karoli, regentis Franciam, [1][qui] pacem finalem et firmam, ostensis conditionibus in scriptis, a Domino Rege Angliæ humiliter postularent: sed conditiones, inscriptæ et excogitatæ per Francos, nec Regi, nec suo Concilio, placuere. Quapropter, Rex, commotus, prohibuit ne sollicitarent eum amplius, nisi habita ad ejus beneplacitum prolatione præmissorum.

Propositions made by the French for peace; but ineffectually.

Great losses in the English army, through tempest and cold.

In crastino Octavarum Paschæ, convertit signa versus Aurelianum, prædando, vastando, conflagrando, quæque sors obtulit tunc eidem. Quo tempore fuit tanta frigoris immanitas, ut plura millia hominum et equorum in exercitu Regis exanimaret. Circa festum Inventionis Sanctæ Crucis, nuncii memorati, venientes ad Regem, juxta Carnotum, obtulerunt ei optimam formam pacis, ordinatam circumspectissime, de communi consensu Regentis ac majorum Franciæ, sub data, apud Carnotum, quinto decimo die mensis Maii; requirentes humillime benignam donationem suam, atque benevolentiam, consensumque gratiosum, ut eam dignaretur admittere, et ratam et gratam tenere, pro se hæredibusque suis in perpetuum. Qua forma cum deliberatione perspecta, Dominus Rex annuit votis eorum; ita duntaxat, ut,

Fresh propositions are made for peace.

And are accepted.

[1] Omitted in MS.

juratis in corpore Dominico partibus, tactisque sacrosanctis Evangeliis, pacta stabilirentur. Proinde celebrata Parisius Missa solemniter, Karolus, primogenitus Regis Franciæ, in præsentia nunciorum Regis Angliæ, atque procerum regni Franciæ, dicto ter—"Agnus Dei," et adjecto,—"Dona nobis pacem," ascendit ad altare, et dexteram super patenam posuit, in qua locatum fuerat corpus Dominicum, lævamque super Missale, sicque juravit,—"Nos, Karolus, juramus, ad sacrosancta Corpus "Domini et Evangelia, firmiter servare penes nos pacem "et concordiam formatas inter Reges, et nullo modo in "contrarium venire." Post hæc, datis militibus reliquiis de corona Christi, in testimonium, valefecit eisdem. Simile juramentum præstitit, apud Luneros, Dominus Edwardus, Princeps Walliæ, proxima feria sexta sequente. Ambo igitur Reges, et eorum filii, majoresque utriusque regni, idem corporale sacramentum præstiterunt. A.D. 1360. The preliminaries ratified by oath.

Ad corroboranda quoque, complendaque, prædicta, Rex Angliæ petiit, et accepit majores Franciæ in obsidatum, videlicet, quinque Duces, octo Comites, et [1] tredecim dominos, nominatos; assignataque sunt dies et tempus, quibus ambo Reges convenirent, prædicta consummaturi, cum suis Consiliis, apud Kaleys. French hostages given to the King of England.

Scriptis igitur, sigillatis, et indentatis, confestim Rex Angliæ transivit ad Hounflet, ubi naves ascendit, et felici cursu pervenit in Angliam. Et confestim transivit ad Turrim, gratia visitandi Regem Franciæ; ubi limitata summa redemptionis suæ, quæ stetit in tribus milionibus florenorum, quorum duo valerent sex solidos octo denarios, eum ab omni carcere liberavit. King Edward returns to England.

Quibus ita gestis, Rex Angliæ Regem Franciæ, cum summa veneratione, deduxit ad mare; qui nono die Julii transfretavit, atque pervenit in regnum suum, tractaturus effectualiter de pactionibus supradictis. The King of France is set at liberty.

Elapso parvo tempore, convenerunt apud Kalesiam ambo Reges, cum suis Consiliis, tractaturi finaliter de A treaty (of Bretigny) is finally made.

[1] 30 in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1360. The Greater Chronicle of Walsingham referred to.

pace et concordia præformatis apud Carnotum, juraveruntque firmiter pacta servare penes se. Quorum articuli in [1] Chronicis nostris majoribus latius describuntur. Hiis ita gestis, confestim mittuntur nuncii Summo Pontifici, pro pace pactisque mutuis confirmandis.

A Parliament assembled, A.D. 1361.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo primo, in Parliamento Londoniis, proponebatur cunctis regni stabilitis, placuitque cunctis

The treaty is confirmed.

dictam concordiam recipere et tenere. Quamobrem celebrata Missa de Sancta Trinitate a Domino Cantuariensi, cum magna solemnitate, astante Rege, cum filiis suis, et accensis luminaribus et erectis crucibus, singuli qui non prius juraverant, super Corpus Dominicum et Missale istud sacramentum in scriptis præstiterunt,

And ratified by oath.

Domino Cantuariensi inchoante:—"Nos, [2] N., Cantua-
" riensis Archiepiscopus, juramus ad sacrosancta Corpus
" Dominicum et Evangelia, firmiter servare penes nos
" pacem et concordiam firmatas inter Reges, et nullo
" modo in contrarium venire." Quibus expeditis, singuli suas schedulas regiis notariis tradiderunt.

The Great Company, in France.

Eodem anno, illa magna et famosa Comitiva, de diversis nationibus adunata, cujus duces pro majori parte fuerunt Anglici, partes Franciæ, versus Avinoniam, invaserunt, villam Sancti Spiritus ceperunt, cum villis et castellis multis in [3] Francia; quos nulla virtute vel arte expellere potuit Rex Franciæ de terra sua.

The White Company, in Lombardy.

Eodem tempore surrepsit et alia Comitiva, quæ vulgariter vocabatur "Alba," quæ transiit in Lumbardiam; cujus etiam duces fuerunt Anglici, et quandoque militabant alienis stipendiis, aliquando vero motu proprio discurrebant, accipientes redemptionem de diversis villis, castellis, ac civitatibus; nec pene deguit securus aliquis in illis regionibus, qui non istorum benevolentia fruebatur.

---

[1] See Walsingham's *Hist. Angl.*, Vol. I., p. 290, Treaty of Bretigny.

[2] Simon Islip was Archbishop.

[3] *Francis* in ed. Camden.

Sub hoc tempore, Dominus Princeps Walliæ desponsavit Dominam Johannam, Canciæ Comitissam. A.D. 1361. Marriage of the Prince of Wales.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo secundo, Dominus Edwardus, Princeps Walliæ, accepit a patre, coram regni magnatibus, Principatum Aquitanniæ, fidelitate prius, et homagio, Regi patri factis; non tamen reliquit Principatum Walliæ, Ducatum Cornubiæ, neque Cestriæ neque Canciæ Comitatus. Qui, circa festum Purificationis Beatæ Mariæ proximo sequens, cum uxore et tota sua familia, in Wasconiam transfretavit. The Prince receives the Principality of Aquitaine, A.D. 1362.

Hoc anno, expletis annis quinquaginta a Nativitate Domini Edwardi, Regis Angliæ, idem Rex, volens reddere Jubilæum suum memorabilem, celebrato Parliamento, populo suo se exhibuit gratiosum, reis majestatis suæ offensas indulgendo, vinctos a carceribus liberando, et exules revocando. Ad petitionem etiam communitatis, placita in lingua materna, et non in Gallica, versari jussit. Leonellum quoque, filium suum, fecit Ducem Clarenciæ, et Edmundum Comitem Cantabrigiæ. Ordinatum fuit insuper in hoc Parliamento, quod nullus in regno, præter Regem et Reginam, atque Duces, haberet provisores victualium, nec aliquid caperet, nisi denariis persolutis, et ut transgredientes stricto judicio punirentur. Concessions made on occasion of a Jubilee. Provisors of victuals abolished, except for the royal family.

In hoc Parliamento, concessum fuit Regi recipere per tres annos sequentes viginti et sex solidos octo denarios, de quolibet sacco lanæ. Grant made to the King.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo tertio, in Parliamento tento Londoniis, omne ornamentum aureum et argenteum fuit damnatum; scilicet, in cultellis, cingulis, monilibus, annulis, et cæteris corporum ornamentis, nisi in talibus qui possent per annum expendere decem libras. Ordinatum insuper fuit ibidem, ne mercatores Angliæ cum suis mercimoniis, vel ad vina quærenda, de cætero transfretarent, et ut singuli artes singulas exercerent, et ut nulli pannis pretiosis aut pellura uterentur, nisi qui possent per annum expendere centum Parliament at London, A.D. 1363. Sumptuary laws enacted.

A.D. 1363. But to no purpose.

libras; et ne plebeii operarii et agricultores vescerentur cibis delicatis. Sed hæc omnia nullum effectum cepere.

Three Kings visit England.

Per hoc tempus venerunt tres Reges, scilicet, Franciæ, Cipriæ, et Scotiæ, gratia videndi et alloquendi Regem Angliæ; a quo plurimum honorati, donisque donati, Reges Cipriæ et Scotiæ ad sua reversi sunt; sed Rex Franciæ, morbo correptus, Londoniis, apud Saveye, diem clausit extremum; sed hoc contigit anno sequenti. Exequias ejus Rex Angliæ in diversis locis fecit solemniter celebrari, ac usque Doveriam, suis sumptibus, per viros honorabiles corpus ejus more regio conduci fecit. Qui tandem sepultus est juxta Parisium, apud Sancti Dionisii Monasterium, in sepulcro Regum.

The King of France dies in London (A.D. 1364).

A great frost.

Eodem anno, septimo Idus Decembris, cœpit gelare, perduravitque gelu fortissimum usque quartum-decimum Kalendas Aprilis.

The King of Cyprus is plundered.

Eo tempore, Rex Cypri, itinerando per Angliam, plura perdidit per latrones. Ob quam causam, Rex Edwardus concessit Londoniensibus potestatem justificandi malefactores, et incarceratos infra civitatem liberandi, Justiciariis regiis, ut prius solebant, minime requisitis.

Dearth of wheat.

Hoc anno fuit tanta frumenti penuria, ut summa tritici ad quindecim solidos venderetur.

Defeat and death of Charles de Bloys, A.D. 1364.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo quarto, Karolus de Bloys, cum tribus millibus sexcentis viris, bellatoribus, irruit subito super Johannem de Monte Forti, et Dominum Willelmum Latimer, dum essent in obsidione villæ et castelli [1] de Aueroy; qui vix habebant secum mille sexcentos de Anglis et Britonibus. Et facto congressu sine deliberatione, ceciderunt ex parte Ducis tantum septem viri, et, ex parte Karoli [2] intrusoris, corruit ipse Karolus, cum Domino de Rocheford et Willelmo Vango, et militibus atque armigeris pene mille; captique sunt de parte Karoli duo Comites,

[1] *d'Auray* is the name meant. | [2] *intrusorum* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*

viginti septem domini, et armati viri strenui mille quingenti. A.D. 1364.

Quinto Idus Aprilis, obiit Dominus Johannes, Rex Francorum. Death of the King of France.

Longobardi mercatores per socios suos accusantur de magna infidelitate in suis mercimoniis factis Regi. Quapropter ex illis multi recluduntur in Turri, donec finem fecissent, ad Regis beneplacitum. The Lombard merchants accused of dishonesty to the King.

Eodem tempore, Edmundus de Langelee, Regis filius, desponsasset filiam et hæredem Comitis Flandriæ, nisi propinquitas consanguinitatis prohibuisset; unde, pro habenda dispensatione, missum est ad Papam. Sed Rex Franciæ, Karolus, ne matrimonium istud procederet, callide impedivit. Quæ mulier expost copulata fuit Philippo, fratri Regis Franciæ, Duci Burgundiæ, qui quondam patri suo in Anglia fuerat concaptivus. The contemplated marriage of Prince Edmund prevented by the King of France.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo quinto, natus est Domino Edwardo, Principi Walliæ et Aquitaniæ, apud Angolismum, filius, et vocatus est, nomine patris sui, "Edwardus." Hic anno ætatis suæ septimo diem clausit; non tamen præmature, ut plurimi asserebant. A son born to the Prince of Wales, A.D. 1365.

Eodem anno, Ingelramus, Dominus de [1] Courcy, apud Windeleshoram, desponsavit Ysabellam, filiam Regis Edwardi. Marriage of the Princess Isabella.

Hoc etiam anno, Rex Cypri cepit Alexandriæ Magnæ partem tertiam, et despoliatam dimisit incredulis; quia non habuit qui possent custodire eam. Interfuerunt autem huic captioni, cum Rege Cypri, plures Anglici et Aquitannici, referentes tam in Angliam quam in Aquitanniam pannos aureos et holosericos, splendoresque gemmarum exoticos, in suæ testimonium probitatis. Capture of part of Alexandria, by the King of Cyprus.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo sexto, natus est Domino Edwardo, Principi, apud Burdegaliam, secundus filius, dictus "Ricardus;" quem Ricardus, Rex Majoricarum, de sacro fonte suscepit. Birth of Prince Richard, at Bordeaux, A.D. 1366.

[1] *Councy* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1366. The King of France requests the aid of King Edward against the GreatCompanies.

Hoc in tempore, Rex Franciæ et majores illius regni implorabant auxilium Regis Angliæ, contra Magnas Comitivas quæ bacchabantur in Francia, quarum ductores erant Anglici, pro majori parte, vel saltem de dominio Regis Anglorum. Qui mandavit eis per suas litteras, ut regnum Franciæ evacuarent, et illud desinerent molestare. Qui primo tergiversantes, nec suas, quas ceperant, munitiones deserere meditantes, brevi ridiculosoque responso Regem Angliæ exacerbaverunt. Quapropter, Rex Angliæ, ad humiliandum eorum superbiam, conduxit exercitum, navigium præparavit. Quod cum audisset Rex Franciæ, per nuncios rogavit Regem Angliæ, ut a cœptis desisteret, et domi se contineret; unde contristatus, Rex Angliæ juravit per Sanctam Mariam, se non laturum auxilium Regi Franciæ in æternum, licet eum dictæ Comitivæ niterentur expellere regno suo. Nihilominus expost, ad jussum Regis Angliæ, redditis Regi Franciæ villis et castellis per dictas Comitivas diu possessis, regno Franciæ valefecerunt.

The possessions of the King of France are restored.

The Great Company proceeds against Pedro, King of Spain.

Bertrandus Cleykyn, insignis et belliger, habens collegam Hugonem de Kalverlee, militem toti Europæ famosum, cum parte Magnæ Comitivæ, processit contra Petronem, Regem Hispaniæ, [1] sollicitatus per quemdam Henricum nothum, qui vulgo vocabatur "Bastardus "Hispaniæ," ut Petronem regno privaret, et Henricum faceret coronari; ad quod etiam exequendum accessit auxilium, et favor, Papæ. Petro, Rex Hispaniæ, cum audisset adventum illius terribilis Comitivæ, fugit ad Principem Walliæ, ab eo contra tam sævos hostes suffragia petiturus. Quo fugato, Henricus, frater ejus nothus, assensu multorum procerum, et auxilio Comitivæ prædictæ, Rex Hispaniæ factus est. Numerus istius Comitivæ stetit in sexaginta millibus bellatorum.

Henry, the Bastard of Spain, is made King.

Prince Edward proceeds to the aid of Pedro, A.D. 1367.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo septimo, Dominus Edwardus, Princeps, condolens calamitatibus Domini Petronis, Regis ejecti, profectus est in Hispa-

[1] *sollicitatus* . . . . *Hispaniæ* omitted in ed. Camden.

niam, cum nobili multitudine pugnatorum Angliæ, Scotiæ, Navarriæ, Aquitanniæ, Britanniæ Armoricæ, et aliarum gentium plurimarum. Ad quem, cum attigisset partes Hispaniæ, cum multis, accessit Dominus Hugo de Kalverlee, deserto Henrico Bastardo, qui noluit in bello stare contra Principem, primogenitum Regis sui. A.D 1367.

Venit insuper ad eum Dominus Robertus Knollis, cum parte prædictæ Comitivæ, quæ cum eo remanserat, post abscessum Bertrandi Cleykyn et Hugonis de Kalverlee; cujus numerus fuit decem millia virorum scientium bellum, et ad opus martium promptissimorum. De Anglia venit ad eum Dominus Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, cum multis valentibus militibus et armigeris, arcitenentibus, aliisque armatis; eratque cum eo Rex Navarriæ, cum pluribus probatis hominibus de gente sua. Ex adversa parte, venit ipse Henricus Bastardus, et cum eo Bertrandus Cleykyn, cum majori parte illius sæpedictæ Magnæ Comitivæ, quæ sequebatur eum, non illius amore tantummodo, sed opimioris spe prædæ. Venerunt et omnes domini potentiores provinciarum Hispaniæ, et de Galliis infiniti, partim missi per Regem Franciæ, partim lucri contemplatione. Saraceni præterea, et ulteriores Hispani, cum incredulis, confluxerunt cum intrusore prænominato; qui præ multitudine dinumerari nequibant.

Receives large reinforcements.

Numerous supporters of Henry's cause.

Princeps, perpendens omnium horum multitudinem, quantum res patiebatur, die noctuque laborabat ad opus martium consummandum. Unde contigit, ut, contra opinionem hostium, qui nullo modo putabant eum tam subito adventurum, tertio die Aprilis, oriente sole, irrueret super eos. Bertrandus Cleykyn, more ducis providi, bellum differre quoquo modo gestiens, donec sui se possent armare, qui nondum stratu se excusserant, cum quinque vel sex sociis, intravit campi medium, in quo bellum gerendum fuit, inter utrumque exercitum constitutum. Cui cum pari occurrens numero, miles nobilis, Dominus Thomas Ufforde, equites quidem omnes, contra se venientes, hostili hastiludio, de suis dejecit

Prince Edward attacks the enemy.

Bertrand Cleykyn taken prisoner.

A.D. 1367. equis; et cæteris interemptis de parte Bertrandi, ipse quidem captus est vivus. Interea anteriores acies sibi invicem obviarunt, ubi sagittariis Anglicanis laudabiliter rem gerentibus, Hispanos multipliciter terruerunt. Dominus Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, et Dominus Johannes Chaundos, miles famosissimus, et qui de Magna Comitiva adhæserant Principi, in acie prima constituti sunt. Super hos pondus belli stetit, super hos Sarazenica phalanx incubuit, super hos innumera Hispanorum multitudo diu sævit; sed tandem superveniente Domino Roberto Knollis, cum electissima gente quæ eum secuta fuerat, et, velut fulminea tempestas, irruens super hostes, et pars adversa terretur et debilitatur. Terga proinde vertunt Hispani, et per centenos corruunt ad inferna pagani. Ipse campi-ductor partis adversæ, pavefactus, hiis visis, et de grandine sagittarum, caput ejus circumvolantium, tremefactus, reliquit sonipedem quem insedit, et, equum velociorem insiliens, fugam cepit, non tamen illæsus, ut fertur, quia fuit in inguine sagittatus. Cognita vero fuga sui ducis, Hispani terga dedere, peremptis in bello, sive fuga, septem millibus armatorum. Captus est in bello Comes de Dena, cum multis nobilibus Hispanorum. Bertrandus Cleykyn captus fuerat ante bellum, ut præfertur, qui principalis extitit Bastardi consiliarius, et dux primæ cohortis. In fluvio vero de Nazar suffocati sunt plurimi, qui dum pertransire vellent, vada nescientes, rapaci gurgite sunt absorpti; rubuitque fluvius per multa [1] milliaria de sanguine vulneratorum, pereuntium in eodem. Commissum fuit hoc prœlium tertio die Aprilis, vel, ut quidam volunt, in Vigilia Dominicæ Annunciationis. Igitur serenissimus Princeps, obtenta victoria, Dominum Petronem restituit regno suo, et, rediens in Aquitanniam, compulsus est confringere vasa sua aurea et argentea, et sculpere in monetam, quam stipendiariis suis [2] erogaret; quia Petro pro tunc non invenit in the-

Victory gained by Prince Edward, at Najara.

Great slaughter of the enemy.

Pedro is restored to his kingdom.

[1] *millia* in MS.

[2] *irrogaret* in ed. Camden.

sauris suis unde Principi satisfaceret, juxta pacta. Ob quam causam, Princeps, cum redisset in Aquitanniam, coactus est manus mittere ad bona subjectorum suorum, et exigere novas taxas a Wasconiensibus, et insuetas. Quamobrem cito postea defecerunt ab eo, et rebellare cœperunt, ut in sequentibus elucebit. A.D. 1367.

Per idem tempus, Bertrandus Cleykyn, soluta redemptione, a captivitate liberatur, et, pergens in Hispaniam, Regi Petroni reconciliatur. Cui persuasit, ut reciperet Henricum Bastardum, fratrem suum, in gratiam, quem promisit fidelem sibi futurum. Cujus assertioni Petro fidem dans, jussit ut eum adduceret, spondens se sibi rancorem omnem, et forisfacturas, corditer remissurum. Bertrandus, cuncta dolose faciens, procuravit ut præfatus Henricus adveniret cum armata manu, tempore quo Rex sedebat in mensa, et subito præoccupatum lancea perforaret. Quo facto, Bastardus invasit regnum, [1] nactus proditione quod non potuit aperto [2] Marte. Bertrand Cleykyn is liberated. Pedro is treacherously slain by his brother.

Edwardus Princeps, intoxicatus, sanitate corporis usque ad finem vitæ fuit privatus. The Prince of Wales is poisoned.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo octavo, Leonellus, Dux Clarenciæ, Regis Edwardi filius, Mediolanum abiit, ducere in uxorem filiam Galeas, Domini [3] Mediolanensium, cum qua medietatem ejusdem dominii fuerat accepturus; ubi celebrato cum gloria maxima matrimonio, vix quinque mensibus supervixit. Marriage of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, A.D. 1368. And death.

Eodem anno, pacis pacta fregerunt Franci, capientes in Pontivo castella, villas, oppida, et munitiones, spectantia juri Regis Angliæ, et homines ejusdem perimentes, et plurimos captivantes, Rege hæc omnia ignorante. Et ut efficacius Regis Angliæ circumvenirent innocentiam, Rex Franciæ litteraliter denunciavit Regi Angliæ, se fore paratum solvere quod residuum fuerat de redemptione patris sui, Johannis, quondam Regis Franciæ, et omnes pacis conditiones editas Kalesiæ observare. The French invade the territory of the English King; and endeavour to deceive him.

[1] *partus* in MS.
[2] *morte* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Mediolanensi* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1368. King Edward becomes sensible of their treachery, and refuses their presents.

Et ut plenius circumveniret Regem Angliæ, misit ei vina de Boemia et alia donativa, indicia bonæ fidei et dilectionis. Et factum est, adhuc nunciis cum Rege existentibus, rumores flebiles deferuntur ad Regem de equitatione Francorum hostili in pago Pontivi, et de excessibus factis ibidem. Quibus auditis, Rex jussit nunciis, ut, cum donis suis fallacibus, redirent ad dominum suum, fraude plenum, cujus nugas et dolos non diu toleraret inultos. Quibus domum remeantibus occurrere Kalesienses, et vina direpta Kalesiam adduxerunt.

Simon, Archbishop of Canterbury, is made a Cardinal.

Hoc anno, Dominus Simon de Langham, Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, assumptus est ad Cardinalatum, vocante eum Urbano Quinto.

Parliament at London, A.D. 1369.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo nono, Rex Edwardus Tertius, in Parliamento tento Londoniis, tractavit de concordia violata, pacisque pactionibus, inter ipsum et Regem Franciæ. Quapropter, sicut olim, totum regnum Franciæ vendicavit; misitque, circa festum Nativitatis Beatæ Virginis, filium suum, Johannem, Ducem Lankastriæ, et Hunfridum de Boun, Comitem Herefordiæ, cum valida manu militum et [1] arcitenentium, ad jus suum ex integro repetendum. Qui cum transfretassent, et super montem qui dicitur "[2] Le Chalk-hille," castrametati fuissent contra Francos, qui illuc illis occurrerant, tamdiu jacuerunt ibidem, donec, consumptis victualibus, pars Anglica fame deficiebat. Erant tunc ibi multi valentes barones et milites, qui censuerunt cum Gallis fore pugnandum, priusquam gens Anglica fame perisset; sed duces causabantur sibi non esse manum sufficientem ad obviandum Gallis.

Edward again claims the French throne.

Inactivity of the Duke of Lancaster.

Prowess of the Earl of Warwick.

Interea, Dominus Thomas Beuchaumpe, Comes Warwici, audiens Francos paratos ad pugnam, ascensis navibus, cum electis militibus, versus Kalesiam navigavit; de cujus adventu Franci stupefacti, relinquentes tentoria, cum victualibus, clam fugerunt. Comes vero

[1] *architenensium* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Chef de Caux*, at the mouth of the Seine.

cum applicuisset, ducum detestatus ignaviam, consulentium ne progrederetur, — "Ego," inquit, "progredi et "pugnare volo, dum adhuc panis patriæ in virorum "meorum ventribus remanet indigestus." Nec mora, progreditur, et insulam de Kaus ferro flammaque vastat, nemine resistente; sed, heu! redeundo versus Kalesiam, morbo correptus, de medio sublatus est. Cæteri duces, adversante fortuna, inglorii redierunt. A.D. 1369. His premature death.

Per id [1] temporis Papa fovebat guerram contra dominos Mediolanenses, militante pro eo Domino Despencer, qui laudabiliter bella gessit Papalia, post mortem Leonelli, Ducis Clarenciæ, cum quo pervenerat ad partes illas. The Pope wages war with the Milanese.

Eodem tempore floruit ille miles egregius, et toti mundo nominatus, Johannes Hawkwode, natione Anglicus, qui duxit Comitivam Albam, superius nominatam, et nunc contra Papam, nunc contra præfatos dominos Mediolanenses, arma gerebat, semper invictus. Cujus admiranda gesta prædicat usque nunc Italia, et Lumbardia. Prowess of John Hawkwode.

Hoc anno, modius frumenti tribus solidis vendebatur. Dearth of wheat.

Domina Blanchia, Ducissa Lankastriæ, viam universæ carnis ingressa est, et in ecclesia Sancti Pauli, Londoniis, sepelitur. Death of the Duchess of Lancaster.

Parliamentum Londoniis, in quo concessæ sunt Regi decimæ triennales, in tribus annis sequentibus persolvendæ, et a laicis quinta-decima triennalis. Grant made by Parliament.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo, Rex Edwardus, pravo ductus consilio, petiit, et accepit mutuo, de prælatis dominisque temporalibus, ac mercatoribus, magnas summas pecuniæ, dicens quod illas expenderet in defensione regni et Ecclesiæ; sed secus accidit quam putabant. Large sums borrowed by the King, A.D. 1370.

Circa festum Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Rex congregari fecit exercitum, [2] fortem valde; in quo A great army is sent over to France.

[1] *tempus* in ed. Camden. | [2] *forte* in ed. Camden.

A.D 1370. nobiliores fuere Dominus de [1] Grauntsoun et Dominus filius Walteri. Quibus præfectus est Dominus Robertus Knollis, vir qui transmarina bella perante fortunate tractaverat; cujus discretione Rex universos censuit gubernari. Qui, transeuntes in Franciam, quamdiu Roberti paruere consiliis, Gallos indicibiliter terruerunt.

Dissensions arise among the leaders.

Sed tandem, ingruente hyeme, orta inter adolescentes dominos et dictum Robertum dissensione, factione Johannis Menstrewurthe, militis, qui et ipse partem ducebat exercitus, dicentis dictos dominos non debere subjici ducatui vispilionis veterani, qui satis erant idonei, quique pro parte sua, ad perficiendum injunctum negotium, in diversas turmas se pueriliter diviserunt. Quorum incorrigibilem animum cum [2] persensisset Robertus, secessit in Britanniam, ad propria castra sua,

Disastrous results thereof.

quæ quondam conquisierat ense suo. Franci vero, duce Bertrando Kleykyn, in cæteros dominos, sic divisos, et nondum in locis refugii constitutos, hostiliter irruerunt, et quos voluerunt captivos duxerunt, et reliquos occiderunt.

Accusations made against Robert Knollis; but discredited.

Johannes Menstrewurthe, consultor pessimus, amissis de suis plurimis, vix evadens, venit in Angliam, imponens Domino Roberto Knollis hujus infortunii totam causam. Sed antiqua viri probitas, cunctis nota, id effecit, ut idem Johannes mendax reputaretur, et non solum ingratus, sed infidus, dicto Roberto prædicaretur. Robertus tamen non audebat in Angliam remeare, donec gratiam Regis magna summa pecuniæ comparasset. Igitur præfatus Johannes Menstrewurth, cernens suas fraudes pro votis non posse procedere, transfugit ad Regem Franciæ, domini sui effectus proditor manifestus.

Rebellion of the City of Limoges.

Hoc anno, magna pars Wasconiæ descivit a Principe, propter insolitas exactiones, et maxime, civitas [3] Lemovicensis rebellare cœpit; quam Princeps, post diram obsidionem arte fodientium, captam, destruxit solo tenus.

Vindictive punishment of its inhabitants.

[1] *Graunform* in ed. Camden.
[2] *persentisset* in MS.
[3] *Lemonicensis* in ed. Camden.

rebelles juste puniendo. Post hæc, infirmitate grassante, et pecunia deficiente, Angliam revisere sibi necessarium videbatur. Cum conjuge proinde, et Ricardo, filio suo, (nam Edwardus, senior filius, tunc obierat,) ad portum de Plummouth applicuit, relictis in Wasconia duobus suis fratribus, Johanne, Duce Lankastriæ, et Edmundo, Comite Cantabrigiæ, ad defensionem patriæ, cum aliis viris strenuis et bellicosis. Cumque pervenisset ad patris præsentiam, in manus ejus totum dominium Wasconiæ resignavit. A.D. 1370. The Prince of Wales returns to England.

Eodem anno, Dominus Johannes Chaundos, miles probatissimus, dum, superatis hostibus in Wasconia, caput incaute discooperuisset, ictu spiculi peremptus est. Cujus audito, Rex Francorum, infortunio, flevisse fertur, propter viri modestiam, nobilitatem, multiplicesque virtutes. Sir John Chaundos is slain. Sorrow of the King of France thereat.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo primo, in Parliamento tento Londoniis, tempore Quadragesimali, petiit Rex a clero et populo subsidium quinquaginta millium librarum. Ad quam summam levandam taxati fuere sacerdotes stipendiarii, juxta summam quam receperunt a conductoribus annuatim. Minuta etiam beneficia, perante non taxata, ad complementum hujus summæ, similiter taxabantur. Grant made by Parliament, A.D. 1371. Priests' incomes assessed.

In hoc Parliamento, petentibus dominis temporalibus, [1] amoti sunt Episcopi de officiis Cancellariæ et Thesaurariæ, et Clericus de Privato Sigillo, et sæculares, sive laicales personæ, eorum locis subrogati sunt; et hoc quidem totum factum est in odium clericorum. Ecclesiastics deprived of certain offices of state.

Eo tempore, missi sunt solemnes per Papam nuncii, pro pace reformanda inter Reges; sed nullo expedito negotio recesserunt. The Pope attempts to establish peace; but ineffectually.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo secundo, nono die mensis Junii, Rex fecit summoneri ad Parliamentum, tenendum Wintoniæ, de clero quatuor tantum Parliament at Winchester, A.D. 1372.

[1] *ammoti* in MS.

A.D. 1372. Episcopos, et Abbates totidem; quia dicebatur quod mercatores Londonienses, et aliorum locorum, rebellare volebant.

The Duke of Lancaster and Earl of Cambridge return to England.

Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, et frater ejus, Edmundus, Comes Cantabrigiæ, de Wasconia redierunt in Angliam, ducentes secum duas filias Petronis, quondam Regis Hispaniæ; quas exposŧ in conjuges acceperunt, Dux quidem seniorem, et Comes juniorem: et ab eo tempore Dux se Regem Castillæ nominavit, et scripsit.

Two Cardinals sent to treat of peace; but to no purpose.

Papa per hoc tempus misit duos Cardinales in Angliam pro pace reformanda, Cardinalem, videlicet, Anglicum, et Cardinalem Parisiensem; qui parum profecerunt, nisi quod uberes procurationes de suis provinciis reportaverunt.

Naval victory of the English over the Flemings.

Anglici, Flandrensium concitati insolentia, commisso navali prœlio, vicerunt eos, captis viginti quinque navibus onustis sale, et universis hominibus interemptis.

Siege of Rochelle by the French.

Eodem anno, Franci obsederunt villam de Rupella; ad quos removendos, missus est Dominus Johannes Hastingges, Comes Penbrochiæ, juvenis quintum et vicesimum agens annum, cum electissima multitudine armatorum. Super quos in portu de Rochellia ruit repente

The Earl of Pembroke captured by the Spanish fleet.

classis Hispanica, quæ, victis Anglis, et occisis, et cunctis cæteris pene captis, classem Anglicam concremarunt. Ibique captus est dictus Comes, cum multis valentibus, et ductus in Hispaniam, cum stipendiali pecunia a Rege recepta, pro guerra ibidem continuanda.

Reasons assigned for this misfortune.

Istud infortunium contigit in Vigilia Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, nonnullis astruentibus causas hujus infortunii fuisse, vel quia, fœdere conjugali rupto, peccatum adulterii parvipendit, vel quia deliberaverat libertates ecclesiasticas annullasse, vel quia Regi malitiose persuaserat, ut ecclesiastici gravius mulctarentur quam alii, sæculares. Quod consilium indicibiliter dominis illius temporis dicitur placuisse.

King Edward attempts to

Eodem anno, Rex Edwardus, collecto navigio, et exercitu validissimo, intravit mare, ut obsessis in Ru-

pella subveniret. Sed continue flantibus ventis contrariis, ad terram tristis rediit, expensis in hoc apparatu novies centum millibus librarum, prout fertur. In hoc apparatu fuit cum eo filius suus, Princeps, et regni nobilitas pene tota. A.D. 1372. relieve Rochelle.

Hoc anno, cum prævalida manu bellica, transfretavit Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, et equitavit per Parisium et Burgundiam, redemptiones, pro suæ voluntatis arbitrio, de villis accipiens, et munitionibus, nemine resistente. Tandem relicta Francia, progressus est per deserta montium regionis [1] Alverniæ, ubi, deficientibus victualibus, multi de exercitu perierunt. Ex hinc profectus in Aquitanniam, pervenit Burdegaliam, vix quadraginta caballos secum vivos ducens; nempe, si vulgo credi debet, triginta millia equorum in hac infausta profectione dicitur amisisse. The Duke of Lancaster passes through France with his army (A.D. 1373). Suffers losses in Auvergne.

Eodem anno, Rex Edwardus misit ambassiatores ad Dominum Papam, rogans ut super reservationes beneficiorum Anglicorum in Curia sua factas de cætero supersederet; et ut clerici ad episcopales dignitates electi suis electionibus pleno jure gauderent, et a suis metropolitanis confirmarentur, prout antiquitus fieri consuevit. Super quibus articulis, et nonnullis aliis, quibus tam Rex, quam regni communitas, sensit se gravari, nuncii a Papa certa recepere responsa; de quibus, cum redissent in Angliam, deberet Papæ rescribi per Regem de voluntate sua, et procerum, antequam aliquid determinaretur de præmissis. Ambassadors sent by King Edward to the Pope, with certain requests.

In Parliamento tento Londoniis, decretum fuit ut ecclesiæ cathedrales suis gauderent electionibus, et quod de cætero Rex contra electos non scriberet, sed per suas litteras ad eorum confirmationes juvaret. Sed tamen nil profuit hoc Statutum. In eodem Parliamento, concessa fuit per clerum Regi decima, et per laicos quinta-decima. Enactment in Parliament, as to the elections in Cathedral churches. Grant made.

[1] *Alverinæ* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1373. Ransom of Sir Thomas Percy.

Hoc anno, castellum de Liziniaco Francis reddebatur, pro redemptione Domini Thomæ Percy.

Return of the Duke of Lancaster.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo quarto, Dominus Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, rediit in Angliam de Wasconia; post cujus recessum, tota pene Aquitannia descivit a fide facta Regi Angliæ, præter Burdegaliam et Bayonem.

Revolt of Aquitaine, A.D. 1374.

Death of William, Archbishop of Canterbury.

Quinto die Julii obiit Magister Willelmus Witteleseye, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus; monachi vero illius ecclesiæ, ad electionem procedentes, Cardinalem Angliæ in Archiepiscopum postularunt; quod tantum offendit Regem, ut eos proponeret exlegare. Unde compulsi sunt, pro recuperanda Regis gratia, providere fulvo metallo remedia.

Conference at Bruges; and agreement made between the King of England and the Pope.

Hoc anno, tractatum fuit in Flandria, apud Bruges, super articulis inter Papam et Regem pendentibus; et concordatum est, quod Papa non uteretur de cætero reservationibus beneficiorum, et quod Rex per breve "Quare impedit," beneficia non conferret. Sed de electionibus tactis superius, pro quibus anno præterito directi fuerunt ad Papam nuncii, nihil in hoc tractatu tactum fuit. Credebatur nempe, quod quidam ex aulicis, qui se sciebant potius per Romanam Curiam promovendos, quam per electiones legales, istum articulum supprimi procurarunt.

The Duke of Lancaster and others treat of peace, in Flanders.

Eodem anno, convenerunt apud Bruges electi nobiliores Angliæ, Johannes Dux Lankastriæ, Willelmus Comes Sarum, Reginaldus Dominus de Cobham, et alii plures sæculares, ad tractandum de pace inter regna. De ecclesiasticis vero, Dominus Simon de Sudbiria, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, cum aliis clericis regni famosis, illuc directi sunt. Quibus occurrerunt, de parte Francorum, pro dicto negotio, Dux Andegaviæ, cum multis regni proceribus et episcopis. Duravitque tractatus iste fere continuis duobus annis, non sine partium magnis sumptibus et labore. Franci per totum tempus istud domi non de pace, sed de prœlio, cogitabant; resarcientes

vetera arma, novaque fabricantes, omnem apparatum belli in promptu habere certantes. Sicque factum est, ut Angli circumvenirentur incauti, ut in sequentibus apparebit. Nam discessum est utrinque sine pacis effectu. Captæ sunt tamen treugæ inter duo regna, vix per annum [1] duraturæ. Nuncii Papæ, qui pro pace tractanda venerant, uberes procurationes a clero Angliæ receperunt. A.D. 1374. The English are duped by the French, and the negotiations are finally broken off.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo quinto, Dux Britanniæ, Johannes Mountfort, habens in comitiva sua filium Regis, Edmundum Comitem Cantabrigiæ, Comitesque Marchiæ, Warwici, et Staffordiæ, Dominum le Spencer, pluresque alios bellicosos et nobiles, in partes Britanniæ transfretavit; quibus reddita sunt illico, villa Sancti Matthæi supra mare et castella de Orrey et de Brest. Villam de [2] Kemperle obsederunt, in qua conclusi fuerunt omnes majores Britanniæ, eamque cepissent, nisi quidam nuncius supervenisset, et treugas inter regna captas indicasset, et ex parte Regis Angliæ præcepisset, ut, obsidione dimissa, ad Angliam remearent. Successes of the Duke of Bretagne and his English allies, A.D. 1375. Their successes arrested by news of the truce.

Hoc in tempore, post longam obsidionem, reddita fuit Francis insula de Constantyn, cum castello Sancti Salvatoris, quod situatur in ea, per quemdam scutiferum, dictum "Thomam [3] Katringtone." Ob quam causam, Dominus Johannes de Annesle, miles, expost eundem Thomam, de proditione appellatum, in duello devicit, et occidit. The island of Constantyn restored to the French.

Hoc anno, sæviente peste nimis in Anglia, Dominus Papa Gregorius concessit decedentibus, vere pœnitentibus, plenam remissionem, sex mensibus duraturam. Plenary remission granted during the plague.

Comes de Penbrok, qui captus fuerat ab Hispanis, datus est Bertrando Cleykyn per Henricum Nothum, Regem Hispaniæ, pro certa summa pecuniæ quam idem The Earl of Pembroke is released from captivity.

[1] *duratura* in MS.
[2] *Kemple* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Katington* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1375. Henricus debuit dicto Bertrando. Qui cum perductus fuisset Parisius, et redemptionis suæ summa fuisset limitata, cœpit graviter infirmari. Metuentes egro Gallici ne in eorum manibus moreretur, priusquam sua solveretur redemptio, advehere eum Kalesiam festinabant. Mortuus tamen est antequam perveniret Kalesiam, et Franci suo desiderio sunt fraudati.

He dies, before reaching Calais.

A Parliament at London, called the "Good Parliament," A.D. 1376.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo sexto, Parliamentum tentum fuit Londoniis, quod "Bonum" a vulgaribus dicebatur; in quo cum peteretur parari Regi subsidium more solito, responsum fuit per Dominum Petrum de la Mare, Prolocutorem Parliamenti, Regem non indigere pauperum suorum substantia, si foret prudenter et fideliter gubernatus. Et hoc se dixit effectualiter probaturum. Promisitque nihilominus, quod si post declarationem hujus promissi, compertum foret Regem suorum indigere subsidiis, omnes paratos existere juxta facultates ipsum libentissime adjuvare.

Spirited conduct of Peter de la Mare, the Speaker.

Certain officers of state are removed.

In progressu vero petierunt Parliamentales milites, ut amoverentur quidam Regis officiarii, et præcipue Dominus de Latimer, qui, ut dicebant, non sano consilio Regem rexit. Amotis ergo Regis familiaribus, ad petitionem Communium, ordinati sunt certi Prælati et Comites, aliique sapientes, qui gubernarent Regem, jam vetulum, et, vice sua, cunctis advenientibus responsa darent; sed hoc Statutum vix tribus mensibus perduravit.

Complaints made against Alice Perers.

Her great effrontery.

Item, communitas regni petiit amoveri de domo Regisque consortio, quamdam Aliciam Perers, fœminam procacissimam, quæ, confisa nimia Regis familiaritate, multorum malorum in regno causa fuit. Quæ, modum mulierum supergressa, ausa est nunc juxta Regis Justiciarios, nunc in Consistoriis juxta Doctores, considere, et pro defensione causarum suadere vel dissuadere, ac contra jura sine verecundia postulare; ad Regis manifestum scandalum, non solum in hoc regno, sed in regionibus procul positis, et remotis.

Item, quidam Ricardus [1] Liounes et Adam Bury, cives Londoniarum, per Communes sunt accusati de variis fraudibus factis Regi. Quorum primus, mediante pecunia, vindictam debitam prudenter evasit; secundus, stupefactus ad imposita, latenter fugit in Flandriam, ut se salvaret ibidem. Sed ille veritatis [2] assertor, Dominus Petrus de la Mare, horum omnium perorator, ad instantiam dictæ Aliciæ Pereris, et aliorum quos juste satis offenderat, apud Notingham perpetuo carceri adjudicatur. A quo tamen est, post biennium, liberatus. A.D. 1376. Charges against certain citizens of London. Disgrace of the Speaker.

Eo tempore, nondum finito Parliamento, Dominus Edwardus, Princeps Walliæ, octavo die Julii, in die Sanctæ Trinitatis, defungitur. Quo obeunte, omnis obiit spes Anglorum. Quo superstite, nullius hostis incursum, nullius belli congressum, timuerunt Angli. Ipse nempe nullam gentem adiit, quam non vicit, nullam civitatem obsedit, quam non cepit. Quo extincto, extinctum est Parliamenti præsentis effectus. Death of Edward, Prince of Wales.

Dominus Ricardus de Burdegalia, filius Domini Edwardi Principis, in hoc Parliamento factus est Comes Cestriæ; et non multo post Dux Cornubiæ et Princeps Walliæ est creatus. His son, Richard, succeeds to his titles.

Eodem anno, familiares Comitis de Warwico intulere damna gravia Abbati et Conventui de Evisham, cuncta perpetrantes quæ crudelitas pro tempore suadebat; et nisi terruisset eos regia prohibitio, dictam Abbathiam irrestaurabiliter devastassent. Regis ergo timore, pax inter partes fuit reformata; sed plena satisfactio parti læsæ non est facta, quia profecto majus erat damnum quod irrogaverant, quam possibilitas damna resarciendi. Fertur quod, propter istam præsumptionem, Rex Comitem supradictum de Consilio suo amoverit, et noluerit gubernari per dominos ad suum Consilium ordinatos per Parliamentum supradictum, sed Ducem Lankastriæ revocaverit ad regimen regni sui. Qua occasione, redie- Excesses committed by the people of the Earl of Warwick against the Abbey of Evisham. The Duke of Lancas-

[1] *Honnes* in ed. Camden. | [2] *assertorum* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1376. Edward III. after resumes the government.

runt ad Curiam cuncti qui fuerant ante banniti, cum Domino de Latimer, [1] et supradicta meretricula Alicia Pereris, quæ, proh pudor! permansit cum eo usque ad finem vitæ.

Unheard-of taxes granted by Parliament, A.D. 1377.

Anno [2] millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo septimo, in Parliamento tento Londoniis, concessa fuit Regi, petenti, taxa hactenus inaudita; ut perciperet a qualibet persona laica, utriusque sexus, annos excedente quatuordecim, unum grossum, et de religiosis utriusque sexus, et qualibet ecclesiastica persona promota, duodecim denarios, et aliis non promotis unum grossum; exceptis Fratribus quatuor Ordinum Mendicantium; [3] qui cum hominibus non flagellabantur.

Statutes of the Good Parliament abrogated.

In hoc Parliamento abrogata sunt Statuta Parliamenti superioris, quod "Bonum Parliamentum" a populo vocabatur, et personæ abjudicatæ sunt statui pristino restitutæ.

Rise of John Wyclef.

Per idem tempus, surrexit Oxoniis quidam, dictus "Johannes Wyclef," Doctor in Theologia, tenens opiniones a tota damnatas Ecclesia; videlicet, quod Eucharistia in altari, post Sacramentum, non est verum corpus Christi, sed ejus figura.

His doctrines on matters of religious belief.

Item, quod Ecclesia Romana non est caput omnium ecclesiarum, plusquam una alia ecclesia; nec major potestas data fuit Petro, quam cuilibet alteri Apostolo.

Item, quod Papa Romanus non habet majorem potestatem in clavibus Ecclesiæ, quam quicunque alius in ordine sacerdotii constitutus.

Item, si Deus est, domini temporales possunt legitime ac meritorie auferre bona fortunæ ab ecclesia delinquente.

Item, si dominus temporalis noverit ecclesiam delinquentem, tenetur, sub pœna damnationis ejus, ab ea temporalia auferre.

---

[1] *a* in ed. Camden.

[2] 1387 in ed. Camden.

[3] "*Qui, quia in labore hominum non sunt cum hominibus, non flagellabantur.*"—Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*, Vol. I., p. 324.

Item, quod Evangelium sufficit ad regulandum in vita ista quemlibet Christianum; et quod omnes aliæ Sanctorum regulæ, sub quarum observantiis degunt diversi religiosi, non plus perfectionis addunt Evangelio, quam albedo parieti. A.D. 1377.

Item, quod Papa, nec aliquis alius prælatus Ecclesiæ, deberet habere carceres ad puniendum delinquentes; sed quilibet delinquens posset libere, quocunque vellet, transire, et facere quæ sibi placeret.

Hæc, et plura alia, ipse et ejus sequaces docuerunt, habentes dominos temporales fautores et assentatores suo nequam dogmati, quia tantam illis tribuerunt facultatem in ecclesiasticos debacchandi. Support given to him.

Dominus Papa, cum hæc audisset, damnavit has opiniones hæreticas, et alias, ad numerum viginti trium; dirigens bullas Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et Episcopo Londoniensi, ut, ipsarum auctoritate, dictum Johannem facerent arrestari, et eum super dictis Conclusionibus diligenter examinarent. Quo facto, præsente Domino Duce Lankastriæ, Archiepiscopus super hiis dicto Johanni Wyclef indixit silentium, prohibens ne de cætero tangeret istam materiam, aut per suos discipulos tractari permitteret. Qui parvo tempore siluerunt, sed tandem, contemplatione dominorum temporalium, easdem opiniones, et alias multo pejores, reassumpserunt, et latius quam prius disseminaverunt. Hii vocabantur a vulgo "Lollardi," incedentes nudis pedibus, vestiti pannis vilibus, scilicet, de russeto, ut per vitam pœnalem facilius incautos traherent ad sectam suam. The Pope takes cognizance of his Conclusions. Silence enjoined on him by the Archbishop of Canterbury.

Eo die quo præmissa gesta sunt, Londonienses, furia concitati, Ducem Lankastriæ perimere quæsierunt, propter quoddam verbum insolens emissum contra eorum Episcopum, et manerium suum de Saveye combussissent, nisi antedictus Episcopus eorum motibus occurrisset. The Londoners shew hostility to the Duke of Lancaster, and burn his hostel in the Saveye.

Dux ergo fugit ad Keningtone, ubi tunc Ricardus, filius Principis, morabatur, cui de illatis opprobriis flebiliter est conquestus. Hiis et aliis causis, Londonien- The Duke takes re-

A.D. 1377. ses effecti sunt Duci odibiles; in tantum, ut Majorem, aliasque personas publicas, suis dignitatibus vel officiis privari faceret, et eorum locis alios subrogari.

fuge with the Prince of Wales.

Eodem anno, captus est Johannes Menstrewurthe, miles proditiosus et transfuga, et, accepta sententia, tractus est, et suspensus, decollatus, et in quartas divisus.

The treason and punishment of John Menstrewurthe.

Rex Edwardus, in festo Sancti Georgii, apud Windeleshores, contulit Ricardo de Burdewyus, hæredi suo, ordinem militarem.

Knighthood conferred on Prince Richard.

Rex Edwardus, apud prædium suum de Schene, diem clausit extremum, mensis Junii vicesimo primo die, cum regnasset annis quinquaginta, mensibus quatuor, viginti octo diebus. Cujus corpus apud Westmonasterium tumulatur; qui, dum vixit, omnes reges orbis gloria et magnificentia superavit.

Death of King Edward III.

Ricardus Secundus.

Ricardus de Burdegalia, filius Edwardi Principis, filii Regis Edwardi, nuper defuncti, Londoniis, apud Westmonasterium, sexto-decimo die mensis Julii, magnifice coronatur, undecimo ætatis suæ anno. Qui, ante Coronationem suam, laudabili usus consilio, pacem fecit inter Dominum Ducem Lankastriæ et cives Londonienses; et Dominum Petrum de la Mare, militem, quem diximus missum in carcerem, instigatione Aliciæ Pereres, cum honore maximo liberavit. A.D. 1377. Succession of Richard of Bordeaux, son of Edward, Prince of Wales. Release of Peter de la Mare.

In festo Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, Gallici, cum quinquaginta navibus, applicantes, villam de Rye despoliaverunt et incenderunt. The French burn the town of Rye.

Rex Ricardus, in Coronatione sua, creavit quatuor novos Comites; Dominum Thomam de Wodestok, filium Regis Edwardi, juniorem, fecit Comitem Bukinghamiæ, Thomam Mounbray Notinghamiæ, Gychardum de Angolismo Huntingdoniæ, et Henricum Percy Northanhumbriæ. Four new Earls created, at the King's Coronation.

Per idem tempus, Scoti combusserunt villam de Rokisburgh. The Scots burn Rokisburgh.

Kalendis mensis Septembris, Gallici, galeis advecti, ceperunt insulam de [1] Wecta, præter castellum, quod Dominus Hugo Tyrel strenue custodivit. Franci vero, despoliata patria, ceperunt ab incolis mille marcas, ut salvarent ab incendiis domos suas. Non multo post, Gallici fecerunt insultum ad villam de Wynchelsee, sed per homines patriæ sunt repulsi. Combusserunt tamen eo tempore villam de Hastinggo. The French seize the Isle of Wight. Hastings assaulted, Wynchelsee burnt.

Eodem anno, Gallici ascenderunt in Southsexia, juxta villam de Rotingdene; quibus occurrit, armatus, Prior de Lewys, cum paucis, et captus est ab eis, una cum duobus militibus, scilicet, Johanne Fallislee et Thoma Cheyne, et quodam armigero dicto "Johanne Brokas." Peremptique sunt ex Anglicis pene centum, sed ex The Prior of Lewys taken prisoner by the French.

[1] *Werta* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1377. Gallicis multo plures. Gallici, cum suis captivis, ad navigium redierunt, sed valde concertatam victoriam reportaverunt.

Arde surrendered, by treason, to the French.

Hoc anno, Gallici ceperunt villam de Arde, mediante proditione Domini de Gummeny, [1] Alemanni, qui fuerat illic capitaneus constitutus.

Death of Pope Gregory XI., and succession of Pope Urban VI. An Antipope elected.

In diebus illis obiit Gregoriis Papa Undecimus, cui successit Urbanus Sextus; contra quem adversarius, Cardinalis Jubenensis, [2] insurrexit, qui per dissensionem factam in Collegio, electus est in Antipapam a quibusdam Cardinalibus sibi cohærentibus, postquam idem Jubenensis et Cardinales, sui complices, eidem Urbano fecissent obedientiam debitam et consuetam. Qui vocavit se Clementem, et secessit Avinoniam, cum suis complicibus, Cardinalibus antedictis; ubi et novos creavit sibimet Cardinales.

A fleet fitted out by John Philippot, citizen of London, A.D. 1378.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo octavo, Johannes Philippot, civis Londoniarum, classem exhibuit suis sumptibus, quæ defenderet tam mare quam terram ab incursibus piratarum. Quæ post paucos dies reversa est, captis quindecim navibus Hispanorum, [3] onustis multis mercimoniis quæ ceperant jure belli.

Cherburgh leased to the King of England by the King of Navarre.

Eo anno, Rex Navarriæ locavit villam de Cherburgh, in Normannia, Regi Angliæ, pro certa pecunia annua, eidem Regi Navarriæ persolvenda; ubi et applicare posset, cum vellet, et habere præsidium contra Francos.

Hugh Calverlee recovers the castle of Meerk.

Hugo Kalverlee, capitaneus Kalesiæ, cepit castellum de Meerk eo tempore, et destruxit.

Murder of Robert Haule, in Westminster Abbey.

Hoc anno, Robertus Haule, scutifer, fuit occisus in ecclesia Westmonasterii, tempore Majoris Missæ, per quosdam Regis satellites, quorum ductor extitit Alanus de Buxille, miles perante non ignobilis; sed hoc facto postea semper infamis.

Berwick Castle taken by the Scots,

Eodem anno, Scoti, ductore quodam Thoma Hog, ceperunt castellum de Berwico; sed nono die sequente

[1] *Alemannia* in MS.
[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[3] *omissis* in ed. Camden.

Comes Northumbriæ, qui illud obsederat, recuperavit, Scotis, qui illud ceperant, gladiis interemptis. A.D. 1378. and retaken.

Rex Franciæ petiit a magnatibus Minoris Britanniæ munitiones et castra, villasque muratas, eorundem sibi reddi; quibus hoc facere recusantibus, cepit ex eis plurimos, et occidit. Quidam, mortis pericula [1] devitantes, fugerunt. Hæc igitur fuit causa quare desiderabant dominum suum naturalem, Johannem Mountfort, Ducem Britanniæ, revocare. The French King oppresses the nobles of Bretagne.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo septuagesimo nono, Dominus Johannes de Harlestone, miles, custos villæ de Cherburghe, cum Domino [2] Galfrido Wurselee, gratiose devicit Gallicos, occisis centum viginti viris, et captis ad numerum supradictum. The French defeated by Sir John de Harlestone, A.D. 1379.

Eo tempore, Dominus Hugo Kalverlee et Dominus Thomas Percy, facti maris Admiralii, post captas plures naves hostium, et res martias bene gestas, toti Angliæ læta nova reportarunt, [2] de desiderio Britonum, revocare cupientium ducem suum, et odio quod contra Regem Franciæ satis juste conceperant, eos tractare nitentem, non ut dominus, sed potius ut tyrannus. Report of the desire of the Bretons to recall their Duke.

Ecclesia Westmonasteriensis recuperavit quædam privilegia quibus Rex eam privaverat parum ante, in Parliamento facto Londoniis isto anno. In quo Parliamento decretum est, ut communibus parceretur, et divites onus subsidii regii supportarent; videlicet, Duces solverent decem marcas, et Archiepiscopi eandem summam penderent; Comites, Episcopi, et Abbates, mitrati, tantum darent, non obstante quod iidem Abbates tenerentur solvere quadraginta denarios pro singulis capitibus monachorum sibimet subjectorum. Denique, nulla religiosa persona, vir nec fœmina, nullus Justiciarius, Vicecomes, miles, vel armiger, rector, nec vicarius, nec simplex capellanus, subterfugit hanc taxam, quin, secundum valorem pensionis annuæ, taxabatur. Certain privileges restored to the church of Westminster. Taxes levied upon the rich, by order of Parliament.

[1] *devitanter* in ed. Camden. [2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D, 1379. Treacherous conduct of certain Flemings, and their punishment.

Per hoc tempus, falsi Flandrenses, violatis treugis, ceperunt bargiam de Foway, quæ est in Cornubia, occidentes Anglicos qui fuerunt in ea, et bargiam demergentes. Quo perpetrato facinore, applicuerunt in Anglia, et mercimonia sua exposuere venditioni. Quidam garcio, qui in navem Flandriæ, dum pugnaverunt [1]partes, ascenderat, et in sentina se occuluerat, audiens Anglos colloquentes Flandris, repente prosiliens, exclamavit, fidem patriotarum flagitans. Qui, mox per Anglos eductus, detexit facinus, referens seriem rei gestæ. Capti sunt proinde Flandrenses, et carceribus mancipati.

The Duke of Bretagne returns to his country.

Eodem anno, Dominus Johannes Mountfort, Dux Britanniæ, rogatus a suis Baronibus, rediit ad patriam, sub ducatu nobilium militum, Domini [2]Hugonis de Kalverlee et Domini Thomæ Percy; ubi cum honore maximo susceptus est.

A Genoese merchant treacherously slain by the Londoners.

Eo tempore, Londonienses occiderunt nequiter quemdam Januensem mercatorem; eo quod promiserat se [3]species et aromata advecturum, et meliori foro quam Londonienses incolis venditurum.

Pestilence in the north of England, and incursions of the Scots.

Æstivali tempore, in partibus borealibus fuit maxima pestilentia, quantam vix antea ullus vidit. Scoti vero crudeles, ut afflictos affligerent, ingredientes patriam, super dolorem vulnerum eorum addiderunt, adeo debacchantes, ut pene patriam accolis vacuarent.

John Schakel is restored to liberty, on certain conditions.

Johannes Schakel, scutifer, quondam socius Roberti Hawlee, nuper occisi in choro, inter monachos Westmonasterii, Rege promittente quod daret eidem, pro habendo obside Comitis de Dena, quem ceperant in bello Hispanico, terras ad valorem centum marcarum annuarum, et in pecunia quingentas marcas, et de bonis regiis fundaret cantariam pro animabus eorum quos ministri ejus in ecclesia supradicta peremerant, de quinque sacerdotibus perpetuo duraturam, exhibuit obsidem, qui fuerat filius naturalis dicti Comitis de Dena, et jam palam, more valetti, sibi servierat, cunctis incognitus,

Singular fidelity shown by his prisoner.

---

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *Hugo* in ed. Camden.

[3] *speciosa aromata* in ed. Camden.

præterquam dicto Johanni, et sponte latuerat servans eidem fidem. Quamobrem ejus fidelitas ab omnibus est admirata, et Johannis prudens astutia multipliciter commendata. A.D. 1379

Hoc anno, dum Comes Flandriæ consuetudines a suis communibus novas exigit, dum contra libertates gentis suæ molitur, cum omni domo sua, totaque familia, et suo consilio universo, pellitur terra sua. The Count of Flanders expelled by his subjects.

Circa festum Sancti Nicholai, Dominus Johannes de Arundelia, frater Comitis Arundeliæ, missus in subsidium Ducis Britanniæ, cum multis nobilibus, militibus, et armigeris, est submersus. Ferunt familiam dicti Johannis, priusquam naves ascenderet, pauperes illius patriæ nimium molestasse, tollentes, raptorum more, eorum victualia, et violantes eorum filias et uxores. Propter quæ, communes eos insecuti sunt diris imprecationibus, quando naves fuerant ingressuri. Sir John de Arundel is drowned at sea. Excesses said to have been committed by his people.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo, in Parliamento facto Londoniis, concessa fuit Regi ab ecclesiasticis una decima, et a laicis una quinta-decima; conditione adjecta, quod, a Kalendis Martii usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis, anno revoluto, aliud Parliamentum non fieret. Sed ista conditio observata non fuit. Grant made by Parliament, A.D. 1380

In Octavis Paschæ, Walerandus, Comes Sancti Pauli, apud Wyndeleshores, duxit uxorem, Dominam Johannam de Curtenay. Quibus Rex contulit dominium de Byflet. The Count de Saint Pol marries the Lady Joan de Curtenay.

Eo tempore, Thomas, Abbas Sancti Albani, in placito contra Henricum, Episcopum Norwicensem, obtinuit ne Priores Cellarum Sancti Albani, in sua diœcesi existentium, per Episcopum fierent collectores decimarum, vel cujuslibet taxæ levandæ, in posterum, ad opus Regis. Priors of Cells of St. Alban's not to be collectors of the King's tenths.

Duellum commissum est, præsente Rege, inter Dominum Johannem Anneslee, militem, et Thomam [1] Katteringtone, scutiferum; milite eum appellante de proditiosa venditione castri Sancti Salvatoris, quod construxit Duel between Sir John Anneslee

[1] *Kathton* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1380. and Thomas Katerington.

olim, recolendæ memoriæ, Dominus Johannes [1] Chaundos in Gallia, juxta insulam de Constantyn; et miles armigerum superavit.

Aid sent from England for the Duke of Bretagne.

Hac æstate, Dominus Thomas de Wodestok, Comes Bukinghamiæ, Hugo Kalverlee, Robertus Knollis, Thomas Percy, Wyllelmus de Wyndeleshores, milites probatissimi, in auxilium Ducis Britanniæ missi sunt, cum manu forti. Qui cum recto cursu, propter galeas Regis Franciæ, Britanniam navigare nequirent, Kalesiam sunt trajecti. A quo [2] loco equitaverunt per gyrum Franciæ, patrias deprædantes et succendentes, ac populum trucidantes, donec ad confinia Britanniæ pervenissent; quæ tandem, Deo laudes, intraverunt, salvis hominibus et jumentis.

Death of Charles V., King of France.

Civil war thereupon.

Per idem tempus, Rex Karolus, qui Francorum regno incubuerat, concessit in fata, delegata regni et pupilli custodia minori fratri suo, Burgundionum Duci. Ob quam causam indignatus frater major Karoli, scilicet, Dux Andegaviæ, movit guerram contra juniorem fratrem, nostris, qui erant in Britannia, satis accommodatam et votivam.

The Scots ravage Cumberland and Westmoreland.

Eo tempore, Scoti ingressi sunt hostiliter Cumbriam et Westmerlandiam, et forestam de Ingelwode; et interfectis incolis, plura animalia abegerunt, et nundinas villæ de Penrethe deprædati sunt, multis interfectis, et captis plurimis, reliquisque fugatis. Comes vero Northanhumbriæ, dum parat Scotis vices rependere, per litteras regias prohibitorias impeditur.

The French take Winchelsee.

Quo tempore, galeæ Regis Franciæ villam cepere de Winchelsee, fugato Abbate de Bello, et quodam ejus capto commonacho, qui ad defensionem villæ concurrerant, infausta hora; villas quoque quasdam maritimas Franci impune eo tempore succenderunt.

Discord between the Count

Orta de novo simultate inter Comitem Flandriæ et populares, occidit idem Comes proditiose octo millia

[1] *Shandos* in ed. Camden. | [2] *loca* in ed. Camden.

hominum de villa de Ypres, qui ad tractandum de pace convenerant; et mox Gandavum, licet infructuose, cinxit obsidione; ubi dum Comes persedisset diu inutiliter, dissolvit obsidionem, pacem faciens cum eisdem, brevi tempore duraturam. A.D. 1380. of Flanders and his people.

Hoc anno, mense Novembri, Karolus, filius Karoli, Regis Franciæ, coronatur; parvulus admodum, undecim vel decem annorum. In cujus regni principio grandis vulgi crevit tumultuatio, pro taxis extortis sæpius ab eisdem; unde communes moti, Parisius proceres et Regis consiliarios fugere coegerunt ad tutiora loca civitatis. Januenses vero, quos reperire poterant, trucidaverunt; quia, prout asserebant, ipsi exhauserant inutiliter totam pecuniam regionis. Et revera grandis erat summa, quæ eis cotidie pendebatur. Nempe cum viginti quinque forent galeæ, receperunt cotidie septingentas quinquaginta libras. Et quidem longo tempore, id est, ab initio mensis Maii usque ad finem mensis Augusti. Coronation of Charles VI. of France. Commotion thereon.

Circa festum Sancti Martini, tempore Parliamenti tenti Northamptonæ, suspensus fuit R. Kyrkeby, interfector nobilis illius Januensis mercatoris, de quo superius fecimus mentionem. R. Kyrkeby hanged, for murder of a Genoese merchant.

In hoc Parliamento, exigitur gravis taxa, quæ fuit expost causa magnæ turbationis in terra. Quilibet nempe sacerdos religiosus compulsus est solvere dimidiam marcam, et tantum quælibet fœmina religiosa; sacerdotes vero sæculares tantum, et quilibet, tam conjugatus quam solutus, utriusque sexus, pro capite suo, duodecim denarios solvere cogebatur. A poll-tax exacted by Parliament.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo primo, circa festum Natalis Domini, Magister Thomas de Brantingham, Exoniensis Episcopus, depositus est ab officio Thesaurarii; et Dominus Robertus Hales, Magister Hospitalis Sancti Johannis, oneratur officio supradicto. Thomas, Bishop of Exeter, deprived of the office of Treasurer, A.D. 1381.

Eo tempore, ille damnatissimus Antichristi præambulus, Johannes Wyclef, hæreticus, reassumpsit ana- Doctrines promulgated by

A.D. 1381. John Wyclef.

thematizatas opiniones Berengarii; nitens astruere quod post consecrationem in Missa, a sacerdote factam, remaneret ibidem verus panis et vinum, sicut fuere per prius. Docuitque Christum ibidem assistere, sicut et ubique, sed tamen specialius; nec plus valere panem illum quam alium, nisi solum propter benedictionem a sacerdote datam: quinimmo si ibi esset corpus Christi, asseveravit in fractione se posse frangere collum Dei sui. Affirmavitque Christianos errare in veneratione illius Sacramenti; quod panem esse dicebat, et rem inanimatam; et potius venerandum esse bufonem, vel quodlibet animatum, quam illud; quia multo præstantiorem esse fatebatur rem animatam, quam quæ carebat anima.

A Cardinal arrives in England, to negotiate a marriage between the King and the sister of the King of Bóhemia.

Cardinalis per id temporis venit in Angliam, scilicet, Pyleus, præsbyter, tituli Sanctæ Praxedis, cum Duce Tassiliæ, missus a Rege Boemiæ, qui se vocavit Imperatorem, pro matrimonio inter sororem ejus et Regem Angliæ contrahendo. Hic, sub prætextu potestatis quam se dixit a Domino Papa suscepisse, multam collegit pecuniam; fecit enim mirabilia in terra ista. Et tandem recedens tantam summam secum abstulit, quantam, ut putabatur, nunquam Anglia in uno tallagio pendere consuevit.

His extortion.

An expedition in aid of the King of Portugal against the King of Spain.

Per idem tempus, missus est copiosus exercitus, in auxilium Regis Portingaliæ, contra Hispanos, qui eum multipliciter infestabant. Hujus exercitus fuere ductores, Dominus Edmundus, Comes Cantabrigiæ, Regis avunculus, Willelmus Beuchaump, Matthæus Gurnay, et Willelmus Butrewus, milites in rebus martiis satis experti. Qui a Rege Portingaliæ cum honore maximo sunt suscepti, et ibidem commorati per biennium, fines Portingaliæ ab Hispanorum incursibus viriliter defenderunt.

Peace is made, and the English return.

Tandem Reges Hispaniæ et Portingaliæ, ad concordiam redeuntes, Anglis navigia, cum expensis, dedere communiter, eorum reditum avidissime cupientes. Nam et Hispanis semper suspecta fuit eorum audacia, et Portingalensibus onerosa præsentia, quia quos tutandos

contra hostes venerant, viliori servitio deprimebant; non tantum eorum diripientes substantias, sed et uxores et filias opprimentes. Rediit ergo, cum suis, Comes Cantabrigiæ, reducens secum suam conjugem, quondam Petri, Regis Castillæ, filiam juniorem, et Edwardum filium, ex ea genitum per annos aliquot antequam Angliam exivisset. Quem quidem, tempore moræ quam traxit in Portingalia, filiæ Regis Portingaliæ matrimonio copulavit. A.D. 1381.

Mense Junio, rustici et communes homines manus infimæ insurrexerunt contra Regem et proceres, et peremerunt plurimos furiose; inter quos, Magistrum Simonem de Sudbyria, Metropolitanum totius Angliæ, regnique Cancellarium, et Dominum Robertum Hales, qui fuit Prior Sancti Johannis et regni Thesaurarius, extractos de Turri Londoniarum, crudeliter decollarunt, sub duce quodam Waltero Tylere, superbo prorsus, et ignobili, ganeone. Sed dicto Waltero Tylere interempto per manus Willelmi Walwurthe, tunc Majoris civitatis Londoniarum, et corruente ad pedes equi Regis, fastus vulgarium fuit subito imminutus. Cæterum quis nebulonum debacchationes in aliis locis explicare posset ad plenum? Certe nullum posse referre puto plenarie malitias et nequitias, homicidia et sacrilegia, crudelitates et scelera, quæ gesserunt. Quæ quia tractatum expetunt specialem, præsenti compendio non impono, remittens ad nostra Majora Chronica videre cupientes tragœdiam rusticam.

Rising of the rustics and lower classes, under Walter Tyler.

He is slain by William Walwurthe.

The "Great Chronicle," of Walsingham referred to.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo secundo, et Regis Ricardi quinto, peractis diebus Natalitiis, Rex duxit uxorem sororem Regis Boemiæ, "Annam" nomine: quæ etiam, per manus Cantuariensis Archiepiscopi, Willelmi de Courtenay, qui nuper de Episcopatu Londoniensi translatus fuerat ad Archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem, cum magna gloria coronatur.

Marriage of King Richard to Anne of Bohemia, A.D. 1382.

In Parliamento tento Londoniis, editum est Statutum contra insurrectores; videlicet, quod, non expectato brevi

Statute for the sum-

A.D. 1382. mary arrest of insurgents. Regis, fideles regni, ubicunque viderent rusticos, vel quoscunque communes, actitare suspecta conciliabula, per senos pariter, aut septenos, eos caperent, et in custodia detinerent.

Customs of wool granted, called the "Maltot." Concessæ sunt Regi per mercatores, in hoc Parliamento, lanarum consuetudines, quas vulgus vocat,—"*Le Maltot*," per quadriennium.

Sir Richard Scrop made Chancellor. In hoc etiam Parliamento, Ricardus Scrop, miles, fit regni Cancellarius, et Hugo de Segrave, miles, regni Thesaurarius est effectus.

John Wrawe, priest, an insurgent, is drawn and hanged. Circa festum Sancti Johannis ante Portam Latinam, in Parliamento facto Londoniis, Johannes Wraw, presbyter, et [1] ductor insurgentium apud Myldenhale et Bury, trahitur et suspenditur, communibus id petentibus magna voce.

An earthquake in England. Duodecimo Kalendas Junii, hora nona, factus est terræ-motus magnus in Anglia; quem secutus est mox et alius terræ-motus, nono Kalendas ejusdem, summo mane.

The King appoints the Bishop of London Chancellor, in place of Scrop. Hoc in tempore, Rex juvenis, juvenum consiliis adquiescens, privavit capitose Dominum Ricardum Scrop officio Cancellariæ, præficiens loco suo Magistrum Robertum Braybrok, Episcopum Londoniensem.

Grant made by Parliament, but conditionally on part of the Church. In Parliamento, facto Londoniis circa festum Sancti Michaelis, concessa fuit Regi per clerum una decima, et a laicis quinta-decima; conditionaliter tamen ex parte cleri, ut, videlicet, Rex manus apponat defensioni Ecclesiæ, et præstet auxilium ad compressionem hæreticorum Wyclefensium, qui jam sua prava doctrina pene infecerant totum regnum.

Ordinance as to the Eve of the Nativity of St. Mary. Hoc anno, ordinavit Urbanus Papa, ut Vigilia Nativitatis Sanctæ Mariæ pro Vigilia de cætero in omnibus habeatur, et in eadem jejunetur.

The Bishop of Norwich undertakes a Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo tertio, mense Martio, in Parliamento facto Londoniis, Dominus Henricus le Spencer, Episcopus Norwicensis, Cruce-signatur

[1] *author* in ed. Camden.

contra Schismaticos et Flandrenses, accepta inaudita potestate a Papa Urbano Sexto dispensandi in casibus Curiæ reservatis. Qui, circa medium mensis Maii, profectus in Flandriam, cum magna turba Cruce-signatorum, mox per insultum cepit villam de Graveningge, et, per deditionem, villas de Dunkirke, de Newport, de Burburgh, et de Poperingge. Octavo Kalendas Julii, cum quinque millibus Cruce-signatorum, vicit triginta millia Schismaticorum, juxta villam de Dunkirke, occisis septuaginta millibus Flandrensium, Gallorum, et Britonum, venientium contra eum, septem de Cruce-signatis tantummodo interemptis. Dehinc obsedit villam de Ypres, assistentibus sibi Gandavensibus; sed nil profecit, frustrato proposito proditione suorum.

A.D. 1383. Crusade against the Schismatics and the Flemings.

His successes in Flanders.

Rex Francus per idem tempus congregat centum [1] millia hominum. Statuens Cruce-signatos persequi, obsedit quosdam in villa de Burburgh, scilicet, Dominum— Beumund, Thomam Trivet, Willelmum Elmham, et Willelmum Faringdone, milites; qui deseruerunt Episcopum parum ante, volentem ingredi regnum Franciæ, et cum Rege Franco dimicare. Cumque Rex Francus, cum Gallis et Britonibus, plures inutiliter dedisset insultus ad villam præfatam, et semper recepisset suos vel mutilatos vel mortuos, tractare cœpit cum eis, ut villam redderent, et ipsi cum equis et armis, et cunctis servientibus, ac bonis omnibus quæ de villa asportare placeret, indemnes exirent, et libere pergerent quocunque vellent, sub conductu Regis [2] Franci, ita duntaxat, ut versus Angliam properarent. Quibus conditionibus consentientes, nostrates per omnia sic fecerunt. Consequenter, Rex Francus componit cum Episcopo, qui villam tenebat de [3] Graveningge, una cum Domino Hugone Kalverlee, ut deserat villam illam. Episcopus vero, cum vidisset nec Regem Angliæ, nec quemquam alium, repromissum ferre subsidium, juxta pactum inter eum et

The King of France collects a great force, and besieges Burburgh.

The Bishop comes to terms with the King of France, and returns to England.

[1] *millibus* in MS.
[2] *Francis* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Grauennig* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1383. Regem Francum initum, recedendo funditus villam evertit, et in Angliam est reversus.

Defeat of the French by the men of Portsmouth and Dartmouth.

Circa tempus illud, hostes armaverunt quinque vasa bellica, quæ "balingariæ" appellantur, ad impediendum nostratum transitum versus Episcopum Northwicensem in Flandriam, et manus militaris quæ mittenda fuit in Aquitanuiam, sub duce Britrigaldo de la Bret. Quibus obviaverunt homines de Portesmutha [1] et Dortesmutha, et, conflictu habito, peremerunt omnes Gallicos, qui in dictis fuere bargiis, præter novem viros.

The Scots take the Castle of Werk.

Scoti per hoc tempus ceperunt castellum de Werk super Twedam fluvium, et deprædatum ignibus succenderunt. Quamobrem missus est regalis exercitus ad illas partes, qui humiliaret superbiam eorundem.

Pope Urban flies to Naples.

Eodem anno, Urbanus Papa, cernens Romanorum fidem dubiam, fugit Neapolim, ad natale solum.

Victory of the English fleet.

Navigium Anglicanum, per idem tempus, reduxit octo naves maximas, quas ceperat jure belli; in quibus fuisse dicuntur mille et quingenta dolia boni vini.

Grant made by Parliament.

Circa festum Omnium Sanctorum, in Parliamento facto Londoniis, concessa fuit Regi per clerum medietas unius decimæ, et per laicos medietas quintæ-decimæ, pro guerra fovenda contra Scotos et piratas. Et Rex cepit in manu sua temporalia Northwicensis Episcopi, eo quod non obedivit suis litteris, revocantibus eum, cum paratus omnino fuisset, quasi cum suis omnibus, ad transfretandum. Milites vero qui cum eo fuerant in Flandria, quia inobedientes fuerant, prout dictum est, Episcopo, capti sunt, et carceribus mancipati; sed manucapti sunt per amicos fulvo metallo prægrandi, ut fama fuit.

The King seizes the temporalities of the Bishop of Norwich.

His disobedient officers are imprisoned.

A truce with France is effected by the Duke of Lancaster, A.D. 1384.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo quarto, post festum Natalis Domini, Dux Lankastriæ transfretavit in Franciam, et exinde treugas reportavit, ab hoc instanti festo Natalis usque ad Festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ continue duraturas.

[1] Repeated in MS.

Instante Quadragesimali tempore, Dominus Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, cum Domino Thoma, Comite Bukinghamiæ, fratre suo, et turba velut innumerabili bellatorum, profectus est in Scotiam. Sed Scoti se prudenter retraxere, donec magna pars nostratum hyemali frigore et inedia deperisset. Reversi sunt ergo dicti domini, frustrato proposito, post interitum hominum et equorum.

A.D. 1384. The Duke of Lancaster and Earl of Buckingham invade Scotland.

Post [1] quindenam Paschæ, in Parliamento tento Salisbyriæ, quidam Frater Carmelita accusavit Ducem Lankastriæ de imaginatione mortis Regis. Qui positus est in custodia Domini Johannis Holand, usque ad diem quo de dictis suis fidem facere debuisset. Sed nocte diem illum præcedente turpissima morte mulctatus est, multis suppliciis, et crudelibus, interfectus.

Charge made by a Carmelite Friar against the Duke of Lancaster. The Friar is put to death.

Dominus Willelmus la Zouche per prædictum fratrem delatus est, tanquam hujus accusationis adinventor; qui, [2] discinctus et discooperto capite, compulsus est ad hæc publice respondere. Negavit igitur objecta viriliter, sacramento firmans se nunquam vel audisse talia, vel cogitasse. Dimissus est igitur, factus non solum illius Ordinis, sed cunctorum Ordinum, fratribus inimicus.

Sir William le Zouche is accused of inventing the charge; but denies it.

In hoc Parliamento, clerus concessit Regi medietatem unius decimæ, et laici medietatem quintæ-decimæ.

Grant made by Parliament.

Vicesimo die mensis Augusti, id est, in festo Passionis Sancti Oswini, Regis et Martyris, dum, apud Novum Castrum super Tynam, quidam nauta lignum dolaret ad opus suæ naviculæ, repente vidit de dicto ligno ubertim sanguinem emanare; recordatusque diei festi, continuit manus ab opere. Sed ejus socius, parvipendens miraculum, accedit, et lignum ferit, ebullitque sanguis illico quacunque parte percutitur, velut cum pecus ferro transfigitur. Res defertur in cœtum clericorum, qui omnes, cum laicis, miraculum approbant. Lignum defertur Tynemutham, ubi prædicti Sancti corpus quiescit, in testimonium miraculi præmonstrati.

A miracle, on St. Oswin's Day, at Newcastle-on-Tyne.

[1] *quindena* in ed. Camden.

[2] *distinctus* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1384. The Scots obtain Berwick Castle.

Per idem tempus, Scoti ceperunt castrum de Berwico, commissum custodiæ Domini Henrici Percy, Comitis Northumbrorum. Qui in Parliamento tunc tento damnatus est publice pro amissione dicti castri, quanquam ad idem Parliamentum vocatus per breve regium, remansisse ad tutelam suæ patriæ maluisset. Comes vero cito post, Regis indulgentia, est honori pristino restitutus, et omnibus bonis suis. Qui mox, hujus facti infamiam repellere cupiens, obsedit dictum castellum, et illud de Scotorum manibus, pactione duorum millium marcarum, illis solvendarum, extorsit.

The Earl of Northumberland is condemned for neglect of the castle; but is pardoned, and recovers it.

Death of John Wyclef, A.D. 1385.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo quinto, in festo Passionis Sancti Thomæ, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopi, organum diabolicum, hostis Ecclesiæ, vulgi confusio, hæreticorum idolum, hypocritarum simulacrum, schismatis instaurator, mendacii promptuarium, adulationis sentina, Johannes Wyclef, percussus Dei judicio horribili, tactus est paralysi in corpore suo toto. Protelavit invisam vitam usque ad diem Sancti Silvestri, quo die malitiosum efflavit spiritum ad sedes luce carentes; et quidem satis juste die Sancti Thomæ percussus est, quem multotiens lingua blasphemaverat venenata; et die Sancti Silvestri temporali morte damnatus est, quem crebris invectionibus exasperaverat in dictis suis.

Alleged judgment inflicted on him, at his death.

Sir Edward Bourser takes command of the people of Ghent.

Eodem anno, Dominus Edwardus Bourser factus est capitaneus Gandavensium, ipsis petentibus a Rege Angliæ ducem aliquem Anglicanum. Qui secum traxit illuc armatam manum ex Anglia, fortem valde. [1] Cujus prudentiam in agendis, ipsi hostes sui, id est, Gallici, collaudabant.

Dissension between the King and the Duke of Lancaster.

Sub hoc tempore, gravis [2] dissensio inter Regem et Ducem Lankastriæ, instinctu quorundam juvenum, qui cum Rege nutriti fuerant, est exorta. Dux vero, præmunitus de præstructa malitia contra eum, se subtraxit,

[1] *Cujus . . . . collaudabant* omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *dissentio* in ed. Camden.

et castellum suum de Ponte Fracto subiit, quod armis et victualibus affatim communivit. Tandem laudabili interventu Dominæ Johannæ, Principissæ, matris Regis, pro tunc discordia est sopita. A.D. 1385. The dissension is, for a time, set at rest.

Hoc anno terræ-motus factus est ante medium noctis Inventionis Sanctæ Crucis ; et conjunctio planetarum Jovis et Saturni fuit mense Maio, quam mox commotio regnorum maxima est secuta. Earthquake; and conjunction of Jupiter and Saturn.

Gallici, duce quodam milite, Johanne de Vienna, venerunt in Scotiam, ut, simul juncti Scotis, regnum Angliæ facilius infestarent. A French army joins the Scots.

Eo tempore, Rex Francus apud Le Sclus contraxit exercitum, velut innumerabilem, ad ingrediendum Angliam, dum nostri in Scotia bello contra Scotos et Gallicos tenerentur. The King of France prepares for the invasion of England.

Rex Angliæ, per idem tempus, cum trecentis millibus hominum, et equorum totidem, Scotiam est ingressus ; sed hostibus non facientibus pugnæ copiam, nec apparere volentibus, reversus est, concremata patria, et illo nobili Monasterio Maylrosensi flammis dato. The King of England invades Scotland, and returns.

In progressu versus Scotiam, Dominus Johannes Holand, frater Regis, occidit nequiter filium Comitis Staffordiæ, et hæredem, non procul ab Eboraco ; ob quam causam perdidit idem Johannes terras suas. Ipse tamen, mortem metuens, Beverlacense cepit asylum. Mater vero Regis et ejusdem Johannis, dum preces incassum multiplicat pro Johanne, contristata decumbit, et post quatuor aut quinque dies sæculo valefecit. Sir John Holand slays the son of the Earl of Stafford. The mother of the King, and of Sir John Holand, dies from grief.

Quinto-decimo Kalendas Augusti, fuit alius terræmotus, circa vigiliam secundam noctis. Another earthquake.

Rex Francus cum jam paratus fuisset ad invadendum regnum Angliæ, Gandavenses in Flandria ceperunt villam de La Dam ; in qua repererunt prædam maximam, et victualia, sed præcipue vini copiam, scilicet, mille dolia et octingenta. Quod audiens Rex Francus, suspenso suo transitu in Angliam, cuncta quæ suæ profectioni præparaverat contraxit, ad obsidendum villam de Capture of Dam by the people of Ghent.

A.D. 1385. La Dam. Qui villam ceperant, cernentes se impares virtuti regiæ, nocte quadam, relicta villæ custodia senibus et mulieribus, confringentes dolia, et vastantes victualia, latenter recesserunt, et salvi Gandavum pervenerunt. Tandem Rex Francus mane villam intrat, quam ut invenit vacuam, doluit se fore delusum.

The King of France besieges the place. He enters, and finds it empty.

Eo tempore, Rex Portingaliæ, adjutorio Anglicorum, vicit Hispanos, et misit Regi Angliæ sex galeas, ut essent illi solatio contra hostes.

The King of Portugal defeats the Spaniards.

Circa festum Exaltationis Sanctæ Crucis, dum classis Regis Franci reverteretur e Flandria, dispersa fuit tempestate gravissima, et partim allisa, partim confracta ; pars vero magna Kalesiam, et in terras Regis Angliæ, est appulsa. Sicque contigit, ut caperentur de nautis stipendiariis per Kalesienses ducenti et viginti sex, præter naufragos quingentos et amplius, ex Gallicis et Normannis, qui, demersis ratibus, in manus Kalesiensium devenerunt.

The French fleet suffers from a tempest.

Several vessels are taken by the people of Calais.

Eodem tempore, Rex Portugaliæ, intoxicatus haustu letifero, dolo Reginæ, vitam finivit, et frater ejus, Magister Hospitalis, miles egregius, levatur in regem, licet invitus, et multa, cum Anglorum adjutorio, contra Hispanos prospera bella gerit.

The King of Portugal is poisoned by the Queen.

Circa festum Sancti Martini, in Parliamento Londoniis, clerus concessit Regi decimam, et quintam-decimam populus laicalis.

Grant made by Parliament.

In hoc Parliamento, Robertus de Veer, infausta hora, Comes [1] Oxoniæ, creatus est Marchio Dubliniæ in Hibernia, et Thomas de Wodestoke creatus est Dux Gloverniæ, et frater ejus, Edmundus, Comes Cantabrigiæ, factus est Dux Eboraci. Michael atte Pool, vir plus aptus commerciis quam gestis martiis, pro tunc regni Cancellarius, factus est Comes Southfolchiæ, concessis sibi pro tanto nomine de bursa regia annuis mille marcis.

New titles conferred by the King.

In hoc Parliamento, Rex restituit sua temporalia Episcopo Norwicensi.

His temporalities restored to the Bishop of Norwich.

[1] *Oxonii* in ed. Camden.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo sexto, Rex Armeniæ venit in Angliam, tractaturus de pace inter regna Franciæ et Angliæ, sed sine commodo utriusque. Nihilominus sibimet cessit prospere, quia præter mille libras quibus honoratus fuit a Rege in navi aurea, litteras patentes accepit a Rege, de mille libris annuatim sibi persolvendis. Fuerat nempe, ut asseruit, expulsus regno suo per Tartaros; qua occasione a Regibus Christianis extorsit plura donaria, ut felicior foret illi fuga sua in aliena patria, quam pacificum dominium in propria. A.D. 1386. Visit of the King of Armenia to England.

Gandavenses, leves et varii, non expectato suffragio, quod Rex Angliæ, non sine magnis sumptibus, illis præparaverat, Regi Franciæ manus dederunt, manifeste monstrantes se nescire uni amico vel domino fidem diu reservare. The people of Ghent submit to the King of France.

Sub hiis diebus, audientes Hispani quod Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, proponeret regnum Castillæ vendicare, et ad hoc negotium necessaria præparasset, missis legatis Regi Franco, suum deprecantur auxilium. Qui mox misit armatos illuc, ex Gallicis et Britonibus, ad numerum sexcentorum. Qui illuc quidem pervenientes feliciter, sed infeliciter se gerentes, dum nimis confidunt in virtute propria, prædas insolenter agentes, et incendia, in regno Portingaliæ, obvios habent Anglos inopinato, cum Portingalensibus. Cum quibus congredientes, dissipati, prostrati, capti sunt, vel occisi. Quo facto, luctus et desperatio crevit Hispanis, ira et indignatio Gallis et Britonibus; qui post hæc domi infortunia cognoverunt. The King of France sends aid to Spain, against the Duke of Lancaster; but the French are defeated.

Eodem anno, Dominus Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, circa festum Paschæ, profectus est cum exercitu in Hispaniam, quæ sibi, jure conjugis suæ, Dominæ Constantiæ, senioris filiæ et hæredis Domini Petronis, nuper Regis Castillæ et Legionis, debebatur. Cujus profectioni, quia Hispani fuere schismatici, favor Papalis accessit, indulgens peccatorum veniam secum proficiscentibus, et ejus profectioni quicquam conferentibus de bonis suis. The Duke sets out for Spain.

A.D. 1386. The Duke relieves Brest, and reaches Spain.

Igitur dum navigat versus Hispaniam, castellum de Brest, in Britannia, obsidione Gallorum liberat, non sine suorum maximo detrimento, quia multos valentes amisit ibidem. Deinde flante vento secundo, appulsus est in portum Geromiæ, qui est primus introitus in Hispaniam, salva classe sua.

A force sent to Calais, under Sir Henry Percy and others.

Percy called "Hatspore," from his alacrity in attacking the Scots.

He returns to England.

Hac æstate, rumores increbuere de proposito Regis Franciæ, volentis Kalesiam obsidere. Quapropter missus est ad loci tuitionem Dominus Henricus Percy, junior, cum electis bellatoribus; quem Scoti ironice "Hatspore" cognominaverunt, id est, "Calcar calidum," sive "fervens," propter ejus animositatem. Qui mox ut pervenit Kalesiam, super Morinos et Pykardos fecit expeditiones, prædas egit, et actus exercuit laudabiliter militares. Sed cum nunciatum fuisset ei, Regem Francum nolle Kalesiam obsidere, sed vel potius transferre bellum in Angliam, revertitur festinanter, gaudens sibi occurrere quod volebat, bellum, scilicet, Gallicorum.

Alarm of the Londoners, on hearing rumours of the contemplated invasion.

Londonienses, eo tempore, Regis Franci metuentes adventum, cuncta meticulose faciunt, acsi mox foret capienda civitas. Currunt ad muros [1] anheli, contiguas domos dilacerant, deponunt, destruunt, divortiaque requirunt; sicque turbantur, sic sollicitantur, velut si ipsos hostes aspicerent ante fores, dantes ignaviæ suæ manifestum omnibus experimentum.

Certain vessels are seized, as belonging to the enemy.

Interea familiares Regis Angliæ ceperunt quinque naves magnas, et sex [2] carricas refertas Januensium multis bonis. Sed Januenses peroptime scientes ubi sibi succurri deberet, Michaelem atte Pool adeunt, regni Cancellarium, qui et ipse mercator erat, et mercatoris filius, et ob hoc multis notus institoribus, et ejus suffragia petierunt. Qui confestim jussit de thesauro [3] regio eorum damna resarciri, hostesque sævissimos cum pace pecuniaque dimitti. Qui mox ut solverunt naves a littore, cursum in Flandriam direxerunt. Quo

Reparation is made to the Genoese owners of them.

[1] *haneli* in MS.

[2] *tarritas* in ed. Camden, and, apparently, in MS.

[3] *Regi* in ed. Camden.

cum pervenissent, quosdam ex Anglicis peregrinis, qui versus Romanam Curiam properabant, interemerunt, licet eos in vasa sua pacifice admisissent, pacto naulo. A.D. 1386. Nefarious conduct of the Genoese.

Sub eisdem diebus, nostrates ceperunt duas magnas naves Regis Franci, in quibus et pars muri lignei, quam idem Rex parari fecerat ad erigendum in Anglia; et magister totius fabricæ, qui fuit Anglicus natione, interceptus est, cum machinis ad petras jaciendas, et gunnis, et multo pulvere pro eisdem. Erecta est proinde illa pars muri lignei apud Sandwych, et factum est ut quem contra nos erexisse hostes paraverant, nos ereximus contra hostes. Capture of part of a wooden wall, made for protection of the army of the King of France.

Circa festum Sancti Michaelis, convenerunt armati et [1] arcitenentes de toto regno ad Parliamentum tenendum Londoniis, ut parati forent ad resistendum Regi Francorum, qui dicebatur venturus, cum quindecim Ducibus, viginti sex Comitibus, ac ducentis proceribus, et bellatoribus centum mille, necnon et mille navibus, ad regnum Angliæ destruendum. Sed obsistente vento, immo, frustrante conatus ejus Deo, totus ille apparatus confusus, turbatus, et cassatus, fuit. Nempe per totum tempus quod fluxit inter Kalendas Augusti et Vigiliam Omnium Sanctorum, aura nunquam flavit illis accommoda. In ipsa vero Vigilia, surgente vento, prout putabatur, opportuno, dissolvere rates, et cœperunt [2] versus Angliam navigare. Sed mox, illis maris alta tenentibus, facti sunt obvii venti contrarii, qui naves omnes compulerunt retrocedere, et eas tanta violentia impulerunt et alliserunt, ut plures ex illis in introitu portus de Sclusa confringerentur. Hac occasione, et Anglia metu liberata est, et Rex Franciæ regressus ad sua. Parliament at London. Preparations against the French. The French are dispersed by tempests. They return home.

In hoc Parliamento, Dominus Robertus de Veer, olim Comes Oxoniæ, sed in ultimo Parliamento Marchio factus Dubliniæ, Regis munere creatus Dux Hiberniæ, submur- The Earl of Oxford created Duke of Ireland.

[1] *architenentes* in MS. | [2] *usque* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1386. murantibus cæteris regni nobilibus, et indigne ferentibus tantæ promotionis appetitum in [1]viro, dudum tam mediocri, quem non plus aliis commendabant virtutum dotes.

The Chancellor is found guilty of treason, and deprived of office.

Cancellarius regni, Michael atte Pool, per milites Parliamentales convictus est de quibusdam proditionis articulis, tam contra Regem quam regnum perpetratis. Ob quas causas, licet Regi multum displiceret, ab officio Cancellariæ dejicitur, et dignus morte judicio Parliamenti decernitur. Rex tamen, non multo post, ejus amoris [2]intuitu, annullavit quicquid in Parliamento statutum fuerat contra ipsum. Ipse vero Michael suos accusatores meditatus est, invitatos ad cœnam Londoniis, clam, una cum Duce Gloverniæ, trucidasse. Cui facinori non solum fautor fuerat Nicholaus Brambre, ut dicebatur, sed auctor maximus; miles mercenarius, et qui fuerat anno transacto Major Londoniarum. Sed laudabili constantia Nicholai Exstone, Majoris anni præsentis, qui libere fatebatur se non consensurum tanto sceleri, facinus est omissum; et palam factum est verbum istud omnibus habitantibus in regione vicina.

The King takes him back into favour.

A plot is formed against the lives of his accusers; but they escape.

A grant made by Parliament.

In fine Parliamenti, clerus concessit Regi mediam partem unius decimæ, et mediam partem quintæ-decimæ populus laicalis; conditionaliter tamen, ut procerum judicio dicta pecunia pro regni commodo expenderetur. Quam pecuniam recepit Comes Arundeliæ, profecturus ad mare.

Money raised by the King, for support of the Duke of Ireland's claims.

Duci Hiberniæ provisum fuit, ad Regis instantiam, ut hæredes Karoli de Bloys, qui quondam vendicavit Ducatum Britanniæ, pro triginta millibus marcarum venderentur Gallicis; ut, hac suffultus pecunia, dominium quod Rex sibi donaverat in Hibernia posset conquirere; adjecta conditione, ut citra Pascha proximum in Hiberniam transfretaret.

Michael atte Pool is retained, with some

Finito Parliamento, et proceribus regressis ad propria, Rex revocavit Michaelem atte Pool, jamdudum damnatum per proceres, et secum detinuit, cum Duce Hiberniæ

[1] *Veero* in ed. Camden. | [2] *intinctu* in ed. Camden.

et Archiepiscopo Eboracensi, Domino Alexandro Nevyle; qui Regis animum pro posse concitaverunt contra proceres, et præcipue Dominum Thomam Ducem Gloverniæ, et Ricardum Comitem Arundeliæ, et ut acta hujus Parliamenti ante omnia annullaret. Hic primo succrevit odium Regi contra proceres, et extunc nunquam eos, ut fertur, coluit, nisi ficte. Nihilominus, dejecto Michaele atte Pool de officio Cancellariæ, subrogatus est Dominus Thomas Arundel, Episcopus Eliensis. Depositus est insuper Dominus Johannes Fordam, Episcopus Dunelmensis, de officio Thesaurarii, et frater Johannes Gilbert, de Ordine Prædicatorum, fit Thesaurarius, qui tunc fuit Episcopus Herefordensis.

A.D. 1386. others, in the King's favour.

The Bishop of Ely appointed Chancellor.

A new Treasurer is also appointed.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo septimo, circa principium mensis Martii, Ricardus, Comes Arundeliæ, et Thomas, Comes Notinghamiæ, profecti sunt ad mare, ut oceanum Britannicum custodirent ab incursibus hostium. Et factum est, ut, in Vigilia Annunciationis Dominicæ, committerent bellum cum magna classe Franciæ, Flandriæ, Normanniæ, et Hispaniæ; cessitque nostris victoria, captis centum navibus, vel eo amplius, in quibus continebantur vini decem et novem millia doliorum, quæ, diversis regni destinata provinciis, inæstimabiliter incolis profuerunt.

The Earls of Arundel and Nottingham take command of the English forces, and defeat a combined fleet, A.D. 1387.

Comites, hiis ita gestis, castellum de Brest, in Britannia, adierunt; ubi duas munitiones ligneas, erectas et refertas bellatoribus præelectis e Francia et Britannia, cum difficultate magna, ceperunt. Quarum alteram incenderunt, alteram, impositis castellanis de Brest, munierunt, quia illis necessaria videbatur. Et sic hostes in eodem loco, sub temporis parvi spatio, geminata damna sensere, primo per Ducem Lankastriæ, petentem Hispanias, secundo per Comites memoratos, qui, ibidem compositis bene rebus, in Angliam prospere sunt reversi.

They destroy the French fortifications at Brest.

Robertus de Veer, Dux Hiberniæ, Michael atte Pool, Comes Soutfolchiæ, Simon de Burle, et Ricardus Stury, depravantes apud Regem acta Comitum, dixe-

Bad influence of the royal favourites upon the King.

A.D. 1387. runt eos nihil dignum laude gessisse, quippe qui nonnisi mercatores despoliaverunt, quorum fructuosius multo fuisset amorem servasse patriæ, quam odium inexorabile concitasse. Sed hii nimirum milites potius erant Veneris quam Bellonæ, plus potentes in thalamo quam in campo, plus valentes lingua quam lancea; utpote qui ad dicendum vigiles, ad agendum acta martia somnolenti. Hii, circa Regem conversantes, nihil quod deceret tantum Principem informare curabant; non dicimus tantum armorum usum, sed nec ea quidèm quæ maxime decent heroes, videlicet, venationem, aucupationem, aut hiis similia, quibus in pace regius honor crescit.

Walter Disse, a Carmelite Friar, is entrusted with the sale of certain privileges by the Pope.

Eo tempore, quidam frater, de Ordine Carmelitarum, dictus "Walterus Disse," nuper confessor Ducis Lankastriæ, accepit a Papa plura privilegia, illis impertienda præcipue, qui Duci, profecto in Hispanias, quicquam de bonis suis conferrent. Inter quæ, potestatem accepit creandi capellanos Papæ; et inter cæteros qui satis care comparaverunt hanc libertatem, quidam Frater de secta Augustinensium comparavit eam. Qui exinde sumens cornua, Lollardis adhæsit; hortatu quorum, plura prædicavit enormia contra fratres suos. Milites caputiati, qui defendebant ubique pro viribus Wyclefenses, hunc in suis prædicationibus animaverunt, extulerunt, et indicibiliter laudaverunt. Qui ideo "caputiati" vocabantur, quia nulli, nec ad Sacramentum altaris quidem, caputia deponebant. Horum præcipui fuere Willelmus Nevyle, Lodowicus Clifford, Johannes Clanbow, Ricardus Stury, Willelmus Latimer, et, vesanior omnium, Johannes de Monte Acuto; qui tantam incurrit amentiam, ut imagines, quas apud prædium suum de [1] Schenelee habebat in, capella sua, deponi faceret, et abscondi. Fuerunt et alii multi milites de fide male sentientes, sed infamia majori famosior Laurentius de Sancto Martino, de Comitatu Sarum, qui in Vigilia Paschæ

An Austin Friar is created a Papal Chaplain, and becomes a Lollard.

Principal supporters of the Lollards.

Sacrilegious conduct of Laurence

[1] Shenley, in Hertfordshire.

corpus Dominicum, in ore acceptum, evomuit, et, manu tenens illud, ad propriam domum detulit, sacerdote sequente et obsecrante ne tantam injuriam faceret Sacramento, sed illud restitueret, vel more tractaret et sumeret Christiano. Sed ille, excluso presbytero, adhibitis ostreis, divisit hostiam; cujus partem cum ostreis, partem cum cepis, partem cum vino, deglutivit, asserens quemlibet panem domus suæ tanti fore valoris, quanti fuit ille, quem sic, cum ostreis, absumpsisset. A.D. 1387. de Saint Martin.

Robertus de Veer, Dux Hiberniæ, repudiavit uxorem nobilem, genitam de illustris Regis Edwardi filia, Ysabella, et cepit aliam, quæ cum Regina venerat de Bocmia, ut fertur, cujusdam sellarii filiam, sat ignobilem, nomine "Lancecronam." Ipse autem Rex favebat sibi in omnibus, nolens eum in aliquo contristari. Proceres tamen indignabantur, et præcipue Dux Gloverniæ, mulieris avunculus, qui quandoque statuit ulcisci neptis injurias; quod Ducem Hiberniæ non latebat. Quamobrem et sibi cavit prout potuit, et Ducem Gloverniæ perimere cogitavit. Robert de Veer repudiates his wife, and marries a woman of low station. The King still shews his favour. Indignation of the Duke of Gloucester thereat.

Jam Pascha transierat, jam tempus omne præterierat, quo Dux Hiberniæ transfretasset, juxta condictum, et adhuc in Anglia moram traxit. Sed ne propter hanc causam tumultus fieret inter proceres, Rex ipse, velut deducturus eum ad navem, cum eo in Walliam est profectus; non tamen dimissurus eum, sed detenturus ibidem, ut illic semoti, prout fertur, quietius deliberare possent, qualiter proceres, eorum votis obviantes, dolo tenerent, et occiderent. Instigabant ad hæc Regem jugiter Michael atte Pool, Robertus Tresilian, Justiciarius, Alexander Nevyle, Eboracensis Archiepiscopus, et plures alii, qui, suæ pelli timentes, non minus quam Dux Hiberniæ, in necem procerum conspirabant. Igitur emenso in Wallia longi temporis spatio, Rex, velut profectio Ducis in Hiberniam data fuisset oblivioni cunctis in Anglia, redit cum Duce et suis traditoribus, ad castellum de Notingham, tractaturus ibi fina- The King retires into Wales, with the Duke of Ireland. Plot against the lives of the Duke of Gloucester and his supporters.

A.D. 1387. liter de morte procerum prædictorum. Illuc igitur venire fecit multos de Londoniensibus, quos novit contingentes ad utrumlibet, et regni Vicecomites, et Justiciarios universos. Londonienses accersivit, quia plures eorum nuper de proditione in Regem convicti, sed tamen ejus gratiam consecuti, ut ipsi gratiam Regi pro gratia gratis rependerent, et dominos indictarent de criminibus, quæ contra eos dicti proditores imaginati fuerant, dum cum Rege egerant in remotis. Vicecomites convenire fecit, ut sciret quantam potentiam manus bellicæ contrahere possent contra proceres; et ut ipsi nullum militem de pago vel schyra eligi ad Parliamentum permitterent, nisi quem Rex, et ejus Consilium, delegisset. Sed ad hæc Vicecomites responderunt, quod communes favebant dominis, nec esse in potestate illorum ad hanc causam exercitum contrahendi. Et de militibus ad Parliamentum eligendis dixerunt, communes velle tenere consuetudines usitatas, quæ volunt ut a communibus milites eligantur. Justiciarii sunt vocati, ut ipsi decernerent indictamenta fore legalia, et eisdem apponerent sigilla sua. Quod et tunc completum est, Roberto Tresylian, Justiciario, et Johanne Blake, juris apprenticio, facinus introducentibus prælocutum.

Certain parties summoned in support of the King.

Answer of the Sheriffs to the King's enquiries.

Vicesimo quinto die mensis Augusti, convenientibus apud castellum de Notingham, Roberto Tresylian, Capitali Justiciario, et Roberto Belknap. Capitali Justiciario de Communi Banco, et Johanne de Holt, Rogero de Stilthorp, Willelmo de Burgh, militibus, Justiciariis, et sociis Roberti Belknap, supradicti, requisivit ab eis Rex, in fide et ligeantia, ut ad istas quæstiones fideliter responderent.—

Certain questions put to the Justiciars by the King, at Nottingham: with the answers.

Primo, an illa nova Statutum et ordinatio, atque commissio, facta et edita in Parliamento ultimo, derogant regali prærogativæ dicti Regis? Dederat nempe Rex Duci Gloverniæ et Comiti Arundeliæ, et quibusdam aliis, commissionem, licet invitus, ad inquirendum, audiendum, et judicandum, de quorundam defectibus,

et præcipue Michaelis atte Pool. Ad quam responde- A.D. 1387.
runt, quod derogant, eo quod fuerant contra voluntatem Regis.

Secundo, illi qui Statutum *et cætera*, fieri procurarunt, qualiter sunt puniendi? Responderunt, quod pœna capitali, nisi Rex eis voluerit indulgere.

Tertio, qualiter sunt puniendi, qui Regem excitaverant ad consentiendum præmissis? Responderunt, quod nisi Rex eis gratiam fecerit, sunt pœna capitali merito puniendi.

Quarto, qualem pœnam merentur, qui compulerunt Regem ad consentiendum confectioni dictorum Statuti, *et cætera*. Responderunt, quod sunt, ut proditores, merito puniendi.

Quinto, quomodo sunt illi etiam puniendi, qui impediverunt Regem, quo minus poterat exercere quæ ad regaliam suam pertinuerunt, remittendo pœnas sive debita quævis? Responderunt, quod sunt ut proditores merito puniendi.

Sexto, quæsitum fuit, an postquam, Parliamento congregato, negotia regni, et causa congregationis Parliamenti, de mandato Regis exposita et declarata, et communes articuli limitati per Regem, super quibus Domini et Communes in eodem Parliamento procedere debeant, si Domini et Communes super aliis articulis velint omnino procedere, et nullatenus super articulis limitatis per Regem, donec super articulis per eosdem expressatis fuerit per ipsum Regem primo responsum, non obstante quod eis fuerat per Regem injunctum in contrarium, nunquid Rex in ea parte debeat habere regimen Parliamenti, et de facto regere effectum, quod super limitatis articulis per Regem primo debeant procedere, vel ante Domini et Communes primo debeant habere responsum a Rege super articulis per eosdem expressatis, antequam ulterius procedatur? Responderunt, quod si quis hujusmodi regimen Regis impediri fecerit, tanquam proditor est puniendus.

A.D. 1387. Septimo, nunquid Rex, quandocunque sibi placuerit, potest dissolvere Parliamentum, et suis Dominis et Communibus præcipere quod abinde recedant, an non? Responderunt, quod potest; et si quis extunc contra voluntatem Regis procedat, ut in Parliamento, tanquam proditor est puniendus.

Octavo, ex quo Rex potest, quandocunque sibi placuerit, removere quoscunque officiarios et Justiciarios suos, et ipsos pro delictis justiciare et punire, nunquid Domini et Communes possunt, absque voluntate Regis, officiarios et Justiciarios ipsos impetere super delictis eorum in Parliamento, an non? Responderunt, quod non possunt; et si quis contrarium fecerit, est, ut proditor, merito puniendus.

Nono, qualiter ille est puniendus, qui in Parliamento monebat, quod mitteretur pro Statuto per quod Rex Edwardus Karnervan erat abjudicatus in Parliamento; per cujus Statuti inspectionem, nova Statutum, ordinatio, et commissio, supradicta, fuerunt in Parliamento concepta? Responderunt, quod tam ille qui sic monebat, quam alius qui, prætextu hujus monitionis, Statutum illud portavit ad Parliamentum, sunt, ut proditores criminosi, merito puniendi.

Decimo, an judicium illud in ultimo Parliamento, celebrato apud Westmonasterium, redditum contra Comitem Southfolchiæ, Michaelem atte Pool, fuit erroneum et revocabile, an non? Responderunt unanimiter, quod si illud judicium fuisset modo reddendum, illi Justiciarii modo reddere nollent; quia videtur eis, quod judicium illud revocabile est, tanquam erroneum, in omni sui parte.

The Justiciars set their seals to certain contemplated indictments.

"In quorum omnium testimonium, Justiciarii præ-
"dicti, et Johannes Loktone, serviens Domini Regis
"ad legem, sigilla sua præsentibus apposuerunt, *et*
"*cætera.*"

Forces are raised, in

Expeditis ad vota indictamentis in dictos proceres, et plures alios nobiles, Rex et Dux Hiberniæ, missis

nunciis, conduxerunt multos qui cum illis starent, si oporteret, contra dominos in die belli. A.D. 1387. support of the King.

Interea rumor hujus facti pervenit ad proceres, et eos magna replevit mœstitia, eo quod, nullius culpæ conscii, tanto Regis odio stringerentur. Unde in primis, Regis patruus, Dux Gloverniæ, ut Regis animum mitigaret, coram Episcopo Londoniensi, et multis aliis regni nobilibus, juramentum, tactis Sacrosanctis, edidit, se nunquam aliquid in Regis læsionem machinatum fuisse; excepto quod Ducem Hiberniæ, quem Rex dilexit, lætis oculis non respexit, qui non solum suam, sed Regis, consanguineam dehonestasset. The Duke of Glocester endeavours to assuage the King's anger.

Cum audisset ista Rex, et jam pacificatum se monstrasset, Michael atte Pool, timens si Rex et Dux concordarentur, sua affutura dispendia, cœpit Duci detrahere, et commovere Regem ad pristinam indignationem. Cui Londoniensis Episcopus, qui tunc se mediatorem exhibuerat inter Regem et Ducem, dixit: — "Sileas," ait, "O Michael; non enim decet te, qui damnatus es, " os de cætero aperire. Est enim nisi indulgentia Re- " gis, quod tu vivis." Ad hæc Rex illico tantum offendebatur, ut Episcopum juberet abscedere, cum rancore; qui, recedens, retulit quæ audierat. Michael atte Pool is rebuked by the Bishop of London. The King rebukes the Bishop.

[1] Hinc excrevit odium et indignatio ex utraque parte, et Dux [2]enarrat Comitibus Arundeliæ, Warwici, et Derby, quorsum res tenderet: palam facit consilium, prædicit periculum, quod omnes in communi tangebat. Qui mox, collectis exercitibus, statuerunt Regem convenire super præmissis. E contra, Rex, agentibus proditoribus, excogitat qualiter dominos præfatos tolleret, antequam, junctis viribus, convenirent. Et primo misit ad castellum de Reygate Comitem Northumbriæ, ut Comitem Arundeliæ arrestaret; sed ipse, cernens Comitem valde commotum, et circa eum manum armatam validam, infecto negotio, reversus est. Comes autem, post ejus regressum, noctanter equitavit cum exercitu, donec per- Increased rancour of both parties. The Duke of Glocester's supporters resolve to call the King to account. The Earl of Northumberland is sent to arrest the Earl of Arundel,

[1] *Hic* in ed. Camden. | [2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1388. but hesitates to do so.

venit ad sylvam de Haringey; ubi reperit Ducem Gloverniæ, Comitem Warwyci, cum magna vi militiæ, congregatos.

The Earl of Arundel escapes.

Sed tandem, intercurrentibus pacis mediatoribus, ad id deductum est negotium ut domini apud Westmonasterium coram Rege venirent, exposituri sua gravamina, et justum judicium percepturi. Petierunt ergo,

The Lords arrange to hold a personal interview with the King.

ut proditores suos, et totius regni, quos Rex secum detinebat, jugiter amoveret. Proditores appellabant Robertum de Veer, Ducem Hiberniæ, Alexandrum Nevyle Archiepiscopum Eboraci, Michaelem atte Pool Comitem Southfolchiæ, Robertum Tresilian, falsum Justiciarium, et Nicholaum Brambre, falsum militem Londoniensem.

They charge certain parties with treason.

Ad firmandum hanc appellationem projecerunt chirothecas suas, jurantes se eam duello probaturos, si Regi placeret. Rex autem respondit hoc modo non debere fieri, sed omnia differri ad Parliamentum proximum, in quo fieret justitia utrique parti; et recepit utriusque partis personas in protectionem suam, ut nulla pars interea noceret alteri, nec exercitum medio tempore congregaret.

The Duke of Ireland raises forces in Cheshire and Wales.

Recedentibus dominis cum hoc responso, non est visum eis jam tunc disjungi, quod eis expost magnæ sapientiæ loco fuit. Nam, de conniventia Regis, interim Dux Hiberniæ in partibus Cestriæ et Walliæ magnam turbam conflaverat; quod cognoscentes domini,

His forces are routed, and he takes to flight.

ejus motibus festinanter occurrunt, et de Cestrensibus quosdam perimunt, quosdam captivant, nonnullos despoliant armis et equis, et vacuos domum remittunt. Dux Hiberniæ, cernens imminere sibi periculum, fuga sibi consuluit; et dominorum æmuli, hiis auditis, fecere similiter. Proceres, proinde reversi, properavere Londonias, ubi Rex celebraturus fuit in Turri dies Natalitios; quam et victualibus instauraverat, si oporteret, pro resistentia facienda. Habebant autem proceres exercitum valde fortem, quadraginta millium bellatorum.

The nobles proceed,

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo octavo, in crastino Natalis Domini, proceres convenere Londoniis,

cum exercitu, et in campis, ubi a Turri videri poterant, consederunt. Rex autem, hæc sciens, dissimulabat, quasi multitudinem parvipendens, dixitque suis;—"Si- "nantur," inquit, "hic jacere cum turba, donec expen- "derint bona sua; et tunc demum vacui revertentur, "et ego postea, loquar judicium cum eisdem." Cum verbum istud fuisset nunciatum proceribus, juraverunt se non recessuros, donec cum eo, ore ad os, colloquium obtinerent. Tandem, post altercationes varias, in Turri cum eo colloquium habuerunt; ubi coram eo de conspiratione contra eos facta conquesti sunt. Cumque Rex inficiari nequiret objecta, præ confusione lacrymatus est; sicque confusum proceres ea vice liquerunt, condicentes ut veniret in crastino ad Westmonasterium, auditurus plura, et de regni negotiis tractaturus. Quod ea vice concessit; sed nocte sequente, instinctu susurronum, propositum mutare decrevit; quod proceres non latebat. Renunciari fecerunt ergo sibi, ut pacta teneret, veniens ad Westmonasterium, aut pro certo sciret eos electuros alium sibi Regem, qui vellet obtemperare consiliis dominorum. Quo telo Rex percussus, mane ad Westmonasterium remigavit. Cumque tractare cœpissent proceres, inter cætera dixerunt Regi, quod, pro honore suo, regnique commodo, oporteret proditores, susurrones, adulatores, et maleficos detractores, et inutiles, de suo palatio eliminari. Censuerunt igitur arcendos a Curia Alexandrum, Archiepiscopum Eboracensem, et alios plures, quam spirituales quam temporales dominos, una cum nonnullis clericis de capella sua, militibusque multis, cum dominabus plurimis, quæ non tantum fuerunt inutiles, sed infames. Arrestati sunt autem Simon Burlee, Willelmus Elmsham, Johannes Beuchaump de Holt, Regis Senescallus, Johannes Salisbyri, Thomas Trivet, Jacobus Berneres, Nicholaus [1] Dagwurth, et Nicholaus Brambre, milites; clerici vero,

A.D. 1388.

with their troops, to London.

The King affects to treat their movements with indifference.

Determination shown by the Lords; who state their complaints to the King.

He promises to meet them at Westminster, but changes his design.

He finally meets them, and they state their demands.

Nobles banished from the Court, at their demand.

Certain persons arrested.

[1] *Dagwoorth* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1388. Ricardus Clifforde, Johannes Lincolne, Ricardus Mitforde, et Nicholaus [1] Clarke, Decanus Capellæ Regis; cum quibus Johannes Blake, juris apprenticius, arrestatus est, et omnes, tam milites quam clerici, diversis carceribus sunt transmissi.

Parliament at London.

Post festum Purificationis, convenit ad Parliamentum Londoniis universa regni nobilitas, ad quod proceres cum exercitu convenerunt. Captus est tum, infausto sidere, Robertus Tresilian, quondam Justiciarius; qui mox tractus ad furcas, suspensus est, judicio dominorum, quibus Rex commissionem dederat malefactores puniendi. Consequenter, processum est contra Nicholaum Brambre, qui consimili damnationi subjacuit. Deinde Johannes de Saresbyri, et Jacobus Berneres, de proditione notati, tracti sunt, et suspensi. Post quos, Johannes Beuchaump de Holt, Regis Senescallus, de infidelitate convictus, ejusdem Parliamenti decreto, tractus est, et suspensus. Suspensus est et Johannes Blake, juris apprenticius, qui in Consilio apud Notingham contra dominos multa machinatus est. Novissime decollatus est Dominus Simon Burlee, homo intolerabiliter arrogans, oppressor pauperum, osor Ecclesiæ, mœchus et adulter, quia concluserat castellum Doveriæ, cujus Custos erat, Gallicis vendidisse, et quia pessimus consultor [2] fuerat semper Regi. Damnati sunt præterea exilio, dicti Parliamenti decreto, Justiciarii, Robertus Belknap, Johannes Holt, Rogerus Fulthorp, et Willelmus de Burgo. Hiis ita gestis, Rex præstitit juramentum de stando et parendo regimini procerum; et consimile juramentum exactum est a tota regni communitate.

Punishments inflicted on the adversaries of the Lords.

Victories gained at sea by the Earl of Arundel.

Post festum Pentecostes, Comes Arundeliæ, Ricardus, factus Admiralius, ingressus mare, octoginta naves hostium vel cepit, vel incendit, vel certe demersit, victis hostibus in eisdem. Insulam de Baas, deprædatam, dat ignibus; insulas insuper de Us, et de Ree, de Lemustre

[1] *Clake* in MS.

[2] *fuit* in ed. Camden.

et de Rochele, de Olum, et de Olorum, (a quibus leges marinæ nomen habent,) invadit, capit, et [1] despoliat, de quibusdam redemptiones accipiens, quasdam vero flamma devastans. Gallos, cum Britonibus, qui resistentiam paraverant, devincens, convertit in fugam; peractoque cum felicitate negotio, ad Angliam remeavit. A.D. 1388.

Per idem tempus, Gallici, de pace fastidiosi, ingrediuntur hostiliter terras Ducis de Gelre, pro eo maxime, quod Anglis erat amicus. Qui, mox occurrens illis, prostravit magnam multitudinem eorundem, docuitque Gallos experimento præsenti, quam periculosum sit excitare canem dormientem. The French invade the territory of the Duke de Geldres.

Eodem anno, Scoti, quietis nescii, agebant in Anglia cædes et rapinas, fixeruntque tentoria prope Novum Castrum super Tynam. Quibus occurrit Dominus Henricus Percy, junior, cum fratre suo, Radulpho; contigitque Henricum in primo congressu perimere Willelmum Douglas, Ducem Scotorum. Sed mox, vertente faciem fallaci fortuna, idem Henricus, cum fratre, captus est a Comite de Dunbarre, multis ex Anglicis interemptis. Scoti tamen, etsi illis cessit victoria, damnum tamen acceperunt irrecuperabile de suorum valentissimorum strage, facta per Henricum. Qui nimirum, post hanc pugnam humiliati, fugerunt, non audentes adventum aliorum procerum expectare. Et sic unius, id est, Henrici, probitate, licet captus esset, regnum Angliæ tam metu bellico, quam Scotis, extitit vacuatum. The Scots invade England. Sir Henry Percy and his brother are taken prisoners. The Scots retire from England.

Post festum Nativitatis Beatæ Mariæ, factum est Parliamentum Cantabrigiæ, in quo fuerunt edita plura Statuta, quæ in [2] Majoribus Chronicis videri possunt. A Parliament at Cambridge.

In hoc Parliamento, clerus concessit Regi decimam, et laici quintam-decimam; et Dominus Johannes Holand, frater Regis ex parte matris, creatus est Comes Sir John Holland made Earl of Huntingdon.

[1] *dispoliat* in ed. Camden.

[2] An allusion to MS. Bibl. Reg. 13 E. ix., written at St. Alban's under Thomas Walsingham's supervision. See the Introductions to the two Volumes of his *Hist. Anglicana* in the present Series.

A.D. 1388. Huntingdoniæ, et Dominus Thomas Trivet, equo lapsus, mortem incurrit.

Episcopal changes, and promotions.

Papa transtulit Dominum Thomam Arundel, Episcopum Eliensem, ad Archiepiscopatum Eboracensem, Alexandro Nevyle, proditore, translato ad Episcopatum Sancti Andreæ in Scotia, Johanne Fordham de Dunelmensi in Eliensem, Magistro Waltero Skirlow de Bathoniensi in Dunelmensem, Magistro Radulpho [1] Ergom de Saresbyriensi in Bathoniensem; et Johanni Waltham, Clerico de Privato Sigillo, providit de Episcopatu Sarum.

The King asserts, before his Council, his right to govern for himself, A.D. 1389.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo nono, Rex inopinate, collectis optimatibus in domo consilii, inquisivit quot annos ætatis habebat; responsumque fuit, quod viginti jam plene peregisset. "Ergo," inquit, "plenæ sum ætatis ad gubernandum domum et fami-"liam, necnon et regnum meum. Injustum est, ut "mea conditio sit deterior quam conditio minimi in "regno meo. Cur mihi negatur quod cuilibet alteri "gradus inferioris conceditur, de consuetudine et regni "jure?" Cumque Barones, attoniti, responderent, nihil juris si[bi] debere subtrahi, ita ait;—"Nostis quod "diu regulatus fuerim per tutores, nec mihi licuit sine "illorum arbitrio quicquam facere; et ideo nunc illos "[2] amoveo, et, ut hæres ætatis legitimæ, regni regimen "apprehendo." Jussitque statim Cancellario resignare sigillum; quod mox Dominus Eboracensis Regi dedit in manus: qui post pusillum illud commisit Episcopo Wintoniensi, Willelmo Wycham. Deinde constituit novos officiarios, utens in omnibus propriis arbitrio et voluntate; Ducemque Gloverniæ et Comitem Warwici dimovit a Consilio, adhibitis aliis qui suis oculis placuerunt.

William Wycham is appointed Chancellor.

The Duke of Gloucester and Earl of Warwick are dismissed from the Council.

The Duke is maligned, but

Interea detractores tantum Regem dementaverunt, ut crederet Ducem Gloverniæ collegisse militiam contra eum. Tunc Rex repente, accersito Duce, hujus turba-

[1] *Ergon* in MS. | [2] *ammoveo* in MS.

tionis ignaro, scrutatus rei veritatem, comperit famam mendaceın, et erubuit. Aderant tunc præsentes, qui mendacium istud finxerant; contra quos cum Dux loqui parasset, et eorum perfidiam voluisset publice declarasse, rogavit Rex, sub obtestatione suæ dilectionis, ne procederet in materia supradicta. Adquievit ergo Dux roganti, eo facilius, quo bene novit jam Regi suam innocentiam declaratam. A.D. 1389. exculpates himself.

Circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, firmatæ sunt treugæ inter regna Angliæ et Franciæ triennales; ad quas servandas,—quod mirum est,—Reges præstitere personalia juramenta. A truce of three years made with France.

Eo tempore, Scoti combusserunt villam de Tynemutha. Post paucos autem dies, Francis pro Scotis spondentibus, Scoti inclusi fuere in treugis captis inter Anglos et Francos, nulla restitutione facta pro damnis et injuriis illatis nostratibus per eosdem. The Scots are included in the treaty.

Dominus Papa, Urbanus Sextus, considerans vires hominum et ætates imminutas, constituit Annum Gratiæ, id est, Jubilæum, fieri anno sequenti, qui inciperet a Natali insequente, et expost in æternum semper, revolutis triginta tribus annis, cunctis Christicolis novaretur; judicans annos plenitudinis ætatis Christi [1]mysticos idoneos ad renovandum sæculis Jubilæum. The Pope appoints a Jubilee, to be held at certain intervals.

Michael atte Pool diem supremum clausit Parisius hac æstate. Death of Michael atte Pool.

Lollardi, sequaces Johannis Wyclef, in tantam sunt evecti temeritatem, ut eorum presbyteri, more pontificum, novos crearent presbyteros, asserentes quemlibet sacerdotem tantam habere potestatem conferendi Sacramenta Ecclesiastica, quantam Papa. Hanc autem perfidiam in Sarum Diœcesi practizarunt. Qui vero taliter ordinati sunt, sibi cuncta licere putantes, Missas celebrare, et Sacramenta conferre, minime timuerunt. Audierunt et cognoverunt hæc regni pontifices; sed The Lollard priests claim the power of ordination.

[1] *misticos* in MS.

A.D. 1389. abierunt, alius in villam suam, alius ad negotiationem suam; solus Northwicensis,

"[1] Temporibus malis ausus est esse bonus."

Death of Pope Urban VI.

Hoc anno, mense Octobrio, Papa Urbanus Sextus valefecit sæculo: cui successit Cardinalis Neapolitanus, qui "Bonifacius Nonus" dictus est.

The Duke of Lancaster returns to England.

Early misfortunes in his Spanish campaign.

Mense Novembrio rediit in Angliam Dominus Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, qui in transmarinis partibus moram traxerat triennalem. Qui in Hispania primo passus infortunia, postremo ad summam usque felicitatem, Deo miserante, pervenit. Nam suus adversarius, Rex Castillæ, non viribus humanis territus, nullius, nisi Dei solius, timore coactus, (quippe qui, inter suos securus habitans, et vidit nostratum miserias, atque cognovit penurias,) obtulit se primo de forma pacis cum Duce tractaturum. Sicque factum est, Domino disponente pro Duce miraculose negotium, ut affinitas inter eos successoria firmaretur, et Dux acciperet pro tunc in arrham multa millia librarum a Rege Castillæ, et obsides pro solvendis annuatim, ad vitam Ducis et Ducissæ, decem millia librarum.

Death of John, Earl of Pembroke, at a tournament, A.D. 1390.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo, dum juvenis Comes Penbrochiæ, Johannes de Hastinggo, [2] exerceret hastiludia in Domini Regis Curia, percussus est inguine a quodam milite, sibi occurrente, vocato "Johanne de "Sancto Johanne." Qua læsione obiit præmature, penultimo die mensis Decembris.

Parliament at London; enactments therein.

Post festum Sancti Hillarii, in Parliamento, tento Londoniis, statutum fuit, ut nullus transfretaret ad impetrandum provisiones a Papa, sub pœna carceris. Item, concessi fuere Domino Regi quadraginta solidi de quolibet sacco lanæ, et de libra sex denarii.

John, Duke of Lancaster, created Duke of Aquitaine.

In hoc Parliamento, Dominus Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, factus est Dux Aquitanniæ, per virgam et pileum, sibi præbitas manu Regis; et Edwardus, filius Ducis Eboraci, factus est Comes de Ruthland.

[1] Adapted from Martial, *Epigr*, xii. 6. | [2] *exercet* in MS.

Eo tempore, Dominus Adam, Cardinalis Anglicus, qui dedecorose depositus fuerat per Urbanum Papam, restituitur suo gradui per Bonifacium, successorem. Ferunt quod cum Urbanus tyrannizare meditaretur, hunc maxime, propter profunditatem sensus, pertimuerit; et ideo, ne conatus sui impedirentur per eum, hunc satis injuste comprehendit et torsit, et reclusit in carcere quamdiu vixit. Quod factum in morte sua, fertur, satis doluit, publice pœnitendo, et protestando hunc reum nullius criminis extitisse. A.D. 1390. Adam, the English Cardinal, is restored to his rank by Pope Boniface IX.

Hujus Cardinalis petitione, declaratum fuit per Papam Bonifacium, quod Bullæ de Indulgentiis Plenariis, concessæ quibuslibet in extremis, tantum valeant obtinentibus in ea confessione quæ mortem immediate præcedit, Qui licet multotiens, propter diversa pericula, confiteantur, si convaluerint, non tamen usque ad extremum articulum sortiuntur effectum. Declaration as to Bulls of Plenary Indulgence

Hoc anno, Dominus Henricus, Comes de Derby, profectus in Le Pruys, in regno de Lettow bella gerit; civitatem dictam "Willis," ad cujus castellum Rex de Lettow, dictus "Skyrgalle," confugerat, primus occupavit, vexillo suo super muros erecto. In ea civitate perempta sunt ad quatuor millia plebanorum, vel saltem in captivitatem ducta, fratre Regis de Poleyn ibi perempto, qui fuit gravis adversarius Christianis. Marescallus Prusiæ, et quidam rex, vocatus "Wytot," delectati probitate tanti juvenis, et animositate, multum honoris impenderunt illi. Exploits of Henry, Earl of Derby, in Lithuania.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo primo, Rex Franciæ, missis in Angliam nunciis, obtulit pacem Regi desiderabilem, diutissime concupitam; et, ut pax stabilior, conditio firmior, tractatus honoratior, haberetur, petiit regis nostri colloquium personale, quod prope Kalesiam fieri postulavit. Propositions for peace made by the King of France, A.D. 1391.

Rex autem Angliæ, quia sublimis et honorabilis ibi apparere voluit, misit per singulas regni Abbathias pro equis nobilibus, quales Regem decuit insidere. Misit etiam ad eadem loca pro magnis summis pecuniæ sibi mutuo concedendis, ne pacis negotium per religiosos King Richard demands horses and money of the Abbeys

A.D. 1391. impediri videretur, si quod Rex ab eis petiit negaretur. Nec minus pepercit civitatibus et burgis regni, quin a singulis peteret in hoc negotium magnas summas.

The English are recalled from the Court of Rome.

Sub eisdem diebus, de consensu Regis et Consilii, fuit proclamatio facta Londoniis, ut omnes beneficiati, existentes in Romana Curia, redirent in Angliam citra festum Sancti Nicholai, sub pœna privationis omnium beneficiorum suorum, et nondum beneficiati [1] redirent per idem tempus. Anglici autem, audito tanto tonitruo in remotis, metuentes ictum, deserta Curia, confugiunt ad natale solum. Ipse vero Papa, tanto fragore turbatus, mittit festinanter nuncium, qui causas exploret harum rerum omnium, simul et Statuti Parliamentalis de Provisoribus, nuper editi, ut præfertur. Qui cum venisset, hortatus est Regem, rogans et requirens, ex parte Papæ, quod Statuta illa tolli, et de Capitularibus faciat aboleri, et maxime Statuta "Quare impedit" et "Præmu-" nire facias," et hiis similia; et si statuentes non tollant, *et cætera*, salvo honore Ecclesiæ, et animarum salute, non potest illa dissimulare.

The Pope sends a Nuncio to England, who expostulates against certain Statutes.

Favourable answer given by the King.

Rex Angliæ, ut filius obedientiæ, petitionibus Papæ parere decrevit, hiis præcipue quæ expediebant, vel licebant; jussitque Papali nuncio, ut expectaret Parliamentum futurum, in quo, de communi consilio, sibi responsa darentur.

The Duke of Glouces-ter is compelled, by adverse weather, to return to England.

Eo anno, Dominus Thomas, Dux Gloverniæ, dum in Le Pruys vellet cursum dirigere cum armata manu, agitatus adversa fortuna, et procellosis Neptuni turbinibus, a proposito impeditur. Nempe post Daciam, post Norwagiam, post Scoticam barbariem, non sine metu mortis, transcursam, tandem ejectus est in Northumbriam, provenitque Tynemutham.

Parliament at London.

Circa festum Omnium Sanctorum, in Parliamento facto Londoniis, tractatum fuit de Papali negotio, quoad Statutum nuper editum contra Provisores. Et quamvis Rex et Dux Lankastriæ viderentur Papæ deferre, mili-

[1] *cederent* in ed. Camden.

tes tamen Parliamentales nullo modo consentire voluerunt, ut liceret Romipetis impune ibi adquirere beneficia, sicut prius. Sed ne viderentur nullum honorem Papæ vel Regi detulisse, hoc toleraverunt, ut, per Regis gratiam, liceret talibus impetrare beneficia usque ad Parliamentum futurum. Clerus concessit Regi dimidiam decimam, et laici [1] dimidiam quintam-decimam : quam summam percepturus erat Dux Lancastriæ, profecturus in Franciam, et cum Rege Franco personaliter de pacis negotio tractaturus. Item, per clerum et laicos conceduntur Regi una plena decima, et plena quinta-decima, sub conditione, videlicet, quod ipso anno super Scotos hostiliter equitaret. A.D. 1391

Slight concession made to the Pope's demands.

Grants made by Parliament.

Eodem anno, Dominus Henricus Percy revocatur a Kalesia, et Custos Marchiæ Scotiæ constituitur; et Dominus Thomas Mounbray, Comes de Notingham, fit Custos Kalesiæ.

The Earl of Northumberland made Warden of the March of Scotland.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo secundo, in die Natalis Domini, delphinus, de mari veniens, lusit Londoniis in Thamisia, perveniens usque ad Pontem, præsagiens fortasse tempestates, quæ mox, infra hebdomadam, sequebantur, [2] vel certe perturbationem civium, quam cito postea per iram regiam incurrerunt.

A dolphin seen at London Bridge, on Christmas Day, A.D. 1392.

Hoc anno, Dux Lankastriæ transfretavit, cum Episcopo Dunelmensi, habuitque Ambianis cum Rege Franco colloquium personale; quem Rex, susceptum magnifice, ultra quam credi potuit, honoravit. Tandem finito tractatu, reportavit Dux unius anni treugas, ut per idem tempus deliberaret regni communitas, utrum expediret paci finali manus dare, potius quam negotia dubia belli tractare. Ob hanc causam convenerunt ad consilium, apud Staunford, omnes regni proceres, et de cunctis civitatibus et burgis nobiliores, ad audiendum et discernendum de tractatu Ducis habito Ambianis. Sed tamen nil profuit ea vice tanta collectio, præterquam quod susceperunt treugas, per unius anni circulum duraturas;

The Duke of Lancaster crosses over to France to treat of peace, and returns with a truce for one year.

Deliberation of the peers and commons, at Staunford.

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *ut certe* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1392. ad quas servandas uterque Rex corporale præsttiti juramentum.

A loan to the King is refused by the citizens of London.

Eo tempore, cum Londonienses Regi petenti mutuo mille libras procaciter prius negassent, Rex, offensus, fecit citari Majorem et Vicecomites, cum Aldermannis, ad consilium Notinghamiæ, et ditioribus civitatis; et Majorem quidem, cum potentioribus, arrestatum, propter diversos defectus illis impositos, variis custodiis destinavit; revocavitque privilegia, libertates eorum [1] annullavit, et leges quas condiderant abrogavit. Decrevitque, de consensu Consilii, ut de cætero Londonienses Majorem non eligerent, vel haberent, sed Rex de suis militibus provideret aliquem qui rector eorum foret, et "Gardianus Londoniæ" vocaretur. Constituitque Dominum Edwardum [2] Dalingrigge Gardianum. Qui quia dicebatur nimis favere civibus, illico submovetur, et Dominus Baldewinus de Radingtona constituitur loco suo.

Anger manifested by him thereat.

The citizens resolve to submit themselves to the King's mercy.

Igitur cum Londonienses humiliati fuissent in iniquitatibus suis, vidit Dominus Rex tribulationem eorum, et propitius fuit peccatis eorum, mediante Duce Gloverniæ, venitque Londonias, ad consolandum eos. A quibus tunc cum tanta gloria, tanta pompa, tanta varietate diversorum apparatuum, est susceptus, quanta decuisset Cæsarem triumphantem: tantis donis honoratus est ab eis, quod eorum pretium nequivit faciliter æstimari. Sicque recuperare meruerunt libertates veteres, quæ saltem civitati possent esse fulcimento, non extraneis detrimento. Indultumque fuit eisdem, ut liceret eis Majorem eligere, sicut prius.

The King of France is attacked with madness.

Hoc anno, Rex Franciæ, maleficiatus, incurrit amentiam, et phreneticus est effectus; nec unquam postea potuit ullis artibus plenæ restitui sanitati.

The former Duke of Ireland dies in poverty at Louvain.

Robertus de Veer, quondam Dux Hiberniæ, in Lovania diem clausit extremum, in mentis angaria, rerumque penuria; qui equidem juvenis aptus fuerat ad cuncta probitatis officia, si non defuisset ei in pueritia disciplina.

[1] *annihilavit* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Daluirigg* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1393. Grant made in Parliament at Winchester.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo tertio, in Parliamento facto Wyntoniæ post Natale, concessa fuere Regi per clerum dimidia decima, et medietas quintædecimæ, per communes, pro sumptibus Ducum Lankastriæ et Gloverniæ, qui fuerunt profecturi in Franciam ad tractandum de pacis negotio inter regna.

The King's Bench and Chancery removed from London to York.

Hoc anno, Bancus Regius et Cancellaria translata fuerunt de Londoniis Eboracum. Sed non longo tempore duravit hæc novitas, quia qua facilitate transportabantur Eboracum, eadem levitate Londonias reportabantur.

Aubrey de Vere made Earl of Oxford.

Isto quoque anno, Dominus Albredus de Veer Comes Oxonii factus est.

New appointments made.

Dominus Thomas Percy, frater Comitis Northumbriæ, factus est Senescallus Regis, et Dominus Willelmus Scrop Sub-camerarius Regis efficitur, vir quo de facili nemo posset nequior aut crudelior inveniri.

William Scrop buys the Isle of Man.

Sub hoc tempore, dictus Willelmus Scrop emit de Domino Willelmo de Monte Acuto, Comite Sarum, insulam Euboniæ, cum corona. Nempe dominus hujus insulæ "Rex" vocatur, cui etiam fas est corona aurea coronari. Hæc insula vocatur in vulgari "Insula de "Man," quæ inter Angliam et Hiberniam situatur.

Unsuccessful attempt to conclude peace with France.

Duces Lankastriæ et Gloverniæ transfretaverunt in Franciam, pro fine faciendo treugarum prælocutarum, vel pacis finalis inter regna. Sed tamen nondum finis, quia, Rege Franco iterum infirmato, non potuit finis esse.

Henry Percy, the younger, Warden of Bordeaux.

Dominus Henricus Percy, junior, constitutus est Custos Burdegaliæ.

Great inundations at Bury and Newmarket.

Aquarum inundatio apud Bury tanta ruit, ut aream adimpleret ecclesiæ, et apud Novum Forum parietes domorum dirueret, et viris illic, ac mulieribus, pene periculum dimersionis inferret, in Octobrio.

Cherbourgh restored to the King of Navarre.

Isto anno, dominium villæ de Sherburghe revolutum est ad pristinum possessorem, Regem Navarriæ; quod invadiatum fuerat Regi Angliæ, certis annis, pro viginti et duobus millibus marcarum, de Rege Angliæ mutuo susceptarum.

A.D. 1394. Amurath of Turkey besieges Constantinople.

Anno millesimo tricentesimo nonagesimo quarto, Morettus de Turkia vallavit obsidione civitatem Constantinopolitanam, sed probitate civium est repulsus.

Parliament at London. Conditional grant made.

In Octavis Sancti Hillarii factum fuit Parliamentum Londoniis; in quo petitum fuit Regi subsidium, volenti in Hiberniam proficisci. Cui clerus concessit plenam decimam, si transfretaret; si vero non laboraret, medietatem tantum decimæ concessit eidem.

A truce of four years concluded with France.

Circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, [1] venit a Francia Dux Lankastriæ, reportans quatuor annorum treugas; in quibus et Scoti comprehendi debebant, si vellent subjici Regi Anglorum, ut de jure solebant.

Death of Constance, Duchess of Lancaster, and of the Countess of Derby.

Agente Duce in Galliis, obiit in Anglia conjux sua, Domina Constantia, Domini Petri, quondam Regis Castillæ, filia, mulier supra fœminas innocens et devota. Obiit etiam Comitissa de Derby, uxor Domini Henrici Comitis, de Derby, filii Ducis Lancastriæ supradicti.

Death of Queen Anne; the Earl of Arundel assaulted by the King at her funeral, in Westminster Abbey.

Anna quoque Regina diem clausit; quæ apud Westmonasterium est sepulta. Cujus exequiæ quanto celebriores fuerunt in expensis, tanto notabiliores infamiis; quia Rex ipse polluit locum sanguine Comitis Arundeliæ, in principio officii funeralis. Causa iræ regiæ fuit, quia Comes non interfuit processioni et deportationi corporis Reginæ, ab ecclesia Sancti Pauli usque Westmonasterium deportati, et quia cum tardius advenisset, primus omnium petiit a Rege licentiam recedendi, propter certas causas quæ eum urgebant.

Death of the Duchess of York.

Eodem anno, obiit Domina Ysabella, Ducissa de [2] Euerwyk, soror Ducissæ Lancastriæ, mulier mollis et delicata, sed in fine, prout fertur, satis pœnitens et conversa. Hæc humata est, jussu Regis, apud Langelee, prædium suum, inter Fratres.

The Irish in England are ordered to return to

Circa Gulam Augusti, jussi sunt omnes Hibernici, per totum regnum, evacuare, citra festum Nativitatis Sanctæ Mariæ, præstolaturi in Hibernia Regis adventum, sub pœna capitali. Dicebatur quod in Angliam,

[1] *venerunt* in MS.

[2] *Cuerwike* in ed. Camden.

lucri gratia, tanta multitudo Hibernicorum venerat, ut illa regio viris et mulieribus vacuaretur. Unde contigit quod mere Hibernici, Anglicorum Hibernicorum æmuli, partem insulæ quæ paruerat Regi Angliæ vastaverunt, nemine resistente. [1] Etenim vero cum quondam Rex Angliæ illustris, Edwardus, Tertius a Conquæstu, illic posuisset Bankum suum, atque judices, cum Scakkario, percepit inde, ad regalem fiscum, annuatim triginta millia librarum. Modo, propter absentiam personarum, et hostium potentiam irrefrenatam, nihil inde venit, sed Rex per annos singulos de suo marsupio terræ defensoribus solvit triginta millia marcarum, ad sui dedecus, et fisci gravissimum detrimentum.

A.D. 1394. their own country.

Falling off of the revenues from Ireland.

Circa festum Nativitatis Beatæ Mariæ, Rex Angliæ transfretavit in Hiberniam ; quem sequebantur Dux Gloverniæ, Comites Marchiæ, Nottinghamiæ, et de Ruthland. Hibernienses nimirum, de tanto apparatu territi, palam non audentes occurrere, clandestinis irruptionibus frequenter Regis exercitum fatigarunt. Coacti tamen sunt se Regi submittere plures magnates, quos "reges" vocat plebs rustica regionis ; quorum quosdam Rex secum detinuit, ne nova aliqua molirentur. Morabatur autem Rex in Hibernia usque ad Pascha.

The King crosses over to Ireland.

The rebellious Irish are compelled to submit.

Per id temporis, accesserunt ad eum ab Anglia Archiepiscopus Eboracensis et Episcopus Londoniensis, cum aliis nunciis, missis per clerum, rogantes ut quantocius repatriare dignaretur, ad succurrendum fidei et Ecclesiæ, quæ jam per Lollardos, et eorum fautores, incrediliter affligebatur. Nam ad hoc vacabant solummodo, ut imaginarentur qualiter totius Ecclesiæ possessiones tollerent, et, quod pejus fuit, cunctas canonicas destruerent sanctiones. Hiis auditis, Rex, impiger, reversus est in Angliam, arbitrans magis necessarium fidei periclitanti succurrere, quam circa regna temporaria acquirenda decertare. Sed hæc in sequentibus diffusius sunt tractanda.

The King is requested to return, in consequence of the designs of the Lollards.

[1] *Cui vero* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1395. Parliament at Dublin.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo quinto, tenuit Rex Natale in civitate Dubliniæ, et post Natale fecit Parliamentum ibidem; ad quod convenerunt tam ligei sui, quam illi qui dudum submiserant se eidem.

Parliament at London.

Eo tempore, post Octavas Epiphaniæ, vocante Custode regni Angliæ, Domino Edmundo, regis patruo, Duce Eboraci, factum est Parliamentum Londoniis. Ad quod accessit Dux Gloverniæ, missus ab Hibernia, qui coram cunctis exposuit Regis necessitatem, qui jam exhauserat thesauri sui in Hibernicos facultatem. Cujus legatio tantum valuit, ut clerus unam decimam Regi concederet, et quintam-decimam plebs communis; facta prius protestatione, quod ad hoc concedendum Regi non tenebantur stricto jure, sed sui Regis affectione.

Grants made to the King, for his expenses in Ireland.

The Lollards promulgate their doctrines.

Eo tempore, Lollardi, cum suis fautoribus, in omnem malitiam efferati, fixerunt publice super ostia Sancti Pauli Londoniis, et Westmonasterii, [1] abominabiles cleri accusationes, et hactenus inauditas Conclusiones, quibus nitebantur destruere personas omnes ecclesiasticas, et Ecclesiæ Sacramenta; animati, ut fertur, favore quorundam procerum et militum aulicorum. Inter quos campiductores fuere Ricardus Stury, Lodowicus de Clifforde, Thomas Latimer, Johannes de Monte Acuto; qui instigabant et confortabant hæreticos, ad confundendum et delendum, si posse daretur, præcipue religiosos.

Names of their principal supporters.

The King returns to England, and threatens the supporters of the Lollards.

Rex igitur, ut præfertur, conceptis tantis malitiis Lollardorum, festinanter venit in Angliam, ut suo dissiparet intuitu omne malum. Quo cum pervenisset, lætis avibus, quosdam de proceribus objurgavit acriter, comminans eis terribiliter, si de cætero Lollardis faverent, vel eos aliqualiter confortarent. De Ricardo vero Stury accepit juramentum, tacto libro Evangeliorum, quod de cætero opiniones hujusmodi non teneret. Quo facto, dixit Rex,—"Et ego juro tibi, si tu unquam vio-" laveris juramentum, morte pessima morieris." Audi-

[1] *abhominabiles* in MS.

entes cæteri tantum rugitum, contraxere cornua, et hactenus [1] delituerunt. A.D. 1395.

Piracy committed by the subjects of the Queen of Denmark.

Misfortunes of the men of Norfolk.

Eo anno sensit Anglia damna gravia per piratas Reginæ Danemarchiæ, qui nautas et mercenarios deprædabantur, præcipue tamen eos qui erant de Northfolchia; qui tandem ausi sunt, collecta multitudine, congredi cum eisdem. Sed hostibus prævalentibus, multi nostratum sunt perempti, plurimi ad redemptionem gravissimam sunt servati, directa pecunia quam ad nundinandum comportaverant, ad summam viginti millium librarum.

Extortionate demands of the Archbishop of Canterbury on the clergy.

Eodem anno, Dominus Willelmus, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, non considerata depressione ecclesiastica, qua jugiter premebatur singulis annis per talliagia regia, plus prospiciens suo privato commodo, quam communitatis incommodo, impetravit ab Apostolico, ut levare posset per totam suam Provinciam quatuor denarios de libra, omnium bonorum ecclesiasticorum, tam exemptorum quam non exemptorum, nulla prætensa legitima, neque vera, causa. Multi, metuentes supercilium executorum præsentis negotii,[2] scilicet, Archiepiscopi Eboracensis et Episcopi Londoniensis, solvere consenserunt; alii autem ad Sedem Apostolicam appellaverunt; sed tantis motibus finem imposuit Summus Pontifex, Dominus Ihesus Christus, consulens honori, famæ, corpori, et spiritui, tanti viri, dum eum celeri fato subtraxit.

Obituary for the year.

Hoc anno, obiit Johannes Waltham, Sarisbiriensis Episcopus, regni Thesaurarius; qui tantum Regi complacuerat, ut, Rege jubente, apud Westmonasterium, inter Reges, habuerit sepulturam. Huic successit in officio Thesaurarii Dominus Rogerus Waldene, in Episcopatu vero Dominus [3] J. de Mytford, Episcopus Cicestrensis, ad cujus Episcopatum Dublinensis [4] Archiepiscopus est translatus, quia major præsulatus in sæculari substantia minor

[1] *dilituerunt* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Sancti Archiepiscopi* in ed. Camden.

[3] Qy. if not "*Ricardus*."

[4] Robert Waldby.

A.D. 1395. erat. Obiit etiam Exoniensis Episcopus— ; cui successit, Regis instantia, Magister Edmundus de Stafford, Portitor Privati Sigilli. Obiit quoque Dominus Henricus de Wakefeld, Episcopus Wygorniensis ; cui successit, ad preces Regis, quidam monachus Cisterciensis, Regis physicus, dictus—"Tydeman," cassata Magistri Johannis Grene electione legitima.

The King orders the body of Robert de Veer to be buried at Colne, in Essex.

Mense Novembrio, Rex Angliæ, apportato de Lovania corpore dilecti sui Roberti de Veer, fecit illum apud Prioratum de Coolne, in Estsexia, solemniter tumulari, exhibens suam præsentiam officio funerali. Multitudo præsulum et prælatorum, contemplatione Regis, affuit hiis exequiis ; sed perpauci de proceribus, quia nondum digestum fuerat apud eos odium inveteratum.

The Duke of Lancaster recalled from Acquitaine, A.D. 1396.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo sexto, Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, cui Rex donaverat Ducatum Aquitanniæ, cum jam incredibilem summam thesauri in illis partibus expendisset, pro adipiscenda patriotarum benevolentia, consecutusque fuisset propositum, subito per mandatum regium revocatur. Qui nihilominus revocanti paruit, et in Angliam rediit ; et accessit Langeleyam, ubi Rex Natale Domini celebravit. Susceptusque est a Rege debito cum honore, sed, ut quidam asserunt, non amore. Licentiatus proinde, a Rege Curiaque recessit, et properavit Lincolniam, ubi Katerina de Swynford eo tempore morabatur ; quam post Octavas Epiphaniæ desponsavit, cunctis admirantibus facti miraculum, et maxime ipso Rege.

He marries Katharine de Swynford.

The Pope requests the King's aid against the Lollards.

Hoc tempore, Papa scripsit Regi Angliæ, orans ut assisteret prælatis Ecclesiæ in causa Dei et ipsius Regis et regni, contra Lollardos, quos declaravit non solum proditores Ecclesiæ, sed ipsius Regis ; rogavitque obnixius, ut quos prælati declarassent hæreticos condemnaret.

Interview between the Kings of Eng-

Eo tempore, juxta pacta inter Reges Angliæ et Franciæ prius firmata, convenerunt dicti Reges ad locum ultra Kalesiam, eorum colloquio designatum, ubi am-

borum Regum tentoria magnifice fixa fuere. Qui, ante tractatum pro pacis securitate, corporale præstiterunt coram omnibus juramentum. Et quidem juramentum Regis Franciæ tale fuit.— A.D. 1396. land and France.

Oath made by the King of France.

" Nos, Karolus, Rex Franciæ, juramus, in verbo re-
" gali, super Evangelia, pro nobis et omnibus nobis
" subjectis, amicis et affinitate nobis junctis, et benevo-
" lentibus, quod non faciemus, nec patiemur fieri per
" nos, nec per supra nominatos, damnum, impetitionem,
" molestiam, arrestationem, nec disturbationem, ullo
" modo per tempus nostræ conventionis, nec per octo
" dies ante conventionem, et septem dies sequentes,
" nostro dilecto filio, Regi Angliæ, nec alicui de suis
" subjectis, amicis, affinibus, nec benevolis, ante dictum
" tempus. Et si casu aliquo insolentia vel litigium per
" aliquem de nostris supradictis, quod absit, emerserit,
" nos promittimus in verbo regali, et per securitatem
" prædictam, quod faciemus hoc debite emendari, et
" sine dilatione reformari. Et juramus ulterius, super
" securitate prædicta, quod si aliquis, vel aliqui, de qua-
" licunque statu vel conditione extiterint, voluerit, vel
" voluerint, contraire dictæ nostræ securitati, nos eri-
" mus in auxilium nostri prædicti filii pro nostro posse,
" ad resistendum malitiæ malefactorum prædictorum, et
" conservandum dictum nostrum filium et suos, per
" modum quem nos et nostri scimus, et ad tenendum
" omnia, et prosequendum, sine fraude vel malo inge-
" nio. Et ad hoc juramus et promittimus," *sicut supra.*

Particulars of the interview.

Die vicesimo sexto mensis Octobris, Rex Angliæ equitavit de Kalesia versus castrum de Gynes, et cum eo Dux de Berry, qui missus fuerat ad recipiendum sacramentum Regis nostri. In crastino obviaverunt Reges, ducentibus Regem Angliæ Dominis Franciæ, quatuor Ducibus, de Berry et Burgundiæ, Aurelianensi et Burboniæ, Comite Sancer, Vicecomite de Meleyn, Episcopo de Vilames, Dominoque de Bussy. E contra,

A.D. 1396. de parte nostra, missi sunt ad conducendum Regem Franciæ ad suam papilionem, duo Duces, scilicet, Lankastriæ et Gloverniæ, quatuor Comites, scilicet, de Derby et de Ruthland, Notinghamiæ et Northanhumbriæ: habueruntque colloquium duo Reges, in quo, assensu mutuo, fuerat ordinatum, ut construeretur in eodem loco una Capella, sumptibus amborum, in æternam memoriam, quæ "Capella Dominæ Nostræ de Pace" vocaretur.

A chapel to be erected on the site of the interview.

Die Sabbati in festo Apostolorum Simonis et Judæ, Reges collocuti sunt de certis articulis tractatus sui, juraveruntque super Evangelia de pactis servandis. Et tunc Rex Angliæ rogavit Regem Franciæ, ut pranderet cum eo die Lunæ sequente. Die Lunæ venit Rex Franciæ ad tentorium Regis Angliæ, et eadem hora Regina fuit adducta ad tentoria Regis nostri, quam Rex Franciæ donavit Regi nostro. Qui, tenens manum puellæ, osculatus est eam, multum regratiando patri suo de dono tam honorabili et gratioso, asserens se eam sub conditionibus accipere factis inter eos. Commendata est proinde Regina Ducissis Lankastriæ et Gloverniæ, et Comitissis Huntingdoniæ et Staffordiæ, aliisque dominabus, quæ conduxerunt eam Kalesiam in apparatu maximo hominum et equorum. Habuit nempe secum duodecim currus plenos dominabus et domicellis.

Visits interchanged between the Kings.

The daughter of the King of France given in marriage to the King of England.

The Princess is conducted to Calais.

Hiis ita gestis, Reges accesserunt ad prandium, in tentorio Regis Anglorum, conseditque Rex Franciæ in dextera parte aulæ: cui servitum fuit, more patriæ suæ, regaliter; id est, de omnibus cibariis, primus cursus simul in magna parapside, et de secundo cursu eodem modo: Regi vero nostro modo patriæ serviebatur, id est, Anglico. Post prandium, Reges osculati pariter, ascenderunt equos, duxitque Rex Angliæ [1] [Regem Franciæ] in viam suam; et tandem, junctis manibus, super equos ad invicem discesserunt. Rex Franciæ equitavit ad Arde, et Rex versus Kalesiam se convertit; ubi filiam

The King of France dines with the King of England, and they then separate.

[1] Omitted in MS.

Regis Franciæ duxit uxorem, pusiolam septennem vel octennem. Fuerat autem iste Regum apparatus grandis et sumptuosus in donariis et expensis; nam præter dona quæ Rex Angliæ dedit Regi Franciæ, aliisque proceribus illius regni, quæ superaverunt summam decem millium marcarum, Rex expendit, ut aiunt, triginta millia marcarum, et amplius, ea vice. Rediit autem cito postea salvus in Angliam, et uxor sua: sed adversa tempestate tentoria sua perdidit, et magnam partem supellectilis domus suæ. A.D. 1396. Richard marries the French Princess. Great expenditure of the King of England. He loses part of his baggage in a storm.

Hoc anno valefecit sæculi vanitatibus Magister Willelmus de Cortiniaco, Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis; cui successit, postulatione Capituli, Dominus Thomas, frater Comitis Arundeliæ, regni Cancellarius. Qui mox Cancellariæ renunciavit officio, et illius sollicitudinem Magistro Edmundo Stafford, Episcopo Exoniensi, assensu regio, commendavit: successitque prædicto Thomæ, in Archiepiscopatu Eboracensi, quidam [1] frater—, provisione Papali, contra vota totius cleri Eboracensis. Obituary of the year.

Eodem anno decessit totius monasticæ religionis speculum, currusque et auriga ejus, Dominus [2] Thomas, Abbas Monasterii Sancti Albani; cui successit, per electionem, Dominus Johannes Moot, Prior ejusdem loci. Qui, juxta nova privilegia a Curia impetrata, ut, videlicet, eo ipso quo rite foret electus, esset et confirmatus, primus omnium eo privilegio usus est; suscepitque munus benedictionis ab Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, Domino Thoma de Arundelle; non quia sic oportuit, sed quia per manus ejus benedici præelegit. Qui benedixit eum in manerio suo de Saltwode, inhibens omnibus ministris domus suæ, ne ulla feoda susciperent ab eodem. Death of Thomas, Abbot of St. Alban's. John Moot succeeds as Abbot. He receives benediction from Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo septimo, in Parliamento celebrato Londoniis, Dominus Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ, legitimam fecit prolem quam suscepe- The issue of the Duke of Lancaster

[1] Robert Waldby, Bishop of Chichester, and previously Archbishop of Dublin.

[2] Thomas de la Mare.

A.D 1397. by Katharine de Swynford, is legitimized.

rat de Katerina de Swynford; et in eodem Parliamento, Thomas Beufort, filius Ducis et ejusdem Katerinæ, creatus est Comes [1] de Somerset. Cognominavit autem Dux prolem illam de Bello Forti, id est de "*Beu Fort.*"

The King recalls the banished Justiciars from Ireland.

Rex, contra juramentum quod præstiterat, revocavit de Hibernia Justiciarios, quos olim, de consensu suo, proceres, propter defectus eorum notabiles, constituerat exulare.

Rumour that the King has been chosen Emperor. His singular conduct thereon.

Eo tempore, increbuere rumores, licet inanes, quod Rex Angliæ fuisset electus in Imperatorem; unde Rex elatus, ut fertur, ab eo tempore cœpit altius sapere quam solebat; vulgus [2] apporiare, grandes summas pecuniæ mutuari, in tantum, ut nullus prælatus, nulla civitas, nullus civis notatus locuplex, in toto regno, se potuit occultare, quin de sua pecunia mutuum Regi daret.

The Duke of Gloucester and the Earl of Warwick are suddenly seized and imprisoned.

Hoc anno, cum jam sibi regnum Angliæ summa videretur pace gavisurum, propter regales nuptias, et opes accumulatas per easdem, et treugas annorum triginta firmatas, et præsentiam tot nobilium procerum, quot et quales nulla externa regio poterat exhibere, repente Regis astutia cuncta turbantur, dum inopinate capit avunculum suum, Ducem Gloverniæ, vi et armis, nihil tale verentem, apud Pleschi in Estsexia, et Kalesiam deduci facit, carceri mancipandum; Comitem vero Warwyci, ipso die quo eum invitaverat ad prandendum secum, fecit arrestari, et protinus incarcerari, quamvis ei peroptimum vultum monstrasset eodem die, et insuper sibi futurum bonum dominum promisisset.

The Earl of Arundel is imprisoned.

Comitem præterea Arundeliæ, deceptum blandis persuasionibus, qui satis potens erat et se salvasse, ut dicitur, et suos amicos liberasse, scilicet, Ducem Gloverniæ et Warwyci Comitem, se reddentem pacifice, misit ad Wectam insulam pari modo, in carcere detinendum usque ad Parliamentum, quo definierat eos omnes

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *exinanire* in ed. Camden.

morte plectendos. Et ne fieret communis vulgi commotio pro captione dictorum procerum, quam maxime verebatur, proclamari fecit per regnum, quod ista dominorum captio non erat facta pro quibuslibet antiquis transgressionibus, sed pro novis commissis contra Regem, quæ propalarentur in Parliamento futuro. Sed hæc proclamatio ficta fuit, prout rei exitus comprobavit. A.D. 1397. Reason asserted by the King for this measure.

Rex vero, nescitur quid metuens, per idem tempus vetuit ne pontifices, aliive prælati, facerent processiones sive devotiones pro causa præmissa, vel procerum ereptione detentorum. Paulo post, apud Notingham, fecit indictari dictos dominos de proditione, subornavitque appellantes, qui eos appellarent in Parliamento futuro, Edwardum Comitem Ruthlandiæ, Thomam Mounbray Comitem Marescallum, Thomam Holand Comitem Kanciæ, Johannem Holand Comitem Huntingdoniæ, Thomam Beufort Comitem de Somerset, Johannem Mountagu Comitem Sarum, Thomam Dominum Despencer, et Willelmum le Scrop, Regis Camberlanum. Quibus sic gestis, Rex proclamari per totum regnum, quod domini arrestati proditores erant, et pro proditione detenti. Interea Rex, sibi metuens, convocavit ad tutelam sui [1]corporis multos malefactores de Comitatu Cestriæ, qui noctium vigilias, dierumque, servarent, et dividerent, circa illum. The King suborns accusers of the imprisoned peers. Malefactors from Chester summoned to the King's aid.

Circa Octavas Nativitatis Sanctæ Mariæ, factum est Parliamentum Londoniis; ad quod venerunt omnes regni proceres, armati, cum suis retinentiis, ducti nimirum metu Regis. Prolocutores præsentis Parliamenti milites extitere, in quibus nec virtus aliqua, nec fides ulla, posset inveniri; sed innata cupiditas, ambitio inexplebilis, fastus intolerabilis, odium veritatis. Tæderet eorum commemorare vocabula, nisi quia Pilatum et Herodem, et sacrilegos sacerdotes, nomine notatos, in Parliament at London.

[1] *soporis* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1397. At demand of the Speakers of Parliament, the charters of pardon are annulled.

Hagiographia sciremus. Fuerunt ergo istorum nomina, Johannes Bussy, Willelmus Bagot, et Thomas Grene. Hii importunis clamoribus petierunt, ut chartæ perdonationum inprimis annullarentur. De quibus requisiti prælati de facili judicarunt chartas tales fore revocabiles; non attendentes quod hujusmodi gratiæ revocatio personæ regiæ maxime repugnabat, cum misericordia sit solii regalis confirmatio, et qui tollit a rege misericordiam, tollit regalis solii firmamentum. Consequenter, domini temporales, videntes [1] imperfectionem cleri, post ipsum abierunt, magis metu Regis moniti, quam mentis ratione. Justiciarii legisque periti censuerunt istud nullatenus faciendum; asserentes inter se cunctos fore Regis proditores, qui ad hoc eum quo modolibet instigarent. Nihilominus exactum fuit a prælatis, ut constituerent laicum procuratorem pro eisdem, ut quia illi non poterant interesse judicio sanguinis, procurator eorum, si necesse foret, hujusmodi negotio consentiret.

The Archbishop of Canterbury is banished.

Altera autem die, cum Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, de Regis mandato, (quem credebat sibi amicissimum), se absentasset de Parliamento, (qui etiam sibi juraverat, quod nihil attentaretur in ejus præjudicium, absente ipso,) contra omnem justitiam, adjudicatus fuit exilio, cum adjecto, quod non remaneret in regno ultra sex hebdomadas ab illo die proxime computandas. Quo taliter condemnato, misit Rex clam ad Romanam Curiam, pro translatione ejusdem, effecitque ut Rogerus de Waldene, regni pro tunc Thesaurarius, pro eo Archiepiscopus ordinaretur. Qui, quia præsumpsit ascendere cubile viventis patris sui, post biennium dejectus est, auctoritate Papæ præfati.

Roger de Waldene appointed Archbishop.

The Earl of Arundel is condemned to death.

Die vero Sancti Matthæi, Ricardus, Comes Arundeliæ, tristem mortis accepit sententiam, deducentibus eum, cum turba Cestrensium, ad mortis metam, Comi-

[1] *imperfectum* in ed. Camden.

tibus Marescallo et de Kancia, et Johanne Comite Huntingdoniæ, fratre Regis. Intuens Comes Arundeliæ Comitem Marescallum et Comitem Kanciæ, suos affines et necessarios (nam alter gener ejus erat, alter nepos ex filia,) perurgere negotium decollationis suæ,—"Vere," inquit, "decuisset vos præcipue absentes fuisse, et ab "isto negotio subtraxisse; sed tempus adveniet, quando "tot mirabuntur de vestris infortuniis, quot de meis "casibus nunc mirantur." Sicque, flexo poplite, vultu constantissimo, decapitari sustinuit, nec plus expalluit quam si fuisset ad epulas invitatus. Cujus corpus, cum capite, inter Fratres Augustinenses Londoniis est humatum.

A.D. 1397. His rebuke to the Earl Marshal and the Earl of Kent.

His execution.

Post cujus mortem, Rex diris imaginibus in somnis est turbatus; videbatur nempe umbra Comitis, mox ut dormire cœpisset, ante suos oculos volitare, minarique sibi, et cum indicibiliter deterrere, quasi diceret hoc quod [1] Naso,—

The King is conscience-stricken, upon the Earl's death.

"Nunc quoque factorum venio memor, umbra, tuo-
"rum,
"Insequor et vultus, ossea forma, tuos."

Quibus Rex pavefactus imaginibus, cum meticulosus medios somnos interrumperet, maledixit diei in quo novisset Comitem memoratum. Auxit quoque sibi mentis insaniam, quod audivit commune vulgus Comitem reputare pro martyre, peregrinationesque fieri circa corpus ejus. Quapropter jussit ut Fratres signa deponerent, fixa vel erecta circa cadaver ejus, et locum sepulturæ sub pavimento [2] altius occultarent.

The multitude venerate the Earl as a Martyr.

The King orders his place of burial to be concealed.

Post mortem Comitis Arundelliæ, productus fuit Comes Warwyci ad astandum judicio Parliamentali. Qui, mortis metu ductus, simul et pollicitationibus blandis seductus, se reum fatebatur criminis læsæ majestatis. Data est ergo mortis sententia contra eum; quam mox temperavit Regis gratia, condonans sibi veniam atque

The Earl of Warwick confesses his criminality. He is banished to the Isle of Man.

[1] The *Ibis* of Ovid, ll. 145, 6. | [2] *protinus* in *Hist. Angl.*, II. p. 226.

A.D. 1397. vitam; sed tamen missus est in exilium ad insulam Euboniæ, ubi sub custodia carcerali residuum transigeret vitæ suæ.

The Duke of Gloucester, by the King's order, is suffocated.

Interea, quia non videbatur tutum Regi, ut Dux Gloverniæ responsis astaret publice, propter favorem populi, qui sibi nimis afficiebatur, jussit Comiti Marescallo ut eum latenter occideret. Qui, missis iniquitatis ministris, suffocari fecit eum, superjectis [1] culcitis et lectis, pluma repertis, super os ejus. Sicque mortuus est ille vir optimus, Regis filius et Regis patruus, in quo reposita fuere spes et solatium totius regni communitatis. Expost Rex fecit astute illud Parliamentum differri usque post festum Natalis Domini; quod reinciperetur, vel potius continuaretur, apud Salopiam in confiniis Walliarum.

The King prevails on Parliament to delegate its powers, A.D. 1398.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo octavo, in Parliamento continuato Salopiæ, procuravit Rex subtiliter, fecitque concedi, de consensu omnium regni statuum, ut potestas Parliamenti remaneret penes certas personas, septem vel octo, quibus liceret determinare, dissoluto Parliamento, certas petitiones in eodem Parliamento porrectas, pro tunc minime expeditas. Cujus concessionis colore, personæ sic deputatæ processerunt expost ad alia generaliter Parliamentum illud tangentia, et hoc de voluntate Regis; in derogationem status Parliamenti, et incommodum totius regni, et perniciosum exemplum. Rex autem, ut super hoc facto videretur habere colorem et [2] auctoritatem, fecit rotulos Parliamenti mutari et deleri, contra effectum concessionis prædictæ.

He orders the Rolls of Parliament to be altered.

He creates new titles.

Hiis ita perpetratis, Rex assumpsit sibi nomen Principatus Cestriæ, et Comitem de Derby creavit Ducem Herefordiæ, Comitem Marescallum Ducem Northfolchiæ, Comitem de Ruthland Ducem Albemarlæ, Comitem Kanciæ Ducem Suthreyæ, Comitem Huntingdoniæ Ducem

[1] *culcitris* in ed. Camden.

[2] *authoritatem* in ed. Camden.

Excestriæ, Comitissam de Northfolke Ducissam Northfolchiæ, Comitem de Somercet Marchionem ibidem, Dominum Despencer Comitem Gloucestriæ, Dominum de Nevyle Comitem Westmarelandiæ, Dominum Willelmum le Scroop Comitem de Wiltschire, Dominum Thomam Percy, Senescallum Regis, Comitem Wygorniæ. Proinde Rex mutavit arma sua, addiditque scuto suo arma Sancti Edwardi, Regis et Confessoris. A.D. 1398. Adds to his shield the arms of Edward the Confessor.

Eo tempore, Rex contulit novis creatis suis Ducibus et Comitibus magnam partem terrarum Ducis Gloverniæ, Comitis Arundeliæ, et Comitis de Warwico. Bestows part of the lands of the Duke of Gloucester and others.

In hoc Parliamento, continuato apud Salopiam, Dominus de Cobham, vir grandævus, simplex, et rectus, ob nullam causam aliam est damnatus, nisi quia fuerat unus ex deputatis Regi, pro suis consilio et tutela, per dominos undecimo anno suo, et Parliamentum tentum eodem anno annullatur. Rex tamen, concessa seni, quam non optavit, venia, sive vita, misit eum ad insulam de Gerneseya in exilium. Proceeds against the Lord de Cobham.

Ut autem robur perpetuæ firmitatis obtinerent ordinationes et judicia facta [et] lata in præmisso Parliamento, impetravit Rex litteras Apostolicas, in quibus graves censuræ intentabantur contra quoscunque dictis Statutis quomodolibet contravenientes; quas promulgari fecit Londoniis, ad Crucem Sancti Pauli, et aliis celeberrimis regni locis. Proceedings annulled, of the Parliament of the 11th year of his reign. Papal sanction thereof.

Circa præsens tempus, appellavit Dux Herefordiæ Ducem Northfolchiæ de quibusdam verbis per eum dictis, quæ in Regis dedecus redundabant; ob quam causam, indictum fuit eis duellum apud Coventre. Tandem cum intrassent listas ibidem, tam animose quam magnifice, Rex in manu sua causam suscepit, et fecit proclamari quod Dux Herefordiæ debitum suum honorifice adimpleret. Sed tamen, velut immediate postea, Rex, sine causa quacunque legitima, Ducem Herefordiæ relegavit ad decennium, contra justitiam et jura militaria, et consuetudines hujus regni; Ducem vero Northfolchiæ per- The Duke of Hereford accuses the Duke of Norfolk; and a duel is arranged. The King interferes, and banishes the Duke of Hereford for 10 years, the

A.D. 1398. petuo damnavit exilio. Acta feruntur hæc eo die ad annum, quo idem Dux Northfolchiæ Ducem Gloverniæ fecerat suffocari.

Duke of Norfolk f or life.

Henry Beaufort made Bishop of Lincoln.

Hoc anno, Papa Johannes Lincolniensem Episcopum transtulit ad Episcopatum Cestriæ, tunc vacantem, et dedit Episcopatum Lincolniæ Henrico Beufort, uni de filiis Domini Johannis, Ducis Lankastriæ et Dominæ Katherinæ de Swynford, ob Ducis reverentiam et amorem. Episcopus vero Lincolniæ veteranus noluit hanc admittere translationem; sed, ea spreta, contulit se Cantuariam, et in Ecclesia Christi inter monachos finem vitæ fecit. Confessor Regis, quidam frater de Ordine Prædicatorum, de Episcopatu Landaffensi [1] translatus est ad Episcopum Cestrensem.

The Bishop of Lincoln refuses translation.

The King consults the clergy as to arbitrary translations made by the Pope.

Rex eo tempore, convocato clero, jussit ut determinaret, si liceret Papæ tales facere translationes pro suæ arbitrio voluntatis. Ad quod responsum fuit non directe, sed modo supplicationis porrectæ Regi ex parte cleri, ut dignaretur Papæ scribere, ut a talibus translationibus temperaret, pro commodo totius Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ. Rex vero, cum audisset hoc responsum, velut offensus tantæ licentiæ Papæ, juravit quod si clerus constanter restitisset Papæ in præsenti negotio, ipse manus apposuisset in auxilium eorundem.

A nuncio from the Pope demands the repeal of certain Statutes.

Eo tempore venit in Angliam Domini Papæ Nuncius, Petrus de Bosco, Aquensis Episcopus, ad commovendum Regem, ut permitteret ligeos suos provisiones adquirere de manu Papæ, et revocaret Statutum [2] editum contra Provisores, et illud breve,—"Quare impedit," multaque similia. Sed quod minus obtinuit de suo negotio, Rex accumulavit suo marsupio, donans ei jocalia de magno pretio.

The laurels wither, and revive. A.D. 1399.

Anno millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo nono, per totum regnum Angliæ lauri veteres aruerunt, et expost, contra multorum opinionem, reviruerunt.

[1] *traslatus* in ed. Camden. | [2] *æditum* in ed. Camden.

In die Circumcisionis Domini, prope Bedfordiam, aqua profundissima quæ decurrit inter villas de [1] Snellistone et [2] Harleswude repente restitit, et se divisit; sic quod per tria milliaria alveus siccus permansit, præbens quibuslibet ingressum siccum. Quod prodigium visum est pluribus significare [3] populi divisionem, et a Rege defectionem, quæ contigit eo anno. A.D. 1399. Prodigy near Bedford.

Eo tempore, Rogerus, Comes Marchiæ, dum nimis confidit in virtute propria, ab Hibernicis peremptus est, in Hibernia; cujus mortem Rex statuit vindicare personaliter, Hibernicosque domare; fecitque præparationem maximam, extorquens pecunias, exigens equos et quadrigas, victualia pro profectione sua rapiens, nilque solvens; unde suis ligeis factus est odibilis et invisus. The Earl of March is slain in Ireland. The King resolves to avenge his death. His rapacity renders him odious.

Per idem tempus, venit in Angliam Episcopus Calcidonensis, cum litteris Apostolicis commonitoriis, ut regni fideles de bonis suis conferrent Imperatori Constantinopolitano, qui nimis infestabatur per Tartaros, et eorum ducem, vocatum "Morettum." Ut autem proniores efficerentur regnicolæ ad offerendum huic negotio, concessit Papa benefactoribus vere contritis et confessis plenam remissionem, attendens quod si ipse ab incredulis opprimeretur, imminebat toti Christianitati ruina, recolens illud in mente poeticum, [4] quia— The Pope aids in obtaining contributions for the Emperor of Constantinople.

"[5] Tunc tua res agitur, paries cum proximus ardet."

Circa festum Purificationis obiit Dominus Johannes, Dux Lankastriæ; cujus corpus in Ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniis est humatum. Post cujus decessum, Rex Dominum Henricum, filium ejus, quem relegaverat ad decennium, exulare decrevit in perpetuum, revocans suas patentes litteras generales quas sibi prius concesserat: quod, durante relegationis tempore, generales Death of the Duke of Lancaster. The King changes the sentence of the Duke of Hereford to

[1] *Snedlistone* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Harewode* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *proprii* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*, II. p. 229.

[4] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[5] Correctly "*Nam tua etc.*," Horace I. *Epist.* xviii., l. 84.

A.D. 1399. that of perpetual banishment.

attornati sui possent prosequi pro liberatione sibi facienda de quibuscunque hæreditatibus sive successionibus ipsum extunc contingentibus, et quod homagium suum respectuari posset pro fine rationabili faciendo. Quo facto, constabat Regem non relegasse Ducem pro [1] dissensionibus quæ potuissent oriri inter familias suas et Ducis Northfolchiæ, ut prætensum fuerat, sed occasione bona Ducis occupandi, ut multi dicebant.

The King borrows large sums of money.

Interea Rex cepit mutuo grandes pecuniarum summas de quampluribus dominis, tam temporalibus quam spiritualibus, aliisque personis regni; promittens eis, bona fide, sub patentibus litteris, quod pecunias illas, sic mutuatas, resolveret termino limitato; quas nunquam postea reddidit creditoribus supradictis.

He extorts money, on certain pretences, from 17 counties.

Eodem anno, grandiores summas pecuniarum exegit a septemdecim regni Comitatibus metu mortis, imponens eis quod contra eum fecerant cum Duce Gloverniæ, Comitibus et Arundelliæ, et Warwici, *et cætera;* quare paratus erat super eos equitare, tanquam super hostes publicos. Quamobrem recepit a dictis Comitatibus novam securitatem super jurisjurandi firmamento. Quo facto, misit certos Episcopos, cum aliis viris honorabilibus, ad dictos Comitatus, qui inducerent tam dominos spirituales, [2] tam temporales, ut se Regi submitterent, et semet recognoscerent proditores, per litteras eorundem sigillis signatas. Hac occasione coacti sunt Regi concedere clerus et commune vulgus, dominique temporales, dictorum Comitatuum, importabiles summas pecuniæ pro benevolentia sua recuperanda, et ista redemptio "*Le "plesunze*" vocabatur.

Other acts of tyranny on part of King Richard.

Item, cupiens, ut fertur, populum regni sui subpeditare, direxit patentes litteras ad omnes regni Comitatus, et per terrores induxit, ut omnes ligei sui quicunque, tam spirituales quam temporales, juramenta insueta præstarent in genere, quæ verisimiliter cavere possent

[1] *dissentionibus* in MS. | [2] *quam* in ed. Camden.

destructionem plebis suæ finalem, ut dicebatur; coegit- A.D. 1399.
que ligeos suos ipsa juramenta sub litteris eorum, et sigillis, roborare. Ad chartas albas insuper eosdem ligeos apponere sigilla compulit, ut, quoties grassari vellet in eos, facultatem haberet eos [1] singillatim vel insimul opprimendi. Fecit præterea ut Vicecomites per totum regnum nova juramenta præstarent, ultra solita; quod, videlicet, obedirent omnibus mandatis Regis, quotienscunque directa fuisset eisdem sub Magno, Privatove, Sigillis; ac etiam litteris illis directis sub signeto suo. Et in casu quo iidem Vicecomites scire possent aliquos de ballivis suis, cujuscunque conditionis essent, aliquod malum dicere, sive loqui, publice vel occulte, quod cedere posset in dedecus aut scandalum personæ Regis, ipsos imprisonarent, donec aliud de Rege susciperent in mandatis. Unde contigit, quod quamplures ligeorum suorum, malitiose accusati, capti fuerunt, et imprisonati; non excusandi aliter nisi, commissa monomachia personali, se justificarent, non obstante quod accusatores et appellatores eorum essent juvenes, fortes, et sani, et illi sic accusati pro magna parte senes, impotentes, mutilati, vel infirmi.

The King embarks for Ireland.

How attended.

His intention to support Parliament.

Treasures carried with him to Ireland.

Circa festum Pentecostes, Rex, relinquens regnum, ut præfertur, turbatum multipliciter, navigavit in Hiberniam, cum suis Cestrensibus, Ducibusque de Albamarla et de Excestria, aliis quoque multis; habens secum nobiles pueros, filios Ducum Gloverniæ et Herefordiæ, quorum affines præcipue verebatur. Episcopos etiam secum traxit multos, cum Abbate Westmonasterii; qui quotiens vellet Parliamenta facere, prout prius constituerat, cum consensu octo personarum, præsto forent, ad confirmandum pro parte sua quæ fuerant statuenda. Thesaurum præterea, et [2] reliquias, aliaque jocalia, regnique divitias, ab antiquis dimissas, secum abstulit in Hiberniam, sine consensu statuum regni sui. Cumque venisset in Hi-

[1] *sigillatim* in ed. Camden. | [2] *reliquas* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1399. At first, he is successful in Ireland.

berniam, videbatur primo quidem prosperari, et super inimicos suos confortari. Non tamen exinde multum lætabantur regnicolæ, qui semper de eo sentiebant deterius, et per eum gravius opprimi metuebant.

Henry Duke of Lancaster prepares to invade England.

Interea Dux Henricus, olim Herefordiæ, sed nunc Lankastriæ, paterno jure, graviter ferens relegationem suam, sed multo gravius exilium et exhæredationem suam, nacta sibi, prout videbatur, temporis opportunitate de Regis absentia, quem scivit invisum populo regni sui, in Angliam redire disposuit, ad petendum

His adherents.

hæreditatem sibi de jure debitam. Occurrerunt sibi, sub eodem tempore, Thomas, quondam Archiepiscopus, et nepos ejus, filius Comitis Arundelliæ, simul et hæres, qui mare cum eo sunt ingressi; qui, inter omnes, non amplius (ut usu vulgari loquar) quam quindecim lanceas habuere; tantum fidebat Dux de sua justitia, po-

He hovers about the coasts.

pulique favore. Noluit tamen recto cursu terram ingredi, nec repente; sed nunc apparuit patriotis in una parte regni, nunc in alia, ut videret si contra eum

The Duke of York takes counsel how to oppose the Duke of Lancaster.

juxta littora resistentia pararetur. Audiens Dominus Edmundus, Dux Eboraci, rector regni, quod Dux Lankastriæ jam mare teneret, accitis Regis consultoribus et regni Cancellario, consilium tenuit apud Sanctum Albanum, quærens super isto negotio quid agendum. Qui consuluerunt illuc manum bellicam advocandam, quæ posset resistere venienti; sed quam inane fuit consilium eorum in hac parte, rei exitus declaravit. Nam advenientes illuc de cunctis provinciis protestabantur se Duci nolle nocere, quem noverant injuriose tractatum

The members of the Council take to flight.

fuisse. Dicti vero nequam consiliarii, hæc audientes, mox relicto regni Custode, necnon et Cancellario, ad castrum Bristolliæ fugerunt.

The Duke of Lancaster lands, and is joined by many nobles.

At Dux Lankastriæ, circa festum Translationis Sancti Martini, applicuit prope locum ubi quondam fuerat villa de Ravenesere, nemine resistente; cui occurrit Comes Northumbriæ, Dominus Henricus Percy, et Henricus, ejusdem filius; et Comes Westmar[l]andiæ, Dominus Ra-

dulphus Nevyle, aliique domini, qui timebant Regis tyrannidem, plures valde; sic quod factus est exercitus sexaginta millium pugnatorum, qui omnes uno voto statuerunt inprimis prosequi Regis pessimos consultores; veneruntque Bristoldum, et obsederunt castrum, ubi tandem ceperunt Thesaurarium, Willelmum le Scroop, Johannem Bussy, et Thomam Grene, qui mox, ad clamorem communium, sunt decollati: Willelmus Bagot et Johannes [1] Russelle, hanc tempestatem declinando, fugerunt. A.D. 1399. Certain members of the Council are taken, and executed.

Ricardus Rex, cum audisset in Hibernia de Ducis adventu, mox curavit filium Ducis Gloverniæ, et filium Ducis Lankastriæ, in castro de Trym recludere, quod est in Hibernia, satis forte; et confestim ad navigium convolavit, cum personis quas secum traxerat in Hiberniam, Ducibus et Episcopis, aliis quoque multis. King Richard, with certain of the nobles, returns to England.

Sed cum attigisset fines Angliæ, et cognovisset apparatum Ducis, pugnandi dimisit animum, pro certo tenens quod populus contra eum congregatus citius vellet mori quam cedere; tam propter ejus odium quam timorem. Dimisit ergo familiam, monens per Senescallum, Dominum Thomam Percy, ut se reservaret ad tempora meliora. Ipse vero Rex, quærens divortia, huc illucque se contulit multis diebus, semper eum Duce Lankastriæ cum exercitu insequente. Tandem apud castellum de Cunewey constitutus, petiit habere colloquium cum Domino Thoma Arundelle, quem expulerat de Archiepiscopatu Cantuariæ, et Comite Northumbriæ, cum nulla spes esset ulterius fugiendi. He determines not to fight, but dismisses his household, and takes to flight.

Quibus indicavit, se velle regno cedere, si sibi victus honorificus, vitæque securitas, et octo personis quas nominare vellet, fide interposita, donaretur. Qua petitione concessa atque firmata, venit ad castrum de Flynt; ubi habito brevi colloquio cum Duce Lankastriæ, mox ascensis equis, venerunt ad castellum Cestriæ ea nocte; et ab eo loco Offers to resign the crown, on certain conditions. Surrenders to the Duke of Lancaster.

[1] *Aussell* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1399. perductus est Londonias, conservandus in Turri usque ad Parliamentum proximo celebrandum.

Is placed in the Tower of London.

Interim directa sunt brevia ad personas regni qui de jure debebant interesse Parliamento, ut convenirent ad Westmonasterium in crastino Sancti Michaelis. Quo die, Rex Ricardus in Turri coram regni magnatibus gratanter, ut apparuit, et vultu hilari, perlegit distincte formam cessationis suæ, et absolvit ligeos suos a juramento fidelitatis et homagii, et relaxavit ab omnibus aliis juramentis quibuscunque, et suis dominiis renunciavit, juravit, et alia dixit et protulit in legendo, et manu sua se subscripsit, prout in forma cessationis plenius continetur. Et mox adjunxit, quod desideravit ut Dux Lankastriæ succederet sibi in regno; sed quia hoc in potestate sua non erat, Archiepiscopum Eboracensem et Episcopum Herefordensem constituit suos procuratores ad hæc omnia declarandum, et intimandum cessationem et renunciationem statibus dicti regni. Et in signum suæ intentionis et voluntatis hujusmodi, annulum de signeto suo aureo, extractum de digito suo, digito Ducis apposuit; desiderans hoc ipsum, ut asseruit, omnibus regni statibus innotesci.

A Parliament at Westminster.

Richard formally resigns the crown.

Expresses a desire that the Duke of Lancaster shall succeed him.

In crastino, lectis Regis renunciatione et cessatione coram statibus regni in Magna Aula Westmonasterii, consequenter processum est ad articulos pro quibus videbatur merito deponendus. Qui etiam lecti omnes violationem juramenti regalis finaliter concludebant. Proinde sententia depositionis Regis lecta, constabat regnum Angliæ, cum pertinentiis suis, vacare. Quapropter Dux Lankastriæ, de loco suo surgens, et stans erectus, ut posset a populo toto videri, muniens se signo crucis in fronte et in pectore, et invocato Christi nomine, dictum regnum Angliæ, sic vacans, ut præmittitur, cum corona ac omnibus pertinentiis, vendicavit, in lingua materna, sub hac forma verborum:—

Articles of accusation read against him.

The Duke of Lancaster claims the crown.

Form of the claim.

"In Dei nomine, Amen. Ego, Henricus de Lankas-
"tria, vendico regnum istud, cum corona et omnibus

" membris illi pertinentibus, tanquam per regium san- A.D. 1399.
" guinem, venientem de Rege Henrico, et per justitiam
" quam Deus, de sua gratia, mihi misit, cum adjutorio
" consanguineorum meorum et amicorum, ad recuperan-
" dum illud; quod regnum fuit in puncto perditionis,
" propter defectum gubernationis, et legum violatio-
" nem."

Huic vendicationi omnes status regni manus dederunt, et Archiepiscopi eum in regali solio posuerunt, universo populo applaudente; factoque sermone per Archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, cujus thema fuit,— [1] "Vir dominabitur populo," mox, de mandato novi Regis, proclamatum fuit, quod die Lunæ proxima post festum Sancti Michaelis, Parliamentum ibidem celebrari debebat; et die Lunæ extunc proximo sequente, videlicet, in festo Sancti Edwardi, Coronatio Regis fieret, apud Westmonasterium. Quibus ita peractis, Rex, de sede sua surgens, et populum vultu benigno respiciens, recessit ad Albam Aulam, ubi eodem die magnum convivium celebravit.

His claim is admitted.

A Parliament proclaimed.

Post hæc, procuratores, per Parliamentum deputati, accesserunt ad præsentiam Regis Ricardi, infra Turrim existentis, et per os Willelmi Therningge admissionem renunciationis, ac modum et causam, et formam sententiæ, depositionis ejus, eidem notificaverunt, et, vice omnium regni statuum, homagium et fidelitatem eidem Ricardo, nuper Regi, facta, ut præmittitur, reddiderunt, et resignarunt, ita quod nullus dictorum statuum, sive populi, ab hoc tempore, et deinceps, sibi portaret fidem nec obedientiam, tanquam Regi suo. Ad quæ solum respondit istud,—quod non respexit post talia. Sed post hæc omnia inquit, — "Spero quod cognatus " meus vult esse mihi bonus dominus et amicus."

His deposition is announced to King Richard.

His answer thereto.

In hoc Parliamento Rex Henricus fecit secundum filium suum, dictum "Thomam," Angliæ Senescallum;

Thomas, second son of King

[1] 1 *Samuel* ix. 17.

A.D. 1399. procreaverat siquidem masculini sexus, ex filia Domini Hunfredi Boun, Comitis Herefordiæ, juniore, quatuor liberos, duasque fœminas. Primogenitus vocabatur "Henricus," secundus "Thomas," tertius "Johannes," quartus "Hunfridus."

Henry, made Steward of England.

Children of King Henry.

Die Translationis Sancti Edwardi, Regis et Confessoris, coronatus est Rex Henricus, apud Westmonasterium, per manus Domini Thomæ, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopi, videlicet, ipso die quo fuerat relegatus, anno revoluto, non sine manifesto divinitatis miraculo, ut putatur; ut, scilicet, ille dies sibi deserviret ad gloriam, qui transacto anno fuerat deputatus ad pœnam. Et, in auspicium uberioris gratiæ sibi futuræ, delibutus est illo cœlesti unguine, quod olim Beata Maria, mater Dei, commisit Beato Thomæ, Martyri et Archipræsuli Cantuariæ, dum esset in exilio, conservandum, prædicens eidem quod Reges Anglorum qui ungerentur hoc unguento, pugiles Ecclesiæ futuri forent. Hoc unguentum, in aquila aurea et olla lapidea conservatum, latuit per multa tempora, usque ad vicesimum primum annum Ricardi Regis, prædecessoris Regis præsentis. Qui dum curiose perscrutaretur res relictas in Turri a suis antecessoribus, inopinate reperit aquilam auream, cum ampulla, et scripturam, sive prophetiam, Beati Thomæ, repositam cum eisdem. Hanc aquilam Rex Ricardus portavit super se, profecturus in Hiberniam, et inde rediens tradidit Archiepiscopo, eam petenti, licet invitus.

Coronation of Henry IV. at Westminster.

Account of the holy ointment, used at his Coronation.

Durante Parliamento, fecit Rex filium suum primogenitum, Henricum, Principem Walliæ, addens Ducatum Cornubiæ et Cestriæ Comitatum; et cito post, in eodem Parliamento, Ducem creavit Aquitanniæ.

The King's eldest son created Prince of Wales.

Scoti, per tempus Parliamenti, castrum de Werk ceperunt, despoliaverunt, et destruxerunt, et plura mala fecerunt.

The Scots destroy the Castle of Werk.

Thomas de Mounbray, quondam Dux Northfolchiæ, diem clausit extremum in terra peregrina, dum rediret ab

Death of the Duke of Norfolk.

Ierosolymis; cujus mors fuisset toti regno deflenda, si nec in Ducis Gloverniæ necem consensisset, nec eum inhumaniter jugulasset; felixque fuisset fama sua per sæcula, si, declinato scelere, vel cum dicto Duce fugisset, vel eum ad sua responsa perduxisset. A.D. 1399. His complicity in the murder of Thomas, Duke of Gloucester.

Item, hoc anno concessit in fata Alienora, Ducissa Gloverniæ, quæ parum ante, infausto sidere, filium suum et hæredem amiserat, "Hunfridum" vocabulo, subtractum sibi pestilentia, cum fuisset de Hibernia revocatus. Death of the Duchess of Gloucester.

Anno Gratiæ millesimo [1] quadringentesimo, Comites Kanciæ, Sarum, et Huntingdoniæ, ingrati Regis beneficiis, qui vitas eorum salvaverat, contra vota cunctorum regni communium, ac multorum procerum, congregantes iniquitatem sibi per conventicula facta, et conjurationes, locis variis, statuerunt super Regem irruisse repente in castello de Wyndelishores, sub simulatione ludorum natalitiorum, et eum, cum filiis suis, crudeliter peremisse. Quorum dolos Rex gratiose prænoscens, confestim Londonias se contulit. Qui cum cognovissent Regem eorum insidias declinasse, conturbati valde divortia requirebant, perveneruntque Cirecestriam jam cœca nocte. Viri vero dictæ villæ, suspectum habentes tantum apparatum, præstruxerunt omnes aditus et exitus hospitii eorundem. Cumque nocte media tentassent latenter discedere, cives eos, arcubus et sagittis armati, egredi non sinebant. Pugnatum est igitur hic et ibi a noctis medio usque ad horam diei tertiam; tandem fatigati manus dederunt communibus, obnixe precantes ut salvarentur a morte, donec cum Rege colloquium habuissent. Quod et factum fuisset, si non quidam presbyter, de eorum familia, ignem posuisset in quasdam domos villæ, hac intentione, ut, occupatis communibus circa extinctionem ignis, Comites possent evadendi occasionem [2] habere. Sed frustra; nam

Conspiracy of certain nobles to slay the King, A.D. 1400.

He is informed thereof, and escapes.

The nobles retire to Cirencester.

[1] 1300 in ed. Camden.

[2] *capere* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1400. villani, neglectis domibus in conflagrationis periculo, majori concitantur furia, ad vindicandum in dominos incendii damna prædicti. Populus ergo villæ produci fecit dominos de Abbathia, in qua statuerant servasse eos, juxta condictum, et in ipso diei crepusculo decollaverunt eos. Comes Sarum, Johannes de Monte Acuto, qui Lollardorum fautor semper fuerat, et imaginum vilipensor, contemptor Canonum, Sacramentorumque derisor, expers omnium Sacramentorum vitam finivit ibidem, ut fertur.

They are taken, and beheaded.

The Earl of Huntingdon flies from London.

Comes Huntingdoniæ, Dominus Johannes Holand, non erat cum prædictis dominis apud castellum de Wyndeleshores, sed expectavit Londoniis rei finem. Qui cum novisset rem versam contra vota, fugere nitebatur in scapha; sed, vento flante contrario, repulsus est. Quamobrem, equo vectus, pervenit Estsexiam cum quodam milite, dicto J. Schevele. Tentavit igitur per mare fugisse ab illis partibus, sed quotiens cymbam volebat ascendere, totiens est rejectus vi ventorum; donec omnino desperans de Neptuni suffragiis destitit ab inceptis. Tandem reversus in terram, dum cœnaret, captus est, cum supradicto milite, per communes patriæ, et ductus ad fortalitium de Pleschi, custodiendus ibidem, velut in loco securiori. Quo confluentibus illius pagi communibus, die Sancti Mauri, circa solis occasum, productus est, et in loco quo dominus eorum, Dux Gloverniæ, quondam fuerat arrestatus per Regem Ricardum, decapitatus est. Per idem tempus, Dominus Thomas Le Spencer, qui dicebatur nuper Comes Gloucestriæ, captus et ductus Bristoldum, decapitatus est: multique alii in locis variis, tam milites quam clerici, tunc temporis exceperunt similem mortis sortem. Episcopus Karleolensis, impetitus de conjuratione, damnatus est, sed Regis misericordia vitæ servatus.

He is taken prisoner, and executed at Pleschi.

The Earl of Gloucester is executed.

The life of the Bishop of Carlisle is spared.

The late King said to have starved

Ricardus, quondam Rex Angliæ, cum audisset hæc infortunia, mente consternatus, voluntaria semet extinxit inedia, prout fertur; clausitque diem ultimum apud

castrum de Ponte Fracto, die Sancti Valentini; cujus corpus apud Langeleyam, in ecclesia Fratrum Prædicatorum, (supremum perficientibus [1] officium Cestrensi Episcopo et Abbatibus de Sancto Albano et de Waltham), tumulatum est, sine magnatum præsentia, sine populari turba; nec erat qui eos invitaret ad prandia, post laborem. A.D. 1400. himself to death. He is buried at Langeley.

Rex, collecto exercitu, profectus est in Scotiam; sed Scotis detrectantibus belli copiam, Rex, vastata patria, reversus est in Angliam. The King ravages Scotland, and returns.

Wallici, nacta occasione de Regis absentia, duce quodam Howeno de Gleyndor, rebellare cœperunt; quem Rex persequi confestim statuit, tanquam patriæ turbatorem, et cum armata manu Walliam est ingressus. Sed Cambri, cum duce suo, montes [2] Snowdoniæ occupantes, intentatæ vindictæ se protinus subtraxere. Rex vero, combusta regione, et quibusdam peremptis, quos sors pro tunc gladiis evaginatis obtulit, cum præda jumentorum et animalium, remeavit. Rebellion in Wales, under Owen de Gleyndor. The King ravages part of Wales, and returns.

Imperator Constantinopolitanus venit in Angliam, postulaturus subsidium contra Turcos; cui Rex occurrit, cum apparatu nobili, ad Le Blakeheth, die Sancti Thomæ Apostoli, duxitque Londonias, et per multos dies exhibuit gloriose, solvens pro expensis hospitii sui, et eum respiciens dignis tanto fastigio donativis. The Emperor of Constantinople visits England, and is honourably entertained.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo primo, in Parliamento tento Londoniis, editum est Statutum, ut ubicunque Lollardi deprehenderentur suam pravam dogmatizare doctrinam, caperentur, et Episcopo diœcesano traderentur. Qui si præsumerent pertinaciter opiniones suas defendere, degradarentur, et judicio sæculari committerentur: practizataque fuit hæc lex eodem tempore in quodam pseudo-presbytero, qui apud Smethefeld, multis aspectantibus, est combustus. Statute in Parliament, enjoining punishment of the Lollards, A.D. 1401. A false priest burnt at Smethefeld.

[1] *offertorium* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Cnowdoniæ* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1401. The son of Bajazet is slain in battle. Rex de Letto peremit in bello [1] Bassak, filium Balthasardan illustris, quem "Admiratum" vocant, destruxitque Ierusalem, et in circuitu regionem. Et quia gratiose vicit eum, et inopinabiliter, conversus est ad Christianitatis ritum, cum sexaginta millibus hominum sectæ suæ. Hiis auditis rumoribus, Imperator, effectus lætior, recessit ab Anglia, honoratus a Rege donariis pretiosis.

The Emperor of Constantinople leaves England.

Queen Isabella returns to France. Sub hoc tempore, conditionibus jam inter Francos et Anglos firmatis, et omnibus profectioni Reginæ necessariis præparatis, revecta est Isabella, quondam Regina Angliæ, ad patrem, patriamque suam, Franciam, nondum annorum duodecim.

Damage inflicted by Owen Gleyndor. Howenus Gleyndor, cum suis Wallensibus, sub hiis diebus, damna gravia infert Anglis.

The King escapes a plot to maim, or slay, him. Cum nocte quadam Rex iturus esset cubitum, Deo protegente, evasit letale periculum. Siquidem in stramenta lecti sui, cujusdam proditoris ingenio, positum fuerat quoddam ferrum, fabrefactum ad modum tricuspidis, habens tres longos aculeos, subtiles et [2] teretes, punctuum aculeis acutissimis sursum erectis, tali ingenio, ut cum Rex decubuisset, et mole corporis stramenta pressisset, per eosdem aculeos vulneratus fuisset, vel forsitan interfectus. Sed Deo volente, Rex inopinate persensit instrumentum mortiferum, et devitavit periculum.

Death of John Moot, Abbot of St. Alban's. Succession of Abbot William de Heywurth. Hoc anno, Dominus Johannes Moot, Abbas Sancti Albani, rebus humanis exemptus est; cui successit, per viam scrutinii, Dominus Willelmus de [3] Heywurth, Cellerarius dicti loci, quanquam Capitulum fuisset eo die turbatum per minas nunciorum, ex parte Regis venientium, ut, Regis intuitu, alium elegissent.

Appearance of a comet. Anno millesimo quadringentesimo secundo, cometa apparuit mense Martio, primo inter [4] Corum et Septen-

[1] *Lassack* in ed. Camden.
[2] *terretes* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Heuwurth* in MS.
[4] *Chorum* in MS.

trionem, videlicet, in Circio, flammas emittens, postremo comas in Boream transferens; præsignans fortassis effusionem humani sanguinis circa partes Walliæ et Northumbriæ, post futuram. A.D. 1402.

Eo tempore, Owenus Gleyndor, cum suis Wallicis, vastavit terras Domini Reginaldi Grey; cui occurrens idem dominus, malis avibus captus est ab eo, et de suis plurimi trucidati. Lord Reginald Grey is taken by Gleyndor.

Circa festum Pentecostes, conjuraverunt quidam in mortem Regis, dicentes Regem Ricardum vivere, et quantocius in palam venturum, et suos fideles regaliter remuneraturum. Sed hujus conspirationis in parte tam spes quam metus evanuit, capto quodam presbytero apud Ware, qui scripserat nomina multorum in matricula, qui futuræ turbationis auctores fuissent. Iste, juxta conceptum proprium, nomina plurimorum scripserat, qui nullatenus conscii fuerant hujus facti, prout expost patuit in sua confessione. Nempe cum requisitus fuisset de certis personis coram eo constitutis, quarum nomina ipsemet irrotulaverat, si novisset eas, respondit quod non; et cum interrogatus fuisset, cur ergo tales irrotulasset, dixit,—"Quia opinabar eos vo- "luisse fecisse contra Regem, si complices invenissent, "quia per Regem Ricardum ditati quondam fuerant, "et promoti." Hac occasione liberati sunt plurimi qui fuere suspecti, et sacerdos tractus et suspensus est. Non multo post, Prior de Laune sortem similem [1] est expertus; non quia deprehensus est aliquid actitasse, sed quia confessus est se maligni consilii fuisse conscium, et hoc utique concelasse. Hic fuerat quondam Canonicus apud Dunstapliam, dictus "Walterus de Baldok"; qui, malo omine, relicto claustro, pervenit ad Regis Ricardi curiam, et ibidem luctatus diutissime cum fortuna, tandem, dono Regis, de Laune obtinuit Prioratum.

Ineffectual conspiracy against the King; promoted by a priest, who is taken and executed.

The former Prior of Laune is similarly punished, for being privy to the plot.

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1402. A Minorite Friar executed for treason.

Eo tempore, satis infausto sidere, quidam de Ordine Minorum, pensantes de proditione, priusquam procedere potuissent, capti sunt. Quorum unus, interrogatus quid fecisse voluisset, si Rex Ricardus affuisset, respondit constanter, se pro illo voluisse decertasse contra quemlibet, usque ad mortem. Data proinde contra eum sententia, tractus et suspensus est, in habitu suæ religionis. Sed confratres ejus, non ferentes hoc dedecus, obtinuerunt ut corpus defuncti supremis exequiis curaretur.

Appearance of the Devil, at Danbury in Essex.

Diabolica species apparuit in Estsexia, apud [1] Danbyriam, in festo Corporis Christi, hora Vesperarum, in similitudine Fratris Minoris, intrantis ecclesiam, et insolentissime debacchantis; unde parochiani territi, quid agerent ignorabant. Eadem hora, cum tempestatis turbine, et tonitrui perhorrendi fragore, fulgurumque et coruscationum globis collucentibus, summitas tota ipsius ecclesiæ confracta est, et medietas cancelli quassata et dissipata.

The church suffers from lightning.

Eight Minorite Friars executed.

Post paucos dies, capti sunt octo Fratres de Ordine Minorum, et ad judicium publicum dedecorose tracti; ubi examinati, et convicti quod contra Regem fecissent, Londoniis tracti, suspensi, et decapitati, sunt.

The men of Hereford defeated by Gleyndor, and Edmund Mortimer taken prisoner.

Eo tempore, Howenus Gleyndor, assuetis intendens irruptionibus, pene totam militiam Herefordensis Provinciæ provocavit ad arma; cui ducatum præbuit Edmundus de Mortuo Mari. Sed cum perventum fuisset ad actum martium, proditione mediante, et Edmundus captus, et cæteri victi sunt, occisis de nostratibus amplius quam mille viris. Quorum genitalia mulieres Wallensium, post conflictum, absciderunt, et membrum pudendum in ore cujuslibet interempti posuerunt, testiculosque a mento dependere fecerunt; nasosque præcisos in culis eorundem presserunt, et sepulturam mortuis cadaveribus prohibuerunt.

Atrocities practised on the bodies of the slain.

[1] *Dambyria* in ed. Camden.

Hoc anno, misit Rex filiam suam, cum grandi apparatu, ad Coloniam Agrippinam, ubi nupsit adolescentulo, filio Imperatoris. A.D. 1402. Marriage of a daughter of King Henry.

Circa festum Assumptionis Beatæ Mariæ, profectus est Rex, cum manu potenti, in Walliam, ad persequendum Howenum Gleyndor; sed nil profuit regia sollicitudo, in nota latibula se recipiente Wallico. Quin potius, ut putatur, arte magica Regem pene perdidit, cum exercitu quem ducebat, per pluvias, nives, et grandines, ut creditur, arte diabolica concitatas. Quapropter Rex, necessitate cogente, redivit in Angliam, incensa patria, et prædata. Gleyndor prevails against the English, by magic devices, it is surmised.

Eo tempore obiit Dominus Edmundus de Langele, Dux Eboraci, filius quondam nobilis Regis Edwardi, a Conquæstu Tertii; cujus corpus apud Langele sepultum est, inter Fratres. Death of Edmund, Duke of York.

Eo tempore, Scoti, venientes hostiliter in hanc terram, per [1] arcitenentes Comitis Northumbriæ, et Henrici, filii sui, victi sunt; capto Comite de Douglas, et multis aliis; sed et plurimi rapacitate Twedæ fluminis submersi fuere, dum vada nescirent, ad numerum, ut asseritur, quingentorum. Murdak de Fyf, cum Comitibus de Murryf, de Angos, ac de Orkeney, et Baronibus, Domino de Monte Gomerico, Dominoque de Erskyn, et Domino de [2] Grame, in hoc prœlio captus est, cum militibus octoginta, et aliis scutiferis et valettis, quorum numerus ignoratur. Interfecti sunt Barones ibidem, Dominus de Gurdon et Dominus Johannes de Swynton, in festo Exaltationis Sanctæ Crucis. The Scots are defeated by the Earl of Northumberland. Scottish nobles captured, or slain.

Eo tempore, Lollardi docuerunt Conclusiones execrabiles; in occulto tamen, propter metum judiciorum; quæ sunt istæ:— Conclusions put forth by the Lollards.

Quod septem Sacramenta non sunt nisi signa mortua, nec valent in forma qua eisdem utitur Ecclesia.

Item, quod virginitas et presbyteratus non sunt sta-

[1] *architenentes* in MS. | [2] *Grauie* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1402. tus approbati a Deo, sed status conjugii optimus est, et ordinatus a Deo. Quapropter, virgines et presbyteri, religiosique populi, si salvari desiderant, debent conjugari, vel esse in voluntate et proposito conjugandi; alias sunt homicidæ, et destruunt sanctum semen unde consurgeret secunda [1] Trinitas, et sic impediunt numerum salvandorum, pariter et damnandorum.

Item, si vir et fœmina convenirent in una voluntate nubendi, ipsa voluntas sufficiens est conjugium, sine majori obedientia Ecclesiæ facienda; et sic sunt conjuncti plures quam nos cognoscimus, prout dicunt.

Item, quod Ecclesia nihil est aliud quam synagoga Sathanæ; et ideo nolunt adire illam ad honorandum Deum, neque percipiendum Sacramentum aliquod, et præcipue Sacramentum Altaris; quia, ut asserunt, non est nisi buccella panis mortui, et turris, sive pinnacula, Antichristi.

Item, si haberent puerum modo natum, non baptizaretur per manus presbyterorum apud ecclesiam; est enim [2] secunda Trinitas, non contaminata peccato; et pejor esset, si deveniret in manus eorundem.

Item, quod non habemus aliquem diem sanctificatum vel sanctum, sed nec diem Dominicum; sed quilibet dies est ejusdem libertatis ad operandum, comedendum, et bibendum.

Item, quod non est Purgatorium post hanc vitam, neque quod oportet agere majorem pœnitentiam pro ullo peccato, quanquam vilissimo; sed tantum, ut committentes illud deserant, et apud se [3] pœniteant; quia, ut dicunt, in fide stat quicquid est, sicut Mariæ Magdalenæ [4] dixit Ihesus:—"Fides tua te salvam fecit."

Sir Louis de Clifford, a supporter

Has Conclusiones Lodowicus de Clifford, miles, qui jamdudum Lollardis fautor extiterat, diu sub terminorum

[1] *civitas* in ed. Camden.
[2] *sancta* in ed. Camden.
[3] *pœnitent* in ed. Camden.
[4] *Luke* vii. 50.

involucris [1] palliatas, sed jam denudatas, Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi patefecit; ut, videlicet, se ostenderet, non ex pertinaci malitia, sed simplicitate cordis, et ignorantia, communicasse cum impiis. Dedit enim nomina Cantuariensi dictas dogmatizantium pravitates. A.D. 1402 of the Lollards, informs against them.

Eo tempore, Edmundus de Mortuo Mari, juvenis, quem retulimus ante captum ab Howeno Glendor, vel tædio diræ captivitatis, vel metu mortis, vel ex alia qua nescitur causa, conversus retrorsum, cum Howeno contra Regem Angliæ se sentire professus est; dum nuptias, nimis humiles, et suæ generositati impares, contrahit cum filia dicti Howeni. Marriage of Edmund de Mortimer to the daughter of Gleyndor.

Hujus, ut fertur, nativitatis exordia, dira comitata sunt prodigia; quia nocte qua in lucem effusus est, in [2] hippodromo paterno omnes equi patris sui reperti sunt in alto cruore stetisse, usque ad tibiarum demersionem. Quod tunc interpretati sunt plurimi sinistrorsum. Sinister event at the birth of Gleyndor.

In Parliamento facto Londoniis, clerus concessit Regi decimam et dimidiam, et a burgis decima, et a communitate vero regni quinta-decima, concessa fuit. Grant made by Parliament.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo tertio, post festum Purificationis, Regina venit in Angliam, de Minori Britannia ad Majorem, de ducatu ad regnum, de gente feroci ad populum pacificum, et, utinam, fausto pede. Hæc fuerat prius conjugata nobili viro, Domino Philippo de Monte Forti, Duci Britanniæ, de quo tulit utriusque sexus liberos; sed de Rege Angliæ, Henrico, cui jam nupsit, omnino nullos. Vicesima vero sexta die mensis Januarii, Londoniis, apud Westmonasterium, fuit magnifice coronata. Henry marries the widow of the Duke of Bretagne, A.D. 1403

Æstate secuta, juxta villas de Bedford et de [1] Bikkeliswade, frequenter visa sunt monstra mane et meridie de sylvis emergentia, sub colore vario, in similitu- Marvellous appearances near Bedford.

---

[1] *pallilatas* in ed. Camden.
[2] *ypodromo* in MS.
[3] *Bikkelisshade* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1403. dinem hominum bellatorum, quæ, sibimet occurrentia, videbantur inire dira bella. Quæ [1] etsi conspici poterant a remotis, ab appropinquantibus inveniri minime potuerunt; sicque dicta phantastica, vel fatalis, apparitio sæpius delusit plurimos accedere cupientes.

Henry Percy, the younger, rises against the King; and is joined by the Earl of Worcester.

Eodem tempore, Dominus Henricus Percy, junior, cui fortuna semper hactenus blandita fuerat, et in quo spes erat reposita totius pene populi, repente hostis Regis apparuit. Cui, contra cunctorum opinionem, junxit se Dominus Thomas Percy, Comes Wygorniæ, patruus Henrici prædicti. Hic, repente deserens domum Principis, Regis primogeniti, cujus Rex curam sibi commiserat in speciali, recessit ad nepotem, augens eidem vires et animum rebellandi. Quorum ut excusabilis esset conjuratio, scripserunt provincialibus ubilibet constitutis, propositum quod assumpserant non esse contra suam ligeantiam, vel fidelitatem quam Regi fecerant, nec ad aliud exercitum congregasse, nisi solummodo pro salvatione personarum suarum, et reipublicæ meliori gubernatione. Quia census et talliagia, Regi concessa, pro salva regni custodia, convertebantur, ut dixerunt, in usus indebitos, et inutiliter consumebantur. Præterea querebantur, quod propter æmulorum delationes pessimas Rex eis infensus fuerat, et non auderent personaliter ad ejus venire præsentiam, donec Prælati, regnique Barones, Regi supplicassent pro eisdem, ut coram Rege permitterentur declarare suam innocentiam, et per pares suos legaliter justificari. Plures igitur, visis hiis litteris, collaudabant tantam virorum sollertiam, et extollebant fidem quam erga rempublicam prætendebant.

Grounds alleged by them for their rising.

The King's answer to their complaints.

Sed Rex, ut fraudem comperit, turbatus nimirum, cogitabat quibus mediis communitati posset satisfacere, et eorum ficta commenta pessundare. Scripsit ergo personis quibus ipsi scripserant, dicens se mirari quam

[1] *si* in ed. Camden.

maxime, quod cum Comes Northumbriæ, et Henricus, ejus filius, percepissent partem maximam summarum sibi concessarum per clerum, seu communitatem, Angliæ, pro tuitione Marchiæ Scotiæ, ut posset evidenter ostendere, unde concepissent materiam tantæ non solum querimoniæ, sed detractionis manifestæ. Scripsit insuper, quod intellexerat Comitem Northumbriæ, filium quoque suum, necnon et Comitem Wygorniæ, certificasse multis, se non audere, propter æmulorum delationes, ad Regis venire præsentiam, sine mediatione prævia prælatorum et procerum; quare supplicabant ut partes interponerent, ut de Regis gratia venire possent, ad allegandum pro se, et sua innocentia declaranda. Quamobrem scripsit eidem Comiti *et cætera*, sub sigillo regio, quod possent accedere sine damno, salvoque recedere sine periculo, sive dolo. A.D. 1403. He makes offer of a personal interview.

Sed effrenata temeritas, spreto lenimento regali, rigorem rebellionis induit, et Salopiam properavit, sperans, ut putatur, in auxilio Howeni Gleyndor, et Edmundi de Mortuo Mari, quorundamque Cestrensium et Wallicorum. At Rex, ut persensit induratam juvenilem malitiam, (nam pater ejus non excesserat limites patriæ suæ,) decrevit occurrendum fore festinanter Henrico, patruo quoque suo, Domino Thomæ Percy, priusquam conflassent exercitum fortiorem. Nempe hii et eorum complices publicari fecere per patrias Regem Ricardum vivere, et apud eos esse; cujus nomine, sive causa, bella sumpserant contra Regem. Quem si videre vellent, incunctanter accederent, armis instructi, et in castro Cestriæ viderent infallibiliter dictum Regem. Quæ quidem, quamvis dolosa, denunciatio, varios in multorum mentibus motus effecit, et fluctuare coegit plurimos, ut ignorarent cui parti foret tutius adhærendum. Multi revera afficiebantur Regi Ricardo, et præcipue qui familiares ejus quondam fuerant, et ab eo donati feodis vel aliis donativis. Percy hastens to Shrewsbury, to join Gleyndor. He gives out that King Richard is still alive.

Rex Henricus, præmissa prudenter attendens, cum The Earl of

A.D. 1403. esset manu fortis et audax, congregavit quos potuit,
Dunbar instigates the King to immediate action. instigante eum Comite de Dunbarre, Scoto, maxime; qui monuit omnino ne moras [1] necteret, commemorans illud Lucani,—

"Tolle moras, semper nocuit differre paratis,
"Dum trepidant nullo firmatæ robore partes."

Fecit Rex ut Scotus monuit, et inopinatè pervenit
Speech of Henry Percy, on the King's approach. ad partes ubi rebelles [2] bacchabantur. Henricus autem, subito conspecto vexillo regio, cum jam instaret effringere villam Salopiæ, mox destitit ab infestatione villanorum, dicens suis:—"Desistere nos," inquit, "oportet "ab inceptis, et arma vertere in eos qui contra nos "veniunt. Videtis certe signum regium, nec vacat "quærere, licet vellemus, divortium. State proinde cor- "diter, quia dies hic aut nos omnes promovebit, si "vincimus, aut de fastu regali liberabit, si victi simus. "Nam pulchrius est in bello cadere pro republica, quam "post bellum mori hostis nostri sententia."

Conveniunt in [3] hoc votum subito qui sequebantur Henricum, ad numerum [4] quatuordecim millium lectissimorum hominum, qui se perstituros ad flatum ultimum
The King offers terms to Henry Percy. cum Henrico promittunt. Præoccupaverant autem campum illis magis accommodum; Rex vero constitit cum suis, tenens campum ad eorum oppositum. Cumque partis utriusque pugnatores signum belli præstolarentur, Abbas Salopiæ et Clericus de Privato Sigillo pro
Ambiguous conduct of Sir Thomas Percy. parte Regis legatione fungebantur, ut offerrent Henrico pacem et perdonationem, si desisteret ab inceptis. Quorum persuasionibus Henricus effectus mansuetior, cum illis direxit ad Regem patruum suum, Dominum Thomam Percy, qui sibi tantæ turbationis causas exprimeret, et emendas exigeret, cum effectu. Ferunt autem, quod cum Rex omni rationi condescendisset, et humiliasset se

[1] *flecteret* in ed. Camden.
[2] *bacchantur* in ed. Camden.
[3] *hunc* in MS.
[4] 40,000 in ed. Camden.

secus quam personam regiam decuisset, idem Dominus Thomas Percy, cum redisset ad nepotem, contraria referens responsis regiis, exacerbavit mentem juvenis, et ad bellum impulit, etiam non volentem. A.D. 1403.

Igitur [1] arcitenentes Henrici prœlium inchoarunt, nec erat locus ad terram jaculis, sed in corpora ferrum omne ruit, caduntque de parte Regis ad instar foliorum decidentium brumali tempore post pruinam. Nec minus regii sagittarii suum peregere negotium, sed imbrem asperrimum spiculorum in adversarios emisere. Cadunt proinde utrinque plurimi, velut cum poma ruunt in autumno, cum moventur ab Africo, multaque simul millia de loco belli fugiunt, putantes Regem sagittis occisum. Ipse vero campi-ductor Henricus partis adversæ, Comesque Douglas, Scotus, quibus animosiores nullus unquam reperisset, spretis jaculis emissis de parte Regis, spretis armatorum consertis cuneis, contra solam personam regiam vires excitant, arma vertunt; ipsum pro decem millibus computantes, stratis requirunt obviis, infestis lanceis et gladiis perscrutantes. Comes de Dunbarre, cum comperisset istorum propositum Regem subtraxit a statione sua, quod factum salutare fuit Regi ea vice, quia et signifer regius a furentibus est prostratus, vexillumque dejectum, et circumstantes occisi; inter quos Comes Staffordiæ et Dominus Walterus Blount, miles regius, cecidere; Princepsque, Regis primogenitus, pertentans prœliandi primitias, ictu sagittæ vulneratur in facie.

Fierceness of the combat.

Danger of the King.

Prince Henry is wounded in the face.

Interea Dominus Henricus Percy, dum præcedit suos, inopinato concidit interemptus, dubium cujus manu. Quo cognito, fugerunt partis adversæ defensores, quibus fugiendi copia est permissa. Sed Comes de Dowglas captus est; hic bina vice hoc anno pugnans adversus Anglicos, adversam semper repertus est fortunam. Nam in primo bello trajectus caput, amisit oculum, in secundo

Sir Henry Percy is slain.

Douglas is taken prisoner; and many others.

[1] *architenentes* in MS.

A.D. 1403. verenda transfixus perdidit paulo minus loculum, et sub jugum venit captivitatis secundæ. Captus est etiam Comes Wygorniæ, Dominus Thomas Percy, inceptor, ut dicitur, totius mali, et causa præsentis infortunii, cum Domino Richardo Vernoun, et Barone de Kyndertone, cum multis aliis. De parte Regis ceciderunt decem milites, multi scutiferi, plures valetti, et ad numerum trium millium sunt graviter vulnerati. Ex parte rebellium corruit major pars militum et scutiferorum Comitatus Cestriæ, ad numerum ducentorum, præter domicellos et pedites, quorum numerum non tenemus. Commissum fuit hoc prœlium in Vigilia Sanctæ Mariæ Magdalenæ, quo nunquam, ut putatur, ullum acrius gestum fuit.

Numbers of the slain.

Executions at Shrewsbury.

Die Lunæ sequente, nam Sabbato commissum fuit antedictum bellum, judiciali sententia decollati sunt, apud Salopiam, Comes Wygorniæ, Baro de Kyndertone, et Dominus Ricardus de Vernona.

The Earl of Northumberland is stopped in his march.

Die etiam Lunæ secuta proximo, dum Comes Northumbriæ in manu robusta et brachio [1] extenso versus filium suum properat, vel certe versus Regem, ut putatur, pro redintegrando pacis negotio, Comitem Westmarlandiæ et Robertum Watertone ne progrederetur habuit impedimento. Hii nempe, exercitu grandi collecto, obviare sibi subito disponebant; qui neutrum horum putans sibi benevolum, frena reflexit, rediens ad castellum proprium de Werkwurtha.

He returns to Werkworth.

Truce with France.

Eo tempore nuncii missi in Franciam reportarunt indùcias, bellique vacationem, usque ad diem primum mensis Martii; videbanturque magnam rem fecisse, in tanta rerum turbatione.

The Earl of Northumberland meets the King at York; and

Compositis rebus Salopiæ, Rex progreditur Eboracum, ubi constitutus mandavit litteraliter Comiti Northumbriæ, ut sibi occurreret. Dimissa turba, venit Comes, ad Regis monita, in [2] crastino Sancti Laurentii, cum

[1] *extento* in ed. Camden. | [2] *castro* in ed. Camden.

parva familia; non tamen susceptus est familiaritate solita, sed potius more supplicis gratiam requirentis. Cui Rex vitam condonavit, et victui necessaria, decernens conservandum secura custodia. A.D. 1463. is placed in safe keeping.

Reversus Rex de partibus borealibus, disposuit adire Walliam, ad compescendum insolentiam Wallicorum, qui multa damna irrogaverant patriæ post recessum suum; sed tamen retinuit eum rei familiaris inopia, eo quod destitutus esset pecunia, pro exercitu conducendo. Astitere sibi tunc milites et scutiferi, magis Dionæi quam Martii, Lavernæ quam Palladis; qui censuerunt Episcopos, qui tunc illic forte convenerunt, equis et auro spoliandos, domumque pedites remittendos, ut familiarium Regis egestas ipsorum abundantia levaretur. Affuit tum gratiose Dominus [1] Cantuariensis, qui respondisse fertur, unus pro omnibus, satis alacriter, milites improbos non spoliaturos de suis aliquem, nisi prius ausus temerarios luerent datis ictibus, et spolia verberibus nundinarent. Rex interea, se gerens moderatius, aucupabatur quodammodo benevolentiam prælatorum; unde contigit quod Dominus Cantuariensis, convocato clero, sibi de una decima, cum consensu Præsulum, provideret. The King is prevented by want of means from proceeding against the Welch. Proposition for despoiling the Bishops of their horses and money. Grant made by the clergy.

Britones Armorici, Duce Domino de Castellis, villam de Plummouthe invadunt, impune diripiunt, et succendunt. Mox classis occidua, sub ducatu Willelmi de Wilford, scutiferi, in partibus prædictæ Britanniæ, cepit naves quadraginta, refertas ferro, oleo, sepo, et vino de Rupella, ad numerum mille doliorum. Redeundo vero, cremavit naves quadraginta, et apud Penarche applicans, idem Willelmus, cum suis, combussit villas et prædia ad spatium sex leukarum. Villam quoque Sancti Matthæi ultricibus flammis dedit, et tria millia in gyro dictæ villæ. The Bretons burn Plymouth. Successes of the English Western fleet.

Paucis diebus ante Natale Domini, Galli, stipati bellatorum turba, ascenderunt terram in Wecta Insula, The French plunder the Isle of

[1] This name is omitted, with an hiatus, in the *Hist. Angl.*, II. p. 259.

A.D. 1403. Wight; but are put to flight.

jactantes se celebraturos Natalis festa illic, etiam invito Rege. Cumque mille de Gallis intrassent insulam, et greges ac armenta fugassent, ut ad mare reverterentur cum præda non modica, superveniente subito auxiliatorum copia, coacti sunt prædas dimittere, et ad navigia cum dedecore festinare, non sine damno suorum. Sicque contigit, ut qui prius instanter ab incolis petierant rerum redemptionem, vix evadere potuerunt publicam internecionem.

The Earl of Northumberland is restored to his dignities, A.D. 1404.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo quarto, in Parliamento tento Londoniis, post Octavas Epiphaniæ, Comes Northumbriæ restitutus est suæ dignitati pristinæ, bonisque mobilibus et immobilibus integraliter, et hæredes sui.

Grant in Parliament; unusual nature thereof.

In hoc Parliamento concessa fuit Regi taxa insolita, et incolis tricabilis, et valde gravis. Cujus modum præsentibus inseruissem, nisi concessores ipsi et [1] auctores dicti tallagii in perpetuum latere posteros maluissent; nempe sub ea tantum conditione concedebatur, ne traheretur posterius in exemplum, nec servarentur ejus evidentiæ in Thesauraria regia, nec in Scaccario; sed scripturæ vel recordationes ejusdem, protinus post datum compotum, cremarentur; nec emitterentur brevia, seu commissiones, contra collectores vel inquisitores hujus negotii, de melius inquirendo.

The French demand tribute from the Isle of Wight, in the name of King Richard and Queen Isabella; which is refused.

Gallici, circa tempus illud, venerunt ante Vectam insulam cum magna classe, miseruntque de suis quosdam, qui peterent, nomine Regis Ricardi et Ysabellæ Reginæ, tributum vel pecuniale subsidium, ab insulanis. Qui responderunt Regem Ricardum fore defunctum, et Reginam, quondam suam conjugem, remissam pacifice ad parentes et patriam, sine conditione tributi; quapropter finaliter responderunt, se subsidium non daturos; sed si belli voluntas tenebat Gallicos, jusserunt ut scanderent, sine cujusvis impedimento, et daretur illis spatium

[1] *authores* in ed. Camden.

refocillationis, post ingressum insulæ, sex horarum; et, expleto tempore supradicto, daretur infallibiliter [1] eis bellum. Quo audito, Galli, nullo perfecto negotio, recesserunt. A.D. 1404.

Per idem tempus, Dominus de Castellis, [2] Britannicus, fatis se trahentibus, cum multitudine Gallorum et Britonum, apud Dortmouthe, cum intolerabili fastu, terram scandit; putans fortunam secuturam, sicut prius apud Plummouthe; sed secus accidit quam sperabat. Nam ab hiis quos maxime habebat contemptui, scilicet, ruralibus, est peremptus; et qui post ipsum terram scanderunt, mox oppressi a rusticis, capti sunt protinus, vel occisi. The French land at Dartmouth, and their leader is slain.

Fœminæ quoque fraudari non debent hujus facti præconio, quæ fundarum missilibus hostes diris straverunt ictibus. Unde contigit plures a fœminis, plures a rusticis, sterni vel captivari. Prowess of the English women.

A rusticis vero occidebantur multi, quia nescierunt eorum linguam, quamvis grandes pro sua redemptione summas obtulissent. Sed rurales rudes, alia pro aliis interpretantes, putabant eos comminari, quando pro vita sollicite supplicabant. Many of the French slain; through ignorance of their tongue.

Capti tamen sunt eo die tres domini, et milites nominati viginti; pessundeditque Deus eo die arrogantiam superborum, et esse fecit victoriam rusticorum. Prosecuti sunt igitur captivos suos rustici ad Regis usque præsentiam, postulantes aliquod commodum prædæ suæ; cum quibus Rex ipse libenter convenit, et, crumenis eorum suffarcinatis fulvo metallo, abire permisit ad propria, detinens captivos penes se, graviori censu in posterum redimendos. The King rewards the peasants, and retains the French prisoners.

Mense Aprili concessa fuit Regi per clerum una decima; conditionaliter, scilicet, ne quis provisorum de cætero capiat bona vel cariagia de ecclesiasticis, contra voluntatem eorum; sed tamen, appensa pecunia, neglecta mox fuit conditio interposita. Conditional grant by the clergy.

Anno præsenti, quinto Idus Maii, clarescentibus miraculis circa corpus Sancti Johannis, quondam Prio- Translation

[1] *illis* in ed. Camden.

[2] *Britannicis* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1404. Elevation of the body of Saint John of Bridlingtone.

ris Canonicorum de Bridelingtone, de mandato Domini Papæ, translatum fuit corpus ejusdem Sancti Johannis, per manus honorabilium virorum, scilicet, Eboracensis Archiepiscopi, et Dunelmensis atque Karleolensis Episcoporum.

Ravages committed by Owen Gleyndor.

Per omne tempus æstatis præsentis, Howenus Gleyndor, cum suis Wallicis, prædatur, incendit, et destruit, regiones sibi contiguas, et nunc dolis et insidiis, nunc aperto Marte, multos captivat, plurimos perimit Anglicorum, castellaque nonnulla capta complanat, quædam sibi conservat integra pro tutela. Johannes Trevor, Episcopus Assavensis, cernens rem prosperari in manu Wallici, conversus est in [1] arcum pravum, factus transfuga ad Howenum.

The Bishop of St. Asaph joins him.

Capture of English ships by Bretons and Flemings.

Eo tempore, Flandrenses et Britones ceperunt quasdam naves nostratum, onustas mercibus, et nautas gladio vel suspendio peremerunt.

The Countess of Oxford spreads a report that King Richard is alive; and distributes his cognizances.

Per [2] id temporis, Comitissa vetula quondam Oxoniæ, mater Roberti de Veer, Ducis Hiberniæ, quem exulatum diximus, et mortuum fuisse Lovaniæ, fecit per se suosque familiares divulgari, per omnes fines Estsexiæ, Regem Ricardum vivere, et in proximo fore venturum, et honorem pristinum vendicaturum; fecitque fabricari cervos argenteos et auratos plurimos, signa, videlicet, quæ Rex Ricardus conferre solebat suis militibus, scutiferis, et amicis, ut, hiis vice Regis distributis, facilius allicerentur in vota sua milites illius patriæ, cæterique valentes. Urgebat nempe plurimos ad putandum quod Ricardus viveret, fama quæ quotidie ferebatur e Scotia Regem Ricardum inibi constitutum, expectare solummodo tempus accommodum, quo, cum forti brachio Francorum atque Scotorum, posset recuperare regnum.

Reports from Scotland to a like effect.

Serle, a former chamberlain of King Richard,

Auxit errorem istum cujusdam Serlonis, quondam cubicularii Regis Ricardi, commentum; qui falso finxerat Privatum Sigillum nomine dicti Ricardi, et destinaverat litteras consolatorias, simul et commonitorias, multis

[1] *animum* in ed. Camden. | [2] *idem tempus* in ed. Camden.

in regno de dicti Ricardi quondam familiaribus, in quibus et continebatur ejus incolumitas, et ipsius in brevi cernenda prosperitas. Hac occasione, multi dederunt fidem dictis et scriptis ipsius Dominæ Comitissæ, in tantum, ut crederent ejus mendaciis; et religiosi quidam Abbates illius patriæ, qui expost, eo quod cum Comitissa sensisse videbantur, de mandato regio, tenti sunt, et carceribus mancipati. Comitissa vero, confiscatis [1]bonis suis omnibus, arctæ custodiæ commendatur. Clericus vero, qui præmissa fallaciter auribus multorum instillaverat, tractione et suspendio muneratur; nam et ipse diligenter eundo per patrias, præeminentes personas nitebatur ad credendum allicere Regem Ricardum non solum vivere, sed in proximo palam cunctis fore, adjiciens se dictum Regem nuper allocutum fuisse loco tali, talique denique apparatu.

A.D. 1404. aids the imposture.

The Countess is imprisoned, and Serle is hanged.

In festo Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, vocante Rege, Comes Northumbriæ venit ad Pontem Fractum, nepotes suos, et filiorum suorum filios, secum ducens; quo facto, mitigavit corda complurium, qui putabant eum rebellionis juvenibus præbuisse consilium. Venit et cum Comite [2] Willelmus de Clifford, miles, trahens secum Serlonem, invisum toti regno, de quo supra fit sermo, quem parum ante ceperat cautelose; quo facto, penes Regem meruit excusari, quod ultra placitum tenuisset Berwyci castrum, propter quod reus læsæ majestatis extiterat. Viso Serlone, fervebat omnis ætas in domo regio sciscitari, scire, vel audire, quibus modis, quibusve sociis, illum inclytum Regis filium, Regis avunculum, Ducem Gloverniæ, jugularit. Ille vero, jam actum de se non ignorans, hoc solummodo fatebatur, quod dignus fuit mille mortibus propter hoc scelus. Qua confessione, simul et pœnitudine, multorum ita demulsit animos, ut gratis promitterent se pro ejus anima presbyteros conducturos, qui suffragia spiritualia ali-

The Earl of Northumberland obeys a summons to Pontefract.

Sir William de Clifford brings Serle thither.

Confession of Serle as to the death of the Duke of Gloucester; and the alleged existence of King Richard.

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *Gulielmo* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1404. quot diebus ferrent. Requisitus cur dementare voluerat multos, ut putarent Regem Ricardum vivere, respondit se hoc odio Regis fecisse, ut alienaret ab ipso corda suorum; retulitque se beatum fuisse potuisse tam in aula Regis Franciæ, quam in aula Regis Scotiæ, si non defuisset gratia; sed cum bene sibi fuisset in domo Regis Franciæ, audito quod Rex Ricardus viveret, in Scotiam se transtulit, ut probaret si veridica fama foret. Quo cum pervenisset, et invenisset quidem personam similem, sed non ipsum quem quærebat, nihilominus tamen, ut illuderet tam Scotis quam Anglis, affirmavit hunc esse Ricardum Regem, proculdubio præservatum ab æmulis divino miraculo. Sed expost, cum comperisset commentatam fallaciam patefaciendam, et ipse jam incurrisset rei familiaris inopiam, pervenit Berewycum ad dictum Willelmum Clifford, putans se per ipsum pecuniali subsidio relevandum, quo redire in Franciam potuisset; sed in hac parte sua spe frustratus est. Nam Willelmus ipsum captum detinuit, usus consilio satis callido, ut Regis gratiam nundinaret hujusce mercimonio. Igitur Serlo finali judicio tractus est in qualibet villa præcipua, inter Pontem Fractum et Londonias, inchoans pœnas meritas in ipsa villa regali de Ponte Fracto.

His detention by Sir William Clifford.

Particulars of his execution.

Parliament at Coventry.

Eo tempore, Rex, indigens, ut fertur, pecunia, convocavit regni proceres ad Parliamentum tenendum Coventreiæ, circa festum Sanctæ Fidis Virginis, non considerato quod ipso anno, tempore Quadragesimali, Parliamentum celebraverat apud Westmonasterium; quod inutiliter, ut multis videbatur, per duodecim hebdomadas fuerat protelatum. Direxit ergo brevia Vicecomitibus, ne quosquam pro Comitatibus eligerent quovismodo milites, qui in jure regni vel docti fuissent, vel apprenticii, sed tales omnino mitterentur ad hoc negotium, quos constaret ignorare cujusque juris methodum; factumque est ita. Qui, convenientes in unum,

Proposal

et sapientes in idipsum, cum propositum fuisset pro parte Regis, quo premebatur rei familiaris incommodo, instantibus prope Scotis et Wallicis, procul Britonibus, Flandricis, et Gallicis, selecti milites Parliamentales, pro relevando Rege, non aliud invenire potuere remedium, quam confiscandi Christi per totum regnum patrimonium; scilicet, ut Ecclesia generaliter de bonis temporalibus privaretur. Hinc orta est inter clericos et laicos grandis altercatio; militibus regiis asserentibus se pro Rege, atque cum Rege, profectos sæpius contra rebelles et hostes, non solum sua expendisse profusius, sed corpora quoque multis periculis exposuisse, sive laboribus, clericis interim otiose domi sedentibus, et in nullo Regi suffragantibus.

A.D. 1404. by the Knights of Parliament to confiscate the property of the Church for the King's necessities. Altercation between the clerks and the laymen.

Contra quæ, Dominus Cantuariensis respondit, clerum tantum semper contulisse Regi, quantum laici, dum decimas ipsi frequentius darent Regi, quam ipsi quintas-decimas, et insuper tenentes sui non minori numero Regem sequebantur ad bella vel pericula, quam tenentes feodi laicalis. Et super hæc omnia, nocte dieque Missas et orationes facerent pro eodem, et omnium sibi famulantium prosperitate. Et cum ad hæc Prolocutor militum vultu voceque prætendisset publice se preces Ecclesiæ parvipendere,—"Jam," inquit Dominus Cantuariensis, "video manifeste quorsum tendit regni fortuna, "exclusis, vilipensisque, suffragiis, quibus Divinitas pla- "cari solet. Certe nunquam fuit diu regnum stabile, "quod vacavit a precibus et devotione. Attamen tu, "qui vilipendis cleri religionem, ne te putes impune "direpturum Ecclesiæ possessionem; quia, si vivit Can- "tuariensis, malo tuo rapies quicquam de suis." Erat autem Prolocutor miles dictus "Johannes Cheyne," qui, ut fertur, militiam sortemque Christi deserens, in sortem Martis, apostatando, transierat; nam, prout dicunt, diaconus fuerat ordinatus, nulla tamen, ut resiliret, dispensatione licentiatus. Archiepiscopus, inter hæc, Regem nutantem considerans, surrexit, genuque flexo coram Rege, rogavit ut attenderet quam gratiose reg-

The Archbishop of Canterbury threatens Sir John Cheyne, the Speaker.

The Archbishop appeals to the King.

A.D. 1404. num consecutus sit, attenderet primitivum propositum [1] suum, quod cuilibet servaret jura propria pro posse suo, attenderet et juramentum quod non invitus præstiterat, videlicet, quod Ecclesiam et ministros ejus honoraret, foveret, et manuteneret; attenderet et periculum juramenti, sive dedecus, violati; et Ecclesiam gaudere permitteret suis privilegiis et libertatibus, quibus gavisa est antecessorum suorum temporibus; vereretur offendere Regem, per Quem reges regnant, vereretur et censuras quas incurrunt, qui res ecclesiasticas deprædantur; quos omnes constat excommunicationis sententia innodari.

The Archbishop censures the Knights of Parliament for their cupidity.

Hiis a Cantuariensi prolatis, Rex præcepit ei repetere sedem suam, asserens voluntatis suæ fore Ecclesiam in adeo bono statu dimittere, sicuti eam invenerat, vel potius meliori. Archiepiscopus, concionatus militibus, dixit: — "Vos," inquit, "et vestri similes, consilium "dedistis Domino nostro Regi moderno, et antecessori- "bus suis, ut confiscarent bona Cellarum [2] quas Gallici "vel Normanni possederunt in Anglia, dicentes eis per "hæc divitias accumulandas in magna copia, et quidem, "prout valent, multa fulvi metalli millia; sed tamen "constat hodie Regem non esse ditiorem dimidia qui- "dem marca, vobis extorquentibus vel emendicantibus "de manu sua, et vobismet appropriantibus dicta bona; "unde potest conjici, vos, non pro Regis utilitate, sed "pro vestra cupiditate, temporalia nostra petere. Quia "proculdubio, si Rex, quod absit, vestro satisfecisset "execrando proposito, non esset opulentior uno quad- "rante sequenti anno. Et certe prius hoc caput ex- "ponam gladio, quam Ecclesia destituatur minimo "jure suo."

He is supported by certain temporal peers; in return for

Milites, hac sententia, simul et Metropolitani repercussi constantia, conticuere; Archiepiscopus vero, ut Argus, sibimet ex omni parte prospiciens, cum comperisset milites perstituros in petitione temporalium, do-

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *quæ* in. ed. Camden.

minos temporales quosdam allexit in partem suam, qui constanter affirmaverunt Sanctam Ecclesiam nunquam sua voluntate suis [1] temporalibus spoliandam; et in hac parte reddentes Archiepiscopo et Prælatis gratiam, pro gratia quam sibi prius præstiterant, quando milites petierunt ad opus Regis restitui quæcunque dicti domini de corona tenebant, vel dono Regis nunc, vel antecessorum suorum, Regum Edwardi et Ricardi. Cui scilicet petitioni Dominus Cantuariensis obnixius restitit, et prælati; sicque factum est, ut de exactione temporalium nulla fieret mentio in posterum. A.D. 1404. his support on another occasion.

Sed et milites ipsi, qui importune perstiterant in hoc errore, Domino Cantuariensi supplicabant, ut illis ignosceret, fatentibus malitiam et reatum suum, et gratias agentibus quod animositate sua sub hac tempestate respirasset Ecclesia, commemorantes illud [2] Ethnici, ita dicentis,— The Knights of Parliament ask pardon of the Archbishop.

—" Tu sub principe duro,
" Temporibusque malis, ausus es esse bonus."

Præter multa quæ concessa fuerunt Regi in hoc Parliamento, laici concesserunt duas quintas-decimas, ea conditione, ut Dominus de Furnival, et cæteri, [3] reciperent omnem censum illum, et expenderent in werris Regis. Revocatæ sunt etiam patentes Regis præconcessæ personis variis de sustentatione sua annua per Reges Edwardum et Ricardum, militibus Parliamentalibus ita censentibus, licet id in Regis dedecus redundaret. Clerus concessit Regi unam decimam et dimidiam, non obstante quod medietas unius decimæ, ultimo præconcessæ, in festo Sancti Martini fuerat persoluta. Other proceedings in Parliament.

Eo tempore, tanta repente, ruptis limitibus, irrupit aquarum influentia in terra Domini Cantuariensis, et aliorum in Kancia, quanta nunquam fuerat illic ante visa; qua submersa sunt animalia numero et pretio excessivo. Nec solummodo deflevit Anglia damna talia; Great inundation in Kent. Similar inundations

[1] *temporibus* in MS.
[2] Martial, *Epigr.* xii. 6.
[3] *reciperet . . . expenderet* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1404. in Zealand, Flanders, and Holland.

sed, ut fertur, Selandia, Flandria, et Holandia, per undarum excrementa innumerabilia, sensit dispendia eo anno.

Death of William Wykham.

His foundations at Winchester and Oxford.

Hoc in tempore, vir grandævus, Dominus Willelmus Wykham, Wintoniensis Episcopus, vivere mundo desiit; cujus sumptibus et industria quotidie clerus Anglicanus augmentatur et crescit. Nam in Wintonia constituit Collegium novellis grammaticis, et in Oxonia subtilioris scientiæ clericis fundavit domum. Exhibentur autem in utroque loco centum personæ, de sumptibus provisis per eundem.

Death of Pope Boniface IX.; accession of Innocent VII.

Mense Octobris, primo die mensis, obiit Romæ Papa Bonifacius Nonus; cui successit Episcopus Bononiensis, et vocatus est "Innocentius Septimus," alias dictus "Cosmatus Gentilis," vir per omnia dignus nomine et gradu tanto.

The sons of the Earl of March stolen, but restored, A.D. 1405.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo quinto, circa festum Sancti Valentini, capti sunt filii Comitis Marchiæ, et abducti; sed cito post recepti de castro de Wyndeleshores. Faber ferrarius, qui claves fixerat, per quas patebat ingressus ad eos, truncatione manuum atque capitis est mulctatus.

Lady Despencer seized, and placed in confinement.

Domina Despencer, relicta Domini Thomæ Despencer, nuper occisi Bristolliæ, dum fugit, ut fertur, ad Howenum Gleyndor, cum filio octenni, capta est, et cunctis thesauris spoliata, perque regios ad Regem reducta, custodiæ arctioris subiit nocumenta.

The Peers decline making a grant to the King.

Post festum Purificationis, Rex, accersitis Londonias regni Baronibus, tractabat cum eisdem de regni regimine, deque pecuniali subventione sibi ferenda; sed proceres regiis votis tunc minime paruere.

A similar proposition is made, with the like result.

In Quadragesima vero sequente, Rex convenire fecit apud Sanctum Albanum clerum, regnique Barones, pro præmisso negotio; sed proceribus renitentibus, nil actum fuit; discesseruntque cuncti, velut in concordi discordia, penes Regem, in Vigilia Palmarum.

Sub hiis diebus, Comes Marescallus, Thomas Mounbray, armis instructus, accessit ad Archiepiscopum Eboracen-

sem, Magistrum Ricardum le Scroop, dubium an voluntate motus propria, an a Pontifice sollicitatus ut veniret; eoque tempore Dominus de Bardolf, Thomas, adivit Comitem Northumbriæ, Dominum Henricum Percy, eo animo ut molestarent Regem, ut expost apparuit manifeste. Sed Archiepiscopus atque Comes Marescallus non diu celavere propositum, quin mox palam facerent intentum suum. De Comitis nempe Northumbriæ, Dominique de Bardolf, ut fertur, confisi solatio, cives Eboraci, cum multis aliis, evocaverunt in magno numero, ut starent cum ipsis pro regni commodo, communiumque salute. Et ut promptiores redderentur ad præsens negotium, fixerunt articulos in ostiis monasteriorum et ecclesiarum urbis, scriptos in Anglicis, pro quibus oportuit eos voluntarie in armis esse. A.D. 1405. The Archbishop of York and Earl Marshal rise, for the redress of grievances.

Lectis igitur articulis, milites, armigeri, plebs urbana et rustica, intellecto pio proposito, in magno valde numero, Pontificem constipavere, quem cunctis commendabant et ætatis gravitas, et vitæ præcedentis sanctitas, et incomparabilis litteraturæ scientia, et cunctis amabilis ipsa persona. Support given to the Archbishop.

Comes Westmarlandiæ, qui cum filio Regis, Johanne, tunc prope fuit, audito rumore præcedentium, congregatis copiis, festinat occurrere pontificali turbæ, priusquam multiplicata facile vinci non posset. Sed frustra; nam manus Archiepiscopalium multa fortior erat gente sua. Misit ergo qui peterent causam tantæ conglobationis, et cur, contra pacem regiam, adessent armati. Archiepiscopus respondit, se nil moliri contra pacem regiam, quinimmo cuncta pro pace, tranquillitateque, facere; armari vero, sive vallari, hominibus, tantum ob metum regium, ad quem alloquendum tutum non haberet accessum, sine multitudine assentatorum. Propositum vero suum Regis et regni fore commodum, si forte noscere vellent illud; demonstravitque schedulam, qua articuli continebantur. Quam cum legisset Comes Westmarlandiæ, verbo vultuque laudavit palam Præsulis pium, sanctumque, propositum, spondetque se velle pro- The Earl of Westmoreland expostulates. The Archbishop's answer. The Earl proposes a conference.

A.D. 1405. sequi, cum suis, propositum Archipræsulis; unde petit ut accedat cum paucis in medium, secum habiturus colloquium, et ipse cum paucis obviaret sibi, adæquatus numero personarum.

Credulity of the Archbishop.

Antistes, gavisus, credit verbis Consulis, persuadetque Comiti Marescallo, etiam nolenti, secum procedere ad locum colloquio deputatum. Ad quem cum pari numero convenissent, cum perlecta fuisset charta de articulis, mox Comes, et qui cum eo erant, præbuerunt assensum dictis articulis, et favorem.

He and the Earl Marshal are treacherously seized by the Earl of Westmoreland.

Tunc Comes, astutior cæteris,—"Ecce!" inquit, "finis "optatus assumpti laboris; jam diu est quo populus "perseveravit in armis, renunciet ex vestris aliquis "genti vestræ, ut domum redeant, arma deponant, et "solitis occupationibus operam dent consuetam. Nos "interim, in signum concordiæ, bibamus pariter, cer-"nente populo partis utriusque." Nec mora, datis dextris, miles emittitur de parte Præsulis, qui renunciet pacem populo, jubeat unumquemque, depositis armis, sua revisere; quoniam jam partes in unam sententiam convenere. Illi vero videntes signa pacifica, procereseque combibentes, fessi ex insueta militia, læti lora vertere. Sicque factum est, ut, illis recedentibus, cresceret ex condicto paulatim adversorum numerus; nec prius intellexit Archiepiscopus se seductum, quam per manus fuit Comitis arrestatus. Comes etiam Marescallus est arrestatus, cum multis aliis, per eundem. Quibus omnibus indemnitas est promissa, sed nullatenus observata; quia tam Præsul, quam Comes, decollatus fuit postea, veniente Rege ad Eboracum in crastino Pentecostes. Quo facto, patuit illud febricitantis Bridelingtonæ vaticinium fore verum, prædicentis satis obscure præsens factum, sub hiis verbis:—

They are beheaded at York.

"Pacem tractabunt, sed fraudem subter arabunt,
"Pro nulla marca salvabitur ille hierarcha."

The Archbishop is venerated

Archiepiscopo decapitato, qui satis constanter necem tulit, martyrio pulchro finitus, ut vulgares opinabantur,

qui etiam asseverebant miracula quædam facta fuisse tam in campo quo decollatus est, quam in loco quo sepultus est, illico vulgus promiscuum cœpit obnixe colere cineres Antistitis jam defuncti, quem dilexerant perante viventem; donec per quosdam regales prohibiti, Præsulis monumentum revisere metuebant. A.D. 1405. as a martyr. Visits to his tomb are forbidden.

Corpus vero Domini Thomæ Mounbray, Comitis Marescalli, permissione Regis, sepultum est in ecclesia Cathedrali, multis dolentibus vicem ejus; sed caput ejus, fixum in stipite, stetit supra muros urbis longo tempore, expositum fervori atque pluviæ. Quod tandem cum Rex annuisset ut consepeliretur corpori, ferunt inventum fuisse in nullo fluxum, in nullo marcidum, in nullo penitus decoloratum; sed eundem prætulisse decorem, quem vivens obtinuerat. Disposal of the remains of the Earl Marshal.

Rex post hæc, civibus Eboracensibus mulctatis ad libitum, qui cum Archiepiscopo senserant, promovit exercitum ad persequendum Comitem Northumbriæ, et Dominum Thomam Bardolf, omne præparamentum belli secum contrahens, et exercitum triginta septem millium pugnatorum. Comes Northumbriæ, comperto Regis proposito, Berwicum se transtulit. The King marches against the Earl of Northumberland.

Eo tempore, nuncii Regis Daciæ, Norwegiæ, et Suaviæ, venientes in Angliam, petiere Regis filiam in conjugium domino suo. Horum præcipuus fuit Episcopus[1] Solucensis, qui cum scriptore præsentis Chronicæ, de Vita Sancti Albani, cujus peroptime novit [2] et communicavit historiam, eo quod in Danemarchia Martyr noster celebris habeatur. The King of Denmark takes the King's daughter in marriage.

Interea Rex, firmans faciem contra Comitem Northumbriæ, venit Berwycum; Comes vero a facie formidinis ejus fugit in Scotiam, et Dominus de Bardolf cum eo; quos Dominus David Flemming, Scotus, in fide sua suscepit. Rex autem, cum cognovisset fugam Comitis, The Earl of Northumberland flies to Scotland.

[1] *Soluiensis* in ed. Camden.

[2] This passage is apparently incomplete.

A.D. 1405. Berwick Castle is surrendered to the King.

mandavit hiis qui erant in castello, ut illud sibi redderent. Quod cum illi præcise negarent, incendit gunnam magnam, cujus unico jactu dejecit partem unius turris, et inclusos tantum terruit, ut mallent objicere se sponte gladiis, quam expectare secundam jactum. Redditum est ergo castrum Regi, et de defendentibus partim fuere decollati, partim carceribus mancipati. Quo recepto, et pro votis disposito, castrum de [1] Alnewyk et cætera castra Comitis reddita sunt faciliter in manus Regis.

He captures Alnewyk and other Castles.

Misfortunes overtake the King in Wales, through great inundations.

Quibus successibus Rex elatus, redivit incunctanter Walliam, ubi e contrario nil sibi cessit prosperum, sed velut infortunate omnia gerebantur. Quapropter, nullo perfecto negotio, reversus est, currus, carectas, et plaustra, perdens, numero quinquaginta, prout fertur, cum thesauro maximo et coronis suis, per aquarum inundationes supervenientes improviso. Venit ergo Wygorniam,

He demands succour of the clergy.

et, accersitis Archiepiscopo et aliis Episcopis, patefecit eis infortunium quod acciderat, petens sibi succurri per eosdem; cui respondit Archiepiscopus, se cum clero super isto negotio tractaturum.

French forces arrive in aid of Owen Gleyndor.

Medio tempore, Gallici, venientes in succursum Wallici, id est, Howeni Gleyndor, cum centum quadraginta navibus, applicuerunt in portu de Milleforde, amissis primo, pro penuria recentis aquæ, pene omnibus equis suis. Dominus de Berklee et Henricus Pay combusserunt ex eisdem navibus quindecim, in eodem portu. Dicti vero Gallici obsederunt urbem Kaermerdyn, et ceperunt; concessis prius defensoribus omnibus bonis mobilibus, cum licentia se transferendi quocunque vellent.

TheFrench experience great losses.

Sub eodem tempore, captæ sunt naves quatuordecim per supradictos Dominum de Berklee et Dominum Thomam de Swynburne, ac Henricum Pay, dum velificarent versus Walliam, ad auxiliandum Howeno; in

[1] *Alnewik* in ed. Camden.

quibus Senescallus Franciæ, et alii septem capitanei, capti fuere. A.D. 1405.

Villa de Royston conflagravit in die Translationis Beati Martini. Royston burnt.

Comes Arundeliæ duxit, Londoniis, in uxorem filiam Regis Portingaliæ notham, satis magnifice; præsentibus Rege Angliæ et Regina, in crastino [1] Sanctæ Katerinæ. The Earl of Arundel marries the daughter of the King of Portugal.

In festo Conceptionis Sanctæ Mariæ, [2] domina, Regis filia, præconis voce proclamata est Regina Daciæ, Norwagiæ, et Suaviæ, sive Suessiæ, in præsentia nunciorum, qui eam venerant petituri. The King's daughter is proclaimed Queen of Denmark.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo sexto, Dominus Rogerus de Waldene debitum naturæ solvit, qui, varia fortuna vectus, expertus est, sub brevi tempore, quam sit Death of Roger de Waldene, Bishop of London, A.D. 1406.

—"Inconstans, incerta, volubilis ipsa,
"Errans, instabilis, vaga, quæ, dum stare putatur,
"Occidit, et falso mentitur gaudia vultu."

Nempe per hanc, ex pauperculo, factus est regni Thesaurarius, et mox Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, quo jure mundus novit, vivente Domino Thoma de Arundelia. Et illico dejectus et privatus per longa tempora, tandem levatur iterum in Londoniarum thronum [3] venerandum; quo tamen non est permissus gaudere [4] per annum. Huic successit Dominus Nicholaus [5] Bobwith. His varying fortunes.

Hoc in tempore, Dominus Papa peremptores Ricardi Scroope, quondam Eboracensis Archiepiscopi, publice excommunicavit. The slayers of the Archbishop of York excommunicated.

Eo tempore inchoatum est Parliamentum, quod protelabatur inutiliter fere per annum. Quia postquam Parliamentales milites distulissent diu concedere Regi subsidium, in fine tamen fracti, concessere taxam peti- Prolonged sitting of Parliament.

---

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[2] *eadem domina* in ed. Camden.
[3] *per annum, quo* in ed. Camden.
[4] He was bishop rather more than a year.
[5] *Hobwith* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1406. tam, grandi communitatis damno. Nam propter hanc dilationem, expensæ militum æquiparabant pene subsidium postulatum. Per clerum autem nova taxa Regi conceditur, levanda de presbyteris stipendiariis et Fratribus Mendicantibus, ac aliis religiosis, qui annalia celebrabant; ut horum quilibet dimidiam marcam Regi daret, in relevationem cleri, videlicet, qui semper onus portaverat pro eisdem.

The Earl of Northumberland flies to Wales.

Per idem tempus, Comes Northumbriæ et Dominus de Bardolf, monitu David Flemming, fugerunt in Walliam. Patefecerat nempe illis conspirationes Scotorum, qui conspiraverant illos tradere Regi suo, pro quorundam captivorum commutatione. Ob quam causam, David a Scotis occiditur, et Scoti provocantur ad intestina bella; in tantum, ut, invalescente discordia, treugas annales petere cogerentur. Quibus firmatis in terra, Scoti misere per æquora filium Regis sui, et hæredem, ut coalesceret, et informaretur in Francia de facetia linguaque Gallica. Quem quidam nautæ de Cley cepere [1] fortuitu, et quemdam Episcopum, Comitemque de Orkeney, quibus commissus fuerat a patre suo; et ad Angliam deduxerunt, Regique dederunt. Rex vero, resolutus in jocos, dixit:—"Certe si grati fuissent "Scoti, hunc misissent mihi juvenem instruendum, "nam et idioma Franciæ ego novi." Missique sunt ad Turrim Londoniarum dictus juvenis et Comes [2] Orkadum, Episcopo per fugam lapso.

Civil war in Scotland, and truce with England, on land.

The son of the King of Scotland is taken at sea, and delivered to King Henry.

Great losses of the French, at sea.

Eo tempore, dum Galli in succursum properant Howeni Gleyndor, cum ratibus viginti octo, captæ sunt ex eis octo naves armatis refertæ, reliquis in Walliam evadentibus meticulose. Non multo post, captæ sunt naves quindecim, portantes vinum et ceram, per mercatores nostros ad maris custodiam deputatos.

The Pope bestows the Archbishopric

Papa contulit Archiepiscopatum Eboracensem Magistro Roberto Alum, Cancellario Oxoniensi, tunc in Curia existenti; sed Rex Angliæ indignatur, et contradicit.

[1] *fortuita* in ed. Camden. | [2] *Orkeney* in ed. Camden.

Hac æstate, Rex et Regina perduxerunt puellam virginem, Regis filiam, ex priore conjuge procreatam, ad villam de Lenna, ut inde transfretaret in Daciam, ad sponsum suum, Regem. Hanc comitabantur nobiles, inter quos Episcopus Bathoniensis erat, et Dominus [1] Ricardus, frater Ducis Eboraci. Qui redeuntes, expleto negotio, parum vel nihil boni de patria retulerunt. A.D. 1406. of York, against the King's will. The young Queen of Denmark is escorted to Lynn.

Circa finem Autumni, Dominus Henricus le Spencer, Episcopus Norwycensis, ingreditur viam patrum; vir qui et militis suo tempore consummavit officium, et pontificale non neglexit debitum. Cujus loco monachi Norwicenses elegerunt Alexandrum, commonachum et Priorem suum. Death of Henry le Spencer, bishop of Norwich.

Adhuc durante Parliamento, restitutus est Dux Eboraci dignitati pristinæ, qui putabatur a multis obiisse in carcere. The Duke of York restored to his former rank.

Comes Kanciæ duxit in uxorem filiam Domini de Mediolano. Marriage of the Earl of Kent.

Hoc anno, die Sancti Clementis, Apostolica Sede vacante, per obitum [2] f. re. Innocentii, Papæ, Septimi, Cardinales, considerantes Christianæ religionis infamiam contractam ex pestifero schismate, quod tantis proh dolor! temporibus perduravit, convenerunt: voverunt Deo, ac ejus Matri, Mariæ, et Sanctis Apostolis P[etro] et P[aulo], totique cœlesti Curiæ, juraverunt, et ad invicem unus alteri, et e converso, se obligando, solemniter promiserunt, quod si quis eorum assumptus foret ad apicem summi Apostolatus, renunciaret effectualiter juri suo, et Papatui, si et quando Antipapa qui est, et pro tempore fuerit, consimiliter renunciaret ac cederet, et Anticardinales sic convenire ac [3] concordare vellent cum eisdem dominis et Sacro Collegio; sic quod [4] ex ipsis duobus Collegiis inæquaretur juste canonica electio unius Romani Pontificis; ac etiam pro- Death of Pope Innocent VII. Compact of the Roman Cardinals, for putting an end to the schism.

[1] Richard, Earl of Cambridge.

[2] *Sic* in MS., *nuper* in ed. Camden.

[3] *concorditer* in MS.

[4] *ex et pro ipsis* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*, Vol. II., p. 274.

A.D. 1406. mitterent se facturos, et curaturos, quod si quis ex dominis absentibus, vel extra Collegium, per eos [1] assumeretur in Papam, eandem faceret obligationem. Quodque nullus eorum a prædictis promissione, voto, et obligatione, absolutionem peteret, vel impetraret. Et ad majorem præmissorum firmitatem, quilibet ex dominis de Collegio supradicto, manu sua [2] se subscripsit. Elegerunt itaque Dominum Angelum, tituli Sancti Marci, Presbyterum Cardinalem Constantinopolitanum, et vocaverunt "Gregorium Duodecimum"; qui, eodem die, post electionem, votum, sacramentum, et promissionem, prout superius continetur, in præsentia dictorum Cardinalium et testium, sic manu propria subscripsit:—

Election of Pope Gregory XII.

Oath made by him, in conformity with the above agreement.

"Ego, Gregorius, hodie, die ultimo mensis Novembris, "anno Domini millesimo quadringentesimo sexto, as- "sumptus in Romanum Pontificem, juro, voveo, pro- "mitto, ac confirmo, omnia supradicta," *et cætera.* Coronatus est autem die Sancti Andreæ Apostoli, vir annorum circiter octoginta.

Four ships of Lynn are swallowed up by a whirlpool, on their voyage to Bordeaux.

Circa festum Sancti Martini, cum rates Anglicæ versus Burdegalam cursum tenderent, et infrequentatum mare nostris hactenus attentarent, quatuor naves de villa de Lenna, navigantes incautius, inciderunt subito in Charybdim, quæ dicitur esse in mare Hispanico, et, cernentibus sociis, absorptæ sunt. Nam illic dicitur esse mare vertiginosum, quod occultis gurgitibus naves sorbet. Ter enim in die stringit fluctus, et ter vomit. Aquas itàque—

"Accipit, ut vomat, vomit ut accipiat";

unde [3] Naso;—

"Evomit epotas dira Charybdis aquas."

Doctæ sunt ergo reliquæ priorum periculo, vela reflectere de tam pernicioso pelago; venereque salvæ Burdegalam, sed numero diminuto.

---

[1] *assumerentur* in ed. Camden.
[2] *se* omitted in ed. Camden.
[3] Ovid., *Remed. Amor.* l. 740.

Appropinquante Natali Dominico, exactum est instantius ut Regi provideretur de pecuniali subsidio. Sicque tandem concessa fuit ei quinta-decima de communi populo. A.D. 1406. Grant by the laity to the King.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo septimo, soluta est obsidio villarum de Burgh et de Bloy in Wasconia, facta per Ducem Aurelianensem; qui cum quinquaginta millibus venerat ad subvertendum illas. Sed Deo dispensante, Qui superbos humiliat, nulla dies per octo hebdomadas illuxit ei sine tempestate pluviarum, nivis, et grandinis, mixtæ cum ventis et fulmine; quæ tam homines ad mortem compulit, quam jumenta. Quibus infortuniis fertur sex millia hominum perdidisse; et qui, in adventu suo, super fortunam suam nimis ambitiosus, fecerat deportari supra caput suum a quatuor militibus pannum aureum, jam revertens inglorius, gaudebat ab imbribus cessare cœlum. Misfortunes overtake the Duke of Orleans in Gascoigne. A.D. 1407. A punishment for his extreme vanity.

Per idem tempus, Henricus Pay, et quidam de Quinque Portubus, cum navibus quindecim, in mari Britannico, centum viginti naves anchorantes, onustas ferro, sale, vinoque de Rupella, ceperunt. Great capture of French ships.

Episcopus Sarum, Ricardus de Mithforde, sæculo valefecit. Death of the Bishop of Salisbury.

Eo tempore, fixæ sunt scedulæ multis in locis Londoniis; quibus continebatur, quod Rex Ricardus viveret, et in proximo venturus esset, in magnificentia et gloria, accipere sibi regnum. Sed non multo post, captus et punitus, ausus tam temerarii stultus commentator, ex mendacio multorum conceptam lætitiam temperavit. Statements circulated, that King Richard is alive. The inventor of the report punished.

Hac æstate, ex aeris corruptione, tanta pestis humanis est infusa corporibus, quanta non est visa per annos plurimos in hac terra; ut ita dicam,— Great pestilence.

"[1] Letiferis calidi spirarunt æstibus Austri,
"Pestis [2] et in magnæ dominatur mœnibus urbis."

---

[1] Ovid. *Metam.*, vii. ll. 532, 553. | [2] *etiam in* in ed. Camden.

A.D 1407. Disastrous effects thereof in London and the country towns.

Nam et Londoniis consumpsit, infra breve tempus, ad triginta millia sexus utriusque. In villis vero ruralibus,—"Pervenit ad miseros damno graviore colonos," ut multæ domus, quondam frequentibus lætæ familiis, penitus vacuarentur.

Ineffectual negotiations between the Pope and the Anti-Pope.

Eodem tempore, prout videbatur, in unam [1] convenere sententiam Papa Romanus et Antipapa, per litteras directas ad invicem; attamen nondum finis.

Captures by the French, and by the garrison of Calais.

Sub hoc tempore, Gallici ceperunt munitionem de [2] Eye, et destruxerunt, ac bona inibi reperta rapuerunt; unde dolentes stipendiarii Calesiæ, ceperunt et ipsi castrum de [3] Pouile, et ibidem bona reperta copiosa valde, Calesiam comportarunt.

Defeat of the King of Naples by the supporters of Pope Gregory.

Prope medium mensis Junii, cum Papa Gregorius se parasset ad proficiscendum Savonam, juxta condictum inter ipsum et Antipapam, gratia unionis faciendæ in Ecclesia Dei, repente, dæmonis instinctu, supervenit Rex Neapolis, et ante portam Sancti Laurentii consedit cum exercitu; unde Dominus Papa confugit, cum Cardinalibus, in castellum Sancti Angeli, et, accersito nobili viro, Paulo Ursino, jussit ut cum manu militari valida opem ferret. Qui, commissa pugna, peremit [4] septuaginta millia de hostibus Ecclesiæ, nobilibus multis captis. Rex vero, mœrore plenus, aufugit, et inglorius Neapolim repedavit. Hac occasione retardatum est negotium unionis et pacis [5] in Ecclesia Sancta Dei.

Death of Sir Robert Knollis.

Circa festum Assumptionis Beatæ Virginis, Dominus Robertus Knollis diem clausit extremum; cujus arma regnum Franciæ sensit et expavit infesta, Ducatus Britanniæ verebatur Armoricæ, atque pertimuit gens citerioris Hispaniæ. Qui, præter laudem quam sibi peperit in gestis martiis, construxit pontem ultra flumen de Medewey, juxta Roffam, provexitque domum Fratrum Carmelitarum Londoniis, fundavitque colle-

Bridge built by him over the Medewey; and other benefactions.

[1] *convenire* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Aye* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Pomle* in ed. Camden.
[4] *septem* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*, Vol. II., p. 276.
[5] Repeated in MS.

gium sæcularium clericorum apud Pontem Fractum, et alia multa laudabilia consummavit. A.D. 1407.

Death of Guy de Mone, bishop of St. David's.

Eodem anno, [1] Guido de Mone, Menevensis Episcopus, præsentis lucis sensit eclipsim; qui, dum vixit, magnorum malorum causa fuit.

Promotions to vacant bishopries.

Sub eodem tempore, Magister Henricus Bowet, ad instantiam Regis, translatus est ab Episcopatu Bathoniæ ad Archipræsulatum Eboracensem; et Magister Robertus [2] Alum, cui Papa providerat de Archiepiscopatu Eboracensi, thronum conscendit Saresbiriensem, vacantem per [3] mortem Magistri [4] Clickhole de Chichele. Magister vero [4] Richardus de Clifford de Pontificatu Wygorniensi transiit ad Sedem Londoniæ; Thomas vero Peverelle ab Episcopatu Landaffensi transfertur ad Cathedram Wygorniensem.

The Prince of Wales takes the castle of Aberustwythe.

Hac æstate, Dominus Henricus, Princeps Walliæ, cepit per obsidionem castrum de Aberustwythe, sed non multo post Howenus Gleyndor fraudulenter illud intravit, et novos custodes imposuit.

Parliament at London.

Mense Novembrio, facto Parliamento Londoniis, facta fuit levatio pecuniæ de toto regno.

Severity of the winter. Mortality among various kinds of birds, A.D. 1408.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo octavo, fuit hyems asperrima ex nivium abundantia, durans per menses Decembris, Januarii, Februarii, atque Martii; unde contigit pene cunctas volucres de genere [5] maviscorum, vel merularum, fame frigoreque perire.

The Earl of Northumberland and Sir Thomas de Bardolf return to England.

Eo tempore, Rege tenente Consilium grande Londoniis, cum regni magnatibus, Comes Northumbriæ, Dominusque Thomas de Bardolf, fatis iniquis urgentibus, in Angliam rediere. Qui, post longam equitationem, cum pervenissent ad villam de Thrisk, proclamari fecerunt, ut quisquis libertatem cuperet, arreptis armis, eos alacriter sequeretur. Igitur secuti sunt eos plurimi, putantes sibi cuncta pro votis accidere.

---

[1] He was Lord Treasurer.

[2] *Aluco* in ed. Camden.

[3] It was, in reality, vacant through the promotion of Nicholas Bubwith to the see of Bath and Wells.

[4] Inserted in a later hand.

[5] *inaniscorum* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1408. They are defeated by the Sheriff of York, and the Earl is slain.

Vicecomes vero de Euerwyk, cum militibus patriæ, illis [1] occurrens, juxta Heselwode commisso gravi prœlio, Comitem interemit. Cujus caput illico præcisum est. Dominus vero de Bardolf, ex vulneribus acceptis saucius, captus est vivus; sed cito postea defecit in mortem. [2] Acta sunt hæc, quantum ad bellum, undecimo Kalendas Martii; completaque putabatur prophetia quæ præmissa prænunciaverat, sub hoc involucro;—

"Stirps Persitina periet, confusa ruina."

Misfortunes of his family.

Nempe dominus iste stirps fuit cunctorum de nomine Percy superstitum, et aliorum plurimorum variis cladibus finitorum. De cujus infortunio vulgus non parum doluit; recolens viri magnificentiam, famam, et gloriam, applicans [3] sibi Lucani carmen lugubre, sic dicentis:—

"Sed nos nec sanguis, nec tantum vulnera nostri
"Affecere senis, quantum gestata per urbem
"Ora ducis; quæ transfixo deformia pilo
"Vidimus."—

Indignities offered to the Earl's remains.

Nam caput ejus, veneranda decoratum canitie, pilo superpositum, per urbem Londoniarum publice deportatum, super Pontem confusibiliter est locatum.

The Bishop of Bangor taken prisoner.

Pontifex Bangoriensis, captus cum prædictis dominis, donari vita meruit, eo quod inermis captus fuit.

Informers in the North of England.

Post mortem prædictorum procerum, vires assumpsit invidia, succrevitque delatorum turba in boreali patria, quæ patriotas accusare studuit de impenso favore dictis dominis. Quorum clamore Rex excitus, perrexit Eboracum, ad faciendum judicium transgressorum; ubi cum multos damnasset, plurima confiscasset, patriam pacificasset, suspenso Abbate de Hayles, qui cum præfatis dominis armatus steterat, rediit ad partes australes.

The King proceeds to the North; causes the Abbot of Hales to be hanged.

A Council held at London;

In crastino Sanctæ M[ariæ] Magdalenæ, in Concilio cleri celebrato Londoniis, assistentibus Doctoribus Uni-

---

[1] *occurrentes* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Facta* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Pharsalia*, ix. ll. 136–9.

versitatum [1] Oxoniæ et Cantabrigiæ, tractatum est de censu et obedientia Papæ subtrahendis vel non subtrahendis; qui, contra votum et juramentum præstitum, se subtraxit a loco, ubi, juxta pacta de cessione pro parte sua, procedendum fuerat, ad unionem in Ecclesia faciendam. A.D. 1408. in reference to breach of his compact by Pope Gregory.

Eo tempore, Dux Aurelianorum, dum scortis, stupris, incestibus, vacat, et adulteriis, in regno Franciæ, peremptus est a quodam milite, cujus conjugem adulterare consuevit. Dux Burgundiæ, quia præsumpsit factum defendere militis, proscriptus, et multis affectus incommodis, Franciam dereliquit; sed expost captus et incarceratus, solutus est sub pacto Calesiæ capiendæ. The Duke of Orleans slain. The Duke of Burgundy imprisoned, but released on condition of taking Calais.

In Vigilia Nativitatis Beatæ Mariæ, tanta fuit inundatio pluviæ, quantam senes et veterani antea non viderunt. Great fall of rain.

Dominus Edmundus, Comes Canciæ, dum obsidet castrum de Briaunt in Britannia, spiculo balistæ vulneratur in capite. Cepit tamen castrum, et destruxit funditus; nec multo post, putrefacto cerebro, mortem incurrit. The Earl of Kent is wounded in Bretagne; and dies.

Circa festum Omnium Sanctorum, venit in Angliam Cardinalis Burdegalensis, vir potens in opere et sermone, missus a Collegio Cardinalium ad informandum Regem, regnique clerum, de inconstantia Papæ Gregorii, prout prius edocuerat Regem Franciæ et incolas regni ejus; quatenus hii duo Reges, qui censebantur in orbe præstantissimi, manus apponerent adjutrices, ad inducendum dictum Gregorium ad servandum juramentum præstitum, ut, ipsorum duorum Regum auctoritate magnifica, unio fieri posset in Ecclesia. Cui negotio Rex Franciæ libens annuerat, et solemnes Gregorio nuncios destinaverat, licet tergiversanti et indurato. Quamobrem Rex Franciæ, secutus consilia doctorum Universitatum Parisiorum et Lovaniensium, Aurelianorum, Tholosanorum, et Montis Pessulani, ad evitandum pœnas fautoris schismatis, neutri de Papatu contendenti decrevit obedire, donec pax haberetur in Ecclesia Dei. A Cardinal arrives in England, to represent the bad faith of Pope Gregory. The King of France takes cognizance of such representations, and determines to recognize neither claimant of the Papacy.

[1] *Cantebrigiæ et Oxoniæ* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1408. The Cardinal is handsomely entertained in England.

Rex Angliæ, cum intellexisset propositionem Cardinalis, exhiberi sibi jussit omnem humanitatem, offerens sumptus sibi largifluos, quamdiu cuperet in Anglia perhendinare.

Persons chosen to appear at the General Council of Pisa, A.D. 1409.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo nono, post Epiphaniam, convocavit Dominus Cantuariensis regni clerum, Londoniis, ad eligendum personas idoneas, quæ proficiscerentur Pisas, ad Concilium Generale; inter quas [1] electæ sunt Magister Robertus Alum, Saresbyriensis Episcopus, cum aliis viris, doctis et prudentibus.

English embassy sent to Pope Gregory.

Præmiserat autem Rex Angliæ ambassiatores ad Papam Gregorium et Cardinales, Dominum Johannem Colvyle, militem, et Magistrum Ricardum Rixtone, clericum, cum litteris exhibendis eisdem. Et quidem in littera Papæ directa, inter cætera, scribit ita:—

Letter to him from the King of England.

" Beatissime Pater, si Sedis Apostolicæ dignaretur
" attendere providentia, quanta quasi per universum
" orbem pericula, prætextu schismatis, emersere, et
" potissime de strage populi Christiani, quæ ultra
" ducenta millia personarum, ut asseritur, ex guerra-
" rum fremitibus in [2] diversis mundi partibus exorta-
" rum, et jampridem ad numerum triginta millium,
" ratione dissensionis habitæ super Episcopatu Leodi-
" ensi inter duos, unum, scilicet, auctoritate domini
" veri Pontificis, et alium auctoritate Antipapæ titulo,
" [3] contendentes, in bello campestri, quod dolenter refe-
" rimus, fuerant interfecti; profecto jam dicta Sedes
" anxiaretur in spiritu, et justo dolore torqueretur in
" mente, dictanteque bona conscientia, potius Aposto-
" licæ Sedis honorem relinqueret, quam hujusmodi de-
" testanda [4] convitia de cætero sub dissimulationis
" chlamyde toleraret, exemplum sumens de vera matre,
" quæ, coram Rege Salomone contendens, cessionem
" potius elegerat, quam filii sectionem. Et quamvis

---

[1] *eliguntur* in ed. Camden.
[2] *diversarum* in MS.
[3] *contendentium* in MS.
[4] *conici* in MS., *connisi* in ed. Camden.

" ex illa nova creatione novem Cardinalium, contra A.D. 1408.
" juramentum vestrum, ut aliorum verbis utamur, ul-
" timo per vos [1] facta, de qua vehemens admirationis
" causa consurgit, possit aliquatenus, præsertim prout
" verisimile est censendum, intentionem vestram ad
" finem schismatis non intendere ; absit tamen a sæculo
" semper, quod Sedes vestra circumspecta de tanta
" mentis inconstantia notaretur ab aliquo ; unde novis-
" simus error, priore deterior, haberetur."

Hæc decerpsimus de epistola quam Rex direxit Papæ, ut cunctis liqueat, quam sobrie, quam modeste, tentavit Papam inducere ad votum juramentumque solvendum, ne per eum stare videretur, quominus in Ecclesia unitas reformaretur. The object of the King's letter.

In Epistola vero directa Cardinalibus, inter cætera, scripsit sic :— Letter to the Cardinals, from the King of England.

" Cupientes ostendere quantum zelum habuimus et
" habemus, ut pax detur Ecclesiæ, de consensu Sta-
" tuum regni nostri, Domino Summo Pontifici litteras
" nostras transmisimus, juxta seriem copiæ præsentibus
" interclusæ, effectualiter exequendas. Vestrum itaque
" venerabile cœtum affectuose precamur, quatinus, si
" contingat eundem Gregorium, interessendo Generali
" Concilio apud Pisas, et cedendo Papatui, juxta votum
" et juramentum per ipsum vicibus iteratis emissum,
" adquiescere votis vestris et nostris, prout cupimus
" et tenemus ipsum facturum ; pro statu suo taliter
" ordinare velitis, ut præcipue Deus exinde placetur, et
" tam ipse Gregorius, quam nos, qui non immerito
" suum honorem et commodum ex affectu diligimus,
" vobis, et singulis vestrum, merito teneamur ad gra-
" tiarum uberes actiones."

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo decimo, juxta condictum, convenere Pisas Domini Cardinales utriusque Collegii, videlicet, Gregorii et Benedicti, ut super refor- Election, at Pisa, of Pope Alexander V., A.D. 1410.

[1] *factum* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1410. matione unionis tractarent tam effectualiter quam finaliter, occurrentibus ad eundem locum pene totius orbis Latini prælatis, et viris venerabilibus electis ad suffragandum Cardinalibus in hac causâ; sic quod factus est ibidem numerus maximus mitratorum. Qui, invocata Spiritus Sancti gratia, consenserunt in unam personam, ac elegerunt unum qui caput esset totius Ecclesiæ, duobus aliis abdicatis, vocaruntque nomen ejus Alexandrum Quintum; licet Gregorius et Benedictus, qui se de Concilio prædicto sponte subtraxerant, procaciter obgrunnirent.

Privileges granted by Pope Alexander to the Priory of St. Bartholomew, in London.

Hic Alexander, in primordio suæ creationis, concessit omnibus vere confessis et contritis, qui manus adjutrices apponerent Ecclesiæ, sive Prioratui, Sancti Bartholomæi Canonicorum de Smethfeld, Londoniis, scilicet, die Cœnæ Domini, die Parasceues, sive Sancto Sabbato Paschæ, ac etiam in festo Annunciationis Beatæ Virginis, a primis Vesperis usque ad secundas Vesperas, et quolibet istorum dierum, plenam remissionem omnium peccatorum.

Promotions to office.

Creati sunt hoc anno Dominus Thomas Beufort in regni Cancellarium, et Dominus H[enricus] Scrop in Thesaurarium.

A layman burnt, in London, for heresy.

Facto Parliamento Londoniis, sub diebus Quadragesimæ, quidam laicus, arte faber, dum pertinaciter defendit hanc hæresim, quod, videlicet, non est corpus Christi quod sacramentaliter tractatur in Ecclesia, sed res quædam inanimata, pejor bufone vel aranea, quæ sunt animalia animata, nec vellet opinionem istam deserere, traditus est judicio sæculari. Cumque damnatus esset, et in Smethefeld includendus dolio, dominus Princeps, H[enrici] Regis primogenitus, qui tunc affuit, ad eum accessit, consuluit, monuit ut resipisceret. Sed neglexit perditus nebulo tanti Principis monita, et elegit [1] potius se comburendum quam Sacramento vivifico deferre reverentiam. Quapropter, dolio includitur, affligitur

Prince Henry attempts to convert him.

[1] *potius comburi* in ed. Camden.

a devorante flamma, mugitque miserabiliter inter incendia. A.D. 1410.
Clamore cujus horribili Dominus Princeps motus, jussit ignis [1] materiam ab eo subtrahi, ardorem longius amoveri. Consolatur pene mortuum, promittens nunc etiam se victurum et consecuturum veniam, ac singulis diebus vitæ suæ, si resipisceret, de fisco regio tres denarios percepturum. Sed miser, refocillato spiritu, respuit tantæ dignationis oblationem, non dubium quin maligno spiritu induratus. Quamobrem jussit Dominus Princeps eum iterum recludi dolio, gratiam nullam consecuturum de reliquo. Unde contigit, quod illic ad favillas arsit ardelio, miserabiliter mortuus in peccato suo.

At the last moment, he refuses to recant.

In hoc Parliamento milites Parliamentales, (vel, ut dicamus verius, satellites Pilatales,) in maligno positi, nulli commoditati regni studentes, ad unum solummodo scelus vacant, ut Ecclesiam Dei per Angliam spoliarent, hujuscemodi scedulam Regi dantes :—

Attempt, in Parliament, to despoil the Church.

" Excellentissimo Domino nostro, Regi, et omnibus
" Proceribus in præsenti Parliamento constitutis, omnes
" Communes fideles demonstrant humiliter, dicentes
" veraciter quod Dominus noster Rex potest habere de
" bonis temporalibus per Episcopos, Abbates, et Priores,
" occupatis, ac superbe vastatis in regno, quindecim
" Comites, mille quingentos milites, sex [2] millia ducen-
" tos armigeros, et centum xenodochia, plura quam nunc
" sunt, bene et fideliter sustentata de terris et tene-
" mentis nunc inutiliter vastatis."

Representation as to the vast pecuniary resources of the Church.

Sed cum niterentur ostendere, de quibus locis tam grandes summæ levari possent, unde præmissi dotarentur, sive ditarentur, defecerunt scrutantes scrutinio, et, dum diligunt vanitatem, quæsivere mendacium. Serenissimus autem Princeps, abominatus tantam Lollardorum malitiam, prohibuit ne de cætero præsumerent talia commentari. Cumque cœtus execrabilis Lollardorum militum videret se non posse progredi in præmeditata malitia, petierunt cum instantia, ut clerici con-

Fallacy of such representations; which are opposed by Prince Henry.

Attempt to render the clergy amenable to secular jurisdiction.

[1] *materia* in MS. | [2] *mille* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1410. victi de cætero non traderentur ergastulis episcoporum, sed carceribus regiis, et temporalium dominorum; sed nec hoc quidem consecuti sunt. Petierunt etiam, ut Statutum factum de Lollardis, in quo cavetur, ut ubicunque forent deprehensi dogmatizare doctrinas erroneas, caperentur sine brevi regio, et proximo Regis carceri manciparentur, vel mutaretur vel modificaretur. Et accepere responsum, se non habituros hujus petitionis propositum, quin potius Statutum super hujusmodi negotio aggravandum. Rex vero in præsenti Parliamento petiit, ut quotannis, dum viveret, sine Parliamento tenendo, decerneretur sibi de clero una decima, et de laicis una quinta-decima; sed non obtinuit.

Vain attempt for amelioration of the Statute against the Lollards.

Vain attempt by the King to obtain a grant for life.

A grant of one fifteenth.

Protelatum est ergo Parliamentum ab Octavis Sancti Hillarii fere in medium mensis Maii. Tandem de laicis concessa fuit illi una quinta-decima, non sine grandi murmure communitatis.

Death of the Earl of Surrey.

Hoc tempore, Dominus Thomas Beufort, Comes Surreiæ, concessit in fata.

The town and Abbey of St. Omer burnt.

Circa nonum diem mensis Aprilis, incensa est villa de Sancto Audomaro, cum Abbathia; ubi reconditus fuit apparatus execrabilis per Ducem Burgundiæ, qui pactus fuerat villam Kalesiæ vel destruere, vel Gallorum arbitrio subjugare. Ibi machinarum, hactenus nullibi conspectarum, multitudo maxima; ibi vasorum venena continentium, quæ projicienda præordinaverat in dictam villam, magna nimis abundantia servabatur. Collegerat siquidem serpentes, scorpiones, bufones, et alia venenorum genera, et incluserat in parvis cadis, ut dum computruissent illic noxiorum carnes animantium, et in tabem resolutæ fuissent, facta obsidione circa Kalesiam, cados emissos e machinis in villam projiceret; qui, dum confracti fuissent jactus violentia, fœtore pestifero strangularent inclusos, armatos contactu inficerent, et ubique vicos venena sparsa fœdarent. Interea juvenis quidam, ductus auri cupiditate, vel affectu villæ regiæ, petiit a rectoribus quid mercedis mereretur, qui villam

Abominable provision made there for the capture of Calais.

tanto metu vacuaret, et omnem apparatum, quem formidabant, incenderet. At illi summam fulvi metalli taxant; qua contentus, digreditur adolescens, et, immisso igne, non solum combussit dictam materiam, sed pene, cum Monasterio, totam villam. A.D. 1410. The town and Abbey designedly burnt.

Alexander Papa, Quintus, electus in Concilio Pisis celebrato, diem clausit extremum; cui successit Balthazar, Bononiensis Archiepiscopus, consensu utriusque partis Cardinalium; qui vocatus est "Johannes Vicesimus tertius." Death of Pope Alexander V.; accession of John XXIII.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo undecimo, hostis humani generis, invidens crementis orbis Christiani, non solum grave scandalum, sed et magnum dispendium, intulit Christianis. Siquidem Rex de [1] Krakou, tactus affectu Christianæ professionis, baptizatus est in nomine Sanctæ et individuæ Trinitatis. Qua de causa, cuncti noti et amici sui, qui remanserant in perfidia Sarazenica, se elongaverunt ab eo, et conspiraverunt, ut vel ipsum perverterent, aut certe bello delerent. Quorum ut comperit molitiones, tanquam Christicola, a vicinis Christianis contra hostes suæ fidei subsidium expetivit. Erant autem sibi contermini proceres et rectores de Le [2] Pruws, qui, priusquam Christianus effectus esset, consuevere terras suas invadere, et exinde prædas optimas martio jure referre. Sed jam, ratione religionis, cessare necesse fuit. Nihilominus Prusienses heroes, comperto quod affines sui persequerentur eum, ut afflictum magis affligerent, non verentes Deum vindicem, bellum sibi crudeles indicunt, quamvis ipse ab eis suffragia contra Sarazenos primitus implorasset. Itaque constitutus inter [3] incudem et malleum, quo se verteret ignorabat. Sed tandem, animatus, ut creditur, et indutus virtute ex alto, quo majus imminebat periculum, se convertit. Et licet hostes præstarent et numero et apparatu, invocato Rex neophytus Christi nomine com- The people of Prussia harass the King of Cracow, A.D. 1411. He defeats them.

[1] *Krakon* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Pruns* in ed. Camden.
[3] *cudem* in MS.

A.D. 1411. misit cum Prusiensibus, et fecit stragem magnam. Quo successu non solum sibi subegit hostes, sed et omnem regionem eorundem; in hoc tamen pie consulens subjugatis, ut permitteret eos suis avitis gaudere privilegiis, et mercimonia, prout soliti fuerant, exercere.

Shews leniency to them.

Hoc anno, Burdegaliæ, ex dysenteria, pene quatuordecim millia hominum periere, tantumque pestis invaluit in Aquitannia et Wasconia, quod vindemiatores et uvarum calcatores in patria defecerunt.

Dysentery at Bordeaux; and consequences thereof.

Johannes Prendergest, miles, et Willelmus Longe de—, pelagos præservantes a piratis, mare pacatum reddidere. Sed non toleravit hoc malevolorum supercilium, quin viros accusarent de furtis, de rapinis, de deprædationibus rerum inconcessarum. Quapropter miles Westmonasterii petivit asylum; non domum, vel [1] tugurium, ubi caput reclinare posset, obtinere potuit, metu Regis, id vetantis; sed in vestibulo Sancti Petri, explicatis tentoriis, sibi necesse fuerat repausare, adhibitis lateri suo custodibus, propter timores nocturnos, qui sibi ab æmulis parabantur. Remansit interim Willelmus, collega suus, in pelago, donec Admirallus, qui pro tunc fuit, naves armasset, et ad eum personaliter [2] accessisset, et impunitatem sibi, fide interposita, spopondisset. Qua conditione, relictis navibus, secutus est eum; sed tamen, non obstantibus promissis pollicitationibus, reclusus est in Turri Londoniarum.

Sir John Prendergest and William Longe clear the seas of pirates; but are persecuted, in consequence.

Dominus Cantuariensis, dum nititur visitare Universitatem Oxoniarum, repulsam passus est.

Visitatorial rights asserted over Oxford.

Guerra mota est inter Ducem Burgundiæ et Ducem Aurelianensem, filium Ducis Aurelianensis, nuper occisi factione Ducis Burgundiæ supradicti; suffragantibus Duci Aurelianensi Regibus Navarriæ et Arragoniæ, Ducibus Bituriæ et Britanniæ, cum Wasconibus et Aquitannicis, necnon Comitibus de Huys et de Armanak, et multis aliis. Dux Burgundiæ, cui favit Rex

War between the Duke of Burgundy and Duke of Orleans.

---

[1] *tigurium* in MS.

[2] *accessit* in ed. Camden.

Franciæ, et ejus primogenitus, dictus "Rector Franciæ," cum multis aliis, videns partem contrariam robore fortem, populositate numerosam, diffidens suis viribus, misit ambassiatores in Angliam; petens per eos Regis suffragia contra Ducem Aurelianensem, offerens plurima, pluraque promittens; inter quæ, nuptias filiæ suæ promisit Principi, simul cum maxima summa fulvi metalli. Cui Rex fertur tale dedisse responsum:—"Consulimus " ne cum hoste vestro præsumatis in hac causa con- " gredi, qui juste vos infestare videtur, pro nece per " vos procurata parentis sui; sed quantum in vobis est, " animum juvenis exasperati mitigare studete, satisfac- " tionem rationabilem, juxta consilium partis utriusque, " promittentes. Quod si nec sic a persecutione cessare " decreverit, secedite in partes tutiores vestri dominii, " et illic vires aggregate, quæ sufficiant ad repellandum " suam violentiam. Si vero post hæc bellum contra " vos moverit, ad congrediendum cum eo justius move- " bimini; et in tali causa favorem vobis, quem petitis, " exhibebimus."

A.D. 1411. Ambassadors sent to England by the Duke of Burgundy.

Advice given to him by the King of England.

Transmissi sunt ergo Comes de Arundelle, Comes de Kyme, Dominus de Cobham, Johannes Oldcastelle, et quidam alii, cum armata manu et arcitenentibus, in numero copioso; qui cum summa gratulatione recepti sunt per Ducem Burgundiæ, sufficienterque conducti. Sed cum moram Parisius diuturnam protraxissent, et jam macellarii carius solito carnes venderent, statuerunt nostrates egredi, et, si fortuna faveret, ab hoste quærere victum sibi.

A force of English is sent to Paris, and is welcomed by the Duke of Burgundy.

Jacuit tunc non procul Aurelianensis in loco quodam forti, cum privata familia, prope villam de Seynclo, in qua magna pars exercitus sui constituta fuit, quasi media via inter utrosque. Profecti sunt ergo Anglici pabulatum, proque sua necessitate providendum; dumque villam de Seynclo proponunt invadere, comperiunt pontem fractum ab hoste. Cui tabulas, licet strictas, longas tamen, hostes superstraverant, ut egredientes ab

The English defeat the Orleanists near Seynclo.

A.D. 1411. ingressu villæ nostros arcerent, et, si necesse foret, juxta qualitatem negotii, reverti possent. Pugnatum est igitur, et Franci fugati; qui, dum meticulose fugiunt, per artitudinem tabularum cadentes, in flumen demerguntur. Occisi feruntur ibidem mille trecenti, cæteris qui in villa fuerunt[1] ad Ducem fugientibus, casumque referentibus, cum ploratu. Qui confestim fugiens e diversa parte, saluti suæ consuluit. Nostri proinde villam de Seynclo deprædantur, captivos multos secum trahunt, Parisius revertuntur.

The English, for a sum of money, give up their prisoners to the King of France.

Regales et nobiles, cum vidissent manum magnam quam exercuerat Dominus super hostes per manum nostratum, Deum pro successu novo laudavere, nostrisque gratias retulere. Sed quia captivos secum traxerant, qui rei læsæ majestatis extiterant, eosdem captivos Galli mox judicialiter punire tentabant. Contradicunt nostrates, eo quod, pacta redemptione, salvassent eos juxta leges armorum, et timebant perdere summas pactas. Quapropter bile repleti, dum nituntur salvare quos tueri ceperant, de Parisiensibus plures morte plectunt. Sed tandem, recepta pecunia pacta pro redemptione captivorum de fisco Regis et civibus, permisere Francos gaudere suorum [2] mortibus. Quorum quidam decapitantur, quidam tormentis variis, juxta morem patriæ, mori coguntur.

Parliament at London.

Parliamentum celebratur Londoniis, in crastino Animarum.

Envoys sent to England by the party of the Duke of Orleans. A.D. 1412.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo duodecimo, Dux Aurelianensis, qui se putabat insuperabilem, accepta plaga per Anglos inflicta, mox disperquisivit media per quæ Regem Angliæ, [3] imo et proceres, ac commune vulgus, in affectum sui posset allicere; initoque consilio super isto negotio, scripsit Procuratorium sub hiis verbis:—

"Johannes, Regis Francorum filius, Dux Bituriæ et

[1] *cæterisque in villam fugerunt* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*, Vol. II., p. 286.

[2] *proditoribus* in ed. Camden.

[3] *necnon et* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*, Vol. II., p. 287.

" Alverniæ, Comes Pictaviæ, Boloniæ, et Alverniæ, *et* A.D. 1412.
" *cætera*, Karolus, Dux Aurelianensis et Valesii, Comes Powers given to the envoys.
" Blesensis et Belli Montis, et Dominus Conciati, Jo-
" hannes, Dux Burboniæ, Comes Clari Montis et Fores-
" tarum, et Dominus Belli Joci, et Johannes, [1] Comes
" Alenkoniæ, id est, de Armanak et de Pertica, et Do-
" minus Filgeriarum.—Notum [1] vobis facimus universis,
" quod nostrum quilibet, de probitate et fidelitate, cir-
" cumspectione et prudentia, Falconeti, *et cætera*, ad
" plenum confisi, ipsos, et eorum quemlibet, præsentium
" tenore, nostros procuratores fecimus certos, indubitatos,
" et irrevocabiles, ac nuncios et legatos speciales, ad
" tractandum, et concordandum, et concludendum, cum
" serenissimo Principe, Domino H[enrico], Dei gratia,
" Rege Angliæ, et illustrissimis ejus natis, *et cætera*,
" super restitutione et traditione reali Ducatus Aqui-
" tanniæ, cum suis juribus et pertinentiis universis,
" quæ ad serenissimum Dominum, Regem Angliæ, hæ-
" reditario jure, ut asseritur, pertinent, per nos eidem
" [2] fiendis, *et cætera*."

Postquam legati suum procuratorium exhibuissent, obtulerunt quæ in subscriptis articulis denotantur.— Particulars of their offers.

Primo, obtulerunt sua corpora exponenda pro servitio Domini Regis Angliæ, in omnibus suis causis et exactionibus, salva semper eorum fidelitate, scientes quod aliter requirere nollet. Secundo, obtulerunt filios suos, filias, neptes, nepotes, et universaliter omnes consanguineos suos, pro conjugiis faciendis, ad complendum juxta dispositionem Regis Angliæ. Tertio, obtulerunt castra, villas, thesauros, et alia bona, in obsequium præfati Domini Regis. Quarto, obtulerunt amicos fere omnes nobiles Franciæ, clericos famosos, cives honestos, qui eis assistunt, ut de facto patebit. Quinto, obtulerunt Ducatum Aquitanniæ integræ, eodem modo quo ejus prædecessores obtinuerunt, nihil excipiendo de per-

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden. | [2] *fienda* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1412. tinentibus ad præfatum Ducatum ; ita quod parati sunt recognoscere terras quas tenent a præfato Domino Rege, et tradere in manu sua quas possunt, et residuas pro viribus [1] conquæstant.

Their demands.

Ipsi vero petunt reciproce, quod Dominus Rex Angliæ, et successores ejus, eisdem dominis assistant, usque ad justitiæ complementum, contra Ducem Burgundiæ, scilicet, de crimine commisso in personam Ducis Aurelianensis. Secundo, petunt quod Dominus Rex Angliæ eis assistat contra Ducem Burgundiæ et suos fautores, usque ad reparationem omnium bonorum quæ habuerunt illius et suorum occasione causæ. Tertio, petunt quod assistat contra Ducem Burgundiæ pro restitutione dammorum, et reparatione offensarum amicorum, vassallorum, et subditorum suorum. Quarto, petunt quod eis assistat pro pace regnorum, quantum poterit, *et cætera.*

Price of pepper.

Hoc anno, libra piperis quatuor solidis vendebatur.

The King sends aid to the Duke of Orleans, and withdraws his support from the Duke of Burgundy.

Circa festum Assumptionis Beatæ Mariæ, cum Rex, decreto sui Consilii, statuisset opem parare partibus Ducis Aurelianensis, misit filium natu secundum, Dominum Thomam Ducem Clarenciæ, necnon Edwardum Ducem Eboraci, Dominumque Thomam Comitem Dorcetanum, plurimosque valentes, cum manu valida, ut Duci præfato ferrent auxilium contra Ducem Burgundiæ ; nondum reversis in Angliam cunctis, qui jamdudum, cum Comite Arundeliæ, transfretaverant ad roborandum partes Burgundionis : unde succrevit multis admiratio, qualiter tam repentina facta sit mutatio, ut sub temporis tantilli spatio contingeret Anglos velut duo contraria [2] confovere.

The English lay waste Normandy.

Profecti sunt tamen prænotati proceres, et in Neustria applicuere ; ubi cum Dux Aurelianensis, juxta condictum, tempore statuto non occurrisset, incenderunt villas suas, prædati sunt vicos, et municipia multa cepere.

[1] *conquiescant* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*, II., p. 288.

[2] *consonare* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1412. Conference of the Duke of Clarence with the Duke of Orleans.

Tandem, licet sero, convenerunt ad colloquium Duces Clarensis et Aurelianensis, habitusque est [1] tractatus inter eos, ut nostrates desisterent ab hostili equitatione, et a prædationibus temperarent. Quo concesso, recesserunt duces nostri in Aquitanniam, illic hyematuri; Aurelianensis ad propria se convertit.

Sir John le Blount defeats the Marshal of France.

Medio tempore, Dominus [2] de Heyle, Marescallus Franciæ, cum multis magnatibus, hominibusque de armis, ad numerum quatuor millium pugnatorum, obsedit quoddam municipium in Aquitannia, quod erat in custodia Domini Johannis [2] le Blount, militis; qui, cum trecentis auxiliariis, fugavit et fudit totum exercitum Gallicorum, captis de nominatis viris duodecim, et aliis generosis ad numerum centum viginti.

The King is seized with illness at Eltham; but recovers, A.D. 1413.

[3] Anno millesimo quadringentesimo tertio decimo, Rex Henricus tenuit Natale apud Eltham, valitudine gravi pressus, sic quod quandoque mortuus videbatur. Resumpsit tamen vires, Deo volente, et dies Natalitios jocunditate, qua potuit, celebravit.

He dies, and is buried at Canterbury.

Post Natale, convocavit regni proceres ad Parliamentum, tenendum Londoniis, in crastino Purificationis [4] Sanctæ Mariæ; sed tamen finem Parliamenti non expectavit, fato præventus, die vicesimo mensis Martii, cum gloriose regnasset annis tredecim [5] et dimidio, præter quinque dies; sepultusque est in Ecclesia Christi Cantuariæ.

Henry, son of Henry IV., is crowned, (as Henry V.)

Eodem anno, coronatus est Londoniis Henricus, primogenitus Regis Henrici, nuper defuncti, quinto Idus Aprilis, Dominica in Passione Domini. Quo die fuit tempestas nivis maxima, cunctis admirantibus de temporis asperitate, quibusdam novelli Regis fatis impingentibus aeris turbulentiam, velut ipse futurus esset in agendis frigidus, in regimine regnoque severus; aliis mitius de persona Regis sapientibus, et hanc aeris in-

Great storm at that time.

---

[1] *contractus* in ed. Camden.
[2] *de Nount* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Anno Domini* in ed. Camden.
[4] *Beatæ* in ed. Camden.
[5] Repeated in MS.

A.D. 1413. temperiem interpretantibus omen optimum, quod ipse, videlicet, nives et frigora vitiorum faceret in regno cadere, et serenos virtutum fructus emergere; ut posset effectualiter a suis dici subditis,—"Jam enim hyems "transiit, imber abiit, et recessit."

Virtuous conduct of the new King.

Qui revera, mox ut initiatus est [1] regni infulis, repente mutatus est in virum alterum; honestati, modestiæ, ac gravitati, studens, nullum virtutum genus omittens, quod non cuperet exercere. Cujus mores et gestus omni conditioni tam religiosorum quam laicorum in exempla fuere.

Parliament at London.

Post festum Paschæ, tenuit Rex Parliamentum solemne Londoniis, in quo subsidium petiit, et accepit.

The Duke of Clarence returns from Acquitaine.

Circa præsens tempus, rediit Dominus Thomas, Dux Clarenciæ, frater Regis, de partibus Aquitanniæ; quem directum diximus in auxilium Ducis Aurelianensis contra Ducem Burgundiæ.

Norwich partly burnt.

Sub hiis diebus, magna pars civitatis Norwicensis repentinis ignibus conflagravit.

Funeral of King Henry IV.

In festo Sanctæ Trinitatis, celebratæ sunt solemnes exequiæ Regis Henrici, [2] a Conquæstu Quarti, Cantuariæ, præsente Rege Henrico, filio suo, et hærede.

Decree as to the Feasts of St. George and St. Dunstan.

Eo tempore, decretum fuit per cleri concilium, Londoniis, apud Sanctum Paulum, celebratum, ad instantiam maxime Regis nunc, ut festivitas Sancti Georgii Martyris ut duplex festum de cætero celebretur. Quod etiam de festo Sancti Dunstani Dominus Cantuariensis censuit faciendum.

Death of Alexander, Bishop of Norwich.

Alexander, Episcopus Norwycensis, qui de veterano Priore loci prædicti Pontifex factus fuerat, curis sæculi valefecit; cui successit, per electionem, Magister Ricardus de Cortiniaco, dignus qui genere, moribus, et scientia, conquadraret hunc gradum.

Threatenings of the Lollards.

Eo tempore, Lollardi, qui doctrinam Evangelicam et Apostolicam, atque propheticam, depravabant, fixerunt scedulas in valvis ecclesiarum Londoniis, quæ conti-

[1] *regnum* in ed. Camden. | [2] *et conquesti* in ed. Camden.

nebant [1] centum millia parata ad insurgendum contra cunctos qui non saperent sectam suam. Innitebantur nempe viribus et ingenio cujusdam militis, qui dicebatur "Johannes Oldkastelle"; qui, ob reverentiam nuptiarum quas contraxerat cum affine nobilis viri Domini de Cobham, cognomen dicti domini est sortitus. [2] Erat iste Johannes fortis viribus, operi martio satis idoneus, sed hostis Ecclesiæ pervicacissimus; Regi, propter probitatem, carus et acceptus, sed tamen, propter hæreticam pravitatem, valde suspectus. A.D. 1413. Sir John Oldcastle, their leader, by courtesy called "Lord Cobham."

Eo tempore, facta Londoniis cleri Convocatione per Dominum Cantuariensem, maxime causa prædicti Johannis, repertum fuit quod idem Johannes fuit, et est, principalis receptator et fautor, protector et defensor, Lollardorum, et quod præsertim in Diœcesibus Londoniensi, Roffensi, et Herefordensi, ipsos Lollardos, ab Ordinariis, sive Diœcesanis, locorum minime licentiatos, contra Constitutionem Provincialem inde factam, ad prædicandum transmisit, eorumque prædicationibus nefariis interfuit, et contradictores, si quos repererat, minis et terroribus, ac brachii sæcularis potestate, compescuit; asserens, inter cætera, quod Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, et ejus Suffraganei, non habuerunt, nec habuit, potestatem aliquam hujusmodi Constitutionem faciendi; aliterque sentiit et sentit, ac dogmatizat et docet, de Sacramentis Altaris et Pœnitentiæ, peregrinationibus, et adorationibus imaginum, ac clavibus, quam Romana Ecclesia docet et affirmat. Quare, ex parte totius cleri Dominus Cantuariensis fuerat requisitus, ut de et super præmissis contra eundem Johannem procedere dignaretur. Qui tamen, ob reverentiam Domini Regis, cujus ad tunc idem Johannes familiaris extiterat, et ob honorem ordinis militaris, una cum omnibus Suffraganeis tunc præsentibus, et magna parte cleri, accessit ad Charges in Convocation against Sir John Oldcastle. Representations made to the King thereon.

[1] 10,000 *paratos* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Erat . . . et acceptus* omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1413. præsentiam Domini Regis, tunc in prædio suo de Kenington existentis, declaraturus ei defectus ejusdem. Ad instantiam tamen Domini Regis, cupientis eum sine dedecore revocare, suspensum fuit negotium magno tempore. Sed cum Dominus Rex circa reductionem ejus longum tempus trivisset inaniter, significavit Domino Cantuariensi, se circa eum inutiliter laborasse. Dominus igitur Cantuariensis dictum Johannem, de et super præmissis personaliter responsurum, coram eo ad certum terminum decrevit evocandum; ac nuncium suum, cum litteris citatoriis, ad dictum Johannem transmisit, tunc in castro suo de Coulyng degentem; mandans dicto nuncio, ut dictum castrum dicti Johannis nullo modo ingrederetur, nisi licentiatus; sed per mediationem cujusdam Johannis Buttiler, hostiarii Cameræ Domini nostri Regis, ipsum Dominum J[ohannem] requireret, quatinus aut daret dicto nuncio licentiam ingrediendi, ut citaret eundem, seu saltem extra castrum suum prædictum faceret sui copiam, ut sic citatione posset apprehendi. Qui tamen Johannes Oldcastille dicto Johanni Butiler, ex parte Domini Regis, sibi præmissa exponenti, publice respondit, quod nullo modo citari voluit, nec citationem ipsius aliqualiter tolerare.

The matter is postponed for a time.

The Archbishop of Canterbury attempts to cite Oldcastle.

Oldcastle declines to be served with the citation.

Hiis auditis, Dominus Cantuariensis decrevit eum citandum per edictum, in valvis Roffensis ecclesiæ, sibi vicinæ, publice affigendum; ut compareret coram eo undecimo die mensis Septembris, super præmissis, et aliis hæreticam pravitatem concernentibus, personaliter responsurus. Quo die adveniente, Dominus Cantuariensis, in capella majori infra castrum de Ledis, quod tunc inhabitabat, sedens pro tribunali, audita et recepta relatione, quod idem J[ohannes] se incastellavit et fortificavit in castro suo prædicto, ac opiniones suas defendit, claves Ecclesiæ, et potestatem Archiepiscopalem multipliciter contemnendo, fecit cum citari publice, ac præconizari. Qui, cum diu expectatus nullo modo compareret, prout erat, merito contumacem excommunicavit

The Archbishop causes him to be publicly cited.

in scriptis. Et quia dictus J[ohannes], in defensionem erroris sui, contra claves Ecclesiæ se incastellavit et fortificavit, Dominus Cantuariensis decrevit iterato citare dictum J[ohannem], si posset apprehendi; vel alias per edictum, sicut prius, ut compareret coram eo die Sabbati proximo post festum Sancti Matthæi, Apostoli et Evangelistæ, proximo futuro; causam rationabilem, si quam habeat, quare contra eundem ad graviora procedi non debeat, tanquam publicum hæreticum, schismaticum, et hostem et adversarium universalis Ecclesiæ; quare etiam pronunciari non debeat, ac auxilium brachii sæcularis contra eum solemniter invocari, personaliter responsurus, facturus, et recepturus, circa omnia et singula præmissa, quod justitia suadebit. A.D. 1413. He is excommunicated as contumacious. And is again cited.

Adveniente termino præfixo, Domino Cantuariensi sedente pro tribunali in [1] Capitulo Sancti Pauli, Londoniis, assidentibus sibi Dominis, Ricardo, Londoniensi, et Henrico, Wyntoniensi, Episcopis, Dominus Robertus Murley, miles, Custos Turris Londoniarum, secum præfatum Dominum Johannem adduxit; nam parum ante per regios ministros comprehensus fuerat, et in Turri clausus. Cui Dominus Cantuariensis recitavit processum memoratum; quomodo, videlicet, in Convocatione cleri detectus et delatus extiterat, quomodoque citatus, et, propter suam contumaciam, excommunicatus. Unde Dominus Cantuariensis gratiose se obtulit, et paratum fore promisit, ad absolvendum eundem. Sed ille absolutionem Domini Cantuariensis petere noluit, sed divertens ad alia, dixit quod libenter recitaret coram Domino Cantuariensi fidem quam tenet. Extraxitque de sinu suo quandam scedulam indentatam, quam tradidit Domino Cantuariensi, postquam legisset. Oldcastle is taken in custody, and appears before the tribunal. He refuses absolution offered by the Archbishop, and reads a profession of his faith.

Qua scedula perlecta, Dominus Cantuariensis dixit: —"Ecce! Domine Johannes, in hac scedula vestra "plura bona continentur, ac satis Catholica; sed habe- "tis terminum istum ad respondendum super aliis, The Archbishop puts further questions to him.

[1] *Capello* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1413. " errores et hæreses sapientibus, quibus per contenta in " hac scedula non est plene responsum. Et propterea, " vos oportet ad eadem respondere qualiter sentitis, et " fidem vestram plenius declarare; videlicet, an teneа- " tis, credatis, et affirmetis, quod in Sacramento Altaris, " post consecrationem rite factam, remaneat panis ma- " terialis, vel non. Item, an teneatis, credatis, et affir- " metis, quod in Sacramento Pœnitentiæ necessarium " fuerit, quod habens copiam sacerdotis, confiteatur de " peccatis suis presbytero per Ecclesiam ordinato?"

He refuses to make further answer; and the Archbishop warns him.

Qui respondit expresse, se nolle aliter prædicta declarare, quam in dicta scedula continetur. Cui compatiens, Dominus Cantuariensis dixit; — "Caveatis, " Domine J[ohannes]; quia si ad hæc vobis objecta clare " non respondeatis in termino legitimo vobis jam dato, " poterimus vos denunciare, et declarare hæreticum." Sed dictus J[ohannes] aliter respondere contempsit.

The Archbishop expounds the doctrines of the Church on certain points; and calls on him to make answer thereon.

Tunc Dominus Cantuariensis declaravit ei, quid Sancta Romana Ecclesia, sequens dicta Beatorum Augustini, Ieronymi, et Ambrosii, et aliorum Sanctorum, determinavit; quas determinationes oportet quoscunque Catholicos observare. Ad quæ dictus J[ohannes] respondit, quod voluit credere et observare, quicquid Sancta Ecclesia determinavit, ac quicquid [1]Deus voluit se credere et observare; sed quod Dominus Papa et Cardinales, Archiepiscopi, Episcopi, cæterique prælati Ecclesiæ, haberent potestatem talia determinandi, noluit ad tunc aliqualiter affirmare. Unde Dominus Cantuariensis, sibi compatiens, sub spe melioris deliberationis, datis sibi in Anglicis certis articulis, rogavit, ut in die Lunæ proximo sequente plene et clare suum daret responsum super eisdem.

Oldcastle is again summoned.

Quo die Lunæ, videlicet, vicesimo quinto die mensis Septembris, coram Domino Cantuariensi et antedictis Episcopis, adjuncto illis Bangorensi Episcopo, Domino Benedicto, comparuit Dominus Robertus Murle, Custos

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

Turris Londoniarum, ac præfatum Dominum J[ohannem] secum duxit, ac coram Domino Cantuariensi, et toto clero, pro tunc congregato, statuit. Cui Archiepiscopus affabiliter et suaviter recitavit acta prioris diei, et quomodo excommunicatus fuerat, et est; ac rogavit et requisivit eundem, ut peteret ac admitteret in forma debita Ecclesiæ absolutionem. Quod se dictus J[ohannes] facturum negavit; sed a solo Deo absolutionem petiturum. Consequenter, Dominus Cantuariensis, suavi et modesto modo, rogavit et requisivit eundem, quatenus de et super contentis in dicta scedula determinationem Ecclesiæ, eidem transmissam, de sibi oppositis clarum daret responsum.— A.D. 1413. He refuses to ask absolution of the Church. He is called upon to answer the charges.

Et primo, super Sacramentum Eucharistiæ.—Ad quem Articulum, inter cætera, respondit, quod sicut Christus, hic in terra degens, habuit in se divinitatem et humanitatem, divinitatem tamen velatam et invisibilem sub humanitate, quæ in eo aperta et visibilis fuerat; sic in Sacramento Altaris est verum corpus et verus panis, videlicet, quem videmus, et corpus Christi sub eadem velatum, quod non videmus. [1] Ad fidem circa Sacramentum hujusmodi in scedula prædicta, per Dominum Cantuariensem transmissa sibi, perque Sanctam Romanam Ecclesiam et Doctores Sanctos determinatam, expresse negavit, dicens quod determinatio Ecclesiæ facta est contra Sacram Scripturam, et postquam Ecclesia dotata est, et venenum infusum in Ecclesia, et non ante. Quod etiam ad Sacramentum Pœnitentiæ et Confessionis,—dixit, et asseruit, quod si quis esset in aliquo gravi peccato constitutus, a quo ipse surgere nesciret, expediret et bonum esset sibi adire aliquem sanctum et discretum sacerdotem, pro consilio ab eo habendo; sed quod [2] confiteretur peccatum suum proprio curato, seu [3] alteri presbytero, [4] etiamsi haberet copiam ejusdem, non est necessarium ad salutem, quia sola con- His answer as to the Sacrament of the Eucharist; and other matters of faith.

[1] *A* in MS., the "*d*" being erased.
[2] *confiteatur* in ed. Camden.
[3] *aliter* in ed. Camden.
[4] *etsi* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1413. tritio peccatum hujusmodi delere posset, et ipse [1] peccatorum purgari.

As to adoration of the holy Cross.

Circa adorationem Sanctæ Crucis:—dixit et asseruit, quod solum corpus Christi, quod pendebat in cruce, debuit adorari, quia illud corpus solum fuit, et est, adorandum. Et interrogatus quem honorem faceret imagini ipsius crucis, respondit verbis expressis, quod illum honorem solum faceret sibi, quod bene mundaret eam, et poneret in bona custodia. Quod autem ad Potestatem Clavium, Dominum nostrum Papam, et Archiepiscopos, et alios prælatos:—dixit quod Dominus noster Papa est verus Antichristus, hoc est, caput ejusdem; Archiepiscopi et Episcopi, necnon alii prælati, sunt membra, et Fratres cauda ejusdem. Quibus Papæ, Archiepiscopis, et prælatis, non est obediendum, nisi quatenus fuerint imitatores Christi et Petri, in vita, moribus, et conversatione. Et quod ipse est successor, qui est vita melior, moribus purior, et nullus alius. Ulterius dixit idem Johannes alta voce, manibus expansis, alloquendo circumstantes;—"Isti qui judicant et volunt "damnare me, seducunt vos omnes et seipsos, et vos "ducent ad infernum; et ideo caveatis ab eis."

Oldcastle warns the bystanders against his judges.

The Archbishop again exhorts him; but to no purpose.

Quibus omnibus per eum sic dictis, Dominus Cantuariensis iterum ac sæpius, flebili vultu, dictum Dominum J[ohannem] alloquebatur, verbis quibus potuit exhortando, ut ad unitatem rediret Ecclesiæ, crederet et teneret quod Ecclesia Romana credit et tenet. Qui respondit expresse, se aliter non credere, quam superius expressit. Videns ergo Dominus Cantuariensis se in nullo posse proficere, cum magna cordis amaritudine, processit ad prolationem sententiæ diffinitivæ, in hunc modum.—

The Archbishop adjudges him to be guilty of heresy.

"In Dei nomine, Amen. Nos, Thomas, permissione "divina, *et cætera*, in quadam causa, sive negotio, "hæreticæ pravitatis, de et super diversis articulis, "super quibus Dominus J[ohannes] Oldkastille, miles, "Dominus de Cobham, coram nobis, in ultima Convo-

[1] *peccator* in ed. Camden.

" catione cleri nostræ, Cantuariensis, Provinciæ, in eccle- A.D. 1413.
" sia Sancti Pauli celebrata, post inquisitionem diligen-
" tem ibidem inde captam, reperimus eum, [1] Dominum
" J[ohannem], fore et esse hæreticum, hæreticis creden-
" tem, ac in fide et observantiis Sacrosanctæ Romanæ
" et Universalis Ecclesiæ errantem, et præsertim circa
" Sacramenta Eucharistiæ et Pœnitentiæ; ad quod, tan-
" quam iniquitatis [1] et tenebrarum filius, in tantum ob-
" duravit cor suum, ut non intelligat vocem pastoris sui,
" nec velit monitionibus allici, nec reduci blanditiis.
" [2] Unde pensatis ipsius delictis et culpis, per ipsius
" damnabilem pertinaciam aggravatis, nolentes quod is
" qui nequam est, fiat nequior, et alios inficiat sua
" labe, de consilio et assensu magnæ discretionis et
" sapientum virorum venerabilium, nobis assistentium,
" præfatum Dominum J[ohannem] Oldkastelle, militem,
" Dominum de Cobham, de et super hujusmodi detes-
" tabili reatu convictum, et ad Ecclesiæ unitatem
" pœnitentialiter redire nolentem, hæreticum, ac in hiis
" quæ tenet, docet, determinat, et prædicat, Sacrosancta
" Romana et Universalis Ecclesia, et præsertim in arti-
" culis subscriptis, errantem, judicamus, declaramus, et
" condemnamus, sententialiter et diffinitive, in hiis scrip-
" tis; relinquentes eundem exnunc, tanquam hæreticum,
" judicio sæculari. Ipsumque nihilominus hæreticum,
" omnesque alios et singulos, qui eundem de cætero, in
" sui favorem erroris, receptaverint, defensaverint, seu
" sibi consilium, favorem, vel auxilium, in hac parte
" præbuerint, tanquam fautores, receptatores, et defen-
" sores, hæreticorum, excommunicamus, et excommuni-
" catos denunciamus, in hiis scriptis."

Hiis ita peractis, Dominus Cantuariensis Regem cer- The Archbishop obtains further time for him, tificavit super præmissis, vivæ vocis oraculo, postulans ut Dominus Rex dignaretur dicto Johanni, damnato juridice, gratiose concedere quadraginta dies ad indu-

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *Videlicet pensatis* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1413. cias. Nam tam Rex quam Pontifex non ejus interitum, sed vitam, cupiebant affectualiter, et pro salute sua laboravere non segniter. Unde factum est, ut ad Turrim reduceretur; ubi, sub induciarum spatio sibi concessarum, posset resipiscere, et gratiam, tam ecclesiasticam quam regiam, promereri. Sed ista specialis indulgentia facta fuit sibi malignandi copia, dum citra præfixum terminum elapsus e custodia, congregavit iniquitatem sibi, nil aliud cogitans quam de vindicta. Revera, [1] clam destinatis litteris ad sequaces suos, tam milites quam armigeros, qui non pauci fuere, hortabatur, ut et ipsi scriberent ad amicos suos, ut et ipsi se ad vindictam mutuo concitarent. Igitur, per omne tempus illud quod fluxit ab evasione ejus, usque ad Circumcisionem Domini, vel Epiphaniam, discurrebant undique Lollardorum nuncii, qui rurales, et quoscunque poterant, promissis amplis stipendiis, allectarent, quatinus in certum diem, eis denunciandum, parati forent ad standum viriliter, et actus martios peragendum. Multis ignaris quærentibus causam, pro qua, vel in qua, certare deberent, responsum fuit, non esse curandum, dummodo stipendia larga reciperent, et pro rebus bene gestis affluenter remunerandos proculdubio se sperarent. Sed de hiis omnibus in ordine præsentis historiæ post hæc, plenius referemus.

from the King, in order that he may relent.

He escapes from the Tower, and summons his friends to his aid.

A pestilence in England.

Hoc anno plures Angli, peste percussi, vel epidemia, vivere desiere. Item, hoc anno levatum fuit corpus quondam Ricardi, Regis Angliæ, quod humatum fuerat intra ecclesiam Fratrum Prædicatorum de Langelee, et deportatum Londonias, ac apud Westmonasterium regaliter tumulatum; non sine maximis expensis Regis nunc, qui fatebatur se sibi tantumv enerationis debere, quantum patri suo carnali.

The body of King Richard II. is removed from Langelee to Westminster.

Conspiracy of the Lollards, to seize or

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo quarto decimo, Rex tenuit Natale solemniter apud Eltham; ubi Lollardi, facta conjuratione, Regem inopinate, cum fratribus suis,

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

et amicis, cepisse vel occidisse statuerant. Sed Deus Omnipotens noluit innocentem nocentium perire manibus, neque periclitari; sed immisit timorem suum in corda quorundam conspiratorum, qui Regem monuere vitare periculum, et jam structas insidias declinare. Unde factum est, ut sine strepitu Rex modeste se transferret ad palatium suum, prope Westmonasterium, ubi locus tutior et frequentia populi major fuit. A.D. 1414. slay the King; who is warned, and escapes.

Lollardi vero, cum jam completa esset eorum malitia, [1] effutire parabant quæ mente conceperant, gestientes experiri fortunam quam suis votis fore propitiam putavere. Veneruntque, sub ipso noctis conticinio, in campum qui dicebatur "Sancti Egidii," prope Londonias, ubi ferebatur eorum campi-ductor, [Johannes] Oldkastille, Dominus de Cobham, suos satellites operiri. Videres per semitas, perque vicos, per compita, concurrentium turbas, pene de cunctis regni Comitatibus sollicitatas magnis promissis, confluere ad diem et horam jam instantem. Qui requisiti quamobrem sic festinabant, et velut anheli currebant, responderunt se properare ad Dominum de Cobham, qui eos conductos suis stipendiis accivisset. Rex vero, non ignarus omnium præmissorum, sub ejusdem noctis articulo, jussit suos in armis esse paratos, tunc primum suis intimans quid facere decrevisset. Fuerunt tunc plures cum Rege, qui laudaverunt in diem clarum protelandum negotium, quo decernere possent, qui cum Rege, vel contra Dominum, [2] vellent stare. Alii vero consuluere Regem debere præstolari, donec ad eum multitudo convenisset exercitus, ne, cum paucis hostes aggrediens, pejorem, quod absit, reportaret calculum. Sed neutris adquievit Rex, eo maxime quod audisset Lollardorum fore propositum, si prævaluissent, primitus destruendi Monasteria de Westmonasterio, de Sancto Albano, de Sancto Paulo, et cunctorum Fratrum Londoniis constituta. Quamobrem Rex, tantis malis se objiciens, ingessit periculo, contra vota The Lollards meet in St. Giles's Fields. The King takes measures to defeat their designs.

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *starent* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1414. suorum, in campum progrediens, paulisper transacta nocte media, ubi et constitit, præstolaturus quid ventura pariat dies proxima. Ubi contigit, ut multi de remotis partibus ad castra hostilia prius intrarent, per errorem, castra regia, ubi requisiti quem quærerent, responderunt, dominum suum de Cobham. Quapropter, contra spem capti sunt, et carceribus mancipati.

The leaders are informed of this.

Pervenit rumor iste ad duces partis adversæ; scilicet, quod Rex, cum manu valida, occupasset arva contermina, et de suis plurimos captivasset. Consternatique sunt peramplius, quod neminem viderunt de Londoniis adventare, unde putabant millia ruitura in auxilium eorundem. Præceperat autem Rex, ut Civitatis portæ clauderentur, et per armatos servarentur artius, ut nullis pateret egressus, nisi hiis quos scirent ad signa regia properare. Et revera, nisi Rex usus fuisset hac calliditate, nocte illa, prout fertur, exivissent de servis et apprenticiis, simul cum quibusdam de civibus, eorum magistris, ad quinquaginta millia, contra Regem. Qui vero de Lollardis adunati fuere, ut audivere Regem jam in eodem campo suas acies statuisse, non habentes ultra spiritum, fugæ præsidia petiere; quos regales insequentes, quosdam cepere, quosdam peremere. Quo vero diverteret dux eorum, minime scire potuit, licet Dominus Rex spopondisset publica voce præconis, cuicunque prodenti eum, de suo marsupio mille marcas, et civitatibus, sive pagis, qui illum detegerent, maximas libertates. Unde potest conjici pene totam patriam ejus dementiam amplexatam fuisse, cum nullus inveniretur, qui, respectu tanti lucri, eum voluerit publicare. Capti sunt tamen de suis asseclis plurimi, qui dicebantur conspirasse generaliter in destructionem Regis et procerum, prælatorum, religiosorum possessionatorum, Fratrum Mendicantium, atque civium; qui, super his convicti, non solum tractioni et furcarum suspensioni sunt addicti, sed post infelicia fata cremati.

Alleged designs of the servants and apprentices of London. The Lollards take to flight.

Proof of the popularity of their opinions. Capture and execution of many followers of Oldcastle.

W. Murlee, of Dunsta-

Inter quos, quidam de Dunstaplia, negotio braciator, dives admodum, dictus "Willelmus Murlee"; qui ar-

tius secutus opiniones Johannis Oldkastille, orthodoxorum plurimos, supra cunctos sectæ suæ perfidæ, molestaverat. Hic, cum in campo fuisset, et Regis præsentiam cognovisset, meticulose Civitatem repetiit, latebrasque quæsivit. Præordinaverat utique, prout fertur, eo die suscepisse de manu Johannis Oldkastelle ordinem militarem; cujus rei argumenta fuere dextrarii duo [1] se sequentes, auro phalerati, et deaurata calcaria, quæ sinu suo recondiderat, exinde detracta, quando captus fuerat. Quod et evenit, parvo peracto spatio post fugam suam. Tractus ergo, suspensus, et combustus, finem quem meruit est sortitus. Repertus est autem [2] rotulus Præcentoris Sancti Albani, continens cuncta monachorum nomina dicti loci, in manica sua, quem vel ipsé, vel sui, furtim sustulerant; quos, ut fertur, eliminasse proposuerat, et eorum locum, velut dominus et Comes [3] Hertfordensis pagi, dono ducis sui, Johannis Oldcastelle, obtinuisse. Fuerunt et plures alii, tam sacerdotes quam laici, qui capti, convicti sunt, et damnati, exituque functi consimili; quorum plurimi nec quidem pœnitere curabant. De hiis prophetatum fuit apud Anglos per longa tempora antequam ista contingerent, sub hiis verbis:—

A.D. 1414. ple, a follower of Oldcastle, is hanged and burnt.

His alleged designs against St. Alban's.

Other followers of Oldcastle similarly punished.

"Inter petrosum fontem, montemque nodosum,
"Corruet Anglorum gens perfida fraude suorum."

Prophecy in reference to them.

Constat veraciter inter hæc duo loca gentem perfidam contra Regem venisse, fraudeque suorum illic corruisse; quia [4] quidam de suis Regi renunciaverant eorum conspirationes.

Hoc anno cecidit eminentissimus turris Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, et pugil invictus, Dominus Thomas de Arundelia, morti solvens debita decimo Kalendas Martii. Cui successit [Henricus] Chichele, Confessor Regis. Magister Stephanus de Patringtone, Frater de Ordine

Death of Thomas de Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury; and promotions thereon.

[1] *sese quærentes* in ed. Camden.
[2] *rotulis* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Herefordensis* in ed. Camden.
[4] *quidem* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1414. Carmelitarum, vir eruditus in Trivio et Quadrivio, factus est Episcopus [1] Menevensis.

Henry Percy is received into the King's favour, and restored to the Earldom of Northumberland.

Rex, compatiens Henrico Percy, adolescentulo, qui per avum suum, Henricum Percy, Comitem Northumbriæ, ductus fuit in Scotiam, post mortem patris sui, perempti in bello apud Salopiam, cum adhuc esset parvulus, jussit suis necessariis ut pro ejus evocatione sollicitarentur; eum non solum honorare statuens, ejus revocatione, sed ut sublimaret Comitis Northumbrorum nomine et dignitate.

Envoys from the King of France, and the Duke of Burgundy.

Eo anno, [2] ad Parliamentum tentum Leycestriæ, venere nuncii Regis Franci Ducisque Burgundiæ, licet non pari voto. Nam Dux Burgundiæ contra Ducem Aurelianensem fortificari petiit, promittens, ut fertur, plura quam præstare potuit. Missi sunt ergo per Regem Angliæ solemnes nuncii ad utrumque; inter quos duo Pontifices, scilicet, Dunelmensis et Norwycensis, legationis principes extitere. Frequenter enim et hii in Franciam, et Francorum legati directi sunt in Angliam, sumptusque maximi consumpti sunt utrobique, spe pacis omnino sopita.

Envoys sent to them.

The King begins the foundation of three Monasteries.

Hoc anno cœpit Rex Henricus fundare tria monasteria religiosorum, juxta prædium suum, quod "Schene" vulgariter appellatur; unum de Ordine monachorum Cartusiensium; aliud monachorum qui "Cœlestini" vocarentur; qui profitentes Regulam Sancti Benedicti, quam servare se dicunt ad litteram, et ulterius, se astringunt ad reclusionem perpetuam: tertium, Brigittinorum, qui Sancti Augustini profitentur Regulam, quæ, cum aliis adjectis cæremoniis, vocatur ab eis "Regula "Salvatoris." Hiis non licet habere proprium, non quidem obolum, nec pecuniam tangere quovismodo. In hoc monasterio, juxta Regulam, debent esse sorores sexaginta, sacerdotes tresdecim, diaconi quatuor, octo fratres laici. Quibus omnibus computatis, tantus erat

Rule of the Brigittines.

[1] Patrington was made Bishop of St. David's in 1415.

[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

numerus personarum, quantus erat tresdecim Apostolo- A.D. 1414.
rum, et septuaginta duorum discipulorum Christi. Hii non lineis, sed laneis, semper utentur. Qui duo conventus habebunt unam ecclesiam in communi: moniales [1] superius habebunt sub tecto, fratres inferius, ad terram; et sunt utrique Conventus separatim inclusi; quibus, post professionem non licebit egredi, nisi de Domini Papæ licentia speciali. Isti duo Conventus debent habere, ex Regula, sufficientem dotationem, ad sustentationem personarum et servientium, ac supportationem onerum tanti monasterii; ita quod absque indigentia et mendicitate, tam in anno sterili, quam fertili, possint sufficienter [2] et quiete subsistere. Postea vero, si totus mundus possessiones et prædia eis offerret, quicquam omnino recipere non liceret. Ante festum Omnium Sanctorum, annuatim computari debent, et præsciri, victualia et necessaria anni subsequentis; et quæcunque tunc remanent de victualibus seu pecunia anni tunc instantis, in crastino Omnium Sanctorum debent pauperibus erogari. Si vero aliquando victualia sequentis anni videntur non sufficere, tunc de pecunia aut victualibus imminentis anni addatur sequenti anno quantum necesse est, et non plus, si Abbatissa et generalis ejusdem loci [3] [Confessor] periculum animæ suæ voluerint evitare. Et expost, quicquid remanserit, egenis dari debet. Abbatissa, cum consensu sororum et fratrum, eligere [4] debet unum de tresdecim sacerdotibus in Confessorem generalem Monasterii; cui omnes fratres obedire debent, et contra præceptum ejus nihil omnino facere. Nullus sæcularium virorum, seu religiosorum, ingredietur [5] claustra Monasterii monialium. Hos ritus, et plures [6] alios, observant hujus novellæ religionis professores, quos ad præsens omittamus, ad alia festinantes.

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[2] *quieteque* in ed. Camden.
[3] Omitted in MS.; supplied from the *Historia Anglicana*, II. p. 301.
[4] *debent* in ed. Camden.
[5] *castra* in ed. Camden.
[6] Omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1414. The ambassadors give notice of the treachery of the French.

Ambassiatores nostri, Dunelmensis et Northwicensis Episcopi, jam secundo de Francia redeuntes, Gallicos dolis hactenus inservisse declarant. Quamobrem Rex irritatus, cachinnos eorum temperare decrevit, et in derisores animadvertere belli jure, et quantæ sit dementiæ suscitasse canem dormientem factis ostendere.

Great Council held in London.

Circa festum Michaelis, jussit Rex venire Londonias, ad Consilium, cunctos regni prælatos et proceres, consultaturus de negotiis arduis tangentibus regnum suum. Quo quidem tempore, Cantuariensis celebravit ibidem grande Concilium, in quo tractatum est de privilegiis exemptorum per Romanos Pontifices indultorum, quibus gavisi sunt hactenus, annullandis. Hoc initium signorum fecit novus Metropolitanus, ut manifestaret bilem suam.

Representatives of the Clergy at the Council of Constance.

In hoc Consilio sunt electi, qui pro parte cleri Angliæ proficiscerentur ad Generale Concilium, celebrandum apud Constantiam, Germaniæ civitatem. Quo pene, per laudabilem sollicitudinem Regis Romanorum et Hungariæ, viri Christianissimi, qui, electus in Imperatorem Alemanniæ, recusavit coronam suscipere, donec sibi constaret indubitanter quis esset præficiendus in Papam, totius Christianitatis prudentissimi pontifices, et prælati, cum aliis clericis, velut innumeris, confluxere. Utque de aliis taceamus, de regno Angliæ missi sunt ad Concilium viri valde venerabiles, Saresbyriensis, Bathoniensis, Herefordensis, Episcopi, et, cum hiis, Abbas Westmonasterii, Prior Wygorniæ, et plures alii, pollentes ingenio, religione famosi. Horum cœtum honoravit multipliciter præsentia Comitis Warwicensis.

The Earl of Warwick accompanies them.

The three claimants of the Papacy resign their pretensions.

Hiis ergo, et Collegiis Cardinalium, quondam Gregorii et Petri de Luna, cum aliis prælatis et doctoribus præcipuis Christianitatis, adunatis apud Constantiam, Gregorius sponte renunciavit Papatui, ita duntaxat, ut idem faceret Petrus de Luna, qui in Arragonia, et Johannes, qui in Roma, nomen sibi Papatus assumpserat: sed Johannes noster aliquandiu tergiversavit, donec,

monitus et inductus per Imperatorem, se renunciaturum, sicut et cæteri, aliquando consensit. A.D. 1414.

Quo facto, factum est indicibile gaudium inter omnes qui aderant, putantes jam finem dissidii imponendum. Sed, proh dolor! ubi sperabatur perfectionis et pacis initium, jam novæ dissensionis surrepsit exordium. Nam Papa Johannes, infirmitate simulata, noctu repente recessit, cum Duce Austriæ, ad quamdam civitatem dicti Ducis; se tamen excusavit litteraliter penes Imperatorem, quod propter aerem, [1] sibi nocivum, reliquisset Constantiam; sed nihilominus, quandocunque Imperator duceret eum [2] accersendum, paratus foret ad Concilium sine mora regredi, ad consummandum et implendum quæcunque promiserat. Cum vero post dies aliquot visum fuisset Imperatori et Concilio, ut suam exhiberet inter eos præsentiam, per nuncios rogaverunt, ut venire non differret ad Concilium, prout promiserat se facturum; quod plane negavit se facere, et occulte disfiguratus fugit, cum Duce Austriæ, in terram suam. Misit igitur Imperator ad Ducem, mandans ut eum reduceret, vel saltem reduci permitteret, ad Concilium memoratum. Quod cum Dux supersedisset facere, Imperator terras ejus ingressus est, coegitque Ducem se submittere, Papamque reducere, in eodem habitu quo eum abduxerat fugitivum. Reductus est igitur, coramque Concilio demonstratus, non indumentis religiositatis redimitus, sed, brigantinorum more, semivestitus, gestans ad latus sagittas breves, qualibus utuntur equites illarum partium, qui "Malendrini" dicuntur. Derisus igitur a toto cœtu, tam religioso quam sæculari, missus est in carcerem, sub arta custodia conservandus; moxque cuncta bona sua mobilia direptioni patuere. Fertur enim quod despoliatus sit de septuaginta quinque millibus librarum auri et argenti. Quibus auditis in Anglia, pecunia collecta ad opus ejus, et apud Sanctum

Pope John suddenly leaves Constance, A.D. 1415.

Notwithstanding his promise, he refuses to return.

The Duke of Austria screens him; but is compelled by the Emperor to give him up.

Pope John is presented in his disguise, imprisoned, and his property plundered.

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden. | [2] *accerciendum* in MS.

A.D. 1415. Paulum in cista reposita, disruptis seris, extracta est, melioribus usibus destinata.

Sentence of deprivation against the three claimants of the Papacy, promulgated by the Council of Constance.

"In nomine Sanctæ et Individuæ Trinitatis, [1] Patris et
" Filii, et Spiritus Sancti, Amen. Sacrosancta Generalis
" Synodus Constantiensis, in Spiritu Sancto congregata
" legitime, invocato Christi nomine, solum Deum præ
" oculis habens, visis articulis in hac causa contra Domi-
" num Johannem Papam, Vicesimum tertium, formatis,
" habita matura deliberatione super eisdem, per [2] hanc
" sententiam diffinitivam, quam proferimus in his scriptis,
" pronunciat, decernit, et declarat, recessum per præ-
" fatum Johannem [2] Papam, Vicesimum tertium ab hac
" civitate Constantiensi, in dicto Sacro Concilio Generali,
" clandestine et de nocte, hora suspecta, in habitu dissi-
" mulato et indecenti, factum, fuisse, et esse, illicitum,
" Ecclesiæ Dei et dicto Concilio scandalosum, vacationis
" et unionis ipsius Ecclesiæ turbativum et impeditivum,
" schismatis inveterati nutritivum, a voto, promissione,
" et juramento, per Dominum [Johannem], Papam, Deo
" et Ecclesiæ, et huic Sacro Concilio, præstitis, deviati-
" vum, ipsumque Dominum Johannem, Papam, simo-
" niacum notorium, bonorumque et jurium, nedum Ro-
" manæ, sed aliarum, ecclesiarum, et plurium aliorum
" piorum, dilapidatorem notorium, malumque spiritua-
" lium et temporalium Ecclesiæ administratorem et dis-
" pensatorem, fuisse et esse, suis detestabilibus inho-
" nestisque moribus, et vita, Ecclesiam Dei et populum
" Christianum notorie scandalizantem, ante ejus assump-
" tionem ad Papatum, et post, usque ad ista tempora,
" ipsumque per præmissa Ecclesiam Dei et populum
" Christianum notorie scandalizasse et scandalizare;
" postque monitiones debitas et caritativas, iteratis et
" crebris vicibus eidem factas, in præmissis malis per-
" tinaciter perseverasse, seque ex hoc notorie incorrigi-
" bilem reddidisse; ipsumque, propter præmissa et alia
" crimina, in processu dictæ causæ contra eum deducta

[1] *Patrisque et* in ed. Camden. | [2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

" et contenta, tanquam indignum, inutilem, et damno- A.D. 1415.
" sum, a Papatu et omni administratione spirituali et
" temporali amovendum, privandum, et deponendum,
" fore; et dicta Sancta Synodus amovet, privat, [1] et
" deponit, universos et singulos Christicolas, cujuscun-
" que status, dignitatis, vel conditionis, existant, ab ejus
" obedientia, fidelitate, et juramento, absolutos decla-
" rando; inhibendo insuper universis Christi fidelibus,
" ne eundem de cætero Papam nominent, nec illi, tan-
" quam Papæ, adhæreant, seu quoquomodo obediant.
" Et nihilominus, ex certa scientia, et de plenitudine
" potestatis, supplet dicta Sancta Synodus omnes et
" singulos defectus, si qui forsitan in præmissis, vel
" aliquo præmissorum, intervenerint, *et cætera.* Item,
" decernit, statuit, et ordinat, dicta Sancta Synodus, pro
" bono [2] unionis Ecclesiæ Dei, quod nullo unquam tem-
" pore reeligantur in Papam Dominus Balthazar Cossa,
" nuper Johannes, Papa, Vicesimus tertius, nec Petrus
" de Luna, [3] Benedictus Tertius decimus, nec Angelus
" Corrario, Gregorius Duodecimus, in suis obedientiis
" sic nominati; et si contrarium fieret, id sit ipso facto
" irritum et inane, nullusque, cujuscunque dignitatis et
" præeminentiæ, etsi imperiali, regali, cardinalatus, vel
" pontificali, dignitate præfulgeat, eis, vel eorum alicui,
" contra hoc decretum, ullo unquam tempore obediat,
" seu adhæreat, sub pœna fautoriæ dicti schismatis et
" maledictionis æternæ; ad quas contra præsumptiones,
" si [4] quæ in posterum fuerint, [5] etiam cum invocatione
" brachii sæcularis, procedatur rigide."

Sub hoc tempore, cum jam Rex Angliæ comperisset Francos fallaciis et fraude, fictisque promissionibus, eum inaniter sollicitasse, naves conduxit, arcitenentes et armatos elegit, machinas et missilia, ac omnem apparatum bellicum, præparavit, quibus posset hostes

The King prepares for war with France.

[1] *et deponit* omitted in ed. Camden.
[2] *unius* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Clemens* in MS.: an error.
[4] *qui* in MS.
[5] *et cum* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1415. efficacius infestare; jussitque ut omnes secum profecturi parati forent in festo Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, apud Hamptone.

Arrival of an embassy from France.

Quo tempore accesserunt ad eum novi recentesque legati Francorum, inter quos præcipuus fuit Archiepiscopus Senonensis, vir verbosus et arrogans, sed parum disciplinatus, prout ostendit expost; nimis petulanter se gerens in præsentia Regis et procerum in peroratione suæ legationis. Finaliter tamen, Rex legatorum sprevit oblationes et promissa, quæ nec rationi fuere consona, nec sibi honorifica; et Londonias remisit eos.

Its proposals are rejected.

Conspiracy, while the King is at Southampton.

Dum Rex suorum procerum, qui cum eo transfretare debebant, apud Southamptonam præstolaretur adventum, tres viri potentes, in quibus præ cæteris confidebat, in ejus necem conjuraverunt. Quorum nomina si vellem supprimere, fama flagitii divulgaret, etiam me tacente. Dicam ergo quod me dicturum doleo, parricidarumque nomina non celabo. Primus et præcipuus Dominus Henricus le Scroop, in cujus fide, sive constantia, totus animus regius requievit. Qui sub hypocrisi cuncta gerenda foris suppallians, et

Names of the conspirators.

" [1] Astutam vapido gestans sub pectore vulpem,"

in cunctis agendis agninam simplicitatem publice præferebat.—

" [2] Edidicit," nempe, " simulare fidem, vultusque mi-
" naces
" Protegere, et blando fraudem prætexere [3] risu;
" Plenus sævitiæ, lucrique cupidine fervens,
" [4] Doctus et unanimes odio turbare sodales."

Treachery of Sir Henry le Scroop.

Hic tantæ fuit æstimationis penes Regem, ut si quando consilia privata vel publica tractabantur, hujus diffinitione terminabantur. Prætendebat namque tantam gravitatem in vultu, tantam in gestu modestiam, tantam in affatu religionem, ut quicquid ipse dictasset,

[1] Persius, *Sat.* v. 117.
[2] Claudian, *In Rufinum* ll. 98–101.
[3] *visu* in ed. Camden.
[4] *Ductus* in ed. Camden.

velut oraculum e cœlo lapsum Rex oportere fieri judi- A.D. 1415.
caret. Si legatio solemnis emittenda foret in Franciam, ingenio vel persona Henricus le Scrop exequi necesse putabat. Ille proinde tractabat cum hostibus, ipse domino suo, Regi, hostis occultus; mulcebatque Regem vanis sponsionibus, delusit Consilium promissis inanibus, referens utrisque alia pro aliis, fronte favens suis, mente vero Gallis. Cumque Rex innocens, propter magnam confidentiam, hujus se arbitrio in pluribus commisisset, et ei multa donaria specialia tribuisset, ille, tantis beneficiis retributor iniquus, dominum suum, cum jam in procinctu foret profectionis suæ, parata classe, et aggregatis militum copiis, repente vita privare moliebatur. Spoponderat ista Francis, ut fertur, pacta sibi pro proditione pecunia; qui, jam ad sua regressi, lætificavere suos, asserentes Regem Angliæ, mutato proposito, vel ad sua regressum, vel certe, quod verius putavere, peremptum. Habuit consortes proditionis Ricardum, Comitem Cantabrigiæ, fratrem, scilicet, Ducis Eboraci, et Thomam Grey, militem borealem. Quem quidem Ricardum Comitem Rex creaverat, et multis bonis ditaverat, et præ cæteris honoraverat, ratione generis et parentelæ. Sed nulla impensa benevolentia, nullum collatum beneficium, proditores prævertere poterant, quin in necem tanti benefactoris mutuo se armarent. Attamen, priusquam conceptum facinus possent ad effectum [1] perducere, Deo volente, detecti sunt, et, judicio parium suorum, condemnati, decapitationis sententiam subiere, Rege alias pœnas, de jure debitas, perdonante, (præterquam Henrico Scrop, qui dicitur fuisse tractus); qui etiam deflevisse vices eorum fertur. Quamobrem nonnulli, propter Regis modestiam, compassionem, et pietatem, laudes Augusti in eum transferunt, quondam editas a Nasone, eo quod—

He is joined by the Earl of Cambridge and Sir Thomas Grey.

They are executed.

The King's clemency commended.

" [2] Sit piger ad pœnas princeps, ad præmia velox,
" Quippe dolet quoties cogitur esse ferox."

[1] *producere* in ed. Camden.

[2] Ovid. *Epist. Pont.* I. 2, 123.

A.D. 1415. Rising of the Lollards.

Eodem tempore, velut ex condicto, et tanquam proditionis præfatæ conscientia, Lollardi stimulati, e latebris emersere, et in Regem blaphemias evomuere, loquentes grandia, minasque spargentes in scriptis; quæ fixerunt in valvis ecclesiarum Londoniis, in multis locis, talibus se cohortantes:—"Jam," inquiunt, "princeps "presbyterorum abiit, jam hostis noster abcessit, jam "nobis arrisit tempus accommodum, quo nostras im-"pune licebit injurias vindicare;" sicque se mutuo confortantes, scripserunt ad invicem multa millia in sua vota venisse.

Oldcastle utters threats of vengeance.

Interea campi-ductor et caput eorum, Johannes Oldkastille, cum latuisset prope Malverniam, et accepisset a falso nuncio Regem Angliæ transfretasse, ex ejus absentia concepta audacia, verba comminatoria misit ad Dominum de [1] Bergeveny; dicens in capite ejus ulcisci velle sibi et suis illatas injurias ab eodem. Qui, prudenter sibi præcavens, cum circa noctis medium hæc audisset, illico [2] secretis egit nunciis, ut mane diluculo occurrerent armati sibi, apud castrum suum de Haneley, ex Wygornia, Persora, et Teukesbyria, prope quinque millia arcitenentium et armatorum. Quo comperto, dictus Johannes Oldcastille, more solito, latebras requisivit; cepit tamen idem heros quemdam presbyterum dicti Johannis Oldcastille, et quosdam alios ex suis complicibus, quos, sic artatos, quæstionibus examinavit, ut patefacerent locum quo dictus Johannes arma sua, cum pecuniis, occultasset. Quæ cuncta congesta sunt in quadam domo inter duos parietes, sic erectos, ut nullus, sine indice, dictæ structuræ fallaciam percepisset. Illic inventa sunt signa sua, cum vexillo, in quibus depingi sumptuose fecerat calicem, et hostiam in forma panis. Ibi etiam conspicienda fuere crux Christi, cum flagris, lancea, cum clavis, quæ depinxerat in vexillo ad seducendum simplices, si quando contigisset erigere signa,

Preparations alleged to have been made by him, for the rising.

[1] *Bergeny* in ed. Camden. | [2] *secretiis* in ed. Camden.

suffultum populi dementia; sed cognito apparatu dis- A.D. 1415.
posito contra se, dimisit cornua quæ arroganter erexe- He retires to his con-
rat, suppressit minas fastuosas, et eo celerius, atque cealment.
meticulosius, latebras, ut prius, repetiit, eo quod audivit Henricum Scrop et suos complices, apud Hamptone, proditionis suæ pœnas meritas exsolvisse.

Nec multo post captus est quidam inveteratus Lol- William Cleydone, a Lollard,
lardus, Willelmus Cleydone; qui in tantam dementiam burnt.
ruerat, confidentia suæ sectæ, ut etiam [1] filiam propriam sacerdotem constitueret, et Missam celebrare faceret in domo sua, die quo conjux ejus, a puerperio surgens, purganda ad ecclesiam processisset. Hic ergo captus, examinatus, legitimeque convictus de hæresi, Londoniis est combustus.

Rex Angliæ, punitis justissime, ut præmittitur, pro- King Henry lands in
ditoribus, ascensis navibus, mare sulcans, applicuit in Normandy.
Normannia, in loco vocato "Ky de Caus," nemine resistente. Traxit autem secum classem mille et quingentarum carinarum, ad negotia martia sufficienter instructam; ut dum ipse, cum suis, villam de Hareflu Besieges Harfleur.
obsideret per aridam, classis in pelago, coram villa [2] constituta, villanis omne præsidium victualium præcluderet, et solatia quævis arceret. Nacta vero tellure, feria quarta, in Vigilia Assumptionis Sanctæ Mariæ, It surrenders.
sequenti Sabbato obsidionem posuit circa villam; quam continuavit per quinque septimanas honorifice, usque ad Dominicam proximam ante festum Sancti Michaelis. Qua die Dominica, villa fuit reddita, tali modo:—

Feria nempe tertia proxima ante dictam Dominicam, Particulars of the surrender.
domini Gallici, qui fuere custodes ipsius villæ, scilicet, Dominus de Gaucourt, Dominus de Estutevile, Dominus de Hakevyle, et Dominus de Clere, non ferentes crebras quassationes murorum et ædificiorum intra villam, aliaque pericula perpessa per gunnas regias, (nam ab ipsis evolantia saxa, ingenti verberis ictu, obvia fregere

[1] *filium proprium* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.* II. p. 307.

[2] *constructa* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1415. quæque ruentes, nec tantum corpora pressa necabant, sed totos cum sanguine dissipant artus, et singula cesserunt ictibus arma,) conturbati et conterriti, coacti sunt nocte media quemdam servum-ad-arma ad Ducem destinare Clarenciæ, Domini Regis fratrem, qui illorum vice precaretur obnixe dictum Ducem, quatenus dignaretur, ob honorem Dei, Regi supplicare, ut eis concederet facultatem tractandi cum quibuscunque personis quas Dominus Rex duceret ad istud negotium emittendas.

Negotiations therein.

Nec mora, Dux exequitur villanorum vota; cujus interventu, et ob honorem Dei præcipue, Rex inclinatus eorum precibus, misit Comitem de Dorcet, Dominum Filium Hugonis, et Dominum Thomam Erpingham, ad cognoscenda desideria obsessorum. Qui petiere suppliciter, ut Rex, caritatis intuitu, cessaret ab eorum debellatione, ab ea hora noctis mediæ usque ad Dominicam proximam post festum Sancti Michaelis, nisi [1] contingeret Regem Francum, vel Dolphinum, ejus primogenitum, per bellum obsidionem dissolvere. Alias, parati forent Regi villam reddere, salvis vita et bonis omnibus eorundem. Rex vero remandari jussit eisdem, quod nisi villam in crastino redderent, nulla conditione interposita, non tractarent amplius de materia memorata. Instabant adhuc Gallicani domini, et Regis referendarios deprecabantur, ut apud Regem insisterent, quatenus inducias illis concedere dignaretur ab illa hora [2] usque ad horam proximam post nonam Dominicæ subsequentis. Qua hora promiserunt se, cum viginti duobus militibus et scutiferis, ad Regem accessuros, cum viris honoratioribus infra dictam villam constitutis, quos omnes obsides darent Regi usque ad Dominicam supradictam. Et ulterius, prædicti proceres spopondere se juraturos super Corpus Dominicum coram omni populo, quod si Rex Francus, vel filius ejus, et hæres,

[1] *contingerent* in ed. Camden.
[2] *usque ad horam* omitted in *Hist. Angl.* II. p. 308.

Dolphinus, non accederet ad deliberandum eos infra horam dictæ Dominicæ prænotatam, ipsi se redderent, sine conditione aliqua, Regi Angliæ, ad faciendum de corporibus et bonis eorum juxta suæ beneplacitum voluntatis. Ita duntaxat, ut permitteret eos dirigere nuncios Regi Franco et Dolphino, qui eis prætaxata pacta referrent. A.D. 1415.

Cumque Rex acceptasset hanc oblationem, dedit eorum legatis litteras de salvo conductu; quorum principalis fuit Dominus de Hakevyle, quem sequebantur viri valentes ad numerum [1] duodecim personarum. In crastino, scilicet, feria quarta, mane, dicti domini, cum viginti duobus militibus et armigeris, ac civibus notabilibus, exivere de villa. Quibus occurrit processio solemnissima, antecedens Eucharistiam, cum multis honorabilibus dominis, militibus, et armigeris, et populi frequentia, magna valde. Ubi expleto receptoque publice [2] jurejurando, cuncti Gallici sunt introducti ad regale tentorium, ubi et comederunt die illo; Dominum tamen Regem non viderunt. Post prandium, disjuncti sunt, et diversis dominis commendati, qui eos tractarent honorifice, usque ad reditum suorum legatorum, quos destinaverant ad Regem Francum; qui, fideliter promissa complentes, rediere statuta Dominica, hora præfixa, sine quovis suffragio per Regem Francum, seu Dolphinum, obsessis oblato. Quapropter, qui intra villam erant, cuncti se, sine conditione, Regis gratiæ submisere; remansereque captivi Regi Angliæ toti domini, cum militibus et armigeris, atque generosis, qui missi sunt a Rege Franco ad custodiam dictæ villæ. Rex autem constituit illic capitaneum Dominum Thomam, Comitem Dorcetanum, dans ei manum validam defensorum. The surrender is accepted. The Earl of Dorset appointed Captain.

Durante obsidione regali, plures, ex esu fructuum, et algore noctium, fœtoreque cadaverum diversarum pecudum quas mactavere per castrorum circuitum, et non operuerant cespitibus, sive terra, nec injecerant in Deaths in the English army, from dysentery.

[1] 22 in ed. Camden. | [2] *jusjurando* in MS.

A.D. 1415. Death of Richard Courtney, Bishop of Norwich; and of Michael, Earl of Suffolk.

aquis fluvialibus, ut earum putridas exhalationes tollerent, fluxu ventris, vel dysenteria, periere. Inter quos, et inprimis, vir venerandissimus, Magister Ricardus de Cortiniaco, Norwycensis Episcopus, Domino Regi fidissimus, diem clausit; cui successit in Episcopatu Dominus [1][Johannes] Wakeringg; Comesque Southfolchiæ, Dominus Michael atte Pool, simili sorte functus est. Cujus loco, ne familia sua gubernatore careret, creavit Dominus Rex filium ejus, Comitem Southfolchiæ; sed et ejus filum sæva nimis [2]Atropos præcidit in bello; de quo inferius dicturi sumus.

Other nobles, through illness, return to England.

Eodem tempore, redierunt [3]in Angliam, adversa cogente valetudine, Dux Clarenciæ, Comes Marchiæ, Comes Arundeliæ, et Comes Marescallus, cum multis aliis ægrotantibus morbo præfato. Sed Arundeliensis, ut fertur, impotionatus, non multo post in fata concessit.

The King proceeds towards Calais.

Rex Angliæ, compositis rebus apud Hareflu, prout Regem decuit, et victorem, terrestrem viam versus Kalesiam, cum paucis admodum, arripere statuit, non amplius, ut fertur, quam octo millibus arcitenentium et armatorum; quorum magna pars infirmitate contracta apud Hareflu, prout supra retulimus, vexabatur. Cum hac tam parva manu mirum est quod densissimam ausus sit aggredi Francorum sylvam; sed multo plus mirandum quod eam perforaverit, tot obicibus præmunitam. Galli nempe, per totum tempus obsidionis villæ de Hareflu, electos quosque de semetipsis, et conterminarum regionum fortissimos et audacissimos viros, adunaverunt, et auxiliares undique conduxerunt, ut numerus eorum, prout fertur, excresceret ad centum quadraginta millia pugnatorum.

Sufferings of the English, on their march.

Hii ergo præparaverunt ad diem, tempus, et horam, qua Regem possent invadere, et pusillum gregem suum, jam fame, fluxu, ac febribus, tenuatum. Cumque pene bis denis diebus Rex equitasset per regnum Franciæ,

---

[1] Omitted, with an hiatus, in MS.
[2] *Attropos* in MS.
[3] *in Angliam* omitted in ed. Camden.

et hostes ubique subtraxissent victualia, priusquam accederet ad castrametandi loca, defecit panis in exercitu, sic quod plures, loco panis, avellanis nucibus et assis carnibus uterentur; potus aqua fuit cunctis inferioris fortunæ viris in exercitu, spatio [1] pene decem et octo dierum. Hiis lautitiis, hiis opsoniis, athletæ Regis Angliæ nutriti sunt, et pasti, qui cum gigantum tot millibus fuerant congressuri. Adde, quod ab itinere fatigati, a vigiliis macerati, a frigoribus nocturnis debilitati, mirum quod subsistere potuere. Sed animavit debiles, invalidis dedit vires, Qui voluit fortes pessundare per infirmos. Nempe cum Rex, non sine difficultate maxima, pertransisset flumina interposita, quia Franci pontes destruxerant, per quos iter compendii habuisse poterat, mox glomerati festinavere cum suis millibus præcludere viam, per quam de necessitate debebat transire Kalesiam; et vicesimo quarto die mensis Octobris in quadam villula substitere.

A.D. 1415.

The French destroy the bridges on their route.

Rex tamen, imperterritus, iter arreptum constanter aggreditur, et eo usque procedit, quo uterque exercitus velut infra spatium milliarii ipsa eadem nocte consedit. Erat [2] tamen facies utriusque exercitus varia, disparque vultus; Gallis refocillatis, victualibusque refertis, Anglis fatigatis, infirmis, inediaque confectis; quibus etiam nec copia aquæ fuit. Certum tamen erat Anglis in crastino se pugnaturos, et cum tota nobilitate Franciæ manus conserturos. Quapropter ipsam noctem non tantum duxerunt insomnem, corpora confovendo, quantum votis et confessionibus animabus propriis consulendo. Jactitaverant nempe Galli, se nemini velle parcere, præterquam dominis et ipsi Regi; reliquos immisericorditer perempturos, vel membris [3] irrestaurabiliter mutilaturos. Qua de causa nostri magis concitati, animos erexerunt, et contra casus omnes se mutuo confortaverunt. Igitur,

The armies encamp near each other.

Contrast between the armies.

Threats of the French

[1] *pœnæ* in ed. Camden.
[2] *tum* in ed. Camden.
[3] *irrestaurabilibus* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1415. " [1] Postera vix summo spargebat lumine montes
" Orta dies, [2] tuba cum sonitum procul ære canoro
" Increpuit."—

de castris regiis, accelerantque pervenire nostrates ad sui ducis præsentiam, parati dupliciter ad provocandum Martem, scilicet, audacia et conscientiæ puritate.

King Henry marshals his troops. Rex, cernens suos alacriter advenisse, mox agmina producit in campum tritico recenter satum, ubi vix standi paulisper, vel progrediendi, facultas fuit, propter salebras, solique mollitiem. Nec segnius summo mane Galli in eundem campum emittunt primam aciem, viris instructam fortibus, armis ornatam fulgentibus, equitibus hinc inde ex utroque latere præcedentibus in equis generosis et nobilibus; quibus, ut ita dicam,—

The French prepare for battle.

" [3] Aurea pectoribus dimissa monilia pendent,"

qui insuper,

" [4] Tecti auro, fulvum mandunt sub dentibus au-
" rum."

Non tamen voluere Franci, propter loci lutositatem, procul in campum procedere; sed videre cupiebant, quod Angli, quorum paucitatem maxime contemnebant, facere proponebant. Inter utrumque cuneum campus late patuit, ad spatium, prout fertur, pene mille passuum. Sed non

—" Utrinque pari procurrunt agmina motu,"

quia Gallis immobiliter primam servantibus stationem, Anglis necesse fuit, si cum hoste vellent conserere, spatium medium armis [5] onustos pedibus emetiri. Rex interea, Gallorum perpendens astutias, quod sic perstabant immobiles in uno loco, ne peditando per campum lutosum fatigarentur,—

King Henry exhorts his troops.

---

[1] *Postea* in ed. Camden. Quoted from Virgil, *Æneid* xii., ll. 113, 4.
[2] *Cum tuba* in MS.
[3] *Æneid* vii., l. 278.
[4] *Æneid* vii., l. 279.
[5] *onustis* in ed. Camden.

—"Sublimi vectus equo volat agmina circum, A.D. 1415.
" Hortaturque duces, [1] et animos ad prœlia firmat."
" O fidissimi," inquiens, "socii, vadimus in campum
" Ad magnum virtutis opus, summosque labores."—

"En! ipsam diem, quam flagitavit sæpius vestra vir-
" tus, totas igitur vestras effundite vires. Experiamini
" quid lancea, quid securis, quid gladius, quid sagitta,
" valeat in manu potentis. Quisquis igitur census,
" honores, aut præmia cupit, istic reperiet; hæc nempe

" —Medio posuit Deus omnia campo."

Sic fatus, jussit convelli signa;—"Quia," inquiens, " hostes injuriosi iter nostrum præcludere tentant, adea-
" mus illos, in nomine Trinitatis; et optima hora totius
" anni." Et, erecto vexillo, jussit suis ordinate procedere; a dextris vero et sinistris fecit sagittarios anteire. Qui conspicientes eos qui pridie conjuraverant in mortes vel mutilationes eorum, accensi indignatione nimia, omnis lassitudinis, omnis incommodi vel infirmitatis, obliti sunt; et, ut ita fatear,—

" —[2] Turgescit in eis vitrea bilis,"

iraque—

" —Vires animumque [3] ministrat."

Mirumque in modum, qui sero debilem arcum nequivit tendere, jam fortissimum valuit sine difficultate pro voto trahere.

Galli videntes nostros campum, cum summo labore, emensos fuisse, rati jam tempus arrisisse quo fatigatos invaderent, quos putabant nullo negotio captivandos, horribiliter in campum ruunt, præmissis equitibus, qui nostros arcitenentes pectoribus dextrariorum præferratis obruerent, et suorum caballorum pedibus conculcarent. Sed, Deo volente, secus accidit quam sperabant; quia sagittarii, hinc inde occurrentes equitibus, tot simul

The French meet the advance of the English.

[1] Sic in MS., for "*animosque*."
[2] Adapted from Persius, *Sat.* iii., 8, and Virgil, *Æn.* ix., l. 764.
[3] *ministrant* in ed. Camden.

A D. 1415. Successes of the English archers.

emisere jacula, ut illa procella grandinea primitus equites dissiparent. Nam, regente Deo, nusquam cassa manus, nusquam sine vulnere fugit missile, nullaque fuit requies mittentis dexteræ, sed et omne sedet telum, quia nulli fuere sine cædibus ictus. Ut ergo primum sonipedes ferro transfixi sunt, sessores, conversis frenis, in sua agmina præcipites corruere, omnesque equites qui evaserant, campo cessere. Exhinc, ut acies convenere, ingens nostratum clamor ad sidera tollitur, et impletur quodammodo vocibus vastus aer. Tunc iterato volat undique telorum nubes, et ferrum ferro sonat, dum jacula constanter emissa cassides feriunt, laminas, et loricas. Cadunt proinde de Gallis plurimi, sagittis terebrati, hinc [1] quinquageni, hinc pariter sexageni.

Personal valour of King Henry.

Rex ipse, non tantum Regis, quantum militis, exequendo vices, primus in hostes advolat, crudeles ictus infert et tolerat, exempla suis audiendi fortia præbens in persona propria, stricto securi oppositas acies dissipando. Nec secus militares viri, æmulantes acta regia, totis viribus collaborabant [2] oppositam illam sylvam Francorum frementium ferro prosternere, donec tandem, via vi facta, Galli non tantum cessere, quantum mortui cecidere. Et revera Franci, cum prostratos in acie belli cernerent quos autumabant indomabiles, eorum mox—

The French are utterly defeated.

" [3] Obstupuere animi, gelidusque per ima cucurrit
" Ossa tremor,"—

tantus, ut immobiles et sine sensu starent; dum nostri secures ab eorum extorquerent manibus, et eos mactarent, velut pecudes, cum eisdem. Perdidit inde modum cædes, et velut nulla secuta est pugna; sed jugulis bellum geritur, nec valent Angli tot prosternere, quot perire possunt de adversa parte.

---

[1] 500, *hic pariter* 600 in ed. Camden.

[2] *compositam* in ed. Camden.

[3] Virgil, *Æneid* ii., l. 120.

Sic ergo pene Franciæ periit omne decus, per manus paucorum, quos parum ante summo despectui habuere. Illic interempti sunt Duces de Alasoun, de Braban, et de Baar, cum quinque Comitibus, et Constabulario Franciæ, et aliis nominatis dominis, ad numerum pene centum. De militibus et armigeris, quatuor millia sexaginta novem feruntur occisa; numerus vulgi non fuit ab armorum nunciis computatus. Capti sunt ibidem Duces Aurelianensis et Burbonensis; Comites vero de Ew et de Vendone, et Arthurus, frater Ducis Britanniæ, qui se dicit "Comitem Richemundiæ," et quidam Brucegaldus, miles honoratissimus regni Franciæ, et alii, ut ferunt, ad numerum septingentorum. De parte Regis cecidere, Dominus Edwardus, Dux Eboraci, et Dominus Michael, Comes Suthfolchiæ, quatuor milites, et unus armiger, dictus "David Gamme"; et de communibus viginti octo.

A.D. 1415. Numbers of the French nobility slain. French nobles captured. Losses of the English.

Dum Rex et sui bello detinerentur, contra Gallorum multitudinem pugnando comminus, vespiliones Francorum, invadentes a tergo dimissas sarcinas, rapuerunt, et protinus abduxerunt. In quibus cum reperissent coronam regiam, inani gaudio lætificavere suos, in tantum, ut signa solemniter pulsari facerent, et canticum laudis, —"Te Deum laudamus," cum summo tripudio decantari. Ementiti enim fuerant Regem, captum, sine mora venturum. Sed post pusillum, cum ex tristi nuncio cognovissent veritatem rei gestæ, versus est in luctum chorus eorum, et gaudium in mœrorem.

The English baggage pillaged, and the English crown captured. Great expectations of the French therefrom.

Rex etiam, omnes hos eventus prosperos ascribens Deo, gratias infinitas egit Ei, Qui sibi dedit inopinatam victoriam, et ferocissimos hostes subegit. Pernoctavit igitur in eodem loco, et in crastino, scilicet, die Sabbati, versus Kalesiam iter inceptum continuavit. Deinde sexto decimo die Novembris applicuit sero apud Doveriam, in maxima nivis intemperie; vicesima vero tertia die dicti mensis, venit Londonias, ducens secum Duces et nobiles quos dudum captivarat; quorum nomina supe-

King Henry returns thanks to God.

A.D. 1415. His triumphal reception in London.

rius sunt expressa. Quali gaudio, quali tripudio, quali denique triumpho, sit exceptus a Londoniensibus, dicere prætermitto, quia revera curiositas apparatuum, [1] nimietas expensarum, varietates spectaculorum, tractatus exigerent merito speciales.

Obsequies, in London, of the Duke of York and others slain at Azincourt.

Primo die mensis Decembris, jussu Regis, affuere Londoniis Pontifices et Abbates in magno numero, ut interessent [2] solemnissimis exequiis Domini Edwardi, quondam Ducis Eboraci, et aliorum, tam Francorum quam Anglorum, qui interierant in partibus transmarinis.

Successes of the Earl of Dorset.

Ad has etiam venit ab Hareflu capitaneus dictæ villæ, Regis avunculus, Comes de Dorcet; qui parum ante fecerat equitationem in regionem conterminam, et fugaverat octingentos ante se captivos, quos infra dictam villam strictæ custodiæ mancipavit.

Successes of the King of Portugal.

Hoc anno, Rex Portingaliæ, fretus auxilio mercatorum Angliæ quam maxime, et Alemannorum, vicit Agarenos in terra Regis Belmarinorum, multis eorum millibus ad [3] generum Cereris destinatis. Cepitque civitatem eorum amplissimam, supra mare sitam, vocatam [4] "Sunt" eorum lingua, cinctam muro viginti millium passuum, prout ferunt.

News of a victory near Harfleur, A.D. 1416.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo sexto decimo, tenuit Rex Natale juxta Londonias, apud Lambhitham; quo tempore delati sunt sibi rumores de conflictu habito inter Anglos et Gallos, juxta villam de Hareflu, in quo plures Gallici sunt occisi.

Dolphins in the Thames.

Circa festum Purificationis, septem delphini luserunt in [5] Tamisia, quorum quatuor sunt occisi. Prænosticabant, ut quidam volunt, tempestatem maximam ventorum et imbrium, continuo subsecutam.

Fight between the Earl of

Feria quarta Quatuor Temporum, in initio Quadragesimæ, Comes de Dorcet pugnavit cum Comite de

---

[1] *excessus* in ed. Camden.
[2] *solennibus* in ed. Camden.
[3] Pluto, the deity of the infernal regions.
[4] *Snut* in ed. Camden.
[5] *Tamisi* in ed. Camden.

Armanak, duce Gallorum; in quo conflictu cecidere plurimi de utraque parte, quia dictus Comes gentem nostram invaserat improvise. Fugati tamen sunt Franci, et illo die nostratibus terga dedere, uno solo usi solatio, quod vespiliones eorum, dum cum nostris manus consererent, equos Anglorum, et sarcinas, rapuerunt. Oportebat ergo nostros, prout erant in armis, reverti pedites ad villam de Harflu, per multa milliaria regionis. Itaque peditando juxta littus maris, ut hostes suos semper ante faciem suam, non a tergo constitutos, haberent, incedebant armis onusti per totam quintam feriam, noctemque sequentem; mane vero sexta feria, nostrates, levantes oculos, viderunt in montibus Gallos recollectos, cum duce eorum, Comite de Armanak, paratos ad invadendum eos. Misit ergo Comes de Armanak quemdam armorum nuncium ad Comitem Dorcetanum, qui diceret:—"Ecce! conclusus es inter nos et "mare, nec superest tibi evadendi facultas. Quaprop- "ter, ne pereas in ore gladii, redde te mihi, tractabo- "que te juxta nobilitatem tuorum natalium, prout "decet, rationabiliter redimendum." Ad hæc ille,— "Renuncia sibi, qui te misit, nunquam fuisse moris "Anglorum hosti se reddere ante præludia Martis et "Bellonæ. Nec me reperiet ita vecordem, ut manus "illi dem, quem potest Deus tradere in manus meas."

A.D. 1416. Dorset and the Count of Armagnac. The English baggage plundered. The Count of Armagnac demands the surrender of the English. The Earl of Dorset answers in the negative.

Hiis auditis, Comes de Armanack furibunde, cum suis equitibus, pernici gressu per declivium montis descendere conabatur. Quos excipientes nostri sagittarii, vel præverterunt jaculis, vel peremerunt. Exinde crevit pugna inter reliquos; et utrobique gladiis et securibus diu res martia gerebatur. Tandem, Deo miserante, gens jejuna, lassa, famelica, somni cibique penuria fatigata, vicit, Dei virtute manifesta: nam cum non essent plures ex Anglicis in hoc conflictu quam mille quingenti, gloriose vicerunt, et ad fugam coegerunt, quindecim millia Gallorum, duce illorum prope capto. Ferunt quod, non obstante sacro Quadragesimali tempore, ipso-

The English again defeat the French. Alleged impiety of the French.

A.D. 1416. que inviolabili jejunio Quatuor Temporum, carnes assaverant in castris suis, et meretriculas introduxerant, ut, post suffarcinationem ventris, Veneris se spurcitiis macularent.

Genoese half-pence prohibited in England.

Circa præsens tempus, oboli Januensium, quia debito carebant pondere, prohibiti sunt ab Anglis in mercaturis accipi, sive dari.

The Emperor visits London.

Septimo die mensis Maii, venit Imperator Londonias, deductus in magnificentia et gloria per Regem et regni nobiles; et hospitatus est in palatio Regis, juxta Westmonasterium, Rege recepto apud Lambhitham. Rex autem, cupiens deferre omnem humanitatem Regi Romanorum, suspendit ad tempus cuncta Parliamenti negotia, ducens eum secum Wyndeleshoram ad festum Sancti Georgii, honorans illic eum et tantæ fraternitatis titulo et religionis illius nobili vestimento; signumque regale imposuit collo suo, quod Imperator expost semper congessit in omni conventu, publico vel privato.

Honours paid to him by King Henry.

The Duke of Holland visits England.

Ante festum Ascensionis, Dux Holandiæ venit in Angliam, cum apparatu maximo, ad habendum colloquium cum Rege nostro, Regeque Romanorum.

A succession of thunder and lightning.

In festo Trinitatis, et per sequens biduum, nocte dieque audita sunt horrida tonitrua, omnem modum excedentia, et velut sine interpolatione durantia; quæ præcesserunt terrifica fulmina, sine cessatione coruscantia; quæ multos straverunt et occiderunt, arbores succenderunt, et ædificia diruerunt.

TheFrench collect a fleet.

Per totum tempus æstivale, putabatur quod, mediatione Imperatoris, fuisset pax inter regna firmata; sed tergiversantibus Gallis, suspensum fuit pacis negotium, eo maxime, quod Galli conduxerant classem magnarum navium, karicarum, et galearum, quæ regnum Angliæ molestaret. Contra quos Dominus Johannes, Dux Bedfordiæ, missus fuit, frater Regis, cum manu potenti; qui, in die Assumptionis Beatæ Virginis, commisit cum eis, et cepit tres karricas et unam hulkam, et quatuor

The Duke of Bedford captures some French ships; and

balingarias. Tres vero caricæ fugere; una vero de tribus, inter [1] Syrtes confracta, submersa fuit. Alia magna karrica submersa fuit coram Southamptona, cum qua perierunt octingenti viri, quales "*legharneys*" vulgo vocamus. A.D. 1416. others are wrecked.

Imperator et Rex Angliæ fœdus ad invicem pepigere, videlicet, quod ipsi et successores sui boni, firmi, et stabiles, in perpetuum amici erunt, alligati, obligati, et confœderati, pro se ac hæredibus ac successoribus suis, contra homines, cujuscunque gradus, status, dignitatis, aut conditionis, existant, et contra omnes homines qui vivere aut mori possunt, exceptis Sacrosancta Romana Ecclesia et Romano Pontifice, *et cætera*. Alliance between the Emperor and the King of England.

Rex Angliæ, ut ostenderet se ex corde pacem cupere, personaliter transfretavit Kalesiam, ne Gallis ullam calumniandi ministraret materiam, quia dixerant non stare per eos, quin ei offerrent largam pacis viam. Ubi cum Imperator constitutus, cum nihil ab eis audisset procurari, nisi dolos et fraudem solitam, commenta sprevit eorum, et inter Imperatorem Ducemque Burgundiæ, qui dissidebant, fecit concordiam atque pacem. Quibus ita gestis, Dux fecit homagium Imperatori. King Henry shews readiness to treat of peace. Effects a reconciliation between the Emperor and the Duke of Burgundy.

Post hæc, Dux Gloverniæ, frater Regis minimus, cum magna Regis familia, deduxit Imperatorem, donec venisset ad villam de Doredrauht; ubi cunctos Anglos remuneraviit imperialiter, a maximo ad minorem. The Emperor leaves England.

Benedictus Wlleman, civis Londoniarum, qui sparserat scedulas in multis locis, errore plenas, captus, tractus, suspensus, et decollatus est, die Sancti Michaelis. Benedict Wlleman executed.

Parliamentum, quod diximus intermissum propter præsentiam Regis Romanorum, tentum fuit Londoniis circa festum Sancti Lucæ; in quo Dominus Thomas Beufort, Comes de Dorcet, creatus est Dux Exoniæ, concessis sibi de fisco regio annuis mille libris, et quad- Parliament at London. The Earl of Dorset created Duke of Exeter,

[1] *Sirtes* in MS.

A.D. 1416. and honoured with a grant.

raginta libris de villa Exoniæ supradicta, quas Dominus Rex de eadem villa percipere consuevit. In hoc Parliamento requisiti proceres si ista sibi placerent, responderunt quod optime, si donum regium tam exile non esset, nec correspondens meritis et virtutibus tanti viri.

Grant to the King by the Clergy.

Concessæ fuere duæ decimæ per clerum Regi, sub unius anni spatio persolvendæ.

Alleged plot against the King, A.D. 1417.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo [1] septimo-decimo, Rex celebravit Natale apud Kenelwurtham; quo tempore structæ sunt illi insidiæ, prout fertur, per quemdam scutiferum, complicem Johannis Oldkastelle dictum.

Tracts of the Lollards dispersed in certain towns.

In crastino Natalis Domini, sparsæ sunt scedulæ Lollardorum venenosæ, impingentes contra cunctos status Ecclesiæ, fere in qualibet magna domo, vel hospitio, villarum de Sancto Albano, de Northamptona, de Radingia, auctorem nullo sciente.

Decretum Concilii Constantiensis de Electione [2] *Papæ.*

Resolution of the Council of Constance, for the election of a Pope.

" Ad laudem, et gloriam, et honorem, Omnipotentis
" Dei, ad pacem et unitatem Universalis Ecclesiæ, ac
" totius populi Christiani, ut electio futuri Romani et
" Summi Pontificis, proxime celebranda, firmiori auctoritate et plurium roboretur assensu, et ne, attento
" statu Ecclesiæ, [3] super dicta electione in posterum ulla
" retractatio, ullusve scrupulus, in mentibus hominum
" resideat, sed ex illa sequatur unio certa, vera, plenissima, et perfecta; Sacrosancta Generalis Synodus
" Constantiensis, communi utilitate pensata, de speciali
" et expresso consensu, ac voluntate concordi, Sanctæ
" Romanæ Ecclesiæ Cardinalium in eadem Synodo personaliter existentium, et Collegii eorundem, ac omnium
" nationum præsentis Concilii, ordinavit, statuit, et decrevit, quod hac vice duntaxat ad eligendum Roma-

[1] 1414 in ed. Camden.
[2] *Papæ futuri* in ed. Camden.
[3] Omitted in ed. Camden.

" num Summum Pontificem, una cum Cardinalibus, sex A.D. 1417.
" Prælati, vel aliæ honorabiles personæ ecclesiasticæ in
" sacris ordinibus constitutæ, de qualibet natione in
" eadem Synodo pro nunc existente et nominata, quos,
" seu quas, quælibet ipsarum nationum pro se adhuc
" infra dies duxerit eligendos, seu eligendas, ipsis Car-
" dinalibus adjungantur; quibus omnibus eadem Sancta
" Synodus eligendi Romanum Pontificem, secundum for-
" mam hic expressam, quatenus opus est, tribuit potes-
" tatem; videlicet, quod ille, absque ulla exceptione, ab
" Universali Ecclesia Romanus Pontifex habeatur, qui a
" duabus partibus Cardinalium, in conclavi existentium,
" et a cujuscunque nationis duabus partibus eisdem
" Cardinalibus adjungendorum, et tunc adjunctorum,
" electus fuerit, et receptus; quodque non valeat elec-
" tio, nec electus pro Summo Pontifice habeatur, nisi
" duæ partes Cardinalium, in conclavi existentium, et
" cujuslibet nationis duæ partes, cum Cardinalibus ad
" eligendum adjungendorum, et tunc adjunctorum, con-
" sentiant, et consenserint, in Romanum Pontificem eli-
" gendum.

" Statuit insuper, et ordinat ac decernit, quod vota
" quorumcunque in electione hujusmodi emittenda, sint
" nulla, nisi, ut præmittitur, duæ partes [1] Cardinalium,
" et duæ partes cujuslibet nationis adjungendorum, et
" tunc adjunctorum, prædictorum, principaliter, aut per
" accessionem, in unum concurrant. Hoc etiam adjecto,
" quod prælati et alii, cum ipsis Cardinalibus, ad elec-
" tionem hujusmodi adjungendi, et tunc adjuncti, omnes
" et singulas Constitutiones, etiam pœnales, circa elec-
" tionem Romani Pontificis editas, atque consuetudines
" observari consuetas, quemadmodum ipsi Cardinales,
" observare teneantur, et ad illarum observantiam as-
" tringantur.

" Teneantur insuper jurare, et jurent dicti electores,
" Cardinales et alii, antequam ad electionem procedant,

[1] *Cardinalium . . . partes* omitted in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1417. " quod in hujusmodi electionis negotio attendentes quid
" eis imminebit, cum de citatione agetur Vicarii Ihesu
" Christi, successoris Beati Petri, Universalis Ecclesiæ
" Rectoris, gregis Dominici directoris, puris et sinceris
" mentibus, et quantum credent publicæ utilitati Uni-
" versalis Ecclesiæ proficere, [1] omnes cujusque nationis
" personæ, aut alio inordinato affectu, odio, gratia,
" vel favore, abjectis, procedent, ut eorum ministerio
" de utili et idoneo Universali Ecclesiæ provideatur
" pastore.

" Ordinat insuper, statuit, et decernit, eadem Sancta
" Synodus, quod infra decem dies, exnunc continue
" numerandos, quos decem dies omnibus et singulis
" Sanctæ Romanæ Ecclesiæ Cardinalibus, præsentibus
" et absentibus, et cæteris electoribus supradictis, at-
" tenta Romanæ Ecclesiæ vacatione [2] notoria, ad intran-
" dum conclave in hac civitate Constantiensi, in majori
" domo communitatis civitatis ejusdem, ad hoc jam
" ordinata, præfigit et assignat, præfati electores, Car-
" dinales et alii supradicti, intrent ipsum conclave ad
" electionem hujusmodi celebrandum, cæteraque facien-
" dum, observandum, et prosequendum, quemadmodum
" in cæteris, præter præmissa, de Cardinalibus et aliis
" in electione Romani Pontificis jure decernunt; quæ
" omnia præmissa observata vult eadem Sancta Syno-
" dus in suo robore permanere. Hanc autem formam,
" et hunc modum, electionis approbat, ordinat, [3] sta-
" tuit, pro hac vice, et ad omnem scrupulum removen-
" dum vel submovendum, omnes et singulos in eadem
" Synodo præsentes et venturos, qui eidem Synodo
" adhærebunt, ac omnes actus legitimos in eadem Sy-
" nodo [4] agendos, active et passive, quatinus opus est,
" habilitat, et habiles esse declarat, cæteris ejusdem
" Sacri Concilii decretis semper salvis, supplens omnes

---

[1] *omni . . . . . peregrinæ* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*, II. p. 318.
[2] *notaria* in ed. Camden.
[3] *et statuit* in ed. Camden.
[4] *agendis* in MS.

" defectus, si qui forsan intervenerint in præmissis ; A.D. 1417.
" Apostolicis etiam in Generalibus Consiliis editis Con-
" stitutionibus, et aliis in contrarium facientibus, non
" obstantibus quibuscunque."

Particulars of the election of a Pope; by order of the Council of Constance.

Ultimo die mensis Octobris, Episcopus Wyntoniensis accesit ad Concilium, peregrinaturus Hierosolimam, post electionem Summi Pontificis celebratam; ubi tantum valuit ejus facunda persuasio, ut et excitaret Dominos Cardinales ad concordiam, et ad electionem Summi Pontificis se ocius præpararent. Quamobrem mox præparata fuit domus, quæ "Conclave" vocaretur, et esset, cum lectis stratis honorifice pro dominis Cardinalibus, et electoribus adjungendis eisdem. Ordinatum nempe fuerat decreto Concilii, ut eligerentur, ex omni natione quæ convenerat, sex personæ ad intrandum conclave cum Cardinalibus, prout superius est expressum. Unde de Anglia ingressi sunt conclave Episcopi, Londoniensis, Bathoniensis, Norwicensis, Lichefeldensis, Abbas Eboracensis, et Magister Thomas de Poltone, Decanus Eboracensis. Quælibet autem natio scripsit nomina personarum suarum in scedula, et cera involvit. Præordinatæ proinde personæ conclave sunt ingressæ die [1] Quatuor Coronatorum. Quibus intromissis, quædam persona laica attulit omnes scedulas, cera circumductas, ad Vicecancellarium in conclave. Qui, nudatis brachiis usque ad cubitum, posuit omnes scedulas super mensam. Exinde decretum factum est, quod reclusi ederent in conclavi; statutumque fuit, ut haberent panem et vinum, et uno die unicum genus carnium, et altero unum genus piscium, et singulis diebus unum genus potagii, prout dies exigebat.

The Electors are shut up in Conclave.

Tunc Imperator, et tresdecim Duces, ac majores civitatis Constantiæ, juravere super Librum, quod fideliter custodirent conclave ab impeditoribus, et ne alia cibaria intromitterentur quam statuta fuere. Quo facto, Impe-

[1] The Passion of the Four Crowned Martyrs, November 8.

A.D. 1417. rator personaliter perscrutatus est domum totam, et duabus seris ostium post se clausit. In ostio domus illius, factum fuerat foramen quadratum, [1] habens in longitudine et latitudine pedem unum, per quod immitti debebant cibaria inclusorum. Omni quoque die, dum in conclavi fuerunt, Abbas Sancti Edmundi de Bury et Prior Sancti Johannis de Klerkenwelle fuerunt assignati ad prægustandum cibaria Anglicorum. Mox vero ut servitum fuit inclusis, dictum foramen clausum fuit tribus seris.

The Cardinal Colonna is chosen Pope, as Martin V.

Igitur illis conferentibus de injuncto negotio, quidam nominavere Wyntoniensem, quidam Londoniensem, Episcopos, nonnulli vero Cardinalem Franciæ; nihilque fuit actum primo die, vel secundo. Die vero Sancti Martini, primo mane, Episcopus Londoniensis venit, et, inter omnes Cardinales, protulit ista verba: — "Ego, "Ricardus, Episcopus Londoniensis, accedo ad domi- "num meum Cardinalem de Columpna." Audito præsenti sermone, repente cuncti præsentes, per Dei gratiam, in eandem consensere personam. Et illico exuerunt eum vestibus suis omnibus, et novis eum revestierunt, ac super altare posuerunt, et deosculati sunt manus ejus et pedes. Hiis ita gestis, confestim unus eorum qui inclusi fuerunt, fregit foramen in pariete, et clamavit: — "Habemus Papam, Martinum." Et tunc exiverunt omnes in Magnam Ecclesiam, cantantes, — "Te, "Deum, laudamus." In crastino, Papa fuit factus presbyter, et die sequenti fuit sacratus Episcopus, et celebravit Missam suam primam; cui Missæ interfuerunt centum quadraginta mitrati. Sequenti Dominica, Dominus Papa fecit mane diluculo solemnem processionem, transiens per australem partem ecclesiæ, versus occidentalem, ubi constitutus fuit clericus, habens canabum et stuppam, et combussit ea, dicens—

Ceremonies of his consecration.

"Ecce! Pater Sancte, sic transit gloria mundi."

[1] *habens . . . unum* omitted in ed. Camden.

Post hæc, eodem die, fuit factum quasi quoddam solarium pro coronatione Papæ, altitudine habens viginti pedes. Prior Sancti Johannis de Klerkenwelle tenuit diadema Papæ in officio Coronationis. Ipso die, post prandium, Papa equitavit per medium civitatis Constantiæ, quem sequebantur in equis omnes Episcopi mitrati, et Abbates. Equus Papæ fuit [1] phaleratus cum rubeo eskarleto, equi vero cunctorum Episcoporum phalerati fuere candido panno bissino, et Imperator in hac equitatione tenuit frenum Papæ. Cum autem pervenisset Papa ad locum fori, illic obviavere sibi omnes Judæi civitatis, qui porrexerunt sibi, sicut mos est, cæremonias ac legem suam. Quas acceptas Papa projecit post tergum suum, dicendo,—"Recedant vetera, nova "sunt omnia." Papa, prout dicunt, prius vocabatur "Paulinus," natus de illa nobili et antiqua gente Paulina, Romæ.

A.D. 1417. His coronation. Procession through the city of Constance. The Jews of the city meet the Pope.

Hoc anno, circa finem mensis Julii, Rex Henricus, cum magna classe mare sulcans, decimo navigationis die, salvus applicuit in Normannia, scilicet, in festo Sancti Petri ad Vincula, in loco vocato "Touque;" ubi villa fortis est, et castellum nobile, quod reddere per annum solet octo millia [2] coronarum. Quo in loco quingenti equites hostiliter occurrerunt ei, transitum prohibere volentes. Sed perempto per arcitenentes eorum capitaneo, et ejus collega capto, cæteri meticulose fugerunt. Nec multo post redditum fuit Regi dictum castellum, et qui remanere volebant accepere gratiam remanendi. Volentes abire tulerunt secum, de gratia regia, pecunias et supellectilia, relinquentes arma et instrumenta bellica, necnon et victualia dicto castello. Consimili modo reddita fuit Regi villa de Aumberes, cum castello; qua tempestate monachus quidam solivagus, captus a quodam de familia Regis, despoliatus est. Quod ut Rex comperit, sollicite quæsivit a monacho, si per-

King Henry lands at Touque, in Normandy, and captures the place. He takes cognizance of the case of a monk, who has been despoiled.

[1] *faleratus* in MS.
[2] *coronatorum* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.*, II. p. 321.

A.D. 1417. sonam recognosceret, quæ tulerat ab eo [1] restellas suas. Qui cum diceret bene se personam noscere, si [2] videret eum, tandem post aliquos in conspectu ductos, notavit unum, dicens illum bona sua rapuisse. Quem Rex illico vehementer redarguit, dicens illum morte dignum, qui, cum aliunde satisfacere potuisset suæ necessitati, ad res religiosorum manus extenderet; modo tamen gavisurum perdonationis titulo, si nihil tale committat de cætero; fecitque virum reddere monacho quæ tulerat prius ab eo, monacho mandans ut domum repeteret, et consuetum servitium cum fratribus suis intrepidanter Deo rependeret; asserens se non illuc advenisse modo vespilionis, ut res religiosorum raperet, sed potius, more Regis, ut eorum bona ex direptione servaret. Nec mora, proclamari fecit per exercitum, ne quis religiosum, clericum, vel presbyterum, nec ullum penitus ecclesiasticum, despoliare, seu quovismodo molestare, præsumeret, nec ad res ecclesiasticas animo rapiendi manus mittere, sub pœna suspensionis et laquei. Qua proclamatione per plebanos vulgata, videres rusticos, indumentis clericorum sumptis, vagari per exercitum, negotia tractare foralia, impune accedere et recedere, Anglis astu pie deceptis. Nec valebant Anglici rei veritatem agnoscere, [3] rusticis coronas sibi radentibus, ut Anglos fallerent efficacius, aspectu capitum albatorum. Consequenter, insuper fecit Rex proclamari, ne quis fœminam conjugatam, viduam, sive virginem, contra voluntatem, auderet opprimere, vel bona diripere plebeiorum, qui se Regi submiserant, sub pœna [4] prætaxata.

Proclamation made, that the religious shall be exempt from spoliation.

Frauds resulting therefrom.

Proclamation against other acts of violence.

The King marches to Caen, and lays siege to it.

Tertio decimo die mensis Augusti, Rex recessit cum exercitu de villa de Touque, et pernoctavit apud villam Sancti Salvatoris de Tybe. Crastino, die Sabbati, pernoctavit apud villam de Gramvyle, ubi commoratus est die Dominica, videlicet, in festo Assumptionis Beatæ Mariæ. Die Lunæ pernoctavit apud Abbathiam de Fon-

---

[1] *res* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.* II. p. 321.
[2] *videat* in ed. Camden.
[3] *rusticos* in ed. Camden.
[4] *prædicta* in ed. Camden.

tenes, et in die Martis pervenit ad villam de Stutevyle. A.D. 1417.
Die vero Mercurii consedit, cum exercitu, coram villa de Caen, ex parte australi, prope Monasterium Sancti Stephani; Dux Clarenciæ ex parte boreali, juxta Monasterium Monialium Sanctæ Trinitatis; Comes Marescallus sedit ex parte sinistra Regis, et Dominus de Mautrevers juxta eum. Juxta quem Domini de Talbot et Umfrevyle sunt locati, et consequenter Domini de Nevile et de Willuby. Ex parte Regis dextra consedere Comes de Warwyk et Dominus Johannes Gray; juxta quos Comites de Huntingdone et de Sarum, et Dominus Johannes Gernecornewayle.

The French propose burning the Abbey of St. Stephen.

Dum sic esset dispositus regalis exercitus, et Abbatia Sancti Stephani foret Francis communita, videntes qui in monasterio pro tutamento fuere, se impares Regis viribus, locum deserere festinabant, et diripientes tam victualia quam alia loci jocalia, latenter in villam commigraverunt, notabiles sacrilegio manifesto; ubi constituti tractabant inter se qualiter dictum monasterium flammis absumerent, et turres ecclesiæ complanarent, per quas multa mala fieri posse non dubitabant. Audivit hæc insusurrari inter Francos quidam monachus ejusdem loci; qui, metuens sui monasterii destructionem, confidenter dedit se periculo, et sub illius noctis conticinio, manibus reptans, et genibus, per hostes, per ignes, per arma, per gladios, tandem pervenit ad locum ubi Dux Clarenciæ, frater Regis, obsidionis suæ vigilias observabat. Et impetrato aditu, vidit ubi recubuerat armatus ad unguem, in horto quodam super herbam, supposito capiti suo saxo. Cui confestim, flexis genibus, flebiliter supplicavit, ut loci sui ruinæ succurreret, qui jam diruendus erat, nisi maturius subveniret:—

A monk of the place gives notice to the Duke of Clarence.

"[1] Vobis," ait, "specialius convenit nostrum servare
"monasterium, qui de Regum linea descendistis, qui
"locum nostrum fundaverunt, extruxerunt, atque dota-
"verunt. Quapropter, incunctanter utamini me duce

[1] *Vobis autem specialius* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1417. The Duke captures the Monastery, and rescues it from destruction.

" prævio, et ego vos inducam, et gaudere faciam loco " nostro." Nec mora, fecit Dux ut monuit, et, arreptis scalis, pervenit ad eam partem, quam monachus bene novit immunitam; nam pauci, sed invalidi, relicti fuerant, magis ad ostentationem, quam ad defensionem loci. Quos, adventu suo territos, vel captivavit, vel abire permisit, reputans eos indignos gladio suo, propter rusticitatem et vilitatem personarum. Unum tamen decollari jussit, qui confessus fuerat se res monasterii, scilicet, ferramenta fenestrarum et hujusmodi, compilasse, dicens ei:—" Si nos," ait, " nostros propter talia sacri- " legia juste morte mulctamus, multo plus tu pœnam " mereris, qui patriæ propriæ sacella spoliare non times." Dux ergo, tali modo potitus loco, introduxit Regem in crastino, gaudentem nimirum quod a [1] tholis et turribus Monasterii valebat intueri quæcunque gerebantur in villa, [2] et illic figere vel locare gunnas suas, quas Galli "*ca-* " *nones*" vocant, quibus validius villam infestare posset.

The Monastery is found to command the town.

The place is assaulted.

Post hæc, denunciabantur dies et hora, quibus fieri deberet insultus ad villam. Interea sonante terrifico lituorum et tubarum classico, obsessi, semet cohortantes, ad muros alacriter cucurrere, telis armati, gladiis et missilibus, jaculis et petrariis, ut vim vi repellerent. De parte Regis, ut ita dicam:—

" [3] Induit adversis contraria pectora telis,
" Miles, ut æternum sanguine nomen [4] emat."

Valour of Sir Edmund Spring.

Inter milites, Dominus Edmundus Springeus, qui dudum, cum aliis, militiæ cingulo donatus fuerat, muros Cadomi armatus ascendit, et vulnera

—" [5] Alterna datque capitque manu."

" [6] Sicut aper longe silvis latratibus actus,
" Fulmineo celeres dissipat ore canes;
" Mox tamen ipse perit,"—

---

[1] *tholis et* omitted in ed. Camden.
[2] *et* omitted in ed. Camden.
[3] Ovid, ii. *Amor.* x., l. 32.
[4] *eruat* in ed. Camden.
[5] Ovid, *Fasti* ii., l. 234, somewhat altered.
[6] Ovid, *Fasti.* v., ll. 231–3.

sic et iste vir egregius, dum multos muris dejicit, dum plures ense perimit, dum Martis acta peragit, lapsus pede, corruit in foramen muri, ubi sedendo pugnans peremptus est. Quem mox inhumaniter, ut erat armatus, adhuc spirantem, ganeones circumjectis ignibus cremaverunt. Non tamen destitere regales inimicis insistere, sed bili concitata propter infortunium tanti socii, (fuerat nempe cunctis amabilis,) insurrexerunt acrius, et exarserunt, contra tam improbos pollinctores, fatigantes illos sic ex parte illa, quod videbatur ipsis qui tuebantur oppidum ex altera parte, necessarium, ut, statione sua relicta, ad eam partem accurrerent, qua Rex oppugnabat villam. Sicque rarescente in dicta parte defensore, Dux Clarenciæ, factis instrumentis, in loco qui putabatur tutissimus, muros scandit, et, post terga Gallorum desiliens, eos adeo repente terruit, ut ignorarent, utrum potius juvaret procedere contra Regem, an reverti, et manus erigere contra Ducem. Facta est igitur strages magna Gallorum, obviantibus a fronte regalibus, instantibus a tergo Clarencianis, omnemque illis adimentibus spem salutis. Talique modo Rex villa potitus est, castello nondum rebellibus vacuato. Quapropter, Rex, gunnarum jactu, sic castrum debilitavit, ut impossibile videretur inclusis se defendere locum posse. Proinde impetrato tractatu, impetrarunt a Rege libertatem abeundi, relictis armis et victualibus, auro et argento, atque jocalibus, in castello. Sed ne inanes omnino, et vacui, recederent, Rex indulsit eis, ut milites [1] quidem certam summam fulvi metalli secum ferrent, armigeri quoque taxatam, et alii limitatam, tollerent, et non amplius, sub pœna perditionis summarum concessarum, pariter et vitarum. Fœminas vero permisit ornamenta, vel quæque mobilia, secum ferre, et indemnes abire. Quæ magnas auri summas, ut fertur, in utribus abstulere. Hiis omnibus ingrati Franci beneficiis, regiæ munificentiæ pessime responderunt, et, invidentes ejus com-

A.D. 1417. His dreadful death.

The Duke of Clarence scales the walls.

The English capture the town.

Terms are granted to the garrison of the castle.

The French make an ungrateful return for

[1] *quidam* in ed. Camden and *Hist. Angl.* II. p. 325.

A.D. 1417. the King's generosity.

modis, aurum et argentum, et quicquid in castrum ad tuendum deportatum fuerat, igne combusserunt, ut post recessum patuit eorundem.

Bayeux surrenders to the English.

Post deditionem castri de Caen, quod obtinuerunt conditionaliter, si Rex Francus vel Dolphinus, aut Comes de Armanak, bello non dissolverent obsidionem infra [1] nonum decimum diem mensis Septembris, reddiderunt se, pacto simili, civitas et ecclesia Baiocensis, cum multis aliis villis.

Alleged treaty of Sir John Oldcastle with the Scots.

Cum hæc agerentur in Neustria, Lollardi, duce J[ohanne] Oldcastelle, insanire cœperunt in Anglia; qui Scotos concitavit, tam prece quam repromissa pecunia, ut intrarent hostiliter regnum, in Regis absentia, levi negotio, ut asseruit, subjugandum. Ferunt quod Willelmum Douglas, Scotum, ad Pontem Fractum, allocutus fuerit, grandem promittens auri summam, si gentem suam sollicitaret, et eum qui falso dicebatur apud eos "Rex Ricardus," venire cum eis faceret, et se ostentare tanquam Regem.

The Scots besiege Rokesburgh.

Scotus vero,—[2] "Auri sacra fame" coactus, non multo post [3] contribules suos cum magno strepitu venire fecit ad obsidendum castellum, cum villa, de Rokesburghe. Quo quum venissent, suffossores immiserunt ad subvertendum muros.

The Dukes of Exeter and Bedford hasten to meet the Scots.

Contigit eodem tempore Ducem Exoniæ, [4] Dominum T[homam] Beufort, ad Brydelingtonam venisse, [5] peregrinandi gratia; qui confestim, audito rei nuncio, properavit ad partes, eundo colligens armatos et arcitenentes, hostibus occurrere festinando. Ex alia parte, Custos regni, Dominus Johannes, frater Regis, Dux Bedfordiæ, cum aliis regni nobilibus, magnum conflans exercitum, ad easdem pervenit partes; quod Scoti per exploratores comperientes, expectare non audentes diutius:—

Who take to flight.

"[6] Turpia fœmineæ terga dedere fugæ."—

[1] 29 *diem* in ed. Camden.
[2] *Æneid.* iii., l. 57.
[3] *contribulos* in ed. Camden.
[4] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[5] *perigrinandi* in ed. Camden.
[6] Ovid, *Fasti*, vi., l. 522.

Nec mirum, quia plusquam centum millia virorum convenisse ferebantur, ad repellendum eos. Et ne rurales æstimarentur, et inexperti, qui cum [1] dictis heroibus venerant, vir valde venerabilis, Dux Exoniæ, palam asseveravit se scivisse ex illis cohortibus delegisse quadraginta millia virorum bellicosorum, qui virtute præstarent, et animis, æque cum valentioribus quasi regni totius, non obstante quod maxima multitudo, cum Rege, in Normannia militabat. A.D. 1417. The Duke of Exeter's opinion of his troops.

Eo tempore, dux Lollardorum, J[ohannes] Oldcastelle, dum diversis in locis requireret latibula, prope Sanctum Albanum, in dominio Abbatis delituit multis diebus, in domo cujusdam rustici, habentis ibidem idoneam mansionem. Quo audito, familiares Abbatis, illuc nocte properantes, illum quidem non invenerunt, sed quosdam de suis specialibus asseclis tenuerunt, et ad carcerem adduxerunt. Ipse vero dux perfidorum, hoc audito rumore, vehementer ingemuit, dicens suum grande propositum enervatum, captis præcipuis consciis votorum suorum. In præfato loco, reperti fuerunt libri in Anglicis scripti litteris, et nonnulli libri, quidam picti nobiliter, et imaginibus decorati, quarum imaginum capita, juxta formam falsæ doctrinæ suæ, nebulones abraserant, et in Letaniis omnia Sanctorum nomina, una cum nominibus Beatæ Virginis, aboleverant, usque ad hunc versum,—"Parce nobis, Domine." Inventa sunt insuper illic quædam scripta, plena blasphemiæ, in Beatam Mariam, quæ, propter horrorem, [2] supersedi. Librum, tali rasura deformatum, misit Domino nostro Regi dictus Abbas Sancti Albani, cum quibusdam aliis deliramentis repertis ibidem; et Dominus Rex eundem librum Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi remisit, ut, in sermonibus faciendis ad Crucem Sancti Pauli, Londoniis, ostenderetur; ut vel sic civibus innotesceret, quanta furia Lollardi vehebantur, qui non dico imagines, sed nec ipsa

Oldcastle conceals himself at St. Alban's.

Indications of his opinions found in his place of concealment.

Hatred of the Lollards for the effigies and names of the Saints.

[1] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[2] *prætereo* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1417. Sanctorum nomina in suis membranis inseri permittebant.

Successes of King Henry in France.

Rex Angliæ, per idem tempus impiger, in partibus transmarinis cepit plures civitates et villas muratas, cum castris et munitionibus plusquam centum.

Death of the Bishop of Salisbury, at Constance.

Hoc anno, quarto die mensis Septembris, obiit Magister Robertus Alum, Episcopus Sarisburiensis, apud Constantiam, Concilio nondum finito.

Siege of the town of Falaise, and capture.

Mense Decembri, Rex Henricus obsedit Falesiam, villam munitissimam, refertam defensoribus, superbam suis opibus, instauratam machinis, confidentem mœniis, ut nec quidem portas contra Regem in initio claudere dignabantur; villa tamen levi negotio, terrore gunnarum, reddita fuit Regi. Sed castrum cum magno fastu detentum fuit fere usque ad festum Purificationis, medio tempore multis hinc inde jactis convitiis. Tandem, obstinatione deposita, pœnituit obsessos tamdiu perseverasse in pertinacia, et humilius sapiendo Regis gratiam flagitabant. Non enim ferre valebant horridos saxorum volatus, quos crebro circa se cernebant emissos, cuilibet formidandos; et proinde maluere semel vitam servare quoquo pacto, quam quotidie quasi mortem metuendo, mori. Igitur, post certas conditiones, assecuraverunt Regem se propriis suis sumptibus damna castri, villæque ruinas, reparaturos, præter illas quas solverent redemptionis suæ summas; [1] quod idcirco Rex illis imposuit, propter suæ fastuosæ detentionis diuturnitatem, quæ fuit causa ruinæ magnæ dicti castelli.

The castle is surrendered.

Sir John Oldcastle is captured and wounded.

Circa præsens tempus, captus fuit in Anglia ille vaniglorius, [2] inveteratus dierum malorum, primicerius Lollardorum, dux et princeps perfidorum, J[ohannes] Oldcastille, quondam dictus "Dominus de Cobham," in terris dominii de [3] Powisia, non sine periculo, læsioneque quorundam qui ceperunt eum, sed nec ipse sine vulnere tentus fuit.

---

[1] *quas* in Walsingham, *Hist. Angl.* II. p. 327.

[2] In allusion to an expression in *Daniel*, Chapters vii., xiii., and xxii.

[3] *Howisia* in ed. Camden.

Sub eodem tempore, vocati fuerant ad Parliamentum Londonias omnes status regni, ut de pecuniali suffragio Regi ferendo consulerent, qui [1] laborabat in partibus ultramarinis. Cumque domini et personæ Parliamentales audissent quod captus fuisset hostis publicus, placuit cunctis Parliamentum non dissolvendum, donec interrogatus et auditus fuisset in eodem Parliamento. Missus est igitur Dominus de Powisia, qui deduceret eum manu forti. Qui et adduxit eum Londonias in lectica sauciatum, una cum clerico, omnium secretorum suorum conscio. Nec mora, cum constitutus fuisset in præsentia [2] regni Rectoris, Ducis de Bedfordia, et Statuum Parliamenti, lectum fuit indictamentum coram eo de hostili insurrectione contra Regem in campo Sancti Egidii, et aliis offensis læsæ majestatis, quæ partim tanguntur superius locis suis. Quæsitumque fuit ab eo, qualiter se voluit excusare, et ostendere quare non merito sit [3] adjudicatus morti; qui mox, aliunde quærens diffugia, assumpta parabola, cœpit prædicare de Dei misericordia, et quicunque mortales Dei imitatores esse vellent, deberent semper misericordiam superexaltare judicio; vindictam fore solius Dei, quæ ab ejus cultoribus non debuit exerceri, sed soli Deo relinqui; et alia plura commemoravit, redimendo tempus, donec Summus regni Justiciarius Regis Vicarium monuit, ne pateretur eum inaniter tempus terere, et assistentes regni proceres molestare. Jussit ergo regni Rector, ut responderet conformiter ad objecta. Qui, se videns constanter urgeri, tandem post brevem meditationem, soluto silentio, respondit, dicens: — "Mihi autem," inquit, "pro "minimo est, ut a vobis judicer, aut ab humano die;" et iterum impertinenter garrulare cœpit, donec Summus Justiciarius jussit ut responderet finaliter, et doceret, si posset, quare mori non debuit. Qui confestim, cum summa superbia et abusione, respondit, se non habere

A.D. 1417. Parliament summoned, in aid of the King.

Oldcastle is brought to London, by Lord Powis.

He is brought before Parliament.

His address to Parliament.

The Duke of Bedford commands him to answer the charges made against him.

[1] *laborabant* in ed. Camden.
[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.
[3] *abjudicatus* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1417. He alleges that King Richard is still living. He is put to death. His last words.

judicem inter eos, vivente ligeo domino suo, in regno Scotiæ, Rege Ricardo. Quo responso accepto, quia non opus erat testibus, sine mora jussus est trahi et suspendi super furcas, atque comburi pendens in eisdem. Ubi cum plures personæ honorabiles huic spectaculo interessent, Domino Thomæ de Erpingham, prout dicunt, novissima verba locutus est; adjurans eum, ut si cerneret eum resurgere die tertia, pacem procuraret sectæ suæ. Tanta perditi fuit dementia, ut putaret se post triduum a mortuis surrecturum.

Surrender of Avranches, in Normandy, A.D. 1418.

Anno millesimo quadringentesimo octavo decimo, tenuit Rex Natale in Normannia, apud Baiocas; circa quod tempus, redditum fuit sibi castrum de Falesia, et civitas de [1] Abrincis, id est, Averaunce, se submisit.

Other places besieged.

Post festum Paschæ, missi sunt per Regem ad obsidendum Monasterium de Bekko Herlewyni Dominus Thomas, Dux Clarenciæ, ad obsidendum villam de [2] Cherburgh Dominus Hunfridus, Dux Gloverniæ, ad obsidendum castrum de Daunfrount Dominus Ricardus, Comes Warwici, ad obsidendum castrum Nully Levesque Comes de Kyme.

King Henry at Caen.

In die Sancti Georgii, Rex apud [3] Cadomum, in castello, celebravit solemniter idem festum.

The Duke of Exeter sets out for Normandy.

Circa [4] festum Trinitatis, ad jussum Regis, profectus est in Normanniam Dominus Thomas, Dux Exoniæ, Regis avunculus, cum quindecim millibus, prout dicitur, bellatorum.

The Count of Armagnac and others are murdered, by the partisans of the Duke of Burgundy.

Mense Junii, Burgundiones nocte Parisium intraverunt, et Comitem de Armanak morte turpissima mulctaverunt. Nam, ut fertur, eum crudeliter excoriaverunt, et expost crudelissime peremerunt. In illâ ferali seditione jugulati feruntur plures nobiles; scilicet, Cardinalis de Baar, Archiepiscopus Remensis, Episcopus de [5] Meulx, Episcopus Constantiensis, Episcopus de Liseux, Abbas

[1] *Abrincis, id est,* omitted in ed. Camden.
[2] *Sherburg* in ed. Camden.
[3] *Wonium* in ed. Camden.
[4] *festo* in ed. Camden.
[5] *Mentz* in ed. Camden.

Sancti Dionysii, Abbas de [1] Jormayle, Cancellarius Franciæ, Præpositus Parisiorum, et plures alii, ad numerum quatuordecim millium personarum. Nec satiari potuit effrenata furia tanta cæde virorum, quin et in fœminas grassaretur; nempe feruntur jugulata quinque millia fœminarum. A.D. 1418.

Sub eodem tempore, Rex obsedit villam nobilem, vocatam "Loveres"; quam, fortiter expugnatam, compulit ad deditionem, sub certis conditionibus utrobique pactis. Reddita est ergo Regi, in Vigilia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ. Die vero Lunæ sequente, movit Dominus Rex exercitum versus Pount de la Arche. Eodem tempore, Dux Exoniæ obsedit civitatem Ebroicensem, [2] id est, Everoyse. Siege and capture of Louviers. Siege of Evreux.

Ipso anno, infra Octavas Assumptionis Beatæ Mariæ, Dominus Ihesus, ut putatur, ob honorem gloriosæ Matris suæ, quam propensius veneratur Rex Angliæ, dedit ei in locis variis tres miraculosas victorias in provincia Normannorum.— Three victories granted to the King, for his piety.

Prima fuit, quod centum de suis Anglicis, die Martis infra dictas Octavas, ceperunt tres magnos dominos apud locum vocatum "[3] Kilbuef," et personas alias octoginta, et trecentos fugere compulerunt. Secunda fuit, die Jovis quadringenti nempe de hostibus intraverunt suburbana civitatis Ebroicensis; et undecim ex Anglis fugaverunt eos, et ceperunt ex his quatuor, et duodecim peremerunt, captis quadraginta dextrariis eorundem. Tertia fuit, die Sabbati sequente, summo mane, hostes revera voluissent cepisse villam quam Rex ceperat in prima equitatione sua præsentis anni, dictam "Loveres"; sed capitaneus dictæ villæ, cum centum de nostris, exivit animose contra mille, et, Deo volente, vicit eos; et tradidit in manus hominum nostræ partis centum et octoginta personas generosas ex hostibus, per omnia benedictus, Deus. Particulars of those victories.

---

[1] *Pormayle* in ed. Camden.
[2] *id est, Everoyse,* omitted in ed. Camden.
[3] *Kulnef* in ed. Camden.

A.D. 1419. Capture of Pontoise by the Captal de la Bouche.

[1] Pridie Kalendas Augusti, capta fuit inopinato villa de Pountoyse, prope Parisium, probitate Capitanei de la Bouche, summo mane: qui nocte non procul a villa delitescens inter vineas, cum nonnullis de [2] Domini Regis familia, in vigilia matutina repente scalarum scansione muros ascendit; ubi post diutinam dimicationem, occisis multis [2] de defensoribus, et pluribus vulneratis, cum cives cernerent numerum nostratum crescere inter eos, oppressi vecordia, portis apertis, fugerunt quo sors quemque trahebat. Fuerunt utique in ea villa præfortes homines, constituti pro defensione mille, qui ferebant lanceas atque scuta, et balistariorum duo millia. Qui omnes sub festinatione versus Parisium fugere contendebant; sed intercepti sunt, et præoccupati, per [3] Comitem de Huntingdonia; qui et ipse destinatus fuit ad [4] istud negotium, ut ipse ex una parte villæ cives [5] occupasset, dum alii, ex parte altera, muros ascendere molirentur; sed tamen retardatus fuerat in marisco, non inveniens exitum usque ad solis ortum. Occisa est igitur illa pene multitudo per Comitem, villa per nostros detenta. In qua recondita [6] fuerant omnis generis victualia, ad duos annos. De cujus amœnitate, divitiis, et utilitate, Rex scripsit, quod inter omnia quæ gessit in transmarinis partibus, opus magis utile non peregit. Hæc autem gesta sunt, expirantibus treugis, in crastino postquam Franci Regem suis fallaciis delusissent, et pacis vias, quas Rex obtulerat, [7] refutassent. Ferunt quod dicta villa fuit instaurata sufficienter victualibus pro duobus annis.

Great stores found there.

[1] At this point there is an hiatus; as the History passes on to the latter part of the year 1419. The like hiatus occurs in the *Historia Anglicana*; see Vol. II. p. 329.

[2] Omitted in ed. Camden.

[3] *Comites* in ed. Camden.

[4] *hoc* in ed. Camden.

[5] *occuparet* in ed. Camden.

[6] *fuerunt* in ed. Camden.

[7] *recusassent* in ed. Camden.

APPENDIX.

APPENDIX.

[1]CHRONICON WILLELMI DE RISHANGER.

De duobus Bellis apud Lewes et Evesham commissis.

[MS. Cotton. Claudius D. vi.]

Incipiunt Chronica Fratris Willelmi de Rishanger. F. 97.

Quamplurimorum incommendabilis inolevit consuetudo, qui scripta chronicalia parvipendunt, libros historiales ac gesta principum contemnunt, eisque vacantibus derisiones inferendo, frivola et falsitates computant universa, quibus expedit admonitioni saluberrimæ non impudenter aures inclinare, ut vituperationi suæ modum curent imponere, ne si forsitan nimis immoderate simplicitatem aliorum vituperent, propriæ fragilitatis immemores, in derogationis culpa capiantur; præsertim cum ad multorum notitiam a viris sanctis et catholicis hujusmodi diligenter edita conspicimus. [2]Cui quidem admonitioni si quis adquiescere recusat, quanta reprehensione dignus sit, audiat quod scriptum est,— " Quicquid salubrius est, quicquid te magis commendat " Deo, et ad majorem devotionem excitat, id meditare, " id exerce, id exequi studeas semper, et amplecti." Cum beata meditatio, quam sequitur fructuosa cordis contritio, mentis oculum in supernæ contemplationis lumine infigens, quod utique plerumque contingit,

[1] See page 155 *ante*; where much of the history of the time between the Battles of Lewes (14 May 1264) and Evesham (4 August 1265), the subject of the present Chronicle, has, in the *Ypodigma Neustriæ*, been omitted.

[2] *Qui* in MS.

cum ad memoriam reducitur, quam momentanea vanitate præterit nobilitas, et potentia omnimoda mortalium; fit enim nonnunquam, ut, ex præcedentium recordatione, ad amorem cœlestis patriæ legentis animus accenditur.

Quia igitur nostri quidam contemporanei, circa rerum præteritarum indagationem plerumque incumbentes, et fortiores in angustiis efficiuntur, qui considerant antiquos patres, tanquam aurum igne examinatum, variis persecutionibus probatos, ad supernam jocunditatem feliciter migrasse; credentes successores nostros pari occupatione medio tempore detineri, quod mirabiles et amaros eventus, quos, ad flagellum gentis Anglicanæ, peccatis populi promerentibus, permisit Deus excitari nostris temporibus, litteris [1] duxi commendare; quatinus considerantes nos, una cum adversis simul et prosperis, velut umbram decessisse, mala, quæ ante sæculi consummationem [2] Evangelico promisso supervenient universo orbi, non solum minus formidant, verum etiam [3] gaudenter toleranda, Dei patientia protecti, alacriter exurgant, quia—"Multæ tribulationes justorum, et de "omnibus hiis liberabit eos Dominus;" et auctoritas,— "Absit ne fidelis quisque, qui Deum videre desiderat, "de mundi percussionibus lugeat, qui eisdem suis "percussionibus finire non ignorat." Ut igitur materiam cronizandi sagaciori linguæ relinquam, hujusmodi opus arripere volenti, inceptis finem citius imponens, qualicumque stilo pauca de multis intimare curabo.

De Bello de Lewes.

Anno siquidem Gratiæ M°.cc°.lxiii°., regnante Rege Angliæ, H[enrico] Tertio, regni ejusdem xlviii°., perurgente cruentissima dissensione inter eundem Regem et Barones suos, retroactis temporibus [4] exorta, occasione Provisionum Oxoniæ quondam statutarum, inter cætera quæ in scriptis inseruntur adversa, formidolosæ tribula-

[1] *duximus* in ed. Camden. Soc.
[2] *Euvangelico* in MS.
[3] *eam gaudenter* in MS.
[4] *exortis* in MS.

tionis incommodo præcipue laborabat terra Anglicana. Convenientibus autem aliquando Oxoniæ Comitibus, Baronibus, et totius regni magnatibus universis, præsente Rege, providentur Statuta, ad exaltationem Ecclesiæ, et utilitatem regni, secundum assertionem multorum, dummodo firmiter et inviolabiliter ab universis et singulis observarentur.

Sed prævalente postmodum omnis iniquitatis auctore, F. 97 b.
secuta est subversio, terræ concussio, et angustia, nostris temporibus inaudita. Constitutiones siquidem ibidem provisæ scriptis inseruntur; etsi nonnullis invitis, signis singulorum signantur; præstito corporali sacramento, tam a Domino Rege et Edwardo, filio ejus primogenito, quam a magnatibus omnibus, et proceribus, ut perpetuæ firmitatis robur obtinerent. Decretum est, ut, si quis contra hæc attentare præsumeret, publicus hostis et inimicus mortalis haberetur, et in ipsum hostiliter insurgeretur. Quarum quidem Constitutionum unica hæc est, de qua turbatio assumpsisse dicitur exordium. Regno quoque in multis multipliciter deformato, et pro defectu veri regiminis vacillante, de communi consilio, eliguntur duodecim viri sapientes ex parte Regis, et totidem ex parte communitatis, ut decernerent, statuerent, et ordinarent, super melioratione et reformatione regni Angliæ, prout eis melius expediendum videretur; promittentes ipse Dominus Rex et Edwardus, et proceres universi, propriis juramentis, sicut dictum est, firmantes, et omnimodam securitatem promittentes, ut quicquid per prædictos quatuor et viginti ordinatum existeret, inviolabiliter observaretur.

De [1]*Pictavensium dominatione in Anglia, et eorundem excessibus.*

Floruerunt autem illis diebus Eymerus, Wyntoniensis Electus, Willelmus de Valencia, fratres Domini Regis,

[1] *Pictavencium* in MS.

Petrus de Sabaudia, Dominæ Reginæ avunculus, et alienigenæ quamplures, dicti Regis consiliarii, præ omnibus indigenis et naturalibus regni secretiores ac specialiores; quorum tanta crevit dominatio, quod, tam religiosos quam sæculares multipliciter opprimentes, et ultra modum indigenas terræ vilipendentes, non inveniretur, qui contra eos quicquam juris remedii, exigente necessitate, præsumeret exercere. Nam cum, mellitis et mollitis adulationibus, animum Regis, pro suæ libito voluntatis, a rationis tramite declinassent, tanta elati sunt jactantia, quod nec superiorem sibi intelligerent, nec parem sibi fore reputarent, pro judicio rationis motum animi sequentes impetuosum.

Verum quia plerumque delictum inferioris vertitur in contumeliam et opprobrium superioris, eorum austeritas senescallis et ballivis eorundem, qui potius "prædones" dicebantur, non immerito multotiens imputabatur. Quorum excessus [1] intolerabiles quia longum esset dinumerare, unum tamen incomparabilem, ut per unum alii intelligantur, huic paginæ duximus annotandum.—

Contigit quodam tempore, quod juvenis quidam, transitum faciens per quemdam viculum, qui "Trum-" petone" dicitur, cum eum oblatraret quidam canis, ut ipsum compesceret, lapidem ad ipsum incaute jactavit; qui lapis, ex obliquo resiliens, gallinam unam cujusdam mulierculæ casu interfecit; quod ipsa exiliens vidit; et, clamore querulo elevato, multos vicinorum congregavit. Juvenis autem, hæc humiliter casu contigisse cum juramento obtestans, pro gallina valorem obtulit, et in duplo amplius, atque pro injuria et offensa quod rationabiliter vellet postulare: mulier hæc omnia recusavit, incumbens ultioni. Quidam autem serviens W. de Valencia, fratris Domini Regis uterini, procax, et ex tanto domino cornua sibi assumens, insontem arripuit

[1] *intolebiles* in MS.

servientem, qui gallinam occiderat, et artissimis vinculis constrictum misit in carcerem intolerabilem; et ibi infra paucos dies, artatus supra modum, expiravit, et projectus super sterquilinium, in cœmeterio postmodum, factis exequiis, tumulatur. Contigit, ut post triduum illac transiret W. de Busseya, præfati W. de Valencia senescallus; et, audiens quæ facta fuerant, jussit extrahi corpus a tumulo, fœtens et quatridianum, et jussit illud suspendi patibulo; et hæc omnia sine judicio facta sunt, quæ etsi judicialiter processissent, inaudita crudelitas denotari potuissent. Si quis insuper, querulus, et injuriam passus, ad ipsius W. præsentiam accessisset, justitiam petiturus super injuriis sibi illatis, tale fertur accepisse responsum,—" Si ego tibi injuriam " facio, quis tibi rectum faciet? Dominus Rex vult " quicquid dominus meus vult; sed dominus meus " non vult quicquid Dominus Rex vult, vel imperat." Et sic nec Regi nec alicui magnatum, immo nec alicui de populo, reverentiam vel tristitiam dignabatur exhibere. Quid plura? Tam graves erant eorum excessus et cornuta superbia, quod nec sub ipsis minores vivere poterant, nec cum ipsis pares conversari; dumque sic conculcatur populus, et opprimitur, facta est in pace amaritudo amarissima. F. 98.

De Romanorum elationibus.

Dominabantur etiam sub diebus eisdem in Anglia Romani, et eorum Legati; multimoda gravamina, tam laicis et magnatibus, super advocationibus ecclesiarum, et eleemosynis ab eis et eorum successoribus, in usus pauperum regni, et [1] sustentationem religiosorum, pie datis, quam clericis et viris religiosis, super beneficiis suis, [2] inferendo; in quosdam etiam Episcopos, et alios ecclesiarum prælatos, ad quos beneficiorum præsenta-

[1] *sustantationem* in MS. | [2] *inferendis* in MS.

tiones spectabant, sententias excommunicationis fulminando, ne sæpe alicui de regno beneficium conferrent, donec, quibusdam Romanis in Angliam venientibus, in competenti beneficio singulis provisum esset: a clericis etiam regni beneficia, pacifica possessione obtenta, auferre volentes, ut ea, non sicut decuit, sed sicut eis placuit, Romanis conferrent, et auctoritate Romana sibi vendicarent, in præjudicium Anglicorum, et gravamen intolerabile, indigenas spoliando et [1] alienigenas ditando. Unde dolorem dolori accumulando, melius videbatur omnibus mori, quam vivere, tantis angustiis oppressi.

Proponunt magnates terræ alienigenarum audaciam humiliare, et propositum suum viriliter exequuntur.

Temporibus illis, ad relevationem gentium, surrexerunt in Anglia duo viri, nobiles et periti, atque potentes, Symon de Monteforti, Comes Leycestriæ, et Nicholaus filius Johannis, præ cunctis alienigenis discretionis dono præeminentes, et Ricardus, Comes Gloucestriæ, vir potens et opulentus. Multi etiam magnates alii, eximiæ probitatis et consilii, omnes cum consilio præfati Comitis Leicestriæ, tanquam capitanei sui constantissimi, præbentes assensum, et votis uberrimis inclinantes; donec [2] inimico superseminante zizania, patefacta est via corruptionis, sicut patebit in sequentibus. Sed, quia de ipso Comite nostræ narrationis materia sumit initium, quibus extiterit virtutibus redimitus, declaramus.—

Erat siquidem vir magnificus, prudens, et circumspectus; armorum usu, et rei militaris experientia, omF. 98 b. nibus in suo tempore anteponendus; litteraturæ scientia commendabiliter præditus; officiorum ecclesiasticorum die noctuque avidus auditor; in cibo et potu parcus, ut oculata fide noverant eidem assistentes; in tem-

[1] *aliegenas* in MS. | [2] *Matt.* xv. 25, 28.

poribus nocturnis plus vigiliis indulgens quam sopori, secretioribus suis frequenter hoc referentibus; in summis necessitatibus, quas pro regni negotiis pertulit, securus, et præcipue in Wasconia, cum illuc de consilio Regis extitisset, indomitos et rebelles regiæ Celsitudini subjugatos, in Angliam ad Regem, dominum suum, destinavit. Erat siquidem jocundi facetique sermonis, atque mirandæ fidelitatis assecutus beneficium; propter quod, mortem subire non abhorruit, sicut infra dicetur. Constantiam ipsius omnes, etiam adversarii ejus, mirabantur; cæteris juramenta præstantibus, plures ut Provisiones Oxoniæ servarent, et spreto juramento recalcitrarunt. Sed semel juratus, sicut columna immobilis, perseveranter stetit; nec minis, promissionibus, donis, aut adulationibus, flecti potuit, ut a juramento cum cæteris magnatibus, ad reformationem status regni, præstito, quoquomodo resiliret. Virorum religiosorum se commendavit orationibus; humiliter, ut fraternali specialitate, eisdem associari supplicavit, etiam ut pro statu regni et pace Ecclesiæ preces ad Deum effunderent; eratque deprecatio ipsius assidua, ut ab avaritia et cupiditate terrenarum rerum divina gratia ipsum servaret immaculatum; pro certo sciens, multos hujusmodi vitio diebus illis illaqueari, sicut postea rei eventus probavit. Viris religiosis et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis, quos honestas vitæ commendabat, omnimodam exhibebat reverentiam; merito perfecti magistri perfectus discipulus, informatus disciplina; quia præcordialiter adhærens Beato Roberto, quondam Lincolniæ Episcopo, eique suos parvulos tradens nutriendos, multa per ipsius consilia salubria tractabat.

Qui quidem Episcopus dicitur injunxisse Comiti eidem, in remissionem peccatorum suorum, ut causam illam, pro qua usque ad mortem dimicavit, assumeret; asserens pacem Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ sine gladio materiali nunquam firmari, et constanter affirmans, omnes in ea et pro ea morientes martyrio coronari. Dicitur

a fidedignis, quod Antistes, aliquando manum ponens super caput primogeniti Comitis ejusdem, dixit ei,— " O fili carissime! et tu et pater tuus ambo moriemini " uno die, unoque die et morbo; pro justitia, tamen." Qualis ipsius [1] Antistitis vita extiterit, satis declarant ad tumbam ejus miracula divinitus ostensa.

Comes iste, sicut alter Josias, coluit justitiam, tanquam animæ suæ medicinam. Comites, Barones, et multi nobiles regni, ad ipsum corda convertentes, intolerabilibus miseriis compatientes, et considerantes rempublicam undique [2] patere discrimini, licet "[3] Durum foret contra " stimulum calcitrare," tum quia, Romanorum extollentiam humiliando, Curiam Romanam offenderent, tum quia, regni statum et consuetudines meliorando, et fratrum Regis elata cornua constringendo, regiam indignationem in seipsos provocarent; tamen in arta necessitate positi, manifestis indiciis attendentes, statum suum in pejorem devenire conditionem, nisi malignantium insidiis efficaciter obviaretur, de communi consilio sanxerunt elatorum oppressionibus resistendo remedia convenientia procurare, et colla sua de sub jugo tantæ servitutis excutere.

Ejiciuntur Pictavenses ab Anglia, sine aliquo congressu hostili.

Per istorum igitur industriam, videlicet, Comitis
F. 99. Leycestriæ, R[icardi], Comitis Gloucestriæ, [4] Johannis filii Gaufridi, qui principales auctores Constitutionum extiterunt, ut asseritur, vocatis cæteris magnatibus, ut [5] præfatum est, convenit tanta militia, cum equis et armis, apud Oxoniam, qualis antea nulla visa est, a tempore quo non extat memoria; ubi, communicato consilio, inter cæteras Provisiones, statuerunt, ut dictos

---

[1] *Antistis* in MS.
[2] *parere* in MS.
[3] *Acts* ix. 5.
[4] *Johannes filius* in MS.
[5] *precationi est* in MS., *prædictum est* in ed. Camd. Soc.

fratres vocarent, et per Regem vocari facerent, ut sisterent judicio, suis querelantibus responsuri, et secundum regni jura facturi; atque ut juramentum, quod naturales Barones terræ fecerant, corporaliter præstarent, vel, si magis expediens crederent, de regno omnes exirent. Quod utique omnium Baronum fixum erat propositum, ut eos, tanquam pacis perturbatores, cum suis fautoribus et complicibus alienigenis, ab Anglia expellerent, et sic compendiosius de negotiis regni tractarent, et disponerent. Nec mora; cum dicti fratres, qui similiter in manu valida ibidem convenerant, admodum mente consternati præ timore tantæ multitudinis, cui resistere erat impossibile, culpis suis exigentibus, subire judicium formidantes, per aliquos forte de secretioribus Regis de totali proposito Baronum [1] præmuniti, iter versus Wintoniam, sub ipso noctis silentio, festinanter arripuerunt, et, mortis discrimina pertimescentes, in castrum de Wlvesheia sese receperunt. Quo comperto, Barones, sine moræ dispendio, viriliter eos persequentes, castrum incontinenti reddere et resignare, et cum omni celeritate terram evacuare, compulerunt. Quibus de castro egressis, Eymerus, Wintoniensis Electus, vir utique præclaræ sanctitatis, licet ab Anglicis tanquam alienigena contemptus, lacrymando conversus ad fratres suos, similiter præ confusione lacrymarum inundatione perfusos, ait:—"O "fratres dilectissimi, et præcordiales amici! merito hæc "patimur, quia peccavimus in populum regni, videntes "angustias eorum; dum deprecarentur nos, et non "audivimus, [2] variis obpressionibus eos affligendo, pie-"tatis viscera eis aperire recusavimus. Juste venit "super nos tribulatio; veruntamen, quæ in nostram "redundant contumeliam et obprobrium, senescallis et "balivis nostris merito possumus imputare. Nunc "ergo, delictis nostris exigentibus, immunes exilium

[1] *præmitti* in MS. | [2] *varios* in MS.

" subire quid trepidamus? Quid deferimus? Quo [1] Deus " deposuerit, eamus." Hæc, et hiis similia, qui præsentes aderant audientes, etiam eorum adversarii, a lacrymarum effusione non poterant se continere. Illis igitur abeuntibus, [2] ducatum præstabat Comes de Aubemara, ut illæsi ab hostibus redderentur; pervenientesque ad portum, [3] oblato navigio, transfretaverunt.

Mittuntur legati a parte Comitis ad Curiam Romanam, contra Electum Wintoniensem.

Magnates igitur, formidantes ne Electus Wintoniensis Romam properaret, et, infinita promissa Papæ et Cardinalibus pecunia, suam [4] procuraret consecrationem, ut sic efficacior esset ad nocendum, elegerunt quatuor milites, peritos et facundos, et fidedignos, qui epistolam, sigillis suis roboratam, in qua continebantur multa facinora et enormia, quæ perpetraverunt prædicti Electus et fratres ejus, videlicet, de homicidiis, rapinis, et variis injuriis et oppressionibus, Romam [5] deferrent, et Papæ et toti Curiæ Romanæ præsentarent; addentes, quod Rex eorum impetus noluit refrenare. In cujus rei tenore continetur, ut eis fides indubita adhibeatur.

Animantur Barones ad refrenandum Romanos.

Hiis ita gestis, Romanorum injurias et gravamina regnicolis irrogata multipliciter nequaquam tradentes oblivioni, decreverunt eos per subtractionem corporum per totum regnum sic artare, quod aliis intentabant inferre, sicut prædictum est, ut a regni molestatione desisterent. Mandantes igitur viris religiosis, et aliis,

---

[1] *dicto deposuerit* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *ducem* in ed. Camden. Soc.
[3] *obtato* in MS.
[4] *pecuniam sua* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[5] *defferent* in MS.

qui habebant ecclesias eorum ad firmam, firmiter injunxerunt, ne de firmis ecclesiarum seu redditibus F. 99 b. camerarum, quas de Romanis tenebant, vel eis debebant, minime responderent, sed dictas firmas et redditus paratos, die et loco eis assignato, procuratoribus suis, ad hoc datis, traditurі; adjungentes quod, si aliter facerent, sua incendio subjacerent, et nihilominus periculum quod Romanis [1] imminebat, in suis personis immineret. Præcaventes insuper, ne Episcopi, in quorum diœcesibus hujusmodi firmæ habebantur, propter reverentiam Summi Pontificis, et obedientiam qua Sedi Apostolicæ tenebantur astricti, Romanos protegerent, et ecclesiastica censura defenderent eosdem; districte eis dederunt in mandatis, firmiter injungentes, ne quisquam circa eos quæ de Romanis et eorum redditibus intromitterent, nullas partes suas interponere præsumeret; quod si contra facerent aliqui, similiter sua incendio subjacerent. Per istam igitur viam incedentes contra molestatores regni, Romanorum audaciam reprimebant, et [2] eos per triennium a regno excludebant; donec per lamentabilem Comitis Leycestriæ interitum, qui clavis erat Angliæ, portus [3] maris claudens, et nullis Romanis aperiens, eis et cæteris alienigenis liber patebat introitus.

Insurgunt Barones in eorum adversarios per totum regnum, quos noverant contra juramentum suum recalcitrare.

Prædicto modo Pictavensibus a regno expulsis, quibus materia totius dissensionis imputabatur, necnon et Romanis aliquantulum subjugatis, adhuc [4] quidam lateri Regis adhærentes, tam alienigenæ quam indigenæ, gratiam retributionis sperantes, contra fidem et sacra-

---

[1] *immebat* in MS.
[2] *eas* in MS.
[3] *marine* in MS.
[4] *quidem* in MS.

mentum suum perturbabant, quominus propositum Baronum vertebatur ad effectum. Barones igitur, iracundiæ calore frementes, in semetipsis communicato consilio, terras eorum hostiliter invadunt, et in consiliarios Domini Regis et Domini Edwardi, et quotquot eis noverant in aliquo adhærere, potenter insurgunt; maneria eorum, dominica, munitiones, et oppida, bonaque ecclesiastica, quam mundana, occupando, deprædando, infinita mala perpetrando, per totum regnum debacchantur: unde et Petrus, Herefordiæ Episcopus, natione Burgundus, captus est in ecclesia sua cathedrali, et ductus est ad castrum Ordeleye, thesauris suis et prædiis direptioni datis, et confusioni.

Oxonia progreditur usque Gloucestriam, et castrum obsedit per quatuor dies; in quo quidam miles, Mathias de Besille, alienigena, cui Comitatus et castri fuerat a Rege commissa custodia, cum paucis habebatur; qui tam diu se tenuit in illo, exercitui obsidenti præcise se reddere recusans, quousque prima porta versus urbem combusta est. Deinde quorundam incarceratorum, auxiliandi gratia a carcere absolutorum, posterna ex altera parte castelli ingressu patefacta, subito Barones intrant. Mathias vero in turrim fugere compulsus est fortissimam, triplici ostio ferreo ac seris firmissimis munitam. Introitus cum malleis ferreis et securibus viriliter tandem confracti, ingrediuntur belligeri. Mathia sic capto, qui nec metu mortis nec minis hostium se reddere voluit, quod ei etiam ab [1] inimicis suis ad laudem fecerat, merito notatur, ductus est ad Episcopum prædictum, simili custodiæ mancipandus. Deinde ivit exercitus ad Wigorniam, et eam, sine alicujus contradictionis nota, licet de villa et civitate custodienda litteras Regis recepissent cives, pro voto intravit; et, fidelitate recepta ab eis, versus Bruges iter et vexilla direxit, et regium ibi oppidum recepit; et exinde apud Sallopesburiam,

[1] *inimiscis* in MS.

municipium, progressus est, civibus ad arma primo die convolantibus, et nobiliter se suamque civitatem defendentibus; sed demum pacto inter se stabilito, ne, videlicet, Wallenses intrarent, quorum turma ex altera F. 100.
parte civitatis urbem assiliens innumerosa, urbem die sequenti reddiderunt.

Hoc facto, Barones versus australes partes gressus suos direxerunt, assumpto secum Comite prædicto, in bellicis rebus probatissimo, in ducem capitaneum, per quem regebantur, et prospere agebant. Augebatur numerus commilitonum suorum per singulos dies; nam fere totius regni præstantiores, viribus et nobilitate præcellentes, ad eos confluxerunt. Johannes Maunsel, [1] multarum in Anglia rector ecclesiarum, et possessor reddituum, quorum non erat numerus, ita quod ditior clericus eo in orbe non videretur, consiliarius Regis et Reginæ specialissimus, metu Baronum, qui consiliarios Regis, tanquam alienigenas, perscrutabantur ubique, aufugit ultra mare latenter de Turri Londoniarum, in qua Rex et Regina tunc temporis morabantur. Quem cum Henricus, filius Regis Almanniæ, fugientem [2] insequeretur, et ipse capitur, cum applicuisset Baionam, ab [3] Ingeranno de Fenes, procuratore Reginæ, quæ Barones, et omnes eis consentientes, [4] exosos habebat, propter alienigenarum expulsionem.

De conviciis a civibus Londoniarum Reginæ irrogatis; quod magna fuerat materia dissensionis.

Interim Edwardus, Regis primogenitus, castrum de Windeshore militaribus copiis munivit alienigenarum, quos invitaverat, et secum paulo ante adduxerat, cum a transmarinis partibus [5] redisset. Rex autem, in Turri Londoniarum existens, videns se undique hostibus vallatum,

[1] *multas* in MS.
[2] *instruerctur* in MS.
[3] *Ingeramo* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *exasos* in MS.
[5] *reddisset* in MS.

paci Baronum adquievit, et [1] Provisiones Oxoniæ observare concessit. Sed Regina, irritata muliebri angore, pro posse contraire visa est, nec assensum præbuit; unde, cum de Turri transiens per Tamisium, versus [2] Windeshoram, ubi alieni erant congregati, intercepta est a [3] Londoniensibus, et ab eis enormiter blasphemata, atque exclamata turpiter, quod non licet recitare, jactuque lapidum et luti subtus pontem vilissime repulsa; quod utique pacis impedimentum hoc fuerat incentivum, patebit in sequentibus.

Formatur aliquantulum inter Regem et Barones, modico tamen tempore.

Forma pacis inter Regem et Barones facta tunc temporis hæc erat:—videlicet, quod H[enricus], filius Regis Almeniæ, per Regem et Reginam liberetur, et quod castrum Regis, prius alienigenarum custodiæ per Regem [4] deputatum, Baronum custodiæ committatur; et quod Statuta Oxoniæ, et Provisiones, firmiter et inviolabiliter a Rege et Regina, et Edwardo, et ab omnibus, observentur; et quod regnum de cætero per indigenas et naturales terræ, et utiles, sub Domino Rege gubernetur; et quod alienigenæ exeant a regno, ulterius non reversuri, exceptis vel quorum moram fideles regni unanimiter acceptarent; et illi qui in castro nobili Windeshores fuerant introducti, alienigenæ prædicti, milites strenuissimi, in numero [5] quingenti, et satellites multo plures, qui circumquaque patriam deprædantes, ut castrum munirent, similiter expellerentur.

---

[1] *Promissiones* in MS., *Provisiones* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *Windehoram* in MS.
[3] *Londonienses* in MS.
[4] *deputata* in MS.
[5] *q.* C. in MS.

Maletractaretur Edwardus, nisi [*ad*]*fuisset Wygorniæ Episcopus.*

Interea Symon de Monteforti, et Barones, circa partes maritimas, cum fuissent [1] occupati pro liberatione Domini H[enrici] de Almannia, venit Edwardus ad castrum Brisstalli, atque ibidem modico tempore moraretur. Ecce! nulla ei arridente fortuna, oritur inter milites suos et municipes seditio magna; ita quod urbs tota, quæ sui esse debuerat dominii, a sua fidelitate penitus, et obsequio, se subtraheret, civibus ad ipsum obsidendum jam paratis, de castri captione jam securis. Is igitur hinc inde cuncta sibi sinistra cedere omnino perpendens, eo quod jam tota Anglia contra eum, et omnes alienorum fautores, et contra Barones recalcitrare vo- F. 100 b.
lentes, ira [2] exarsit, et indignatione; accito ad eum Waltero, Wigorniensi Præsule, qui de latere extiterat Baronum, sub simulationis pallio, cum eis pacificari velle promisit. Quem cum Episcopus, accepta securitate, ut putabatur, manucepisset ad hoc fideliter prosequendum, pactum quod pepigit, transgreditur. Nam cum iter versus Curiam arripuisset, ut promissum confirmaret, immisit in prædicto castro cum alienigenis [3] promissionem suam de pace conceptam, inter eos quatuor commendans.

Igitur in Festo Sancti [4] [Petri] ad Vincula, viribus congregatis, proceres regni [5] inprisi una cum Rege, jam eis per omnia oretenus inclinato, castrum illud assumendum decreverunt. Quo comperto, Edwardus, exiens de castro, quasi pro pace tractanda, occurrit patri et Baronibus, quasi via media a civitate Londoniarum; finito quoque tractatu qualicunque, cum voluisset [6] redire, industria Comitis Leycestriæ et Episcopi Wi-

---

[1] *ocupati* in MS.
[2] *extens*, apparently, in MS.
[3] *promissioni* in MS.
[4] Omitted in MS.
[5] Sic in MS.
[6] *reddîre* in MS.

gorniensis, sinistra suspicantium de eo, retentus est, nec castrum reintrare permittitur. Castrum igitur illud Regi et Baronibus redditum est, hoc modo, ut in tempore, salvis sibi equis et armis, salvo exirent de regno, sine spe revertendi; quos quidam Baronum ad mare conduxerunt.

Circa idem tempus, Lewinus, Princeps Walliæ, terras Edwardi destruxit in Marcia Cestriæ; castrum de Dissard obsedit, cepit, et ad solum conplanavit, et castrum de Gannok.

Jussa sunt Statuta Oxoniæ observari; sed nihil proficiebat.

Ad Natale Beatæ Mariæ proximo [1] sequens, maxima ordinatur congregatio Londoniis procerum et præsulum, cæterorumque regni prælatorum; ubi Statuta Oxoniæ [2] promulgata sunt, et per regnum integraliter [3] jussa observari. Sed deprædationes et rapinæ personis illatæ ecclesiasticis, (quod utique fierent valde difficile,) atque in quibusdam magnatibus qui Regi favebant similiter factæ, statuuntur restitui; ac Petrus, Herfordensis Episcopus, a custodia qua tenebatur, absolutus est; et qui cum eo erant, videlicet, Mathias de Besillis, et cæteri, liberati sunt. Et circa festum Sancti Michaelis, Rex et Regina, et Comes S[imon] de Monteforti, cum multis nobilibus, transfretarunt ad colloquium Regis Franciæ, Lodowici, quod tunc tenuit Baionæ, occasione perturbationis regni Angliæ; ut in eo pacem formaret, et unitatem, quæ, ex præfato facinore perpetrato, in [4] Londonienses odii contraxerat incentivum.

[1] *sequent'* in MS.
[2] *provulgata* in MS.
[3] *missa* in MS.
[4] *Londoniensis* in MS.

Multi iterum resiliunt a juramento, et Comes Leycestriæ seducitur per quosdam cives Londoniarum.

Parliamento illo Doveriæ finito, qualitercumque, sive pro statu Baronum, sive contra, nescio, Deus scit, cunctisque ad propria remeantibus, paucis postea elapsis diebus, convocatio fit apud Londonias innumerosa, Comitum, Baronum, et aliorum regni naturalium; ubi schisma [1] proh O dolor! oritur inter Barones, et universo regno Angliæ deplorandum, juxta verbum Evangelicum,— [2] "Omne regnum in seipsum [3] [divisum] desolabitur." Plures namque nobiles, et potentes eorum, qui primo deprædationibus faciendis acriter [4] exercuerunt, et Comiti Leycestriæ favebant totis viribus, ut, alienigenas expellendo, Provisiones Oxoniæ servarentur, ad utilitatem regni, et honorem Ecclesiæ et gentis Anglicanæ, jam Regi et Reginæ, et Edwardo, adhæserunt, promissionibus delinitis conversi, et terris amplis sibi promissis et collatis.

Animabatur etiam Rex ad irritandum Provisiones Baronum, et Statuta, eo quod prius impetrata fuerat absolutio Papalis de juramento præstito, ut eadem servaret, et observari per totum regnum præciperet. Congregato igitur exercitu magno, nam potentiores regni ei adhærebant viriliter, versus Doveriam iter direxit, ut castrum de manu Baronum alliceret. Sed longe a desiderio suo rediens, cum indignatione magna, versus Westmonasterium, missis clandestinis litteris quibusdam civibus Londoniarum, ut januas custodiendo Baronibus interdiceretur ingressus, fere proditus fuit ille nobilis F. 101.
S[imon] de Monteforti; qui extra civitatem, in suburbio Suthwerk, cum suis aderat, paucis respectu Regis exercitus, qui magnus erat, et admirabilis. Dispositis namque turmis haud longe ab eo loco, ad ipsum affli-

[1] *proth* in MS.
[2] *Matt.* xii. 25.
[3] Omitted in MS.
[4] *exarcerunt* in MS., *exarcuerunt* in ed. Camd. Soc.

gendum nihil tale præmeditantem, appropinquabat exercitus, et ad eum capiendum progreditur securus ; sed comperta proditione, clamoreque per totam civitatem elevato, Londonienses, quorum corda Barones habuerunt propitia, cum impetu fortitudinis immensæ, [1] catenas frangunt, portas aperiunt, et ad eum succurrendum catervatim accurrunt. Rex autem, [2] cognito per exploratores infinitam Londoniensium multitudinem exisse, et ei in auxilium venire, exercitum suum jussit reverti. Sic, volente Deo, Comes illo die de manu hostili ereptus est. Facta inquisitione postea diligenti, inventi sunt quatuor cives, auctoritatis magnæ, qui proditionem illam conspiraverant; de quibus judicium nequaquam permisit Comes, pietate plenus, sed redemptionem ab eis accipiens, non modicam, ad roborandum [3] catenas civitatis assignavit, dictos proditores custodiæ mancipando ; de quibus postea dicetur.

Rex Angliæ et Barones se submittunt judicio Regis Franciæ, de discordia mota.

Hiis ita gestis, de pace hinc inde componenda elaboratum est, tam a parte Regis Franciæ, quam Pontificum Regis Angliæ, instanter. Tandem vero, submittentibus se per compromissionem, Rex Angliæ et Barones, in dicto et ordinatione Regis Franciæ, super contentionibus [4] Provisiones Oxoniæ contingentibus, necnon et deprædationibus et rapinis hinc inde factis multipliciter, post Natale Domini, mittuntur in Franciam nuncii a parte Regis et Baronum, ad recipiendum quod super hiis Dominus Rex duxerit ordinandum.

---

[1] *chatenas* in MS.
[2] *cognitam* in MS.
[3] *cathenas* in MS.
[4] *Provisionis* in MS.

Rex Franciæ pronunciat judicium contra Barones Angliæ, pro Rege, et fit variatio misera magnatum, et divisio.

Igitur in crastino Beati Vincentii Martyris, congregato Ambiani populo innumerabili, Rex Franciæ, Lodowicus, coram Episcopis, Comitibus, Baronibus, et aliis Franciæ proceribus, propositis rationibus a partibus utrisque, ac intellectis, protulit dictum suum, et sententiam, solemniter pro Rege Angliæ, contra Barones; Statutis Oxoniæ, Provisionibus, ordinationibus, ac obligationibus, penitus annullatis; hoc excepto, quod antiquæ Chartæ Regis J[ohannis], universitati Angliæ concessæ, per illam sententiam in nullo intendebat derogare, sed decrevit eam inviolabiliter observari. Quæ quidem exceptio Comitem Leycestriæ, et cæteros qui habebant sensus magis exercitatos, firmiter [1] tenuit in proposito suo, ad conservandum Statuta Oxoniæ, quæ super illam Chartam fundata fuerant. Huic Parliamento in Francia fuit Rex Angliæ, et Regina Alienora, Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, Bonefacius, Petrus, Herefordensis Episcopus, Johannes Maunsel; qui Baronibus quanta potuerunt mala non cessarunt machinari. Ab hoc tempore factus est novissimus pejor priore: multi etenim magnates, seditionis maculam incurrendo, a fidelitate qua Comiti Leycestriæ tenebantur astricti, spreto juramento, recesserunt, et exercitui Regis, non sine donis et amplis promissionibus, se sociaverunt.

Henricus, filius Regis Almanniæ, quanto magis spes Comitis in illo posita fuerat, ut opus inceptum bono fine concluderet, tanto amplius famam suam vel tunc vel post denigrabat sua conversio. Accepto namque Honore de Tykehille, a Domino Edwardo sibi collato, accessit ad Consulem, dicens;—"Domine Comes, non "habeatis pro malo, licentiam a vobis accipio, ut ita

[1] *tenuerunt* in MS., *tenui* in ed. Camd. Soc.

" verbis utar communibus. Contra patrem meum, Re-
" gem Almanniæ, et avunculum meum, Regem Angliæ,
" et affines meos, non possum amplius militare; licen-
" tiatus a vobis, recedo. Veruntamen, contra vos nun-
" quam arma portabo." Cui Consul, hilariter respon-
dens, ait,—" Domine Henrice, non propter arma, sed quia
" constantiam de vobis specialem sperabam, vestram
" personam præcordialiter habui commendatam. Ite, et
F. 101 b. " cum armis vestris redite; ea non formido"; et addi-
dit,—" Etsi omnes universaliter me declinent, ego, cum
" quatuor filiis meis, pro causa justa, quam semel
" juravi tenere, ad honorem Ecclesiæ, et utilitatem
" regni, securus astabo, nec bellum subire trepidabo."
Et dixit secretioribus suis,—" In multis terris et pro-
" vinciis diversarum nationum, tam paganorum quam
" Christianorum, extiti; sed in nullis gentibus tantam
" infidelitatem et deceptionem reperi, quantam in Anglia
" jam expertus sum." Rogerus de Clifford, [1] Rogerus
de Leyburne, Johannes de Vallibus, Hamo le Estrange,
et multi, tam marchiones quam alii, naturales terræ,
quorum nomina non teneo, terris, redditibus, et pro-
visionibus, excœcati, se [2] subtraxerunt. Unde quidam,
videns tot nobiles recalcitrare, ait per [3] metrum sic:—

Plange plorans, Anglia, plena jam dolore,
Tristis vides tristia, languens cum mœrore;
Nisi te respiciat Christus suo more,
Eris vile canticum hostium in ore.
Pepigerunt plurimi salvam te salvare,
Sed jam nimis negligunt pactum procurare;
Nam se quidam retrahunt, qui possunt juvare,
Quidam subterfugium quærunt ultra mare.
Hinc est quod incipiunt cæteri certare,
Et in partes varias animos mutare;
Dumque sic dissentiunt nolunt concordare,

---

[1] *Rogeus* in MS.
[2] *subtraxerint* in ed. Camden.
[3] *metram* in MS.

Sed incepta nequeunt bene terminare.
Sic respublica perit, terra desolatur;
Invalescit extera gens, et sublimatur;
Vilescit vir incola, et subpeditatur;
Sustinet injurias, non est qui loquatur.
Tam miles quam clericus ambo fiunt muti,
Facti sunt extranei loquaces astuti;
Inter centum Anglicos non sunt duo tuti;
Planctum et obprobrium jam sunt assecuti.
O Comes Gloverniæ! comple quod cœpisti;
Nisi claudas congrue, multos decepisti.
Age nunc viriliter, sicut promisisti;
Causam fove fortiter, cujus fons fuisti.
Si, quod absit, subtrahas manum et levamen;
Terræ fraudem faciens, inferens gravamen;
Maledictus maneat, fiat, fiat. Amen.[1]
Comes Simun de Muntford, vir potens et fortis!
Pugna nunc pro patria, sisque dux cohortis;
Non te minæ terreant, neque timor mortis,
Rem defende publicam, resque tuæ sortis.
O tu Comes le Bygot! pactum serva sanum;
Cum sis miles [2]strenuus, nunc exerce manum;
Totam turbat modica terram turba canum;
Exeat, aut pereat, genus tam profanum.
O vos magni proceres! qui vos obligastis,
Observare firmiter illud quod jurastis;
Terræ si sit utile quod excogitastis,
Juvet illud citius id quod ordinastis.
Si velletis prosequi quod jam [3]inchoastis,
Consequi poteritis quod desiderastis;
Nisi finem capiat quod diu tractastis,
Vere dici poterit, "Vane laborastis."
Honor vobis maximus erit, laus et [4]digna,
Si respiret Anglia, vestra gerens signa;

---

[1] The absence here of one line of the quatrain will be noticed.
[2] *strenus* in MS.
[3] *incohastis* in MS.
[4] *dingna . . . singna . . . malingna . . . beningna* in MS.

Quam ut cito [1] liberet a peste maligna,
Adjuvet nunc Domini pietas benigna.

Hostes Comitis insurgunt in ipsum in Marchia.

Prædicto modo proceribus variantibus, Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, potenter insurgens contra Consulem, terras ipsius, prædia, et dominica, in Marchia deprædatur. Consul autem, jam sibi in amicitias copulato Principe Walliæ, Leuelino, præclarum illic misit exercitum, qui et terras illius partim destruxit, et castrum Sadonorum cepit, et combussit. In cujus succursum cum Edwardus, de partibus rediens transmarinis, copia militari stipatus, [2] convalesceret, Barones insecutus est; nec tamen eos [3] aggreditur, quia nullus inter eos factus congressus. Castra autem Humfridi de Boun junioris, Hay et Huntindone, obsedit Edwardus, et cepit, et similiter Brecone; quæ omnia, cum provincia [4] appendente, prædicto Rogero tradidit [5] custodienda.

De destructione Wygorniæ per Comitem de Ferrariis.

Per idem tempus, Robertus de Ferrariis, Comes Derebi, cum exercitu magno, venit Wygorniam; cui cum cives,
F. 102. muralia civitatis et [6] portas civitatis custodiendo, viriliter restitissent, tandem ex inopinato per vetus castrum intravit, villam destruxit, et Judaismum evertit. Iste verbo tenus, quin potius fraudulenter, Consuli adhærens, in nullo bello cum eo contra partem adversam congressus est, nec etiam, vocatus in succursum, apud Lewes venire voluit; sed tam viros religiosos quam sæculares undique deprædando, nomine Baronum, infi-

[1] *libet* in MS.
[2] *convalescet* in MS.
[3] *agreditur* in MS.
[4] *appedentia* in MS.
[5] *custodiendum* in MS.
[6] *portos* in MS.

nita mala perpetravit, parta Regis destruxit, etiam post pacem clamatam, et, de quadam littera proditoria inter ipsum et marchiones composita, pace aliquantula terræ reddita, [1]accusatur, capitur, Londoniis carceri mancipatur, sicuti postea suo loco dicetur.

De destructione Glovernicæ per Dominum Edwardum.

Barones, redeuntes de confinio Walliæ, terra Comitis Leycestriæ ab incursione hostium liberata, urbem Gloucestriæ, non viribus vel obsidione, sed quadam cautela, intraverunt. Edwardus autem, subito veniens a tergo, ponte super ripam Sabrinæ celeriter reparato, qui prius a prædicto exercitu fuerat combustus, castellum intravit, Baronum præsentia non absente. Ibi non erat Consul, S[imon] de Monteforti, sed Henricus, filius ejus, et Johannes Giffard, et multi nobiles; inter quos in crastino, Waltero, Wigorniensi Episcopo, mediante, et Edwardi astutia vulpeculariter operante, captæ sunt induciæ, exercitu Baronum ab urbe recedente. Edwardus ergo, urbem, cum castro, sic adeptus, burgenses incarceravit, et villam ad mille libras miserabiliter redemit.

Rex, absolutus a juramento suo, proponit omnes civitates et castra de manibus Baronum excutere.

Anno Gratiæ M.°cclxiiii., cum Dominus Rex super juramento suo specialem obtinuisset absolutionem, missis paulo ante ad Romanam Curiam legatis, pro causa eadem, convocavit exercitum suum apud Windeshore, ad tractandum de hiis quæ tractatu indigebant salubri. Ad quod parleamentum cum venissent Rex Almanniæ, Dominus Edwardus, Comites et Barones, in multitudine magna loricatorum, et diversorum apparatuum, dum

[1] *acusatur* in MS.

super [1] imminenti necessitate prolixius tractassent, visum est eis felicius et expedientius percurrendo castra, civitates, et munitiones, sibi rebelles, potenter subjugare.

Ad iter ergo se accingentes, universi versus Norhamtonam cum omni alacritate suas dirigunt expeditiones; et per Walingfordiam dietas duas perficiendo, Oxoniam pervenit; [2] universitatem cleri ad tempus expulsit, suspicans quod [3] exercitui suo fraudem machinarentur, si forte supervenirent Barones, qui corda cleri admodum habebant propitia. Erat enim clericorum numerus, quorum nomina scripta fuerant in matriculis rectorum, excedens quindecim millia, multis fidedignis hoc idem referentibus. Rex, facta solemni processione, eleemosynis autem pauperibus abundanter erogatis, Sanctam Fredeswidam Virginem, infra muros civitatis, adiit personaliter et devote; quod nullus Regum Angliæ ante ipsum in persona propria ausus fuit, vel præsumpsit. Causam vero qui scire voluerit, [4] Gesta Regum Angliæ diligenter revolvat, et fere in fine inveniet.

Interim Edwardus et cæteri magnates in partibus illis, Barones et partes adversæ, depopulari terras, et maneria alterius cujuscunque incendere et destruere, non destiterunt. Londonienses, cum innumera multitudine, ab urbe sua irruentes, prædia et possessiones Regis Almanniæ et P. Basset, aliorumque adhærentium, combusserunt; clericos Regis, et Barones de Scaccario, et Justiciarios de Banco, ceperunt, et incarceraverunt. Ab hinc Rex Almanniæ, de feroci factus ferocior, nimis indignans quod Londonienses primo in eum insurrexerunt, manerium suum, non longe a Londoniis, comburendo, missis de suis circumquaque, præcepit, ut quæcumque in burgo vel extra burgum invenirentur de civibus Londoniarum, immisericorditer caperentur.

---

[1] *iminenti* in MS.
[2] *universitate* in MS.
[3] *exercitu* in MS.
[4] It is perhaps impossible now to say what work is here alluded to.

Johannes, Comes Warennæ, licentiatus a Rege, Oxoniæ commorante, cum exercitu suo, assumpto secum Rogero de Leyburne, et aliis in multitudine magna, in partes F. 102 b. orientales se contulit, ut castrum suum de Reygate, et partes circumjacentes, ab [1] irruptionibus Londoniensium defensaret; sed qualiter in castro de Rofa fugatur et obsidetur, dicetur postea.

De captione Norhamtonæ, cum magna parte exercitus Baronum.

Cum moram per aliquot tempus seu dies protraherent apud Oxoniam Rex Angliæ et Rex Almanniæ, cum exercitu suo, jam ad [2] assiliendam civitatem [3] Norhamtupnæ parati, accedunt aliqui, specialiter a Priore Norhamtunæ ad hoc destinati, qui [4] Regi innotescunt qualiter civitatem prædictam, sine alicujus contradictionis obstaculo, ingredi et subpeditare potuissent. Prior enim ejusdem loci, concipiens indignationem versus Barones, vel forte, tanquam alienigena, commotus, conventione facta de compatriotis suis Pictavensibus, per ordinationem Baronum, in parte Prioratui proxima, civibus ignorantibus, murum occulte suffodere vulpina diligentia procuravit; materiis ligneis subtus positis, quibus ad tempus fallibiliter [5] sustentaretur, signoque prudenter aptato, ut, superveniente Rege, de loco Rex certificaretur. Hujus sceleris certissime reus habebatur, quia, concessa cœlitus victoria postmodum Baronibus, eadem causa carceri mancipatus est.

Die igitur statuto, post mediam Quadragesimæ, profecti sunt Dominus Rex Angliæ et Rex Almanniæ, cum exercitu magno et mirabili, [6] vexillis explicatis; venientesque ad civitatem prædictam, eam vallaverunt. Cives autem, de loci munitione confisi, prælocutam pro-

[1] *irreptionibus* in MS.
[2] *assiliandam* in MS.
[3] Sic in MS.
[4] *rei* in MS.
[5] *tempus* repeated here, by MS., by inadvertence.
[6] *vexilla explicatos* in MS.

ditionem penitus ignorantes, ac receptis arrais, ad defensionem viriliter [1] convolarunt, ad suam utique confusionem, et dolosam miseriam. Nam dum una pars exercitus, consilio Regis disponente, circa portas more assultationis occuparetur, Dominus Rex, stipatus sua militia, urbem circumiens, loco prætitulato aptanter considerato, murum leviter prosternentes, urbem ingrediuntur, universa infra contenta variæ subdentes dispersioni. Sicque fit, ut hii, qui [2] nimis præsumptuose credebant civitatem multo tempore contra quoslibet adversarios propriis viribus [3] custodire, saltem usque ad adventum Comitis Leycestriæ, qui procurabat cum exercitu suo ut illis succurreret, subita seditione præoccupati, viliter traduntur hostilitati.

Capta est igitur civitas, in Vigilia Passionis Domini, anno Gratiæ M°.cc.lxiiii. ; Symon vero junior de Monteforti, filius Comitis, exiens de castro, ut venienti exercitui cum civibus pro posse resisteret, eodem die captus est. In crastino autem milites qui erant in castro, licet festinans subsidium a Comite sperarent, tamen de tam subita, inopinata, urbis captione admodum consternati, et civium auxilio destituti, compulsi sunt in [4] deditionem. Capti sunt igitur in castro quindecim [5] vexilliferi, et milites sexaginta, cum suis satellitibus, quorum non erat numerus; et in captivitatem sunt abducti.

Properat Comes ad succurrendum Norhamtonam, sed infecto negotio redit quantocius. Et multi Judæi trucidantur in Londoniis, qui conspiraverant ad proditionem faciendam.

Comes autem S[imon], tunc temporis Londoniis commorans, nondum de captione urbis, sed de [6] imminente

[1] *convolarent* in MS.
[2] *minus* in MS.
[3] *custodie* in MS.
[4] *seditionem* in MS.
[5] *vexiferi* in MS.
[6] *iminente* in MS.

[1] obsidione, certificatus, convocatis undique copiis militaribus, civibusque Londoniarum sibi associatis, in succursum properabat; perveniensque apud Sanctum Albanum, ac ibidem quieti paulisper vacans, ut exercitum suum repausaret, de dicta captione certæ nunciantur ei relationes; quibus auditis, in lamentationem se dederunt [2] autem universi; sed Comes, nihil desperans, sciens hanc esse legem bellorum, ut nunc hii, nunc illi, variis eventibus, fiunt superiores, suos consolans, ad civitatem Londoniarum reversus est. F. 103.

Sed illo nondum territorio Sancti Albani egresso, quoddam notabile verbum [3] Hugoni Dispensatori et suis secretioribus dixit:—"Ecce! lætificati sunt admodum, "et [4] elati, de præsenti eventu, scilicet, de captione "prædicta; pro certo sciatis, non [5] præteribit mensis "Maii, quin adeo confusi erunt, et metificati, quod "oblivioni tradetur omnis eorum lætitia moderna." Quod utique ita contigit apud Lewes, ubi occubuerunt regales, et triumpharunt Barones, sicut infra dicetur.

In ipsa Dominica Passionis, Judæi, apud Londonias, de quadam proditione Baronibus simul et civibus inferendo deprehensi, fere omnes trucidati sunt, thesauro incomparabili assumpto in Judaismo.

Eadem etiam septimana, Johannes Giffarde, miræ probitatis, et audax miles, cum aliis custodiæ castri de Kelingworthe deputatis, quod quidem Comes Leycestriæ [6] mirabili structura atque reparatione firmaverat, ac machinis multimodis hactenus etiam [7] nobis inauditis, et [8] viris, mirabiliter instruerat, castrum Warewykeyæ ceperunt; ac Comitem Honoris ejusdem, scilicet, Willelmum Maudut, eo quod super conversione sua nuper ad Regem suspectus fuerat eisdem, cum uxore sua et

[1] *obseditione* in MS.
[2] *autem* om. in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *Hugonis Dispensatoris* in MS.
[4] *electi* in MS.
[5] *pretibit* in MS.
[6] *mirabile* in MS.
[7] *nos* in MS.
[8] *vires* in MS.

familia, adduxerunt captivum, et apud Kelinworthe incarceraverunt. Castrum autem de Warwik, ne regales refugium haberent ibidem, subverserunt.

De obsidione Roucestriæ.

Post Festum Paschæ, S[imon] de Monteforti, et cæteri Barones [1] sibi persistentes, adjuncta sibi Londoniensium manu auxiliatrici, castrum Roucestriæ obsederunt; in quo Johannes de Warenna, Comes Arundelis, et Henricus de Percy, et Rogerus de Leyburne, et multi nobiles, qui de prædicto colloquio Oxoniæ recedentes, et ad partes custodiendas illas a Rege deputati fuerant, introducti sunt. Comes [2] autem de Leycestria, vir in omnibus circumspectus, machinas et alia ad expugnationem castri necessaria secum a civitate Londoniarum, per aquam et per terram, transvehi præcepit, quibus inclusos vehementer impugnavit, nec eos indulgere quieti permisit; exemplum reliquens Anglicis, qualiter circa castrorum assultationes [3] agendum sit, qui penitus hujusmodi diebus illis fuerant ignari. Quamdam navem comparatam jussit lignis [4] aridis usque ad summum adimpleri, adipem et arvinam inponens, et alia incendiorum irritamenta, fomitem ignibus præstantia. Onerata igitur navi lignorum strue maxima, et ex ea parte collocata qua fulciretur venti vehementia, ignem jubet imponi, et usque ad pontem navem aptari, cæteris audacter cum balistis et sagittarum jaculis urbem assilientibus. Flamma ergo invalescens ponitur, et portam in momento combussit, fugientibus in summitatem turris magnatibus qui fuerant inclusi. Suburbio taliter adepto, cum magna parte castri, ad expugnationem turris, bellicis insultibus et machinarum ictibus, iisque subterraneis, omnes animantur.

---

[1] *sunt* in MS.
[2] *autem* omitted in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *agn* in MS.
[4] *arridis* in MS.

Rex, in partibus [1] *aquilonaribus inimicos destruens, festinat ad solvendum obsidionem Roucestriæ.*

Rex autem, capta Norhamptuna, Leycestriam tendens, in ea hospitatus est, quam nullus [2] Regum præter eum etiam videre, prohibentibus quibusdam [3] superstitiosis, præsumpsit. Deinde ad Notingham, et castrum intravit, nullo sibi resistente; nam qui intus erant, ex parte Baronum, obviam ei processerunt, et claves ei tradiderunt. Venerunt ibi ad Regem, de partibus aquilonaribus, nobiles in auxilium, videlicet, Johannes de Baylol, Robertus de Brus, Petrus de Brus, et alii Barones plures, cum multis millibus armatorum; ubi Dominus [4] [Rex], tenens festum Paschale, misit filium suum, Edwardum, in Derebysire et Staffordsire, cum exercitu præclarissimo; qui terras et maneria Roberti de Ferers, Comitis Derebi, vastando atque incendendo, necnon castrum ejus de Tettebure prosternendo, destructionem ei intulit miserabilem.

Tandem Rex, certificatus super assultis ferocissimis Rowcestriæ, sciens obsessorum captionem in suum redundare obprobrium et contumeliam, magna sub festinatione gressus suos retrorsum dirigens, illuc properavit, in arto positis, auxilio indigentibus, subministrare. In tantum in illa expeditione festinavit, quod equi electissimi, labore fatigati, extincti sunt. Comes autem Leycestriæ, comperiens Regem cum exercitu suo supervenire, licet Turrim jam [5] expugnatione in proximo fuisset adepturus, obsidione gratis soluta, in civitatem Londoniarum, cum suis, reversus est. Rex igitur, proceribus suis ab hostili manu taliter liberatis, partes adiit maritimas, ut Barones Quinque Portuum, sibi rebelles, et indomitos, ad debitam compelleret subjec- F. 103 b.

[1] *aquilonarios* in MS.
[2] *regni* in MS.
[3] *superstitiose* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] Omitted in MS.
[5] *expungnatio* in MS.

tionem; quorum quidam [1] parti Regis adhæserunt, [2] partim vero puppibus onustis, et hiis quæ victui erant necessaria, oneratis, in mari se subtraxerunt.

[*Barones se præparant ad bellum, castra moventes de Londoniis.*

Interea Comite egregio Londoniis moram [3] committente, et in causa zelo justitiæ concepta fideliter desudante, ac sedula frequentatione tractante qualiter incepta felicem sortirentur consummationem, [4] cum Episcopis, clericis, et discretis viris utriusque conditionis, cleri, scilicet, et populi, [5] crebros habuit tractatus et deliberationes. Tandem habito consilio super præmissis, cunctisque considerantibus jam tempus appropinquare quo partem adversam optata circumvenirent [6] animadversione, super hoc descenderunt, et decreverunt, ut, oblata Domino Regi condigna summa pecuniæ pro deprædationibus per regnum factis, Regi reconciliarentur, salvis Statutis Oxoniæ, aut, inito certamine campestri, experirentur cui sors victoriam conferre videretur. Viribus igitur undique congregatis, tam Londoniensium, quorum numerus crevit ad quindecim millia hominum, quam aliorum innumerabilium ad exercitum Comitis circumquaque convolantium, illuc tandem impetu vehementi contendunt.

Pervenientes autem apud Flexingge, in Suthsex, sexto circiter milliario a Prioratu de Lewes, ubi morabatur Rex, et ejus exercitus, nudius tertius ante bellum, Domino Regi tale dirigunt mandatum.—

---

[1] *partim* in MS.
[2] *quidam vero* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *commitante* in MS.
[4] *cum* om. in ed. Camd. Soc.
[5] *cribres* in MS.
[6] *qui in adversione super* in ed. Camd. Soc.

Littera missa Domino Regi, ante bellum.

" Excellentissimo Domino, Domino H[enrico], Dei " gratia, Regi Angliæ, etc., Barones et alii fideles sui, " sacramentum suum, et fidelitatem Deo et sibi debi- " tam, observare volentes, salutem, et debitum, cum " omni reverentia et honore, famulatum. Cum per " plura experimenta liqueat, quod quidam [1] vobis as- " sistentes multa de nobis mendacia vestræ Domina- " tioni suggesserunt, mala quantum possunt non solum " nobis, sed etiam vobis et toti regno vestro, inten- " tantes; noverit Excellentia vestra, quod salutem et " securitatem corporis vestri totis viribus, cum fideli- " tate vobis debita, volumus observare; inimicos nos- " tros non solum, sed vestros, et totius regni vestri, " juxta posse gravare proponentes: aliud super præ- " dictis, si placet, non credatis; nos enim [2] vestri " fideles semper inveniemur. Et nos, S[imon] de Monte- " forti, Comes Leycestriæ, et [3] Gilbertus de Clare, ad " petitionem aliorum, pro nobis et ipsis, præsentibus " sigilla nostra apposuimus." Ista littera missa fuit Domino Regi ante bellum. Datum apud Flexinge, etc.

Hanc epistolam Baronum suorum contemnens, Rex ad bellum totis affectibus exardescit, ac talem litteram eis diffidationis responsalem direxit.—

Qualiter Rex [4] diffidaverit Barones suos.

" H[enricus], Dei gratia, etc., S[imoni] de Monteforti " et G[ilberto] de Clare, et suis complicibus. Cum per " guerram et turbationem in nostro regno generalem, " per vos jam subortas, necnon et incendia et alia " damna enormia, appareat manifeste quod fidelitatem

---

[1] *nobis* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] [*et*] *nostri* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *Gilberto* in MS.
[4] *diffidavit* in ed. Camd. Soc.

" vestram [1] debitam non observastis, nec de securitate
" corporis nostri in aliquo curastis, eo quod magnates
" et alios fideles nostros, nostræ fidei constanter adhæ-
" rentes, enormiter gravastis, et ipsos pro posse vestro
F. 104. " gravare propositis, sicut per litteras vestras nobis
" significastis; nos, gravamen ipsorum nostrum pro-
" prium, et inimicos eorum nostros, [2] reputantes, præci-
" pue cum dicti fideles, pro fidelitate sua conservanda,
" contra [3] infidelitatem vestram vobis viriliter resistunt,
" de vestra securitate vel amore non curamus; sed vos,
" tamquam nostros et eorum inimicos, diffidamus. Teste
" meipso, apud Lewes, duodecimo die Maii, anno regni
" nostri quadragesimo octavo."

Qualiter Rex Alemannice et Edwardus, et Regi assistentes, diffidaverunt Barones.

" Ricardus, Dei gratia, Romanorum Rex, semper Au-
" gustus, et Edwardus, illustris Regis Angliæ primoge-
" nitus, cæterique Barones omnes, et nobiles, regni
" Angliæ, constanter sinceræ fidei et devotionis operibus
" adhærentes, S[imoni] de Monteforti, et G[ilbertò] de
" Clare, cæterisque universis et singulis perfidiæ suæ com-
" plicibus. Ex litteris vestris, quas illustri Regi Angliæ,
" domino nostro [4] carissimo, transmisistis, accepimus nos
" esse [5] diffidatos a vobis; et quamvis hujusmodi verba
" vel [6] diffidatio satis fuit, [7] ante nobis realiter vestra
" [8] hostilitas in rerum nostrarum incendiis, et bonorum
" nostrorum depopulationibus, persecutione jam pro-
" batur. Nos igitur vos scire volumus, vos a nobis
" universis et singulis, tanquam hostes publicos, ab
" hoste [5] diffidatos, qui deinceps rerum et personarum

[1] *non debitam* in MS., *nobis debitam* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *reputamus* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *fidelitatem vestram nobis* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *karissimo* in MS.
[5] *deffidatos* in MS.
[6] *desideratio* in MS.
[7] *autem* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[8] *hostilita* in MS.

" vestrarum dispendiis, ubicumque nobis ad hoc facul-
" tas affuerit, totis viribus insistemus. De hoc autem
" quod falso nobis imponitis, quod nec fidele nec
" bonum consilium ipsi Regi, domino nostro, damus,
" nequaquam verum dicitis. Et si vos, Domine S[imon]
" de Monteforti, et Gilberte de Clare, velitis in Curia
" Domini Regis asserere, parati sumus vobis ad veni-
" endum ad dictam Curiam procurare conductum, et
" nostræ super hoc innocentiæ [1] veritatem, et vestrum,
" sicut perfidorum et proditorum, mendacium, declarare,
" per alium nobilitate et genere [2] vobis parem. Omnes
" autem nos contenti sumus prædictorum Dominorum
" sigillis, videlicet, Romanorum Regis et Domini Ed-
" wardi. Datum, ut prius."

Supplicant Barones ut pax vera formetur; sed, omnino de pace desperati, procedunt ad bellum.

Mittuntur insuper pacis mediatores optimi, et ecclesiastici, fervidi [3] honoris zelatores, Henricus, de Londoniis, et Walterus de Cantelupa, [4] Wigorniensis, Episcopi, pro deprædationibus per regnum factis triginta [millia] librarum, ex parte Baronum, Domino Regi offerentes, salvis tamen per omnia Statutis Oxoniæ; qui sine difficultate Regis Angliæ animum ad mansuetudinem inclinassent, nisi Regis Almanniæ reclamatio restitisset. Iste quidem cum tanta nobilitate [5] polleret, ut nullus in terra videbatur ei similis, indignans quod aliquis in ipsum insurgere præsumebat, pro direptionibus sibi factis, pacem tunc temporis perturbavit, et, de gentis suæ innumerositate confidens, dictum Comitem et ejus complices, sicut per litteras suas, super annotatas, manifeste apparet, diffidavit, necnon ut Edwardus

[1] *necessitatem* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *nobis* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *honores* in MS.
[4] *Wintoniensis* in MS.
[5] *pollens, et* in ed. Camd. Soc.

eosdem diffidaret callide procuravit, ad ultionem in Barones exercendam totis [1] conaminibus insistens.

Cumque redissent hii qui fuerant secum, responsa deferentes, suggesserunt Comiti partem adversam bellum finaliter expectare, et ad id omnino etiam sua robora præparare. Londonienses vero voce præconia per totum noctis spatium ad arma præparanda indulserunt. Comes autem de Monteforti, totam noctem ducens [2] insomnem, more solito, divinis vacabat operibus, commilitones suos exhortans verbis, et provocans exemplis, ut peragant confessiones in spiritu humilitatis et animo contrito, et sic purificatis mentibus ab omni sorde peccati, certamini, zelo justitiæ incepto, se [3] submittant intrepidi, eo certiores de victoria quo Deus est in causa. Aderat etiam et ille Christi miles, W[alterus] de Cantilupo, Wygorniensis Episcopus, illius causæ pro-
F. 104 b. secutor indefessus, et Comitis Simonis comes [4] individuus, omnibus absolutionem delictorum [5] impendens, et secure promittens remissionem delictorum omnibus qui viriliter in agone decertassent; adjungens gloriosum et meritorium esse pro assertione veritatis subire tormentum. Certificati igitur de prœlio in crastino committendo, edicitur publice, quatinus ante solis ortum, ereptis armis, exeant de boscis ubi magna pars exercitus pernoctabat, et conveniant extra villam de Flexinge, quæ distat de Lewes per sex milliaria, singulis vexillis singulis legionibus, juxta rei militaris disciplinam, assignatis; ordinem procedendi, et modum congressionis, a campi-ductore accepturi.

Igitur Comes, qui a juventutis flore in militari frequentia tempus suum compleverat, [6] expertissime per diversas regiones famam celeberrimam in æternum adquirendo, dispositis aciebus, modos procedendi et

[1] *conatibus* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *insompnum* in MS.
[3] *committant* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *individuis* in MS.
[5] *impedens* in MS.
[6] *expetissime* in MS.

bellicæ congressionis omnes, tanquam penitus [1]ignaros, evidenter instruxit; in præsenti quidem certamine, ad suæ laudis augmentationem, in secundo, ad sui ruinam et humiliationem; quia qui cum eo manducaverunt, levabant contra eum calcaneum suum, et mala pro bonis ei retribuebant, sicut infra dicetur; et præcipue G[ilbertus] de Clare, quem Comes S[imon] in ista expeditione gladio cinxit militari, cum multis aliis qui satis strenue agebant.

Cunctis igitur montem, qui distat a Lewes duobus milliaribus, summo [2]mane ascensis, currum suum infra [3]sarcinarum et summarum strictissime collocatum, vexillo ipsius ex industria desuper imposito, [4]circumseptum cum multis armatis montem, palam hostibus procedere disponit, ipso exercitu suo partes collaterales tenente, et eventum rei [5]præstolante. In quo quidem curru introducti fuerunt quatuor cives Londoniarum, de quibus prædictum est, qui in proditionem Comitis faciendam conspiraverant. Ista autem facta sunt ad cautelam. Contigit autem paulo ante, cum iter faceret, ut equus, cui [6]insedit, fortuito casu pede offenso, corruens in terram, et ipse caderet, tibiam suam fregit; sed cum aliquantulum, Deo volente, convalescebat, compellente necessitate, de loco ad locum per dies aliquot vehebatur; quod videntes ipsius æmuli, secus veritatem, credentes ipsum omni vigore militari privatum forsitan, ad prœlium audacius festinabant. Ordinatis igitur agminibus, et oratione, pariter et admonitione persuasoria, a duce eorum facta, animantur omnes [7]unanimiter ad pugnandum cum securitate, cruces albas in dorso et pectore super arma sua portantes, ad seipsos cognoscendum inter hostes, et ad designandum quod pro justitia dimicabant. Rex vero, et ejus exercitus, qui

[1] *ignari* in MS.
[2] *mangne* in MS.
[3] Repeated in MS.
[4] *circumseptem* in MS.
[5] *præstollante* in MS.
[6] *insedat* in MS.
[7] Omitted in ed. Camd. Soc.

supra modum extitit, formidabilis, comperto eorum subito superventu, expergefacti, quam citius ut arma colligantur, et ordinatis agminibus ad congrediendum, expansisque vexillis, una cum signo regio, judicium mortis [1] prætendente, quod "Draconem" vocant, progrediuntur; quibus Barones, cum ingenti strepitu tubarum, [2] tantum de viribus suis præsumentes, quia pauci erant respectu cæterorum, sed spem firmissimam in Deo habentes.

De miserabili conflictu apud Lewes.

Laxatis hinc inde cuneis, quam citius utrobique in hostem seipsos immittunt; sicque ictuum immanitate ac horrendo fragore, partibus sibi invicem terribiliter obviantibus, consertum est prœlium omnibus admirabile. Hac Baronum acie penetrata et dissoluta, captus est Johannes Giffard, miles strenuus, qui gloriam primi ictus præripere affectaverat, et ad castrum abducitur. Edwardus, militis egregii notam adeptus merito, sicut
F. 105. cervus fontes aquarum, sic sitiens sanguinem inimicorum suorum Londoniensium, exercitui, quibus [3] præerant Henricus de Hastinges et Herveus de Borham, vexilliferi eorum, se [4] miscetur, eosque fugientes insequitur quatuor circiter milliaria, stragem ex eis faciendo miserrimam. Horum sanguinem nimirum pro materno sitiebat obprobrio: qui, ut prædictum est, genitrici suæ Londoniis tot convicia dudum intulerunt.

Interim multi potentes, cum magna parte regii exercitus, spoliis et prædis, ac sarcinarum direptionibus, inhiantes, supra montem considerantes currum Consulis, cum vexillo desuper extento, illuc tendunt impetu rapidissimo, intra præoccupatum gladio recipere sperantes, quem a tergo cædem copiosam faciendo suscipiunt nesci-

[1] *præcedente* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *tamen* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *præerat* in MS.
[4] *misetur* in MS.

entes; sicque fit, ut qui credebant Comitem reperisse, quosdam cives Londonienses, de quibus prætactum est, ex cautela [1] introductos, trucidarunt, qui etiam suæ parti faciebant. Sed Comes, bellator sagacissimus, et G[ilbertus] de Clare, cæterique Barones, circa deditionem Regis Angliæ, et captionem Regis Almanniæ, totis [2] conaminibus instabant, ut, percusso pastore, dispergerentur oves; et apparuit ibi virtus fulminea Baronum, dum unanimiter pro patria [3] dimicantes demum victoria fruuntur clarissima.

Porro multi nobiles, ex parte adversa, videlicet, Johannes, Comes de Warenna, [4] Willelmus de Walencia, Guido de Lithiniaco, ambo fratres Regis, Hugo Bygot, et multi alii, circiter trecenti loricati, suorum ruinam aspicientes, et Baronum ferocem audaciam, qui, veluti leones rugientes, impetum faciebant in hostes, animarum suarum saluti consulentes, terga verterunt; et sic, obtento fugæ præsidio, periculum imminens evadentes, equorum velocitate vecti, in castrum de Pevenesia se receperunt. Rex igitur Angliæ, equo sub se confosso, redditus est eis; Rex Almanniæ captus, et ad [5] M. ducitur. Capti sunt etiam isti, videlicet, Johannes de Baylol, Robertus de [6] Brus, Johannes Comin, et cæteri Barones de Albenia, peditibus, quos secum adduxerunt de Scotia, jugulatis numero grandi. Capiuntur etiam Humfridus de Boun, Comes Herefordiæ, Johannes filius Alani, [7] Comes Arundeliæ, Willelmus Bardolf, Robertus de Tateshale, Rogerus de Someri, Henricus de Percy, Philippus Basset, prior jure numerandus, qui, præ cæteris eo die cum Rege existentibus, in ictibus dandis et recipiendis gloriam promeruit. Multi quoque alii, quasi totius regni potentiores, ac in militia præstantiores, partim capti sunt, partim fugæ indulserunt, [8] adeo instanter quod duo

[1] *introdutos* in MS.
[2] *ornaminibus* in MS.
[3] *demicantes* in MS.
[4] *Willelmo* in MS.
[5] Montfort is probably meant.
[6] *Bus* in MS.
[7] *Comitis* in MS.
[8] *ad* in MS.

fugarunt decem millia, cæteris qui remanserunt, ad duo millia, vel plus, proh dolor! interemptis. O miserabile spectaculum! dum filius in patrem, pater in filium, affinis autem in affinem, concivis in concivem, ensibus hinc inde terribiliter fulminantibus, et occisorum cruore inebriatis, nititur insurgere, prosternendo, [1] mutilando, sub equis pedibus conculcando, et quos vivos capiunt vinculis artissimis constringendo. De exercitu Regis ceciderunt Justiciarii Regis, nomine [2] "Willelmus de "Wiltone," et "Fulco filius Warrini," in numero occisorum excellentiores, alter gladio percussus, alter in flumine vicino submersus; a parte Baronum, Radulphus Heringaud, Baro, et Willelmus Blundus, vexillarius Consulis. Ex utraque parte dicuntur [3] cecidisse ad quinque millia virorum.

De secundo congressu, cum Edwardus redisset a fuga Londoniensium

Edwardus, a cæde rediens [4] Londoniensium, [cum] de patre ejus, Rege, et avunculo, Rege Almanniæ, cæteri triumphum reportassent, de prædicta fuga in Londonienses facta multipliciter fatigatus, tamen [5] resumptis viribus eos bello aggredi denuo disponit. Cum igitur se invicem fere offendissent, ecce! omnes qui quasi cum
F. 105 b. eo steterant fugám inierunt. Dissolvit namque Deus fortitudinem eorum, solutoque robore brachiorum, adeo sunt privati, ut quidam nec gladio percutere, nec se in suis ictibus cognoscere, valuerunt. Quid ageret Edwardus, qui commilitonibus dispersis sic, quasi solus in campo remanserat? Fugiens in Prioratum de Lewes, vindictam ad tempora distulit meliora. Nocte vero sequenti, pax quædam inter Barones et Regem reformata est, et Edwardus, patre annuente, et H[enricus], filius Regis

[1] *mutillando* in MS.
[2] *Willelmo* in MS.
[3] *cedisse* in MS.
[4] *Londonienses* in MS.
[5] *resumptibus* in MS.

Almanniæ, dati sunt obsides pacis, et ad tempus etiam custodiæ mancipantur. Prædicto modo, Barones, apud quos in omnibus et per omnia una fides, et una voluntas, fuit, amor et Dei et proximi, qui sic erant affectione fraterna unanimes, quod [1][mori] pro patria non timuerunt, qui non solum Regis offensionem incurrere, verum etiam pro justitia mortem pati, maluerunt, quam fidem et sacramentum suum violare, contra omnium [2] opinionem, et omnium adjurationem, campum cum victoria gloriosa mirabiliter adepti sunt, victoriam et laudem [3] Ei attribuentes, Cujus auxilio suffulti tam mortalem conflictum subeundo victores [4] extiterunt.

. . . . quamvis orta fuit discordia inter Comitem Gloverniæ et Comitem Leycestriæ, cum quibus armati convenerunt, moventes in Marchia Baronibus recalcitrare moliuntur. Comes Symon, copulato sibi in amicitias Lewelino, Principe Walliæ, partes illas adiit cum exercitu ingenti, et castrum de Hereford, et Haye, subjugavit, terras, prædia dominica, Rogeri de Mortuo Mari, igni tradens ubique, et depopulationi. Hugo de Mortuo Mari, coactus, reddidit se eis, suo castello, quod dicitur "Ricardi," et cæteris terris suis, custodiæ Johanni filio [5] Johannis commendatis. Castrum etiam de Ludelauue subjugatum est. Exinde progreditur exercitus Anglorum et Walensium ad Montem Gomerici, ubi prædictus F. 110 b.

[1] Omitted in MS., with a blank space.

[2] *oppinionem* in MS.

[3] *eis* in MS.

[4] After this word, in fol. 105 b of the Manuscript, the context is continued, with a small space intervening, probably through negligence on part of the copyist, with the history of events after the Battle of Evesham, some 15 months later, the transactions of some months subsequent thereto being narrated, down to fol. 110. Then at fol. 110 *b.*, col. 2, line 4, the context reverts to events which took place after the Battle of Lewes, but before the Battle of Evesham, beginning with the quarrel between the Earls of Leicester and Gloucester; the history of some previous events being omitted. The context, as given in fol. 110 *b.*, is here continued.

[5] *Johanni* in MS.

[1] Rogerus, datis obsidibus, pacem cum Baronibus [2] inivit, frustratoriam, sicut in fine patebit.

Eodem tempore, Comes Warennæ, Hugo Bigot, Willelmus de Walence, et fratres ejus cæteri, qui cum eis de bello [3] Lewensi, sicut prædictum est, fugiendo discesserunt, tam necessitate coacti, quam hostili manu subsequentium perterriti, transfretantes, nunciaverunt Reginæ, quæ tunc temporis in partibus morabatur transmarinis, omnia quæ facta sunt; similiter et Regi Franciæ, et ejus fratri, Domino Karolo, [4] Regum Angliæ et Almanniæ captionem intimantes, supplicantes pro succursu, et eorundem liberatione. Sed hac vice sua petitione [5] frustrati recesserunt. Regina vero, et Bonefacius, Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, Petrus de Sabaudia,
F. 111. cæterique parentes ejus, consilium [6] ineuntes, congregaverunt Principes, Duces, Comites, et Barones, et quasi totius [7] Europæ fortitudinem, proponentes Angliam hostiliter invadere. Persistentesque in Flandria, et in locis conterminis juxta mare, cotidie Angliam ingredi [8] minabantur, coadunata secum tanta navigii multitudine, quod vix cuiquam erat credibile. Contra quos nostri congregati accinxerunt se ad prœlium, et ad terram defendendam, et propria capita.

Congregatur Cantuariæ, et circa partes maritimas circumquaque, omne robur regni, ab unaquaque civitate, urbe, villata, [9] burgo regio, citatis edicto. Episcopi vero, in subsidium hujusmodi, a domibus religiosis, et ecclesiarum rectoribus, decimam spiritualium receperunt. Videres tunc temporis super Herbaldoune tam equitum quam peditum tantam in unum congregatam multitudinem, contra alienigenas belli potentem, quantam in Anglia non crederes existere. Barones quoque Quinque

---

[1] *Jacobus Rogerus* in MS.
[2] *iniere* in MS.
[3] *Lewensis* in MS.
[4] *Regi* in MS.
[5] *frustim* in MS.
[6] *inientes* in MS.
[7] *Eusopæ* in MS.
[8] *mutabantur* in MS.
[9] *urgo* in MS.; *villaque viris regio* in ed. Camd. Soc.

Portuum, naves et piratas præparantes, turribus ligneis prudenter [1] superpositis, balistariis [2] introducendis, cæterorum adventum audacter sitiebant, nec eorum potentiam, ut videbatur, in aliquo metuebant. Tandem illa congregatio nobilium dissipata; tam milites stipendiarii quam parentes et amici Reginæ, quia ad propria stipendia fuerunt, voto suo penitus [3] frustrati, [4] "Per aliam "viam in regionem suam reversi sunt."

Fuerunt qui dicerent, robur eorum, et numerum exercitus, agnoscentes, quod si libere applicuissent, terram præ nimia multitudine sua, et fortitudine, ditioni suæ subjugassent; sed conscius secretorum [5] Pater misericordiarum, et Deus totius consolationis, Qui voluntates novit omnium, et corda scrutatur singulorum, populum suum Anglicanum ab alto prospicere dignatus est. Unde cautorum corda magnanima contabescere jussit, et, re inperfecta per quam advenerant, tot supervenientes hostes [6] repatriarent. Et licet contra naturalem regni progeniem fieret illa convocatio, tamen, ad laudem nobilis Reginæ [7] Alienoræ, libet intexere, quod domino suo, Regi, et Edwardo, tam strenue, tam viriliter, tanquam virago potentissima, succurrendum fortiter insudaverit, exhausto [8]. . . . perdito thesauro suo incomparabili.

Nomina Magnatum qui venturi erant in Angliam, etc.

Isti, immo omnis illa regio et terra, usque ad Alpes, instinctu Reginæ Angliæ, P[etri] de Sabaudia, Electi Lugduonensis, Bonefacii, Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, et cæterorum parentum nobilium Reginæ, contra Anglicos conspiraverant. Sed et Britannia Minor, Vasconia, et

[1] *suppositas* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *introducendos* in MS.
[3] *frustati* in MS.
[4] *Matthew*, ii. 12.
[5] *præmeriarum et* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[6] *reprimavit* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[7] *Alienoram* in MS.
[8] This word is illegible.

Hispannia, cujus terræ Regis sororem et filius [1]Edwardus duxerat uxorem, similiter commoti, adversus [2]eos odio exarserunt, et indignatione. Attamen ille inclitus Comes Andegaviæ, Karolus, filius Regis Franciæ, parti Comitis Leycestriæ favebat, frater suus, ut dicebatur, fidei juramento astrictus.

Compositio pacis post Bellum de Lewes. Capitulum primum.

Super reformatione pacis regni Angliæ, et reconciliatione discordiarum in eodem regno motarum vel renovatarum, compromittitur in Archiepiscopum Rotomagensem, Episcopum Londoniensem, Petrum le Chaumberleyn, et H[ugonem], Justiciarium Angliæ, et Sabinensem Episcopum, Apostolicæ [3]tunc Sedis Legatum, in arbitros, seu arbitratores; data eis in omnibus plena potestate, salvo
F. 111 b. quod circa captivos, vel modum liberationis eorum, se nullatenus [4]intromittant.

Secundum articulum, quod illud quod quatuor vel tres de personis præscriptis super præmissis in unam concordaverunt sententiam, stabitur eorum diffinitioni, quinto minime requirendo. Quod si duo [5]concordes fuerint tantum, non utrum eorum stabitur, donec a quinto fuerit approbata, alioquin expirabit arbitrium. Et tunc stabitur illi formæ, quam nuper Magister de Templo paulo ante detulit Regi Franciæ, donec aliqua forma pacis fuerit provisa.

Tertium, quod isti [6]arbitri jurabunt, quod eligent consiliarios indigenas tantum, quos ipsi Regi et regno noverunt utiliores.

Quartum, quod Rex credat consiliariis suis, sine personarum acceptatione, in justitia exhibenda, et in mi-

[1] *Edwardi* in MS.
[2] *eas* in MS.
[3] Repeated in MS.
[4] *intromittat* in MS.
[5] *concorde* in MS.
[6] *arbitris* in MS., *arbitrii* in ed. Camd. Soc.

nistris, officialibus, vel ballivis suis, de Anglicis tantummodo et indigenis creandis, constituendis. Item, antiquas chartas, tam de Libertatibus quam Foresta, et articulos quos contra oppressiones Justiciariorum, Vicecomitum, et aliorum ballivorum, faciat Rex in perpetuum observare. Consiliarii etiam provideant, quod Rex faciat moderatas expensas, nec immensas libertates exerceat, donec debitum antiquum fuerit relevatum, et de suo vivere possit, absque mercatorum et pauperum gravamine; et in hiis provisionibus Rex consiliatorum suorum adquiescet.

Quintum, quod arbitrium bona securitate valletur, et eo vallato, vel bene firmato, et plene, obsides pacis, Dominus Edwardus, H[enricus] de [1]Almannia, liberentur, ita quod ante liberationem eorum caveant idonee de pace observanda; et quod novam guerram aut discordiam non suscitabunt in regno, sed volentibus [2]guerram vel discordiam suscitare, una cum aliis Comitibus et Baronibus pacem et arbitrium observare volentibus, totis viribus resistere erunt, quod Comitibus Leycestriæ et Gloverniæ, et aliis eis adhærentibus plena paretur securitas, ne, occasione aliqua prius factorum, quoquomodo gravetur in futurum.

[3]Sextum, quod [4]tum promissum istud in regno Angliæ tractetur, et infra festum Paschæ proximum ad ultimum terminetur.

Diebus sub eisdem, commota turba per orbem universum advolans Sacrosanctam Romanam Ecclesiam, tanquam totius pacis fontem, et magistram salvationis æternæ, non mediocri verecundia reddidit agitatam. Missus est igitur in Angliam Dominus Sabinensis Episcopus, a latere Domini Papæ Legatus Cardinalis, ut Regis et magnatum corda ad pacem inclinaret, et discordantium mentes, depulso omnimodi rancoris nubilo,

[1] *Almanniæ* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *guerrem* in MS.
[3] *Septimum* in MS.
[4] *cum* in MS.

concordiæ vinculo solidaret. Denique ad hoc illo in partibus ultramarinis agente, ecce! qui ad pristinum statum et tranquillitatem reformandam accedere sperabatur, spem pacis et in desperationem commutando, interdixit portantes vinum, bladum, et hujusmodi victualia, humanæ vitæ necessaria, in regnum Angliæ; sub pœna excommunicationis inhibendo, ne quis vinum, bladum, et alia mercimonia, in prædictum regnum deferret. Citavit insuper quosdam Episcopos peremptorie, ut [1] comparerent coram se extra regnum, præfixis eis die [et] loco, super obedientiam [2] responsuri. Sententiam excommunicationis fulminavit in Comitem Leycestriæ, et ejus [3] filios, [4] Hugonem Dispensatorem, et omnes eis in consilio, auxilio, et favore. Habitatores Quinque Portuum, et civitatem Londoniarum, super ecclesiastico supposuit Interdicto; [5] mandans per litteras suas Londoniensi et Wigorniensi Episcopis, et omnibus aliis Suffraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, et dictis Wigorniensi et Londoniensi Episcopis injungens unica voce, et
F. 112. virtute obedientiæ præcipiens, quatinus dictos excommunicatos vitarent in omnibus, et dictas excommunicationis sententias conservarent, et facerent singulis suis civitatibus et [6] diœcesibus observari.

Porro communicato consilio, Episcopi, attendentes sententiam priorem, et contra justitiam illatam, modo subscripto, appellarunt,—"Omnibus Christi fidelibus, "etc."

Ista appellatio, apud Radinges, [7] iterum communicato consilio totius cleri, recitatur et approbatur, et sigillis omnibus roboratur. Barones etiam, adventum Legati merito habentes suspectum, ei negantes ingressum, prædictam appellationem approbant, et quia totius communitatis res agebatur, eandem sigillorum munimine

[1] *compareret* in MS.
[2] *suam. Sententiam* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *filiis* in MS.
[4] *Hugo Dispensatore* in MS.
[5] *mandatis* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[6] *diocesis* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[7] *item* in ed. Camd. Soc.

roborabant. Ut dicitur, apposita sunt signa Abbatum exemptorum et non exemptorum, excepto Abbate de Sancto Albano, qui prædictas appellationes sigillo suo minime roboravit, propter reverentiam Sedis Apostolicæ, quam offendere non audebat, sicuti nec debebat; licet a multis multipliciter pulsaretur, et jacturam tam spiritualium quam temporalium bonorum, una cum indignatione Baronum et Episcoporum, irreconciliabiliter incurrere formidabat.

Alexandro Papa debitum universæ carnis persolvente, dictus Legatus, modo prædicto passus repulsam, remeans, in Summum Pontificem extitit electus, videlicet, die Sanctæ Agathæ Virginis, et die Dominica ante Carniprivium [1] insigniis papalibus honorifice redimitus; qui postea Ottobonum, Cardinalem, Apostolicæ Sedis Legatum in Angliam direxit, de quo inferius dicetur.

Supradicti marchiones in rebellione more solito surgentes, rupto pacis fœdere, et conventione inter eos facta penitus adnullata, dum Comes Leycestriæ, cum copiis armatorum, Marchiam peteret, ut dictum est, perlustrantur provincias ultra Sabrinam, et citra, cum exercitu suo, rapinis et prædis assueto, indigenas [2] circumquaque timore et tremore nimio concutientes; adeo ut ubicunque pervagarent, compatriotæ ad ecclesias consurgerent, in cœmeteriis [3] domicilia construerent, et latitarent.

Auctor hujus mali fuit ille præcipuus Hamo Extraneus, prædo nominatissimus; et alii quamplures, pullulante tyrannide sua, laxis [4] crudelitatis habenis, misere debacchati sunt. Robertus Walrand et Garrinus de Bassinggeburne, custodes Bristolliæ, armata manu venientes diluculo ad Walingeforde, ubi Rex Almanniæ et Edwardus [5] obsides captivi tenebantur, insultum dederunt acriter, ut eos raperent de custodia; sed nihil profecerunt, nam castellani, quantocius expergefacti, eos

[1] *insingnis* in MS.
[2] *circumqua* in MS.
[3] *domiciliis* in MS.
[4] *crudelitas habens* in MS.
[5] *obses captivus* in MS.

repulerunt. Spectaverant hii succursum et auxilium prædictorum marchionum, prout inter eos statutum fuit, qui versus eos cum exercitu iter arripientes, apud Persoram rumores accipientes, reversi sunt, ex hoc facto et die anticipato sauciati.

Comes Leycestriæ, ex eorum rebellione et fide corrupta compulsus ad iram, habito super hoc consilio apud Oxoniam, assumpsit secum Regem H[enricum], qui sine ipso ad illud tempus nihil facere poterat.
F. 112 b. Venerunt Wigorniam, cum multitudine magna bellatorum, contra marchiones, tanquam regni turbatores, et publicos hostes, dum [1] tacite videbatur tamen quod cor Regis, una cum suis familiaribus, inclinatum erat eis; eo quod pro Rege, qui [2] quasi in custodia fuerat, et occasione Edwardi, adhuc obsidis, quem multum dilexerant, guerram moverant. Nam ex bello de Lewes [3] divisionem ac odium [4] tractarant ad invicem intestinum.

Præfati marchiones, licet numero pauciores fuissent, tamen de sua audacia præsumentes, ultra fluvium Sabrinæ viribus restiterunt, pontem Wigorniæ fortissimum fregerunt, et [5] cæteros pontes per ripam, cymbis [6] transvectoriis [7] demersis in profundum; sed in vanum laboraverunt contra tot nobiles, et præcipue contra ipsum nobilissimum bellatorem, S[imonem] de Monteforti, resistere; quin et Lewelinum, Principem Walliæ, jam a finibus suis egressum, ad instantiam Comitis Leycestriæ, super eos a tergo habentes, ad pacem venire compulsi sunt.

Igitur, ut Edwardus ā custodia solveretur, redierunt ad pacem, licet dura fuerat, [et] exitialis, nam ut eorum major pars terram Angliæ per annum [8] evacuasset, sanxitum est; malum regno, vel proceribus regni, interim

---

[1] *tacitur* in MS.
[2] Omitted in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *ditionem* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *traerarant* in MS.
[5] *cetos* in MS.
[6] *transvecturas dimensis* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[7] *dimersis* in MS.
[8] *evacuaret* in ed. Camd. Soc.

[1] misericordiæ molituri, sub pœna hereditatis perpendere; et ad hoc confirmandum tradiderunt castra quæ habuerunt in custodia Comiti Leycestriæ, fere omnia quæ erant per Marchiam, a Bristollia usque ad Cestriam; sed et Cestriæ facto escambio cum Comite prædicto, alia castra versus australes partes Petro de Monteforti et aliis Baronibus sunt commissa.

Hiis itaque gestis, Rex adiit Wodestok, ubi Natale Domini tenuit solemniter. Sed Comes Leycestriæ, qui fertur habuisse centum et sexaginta milites stipendiarios, præter alios innumeros sibi adhærentes in expeditione, cui omnis Anglia inclinata fuerat, et subjecta, præter aquilonem ulteriorem, qui adhuc conspiraverat contra eum, instinctu J[ohannis] de Balyol, et Regis Scotiæ, a Rege nunquam se absentavit; nec aliquod magnum sine illo in regno agebatur, et omnia per ipsum ordinata sunt. Sed nec Rex, qui regnando quinquagenarius erat, ubi pro umbra Regis habebatur, adeo litteram suam perlustrare non poterat, vel peragere, nisi in conductu alterius, et dispositione.

Paulo post, habito consilio Londoniis super pace regni, in [2] lx°. absolvitur a custodia Comitis Dominus Edwardus, qui tenebatur obses; nihil [3] tamen sui juris fuit, quin potius tractaretur adhuc voluntate Comitis et filiorum suorum; quod Edwardus dissimulans [4] pro tempore, eo quod opportunitatem expectabat evadendi.

Anno Gratiæ M°.cc.lxv., ortis simultatibus conversus inter Comitem Leycestriæ et Comitem Gloverniæ, perturbationis causa principalis omnium dicitur extitisse, quod Comes Leycestriæ Regem tenuit in custodia, ipsum, pro voluntate sua, ducens per regnum, omnia castra, civitates, terras, et possessiones, captivorum suæ dominationi mancipando, propriis custodibus, in quibus magis confidebat, introductis. Quod utique dicitur fecisse, eo

[1] Omitted in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] Qy. for "*Sexagesima.*"
[3] *cum* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *procepere* in MS.

quod præsciebat multos nobiles et potentes a proposito
F. 113. suo resilire. Et licet ista faceret, ne dominaretur eis, donec Statuta Oxoniæ pro voto irrefrangibiliter firmarentur, quia nunquam oportet de aliqua firmatione solicitari; tamen injusti interpretes, magnanimitatem ipsius videntes, et invidentes, omnia fieri ad destructionem regni, et non ad ædificationem, dicebant; Comiti Gloverniæ suggerentes ipsum de jure, tanquam excellentiorem, [1] hujusmodi facere consistationes, et in ipsius redundare contumeliam et contemptum, quicquid in hac parte fiebat.

Commotus igitur Comes Gloverniæ, materiam ultionis inquirens, torneamentum clamare fecit apud Dunestaple, ubi convenirent ipse et H[enricus] filius Simonis primogenitus, utriusque partis capitanei. Adveniente siquidem die, congregavit ibidem fortitudinem robustam, tam de marchianis quam cæteris qui contra Comitem Leycestriæ conspiraverant, sicut exitus rei probavit. Pacifici, Regis et consiliarii, prævidentes hujusmodi convocationes seminarium fore discordiæ, et guerram jam consummatam paulatim respirare, Regem ad hoc induxerunt, ut turneamentum prohiberet; quod et factum est. Sed cum [2] prohibitioni adquiescere recusaret, comminans ad effectum congressus procedere, non obstante aliqua prohibitione, proficiscitur ibidem Comes Leycestriæ, associato sibi H[ugone] Dispensatore, in manu valida Londoniensès secum adducens, armis omnimodis ad bellum præparatos; qui, parti adversus terrorem [3] incutiens, torneamentum impedivit.

Non multum post, [4] iterum clamatur torneamentum [5] pari livore apud Norhamtonam, et modo quo prius impeditur. [4] Iterum Comes [6] de Glovernia, de feroce fac-

---

[1] *hujus* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *prohibitionem* in MS.
[3] *intuens* in MS.
[4] *item* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[5] *parari* in MS.
[6] *Gloverniæ* in ed. Camd. Soc.

tus ferocior, memoratos marchiones qui debuerant, ut dictum est, regnum exivisse, sibi adjunxit in adjutorium; Johannem de Warenna, Willelmum de Walence, qui tunc temporis applicuerunt apud Pembrok, et multos potentes, largis donativis et promissionibus convocando, exercitum suum diatim [1] roboravit; illisque resistentibus in Marchia, Comes Leycestriæ adiit Herefordiam, cum Rege; cui necesse erat de necessitate facere virtutem, utpote qui tunc omnino fuerat suppositus.

Elaboratum est per Episcopos et alios ad pacem componendam, sed quicquid tunc actum est, truffatorium erat, et inane; nam Edwardus, qui ad hoc sperabatur insistere adjutor præcipuus, et ferventior præ cæteris, parte altera consentiente, cum ad spatiandum die Jovis in hebdomada Pentecostes, extra Herefordiam divertisset, a militibus Comitis Leycestriæ, custodibus suis, dextrarii velocitate, recessit ex inopinato, cautela quadam vulpeculari fretus. Quem [2] ecce! R[ogerus] de Mortuo Mari, [3] qui non longe ab eis existens in insidiis armatus, sicut prælocutum fuerat, adduxit Wigorniam. Omnes igitur marchisi, et Comes Gloverniæ, et fugitivi, atque incarceratorum amici, venerant in fortitudine grandi, et in brevi formidabilis admodum fieret exercitus, qui cum toto Comitatu subdiderunt sibi Cestriam, Salopesburiam, Bruges, et Lodelawe, bellicis insultibus, F. 113 b. ac demum, reddita Wigornia, venerunt Gloverniam; quod quidem castrum [4] Comitis Leycestriæ multis armatis instauraverunt, quinque, scilicet, vexilliferis, cum sua familia, in quo etiam erat Robertus de Ros, et equites certi; et Edwardus et qui cum eo erant, urbem expugnatam introierunt; qui in castro erant resignantes illud, die, [5] scilicet, Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, juraverunt quod de cætero arma non portarent contra eos.

---

[1] Omitted in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *exce* in MS.
[3] Omitted in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *Comes* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[5] *sanctorum Apostolorum* in ed. Camd. Soc.

E contra, Simon de Monteforti castrum de Monemeta complanavit, exinde procedens versus Guamorgan; et, cum summarii sub a[b]rupta montium et silvarum procedentes, ad naves comparentes, ac pro parte magna introducerentur, in Bristolliam [ut] navigarent, ecce! exercitus partis adversæ, magnus et terribilis, ex adverso irruens, insultum nautis, ac cæteris in villa existentibus, dedit acerrime; ita ut Rex et Comes, relictis rebus suis in puppibus, ponte fracto et villa incensa, in partes Herefordiæ revertere [1] compellantur, et ibidem morantes, mittitur regio mandato ad convocandum omnes servitium militare debentes.

Interim Comes Gloverniæ, tempus opportunum considerans, quo proposito suo satisfaceret, pontes circumquaque [2] frangere præcepit, armatam manum undique constituens, quæ reliquæ parti vires, pariter et victualia, negaret, eo efficacius malitiam susceptam perficere confidens; sed Comes Leycestriæ, et ejus militia, alimentorum laboraret inopia, et [3] ádministratione subsidii destrueretur. Unde factum est, cum festinarent ad succursum, regio citati edicto, ab exploratoribus aut capiuntur, aut prædantur, aut fugam inire compelluntur. Symon junior, cum, aliis regni partibus, circa obsidionem castri de [4] Pevesnehia, occupatus, cognita patris anxietate, evocatis copiis militaribus, illuc maturatis gressibus contendit, perveniens in festo Sancti Petri ad Vincula ad oppidum de Kenilwrthe, [5] fato infelici quieti ibidem indulsit, et sopori.

Comes autem Gloverniæ, et Edwardus, cognito ipsorum adventu per sagaces exploratores, cum exercitu magno et mirabili sero exeuntes de Wigornia, summo mane pervenerunt apud Kenilwrthe, ibique multos nobiles in Prioratu decubantes, Barones et vexilliferos, circiter decem, videlicet, Comitem Oxoniæ, Willelmum de Monte Canisio, et Ricardum de Grei, cum multis

[1] *compellentur* in MS.
[2] *fringere* in MS.
[3] *administrationem* in MS.
[4] *Peveneshia* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[5] *facto* in MS.

aliis, ceperunt in lectis suis ex inopinato, cum equis electissimis et sarcinis rerum opulentissimis. Simon de Monteforti junior, comperto priorum armatorum strepitu, in cymba transvectus per vivarium subter Prioratum, vix evasit ad castrum tertio quartove commilitone. In crastino quidem, qui tunc erat dies Dominicus, Rex et Comes Leycestriæ, venientes cum exercitu de Hereford usque [1] Kemesheyam, quæ est villa Episcopi in [2] Comitatu Wigorniæ sita, diem crastinum consummarunt, non obstante quod exercitus illius non procul abesset, qui tunc, cum triumpho reversus de Kenilwrthe, in civitate prædicta Wigorniæ resedit. Cum igitur bellum hinc inde committendum in crastino putaretur, juxta vocem Dominicam,—[3] " Si vos persecuti fuerint " in una civitate, fugite in aliam," Dominus Rex et Comes S[imon] iter arripuerunt, sub ipso noctis silentio, versus Evesham, ubi ad Regem repausandum et Missas audiendum, exercitum suum reficiendum, substiterunt.

Prædictus autem exercitus, clarus valde, et multo major quam suus, cujus primæ aciei præerat Edwardus, ulteriori vero agmini Comes Gloverniæ, comperto eorum recessu de Kemesheia, impetu admirabili eos insequitur F. 114. de Wigornia usque ad Evesham. Porro Comes Gloverniæ, et sibi adhærentes,—[4] " Quorum pedes veloces " erant ad effundendum sanguinem," qui, spreto juramento suo, a Comite Leycestriæ declinaverunt, [5] ut dictum est, eidem tendentes insidias, omnem disciplinam bellicæ congregationis, in conflictu de Lewes superius annotato, tanquam hujusmodi penitus ignari, ab eo susceperant, qui in experientia militari temporibus illis omnibus anteponendus erat. Unde tanto sagaciores effecti, quanto peritiæ ipsius pleniorem habebant notitiam, acies suas ordinando et [6] indissolubiliter

[1] *Keinesheyam* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *civitate* in MS.
[3] *Matthew* x. 23.
[4] *Romans* iii. 15.
[5] *sicut* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[6] *dissolubiliter* in MS.

statuendo, exercitum suum reddiderunt impenetrabilem, et præcipue propter ipsorum multitudinem, quæ reliquam partem multo majori numero præcellebat.

Egrediens autem Symon, cum Rege et exercitu suo, de villa de Evesham, cum montem [1] quemdam vicinum ascendisset, ut ordinem cæterorum consideraret, et exinde plenius instrueretur ad congrediendum, taliter suos, ut dicitur, allocutus est:—"Per brachium Sancti "Jacobi, sapienter accedunt; nec a seipsis, sed a me, "modum istum didicerunt. Nunc commendemus Deo "animas nostras, quia corpora nostra sunt."—Hortabatur Hugonem Dispensatorem et Radulphum Basset, cæterosque fideles, ut fugerent, tempora expectantes meliora, ut regno prodessent; sed, ipso moriente, vivere recusabant. Tunc experiri poterat illa [2] veridica sententia, quæ dicit,—[3] "Justus, ut leo, confidit, et, in Domino "sperans, absque terrore erit." Nam licet haberet castrum suum de Kenilwrthe fortissimum, et omnibus necessariis ad tuitionem munitissimum, in quo se [4] indemnem contulisse, suosque recepisse potuisset incolumes, tamen maluit se campis exhibere patentibus; ignominiosum judicans, et reprobum, ut ullo timore declinasse videretur, qui pro justitia mortem subire gloriabatur.

Venientibus igitur hostibus, occurrit eis metu mortis intrepidus, et in acies eorum confidenter se ingessit, resistentes circumquaque prosternendo, viriliter præcipitando, ac sub equinis pedibus conculcando, tam velociter, ut omnes ipsius probitatem admirabantur. Tandem, equo cui insedebat gladiis et lanceis confosso, flos totius militiæ, cunctis fidelitatis et constantiæ relinquens experimentum, flebiliter occubuit; qui nobiliter pugnavit, et non tam victus, quam mole magnitudinis [5] cæterorum oppressus, morti immisericorditer

[1] *quandam* in MS.
[2] *Judica* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *Proverbs* xxviii. 1, partly.
[4] *idemnem* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[5] *cæteros* in MS.

est addictus. Sed cum non sit aliquis qui fraude malignantium circumveniri non possit, nec invenitur aliqua pestis efficacior ad nocendum quam familiaris inimicus, quis de casu ipsius miratur? Qui cum eo comedebant, levabant contra eum calcaneum suum, et qui dilexerunt eum in ore suo, lingua sua ei mentiti sunt, cor non habentes rectum cum eo, nec fideles inventi sunt in necessitate ejus. Nam quidam ipsum deserentes hostium multitudine vallant, in ore strenui militis decertantes, eidem versa facie restiterunt, ad ipsius necem, præhabita conspiratione, insistentes. Wallenses, qui cum eo erant, ad multa millia, fugam primitus inierunt, ut bidentes; qui, in segetibus et gardinis latitantes, ac per patriam circumquaque confugientes, inventi sunt postea, et perempti. Erant omnes ex parte Domini Edwardi et Comitis Gloverniæ rubeo signo in brachiis [1] ambobus cruce signati, ac alii ex parte Comitis Leycestriæ cruce alba ante et retro super humeros dextros insigniti.

Et hæc sunt nomina magnatum qui in hoc miserabili [con]flictu ceciderunt:—Comes Leycestriæ, capitaneus eorum, capite truncatus, pedibus et manibus amputatis, cujus caput uxori [2] Rogeri de Mortuo Mari in castro Wigorniæ præsentatur, (animam ipsius adjuvet præcursor Domini! cujus caput [3] saltatrici in convivio offerebatur); Henricus, filius Comitis primogenitus; Petrus de Monteforti, senior, in despectum, decollatus est; Hugo Dispensator; Radulphus Basset; Willelmus de Maundevile; J[ohannes] de Bello Campo, qui eodem die primo vexillum erexit; et multi alii, et [4] armigeri, in eodem lamentabili campo reddentes terræ corpora, beatas animas, vero, ut credimus, in cœlo intulerunt. Capti sunt, et vulnerati, Guido de Monteforti, filius Comitis, J[ohannes] filius J[ohannis], H[en- F. 114 b.

[1] *ambabus* in MS.
[2] *Rogero* in MS.
[3] *Matthew* xiv. 6, 8.
[4] *armigeres* in MS.

ricus] de Hastinges, Humfridus de Boun junior, Johannes de Vesci, Petrus de M[onte] F[orti] junior; et multi alii in captivitatem abducti, et diversis locis vinculis mancipati, terris suis in alienum dominium vinculo distributionis translatis. Quorum quidam postmodum in carcere vitam finierunt, quidam gravi redemptione liberati sunt. Guido de Monteforti, apud Doveriam incarceratus, evasit, de quo postea dicetur. Sed et Dominus Rex in eodem bello graviter vulneratus extitit, et fere morti ex improviso [1] addictus. Commissum est istud bellum cruentissimum secundo Nonas Augusti, qui tunc erat dies Martis; et vere dici potuit, in quo tot nobiles brevissimo spatii intervallo, scilicet, inter Primam et Tertiam, occubuerunt, eorumque exercitus equestris contritus loco prædicto, et convictus. Eadem hora per diversa regni loca tot fiebant tonitrua, tanta subsecuta est obscuritas et opacitas, durans fere per dimidium unius horæ spatium, quod omnibus terrorem inæstimabilem [2] incuteret ipsa etiam mirabilis aeris immutatio, tam subito superveniens. In aliquibus vero etiam Monasteriis religiosorum, fratres, in choro psallentes, alter alterum, paulo a se remotum, vix cognoscere poterat, aut in codicibus coram eis scripturam discernere, propter opacitatem.

Explicit Bellum de Evesham, commissum, videlicet, anno Domini, M°.cc.lxv.[3]

F. 105 b. Prædicto modo, Baronibus apud Hevesham occumbentibus, in bello ibidem commisso, sicut dictum est, cum ad universorum notitiam pervenisset illius diei consummatio, [4] dimissa lætitia, lamentationi se dederunt universi, præcipue religiosi, qui partibus illis favebant, vel favere credebant; et merito, nam sine moræ dispendio [5] mittuntur a latere Regis et [6] magnatum Regi

[1] *adductus* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *induceret* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] The context is now continued, going back to fol. 105 *b*. of the Manuscript: see Note 4, p. 529 *ante*.
[4] *dimissio lætitiæ* in MS.
[5] *mittentur* in MS.
[6] *magnatium* in MS.

assistentium satellites, qui non solum et post terras et possessiones occisorum in bello, et captivorum [1]necessaria, etiam bona, tam spiritualia quam temporalia, religiosorum diripienda violavere, occuparunt, nulli [2]parcentes ordini, dignitati, seu [3]ecclesiasticæ libertati.

Vocatis insuper, paucis diebus interpositis, ad parliamentum Wintoniæ Comitibus, Baronibus, Episcopis, Abbatibus, Prioribus, et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis, edicto regio, sub amissione omnium bonorum, Dominus Rex et multi magnates, qui quasi reges dicebantur, regale dominium sibi [4]procaciter usurpando, eo quod Regem tanquam a carcere liberassent, interemptis illis in quorum custodia ducebatur, infinitam pecuniam ab eis [5]immisericorditer extorserunt, [6]abbatias et quascumque domos religionis tantæ subpeditationi mancipando, quod vix aut nunquam poterunt respirare: ex hoc solummodo sumentes occasionem, quod antedicto Comiti Leycestriæ, [pro] utilitate regni, [7]libertate ecclesiastica, militanti, sicut prædictum est, sive roboris adminiculo, sive familiaritate [8]sæculatui, sive etiam orationum [9]beneficio, more pietatis, impenderunt. O nimis amara malignitatis affectio! pro schismaticis et hæreticis, ac perfidis Judæis, ab Ecclesia Catholica divinæ miserationi [10]denotata [11]præsentatur oratio, et, pro militibus Christi, Christum deprecantibus, dolenda incutitur afflictio! Tantis eisdem diebus inauditis tallagiis et variis extortionibus infestantur viri præcipue religiosi, immo potius excoriantur, quod non valet lingua recitare. Sane igitur Comitis jactura irrestaurabilis, et sævitia prosequentium, ac generalis Ecclesiæ titubatio, pias

---

[1] This word is doubtful.
[2] *parentis* in MS.
[3] *ecclesiastici* in MS.
[4] *procacter* in MS.; *protectum* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[5] *misericorditer* in MS.
[6] *abbates* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[7] *libertati* in MS.
[8] *secularium* in ed. Camd. Soc.: the whole passage is evidently corrupt.
[9] *beneficia* in MS.
[10] *devotis* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[11] *presenta* in MS.

Christicolarum [1] mentes in fletus tristitiam commovisse, divinam [2] clementiam circa venerandum Comitem mirabiliter operare, fama referente, omnibus longe lateque nunciatur. Dominus noster, Ihesus Christus, Qui ex abundantia Suæ pietatis abstergit omnem lacrymam ab oculis sanctorum, invictissimi viri constantiam insuperabilem, fidei puritatem, et patientiam, et [3] invisibilem, infra breve tempus suæ mortis, crebris cœpit ostendere miraculis. Quid ergo? [4] Suspiria mutantur in laudum præconia, et revixit pristinæ lætitiæ magnitudo. Con-
F. 106. cepto igitur fidei fervore, ad spem firmiorem eriguntur universi Christi fideles, firmiter sperantes per bonitatem Ipsius Qui superbos reducit, et exaltat humiles, a pressuris malignantium quandoque relevari.

In illo Parliamento, Wintoniæ convocato, videlicet, in festo Natalis Beatæ Mariæ proximo post bellum de Evesham, quidam Abbates et alii prælati, indignationem Regis perhorrescentes, eundem reddere placabilem, facta redemptione, decreverunt; credentes deinceps ab oppressionibus raptorum protegi, et optata tranquillitate regiæ protectioni restitui. Sed Regis ira, mediante pecunia, [5] mutata, resurgunt undique magnates, videlicet, Dominus Edmundus, G[ilbertus], Comes Gloverniæ, R[ogerus] de Mortuo Mari, Johannes Giffarde, et multi alii, propriis emolumentis inhiantes; qui nihilominus pari [6] ferocitate eos infestarunt, non obstante aliqua redemptione prius Regi facta, nec littera protectionis, obtenta causa quietis obtinendæ. A qua flagitiosa inquietatione quidam Abbates, sibi sagacius præcavere sperantes, et ex præmanifestis injuriis certificati, Regis [7] tuitione ad propria remearunt; sed postmodum per eandem viam inviti subire dissimularunt, et, Regis injuriis affluenter onerati, reverterunt.

---

[1] *mentis* in MS.
[2] *clementia* in MS.
[3] Probably a mistake for a noun substantive.
[4] *suspira* in MS.
[5] *mutuata* in MS.
[6] *fericitate* in MS.
[7] *tuitioni* in MS.

Ad festum Sanctæ Luciæ Virginis ejusdem anni, convocavit Rex exercitum suum apud Norhamtonam, ut S[ymonem] de Monteforti juniorem, cæterosque magnates, insula de Axyholm latitantes, hostiliter impeteret; invitatis, tam prece quam pretio, Comite Sancti Pauli, filio Comitis Burgundiæ, aliisque copiis militaribus de partibus transmarinis, quibus terras exhæredatorum contulerat et promiserat; sicut Comiti de Sancto Paulo, quem Comitatu cinxerat Norfolchiæ, licet saysinam non suscepisset terrarum, nec personaliter partes illas adire præsumeret, sciens Comitem Rogerum le Bygot, virum bellicosum, ei desideranter obviasse. In illa expoliatione, quæ more solito acrius exigebatur, eo quod ardentius flamma furoris incendebantur contra Regem exhæredati, a proprio solo immisericorditer ejecti, inæstimabilia gravamina sustulerunt viri religiosi, servitium militare debentes. Et qui a fidelibus protegi deberent tempore hostilitatis, et defendi, ab omnibus conculcati, facti sunt præda bellicosis.

Sed difficile est singulorum detrimenta referre; saltem de vexationibus ecclesiæ Sancti Albani aliquid dicatur. Dominus Albanus ad locum prædictum suos transmittit milites, quos ducebant Archidiaconus et Camerarius ejusdem loci, ut dictos milites Domino Regi præsentarent, ad mittendos, vel, si vidissent utilius, pecunia redimendos. Cumque ibidem a festo Sanctæ Luciæ usque ad festum Sancti Vincentii proximum sequens, cum viginti equis, dies —[1] continuassent, in multis expensis et angustiis, Dominus Rex pro quolibet milite sexaginta marcas exegit a viris religionis servitium militare debentibus, et pro militibus finem facere volentibus. Existentibus ibidem Regibus Angliæ et Almanniæ, Regina etiam, et Legato, cum exercitu magno et formidabili, procurantibus illis qui pervigili studio circa pacem formandam solicitabantur, mittuntur etiam viri

[1] The number is omitted.

providi, qui Simonem, cum spe salutis, ad deditionem invitarent. Ille vero, licet primo remitteret, [1] novissime tamen victus amicorum suorum persuasionibus, arbitrio Legati, Regis Almanniæ, avunculi sui, et P. Basset, se submittens, eorum dispositioni stare spopondit, salvis vita et privatione membrorum, perpetua quoque incarceratione excepta. Et sic, acceptis obsidibus, præsentiæ Regis apud Norhamtonam se præsentavit. Quo cum pervenisset, procedens Rex Almanniæ, coram Rege Angliæ, Symoni de vitæ suæ salvatione regratiavit,
F. 106 b. nemini [2] imputans quod a morte fuisset [3] ereptus, nisi Deo, et Ipsi soli.

Audito quidem [4] Comitis occasu in castro de Kenilwrthe, cogitabant qui ibidem erant, ipsum in spiritu furoris sui jugulasse, nisi protectio Simonis impedimentum intulisset. Ob quam causam, a Rege Angliæ in osculo pacis mansuete susceptus, et plenitudinem gratiæ suæ magnifice obtinuisset, si sævitia Comitis Gloverniæ, cæterorumque marchionum, permisisset. Sed quia, in [5] necem patris sui confœderati, effectum maligni desiderii [6] compleverant, pro certo sciebant quod eos inexorabili odio persequeretur; ideoque ad ipsius cæterorumque exhæredationem et proscriptionem totis [7] nisibus insistebant. Factum est autem, variis examinatis consiliis, et propositis contradictionibus, demum super hoc descenderunt, ut castrum de Kenilwrthe resignaret, regnumque exiret, quingentas marcas singulis annis de fisco percepturus, quousque pax in Anglia serenitior reformaretur; conditionesque interpositas sigilli sui munimine, cum præstatione juramenti, roboraret, ne contra formam hujus [8] compaginationis venire [9] presumeret, cum ea concordia discordans, et a pietate caritateque penitus

[1] *novissimo* in MS.
[2] *inputandum* in MS.
[3] *areptus* in MS.
[4] *Comite* in MS.
[5] *vitam* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[6] *compleverat . . . sciebat* in MS.
[7] *viribus* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[8] *compere fictions*, apparently, in MS.
[9] *præsumerat* in MS.

exclusa [1] natale solum abjurare, et tanquam vir sanguinum ignominiose deserere. Castrum siquidem adeunt, ad resignationem [2] castellanos hortantur, mortem intentant, et frustra terrores incutiunt. Porro qui in castro erant, super præmissis certificati, omnia suæ saluti contraria fore perpendentes, quia, capitaneo suo a regno expulso, certum erat eos in priorem devenire conditionem, ad alia se [3] convertunt consilia; et licet nunc persuasionibus, [nunc] minis, pulsarentur, ut præsidium Regi resignarent, vel Domino Simoni, qui, in conducto a Domino Rege ei deputato, ad hoc illuc advenerat; tamen de loci munitione confisi, responsa dederunt, nullam accepisse custodiam a Symone, sed de Comitissa, paulo ante a regno expulsa, nec ullo viventi de resignatione respondere, nisi ipsi soli, et in sua præsentia.

Erat autem castrum illud fortissimum, quasi inexpugnabile, machinis et tormentis [4] jaculatoriis, almericis et sindonis necessariis, admodum munitum, et omnibus castris regni dissimiliter instauratum; quæ sufficiebant per multa annorum curricula ad obsidionem expectandam, dummodo de discreta et sufficienti familia sibi providissent. Sed erat numerus virorum excedens mille et ducentos, et uxores eorum, cum ancillis, [5] centum quadraginta, quæ ad confusionem steterunt, non ad defensionem. Egredientesque per singulos dies, circumjacentes provincias diripiendo, prædas opulentissimas reportarunt, nullius incursiones formidantes. Denique Rex, sufficere sibi credens ad victoriam, quod Symonem prædicto modo subjugasset, regressus est Londonias, ducens secum illum, cujus occasione tantam convocaverat militiam, ut de ipso facerent sicut mente conceperant.

---

[1] *nathale* in MS.
[2] *castellantis* in MS.
[3] *convertant* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *jaculatoris* in MS.
[5] *liii.* in ed. Camd. Soc.

[1] Secundæ aciei præfuit Rex, habens secum omnes Francigenas, Comitem de Wendosme, et Henricum de Seuly. Tertiæ aciei præerat Robertus, filius Comitis Flandriæ. In quarta fuerunt Romani, et alii de Campania. Post illos veniebant illi de Pyregord, et balistariorum magna multitudo. Prima acies, quam rexit Philippus de Monteforti, obviavit Comiti Jordino, qui erat consiliarius et solatium Menfridi, prævalens et præeminens omnibus qui cum illo erant, et captus est vivus. Cæteris aliud bellum faciebat Comes Gawanus, avunculus illius, [2] qui erat major omnibus, et potentior. Illi obviavit Rex, cum sua acie, et [3] contrivit eos. Menfridus retro autem morabatur, quantum ad tractum balistæ, habens ante se omnes pedites et sagittarios, et processit obviam Regi. Rex vero, properans ad Men-
F. 107. fredum, penetravit omnes pedites, et pertransivit. Quo viso, Menfredus, nimis confusus, terga [4] vertit; quem fugarunt per totam villam de Bonevente, et ultra. Tanta facta est interfectio in illa fuga, et tot aducuntur captivi, quod non erat numerus. Capti sunt in illo conflictu Comes Jordanus et filius ejus, qui strenue egit in illo bello, et præ cæteris omnibus partis adversæ laudabiliter dimicavit. Capti sunt tot Comites, Barones, et mediæ manus milites, quod æstimabatur redemptio eorum ad centum libras, et amplius.

Audita tali victoria, illi de Capua et de Naples, et tota terra Calabriæ, se subdiderunt Regi Karolo. Illi vero de [5] Sicilia fugaverunt de finibus suis illum capitaneum, quem ex parte sua constituit Menfredus. Commissum illud bellum die Veneris ante medium [6] Sexagesimæ. In crastino inventus est equus Menfredi, quem armiger unus habebat, dicens quod ille qui in-

[1] The context here changes, in fol. 106 *b*., it being part of an account of the Battle of Benevento, 26 February 1266, where Manfred, King of Sicily, was defeated by Charles of Anjou, and slain.

[2] *que* in MS.

[3] *concrevit* in ed. Camd. Soc.

[4] *vertitur* in MS.

[5] *Cicilia* in MS.

[6] *lx.* in MS.

sederat mortuus est ad mensam, et [1]qui cognatus fuerat germanus illius; et agnitus est ab eis, et [2] reportatus est ad exercitum Regis, et agnitus a Comite Jordano, et ab omnibus qui prius eum cognoscebant. Interrogatus armiger si sciret ubi corruit, respondit se scire; et ducti sunt illuc Comes de Caserte et frater ejus, Comitis Jordani. . . . . [3] [Litteram misit] Comiti de Flanderes filius ejus, Robertus, qui in prædicto bello tertiam aciem regebat; quæ quidem littera statim in Angliam ad Regem et Legatum transmittitur.

[4] Diebus sub eisdem fama discurrente, cum divulgaretur, quod Symon minor de Monteforti, qui, quasi tenens viam [5] prostitionis, et pedem ad propriam hæreditatem, sibi de jure spectantem, [6] irediturus, modo supradicto evasisset, multi exhæredati, ad castrum de Kenilwrthe fugientes, cum eis qui in munitione erant fœdus inierunt, viribusque augmentatis, exierunt circumquaque singulis diebus, partes [7] frequenter devastantes, multiplices copias ad instaurationem castri secum reportando; [8] animosiores effecti pro Symonis evasione, quem credebant circa statum illorum esse solicitum, et in procurandis auxiliis de cognatione sua, et patris sui, in partibus transmarinis vigilanter intentum. Castrum insuper de Tykehille adeuntes occuparunt, custodibus infra repertis aut in ore gladii cæsis, aut vinculis mancipatis. Multa etiam prædia et vivaria, tam Domini Regis et Domini Edwardi, quam aliorum sibi adversantium, destruxerunt, universam provinciam frumento et aliis victualibus nudaverunt, ut, cum Rex ad illas partes contenderet hostiliter, alimenta deficerent. Sed tantis et amplioribus [9] insolentiis non sufficientibus

---

[1] *que* in MS.; *quem* in ed. Camd. Soc.

[2] *reptatus* in ed. Camd. Soc.

[3] There is an erasure here in MS.

[4] The context now reverts to a previous date, being a continuation from page 549 *ante*.

[5] *prostrationis* in ed. Camd. Soc.

[6] Sic in MS.

[7] *proximas* in ed. Camd. Soc.

[8] *animasiores* in MS.

[9] *et solertiis* in MS.

eisdem, ut Regem provocarent ad eos impetendum, quem avide expectabant, ad majoris furoris irritamenta se convertunt; omnibus castris et civitatibus per Angliam Regiæ Celsitudini subjugatis, cum solummodo ad illum locum de Kenilworthe, in medio regni situm, certum haberent refugium tantummodo, et non alibi, satis admirandam ostendunt audaciam. Nam cursorem Regis, ad fines illorum [1] infeliciter divertentem, comprehendunt, manum amputant, et amputatam Domino Regi præsentandam, ex parte hæreditatorum, remittunt. Et sicut [2] annus præcedens fluctuante nubilo tempestatis, ita et iste, nulla serenitate arridente, civili turbatione transiit agitatus, cervices de Kenilworthe anno subsequenti relinquens edomandos.

F. 107 b. Anno Gratiæ M°.cc.lxvi. convocavit Rex exercitum suum apud Oxoniam, infra quindenam Paschæ, ad hæreditatos impetendum, et castrum de Kenilwrth obsidendum, ubi, juxta Regis edictum, quidam servitium militare debentes convenerunt, quidam venire recusaverunt, dicentes eos ter vel quater in anno in expeditionem procedere, vel contra statuta regni et leges citari totiens infra annum, vel [3] istas vel qualescumque alias excusationes [4] pro se proponentes. Cum qui præsentes aderant, consilium [5] ineuntes, sanxerunt nuncios solemnes de castro nunciare, qui, tam ex parte Legati quam Domini Regis, custodes illius consulerent ad resignationem castri, et moverent. Missus igitur W., Archiepiscopus Edessanus, Anglicus, et tunc temporis in Anglia moram continuans, circumspectus, et eloquentia commendabilis, ad locum pervenit destinatum; nec tamen castrum præsumens intrare, licet internunciis et mediatoribus pacis et concordiæ, hinc inde transmissis, eundi et remeandi tranquilla libertas debeat concedi;

[1] *infelici* in MS.
[2] *annis* in MS.
[3] *istis qualescumque* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *alias pro* in MS.; *similes pro* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[5] *inientes* in MS.

audita severitate castellanorum, ad Prioratum [1] Canonicorum ejusdem villæ declinavit. Comperto autem ipsius adventu, in castro a custodibus in exenniis liberaliter respicitur, et a ministro exennia eidem deferente, qui eum præcognoverat, taliter præmunitur, ut idem Archiepiscopus ore proprio postea confitebatur patri et dominæ reverendæ;—"Suspicatur de nobis in castro non "modice; caveatis nequaquam in eorum confusionem "seu detrimentum provulgatis; quod si forsitan, ex "officio a Legato vobis injuncto, faciatis, quod absit, "sciatis nos capitalem subire sententiam." Credebant enim, quod ad fulminandam in eos excommunicationis sententiam adventaret.

Interea castellani, de Regis adventu super eos hostiliter [2] edicti, quanta possunt et diligentia et [3] solicitudine communire satagunt, victui necessaria, armorum genera, greges et armenta, de circumjacente provincia trahentes, et quæcunque obsessis possunt præstare subsidium, cursu quorum hospitem sperabant ad obsidionem solvendam remedia procurare. In partibus enim ultramarinis circa copias militares colligendas intendebat; sed, secus propositum suum, impedimentum præstitit Rex Franciæ, non permittens ipsum ad partes istas cum hostili manu remeare. Tandem disposito [4] exercitu, obsesso castro, locatis in gyrum legionibus, tentoriis et papillionibus congrua statione dispositis, castrum vallatur obsidione. Demum machinis erectis, et [5] petrariis jaculatoriis castrum molestiis non cessant fatigare, sed nec die nec nocte requiei operam dantes, verum crebris lapidum immissionibus instantia continua muros et domicilia debilitant. Munitio nihilominus per singulos dies [6] egredientes, super eos cum sagittarum ictibus, lancearum, gladiorumque, transver-

[1] *Canenicorum* in MS.
[2] *edicto* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *solicitudini* in MS.
[4] *exercitui* in MS.
[5] *petrarii* in MS.
[6] *egrediens* in MS.

berationibus, a multis spiritum [1] exhalare fecerunt, greges quoque extra castra ad pascua minantes in conspectu exercitus, sæpius conflictum cæteris inferunt, et redeunt cum victoria.

De parte Domini Edmundi, filii Regis, ex industria magna paratur turris lignea, sumptuosa valde, mirandæ altitudinis et latitudinis; ad murum per ingenium aptatur, in qua per loca diversoria collocati fuerant ducenti balistarii, et amplius, ut inclusis telorum et sagittarum immissionibus dispendia incuterent. Sed erectus mangonellus interius non cessabat, donec eam assidua lapidum reverberatione penetrando [2] contrivisset. Alia quoque machina, ex parte Domini Regis, nimis admiranda,
F. 108. quæ, propter magnitudinem, "Ursus" vocabatur, varias infra se divisiones continens, ad sagittarios [3] introducendos, ad nocumentum obsessorum, erigitur; contra quam quædam petraria, aptatura satis artificiosa, viriliter reverberavit, quod multo tempore vim ministrandi et sæviendi amisit. Hoc enim apud eos [4] voluntarium, ut singulis machinis, propter illorum vehementiam et terribilem aspectum, propria nomina imponerent; bargis etiam de partibus Cestriæ sumptuosis laboribus transvectis, ad assiliendum castrum per aquam, sed nihil proficientibus. Qui deforis erant nihil relinquunt intentatum eorum, qui castellanis possunt augere molestias, et ad obtinendum castrum tribuere facultatem: nihil tamen attentantes, per fossores et subterraneas vias, ad suffodiendum muros; quod [5] quidem ingenium in hujusmodi negotiis non modicam obtinendi votum consuevit præstare fiduciam, et inclusos de victoria reddere desperatos.

A mane usque ad vesperam apertæ sunt januæ; et cum durasset obsidio a festo Pentecostes usque ad festum Sancti Martini proxime [6] sequentis, nunquam factus est assultus communis ab exercitu Regis, sed

[1] *exalare* in MS.
[2] *concrevisset* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *interducendos* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *voluntaria* in MS.
[5] *quidam* in MS.
[6] *sequentem* in ed. Camd. Soc.

fere singulis diebus egressis castellanis, et audacter se offerentibus, [1] occurrunt agmina militum, equitum et peditum, impetuose, capita, pariter et corpora, relinquentes ibidem.

Miles quidam strenuus, generosi sanguinis, in conflictu graviter vulneratus, captus, ad castrum adductus, in fata concessit, positusque honorifice in feretro, cereis circumquaque appositis, ducitur extra castrum, ut venientes amici sui, de parte Regis, ipsum pacifice asportarent, juxta votum suum intumulandum. In hoc facto commendatur urbanitas castellanorum. Instant deforis cum undecim petrariis, lapides in castrum die noctuque incessanter jactantibus. Legatus, videns quod nihil proficiunt, nititur ut ipsis et aliis exhæredatis terræ suæ restituantur, marchionibus contradicentibus, et minas tumide minis accumulando, quod in ipsum Legatum insurgerent. Sed in eos excommunicationis sententiam fulminans, [2] scilicet, sicuti facere credebatur, eo quod, tanquam pacis perturbatores, terras cæterorum detinebant occupatas ; eliguntur per Dominum Regem et optimates suos duodecim viri, excelsæ dignitatis, prudentia circumspecti, et experientia comprobati, ad tractandum de pace regni, et statu exhæredatorum ; quorum ordinationi prædictæ pacis negotium est commissum. Legato quoque, et Domino H[enrico], filio Regis Almanniæ, per eos duodecim sic data est potestas, ut si quid ex ordinatione prædictorum duodecim virorum remaneret, quod perfectione et mutatione indigeret, suo possent judicio conformare.

Citantur igitur Abbates, Priores altiores, propositum habentes, tam exempti quam non exempti, per totum regnum, ut sexto Kalendas Novembris apud Norhamptonam convenirent, sub pœna excommunicationis, quam ipso facto incurrerent, si mandatum Legati adimplere neglexerint. Citantur et Archidiaconi universi, per quos citationes fieri deberent, prædictos, ut sub pœna

[1] *occurrint* in MS. | [2] Omitted in ed. Camd. Soc.

prædicta prædicto loco personaliter accederent, nomina Abbatum et Prioratuum sui Archidiaconatus, sub sigillo suo, Legato fideliter intimanda; et a Norhamtona colloquium amoventes, usque Coventream, juxta Kenilworthe, ad festum Omnium Sanctorum convenerunt
F. 108 b. omnes religiosi totius regni, una cum barnagio et cæteris regni magnatibus, ut interessent, ubi dicti ordinatores ordinationem suam promulgare deberentur. Quod et factum est. Castellani, [1] formam pacis non acceptantes, castrum reddere recusarunt, et ad resistendum se paraverunt. Legatus, in insigniis, cum omnibus aliis prælatis, similiter [2] redimitis, excommunicationis sententiam fulminavit in eos. Ipsi vero, erectis circumquaque per muros castri vexillis et penecillis innumeris, omnes reddiderunt admirantes quod tam [3] viriliter rebellare præsumebant. Vocantur et carpentarii per totum regnum, ad machinas faciendas, et ædificia construenda, quia credebant ibidem [4] hiemare circa obsidionem.

Rege taliter, cum toto posse suo, circa castri expugnationem existente, [5] exhæredati, scientes alteras partes regni [6] militari copia destitutas, currunt undique, [7] vastantes omnia, deprædantes universa, quæ poterant sibi subjugare: accedentes ad insulam de Ely, in Vigilia Sancti Laurentii, eam occupant, [8] exeuntes singulis diebus, circumjacentem provinciam devastantes, omnia vitæ necessaria secum in insulam reducentes et restaurantes. Proficiscitur Episcopus loci, cum paucis, ad Regem, eventum rei nunciaturus. Indignanter est receptus, et ei casus imputatur. Citantur Comitatus, cum plebe, ad eos vallandos; exeunt hæredati, nihil [9] formidinis concipientes, et plebem introire [10] compellunt. Villam de

[1] These four words are repeated in MS.
[2] *redeuntibus* in MS.
[3] *mirabiliter rebellare* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *hicinare* (?) in ed. Camd. Soc.
[5] *ad hæredati* in MS.
[6] *militare* in MS.
[7] *vastans* in MS.
[8] *existentes* in MS.
[9] *fortitudinis* in MS.
[10] *compellerunt* in ed. Camd. Soc.

Norwico fortiter assiliendo deprædabant, spolia secum reportantes ad abundantiam; similiter Cantebrigiam, Judæos, et alios quos volebant, ducentes in insulam, et ad votum redimentes. Cives de Len, accedentes ad Regem, libertates suas amissas petentes sibi reconcedi, promittebant insulanos, vivos vel mortuos, sibi præsentari, dummodo negotia sua per Regem promoventur. Quibus concessis, et obtenta securitate de eisdem, congregaverunt infinitam multitudinem de plebeiis, cum navibus quamplurimis, balistariis onustis, et sagittariis, omnique armorum genere refertis, ad eos impetendum. Johannes de Ensle cæterique, instructi de ipsorum adventu, statuentes aliqua agmina locis congruis, demissis vexillis, fugam fingunt, ut cæteros [1] ad hoc in navibus animarent ad terram. Festinantes deinde redisse super eos applicatos, et omni parte concludentes, jugulant, revertere volentes ad naves gladiis obviant; quatuor bargis, cum multis navibus retentis, cædem fecerunt non modicam. Sicque in illo conflictu multis occisis, et carceri mancipatis, [et] in aquis submersis, paucis ad Len reversis, pro voto [2] triumpharunt.

Legatus et Comes Gloverniæ, et cæteri, qui duodenario numero fuerant electi ad pacem componendam, nituntur ut exhæredati, et etiam castellani, facta redemptione pro transgressionibus suis, terras suas et possessiones recuperarent. Rogerus de Mortuo Mari et cæteri marchiones, nimis igitur [3] timentes quod terras amittere deberent sibi collatas, et immo violenter [4] occupatas, in necem Comitis Gloverniæ, ut dicitur, conspiraverunt seditiose, sibi inferendam. Unde recedens idem Comes et alii multi, ad terras suas protegendas ab eruptionibus insulanorum, Regem cum paucis in obsidionem dimiserunt. Castellani, nimia laborantes alimentorum inopia, equos comederunt; de nova refectione febricitantes, morbosi facti sunt, [5] finierunt, atque prop-

[1] *adhuc* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *triumphi itur* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *timente* in MS.
[4] *ocupatus* in MS.
[5] Sic in MS.

ter hoc de pace tractare curarunt. Facta est ergo compositio, annulo regio signata, ut ad Symonem, in
F. 109. partibus transmarinis [1] morantem, mittentur, et si eos non [2] succurreret infra tempus duodecim dierum, sicut in compositione continebatur, extunc die præfixo castrum resignarent. Datis igitur obsidibus, destinantur ad Symonem nuncii, formam prædictam eidem intimantes, et sine spe alicujus auxilii contra festum Sancti Martini reddiderunt.

Ad Natale proximum sequens erat Dominus Rex apud Oxoniam, et Legatus, multique magnates, specialiter vocati, ad pacem faciendam inter Comitem Gloverniæ et Rogerum de Mortuo Mari, cæterosque marchionum, ab obsidione de Kenilwrth cum rancore decedentes; et exinde versus Londonias iter arripiens, ubi festum Sancti Edwardi, sicut ei moris erat, pariter et devotionis, vocatis Archiepiscopis, Episcopis, Abbatibus, et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis, [3] Comitibus, Baronibus, prout decebat regiam excellentiam, cum ingenti gaudio solemnizavit; Legato in sedili regio collocato, singulisque ferculis coram eo primitus appositis, et postremo coram Rege; unde murmurabant multi in aula Regis, [4] indignantes quod alienigenam in suo regno, et in festivitatibus suis, ei præfecisset. Ad illud festum invitatus, Comes Gloverniæ venire recusavit. Suspicans aliquod sinistrum ab æmulis suis in curia procurari, nuncios suos Domino Regi destinavit, ut dicitur, monens et exhortans, ut a Consilio suo alienigenas amoveret, ut Provisiones Oxoniæ, bonas et utiles regno, inviolabiliter teneret, et per regnum tenere faceret, et promissa sibi apud Evesham adimpleret. Sin autem, ei si quod utile videretur faceret, ne miraretur.

Habito igitur diligenti tractatu, tam circa hujusmodi mandatum, quam circa hæredatos qui insulam de Ely

---

[1] Omitted in ed. Camd. Soc. This and the next word are doubtful.

[2] *succurrerent* in MS.

[3] *Comititibus* in MS.

[4] *indignatis* in MS.

occupatam detinebant, omnes provincias licentia liberiori devastando, edicto regio citantur Comites, Barones, Archiepiscopi, Episcopi, Abbates, et omnes communiter militare servitium debentes, ut ad festum Purificationis Beatæ Virginis proxime [1] sequens, apud Sanctum Edmundum, cum equis et armis, modo omnique sufficienter instructi, convenirent, ad insulanos impetendum. Omnibus quo in [2] adventum Regis die et loco convenientibus, Comes Gloverniæ se absentavit, in confinio Walliæ copiosum congregans exercitum, ad marchiones, suos inimicos, ut creditur, insequendum.

Missis denuo legationibus, videlicet, J. de Warennia, et W. de Walence, ut veniret ad parliamentum, renuit, literas patentes faciens, signo suo signatas, quod nunquam arma portaret contra Dominum Regem, nec filium suum, Edwardum, nisi se defendendo; sed inimicos suos, scilicet, R[ogerum] de Mortuo Mari, et cæteros, pro posse suo suppeditaret. Hoc fecit per consilium, quia notam proditionis sibi formidabat [3] imponi.

Anno Gratiæ Mºcclxvii., vocatis edicto regio totius regni magnatibus, cum equis et armis, ad obsidendum insulam Elyensem, ut dictum est, Episcopis [et] Abbatibus, militare servitium debentibus, apud Sanctum Eadmundum convenientibus ad parliamentum, cum aliis ecclesiarum rectoribus per Legatum citatis, primo et principaliter Rex et Legatus articulos subscriptos exigebant a clero; scilicet, ut omnes prælati et rectores ecclesiarum decimas suas concederent de tribus annis sequentibus, et de anno proximo præterito, quantum dabant Baronibus ad custodiendum mare contra alienigenas. Ad hoc respondebatur, quod guerra incepta fuerat per iniquam cupiditatem, et adhuc durat, et ideo necessarium esset hujusmodi petitiones pessimas prætermittere, et de pace regni tractare, et parliamentum

---

[1] *sequentem* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] Doubtful in MS.
[3] *impositam* in ed. Camd. Soc.

F. 109 b. suum ad utilitatem Ecclesiæ et regni convertere, non ad tortionem denariorum, præcipue [1] cujus terra tanta destructa sit per guerram quod vix aut nunquam respirare poterit.

Item, petitum est, ut ecclesiæ taxatæ fuissent per manum laicorum, justa et alta taxatione, ad valorem omnium bonorum. Ad hoc respondebatur, quod non est ratio, sed contra justitiam omnimodam, ut laici de decimis colligendis se intromittant, nec in hoc [2] nequaquam consentiebant communiter, sed [3] ut antiqua taxatio staret.

Item, ut Episcopi, Abbates, Priores, decimam suam darent de [4] baroniis suis plenarie, et de laico feodo, recta et alta taxatione. Ad hoc respondendum est, quod deprædati sunt, et secuti sunt Regem in expeditione, et cum tanta pecuniarum effusione, quod omnino pauperes effecti sunt, sed et terræ eorum incultæ [5] jacebant propter guerram.

Item, ut clerus communiter daret Domino Regi, ad relevandum statum suum, triginta millia marcarum, sine antedictis decimis; quas quidem decimas Legatus vendicabat ad opus Romanæ Curiæ, propter debita [6] Siciliæ, Apuliæ, et Calabriæ, in nomine Domini Edmundi, [7] filii Regis. Ad hoc responderunt, quod nihil darent, quia omnes hujusmodi taxationes et extorsiones, per Regem factæ tempore priori, nunquam in utilitatem Regis vel regni conversæ sunt.

Item, ut omnes clerici tenentes baroniam vel laicum feodum, personaliter procederent armis præmuniti omnimodis contra inimicos suos, vel tantum servitium in expeditione Regis invenirent, quantum [8] pertinet ad tantam terram, vel tantum tenementum. Ad [hoc] responderunt, quod non tenentur pugnare cum gladio

[1] *cum terra tanto* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[2] *nuncquam* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[3] *tantum ut* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *baronibus* in MS.
[5] *jacebat* in MS.
[6] *Ceciliæ, Puliæ*, in MS.
[7] *filio* in MS.
[8] *pertineret* in ed. Camd. Soc.

materiali, sed spirituali, scilicet, cum lacrymis, oratione, et hujusmodi [1] beneficiis; et tenentur pacem manutenere, et non ad guerram movendam auxilium præstare, vel etiam jam motam confovere; et quod terræ et baroniæ ipsorum ab eleemosynis stabiliuntur, unde servitium militare non debent, nisi certum, sed nec novum incipient.

Item, ut clerus communiter acquietaret novem millia marcarum, quas Episcopus Roffensis, , Laurentius, et Episcopus Bathoniensis, Willelmus, et Abbas Westmonasteriensis, Ricardus, mutuo receperunt a mercatoribus Domini Papæ, in Curia Romana, quando fuerunt ibidem pro negotiis Regis expediendis. Ad hoc responderunt, quod nunquam consentiebant illis novem millibus, nec quicquam sciebant, unde in nullo tenentur [2] eis acquietare.

Item, ut fieret prædicatio, cum omni festinatione, de Cruce, per totum regnum, ad expugnandum populum quem Curia provideret, vel ad Crucem per denarios redimendum. Ad hoc responderunt, quod populus terræ per guerram in magna parte occiditur, et si modo Crucesignarentur [3] qui remanserunt, [quod] manifestum esset, quod Legatus voluisset naturalem progeniem terræ exulare, ut sic possent alienigenæ terram libere conquirere: item, exhæredati terras suas non sunt recuperati, nec cæteri redemptiones suas.

Item, ut Episcopi tenerentur ad omnes istas petitiones, velint, nolint, bono [4] grato, vel malo grato, propter juramentum de Coventre, [5] ut Domino auxiliarentur Regi modis omnibus, in quantum possent. Ad hoc responderunt, quod quando juramentum fecerunt, nunquam intelligebant de alio, quam auxilio spirituali et consilio salubri.

Exhæredati latitantes in insula de Ely ammoniti sunt per nuncios Legati, ut reverterent ad fidem Sanctæ

[1] *beneficia* in MS.
[2] *eas* in ed. Camd. Soc. *quod qui* in MS.
[4] *grati* in MS.
[5] *quod* in ed. Camd. Soc.

Ecclesiæ, et ad [1]obedientiam Curiæ Romanæ, et ad pacem Regis, secundum formam provisam, et ut susciperent absolutionem de sententia, secundum formam Sanctæ Ecclesiæ, et ne ampliores roborias et deprædationes facerent, et ut de roboriis et deprædationibus factis restitutionem facerent clero et Ecclesiæ.

Ad primum responderunt, quod firmiter tenent eandem fidem quam didicerunt a sanctis Episcopis, scilicet,
F. 110. Sancto Roberto, de Sancto Edmundo, Sancto Ricardo, et aliis viris Catholicis. Unde credunt et tenent eosdem articulos fidei de [2]Symbolo et Oratione Dominica, [3]Evangeliis, et Sacramentis, sicut Universalis Ecclesia tenet et credit; et propter hanc fidem parati sunt vivere et mori.

Ad secundum dicunt, quod obedientiam debent Ecclesiæ Romanæ, sicut capiti totius Christianitatis, sed non omnibus cupiditatibus et exigentiis voluntariis illorum, qui gubernare deberent eandem, et Regem. Prædecessores sui, quorum hæredes sunt, terram [4]conquirebant per gladium; et ideo visum est eis, quod injuste [5]exhæredati sunt; et hoc est per Legatum, unde hortantur eundem, ut [6]faciat emendari.

Ad tertium respondent, dicentes quod Legatus missus est in Angliam ut pacem faceret; et magis guerram manutenet, quia manifeste parti Regis adhæret, et eam fovet, et, in quantum sic facit, partem guerræ sustinet. Item, forma [7]provisa nulla est, præcipue cum Papa dederit Regi et Legato in mandatis, ut nullus exhæredaretur, et quandam redemptionem providerunt, quæ coæquatur exhæredationi, unde hortantur Legatum, ut faciat emendare.

Ad quartum dicunt, quod prima inprisio et primum juramentum sint ad utilitatem regni et totius

---

[1] *obbedientiam* in MS.
[2] *Cimbolo* in MS.
[3] *Euvangelia* in MS.
[4] *conquirerebant* in MS.
[5] *exhæredanti* in MS.
[6] *facient* in MS.
[7] *prævisa* in MS.

Ecclesiæ, et omnes prælati regni excommunicationis sententiam fulminarunt in omnes [1] contrariantes; unde ad hoc stant in eadem voluntate, et parati sunt mori pro juramento eodem; et hortantur [2] Legatum, ut revocet sententiam, alioquin appellant ad Sedem Apostolicam, et etiam ad Generale Concilium, vel, si necesse fuerit, ad Summum Judicem.

Ad quintum dicunt, quod cum [3] militent pro utilitate regni et Ecclesiæ, oportet vivere de communibus bonis, et maxime de bonis inimicorum suorum, qui terras eorum detinent; ideo hortantur Legatum, ut terras suas sibi restitui [4] faciat, ut necessitatem non habeant deprædare.

Ad sextum dicunt, quod multi discurrentes circumquaque roborias faciunt multimodas, qui sunt de parte Regis et Edwardi, et dicunt se esse ex parte hæredatorum, ut ipsos defament, et seipsos excusent; et ideo monent Legatum, ne talia referentibus fidem adhibeat; quin si quemquam in hujusmodi scelere comprehenderent inter seipsos, statim sine mora de ipso facient judicium.

Exhæredati significant Domino Legato, quod irreverenter ejecit a regno tanquam totius terræ consilium, Episcopum Wintoniensem, Episcopum Londoniensem, Episcopum Lincolniensem, et Episcopum Cicestriæ, viros in consilio et prudentia circumspectos; unde consilium regni in maxima parte debilitatur, et terra periclitatur; quia Legatus bona episcopatuum sibi usurpat, et per defectum consilii cæterorum status terræ deperit; et [5] monent Legato, ut emendare faciat. Significant Legato, ut moneat Regem [6] quod alienigenas de Consilio suo amoveat, per quos terra captivatur. Monent Legatum, ut terræ suæ restituantur

[1] *contrarietates* in MS.
[2] *Legato* in MS.
[3] *militant* in ed. Camd. Soc.
[4] *faciant* in MS.
[5] *monet* in MS.
[6] *et* in MS.

eisdem sine redemptione, et ut Provisiones Oxoniæ teneantur, et ut obsides eis liberentur in insulam, ut possint eam pacifice tenere per quinquennium, donec viderint qualiter Rex omnia præmissa firmaverit, et fecerit [1] observare. Significant Legato, quod abbatiæ et aliæ domus religionis ædificatæ sunt de bonis præcessorum suorum, et nunc per extorsiones et tallagia Regis et Legati destruuntur; unde viri in locis eisdem, ad servitium Dei deputati, vivere nequeunt, nec eleemosynas in hospitalitatem facere, sicuti consueverunt; monent Legatum, ut emendetur. Significant Legato, quod ecclesiæ regni collatæ sunt alienigenis, qui sunt inimici terræ; et bona ecclesiastica, quibus naturales terræ vivere debent, et sustentari, in partes ultramarinas asportantur; et ideo periclitantur animæ, non habentes
F. 110 b. custodem, præter aliquem capellanum de minori pretio quo possunt; et monent, ut emendetur. Significant Legato, quod decimæ quæ exiguntur a clero, non debent dari, vel concedi, eo quod terra destructa est per regales, et per communem guerram, et terra jacet inculta, et fructus annui nulli provenerunt; unde populus fame moritur. Significant Legato, et monent, ut nulla fiat prædicatio ad populum naturalem regni Cruce-signandum et exulandum, quo liberius gens extranea posset terram expugnare.

Proponit Rex etiam contra hæredatos, dicens quod juste exhæredati sunt, et privati terris suis, et tenementis; quia in plena Curia sua, et judicio parium suorum, scilicet, magnatum terræ. Respondent Barones, dicentes, quod illud judicium eis nocere non debet, quia in judicio illo non concordabat Curia; [2] quoniam majores et discretiores, scilicet, Rex Almanniæ, et P. Basset, et Dominus Marescallus, et terræ cæteri quamplures, a Curia recesserunt, contradicentes et reclamantes. Dicit Rex, quod contradictio, et reclamatio, non debet eis prodesse, quia lex firmissima est in

[1] *observari* in ed. Camd. Soc. | [2] *quia* in ed. Camd. Soc.

omni regno Christianorum, et, ut dicitur, Saracenorum, quod quicunque insurrexerint cum manu armata contra dominum suum agmine, ipso facto et jure amittere tenentur tenementum suum, quod [1] tenetur ab eodem. Respondent Barones, dicentes quod, quamvis apud Lewes homagium suum ei reddiderunt, et a fidelitate sua recesserunt, tamen postea apud Londonias homagium ei denuo fecerunt, et fidelitatem ei juraverunt; quam usque ad præsens inviolabiliter custodierunt, nec arma contra eum postea portaverunt.—

Explicit narratio de duobus Bellis, apud Lewes et Evesham, inter Regem Angliæ et Barones suos, infra biennium commissis. In quorum primo, scilicet, apud Lewes, Barones mirabiliter triumpharunt, et in secundo, apud Evesham, lacrymabiliter occubuerunt. F. 114 b.

[1] *tenet* in MS.

APPENDIX (B.)

The following passages are inserted in the margin of the Corpus Christi MS. (No. ccxl.) *of the* Ypodigma Neustriæ, *but are omitted in Camden's printed text.*

Page 89 *ante,* after "*sunt occisa,*" line 32.—"Circa "tempus hoc obiit Johannes de Temporibus, qui vixerat "annis trecentis lxi. a tempore Karoli Magni, cujus "armiger olim fuerat."

Page 92 *ante,* after "*Regis primogenitus,*" line 20.—"Corpus Sancti Bartholomæi repertum est Romæ, to-"tum integrum, excepto corio; quod Beneventi [dici-"tur] remansisse, quando Imperator Otho Secundus, "capta eadem civitate, corpus dicti Apostoli transtulit "Romam, sicut tabulæ æreæ demonstrant, quæ cum "eodem corpore suo fuerant inventæ. Capa Salvatoris "inconsutilis divina revelatione reperta est, quam glo-"riosa mater Ejus fecit Ei, cum adhuc puer . . . . (*Cut away in the margin at foot of the page*), but in Trivet's text "puer esset, prout repertæ cum ea litteræ "indicabant."

The above passages are, both of them, adaptations from the *Annales* of Nicholas Trivet.

INDEX OF NAMES

IN THE

YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ.

INDEX OF NAMES

IN THE

YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ.

A.

À Becket, Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Thomas à Becket, and Thomas, Saint.
Abbeville. *See* Guido, *and* Ingelram.
Abendone, Edmund de, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Aber Conway, the Abbot of, 144.
Aber Conway, the Abbey of, 175.
Abergavenny. *See* Hastingges, John de, Earl of.
Abergavenny. *See* Bergeveny.
Abernethy, 72.
Aberystwith, the castle of, 423.
Absalom, 60.
Achaia, 178.
Acon, or Acre, 112, 115, 143, 146, 165, 167, 180.
Acques, 197.
Acquitaine, 3, 8, 91, 93, 94, 97, 102, 106, 110, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 141, 191, 192, 201, 202, 220, 239, 240, 256, 258, 260, 261, 264, 265, 269, 294, 296, 302, 307, 309, 311, 313, 338, 432, 435, 437, 438.
Acquitaine, Edward, Prince of, 309. *See* Edward (the Black Prince), *and* Wales.
Acquitaine, Henry, Duke of, 388.
Acquitaine, John, Duke of, 360.
Acquitaine. *See* Richard, Prince.
Acre. *See* Acon.
Acres, Joan de. *See* Joan, or Joanna.
Acton Burnell, 176.
Adam, Cardinal of England, 361.
Adela, sister of Henry I., 88.
Adeliz, daughter of Duke Richard II. of Normandy, 47, 48.
Adeliza, Queen, second wife of King Henry I., 86.
Adolph, or Adulph, King of the Romans, 192, 209, 214.
Adulph. *See* Adolph.
Agareni, the, 468.
Agen, 191, 258.
Ageneys, 290, 298.
Aix, 119, 148.
Aix, Peter de Bosco, Bishop of, 380.
Alain of Bretagne, 14, 16, 18, 22.
Alain, Count of Bretagne, 36, 41, 47, 53, 54, 55.
Alasoun (? Alençon), the Count de, 287.
Alasoun, the Duke of, 467.
Albamarle, the castle of, 77, 100.
Albamarle, Avelina de, 164.
Albamarle, William de, Earl of Holdernesse, 164.
Alban, Saint, 3, 216, 415.
Albanact, 221.
Albania, 221.
Albemarle, Stephen de, 78.
Albemarle, William de Fortibus, Earl of, 138.
Albemarle, the Duke of, 378, 383.
Alberic, Master, 146.

Albert, Duke of Austria, and Emperor, 210, 214.
Albigenses, the, 128, 140, 142.
Albion, 221.
Alderi, William de, 78.
Aldred, Archbishop of York. *See* York, Archbishops of.
Alençon, 61, 88, 98.
Alençon, the castle of, 51.
Alençon, John, Count of, 435.
Alermond, 121.
Alexander, I., King of Scotland, 181, 223, 225.
Alexander II., King of Scotland, 226.
Alexander III., King of Scotland, 169, 172, 179, 182, 187, 218, 226.
Alexander II., Pope, 71.
Alexander III., Pope, 105.
Alexander IV., Pope, 147, 149.
Alexander V., Pope, 428, 431.
Alexander, son of the King of Scotland, 129.
Alexander, son of Alexander III., of Scotland, 179.
Alexandria, 86, 309.
Alfonso, or Alphonso, II., King of Aragon, 97.
Alfonso, or Alphonso, III., King of Aragon, 178.
Alfonso, or Alphonso, VIII., King of Castille, 105, 123.
Alfonso, or Alphonso, X., King of Castille, 147, 180.
Alfonso, or Alphonso, Prince, son of Edward I., 177, 240.
Alfonso, or Alphonso, Count of Poitou. *See* Poitou.
Alfred, King, 221.
Alfred, Prince, son of King Ethelred, 36, 43, 54, 59, 65.
Algorum, Master P., 187.
Alianor. *See* Eleanor.
All Saints, the Feast of, 254.
Allerton, 89.
Almaine (or Germany), 87, 148, 150, 151, 152, 154, 165, 167, 176, 209, 216, 241, 267, 282, 328, 452, 468. *See* Germany.
Almaine. *See* Richard, King of Almaine.
Alnwick, 416.
Alphonso. *See* Alfonso.
Alpin, father of Kinadius, 181.
Alps, the, 80.
Alton, 161.
Alum, Robert, Bishop of Salisbury, and Archbishop of York. *See* Salisbury, Bishops of, *and* York, Archbishops of.
Amboise, 93.
Ambrosius, Saint, 442.
Amesbury, 143, 177, 185, 241.
Ametrudis, the Virgin, 10.
Amiens, 32, 127, 156, 177, 251, 363.
Amurath of Turkey, 366, 381.
Anagni, 148, 234.
Andely, 94, 121.
Andrew, Saint, the Apostle, 83.
Angelo Corrario. *See* Corrario, *and* Gregory XII.
Angers, 7, 107, 126, 131.
Angevins, the, 132.
Anglesey, 174, 194.
"Anglia," England so called, 221.
Angouleme, 8, 309.
Angouleme, the Count of, 123, 135.
Angouleme, Guychard de, Earl of Huntingdon, 327.
Angus, the Earl of, 288.
Angus, the Earl of, 395.
Anjou, 7, 33, 87, 88, 93, 102, 110, 120, 123, 124, 145, 149.
Anjou, the Duke of, 320, 332.
Anjou. *See* Fulk, Geoffrey Plantagenet, *and* Martel, Goisfrid.
Annandale, 153, 183.
Anne of Bohemia, Queen, wife of Richard II., 335, 366.
Anneslee, Sir John, 321, 331.
Anselm, Abbot of Bec, and Archbishop of Canterbury, 77, 80, 85.
Anslech, Guardian of Normandy, 23.
Antenor, 6.
Antichrist, 333, 396.
Antioch, 79, 83.
Antwerp, 277.
Aone (? Saone), the river, 48.
Aosta, 80.
Appamia, the Bishop of, 217.

Apulia, 146.
Aquilon, 290.
Aquinas, Thomas, 157.
Aquitaine. *See* Acquitaine.
Arabians, the, 79.
Aragon, 177, 178, 432, 452.
Aragonese, the, 261.
Archpriest, the Gascon, 302.
Arde, or Ardres, 328, 372.
Ardeburg, 213.
Areth, the castle of, 79.
Argenton, 57, 89, 95, 98.
Argus, 410.
Aristotle, 117.
Armagh, the Archbishop of, 251, 301.
Armagnac, 296, 435.
Armagnac, the Count of, 298.
Armagnac, the Count of, 432, 469, 482, 486.
Armenia, 112.
Armenia, the King of, 343.
Armorica, 103, 422. *See* Bretagne.
Arne, the river, 44.
Arnulph, Count of Flanders, 21, 22, 23, 24, 26, 30, 31.
Arques, 58, 126.
Artald, the Archbishop, 18.
Arthur, King, 176, 121.
Arthur, son of Geoffrey, Duke of Bretagne, 108, 116, 123, 124, 125, 126, 142.
Arthur, brother of the Duke of Bretagne, calling himself Earl of Richmond, 467.
Artois, 145.
Artois, the Count of, 197, 204, 205.
Arundel, Edmund, Earl of, 245, 264.
Arundel, John, Earl of, 417, 433, 436, 462.
Arundel, Sir John de, 331.
Arundel, Richard, Earl of, 295.
Arundel, Richard, Earl of, 331, 347, 350, 353, 356, 366, 373, 376, 377, 379, 382.
Arundel, Thomas de, Bishop of Ely, and Archbishop of York and Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Ely, *and* York.
Arvernus, 8. *See* Clermont.
Ascalon, 84.
Ascelin, Bishop of Laon, 18.
Ashridge, 216.
Assassini, the Prince of the, 115.
Assassini, one of the, 165.
Assisi, 130.
Athelstan. *See* Ethelstan.
Athenis, the Duke of, 300.
Athol, the Earl of, 198, 206, 238.
Athol, David, Earl of, 271, 273, 274.
Atropos, 462.
Atte Pool, Michael, Earl of Suffolk, 342, 344, 346, 347, 349, 351, 352, 353, 354, 359.
Atte Pool, Michael, Earl of Suffolk. *See* Suffolk.
Auch, 100.
Auco, William de, 78.
Audele, Sir Hugh de. *See* Gloucester.
Audelee, Sir James de, 299.
Audley, James de, 155.
Aueroy (Auray), the castle of, 308.
Augustin, Saint, 442.
Aumarle, the Count de, 287.
Aumberes, the town of, 477.
Aunser, the Count de, 298.
Auray. *See* Aueroy.
Austin Friars, the, 348.
Austin Friars, at London, the, 377.
Austria, 115, 116, 117, 119, 137, 210, 214.
Austria, the Duke of, 453.
Austria, Otho, Duke of. *See* Otho.
Auvergne, 97, 109, 319, 435.
Auxerre, 48, 160. *See* Guido, Bishop of.
Avaricum (Bourges), 8. *See* Bourges.
Avignon, 245, 306, 328.
Avranches, 53, 62, 126, 486. *See* John, Bishop of.
Axholme, the Isle of, 161.
Aymer, Earl of Pembroke. *See* Pembroke.
Aymer, Bishop Elect of Winchester. *See* Winchester.

B.

Baalun, 109.
Baas, the Isle of, 356.
Babylon, 86, 112, 114, 143, 144, 165, 180.
Badenoch, 183, 202. *See* Comyn.
Bagot, William, 376, 385.
Bajazet. *See* Balthasardan.
Baldok, Robert, 256, 263, 264.

Baldok, Walter de, Prior of Launc, 393.
Baldwin IV., Count of Flanders, 33, 52.
Baldwin V., Count of Flanders, 47, 52, 62, 75.
Baldwin VII., Count of Flanders, 86.
Baldwin II., King of Jerusalem, 86.
Baldwin, Bishop of Evreux, 66.
Balliol, Edward de, 271, 272, 273, 297.
Balliol, Guido de, 159.
Balliol, John de, Lord of Galloway, 152.
Balliol, John de, Lord of Galloway, and King of Scotland, 183, 185, 189, 190, 196, 197, 198, 200, 203, 214, 215, 216, 227, 228, 229, 272.
Balthasardan (Bajazet), 392.
Balthazar, Archbishop of Bologna, 431. *See* John XXIII.
Bamburgh, the castle of, 92, 272.
Bangor, 174.
Bangor, the Bishop of, 424; Benedict, Bishop of, 442.
Bar, the Cardinal de, 486.
Bar, the Duke de, 467.
Bardolf, Thomas, Lord de, 413, 415, 418, 423, 424.
Bardulph, Hugh, 58.
Bares, Sir William de, 240.
Barfleur, 102.
Bari, 82.
Barra, the town of, 84.
Bascles (Basques), the, 142.
Bassak, son of Balthasardan, 392.
Basset, Philip, 163.
Basseth, Ralph, 159.
Bastard, William, or the Conqueror, 181, 223. *See* William I.
Bastard, Henry, the. *See* Henry the Bastard, of Spain.
Batilda, Queen, 7.
Bath, Jocelin, Bishop of, 135; Walter Skirlow, Bishop of, 358; Ralph Ergom, Bishop of, 358; the Bishop of, 419; Henry Bowet, Bishop of, 423; the Bishop of, 452, 475.
Battle, the Abbey of, 70, 241.
Battle, the Abbot of, 332.
Bavaria, 257, 275, 281.
Bavaria, the Duke of, 269, 276.
Bayeux, 13, 17, 20, 26, 28, 63, 126, 482, 486.
Bayeux. *See* Hugh, *and* Odo, Bishops of.
Bayonne, 142, 194, 320.
Beauchamp, Guido de, Earl of Warwick, 244, 245.
Beauchamp, John de, 159.
Beauchamp, Thomas de, Earl of Warwick. *See* Warwick.
Beauchamp. *See* Beuchamp.
Beaufort, the castle of, 131.
Beaufort, Henry, Bishop of Lincoln. *See* Lincoln, *and* Winchester, Bishops of.
Beaufort, John. *See* Somerset.
Beaufort, Thomas, Earl of Dorset, *and* Duke of Exeter. *See* Dorset, *and* Exeter.
Beaufort (? for John Beaufort, Earl of Somerset), Thomas, Earl of Surrey. *See* Surrey, *and* Somerset.
Beaufort, the name, 374.
Beaulieu, the Abbey of, 135.
Beaumaris, the castle of, 194.
Beaumont, 109, 435.
Beaumont, Sir Henry de, 250, 271, 273.
Beaumont, Louis de, Bishop of Durham. *See* Durham, Bishops of.
Beauvais, 8, 120. *See* Saint Amour.
Beauvais, the Bishop of, 29.
Beauvais. *See* Philip, Bishop of.
Bec Herlouin, or Herlewyn, 82, 85, 486.
Bec, Abbots of. *See* Anselm, *and* Lanfranc.
Becket, Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Thomas à Becket, *and* Thomas, Saint.
Bedford, 381, 397.
Bedford, John, Duke of, 470, 482, 485.
Bek, or Beek, Antony, Bishop of Durham. *See* Durham, *and* Jerusalem.
Belesme, Fulco de, 51.
Belesme, Robert de, 51.
Belesme, Robert de, 85.
Belesme, William de, 51.
Belinus, 221.
Belknap, Robert, Justiciar, 350, 356.
Bellona, 348, 469.
Belmarini, the King of the, 468.
Benedict XI., Pope, 234, 235.
Benedict XII., Pope, 281.
Benedict XIII. (Anti-Pope), 427, 428, 455.
Benedict, Bishop of Bangor. *See* Bangor, Bishops of.

Benedict Gaetano, 193. *See* Boniface VIII., Pope.
Benedict, the Order of Saint, 193.
Bentele, Sir Walter, 294.
Bere, the castle of, 175.
Berengarius, the heresy of, 334.
Berenger, the Breton, 14, 16, 17, 22.
Bergeveny, the Lord de, 458.
Berkele, Sir Maurice de, 254.
Berkele, William de, 160.
Berkelee, the Lord de, 416.
Berkeleye, the castle of, 270.
Berkhamsted, 135, 165.
Bernard of Senlis, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30.
Bernard the Dane, 23, 26, 27, 28, 29.
Berneres, James, 355.
Berry, 298.
Berry, the Duke of, 371.
Bertram, Sir Robert de, 288.
Bertrand, Archbishop of Bordeaux, 235. *See* Clement V.
Bertrand, Roger, 153.
Berwick, 198, 202, 203, 206, 210, 245, 246, 251, 252, 272, 297, 328, 340, 407, 415.
Bessilles, Matthias de, 150.
Beu Repeyr, the park of, 288.
Beuchamp of Holt, John, 355, 356.
Beuchamp, William, 334.
Beufort, Sir Thomas, 428.
Beujeu, The Lord de, 435.
Beumund, Sir —, 337.
Beverley, 222, 341.
Beverley, John of, Archbishop of York. *See* York, Archbishops of.
Bewmaneres, the Lord de, 289.
Beziers (? Viterpin), 128.
Bier Ironside, 6, 8, 9.
Bierne, Gaston de, 168, 169.
Biggleswade, 397.
Bigod, Hugh, 89.
Bigod, Hugh, 154.
Bigod, Robert, Earl of Norfolk, 211.
Black Heath, 391.
Blake, John, 350, 356.
Blanche, the Princess, daughter of Edward III., 280.
Blanche, daughter of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, 302. *See* Lancaster.
Blanche of Castille, Queen of France, 123, 140, 142, 146.
Blankeford (? Blankfront), 178.
Blaye, 192.
Bloet, Robert, Bishop of Lincoln. *See* Lincoln.
Blois, 93, 435.
Blount, Sir John le, 437.
Blount, Sir Thomas, 263.
Blount, Sir Walter, 401.
Bloy, in Gascoigne, 421.
Bloyes, the Count de, 287.
Bloys, Charles de, 281, 288, 308, 346.
Bobwith, Nicholas, Bishop of London. *See* London.
Bocard, Count of Vendome, 160.
Bohemund, Count of Tripolis, 109.
Bohemund, Duke, 80, 83.
Bohemia, 314.
Bohemia, the King of (John of Luxemburg), 287.
Bohemia, the King of (Wenceslaus IV.), 334, 335.
Bois de Vincennes, 260.
Bologna, 431.
Bologna. *See* Balthazar, Archbishop of.
Bologna. *See* Cosmo Gentili, Bishop of.
Bommilies, 88.
Bonaventura, 157.
Boniface VIII., Pope, 193, 195, 204, 205, 209, 215, 217, 218, 220, 232, 234, 239. *See* Benedict Gaetano.
Boniface IX., Pope, 360, 361, 412.
Boniface of Savoy, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Bonville, Philip de, 132.
Boothulle, 272.
Bordeaux, 197, 232, 233, 235, 238, 239, 277, 291, 298, 300, 309, 320, 326, 327, 365, 420, 432.
Bordeaux, the Cardinal of, 425.
Bordeaux. *See* Bertrand.
Boroughbridge, 254.
Bosco, Peter de, Bishop of Aix. *See* Aix.
Botho, 21.
Botreaux, William. *See* Butrewes.
Bouche, the Captal de la, 488.

Boulogne, 100, 156, 435.
Boulogne, the Count of, 128, 226.
Boulogne. *See* Dammartin, Eustace, Matthew, *and* Stephen.
Boun, Humphrey de, Earls of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
Boun, William de, Earl of Northampton. *See* Northampton.
Bourbourg. *See* Burburgh.
Bourbon. *See* Burbon.
Bourchier, Sir Edward. *See* Bourser.
Bourg sur Mer, 192.
Bourges, 146, 239, 434. *See* Avaricum.
Bourges, the Duke of, 432.
Bourser (or Bourchier), Sir Edward, 346.
Boves, Hugh de, 133.
Bowet, Henry, Bishop of Durham, and Archbishop of York. *See* Durham, Bishops of, *and* York, Archbishops of.
Brabant, 276, 277, 278.
Brabant, John, Duke of, 240.
Brabant, the Duke of, 276, 279.
Brabant, (Antony), Duke of, 467.
Brabanters, the, 101, 120, 277.
Brambre, Sir Nicholas, 346, 354, 355, 356.
Brantingham, Thomas de, Bishop of Exeter *See* Exeter, Bishops of.
Braybrok, Robert, Bishop of London. *See* London, Bishops of.
Breaute, Faukes de, 139.
Brechin, the castle of, 200.
Brecon, 152.
Bren, Llewelyn, 248.
Brennius, 221.
Brest, 321, 344, 347.
Bretagne, or Brittany, 14, 16, 18, 20, 36, 47, 53, 68, 74, 93, 94, 95, 108, 122, 123, 124, 125, 140, 190, 260, 273, 280, 281, 288, 290, 294, 302, 311, 316, 321, 329, 332, 344, 346, 347, 403, 422, 425. *See* Armorica.
Bretagne, the Duke of, 284, 331, 332.
Bretagne, Philip de Montfort, Duke of, 397.
Bretagne, the Duke of, 432, 467.
Bretagne, the Count of, 216.
Bretagne, John de, Earl of Richmond. *See* Richmond.
Bretagne. *See* Alain, Arthur, Conan, Eudes, *and* Geoffrey.
Bretons, the, 22, 44, 45, 133, 288, 308, 329, 337, 343, 357, 403, 405, 406, 409.
Brewes, William de, 252, 253.
Briaunt, the castle of, 425.
Bridgnorth (Brugia), 150.
Bridlington, 416, 414, 482. *See* John of Bridlington.
Brien, son of Eudes, Duke of Bretagne, 68.
Brigerac, 284, 290.
Brigittines, the Order of, 450.
Bristol, 126, 142, 145, 148, 155, 170, 176, 259, 263, 295, 385, 412.
Britain, 10, 11, 107, 121.
Britannia, the name, 221.
Britons, the, 108, 176, 221, 231.
Brittany. *See* Bretagne.
Brokas, John, 327.
Brothertone, Thomas de, 240.
Broun, or Brun, Count of Marche, 124, 131, 138, 143.
Bruges, 209, 279, 320.
Brugia. *See* Bridgnorth.
Brun, Hugh. *See* Touart.
Bruneswyk, the Duke of, 296.
Bruno, Archbishop of Cologne, 32.
Brunsfeld, 283.
Brus, Alexander le, 239.
Brus, David le, 268, 269, 270, 271, 287, 288, 301.
Brus, Edward le, 247, 251.
Brus, Nigel le. *See* Nigel.
Brus, Robert le, Lord of Annandale, 152, 154.
Brus, Robert le, Lord of Annandale, 183, 189.
Brus, Robert le, King of Scotland, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 245, 246, 247, 251, 256, 257, 268, 269, 270, 271.
Brus, Thomas le, 239.
Brusigald, Constable of France, 304.
Brusigald, the Lord, 298.
Brute, or Brutus, 220, 221.
Bryan, Guido de, 295.
Buchan, the Countess of, 237.

Buchan, the Earl of, 198, 203, 205.
Buckingham, Thomas, Earl of. *See* Gloucester, *and* Woodstock, Thomas of.
Bur, 104.
Burbon, or Bourbon, the Duke de, 287.
Burbon, or Bourbon (Peter I.), the Duke de, 300.
Burbon, or Bourbon (Louis II.), the Duke de, 371.
Burbon, or Bourbon, John, Duke de, 435, 467.
Burbon, the Lord James de, 300.
Burburgh (Bourbourg), 337.
Burchard, Count of Melun, 47.
Bures, the city of, 147.
Burg (Bourg), in Gascoigne, 421.
Burgh, Gilbert de, 140.
Burgh, Hubert de, Earl of Kent, 138, 140, 142.
Burgh, Sir John de, 246.
Burgh, Sir William de, 350, 356.
Burgundians, the, 486.
Burgundy, 13, 33, 48, 49, 150, 303, 319, 432, 436.
Burgundy, Henry, Duke of, 48.
Burgundy, (John) Duke of, 371, 425, 430, 433, 436, 438, 450, 471.
Burgundy, Philip, Duke of, 303, 309, 332.
Burgundy, Rainald, Count of, 47, 48, 49, 60.
Burgundy, Robert, Duke of, 53.
Burgundy (Robert II.), Duke of, 216.
Burlee, Simon, 347, 355, 356.
Burnell, Robert, 169.
Burriz, the castle of, 121.
Burton on Trent, 254.
Bury St. Edmund's. *See* St. Edmund's, Bury.
Bury, Adam, 323.
Bury, Richard de, Bishop of Durham. *See* Durham, Bishops of.
Busseles, 120.
Bussy, the Lord de, 371.
Bussy, John, 376, 385.
Butevileyn, Roger, 153.
Butrewes (Botreaux), William, 334.
Buttiler, John, 440.
Buxille, Alan de, 328.
Byflet, 331.
Byland, the Abbey of, 255, 258.

C.

Caen, 75, 286, 292, 364, 479, 482, 486.
Caermarthen, 416.
Caithness, 233.
Calais, 130, 134, 237, 291, 292, 297, 303, 305, 313, 314, 322, 332, 342, 344, 361, 363, 370, 371, 372, 374, 421, 425, 430, 462, 463, 467, 471.
Calverlee, or Kalverlee, Sir Hugh de, 310, 311, 328, 329, 330, 332, 337.
Camber, 221.
Cambria, 94; or Kambria, 221.
Cambrians, the, 391.
Cambridge, 73, 357, 425.
Cambridge, Edmund of Langley, Earl of, 281, 307, 317, 318, 321, 334, 335, 342. *See* Langley, *and* York.
Cambridge, Richard, Earl of, 419, 457.
Campotaneos, 138.
Canons Regular, the, of Cherbourg, 195.
Canons Regular, the, of Scone, 189.
Canterbury, 72, 106, 111, 123, 141, 144, 215, 216, 225, 295, 335, 380, 437, 438, 445.
Canterbury, the Abbey of St. Augustin at, 128.
Canterbury, Robert, Archbishop of, 64; the Archbishop of, 110; Hubert, Archbishop of, 121; Stephen de Langetone, Archbishop of, 127, 129, 130, 139; Edmund de Abendone, Archbishop of, 141, 142, 145; Boniface of Savoy, Archbishop of, 147, 152; Robert de Kilwardby, Archbishop of, 167, 169, 172; John Pecham, Archbishop of, 172, 173, 174, 178; Robert de Winchelsee, Archbishop of, 193, 244; the Archbishop of, 216; Hubert, Archbishop of, 226; Robert, Archbishop of, 242; the Archbishop of, 246; Walter, Archbishop of, 262, 266; Simon, Archbishop of, 268; the Archbishop of, 276, 306; Simon de Langham, Archbishop of, 314; William

Canterbury—*cont.*
de Wittleseye, Archbishop of, 320; Simon de Sudbury, Archbishop of, 320, 325; William de Courtenay, Archbishop of, 335; William, Archbishop of, 369, 373; Thomas de Arundel, Archbishop of; 373; Roger de Waldene, Archbishop of, 369, 376, 417; Thomas de Arundel, Archbishop of, 384, 385, 387, 388, 417; the Archbishop of, 396, 403, 409, 410, 426, 432, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445; Thomas de Arundel, Archbishop of, 449; Henry Chichele, Archbishop of, 449; the Archbishop of, 483. *See also* Anselm, Lanfranc, Radulph, Stigand, Thomas Saint, Thomas à Becket, *and* William.
Cantilupe, Fawkes de, 127.
Cantilupe, Thomas de, Bishop of Hereford, *See* Hereford, Bishops of.
Cantire, the Isle of, 238.
Cantreds, the Four, 163, 171.
Carcasonne, 128. *See* Karkason.
Cardiff, 88.
Cardigan, 174.
Carlisle, 77, 92, 198, 206, 214, 237, 239, 240, 247, 255, 256, 285.
Carlisle, the Bishop of, 285, 390, 406.
Carmelites, the, 339, 348, 450.
Carnarvon, 176, 179, 193.
Carnarvon, Edward of, 241. *See* Edward of Carnarvon, Prince, and Edward II.
Carthage, 164.
Carthusian Monks, the, 450.
Casa Marii, the Abbot of, 125.
Castellio Arretinus, 187.
Castille, 123, 147, 180, 335, 343.
Castille, the King of, 142; the Queen of, 172; John of Gaunt called King of, 318; the King of, 360. *See also* Alfonso.
Castrum Lidii, 91.
Catolus, King, 129.
Caus, or Caux, the Isle of, 304. *See also* Kaus.
Caux, the Pays de (Territorum Caltinum), 26, 27, 62, 63.
Ceres, 468.
Chalcedon, the Bishop of, 381.
Chalkhulle, the, 314.
Chalons, 49.
Chalons, the Count of, 168.
Chalons. *See* Hugh, Count of.
Chaluz, 122.
Chaluz, the Bishop of, 300.
Champagne. *See* Odo.
Charlecroix, 119.
Charles the Bold, 13.
Charles the Simple, 10, 12, 14, 18.
Charles IV. of France, 256, 268, 276.
Charles V. of France, 308, 339, 332, 333.
Charles VI. of France, 333, 371.
Charles, King of Sicily, 160, 167, 177, 178.
Charles, the Dauphin of Vienne, 296, 304, 305. *See* Charles V. of France.
Charles, brother of the king of France, 195, 196, 201.
Charles, Count of Anjou, 145.
Charles, son of Charles, King of Sicily, 177, 178.
Charles de Bloys. *See* Bloys.
Charles de Valoys. *See* Valoys.
Charneys, Sir Geoffrey, 292, 293.
Chartres, 10, 11, 12, 13, 31, 33, 34, 35, 304, 306.
Chartres. *See* Odo, *and* Theobald, Counts of.
Charybdis, 420.
Chasteaux, the Sieur de, 403, 405.
Chateau Brieuc, 60, 61.
Chateau Gaylard, 125.
Chateau Roduil, 109.
Chateaudun, 119.
Chateauneuf, 119.
Chaumont, 93, 94.
Chaundos, Sir John, 312, 317, 332.
Chef de Caux. *See* Ky de Caus.
Chensy, Payen de, 170.
Cherbourg, 27, 195, 328, 329, 365, 486.
Cheri, in Cyprus, 112.
Cheshire, 158.
Chester, 141, 147, 169, 170, 176, 222, 237, 274, 307, 354, 376, 383, 385, 399, 402.
Chester, the Principality of, 378.
Chester, the Earl of, 101, 103, 132.

Chester, Prince Richard, Earl of, 323. *See* Richard II., King.
Chester, Henry, Earl of, 388.
Chester, John Scot, Earl of. *See* Scot.
Chester (Litchfield), Hugh, Bishop of, 121; the Bishop of 380, 391. *See* Coventry, *and* Litchfield, Bishops of.
Chester. *See* Ranulph, Earl of.
Cheyne, Sir John, 409.
Cheyne, Sir Thomas, 327.
Chichele, Henry, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Chichester, the Bishop of, 253; J. de Mytford, Bishop of, 369; Robert Waldby, Bishop of, 369.
Chinon, 92, 110, 126.
Christ, the name of, 14, 15, 16, 23, 25, 29, 34, 35, 37, 46, 49, 55, 65, 66, 72, 81, 87, 90, 132, 139, 147, 220, 305, 324, 334, 359, 409, 428, 443, 444, 451, 454, 458.
Christ, the Cross of, 175.
Christ Church, at Canterbury, 72, 380, 437.
Christendom, 105, 252, 452.
Christians, the, 7, 15, 334, 431.
Chrysogonus, Saint, 127.
Cinque Ports, the, 156, 265, 421.
Cioca, the castle of, 52.
Cirencester, 254, 389.
Cirencester, the Monastery of Canons at, 88.
Cistercians, the, 118, 129, 135, 276.
Clanbow, John, 348.
Clare, Gilbert de, 137, 143, 144.
Clare, Gilbert de, Earl of Gloucester, the Elder, and the Younger. *See* Gloucester.
Clare, the Lord de, 459.
Clarence, Lionel, Duke of, 307, 313, 315. *See* Lionel, *and* Ulster.
Clarence, Thomas, Duke of, 436, 437, 438, 460, 462, 479, 481, 486. *See* Thomas, Prince.
Clarke, Nicholas, 356.
Clement III., Pope, 225.
Clement IV., Pope, 156, 160.
Clement V., Pope, 87, 235, 238, 245.
Clement VI., Pope, 281, 282, 292.
Clement VII., Anti-Pope, 328.
Clerkenwell, 476, 477.
Clermont, 435. *See* Arvernus.
Cley, 418.
Cleydone, William, 459.
Cleykyn (or Du Guesclin), Bertrand, 310, 311, 312, 313, 316, 321, 322.
Clickhole de Chichele, 423. *See* Chichele, Henry, *and* Canterbury.
Clifford, Richard de, Bishop of London and Worcester. *See* London, *and* Worcester, Bishops of.
Clifforde, Louis de, 348, 368, 396.
Clifforde, Richard, 356.
Clifforde, Robert de, 237, 245, 246.
Clifforde, Roger de, 153, 155, 158, 173.
Clifforde, Sir William, 407, 408.
Clinton, William de. *See* Huntingdon.
Clive, 159.
Clovis, King, 7.
Clugniac Monks, the, 276.
Clugny, the Abbot of, 304.
Cnollis, Sir Robert, 302. *See* Knollis.
Cnute, King, 43, 44, 54, 55, 58, 181, 223.
Cobham, Reginald, Lord de, 279.
Cobham, Reginald, Lord de, 320, 379.
Cobham, the Lord de (formerly Sir John Oldcastle), 433, 448, 484. *See* Oldcastle.
Cœlestine Monks, the, 450.
Cœlestinus V., Pope, 193.
Coldingham. *See* Cottingham.
Colne, the Priory of, 370.
Cologne, 117, 276, 277, 281, 395. *See* Bruno.
Colonna, the Cardinals, 193, 205, 234.
Colonna, James de, 215.
Colonna, Cardinal (Otho) de, 476, 477. *See* Martin V.
Colonna, Peter de, 215.
Colvyle, Sir John, 426.
Company, the Great, 310, 311, 312.
Comyn, John, 152, 154.
Comyn, John, of Badenoch, 183, 202, 203, 205, 207, 236, 237.
Comyn, John, of Buchan, 203, 205.
Conan, Duke of Bretagne, 107, 108.
Conches, 100.
Conciat, 435.
Connaught, 129.
Connaught, the King of, 95.

Constance, wife of Robert, King of France, 53.
Constance, wife of Geoffrey, Duke of Bretagne, 107, 108, 126.
Constance, Duchess of Lancaster. *See* Lancaster.
Constance, the city of, 452, 474, 475, 477, 484.
Constance, the Council of, 452, 454, 472.
Constantine, the Emperor, 176.
Constantine, King of the Scots, 181, 222.
Constantinople, 13, 127, 366, 381, 420.
Constantinople, the Emperor of, 391. *See* Manuel.
Constantius, the Senator, 176.
Constantyn, the Isle of, 321, 332.
Conway, 385.
Conway, the river of, 194.
Corffe Castle, 261.
Cork, the Chief of, 95.
Cornhulle, Peter de, 127.
Cornwall, 139, 170, 178, 221, 241, 307, 330.
Cornwall, the Duchy of, 274.
Cornwall, Edmund, Earl of. *See* Edmund, Earl of Cornwall.
Cornwall, Henry, Duke of, 388. *See* Henry, Prince, Henry V., *and* Wales.
Cornwall, John of Eltham, Earl of. *See* John of Eltham.
Cornwall, Richard, Earl of, 128, 139, 140, 141, 143, 144, 146, 165, 216. *See* Richard, King of Almaine.
Cornwall, Prince Richard, Duke of, 323. *See* Richard of Bordeaux, *and* Richard II.
Corrario, Angelo, 455. *See* Gregory XII.
Cosmo Gentili, Bishop of Bologna, 412. *See* Innocent VII.
Cotentin, the, 27, 40.
Cottingham (as Coldingham), 214.
Couci, 26.
Coudres, 46.
Coulyng, the castle of, 440.
Coupelond, John, 288.
Courcy, Ingelram, Lord de, 309.
Courtenay, William de, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Courtney, Richard de, Bishop of Norwich. *See* Norwich, Bishops of.
Coutances, 21, 104, 126.
Coutances, the Bishop of, 486. *See* Geoffrey, *and* Neel, Bishops of.
Coventry, 162, 379.
Coventry, William, Bishop of, 135. *See* Chester, *and* Litchfield, Bishops of.
Cracow, the King of, 431.
Crepynge, Walter de, 159.
Cressingham, Hugh de, 203, 210.
Cressy, 286.
Crispin, Gilbert (? William), 57.
Crispin, William, 86.
Cron, the Lord de, 298.
Crotoy, 287.
Croydon, 155.
Crusaders, the, 337.
Cumberland, 228, 332.
Cumbrians, the, 181, 221, 222, 223.
Cuningg, 296.
Curcelles, the castle of, 121.
Curtenay, the Lady Joan de, 331.
Cyprus, 111, 112.
Cyprus, the King of, 308, 309.

D.

Dacia. *See* Danemarchia, *and* Denmark.
Dagwurthe, Nicholas, 355.
Dagwurthe, Sir Thomas, 288, 289, 290.
Dalingrigge, Sir Edward, 364.
Damfront, the castle of, 486.
Damietta, 137, 138, 145, 146.
Dammartin, Guido de, Count of Boulogne, 130.
Dammartin, Reginald de, Count of Boulogne, 132.
Damme, the port of, 130. *See* La Dam.
Danaus, 6.
Danbury, 394.
Danemarchia, 6. *See* Denmark.
Danes, the, 10, 11, 13, 21, 26, 27, 36, 41, 42, 43, 54, 67, 70, 77.
Daniel, John, 264.
Darlington, 249.
D'Arques, William, 58.

Dartmouth, 338.
Darum, 114.
Dauphin, the title of, 460, 461; the, 482.
David, King, at Jerusalem, 86.
David, an alleged King of India, 125.
David I., King of Scotland, 89, 90, 108, 181, 189, 223.
David, brother of the King of Scotland, 225.
David, Prince of Wales, 143, 171, 173, 175.
De la Bret, Britigald, 338.
De la Mare, Sir Peter, 322, 323, 327.
De la Pype, Sir James, 302.
De Scrop. *See* Scrop.
De Veer, Aubrey. *See* Oxford.
De Veer, Hugh, 195.
De Veer, John. *See* Oxford.
De Veer, Robert. *See* Oxford.
De Veer, Robert. *See* Dublin, Ireland, *and* Oxford.
Dedington, 244.
Dee, the river, 222.
Dena, the Count de, 312, 330.
Denbigh. *See* Dimby.
Denmark, 6, 10, 21, 30, 41, 43, 59, 181, 314, 362, 415, 417, 419. *See* Danemarchia.
Denmark, the Queen of, 369.
Derby, the Countess of, 366.
Derby, the Earl of, 132, 171.
Derby, Henry, Earl of, 353, 361, 366, 372, 378. *See* Henry IV., Hereford, *and* Lancaster.
Derby, Robert de Ferrers, Earl of. *See* Ferrers.
Derby, Henry, Earl of Lancaster and, 274, 282, 284, 285, 290, 291, 294.
Dermot, a King of Ireland, 68.
Despencer, the Lady, 412.
Despencer, Hugh, (Justiciar), 159.
Despencer, Sir Hugh, the Elder, 253, 254, 255, 261, 263, 270.
Despencer, Sir Hugh, the Younger, 246, 253, 254, 255, 256, 261, 263, 264.
Despencer, the Lord, 315.
Despencer, Thomas, Lord, 375, 379, 412.
Devizes, 140.
Devon, 70, 164.
Deyntcurt, the Lord de, 288.
Diceto, Ralph de, 111, 181.
Dieppe, 120.
Dimby (Denbigh), the castle of, 171.
Dione, 403.
Dissard, 151.
Disse, Walter, 348.
Dol, 45, 53, 74, 101.
Domfront, 61, 89.
Dominic, Saint, 130.
Donington, the Castle and Honour of, 255.
Dorset, Thomas Beaufort, Earl of, 436, 460, 461, 468, 469, 471. *See* Exeter.
Dortrecht, 471.
Douglas, the Earl of, 395, 401.
Douglas, James, 267, 268.
Douglas, William, 205.
Douglas, William, 285.
Douglas, William, 357, 482.
Dover, 59, 66, 69, 81, 92, 136, 155, 160, 195, 215, 308, 356, 467.
Dreux, the castle of, 44, 45, 46.
Dreux, the Count de, 131, 133.
Driby, Philip de, 153.
Drincourt, 88.
Drivencourt, the castle of, 100.
Drusselan, the castle of, 178.
Du Guesclin, Bertrand. *See* Cleykyn.
Dublin, 368.
Dublin, the Archbishop of, 258, 262, 369.
Dublin, Robert de Veer, Marquis of, 342, 345. *See* Ireland, Duke of, *and* Oxford.
Dumfries, 236.
Dunbar, 200, 207, 222, 275.
Dunbar, Patrick de, Earl of March, 183, 200.
Dunbar, the Earl of, 357, 400, 401.
Duncan, King of Scotland, 223.
Dundalk, 251.
Duneuald, a tributary King, 222.
Dunfermline, 233, 234, 271.
Dunkirk, 337.
Dunois, the, 33.
Dunstaple, 393, 448.
Dunster, 160.
Dunwald, King of Scotland, 223.
Dunwallus, King of the Britons, 221.

Durham, Antony Bek, Bishop of 192, 201, 236; Louis de Beaumont, Bishop of, 249; Richard de Bury, Bishop of, 284; Thomas de Hatfeld, Bishop of, 284; John Fordham, Bishop of, 347, 358; Walter Skirlow, Bishop of, 358; the Bishop of, 406, 450, 452. *See* Egelwin.
Dynaule, the Lord Rolland de, 289.

E.

East Angles. *See* Radulph, or Ralph.
Edgar, King of England, 181, 222, 223.
Edgar, King of Scotland, 181, 223.
Edgar, Clito (the Etheling), 70.
Edinburgh, 200.
Edingdone, William de, Bishop of Winchester. *See* Winchester, Bishops of.
Edmund Ironside, 223.
Edmund, Earl of Cornwall, 144, 161, 163, 164, 167, 168, 178, 192, 196, 216, 217.
Edmund of Langley, Prince, Earl of Cambridge. *See* Cambridge, Langley, *and* York.
Edmund, Earl of Lancaster and Leicester. *See* Lancaster.
Edmund of Woodstock, Prince, Earl of Kent, 240, 258, 259, 262, 263, 269.
Edmund, Earl of March. *See* March.
Edomites, the, 86.
Edred, King, 181, 222.
Edrisus, 116.
Edward the Elder, King of England, 181, 221.
Edward the Martyr, Saint, King of England, 223.
Edward the Confessor, Saint, King of England, 44, 54, 59, 64, 65, 67, 68, 142, 163, 181. *See* Edward, Prince, *and* Saint Edward.
Edward I., King of England, 167, 168, 172, 173, 174, 176, 177, 178, 180, 182, 183, 184, 185, 187, 189, 190, 191, 192, 194, 196, 197, 198, 200, 201, 202, 203, 205, 207, 209, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 230, 232, 235, 236, 239, 240, 241, 242, 273. *See* Edward, Prince.
Edward I.—*cont.*
Edward II., King of England, 179, 242, 246, 253, 264, 265, 266, 270, 308. *See* Edward of Carnarvon.
Edward III., King of England, 265, 266, 268, 269, 270, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 279, 280, 281, 282, 285, 286, 287, 291, 293, 294, 296, 302, 307, 314, 315, 318, 319, 326, 327, 367, 395, 411. *See* Edward, Prince, son of Edward II.
Edward, Prince, son of King Ethelred II., 36, 43. *See* Edward the Confessor.
Edward, Prince, son of Henry III., 141, 147, 148, 149, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166. *See* Edward I.
Edward of Carnarvon, Prince, son of Edward I., 176, 196, 209, 210, 237, 240. *See* Edward II.
Edward, Prince, son of Edward II., 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265. *See* Edward III.
Edward (the Black Prince), son of Edward III., 270, 274, 296, 298, 303. *See* Acquitaine, *and* Wales.
Edward, Prince, son of Edward the Black Prince, 309, 316.
Edward, son of Edmund, Earl of Cambridge, 335.
Egelwin, Abbot of Evesham, 74.
Egelwin, Bishop of Durham, 72.
Egypt, 137, 138,
Egyptians, the, 107.
Eleanor, or Alianor, of Acquitaine, Queen, wife of Henry II., 91, 93, 96, 98, 122, 123, 126.
Eleanor, or Alianor, of Provence, Queen, wife of Henry III., 141, 147, 166, 177, 185.
Eleanor, or Alianor, of Castille, Queen, wife of Edward I., 147, 169, 180, 240.
Eleanor, or Alianor, Princess, daughter of Edward I., 240.
Eleanor, or Alianor, Princess, daughter of Edward III., 252.

Eleanor, or Alianor, Duchess of Gloucester. *See* Gloucester.
Eleanor, or Alianor, daughter of Geoffrey, Duke of Bretagne, 126.
Eli, 220.
Elias, Count. 83.
Elizabeth, Princess, daughter of Edward I., 241.
Elmham, Sir William, 337.
Elms, the, at London, 270,
Elmsham, William, 355.
Elsiva, 59.
Eltham, 437, 446.
Eltham, John of. *See* John of Eltham.
Ely, 59, 72, 162.
Ely, the Bishop of, 253, 262; John de Lyle, Bishop of, 301, 302; Thomas Arundel, Bishop of, 347, 358; John Fordham, Bishop of, 358. *See* Hervey.
Emma, daughter of Hugh the Great, and wife of Richard I., Duke of Normandy, 30, 31, 36.
Emma, daughter of Richard I. of Normandy, and wife of Ethelred and Cnute, 36, 39, 44, 59.
Emmo, 7.
England, *and* English, 3, 4, 9, 10, 13, 17, 18, 36, 39, 41, 42, 43, 54, 58, 59, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 101, 103, 104, 105, 106, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 118, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 134, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 152, 154, 155, 156, 157, 159, 162, 163, 164, 165, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 189, 190, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 205, 206, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 228, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 265, 267,
England and English—*cont.* 268, 271, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 296, 297, 299, 300, 301, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 323, 327, 328, 329, 330, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 349, 357, 359, 362, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 380, 381, 385, 386, 387, 388, 390, 391, 392, 399, 401, 406, 408, 410, 411, 413, 415, 418, 420, 423, 425, 426, 433, 434, 435, 436, 449, 450, 452, 453, 455, 457, 458, 461, 462, 463, 464, 466, 468, 469, 470, 471, 475, 476, 478, 482, 483, 484, 487.
Epte, the river, 14, 29.
Erdesley, 150.
Ergom, Ralph, Bishop. *See* Bath, *and* Salisbury, Bishops of.
Eric, King of Norway, 186. *See* Norway, the King of.
Erpingham, Sir Thomas, 460, 486.
Erskyn, the Lord, 395.
Espletelyn, the church of, 280.
Essex, 370, 374, 390, 394, 406.
Estuteville, the Lord de, 459.
Ethelred, II., King of England, 36, 39, 41, 43, 54, 223.
Ethelstan, or Athelstan, King of England, 10, 13, 18, 181, 222.
Eu, the castle of, 77.
Eu, the Count of, 467.
Eu, William de, 78.
Eubonia (the Isle of Man), 378. *See* Man.
Eudes, or Eudo, Count of Bretagne, 36, 41, 47, 68.
Eugenius, King of the Cumbri, 222.
Eustace, Count of Boulogne, 66.
Eustace the Monk, 157.
Evesham, 159, 160.
Evesham, the Abbot of, 323. *See* Egelwin.
Evreux, 13, 33, 35, 50, 52, 62, 88, 123, 487. *See* Baldwin, Bishop of.
Exeter, 70, 89.
Exeter, Walter de Stapultone, Bishop of, 263, 269; Master Thomas de Branting-

Exeter—*cont.*
ham, Bishop of, 333; the Bishop of, 370; Edmund de Stafford, Bishop of, 370, 373.
Exeter, John Holland, Duke of, 379, 383. *See* Holland, *and* Huntingdon.
Exeter, Thomas Beaufort, Duke of, 471, 482, 483, 486, 487. *See* Dorset.
Exmes, or Exmois, 57, 60, 63. *See* Robert, Turstin, *and* William, Counts of.
Eye (in France), 421.
Eyvyle, John de, 162, 163.

F.

Falaise, 50, 57, 484, 486.
Falconet, the Envoy, 435.
Fallislee, Sir John, 327.
Famagost, the city of, 112.
Farnham, 134, 161.
Ferrand, Count of Flanders, 130, 132.
Ferrers, John de, 211.
Ferrers, Robert de, Earl of Derby, 161, 162.
Ferrers, Earl William de, 135.
Ferrers, Walchelin de, 56.
Ferte Bernard, 109.
Fescamp, 17, 20, 36, 47, 49, 53, 54, 77.
Feugeres, 435.
Feversham, 92.
Fife, Murdak de, 395.
Fitz-Gerard, Robert, 80.
Fitz-Hugh, the Lord, 460.
Fitz-John, John, 154.
Fitz-Osbern, William, Earl of Hereford, 70.
Fitz-Simon, Simon, 153.
Fitz-Walter, Robert, 129.
Fitz-Walter, the Lord, 316.
Fitz-William, Roger, Earl of Hereford, 73.
Flanders, 21, 23, 24, 26, 30, 31, 33, 52, 100, 130, 134, 160, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 212, 213, 243, 275, 279, 294, 302, 309, 320, 323, 330, 337, 338, 341, 342, 344, 347, 412. *See* Flemings.
Flanders, the Count of, 179, 212, 213, 287, 331, 332. *See also* Baldwin, Ferrand, Philip, *and* Theobald.
Flemings, the, 98, 104, 133, 208, 225, 276, 277, 280, 318, 330, 337, 406, 409.
Flemming, David, 415, 418.
Flint Castle, 385.
Florence, Count of Holland, 183, 184.
Flote, Peter de, 217.
Fontanet, Payen de, 289.
Fontenes, the Abbey of, 478.
Fontevraud, 110, 122.
Fordham, John, Bishop of Durham and Ely. *See* Durham, *and* Ely, Bishops of.
Forets, 435.
Fosse Givold, 34, 35.
Fowey, 330.
France, 7, 11, 13, 15, 24, 29, 34, 35, 36, 48, 51, 52, 60, 63, 74, 77, 93, 99, 100, 101, 104, 105, 106, 111, 123, 124, 128, 132, 141, 142, 143, 145, 146, 152, 160, 168, 169, 177, 178, 186, 190, 191, 192, 193, 195, 201, 203, 204, 212, 216, 217, 234, 236, 239, 240, 241, 242, 244, 245, 252, 256, 258, 259, 261, 268, 269, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 287, 290, 292, 294, 296, 297, 298, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 310, 313, 314, 316, 317, 319, 329, 332, 333, 338, 343, 344, 347, 359, 361, 363, 364, 365, 366, 370, 371, 372, 373, 392, 402, 408, 417, 418, 422, 425, 433, 435, 437, 450, 452, 457, 462, 467, 482. *See* Franks, Gaul, *and* Gauls.
France, the Cardinal of, 476.
France, the Chancellor of, 487.
Francis, Saint, of Assisi, 129, 130.
Franco, Archbishop of Rouen, 11, 14, 15, 21.
Franks, *or* French, the, 3, 7, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19, 21, 23, 28, 29, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 46, 48, 50, 53, 57, 58, 60, 62, 63, 64, 74, 86, 91, 93, 94, 97, 98, 99, 101, 104, 109, 110, 113, 114, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 125, 126, 127, 129, 130, 131, 132, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 143, 145, 149, 152, 160, 163, 166, 168, 169, 177, 186, 191, 193, 196,

Franks *or* French, the—*cont.*
197, 205, 209, 213, 215, 232, 233, 236, 239, 241, 243, 256, 258, 259, 260, 261, 268, 275, 278, 279, 280, 281, 284, 286, 287, 288, 291, 294, 297, 299, 301, 302, 304, 313, 314, 318, 320, 322, 327, 328, 332, 337, 338, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 359, 392, 406, 434, 450, 455, 457, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 466, 467, 468, 469, 479, 481, 488. *See* Gauls.
Fraser, Simon. *See* Frisell.
Frederic I. Emperor of the Romans, 105.
Frederic II. the Emperor, 141, 142, 146.
French, the. *See* Franks.
Friars Carmelites, House of the, at London, 422.
Friars Jacobites, the, 244.
Friars Mendicant. *See* Mendicant Friars.
Friars Minors, the, 154, 159, 198, 394.
Friars Minors, church of the, at Oxford, 165.
Friars Preachers, the, 148, 154, 159, 247, 347, 380, 391, 446.
Friars Preachers, church of the, at London, 180.
Frisell, (or Fraser), Simon, 238.
Frisia, 10.
Fulk, Count of Anjou, 86.
Fulthorp, Roger, 356.
Furnival, the Lord de, 411.
Fyf, the Earl of, 237.

G.

Galeazzo, Lord of Milan, 313.
Galloway, 183, 273.
Galway, 152.
Gannok. *See* Glamorgan.
Gamme, David, Esquire, 467.
Garton, (?) 186.
Gascoigne, or Gascony, 139, 140, 142, 143, 147, 148, 163, 168, 169, 177, 178, 190, 192, 197, 204, 205, 214, 215, 233, 235, 239, 256, 258, 284, 285, 290, 293,
Gascoigne, or Gascony—*cont.*
296, 298, 307, 316, 317, 318, 320, 432.
Gascons, the, 261, 313, 432.
Gaucourt, the Lord de, 459.
Gaul, 80, 99, 101, 103, 129, 131, 132, 136, 138, 139, 141, 142, 148, 156, 168, 170, 172, 173, 177, 179, 190, 195, 260, 279, 292, 332, 366. *See* France.
Gaul, Celtic, 106.
Gauls, the countries so called, 8, 311.
Gauls, the people, 126, 128, 130, 149, 194, 195, 197, 209, 232, 260, 280 286, 287, 294, 298, 303, 306, 314, 316, 327, 328, 329, 337, 342, 343, 344, 356, 357, 403, 404, 409, 410, 416, 418, 421, 430, 434, 452, 459, 460, 462, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 480, 481. *See* Franks.
Gaunt, John of. *See* John of Gaunt, Lancaster, *and* Richmond.
Gaverestone, Peter de, 235, 241, 242, 243, 244, 246, 247.
Geldres (Gueldres), the Duke of, 357.
Genoa, 330.
Genoese, the, 333, 344, 470.
Gentili, Cosmo. *See* Cosmo Gentili.
Geoffrey (or Goisfrid), Count of Bretagne, 36, 40, 41, 46, 47.
Geoffrey Plantagenet, Count of Anjou, 86, 87, 88, 89, 91.
Geoffrey (of Nantes), brother of King Henry II., 93.
Geoffrey, Duke of Bretagne, son of King Henry II., 93, 95, 98, 104, 105, 107, 108, 122, 123, 126.
Geoffrey de Lizenim. *See* Lizenim.
Geoffrey, (or Goisfrid), Bishop of Coutances, 66, 74.
Gereberga, Queen, 29, 32.
Gerloc, daughter of Rollo, and sister of William I., Duke of Normandy, 13, 17.
Germany, 31, 452. *See* Almaine.
Gernecornewayle, Sir John, 474.
Geromia (? Le Groyn), the port of, 344.
Ghent, 209, 212, 213, 279, 333, 337, 340, 341, 342.

Giffard, John, 174.
Gilbert, John. *See* Hereford, the Bishops of.
Gilbert, Earl Marshal. *See* Marshal.
Gilbert, Count of Exmes, 57.
Girard, Count of Vienne, 97.
Gisla, daughter of Charles the Simple, 14, 16.
Gisorz, 93, 94, 98, 121.
Givold. *See* Fosse Givold.
Glamorgan, 151, 158, 176, 193.
Glasgow, the Bishop of, 206, 256.
Gledesmor, battle at, 271.
Gleyndor, Owen, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 397, 399, 406, 412, 416, 418, 423.
Gloucester, 90, 122, 135, 137, 150, 172, 206.
Gloucester, Gilbert de Clare, the Elder, Earl of, 154, 157, 158, 159, 163, 167, 169, 174, 176, 193, 196.
Gloucester, Gilbert de Clare, the Younger, Earl of, 196, 239, 240, 242, 243, 245, 246.
Gloucester, Hugh de Audele, Earl of, 246, 254, 274.
Gloucester, Humphrey, Duke of, 471, 486. *See* Humphrey, Prince.
Gloucester, Robert, Earl of, 90.
Gloucester, Thomas de Woodstock, Earl and Duke of, and Earl of Buckingham, 342, 346, 347, 349, 350, 353, 354, 358, 362, 364, 365, 367, 368, 372, 374, 378, 379, 382, 383, 385, 389, 390, 407. *See* Woodstock.
Gloucester, Thomas le Spencer, Earl of, 379, 390.
Gloucester, William, Earl of, 104.
Gloucester, Alianor, or Eleanor, Duchess of, 372, 389.
Gloucester, Joan, Countess of, 206, 246.
Godfrey, Duke of Lorraine, 80, 84.
Godstow, 135.
Godwin, Earl of Kent, 36, 59, 68, 69.
Goisfrid, Bishop of Coutances. *See* Geoffrey.
Goisfrid, the Knight, 63.
Goisfrid Martel. *See* Martel.
Gornai, Hugh de, father and son, of that name, 99.
Goshen, the land of, 138.
Goths, the, 6.
Gower, the Land of, 253.
Grame, the Lord de, 395.
Grauntesoun, the Lord de, 316.
Gravelines. *See* Graveningge.
Graveningge (Gravelines), 337.
Gray, Sir John, 479.
Gray, John de. *See* Norwich, Bishops of.
Grecian Sea, the, 296.
Greeks, the, 82.
Gregory V., Pope, 224.
Gregory VII., or Hildebrand, Pope, 72.
Gregory IX., Pope, 142.
Gregory X., Pope, 167, 176, 321.
Gregory XI., Pope, 328.
Gregory XII., Pope, 420, 421, 425, 426, 427, 428, 452, 455. *See* Corrario.
Grene, Master John, the King's physician, 370.
Grene, Thomas, 376, 385.
Grey, Sir Reginald, 393.
Grey, Sir Thomas, 457.
Grosteste, Robert, Bishop of Lincoln. *See* Lincoln, Bishops of.
Gualo, the Legate, 134, 135. *See* Walo.
Gubiun, Hugh, 153.
Gubonia, 241. *See* Man.
Guernsey, the Island of, 379.
Guido, King of Jerusalem, 108.
Guido, Bishop of Auxerre, 160.
Guido, Count of Abbeville, 64.
Guido, Count of Senlis, 13.
Guido of Burgundy, 60, 61.
Guido de Lizenim. *See* Lizenim.
Guilford, 134, 161.
Gummeny, the Lord de, 328.
Gunard, Archbishop of Rouen, 21.
Gunnilde, daughter of King Cnute, 44.
Gunnor, wife of Duke Richard I. of Normandy, 36.
Gurdon, the Lord de, 395.
Gurdoun, or Gurdun, Adam, 160, 161.
Gurnay, Matthew, 334.
Gurnay, Thomas, 267.
Guynes. *See* Gynes.
Gynes, (now Guynes), 371.

H.

Hacun, grandson of Earl Godwin, 68.
Hadwis, wife of Geoffrey of Bretagne, 40.
Hagr', Aduenus de, 187.
Hainault, 261, 262, 268.
Hainault, the Count of, 262, 279.
Hainaulters, the, 267.
Hakevyle, the Lord de, 459, 461.
Hales, the Abbot of, 424.
Hales, Sir Robert, 333, 335.
Hallidon, the Battle of, 272.
Hamptone (Southampton), 59, 456, 459. *See* Southampton.
Hanley, the castle of, 458.
Hardby, (now Herdby), 180.
Hardecnute, King, 44, 59, 223.
Harecourt, the Count de, 287.
Harfleur, 459, 462, 468, 469.
Haringey (near Hornsey), 354.
Harlestone, Sir John de, 329.
Harleswude, 381.
Harold I., King of England, 58, 59, 223.
Harold II., King of England, 64, 65, 68, 69.
Harold, King of Denmark, 21, 27, 28, 30, 34.
Harwich, 262.
Hasbania, 10.
Hasdans, 11.
Hasting, the Chief, 6, 8, 9, 11, 12.
Hastingges, John de, Earl of Abergavenny, 183.
Hastingges, John de, Earl of Pembroke. *See* Pembroke.
Hastings, 65, 327.
Hatfeld, Thomas de, Bishop of Durham. *See* Durham, Bishops of.
Hatfeld, William de, 274.
"Hatspore," (Hotspur), a name of Sir Henry Percy, the Younger, 344.
Haule, or Hawle, John, 338.
Haule, Robert, 328.
Hawarden, 173.
Hawisa, daughter of Duke Richard I. of Normandy.
Hawkwode, John, 315.
Hay, 152, 156.
Heden (? Hesdin), 297.
Helidone. *See* Hallidon.
Heliopolis, 138.
Helne, the river, 33.
Henry I., King of England, 82, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 187, 223. *See* Henry, Prince.
Henry II., King of England, 91, 92, 93, 94, 106, 117, 122, 181, 182, 224, 225.
Henry III., King of England, 135, 138, 140, 141, 143, 145, 146, 147, 148, 152, 153, 155, 157, 158, 159, 160, 163, 166, 167, 182, 218, 225. *See* Henry, Prince.
Henry IV., King of England, 381, 387, 388, 397, 398, 399, 417, 426, 428, 435, 437, 438. *See* Derby, Hereford, *and* Lancaster.
Henry V., King of England, 3, 437, 438, 450, 477, 484. *See* Cornwall, Henry, Prince, and Wales.
Henry, Prince, son of Henry II. (sometimes called Henry III.), 92, 93, 97, 98, 104, 181, 224, 225.
Henry, Earl of Lancaster and Leicester. *See* Lancaster and Leicester.
Henry I., King of France, 53, 57, 58, 60, 62, 63.
Henry II., Emperor of the Romans, 44.
Henry V., Emperor of the Romans, 87.
Henry VI., Emperor of the Romans, 116.
Henry, King of the Provinces beyond the Rhine, 18, 29.
Henry, King of Navarre, 168.
Henry the Bastard, of Spain, 310, 311, 312, 313, 321, 322.
Henry, Prince, son of William I., 75. *See* Henry I.
Henry, Prince, son of King John, 128, 226. *See* Henry III.
Henry, Prince, son of Edward I., 240.
Henry, son of John, Duke of Lancaster. *See* Henry IV.
Henry, Prince, son of Henry IV., 388, 423, 428, 429. *See* Cornwall, Henry V., *and* Wales.
Henry, Duke of Saxony, 105.

Henry of Almaine, son of Richard, Earl of Cornwall and King of the Romans, 150, 151, 153, 154, 155, 165, 167, 176.
Henry, son of David I. of Scotland, 223.
Henry, son of Henry, Earl of Lancaster 273. *See* Lancaster, Henry, Duke of.
Henry, Bishop of Bayeux, 17.
Henry, Bishop of Winchester, 90, 92, 95.
Henry, Master, "Plebanus plebis," 187.
Herbert, Count, 18, 19.
Hercle, Sir Andrew, 255, 256, 257.
Hereford, 149, 157, 158, 264, 283, 439.
Hereford, Humphrey de Boun (1), Earl of, 150, 152, 154.
Hereford, Humphrey de Boun (2), Earl of, 175.
Hereford and Essex, Humphrey de Boun (3), Earl of, 206, 209, 210, 211, 214, 240, 246, 253, 254.
Hereford, Humphrey de Boun (4), Earl of, 314, 388.
Hereford, Henry, Duke of, 378, 379, 383, 384. *See* Derby, Henry IV., *and* Lancaster.
Hereford, Peter, Bishop of 150; Thomas de Cautilupe, Bishop of, 178; the Bishop of, 253, 262; John Gilbert, Bishop of, 347; the Bishop of 386, 452. *See* Robert.
Hereford. *See* Fitz-Osbern, *and* Fitz-William, Earls of.
Hereward, 72.
Herlouin, Abbot, 80.
Herlouin, Count, 21, 22, 28.
Hermondville, 34.
Herod, 375.
Hertford, 133, 449.
Hervey, Bishop of Ely, 85.
Heselwode, 424.
Hexham, 200.
Heyle, the Lord de, 437.
Heywurth, William de, Abbot of St. Alban's, 392.
Hieronymus (Jerome), Saint, 442.
Hildebrand, or Gregory VII., Pope. *See* Gregory VII.
Hispanus, Peter, Cardinal, 239, 276.
Hog, Thomas, 328.
Hogue, La, 285.
Holdernesse, 147. *See* Albamarle, William de.
Holland, 183, 184, 412.
Holland (in England), 147.
Holland, the Count of, 240. *See* Florence, Count of.
Holland, the Duke of, 470.
Holland, Edmund, Earl of Kent. *See* Kent.
Holland, Sir John, 332, 341, 357. *See* Exeter, *and* Huntingdon.
Holt, 355, 356.
Holt, Sir John de, 350, 356.
Holy Land, the, 108, 143, 145, 146, 147, 163, 164, 166, 175, 185, 236.
Holy Sepulchre, the. *See* Sepulchre.
Honfleur, 305.
Horace, the Poet, quoted, 381.
Hospital, the Master of the, in Portugal, 342.
Hospital of France, Hugh, Prior of the, 287.
Hospitallers, the, 87, 114, 143, 144, 258.
Hostele, Thomas de 159.
Hotspur. See Hatspore.
Hovedene, Roger de, 181.
Hubert, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Hubert, Count of Morienne, 97.
Hugh the Great, Duke, 19, 21, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 36.
Hugh (Capet), King of France, 31, 36.
Hugh, Count of Chalons, 48, 49.
Hugh, Count of Maine, 44.
Hugh, Bishop of Bayeux, 52.
Hugh, Bishop of Chester. *See* Chester, Bishops of.
Hugh, Bishop of Lisieux. *See* Lisieux.
Hugh, the boy so called, 147.
Hull, 295.
Humber, the King, 221.
Humber, the river, 221.
Humphrey, son of Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, 389.

Humphrey, Prince, son of Henry IV., 388. *See* Gloucester.
Hunewald, a tributary King, 222.
Hungary, 452.
Huns, the, 221.
Huntingdon, 108, 152.
Huntingdon, William de Clinton, Earl of, 274.
Huntingdon, John Holland, Earl of, 358, 372, 375, 377, 378, 389, 390. *See* Exeter, *and* Holland.
Huntingdon, (John), Earl of, 479, 488.
Huntingdon. *See* Angouleme, Guychard de.
Huntingdone, Henry de, 181.
Husce, Galeys de la, 289.
Huys, the Count de, 432.

I.

Icklingham (spelt Ixingam), 73.
Inchill (? Ruchill), the tributary King, 222.
India, 125.
Ingelram, Count of Abbeville, 58.
Ingelram de Courcy. *See* Courcy.
Ingham, Sir Oliver de, 261, 278.
Innocent III., Pope, 125, 128, 129, 131, 133, 143, 145.
Innocent IV., Pope, 146.
Innocent VII., Pope, 412, 419.
Ireland, *and* Irish, 3, 95, 96, 97, 107, 108, 122, 129, 130, 131, 140, 144, 148, 201, 202, 220, 242, 246, 247, 251, 264, 265, 269, 342, 346, 365, 366, 367, 368, 374, 381, 383, 385, 388, 389.
Ireland, Robert de Veer, Duke of, 345, 346, 347, 349, 352, 353, 354, 364, 406. *See* Dublin, Marquis of, *and* Oxford, Earl of.
Iricius, King of Scotland, 222.
Iron Bridge, the, 79.
Ironside, Bier. *See* Bier.
Ironside, Edmund. *See* Edmund Ironside.
Isabel, or Isabella, of Angouleme, wife of King John, 123, 135, 138.
Isabel, or Isabella, Queen, wife of Edward II., 241, 244, 261, 265, 268, 276.
Isabel, or Isabella, Queen, wife of Richard II., 392, 404.
Isabel, or Isabella, Princess, sister of Henry III.. 141, 144.
Isabel, or Isabella, Princess, daughter of Edward III., 309, 349.
Isabel, or Isabella, Duchess of York, 366.
Isabel, or Isabella, daughter of William Marshal, 137.
Isles, Malkerius, King of the, 222.
Italy, 282, 315.
Italians, the, 144.

J.

Jacob, a tributary King, 222.
James, Bishop of Avignon, 245. *See* John XXII.
Jerome, Saint. *See* Hieronymus.
Jersey, the island of, 54.
Jerusalem, 55, 78, 84, 85, 86, 91, 94, 97, 105, 106, 109, 112, 114, 120, 137, 144, 164, 389, 392.
Jerusalem, Antony Bek, Patriarch of, 236. *See* Durham, Bishops of.
Jerusalem. *See* Guido, King of.
Jesus Christ, the name of, 369, 396, 474. *See* Christ.
Jeu Fosse. *See* Fosse Givold.
Jewry, the, at Lincoln, 162.
Jews, the, 147, 172, 178, 179, 252, 477.
Joan, or Joanna, Queen of Scotland, 269.
Joan, or Joanna, of Acres, daughter of Edward I., wife of Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester, 196, 240.
Joan, or Joanna, Princess, mother of Richard II., 341. *See* Kent, *and* Wales.
Joan, or Joanna, daughter of Charles, brother of the King of France, 196.
Jocelin, Bishop of Bath. *See* Bath, Bishops of.
John of Beverley, Saint, 222.

John, King of England, 107, 108, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 133, 134, 135, 136, 144, 182, 225, 226.
John XXII., Pope, 248, 249. *See* James.
John XXIII., Pope, 452, 453, 454. *See* Balthazar.
John II., King of France, 296, 302, 305, 307, 308, 313.
John, King of Scotland. *See* Balliol, John de.
John, King of Jerusalem, and Duke of Austria, 137.
John, son of Edward I., 168, 240.
John of Eltham, Prince, son of Edward II., Earl of Cornwall, 248, 262, 274, 269.
John of Gaunt, 279. *See* Lancaster, *and* Richmond.
John, Prince, son of Henry IV., 388, 413.
John, Count of Mortaigne. *See* John, King of England.
John, Duke of Brabant. *See* Brabant.
John, Duke of Bretagne, 281.
John, Duke of Burgundy. *See* Burgundy.
John, Count of Hainault, 262.
John, Bishop of Avranches, 66.
John, Bishop of Rochester. *See* Rochester, John, Bishop of.
John, brother of the Earl Marshal, 233.
John, son of the King of France, 434.
John of Bridlington, Saint, 405, 406.
Joppa, 113, 146, 165.
Jormayle, the Abbot of, 487.
"Jubenensis," the title of a Cardinalate, 328.
Judith, wife of Duke Richard II., 46, 58.
Juliak, 296.
Juliers, the Count of, 279.
Jumièges, 7, 10, 19, 20, 21, 23, 66.
Juny, the Count de, 298.

K.

Kalverlee, Hugh de. *See* Calverlee.
Karkason, 296. *See* Carcasonne.
Katringtone, Thomas, 321, 331.
Kaus (Caux), the Isle of, 315. *See also* Caus.
Katharine, Duchess of Lancaster. *See* Lancaster, *and* Swynford.
Kemeseye, 159.
Kemperle, 321.
Kenilworth, 158, 159, 162, 173, 264 ,265, 471.
Kenneth. *See* Kinadius.
Kennington, 325, 440.
Kent, 42, 138, 140, 141, 411.
Kent, Godwin, Earl of. *See* Godwin.
Kent, Edmund of Woodstock, Earl of. *See* Edmund.
Kent, Edmund Holland, Earl of, 419, 425.
Kent, Thomas Holland, Earl of, 375, 377, 378, 389.
Kent, Joan, or Joanna, Countess of, 307. *See* Joan, Princess, *and* Wales.
Keuth, William, 272.
Kilwardby, Robert de. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Kinadius (Kenneth), King of Scotland, 181, 222.
Kingston (on Thames), 151.
Kirk Liston. *See* Temple Histon.
Knollis, Sir Robert, 311, 312, 316, 332, 422. *See* Cnollis.
Ky de Caus (Chef de Caux), 459.
Kyme, the Earl of, 433, 486.
Kyndertone, the Baron de, 402.

L

La Dam (Damme), 341, 342. *See* Damme.
La Marche, Charles, Count of, 256. *See* Charles IV., of France.
La Reole, 258.
La Souche, Alan, 164, 197.
La Zouche, Sir William. *See* Zouche.
"Lackland," a name of King John, 122.
Lacman, King of Sweden, 43, 45.
Lacok, the Abbess of, 145.
Lacy, Henry de. *See* Lincoln.
Lacy, Walter de, 74.
Ladunano, Geoffrey de, 124, 131.
Lambert, brother of Count Herlouin, 28.
Lambeth, 468, 470.
Lampader Vaur 172, 173.
Lancaster, 250, 257, 285.

Lancaster and Leicester, Edmund, Earl of, 167, 197.
Lancaster, Henry, Earl of, and Lord of Monmouth, 168, 264, 266, 285. *See* Leicester.
Lancaster, Henry, Duke of, 294, 295, 296, 302, 303. *See* Henry.
Lancaster, Henry, Duke of, 384, 385, 386. *See* Derby, Henry IV., *and* Hereford.
Lancaster, John of Gaunt, Duke of, 311, 312, 314, 317, 318, 319, 320, 327, 338, 339, 340, 347, 360, 362, 363, 365, 366, 373, 372, 373, 380, 381. *See* John, *and* Richmond.
Lancaster, Thomas, Earl of, 168, 244, 245, 249, 250, 253, 254, 255, 267, 273.
Lancaster, Blanche, Duchess of, 315. *See* Blanche.
Lancaster, Constance, Duchess of, 366.
Lancaster, Katharine, Duchess of, 372. *See* Swynford.
Lancecrona, 349.
Landaff, the Bishop of, 380; Thomas Peverelle, Bishop of, 423.
Landric, Count of Nivernois, 48.
Lanfranc, Abbot of Bec, and Archbishop of Canterbury, 71, 73, 76, 80.
Langetone, Stephen de, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Langham, Simon de, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Langley, 244, 247, 281, 366, 370, 391, 395, 445.
Langley, Edmund of, 309. *See* Cambridge, *and* York.
Lantilowhyr, 174.
Laodicea, 79.
Laon, 18, 19, 25, 29, 33, 35.
Lateran, 81.
Lateran, Council of, 133, 134.
Latimer, Thomas, 368.
Latimer, William, Lord, 308.
Latimer, William, 322, 324, 348.
Laune, the Prior of, 393.
Laverna, 403.
Laycock. *See* Lacok.
Le Mans, 45, 63, 72, 82, 83, 91, 104, 109, 123.
Le Puy, 156.
Le Sclus (Sluys), 341. *See* Sluys.
Le Scrop. *See* Scrop.
Le Spencer, Sir Hugh, 287.
Le Spencer, Henry, Bishop of Norwich. *See* Norwich, Bishops of.
Le Spencer, the Lord, 321.
Le Spencer, Thomas, Earl of Gloucester. *See* Gloucester.
Leedes, the castle of, 440.
Leiborne, or Leyborne, Roger de, 153, 155.
Leicester, 251, 285, 295, 450.
Leicester, the Earldom of, 142.
Leicester, Edmund, Earl of. *See* Lancaster and Leicester.
Leicester, Henry, Earl of, 262. *See* Lancaster.
Leicester, Robert, Earl of, 99, 103.
Leicester, Simon de Montfort, Earl of. *See* Montfort.
Leicester, the Countess of, 170.
Lekherlewyn, 28.
Lemustre, the Isle of, 356.
Leon, 343.
Leopold, Duke of Austria, 115, 117, 119.
L'Estrange, Hamon, 155.
Lettowe. *See* Lithuania.
Lewenes (? Lothian), the Earl of, 198.
Lewes, 153.
Leyacer, the Lord de, 289.
Leyborne, Roger de. *See* Leiborne.
Leyburne, the Lord de, 288.
Leyre (Loire), the river, 298. *See* Loire.
Liege, 167.
Liege, the Bishop of, 426.
Limelie (? Limerick), the Chief of, 95.
Limoges, 8, 122, 316.
Limoges, the Vicomte de, 124.
Limosyn, 111, 298.
Lincoln, 89, 91, 121, 123, 135, 136, 138, 147, 162, 182, 225, 230, 248, 295, 370.
Lincoln, Robert Bloet, Bishop of, 77; the Bishop of, 89; Robert Grosteste, Bishop of, 147, 262, 301; Henry Beaufort, Bishop of, 380.
Lincoln, Henry de Lacy, Earl of, 146, 190, 197.

Lincoln, John, 356.
Lionel, Prince, 277. *See* Clarence, *and* Ulster.
Lions le Foret, 88.
Liounes, Richard, 323.
Lisieux, 126.
Lisieux, Hugh, Bishop of, 39, 66; the Bishop of, 486.
Lismore, the Bishop of, 95.
Lisyngham, 290, 291.
Litchfield, the Bishop of, 236, 475. *See* Chester, *and* Coventry.
Lithuania (Lettowe), 361, 392.
Litselina, daughter of Turketil, wife of William, Count of Exmes, 39.
Little Hall, the, at Westminster, 118.
Lituis (? Lectoure), 8.
Lizenim, Geoffrey de, 148.
Lizenim, Guido de, 148, 154.
Liziniac, the castle of, 320.
Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, 147, 149, 151, 152, 155, 158, 163, 169, 170, 172, 173 174, 175, 193, 240.
Llewelyn Bren. *See* Bren.
Lochmaben, the castle of, 214.
Locrinus, 221.
Loegria, 221.
Loire, the river, 8, 131. *See* Leyre.
Loktone, John, 352.
Lollards, the, 325, 348, 359, 367, 368, 370 390, 391, 395, 396, 429, 438, 439, 446, 447, 448, 458, 459, 472, 482, 483, 484.
Lombards, the, 276, 309.
Lombardy, 71, 80, 234, 283, 306, 315.
London, 41, 42, 43, 44, 59, 65, 89, 90, 103, 111, 129, 133, 134, 135, 137, 141, 150, 151, 156, 160, 163, 167, 169, 174, 175, 177, 178, 179, 180, 192, 203, 206, 209, 215, 235, 236, 242, 243, 247, 248, 250, 251, 253, 254, 257, 258, 259, 260, 262, 263, 265, 268, 270, 271, 273, 274, 277, 280, 282, 294, 300, 301, 305, 306, 307, 309, 314, 315, 317, 319, 322, 324, 328, 329, 331, 335, 336, 338, 342, 345, 346, 354, 355, 356, 360, 362, 363, 364, 365, 368, 373, 375, 377, 381, 386, 388, 389, 390, 391, 394, 397, 404, 408, 412, 417, 418, 421, 422, 423, 424, 426, 428, 432,
London—*cont.*
434, 437, 438, 439, 441, 443, 447, 448, 452, 456, 458, 459, 467, 468, 470, 471 483, 485.
London, William, Bishop of, 128, 132; Richard, Bishop of, 190; the Bishop of, 325; Robert Braybrok, Bishop of, 336; the Bishop of, 353, 367, 368, 369; Roger de Walden, Bishop of, 417; Nicholas Bobwith, Bishop of, 417; Richard de Clifford, Bishop of, 423, 441; the Bishop of, 475, 476. *See* Mauritius.
London Bridge, 257, 263, 424.
London, the Tower of, 155.
Londoners, the 152, 154, 155, 248, 262, 263, 304, 308, 325, 330, 344, 350, 364, 468.
Longapetentis Villa, 15.
Longaret, William de, 193.
Longe, William, 432.
Long Neck, Rainier. *See* Rainier.
Longsword, William, Duke of Normandy. *See* William Longsword.
Longsword, William, Earl of Salisbury, 130, 132, 133, 139, 141, 143, 145.
Lord's footstep, the, 145.
Lorraine, the Duke of, 287. *See* Godfrey.
Losdunum, 92.
Lothaire, King of France, 19, 30, 32, 35.
Lothbroc, King, 6.
Lothian, the County of, 92. *See* Lewenes.
Lothian, the Earl of, 210.
Louis I., King of France, 18, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31.
Louis IV., King of France, 23.
Louis VII., King of France, 91, 97, 98, 99, 104, 105, 106.
Louis VIII., King of France, 139, 140, 148. *See* Louis, Prince.
Louis IX., King of France, or Saint Louis, 140, 143, 146, 152, 160, 163, 164, 166.
Louis, Duke of Bavaria, 275, 281.
Louis, Prince, of France, 123, 130, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137. *See* Louis VIII.
Louvain, 86, 364, 370, 406.
Louvain, the University of, 425.
Louviers, 121, 487.
Lucan, the poet, quoted, 400, 424.
Lucius, Pope, 90.

Lucy, Sir Antony de, 257.
Lucy, Sir Thomas de, 285.
Ludlow, 156.
Luke, the Gospel of Saint, quoted, 25.
Luna, Peter de, 452, 455. *See* Benedict XIII.
Lundi, Richard de, 206.
Luneros, 305.
Lutetia, 8, 18. *See* Paris.
Lyle, John de, Bishop of Ely. *See* Ely, Bishops of.
Lynn, 419, 420.
Lyons, 82, 145, 235, 238.
Lyons, Council at, 144.

M.

Madoc, of Wales, 192, 194.
Maine, 63, 93, 102, 110, 126. *See* Hugh, Count of.
Majorcas, the, 309.
Majorcas, the King of the, 287.
Malcolm III., King of Scotland, son of the King of the Cumbrians, 72, 181, 223.
Malcolm IV., King of Scotland, 85, 92, 94, 105.
Malcolm, King of the Cumbrians, 222, 223.
Malcolm III., the two sons of, 181.
Malendrini, the, 453.
Malestreyt, the Priory of, 281.
Malkerius. *See* Isles.
Malmesbury, William of, 181.
Malvern, 458.
Man, the Isle of, 241, 365, 378. *See* Eubonia, *and* Gubonia.
Man, the King of, 283.
Mandeville, William de, 159.
Manfred, 160.
Manny, Sir Walter, 279.
Mansel, Thomas, 153.
Mansourah, the Battle of, 145.
Mante, 75, 121.
Manuel, Emperor of Constantinople, 105.
Mapes, Walter, 121.
Mar, the Earl of, 198.
Marcadeus, 120.
March of Scotland the, 104, 363, 399.
March of Wales, the, 157, 253, 257.
March, Edmund de Mortimer, Earl of, 412, 462.
March, Patrick de Dunbar, Earl of. *See* Dunbar.
March, Roger de Mortimer, Earl of, 269, 270. *See* Mortimer, Roger de, the Younger.
March, Roger, Earl of, 297.
March, Roger, Earl of, 367, 381.
Marchal, John, 263.
Marche, the Count of. *See* Broun.
Margaret, Queen, second wife of Edward I., 216, 217, 240.
Margaret, Queen of Scotland, wife of Alexander III., 179, 182, 187.
Margaret, Princess, daughter of Edward I., 240.
Margaret, Princess, daughter of Edward III., 288.
Margaret, daughter of Alexander III., King of Scotland, 179, 218.
Margaret, grand-daughter of King Alexander III., 179, 188, 226.
Margaret, daughter of Louis VII., King of France, 93.
Marianus Scotus, the Historian, 181.
Marlborough, 164.
Marmioun, Philip, 153.
Marra, 83.
Mars, the god, 28, 56, 403, 406, 409, 469, 481.
Marseilles, 267.
Marshal, the Earl, 262.
Marshal, Gilbert, Earl, 141.
Marshal, Richard, Earl, 140.
Marshal, Roger, Earl, 206, 209, 210, 211, 214, 233.
Marshal, Thomas de Mounbray, Earl, 375, 377, 378, 412, 413, 414, 415, 462, 479. *See* Mounbray, Nottingham, *and* Norfolk.
Marshal, William, Earl, 135, 137.
Martel, Goisfrid, or Geoffrey, Count of Anjou, 33, 61, 62, 63.
Martial, the Poet, quoted, 411.
Martin, Saint, 119.
Martin IV., Pope, 176.
Martin V., Pope, 476. *See* Colonna, Cardinal.
Martin, Abbot of St. Cyprian's, 20.

Martin, Master, 144.
Martinus (Polonus), the Chronicler, 156.
Mary, Saint, the Virgin, 13, 248, 310, 388, 403, 419.
Mary Magdalen, Saint, 396.
Mary, Princess, daughter of Edward I., 240.
Mary, Princess, daughter of Edward III., 284.
Matilda, or Matildis, Queen, wife of William the Conqueror, 62, 70, 75.
Matilda, or Matildis, Queen, wife of Henry I., 85, 86.
Matilda, or Matildis, the Empress, daughter of Henry I., 87, 88, 90, 92, 223, 224.
Matilda, or Matildis, daughter of Duke Richard I. of Normandy, 36, 44.
Matthew, Count of Boulogne, 100.
Mauclerk, Peter, 126.
Mauger, Archbishop of Rouen, 58, 62.
Mauger, son of Duke Richard I. of Normandy, 36.
Mauger, Bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester, Bishops of.
Maule, the Lord de, 288.
Mauleon, 239.
Mauleon, Savaric de, 139.
Maurilius, Archbishop of Rouen, 62, 66.
Mauritius, Bishop of London, 84.
Mauritius, Bishop of Paris, 120.
Mauron, 294.
Mautravers, Sir John, 267.
Mautrevers, the Lord de, 479.
Mayence, 210.
Maylgon, the Welchman, 193.
Medway, the river, 422.
Meerk, the castle of, 328.
Meleyn, the Viscount de, 371.
Melkesham, 143.
Mellende, the municipality of, 12.
Mellent. *See* Waleran, Count of.
Melros, the Monastery of, 341.
Melros, the Abbot of, 196.
Melun, 47. *See* Burchard, Count of.
Mendicant Friars, the, 148, 301, 320, 418, 448.
Menstrewurthe, Sir Thomas, 316.
Menteth, the Earl of, 198, 207.
Menwald, or Mirmaude, the castle of, 49.
Meredith, 174, 178, 185.
Merlin, the Prophet, 125, 136, 166, 173.
Merlow, William de, 120.
Messiat, the castle of, 116.
Messina, 111.
Meux (Meaux), the Bishop of, 486.
Michael, Abbot of Saint Alban's, 281.
Middelton, Gilbert de, 249, 250.
Milan, 313, 315.
Milan, the Lord of, 419. *See* Galeazzo.
Mildenhall, 336.
Milford, the port of, 416.
Minehead, 160.
Mirabel, the castle of, 92.
Mirmaude, the castle of. *See* Menwald.
Mitford, the castle of, 250.
Mitford, Richard de, 356. *See* Salisbury, the Bishops of.
Mone, Guido de, Bishop of St. David's. *See* St. David's, Bishops of.
Monemuth, John de, 193.
Monmouth, 158.
Monmouth, Sir Henry of Lancaster, Lord of, 168.
Mont Colun, 88.
Montacute, John de, 348, 368. *See* Salisbury.
Montacute, Sir William de, 270. *See* Salisbury.
Montargis, House of the Sisters of the Order of Preachers at, 170.
Monte Favenza, Bernard de, 276.
Montferand, 97.
Montfort, Emeric de, 170, 173.
Montfort, Guido de, 160, 165, 167, 168, 176.
Montfort, Henry de, 153, 159.
Montfort, Hugh de, 56, 66.
Montfort, John de, 281, 308, 329, 330.
Montfort, Peter de, 159.
Montfort, Philip de. *See* Bretagne.
Montfort, Simon de, the Elder, 128, 142.
Montfort, Simon de, Earl of Leicester, 142, 150, 151, 152, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 172, 218, 240.
Montfort, Simon de, the Younger, 153, 158, 161.
Montgomery, 156.
Montgomery, the Baron, 395.

Montpelier, the University of, 425.
Montreuil, 21, 28, 91.
Moot, John, Abbot of St. Alban's, 373, 392.
Moray, Andrew de, 206.
Moray, Thomas Rondolf, Earl of, 256, 274.
Moray, the Earl of, 395.
Morcar, Earl, 71, 76.
Mordun, 139.
Moreal, kinsman of Robert de Mowbray, 78.
Morgan, the Welchman, 193.
Morienne. *See* Hubert, Count of.
Morini, the, 344.
Morpath, 249.
Mortaigne, 122.
Mortaigne, Stephen, Count of, 89. *See* Stephen, King.
Mortaigne. *See* John, *and* William, Counts of.
Mortemer, in Normandy, 63 ; the Monastery of, 88.
Mortimer, Edmund de, 174.
Mortimer, Edmund de, 394, 397, 399. *See* March.
Mortimer, Roger de, 152, 153, 155, 156, 158, 159, 173.
Mortimer, Roger de, the Elder, 253, 254, 259.
Mortimer, Roger de, the Younger, 253, 254, 259, 261, 262, 263, 264, 268. *See* March.
Moses, 76.
Mounbray (or ? Mouubray), the Lord de, 288.
Mounbray, Sir John de, 253.
Mounbray, Thomas, Earl of Nottingham, 327. *See* Marshal, Norfolk, *and* Nottingham.
Mount St. Michael. *See* Saint Michael.
Mountbillard, the Count de, 287.
Mountfort, John, Duke of Bretagne, 321.
Mowbray, Robert de, Earl of Northumberland, 78.
Moynhermer, Ralph de, 206, 240, 246.
Mucheldevere, Thomas de, 264.
Munchensy, William de, 154, 178.
Muntaban, the Lord de, 289.
Murlee, William, 448.
Murley, Sir Robert, 279.
Murley, Sir Robert, 441, 442.
Murrone, Peter de, 193. *See* Cœlestinus V.
Musgrave, the Lord de, 288.
Mytford, J. de, Bishop of Chichester. *See* Chichester, Bishops of.
Mytone, the Battle of, 252.

N.

Najara. *See* Nazar.
Nantes, 7, 95 (93, given as "Rennes.")
Naples, 338, 360, 422.
Naples, the King of, 422.
Narbonne, 156, 296.
Naso, 377, 457. *See* Ovid.
Navarre, 168, 241, 245, 311.
Navarre, Theobald, King, of, 141.
Navarre. *See* Sancho VI.
Navarre, the King of, mentioned, 164, 302, 328, 365, 432.
Navarre, the Queen of, 168.
Navarri, the, 108.
Nazar (Najara), the river, 312.
Neel, or Nigel, 40.
Neot, the Priest, 175.
Nepi, the city of, 205.
Neptune, 362, 390.
Nerbon. *See* Narbonne.
Neustria, 4, 5, 7, 62, 88, 302, 436, 482.
Nevile, the Lord de, 479.
Neville, Alexander de, Archbishop of York. *See* St. Andrew's, *and* York, Archbishops of.
Neville, Hugh de, 130.
Nevyle, Robert de, 233.
Nevyle, William, 348.
Nevyle, the Lord de, 285, 288.
Nevyle, the Lord, 379.
New Forest, the, 82, 84.
New Sarum, 138, 141.
New Temple, at London, the, 167.
Newark, 134.
Newcastle-on-Tyne , 92, 189, 190, 244, 273, 339, 357.
Newintone, Robert de, 153.

Newmarket, 365.
Newmarket, Adam de, 153.
Newport, 337.
Nicæa, 56, 79.
Nigel, brother of Robert le Brus, 238.
Nivernois. *See* Landric, Count of.
Noah, 108.
Nonancourt, 88.
Norfolk, 133, 369.
Norfolk, Thomas de Mounbray, Duke of, 378, 379, 380, 381, 388. *See* Marshal, Mounbray, *and* Nottingham.
Norfolk, the Countess and Duchess of, 379.
Norfolk, Robert, Earl of. *See* Bigod.
Norham, 180, 182, 183, 185.
Normandy, 3, 4, 13, 14, 16, 17, 20, 21, 23, 27, 29, 30, 33, 37, 38, 39, 41, 43, 48, 50, 53, 54, 59, 63, 64, 66, 67, 68, 70, 73, 74, 75, 77, 79, 80, 82, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 93, 95, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 104, 105, 110, 118, 122, 123, 124, 125, 149, 168, 172, 182, 195, 225, 261, 285, 328, 347, 459, 477, 483, 86.
Normans, the, 4, 15, 24, 25, 30, 31, 32, 35, 42, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 52, 57, 61, 62, 63, 66, 68, 69, 70, 76, 80, 91, 94, 122, 126, 186, 279, 286, 303, 342, 410. *See* Northmen.
Northampton, 141, 153, 163, 333, 472.
Northampton, William de Boun, Earl of, 274, 286, 287, 297.
Northampton, Simon, Earl of. *See* Simon.
Northmannia, 14.
Northmen, the, 7, 12. *See* Normans.
Northumberland, 77, 224, 228, 245, 247, 288, 362, 392.
Northumberland, Henry Percy, Earl of, 327, 329, 332, 340, 353, 363, 372, 384, 385, 395, 399, 402, 404, 407, 413, 415, 418, 423.
Northumberland, Henry Percy, the Younger, Earl of, 450.
Northumberland, Robert de Mowbray, Earl of. *See* Mowbray.
Northumbrians, the, 70, 181, 246, 249.
Norway, 181, 186, 187, 189, 362, 415, 417.
Norway, the King of, 179. *See* Eric.
Norwich, 166, 419, 438.
Norwich, John de Gray, Bishop of, 127 the Bishop of, 260; William, Bishop of, 294; Henry le Spencer, Bishop of, 331, 336, 338, 342, 360, 419; Alexander, Bishop of, 419, 438; Richard de Courtney, Bishop of, 438, 450, 452, 461; John Wakering, Bishop of, 461, 475.
Norwich, Geoffrey de, 129.
Nottingham, 153, 275, 323, 349, 350, 356, 364, 375.
Nottingham, Thomas Mounbray, Earl of, 347, 363, 367, 372. *See* Marshal, Mounbray, *and* Norfolk.
Noyon, 7, 8.
Nully Levesque, the castle of, 486.
Nyveres, the Count de, 287.

O.

Odiham, 301.
Odo, Bishop of Bayeux, 66, 70, 74, 75.
Odo, Count of Champagne, 78.
Odo, Count of Chartres, 36, 44, 45, 46.
Odo, brother of Henry I., King of France, 62, 63.
Oggill, Robert, 285.
Ogiva, 18.
Olaf, King of Norway, 43, 45, 46.
Old Man of the Mountain, the, 115.
Old Sarum, 138.
Oldcastle, Sir John, 439, 440, 441, 443, 444, 445, 449, 458, 471, 482, 483. *See* Cobham.
Oleron, the Isle of. *See* Olorum.
Olifardi, William, 235.
Olne, the river, 60.
Olorum (now Oleron), the Isle of, 357.
Olum, the Isle of, 357.
Orcus, 28.
Orkeney, the Earl of, 395, 418.
Orkneys, the, 177.
Orleans, 8, 304.
Orleans, the University of, 425.
Orleans, the Duke of, 371, 421, 425.
Orleans, Charles, Duke of, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 450, 467.
Ormesby, William de, 203, 205.
Ormond, the Earl of, 269.

Orrey, the castle of, 321.
Orvieto, 167.
Osbern, 57.
Oseney, the Abbey of, 141.
Osmund, tutor of Duke Richard, 25.
Oswald, Bishop, 135.
Otho, the Emperor, 132.
Otho, King of the Provinces beyond the Rhine, 29, 30; Emperor of the Germans, 31.
Otho, Duke of Austria, 277.
Otho, Duke of Saxony, 127, 128.
Otto, Cardinal and Legate, 141, 142.
Ottoboni, Cardinal and Legate, 160, 163.
Ouche, the castle of, 62.
Our Lady of Peace, Chapel of, 372.
Ovid, the poet, quoted, 377, 457, 480, 482. *See* Naso.
Owen, brother of Prince Llewelyn, 171.
Oxford, 90, 94, 121, 139, 141, 148, 150, 152, 294, 301, 412, 425, 432.
Oxford, Aubrey de Veer, Earl of, 365.
Oxford, (John de Veer), Earl of, 296.
Oxford, (Robert de Veer), Earl of, 158.
Oxford, Robert de Veer, Earl of, 342, 345, 370. *See* Dublin, *and* Ireland.
Oxford, the Countess of, 406.

P.

Palestrina (Præneste), 215.
Palestrina (Præneste), James, Bishop of, 142.
Pallas, 403.
Pandulph, the Legate, 130, 131, 138.
Paphos, 112.
Papia, wife of Duke Richard II., 58.
Paris, the city of, 8, 11, 12, 13, 18, 30, 93, 108, 114, 120, 124, 130, 134, 146, 152, 177, 213, 234, 245, 286, 296, 303, 305, 308, 318, 319, 322, 333, 359, 406, 433, 434, 486, 488.
Paris, the Provost of, 487.
Paris, the University of, 425.
Parisians, the, 434.
Parisii, Lutetia of the, 8.
Passy, 98.
Patrington, Stephen de, Bishop of St. David's. *See* St. David's, Bishops of.
Paul, Saint, the Apostle, 419.
Paulini, family of the, at Rome, 477.
Paunsevout, Grimbald, 153.
Pay, Henry, 416, 421.
Pecham, John. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Pedro, King of Castille and Leon, 310, 312, 313, 318, 335, 343, 366.
Pelvestone, Thomas de, 154.
Pembroke, 157.
Pembroke, Aymer de Valence, Earl of, 196, 237, 238, 239, 259.
Pembroke, William de Valence, Earl of, 153, 175, 196. *See* Valence.
Pembroke, Sir John de Hastingges, Earl of, 318, 321, 360.
Penarche, 403.
Penrith, 218, 285, 332.
Percey, Henry, 153.
Perche, 94, 435.
Perches, Thomas, Count de, 137.
Percy, Henry de, 206, 237.
Percy (Henry), the Lord de, 285, 288.
Percy, Henry, Earl of Northumberland. *See* Northumberland.
Percy, Sir Henry, the Younger (Hotspur), 344, 357, 365, 384, 395, 398, 399, 400, 401. *See* Hotspur.
Percy, Henry, the Younger, Earl of Northumberland. *See* Northumberland.
Percy, Ralph, 357.
Percy, Sir Thomas, 320, 329, 330, 332, 365, 379. *See* Worcester.
Percy, the family of, 424.
Pererys, Alice, 322, 323, 324, 327.
Perigord, 298.
Peronne, 18.
Pershore, 458.
Persius, the Poet, quoted, 465.
Perth. *See* St. John.
Perugia, 156, 235.
Peter, Saint, the Apostle, 71, 130, 219, 419, 444, 474.
Peter, Bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford, Bishops of.
Peter, Bishop of Winchester. *See* Winchester, Bishops of.
Peter, Duke of Bretagne, 140.

Peter Hispanus. *See* Hispanus.
Peter Fitz-Basil, 122.
Pevensey, 65, 154.
Peytou, 298. *See* Poitou.
Peyteres, 298. *See* Poitiers.
Peverelle, Thomas, Bishop of Landaff and Worcester. *See* Landaff, *and* Worcester, Bishops of.
Pharphar, the river, 79.
Philibert, Saint, 7.
Philip I., King of France, 64, 74, 77.
Philip II., or Philip Augustus, King of France, 106, 112, 118, 119, 120, 122, 124, 125, 126, 127, 129, 130, 131, 134, 138, 139, 148.
Philip III., King of France, 168, 169.
Philip IV., King of France, 186, 190, 191, 205, 236, 240, 243, 244, 245.
Philip V., King of France, 256.
Philip VI., King of France, 268, 287, 296.
Philip, Bishop of Beauvais, 120, 125.
Philip, Count of Flanders, 100, 102, 105.
Philip, Duke of Burgundy. *See* Burgundy.
Philip, Duke of Suabia, 128.
Philip, son of John, King of France, 300, 309.
Philippa of Hainault, Queen, wife of Edward III., 262, 268, 274, 276, 277, 280, 284, 288.
Philippot, John, 328.
Picards, the, 344.
Picardy, 302.
Picquigny, 22.
Picts, the, 108.
Pilate, Pontius, 25, 375, 429.
Pisa, Council at, 426, 427.
Plantagenet. *See* Geoffrey.
Plessey, 374, 390.
Plumerel (now Ploermel), 294.
Plummouth. *See* Plymouth.
Plymouth, 300, 316, 403, 405.
Poictiers. *See* Poitiers.
Poitevins, the, 132.
Poitiers, or Poictiers, 8, 19, 102, 291. *See* Peyteres.
Poitiers, the Bishop of, 238.
Poitou, 7, 17, 109, 119, 120, 125, 126, 138, 139, 142, 143, 145, 435. *See* Peytou.
Poitou, William, Count of, 17, 19.
Poitou, Alfonso, Count of, 142, 143, 145.
Poitou. *See* Richard, Prince.
Pont de l'Arche, 487.
Pont Ferret, 286.
Pontefract, 255, 341, 391, 407, 408, 423, 482.
Ponthieu, 64, 172, 258, 260, 269, 313, 314.
Pontigny, the Monastery of, 128.
Pontoise, 488.
Poland (Poleyn), the King of, 361.
Poltone, Master Thomas de, 475.
Popa, 13, 16.
Poperinge, 337.
Porchester, 97, 103.
Portsmouth, 195, 209, 338.
Portua, the Bishop of, 172.
Portugal, 334, 343.
Portugal, the King of, 334, 342, 417, 468.
Portugal, the Queen of, 342.
Portuguese, the, 334, 343.
Pouile, 421.
Powyk, Master William de, 144.
Powys, 484, 485.
Prænestc. *See* Palestrina.
Pré, the monastery of, at Rouen, 88.
Pré de la Bataille, 17.
Preachers, the Friars. *See* Friars Preachers.
Preaux, William des, 114, 115.
Prendergest, Sir John, 432.
Prester John, 125.
Prestfen, 197.
Provence, 156, 252, 302.
Provence, the Count of, 141, 144, 166.
Prussia (le Pruys), 361, 362, 431.
Prussians, the, 431, 432.
Pruys. *See* Prussia.
Puiseux, 286.
Pykard, Peter, 283.
Pyleus, Cardinal of Saint Praxedes, 334.

Q.

Quillebeuf, 487.
Quintiyn, the Lord de, 289.

R.

Radinge. *See* Reading.
Radington, Baldwin de, 364.
Radnor, 152.
Radulph, or Ralph, Archbishop of Canterbury, 86.
Radulph, Ralph, or Rodulph, Torta, 27, 28, 30.
Radulph, or Ralph, Earl of the East Angles, 73, 74.
Rainald, Count of Burgundy. *See* Burgundy, Rainald, Count of.
Rainald, Duke of France, 11, 12.
Rainier Long Neck, Duke, 10.
Ramelay, the Nuns of, 200.
Rameses (in Egypt), 138.
Rancina, Geoffrey de, 119.
Ranulph, Earl of Chester, 91.
Ravensere (or Ravenspur), 384.
Reading (Radinge), 88, 106, 133, 264, 302, 472.
Reas, 290.
Rechab, 261.
Red Sea, the, 107.
Ree, (or Rhe), the Isle of, 356.
Rees, Prince of West Wales, 94.
Rees ap Meredith, 174, 178, 185.
Rees Vazhan, 175.
Reginald, Lord of Sidon, 116.
Reinier, Sub-prior of Canterbury, 127.
Remorantyn, 298.
Rennes, 53, 294. *See* Nantes.
Reygate, 134, 153.
Reymund, Count de Saint Gilles, 93, 97, 98.
Rheims, 303.
Rheims, the Archbishop of, 486.
Rheims. *See* William, Archbishop of.
Rhine, the river, 30.
Rhine, the Provinces beyond the, 18, 29.
Rhudlan, 170, 173, 174.
Richard, Prince, Duke of Acquitaine and Count of Poitou, 92, 94, 97, 98, 104, 106, 107, 109. *See* Richard I., King.
Richard I., King of England, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 120, 121, 122, 125, 182, 225. *See* Richard, Prince.
Richard of Bordeaux, Prince, son of Edward, Prince of Wales, 309, 316, 323. *See* Cornwall, Richard II., *and* Wales.
Richard II., King of England, 327, 335, 340, 370, 371, 372, 385, 386, 387, 388, 390, 393, 394, 399, 404, 406, 407, 408, 411, 421, 446, 482, 486. *See* Cornwall, Richard of Bordeaux, *and* Wales.
Richard, King of Almaine, or of the Romans, Earl of Cornwall, 148, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 157, 163, 176. *See* Cornwall.
Richard, King of the Majorcas, 309.
Richard, Duke of Burgundy, 13.
Richard I., Duke of Normandy, 17, 20, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 36, 37.
Richard II., Duke of Normandy, 36, 37, 39, 42, 43, 44, 46, 47, 48, 49, 54, 58.
Richard III., Duke of Normandy, 47, 49, 50.
Richard, Bishop of London. *See* London, Bishops of.
Richard, Earl of Cambridge. *See* Cambridge.
Richard, Earl Marshal. *See* Marshal.
Richmond (in Yorkshire), 103, 273, 288.
Richmond, John de Bretagne, Earl of, 197, 252, 255, 258, 260, 302.
Richmond, Arthur, self-styled Earl of. *See* Arthur.
Richmond, John, Earl of, 296. *See* John of Gaunt, *and* Lancaster.
Ridel, Stephen, 129.
Rievaulx, 255.
Rihulf, 17.
Risle, (or Rille), the river, 60.
Risonces, 192, 195.
Rivieres, Baldwin de, 89.
Rixtone, Master Richard, 426.
Roan, the Vicomte de, 289.
Robert I., King of Scotland. *See* Brus, Robert le.
Robert I., Duke of Normandy, formerly Rollo, 15, 16. *See* Rollo.
Robert II., Duke of Normandy, 36, 47, 49, 50, 51, 53, 56, 57, 58.

Robert II., King of France, 36, 46, 48, 50, 52, 53.
Robert II., Duke of Burgundy. *See* Burgundy.
Robert, Duke of the Franks, 15, 18.
Robert (Curthose), son of William the Conqueror, 62, 67, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 85, 88.
Robert, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Robert, Archbishop of Rouen, 46, 49, 50, 54, 55, 58, 71.
Robert, Bishop of Hereford, 78.
Robert, Count of Artois, 145.
Robert, Count of Dreux, 126, 131, 133.
Robert, Count of Exmes, 39, 49.
Robert, son of Robert, King of France, Duke of Burgundy, 48.
Robert, son of the Count of Dreux, 131, 132.
Robert, son of the Count of Flanders, 160.
Robert, Earl of Gloucester. *See* Gloucester.
Robert, Earl of Leicester. *See* Leicester.
Roche Dyrien, 290.
Rocheforde, Guido de, 289.
Rocheforde, the Lord de, 289, 308.
Rochelle, 127, 131, 139, 318, 357, 403, 421.
Roches, William des, 126.
Rochester, 133, 134, 422, 439, 440.
Rochester, John, Bishop of, 302.
Roderic, brother of Llewelyn, 171.
Rodulph, Guardian of Normandy, 23.
Rodulph, Count, brother of Duke Richard I., 37, 38, 39, 52.
Rodulph, Duke of Austria, 210.
Roger, Earl Marshal. *See* Marshal.
Roger, Abbot of St. Augustin's, at Canterbury, 105.
Rollo, 5, 11, 12, 13, 14, 149. *See* Robert I., Duke of Normandy.
Romans, the, 44, 148, 165, 192, 195, 213, 214, 338, 452.
Romans, the King of the, 470, 471.
Romans. *See* Frederic, *and* Richard.
Rome, 8, 9, 47, 71, 81, 82, 116, 117, 128, 129, 143, 160, 163, 178, 193, 194, 195, 212, 217, 219, 220, 230, 249, 251, 256,
Rome—*cont.*
282, 288, 293, 301, 302, 320, 324, 345, 362, 363, 376, 412, 419, 420, 421, 442, 443, 445, 452, 471, 472, 473, 474, 477.
Rondolf, Thomas, Earl of Moray. *See* Moray.
Ros, Robert de, 197.
Ros, William de, 183, 197.
Ros, the Earl of, 198.
Rosamund, 135.
Rothren, the Lord de, 289.
Rotingdene, 327.
Rouen, 7, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 23, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 34, 36, 38, 42, 50, 62, 88, 90, 92, 104, 107, 120, 122, 124, 125, 126, 281, 286.
Rouen, the Archbishop of, 94, 110. *See* Gunard, Mauger, Maurilius, *and* Robert, Archbishops of.
Roules, Roger de, 159.
Round Table, a, at Kenilworth, 173.
Round Table, a, built at Windsor, 282.
Round Table, a, in France, 282.
Roxburgh, 198, 200, 206, 213, 214, 233, 273, 327, 482.
Royston, 417.
Ruchill. *See* Inchill.
Ruffo, Count, 161, 176.
Rufus, William, a name of William II., 181, 223. *See* William II.
Russelle, John, 385.
Rutland, Edward, Earl of, 360, 367, 372, 375, 378.
Rye, 327.
Rypont, 125.
Ryvere, la, 296.

S.

Sabina, the Cardinal Bishop of, 156.
Saint Alban's, 3, 121, 182, 216, 253, 331, 313, 384, 412, 447, 449, 472, 483.
Saint Alban's, the Abbot of, 391, 392.
Saint Amour, Master William de, Canon of Beauvais, 147, 148.
Saint Andrew, the Apostle, the Feast of, 135, 189, 420.

Saint Andrew's, the town of, 214.
Saint Andrew's, John, Bishop of, 225 ; the Bishop of, 238 ; Alexander Nevyle, late Archbishop of York, Bishop of, 358.
Saint Andrew's Head, in Cyprus, 112.
Saint Asaph, John Trevor, Bishop of, 406.
Saint Auban, 58.
Saint Augustin's, Canterbury, 106.
Saint Austin, the Rule of, 450.
Saint Bartholomew the Apostle, the Feast of, 164, 186.
Saint Bartholomew, the Priory of the Canons of, in London, 428.
Saint Benedict, the Rule of, 450.
Saint Brice, the Day of, 244.
Saint Clement, the Day of, 419.
Saint Cler, 14, 29.
Saint Cyprian, the Monastery of, at Poitiers, 20.
Saint David's, 97.
Saint David's, Guido de Mone, Bishop of, 423 ; Stephen de Patrington, Bishop of, 450.
Saint Denis, the town and monastery of, 88, 308.
Saint Denis, the Abbot of, 487.
Saint Denis, the Feast of, 115.
Saint Dunstan, the Feast of, 438.
Saint Edmund, the Day of, 166, 264,
Saint Edmund's, Bury, 203, 209, 262, 336, 365.
Saint Edmund's, Bury, the Abbot of, 476.
Saint Edward, King and Confessor, the Feast of, 160, 379, 387, 388. *See* Edward the Confessor.
Saint Esprit, the town of, 306.
Saint Fabian and Saint Sebastian, the Feast of, 135.
Saint Faith the Virgin, the Feast of, 408.
Saint Frideswide's, at Oxford, 152.
Saint George the Martyr, the Feast of, 326, 438, 470, 486.
Saint Gertrude, the chapel of, 11.
Saint Giles's, near London, 447, 485.
Saint Gilles. *See* Reymund, Count de.
Saint Gregory the Pope the Feast of, 274, 303.
Saint Hillary, the Feast of, 204, 260, 366, 430.
Saint Jean d'Angely, 139, 290.
Saint John the Baptist, the Feast of the Nativity of, 162, 172, 175, 185, 186, 200, 214, 232, 234, 239, 245, 274, 279, 292, 315, 318, 338, 359, 366, 407.
Saint John the Baptist, the Feast of the Decollation of, 293.
Saint John Port Latin, the Feast of, 336.
Saint John, the town of, (Perth), 200, 238.
Saint John of Clerkenwell, the Hospital of, 333, 335, 476, 477.
Saint John, Sir John de, 192, 194, 204.
Saint John, Sir John de, 306.
Saint Julian, the church of, at Le Mans, 91.
Saint Katharine, the Feast of, 417.
Saint Laurence, the Feast of, 271, 402.
Saint Laurence, the Gate of, at Rome, 422.
Saint Leonard, the Day of, 135.
Saint Louis. *See* Louis IX.
Saint Lucy, the Feast of, 135, 303.
Saint Luke, the Feast of, 471.
Saint Margaret, the Day of, 179, 235, 272.
Saint Martin, the Feast of, 164, 189, 301, 333, 342, 411, 420, 476.
Saint Martin, the Translation of, 384, 417.
Saint Martin, Laurence de, 348.
Saint Mary, the Virgin, the Annunciation of, 237, 428.
Saint Mary, the Virgin, the Assumption of, 169, 286, 294, 395, 422, 459, 470, 478, 487.
Saint Mary, the Virgin, the Conception of, 268, 417.
Saint Mary, the Virgin, the Nativity of, 296, 314, 336, 357, 366, 367, 375, 425.
Saint Mary, the Virgin, the Purification of, 307, 437.
Saint Mary, the church of, at Nicæa, 56.
Saint Mary, the church of, at Rouen, 23.
Saint Mary, the monastery of, at Jumieges, 7.
Saint Mary Magdalen, the Feast of, 214, 402, 424.
Saint Matthew, the Feast of, 260, 376, 441.
Saint Matthew, the town and port of, 190, 321, 430.
Saint Matthias, the Day of, 242

Saint Maur, the Day of, 390.
Saint Michael, the Feast of, 163, 186, 257, 273, 274, 331, 336, 345, 386, 387, 459.
Saint Michael, Mount, 36, 39, 46, 54, 55, 88, 126.
Saint Nicholas, the Feast of, 331, 362.
Saint Omer, 297, 430.
Saint Oswin the Martyr, the Passion of, 339.
Saint Ouen, the church of, at Rouen, 31, 36.
Saint Paul, the church of, at London, 132, 134, 163, 315, 366, 368, 381, 438, 441, 455, 447.
Saint Paul's Cross, at London, 379, 483.
Saint Peter, the Abbey of, near Rouen, 36.
Saint Peter ad Vincula, or Peter's Chains, the Feast of, 158, 205, 206, 477.
Saint Peter, the church of, at Gloucester, 135.
Saint Peter, the church of, at Jumieges, 7, 19.
Saint Peter, the church of, at Rome, 234.
Saint Peter, the church of, at Westminster, 432.
Saint Peter, the church of, at Winchester, 81.
Saint Peter, the church of, at York, 224, 225.
Saint Peter and Saint Ouen, the church of, at Rouen, 31.
Saint Peter and Saint Paul, the Feast of the Apostles, 327.
Saint Pol, Waleran, Count de, 331.
Saint Praxedes, the title of a Cardinal, 334.
Saint Remy, 128.
Saint Quintin, the Monastery of, 7.
Saint Richer, the town of, 259.
Saint Sauveur, the castle of, 321, 331.
Saint Sauveur de Tybe, the town of 478.
Saint Sever, 195,
Saint Stephen, the Day of, 119.
Saint Stephen, the Abbey of, at Caen, 75, 479.
Saint Sylvester, the Day of, 340.
Saint Thomas the Apostle, the Day of, 391.
Saint Thomas the Archbishop and Martyr, the Feast of, 216, 340.
Saint Thomas, the Feast of the Translation of, 276.
Saint Valentine, the Feast of, 391, 412.
Saint Valery, 65, 77.
Saint Vedast, the chapel of, 11.
Saintés, 102.
Saintonge, 8, 143, 290.
Saints Simon and Jude, the Feast of, 372.
Saints Gervasius and Protasius, the Feast of, 273.
Saladin, 112, 113.
Salemon, the Advocate, 45.
Salisbury, 78, 204, 269, 339, 358.
Salisbury, the Bishop of, 89; Richard, Bishop of, 138; the Bishop of, 253; Simon de Sudbury, Bishop of, 335; Ralph Ergom, Bishop of, 358; John Waltham, Bishop of, 358, 369; Richard de Mitford, Bishop of, 369, 421; Robert Alum, Bishop of, 423, 426, 452, 484.
Salisbury, John de Montacute, Earl of, 375. *See* Montacute, John de.
Salisbury, (Thomas), Earl of, 479.
Salisbury, Sir William de Montacute, Earl of, 274, 275, 278, 283. *See* Montacute, William de.
Salisbury, William de Montacute, Earl of, 296, 320, 365, 389, 390.
Salisbury, William Longsword, Earl of. *See* Longsword, William.
Salisbyri, or Saresbyri, John, 355, 356.
Saloygne, 298.
Saltwode, 373.
Salveterre, 290.
Samuel, the Prophet, 220.
Sancer, the Count de, 371.
Sancho VI., King of Navarre, 105.
Sandwich, 134, 345.
Sant Angelo, the Castle of, 422.
Saphadin, 112.
Saracen, a, 283.
Saracens, the, 84, 112, 113, 114, 115, 139, 142, 144, 145, 146, 165, 252, 311, 431.
Saresbyri, John de. *See* Salisbyri.
Sarum, the County of, 348.
Sataleia, 115.
Saviour, the Rule of the, 450.
Savona, 422.

Savoy, 147, 168, 325.
Savoy, the, near London, 308.
Savoye, the Count de, 287.
Saxony, 127, 128, 132. *See* Henry, Duke of Saxony.
Scanza, the Isle of, 10.
Scarborough, 244.
Schakel, John, 330, 331.
Schene (Sheen, in Surrey), 326, 450.
Schevele, Sir J., 390.
Schordych, Master John de, 259.
Scilly Islands, the, 170, 172.
"Scita," the name, 108.
Sciticus, the noble, 107.
Scone, 189, 202, 205, 237, 272.
Scone, the Abbot of, 238.
Scot, John, Earl of Chester, 141.
"Scotia," the name, 108, 221.
Scotland, 70, 72, 101, 104, 111, 128, 152, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 187, 188, 189, 190, 196, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 205, 207, 208, 210, 213, 214, 215, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 234, 235, 237, 240, 245, 249, 251, 256, 257, 267, 271, 272, 273, 275, 297, 301, 308, 311, 339, 341, 358, 362, 363, 399, 408, 415, 450, 482, 486. *See* Scotia.
Scots, the, 85, 89, 90, 92, 94, 106, 107, 123, 128, 129, 152, 179, 181, 182, 189, 190, 196, 197, 198, 200, 202, 205, 206, 210, 213, 214, 217, 218, 222, 223, 224, 227, 231, 232, 233, 236, 238, 245, 246, 249, 250, 251, 252, 255, 257, 258, 267, 268, 270, 272, 273, 274, 275, 285, 287, 288, 297, 301, 327, 328, 329, 330, 332, 339, 340, 341, 357, 359, 366, 395, 400, 401, 406, 409, 415, 418.
"Scotus," the word, 108.
Scroope, Richard, Archbishop of York. *See* York.
Scrop, the Lord de, 288.
Scrop, Sir Henry Le, 428, 456, 457, 459.
Scrop, Sir Richard, 336.
Scrop, Sir William Le, 365, 375, 385.
Seez, 110.
Segrave, Hugh de, 336.
Segrave, John de, 232, 233.
Segrave, Nicholas de, 154.
Seine, the river, 7, 11, 17, 27, 28, 34, 45, 125, 286.
Seleby, Walter de, 249, 250.
Senchia of Provence, wife of Richard, Earl of Cornwall, 144.
Senlis, 13, 25, 26, 87, 29, 30.
Sens, the Archbishop of, 300.
Sepulchre, the Holy, 56, 144.
Serlo, 407, 408,
Severn, the river, 73, 76.
Seynclo (Saint Lo), 433, 434.
Sheen. *See* Schene.
Shirburn, 253.
Shrewsbury, 163, 175, 378, 379, 399, 400, 402, 450.
Shrewsbury, the Abbot of, 400.
Shropshire, 158.
Sibilla, the Countess, 92.
Sicily, 108, 115, 160, 167, 178, 241.
Sidon, 116.
Simon, Earl of Northampton, 108.
Sirefontaine, the castle of, 121.
Siward Barn, 72.
Skirlow, Walter. *See* Bath, *and* Durham, Bishops of.
Skyrgalle, King of Lithuania, 361.
Slee, 296.
Sluys, 209, 245. *See* Le Sclus.
Smithfield, 391, 428.
Snowdon, 171, 174, 176, 391.
Soissons, the Bishop of, 29.
Soissons, William, Count of, 39.
Soldan of Babylon, the, 143, 144, 180.
Solomon, King, 84, 426.
Soluces, the Bishop of, 415.
Somerset, 160.
Somerset, Thomas (correctly, John), Beaufort, Earl and Marquis of, 374, 375, 379. *See* Surrey.
Somme, the river, 22, 286.
Southampton, 103, 275, 471. *See* Hamptone.
Souche, Alan la. *See* La Souche.
Soymes, the Vicomte de, 289.
Soysi, 142.
Spain, 107, 142, 147, 195, 216, 293, 310, 311, 318, 321, 345, 344, 360, 420, 422.

Spain, the King of, 334.
Spains, the, 348.
Spalding, Peter de, 251.
Spaniards, the, 261, 293, 311, 312, 321, 328, 334, 342, 343.
Spires, 87.
Springe, Sir Edmund, 480.
Sprota, the damsel, 17.
Stafford, (Anne), Countess of, 372.
Stafford, (Edmund), Earl of, 401.
Stafford, Edmund de, Bishop of Exeter. *See* Exeter, Bishops of.
Stafford, (Hugh), Earl of, 321.
Stafford, Ralph de, Earl of, 294, 297.
Stafford, son of the Earl of, 341.
Stamford, 218, 363.
Stanhope Park, the fight at, 270.
Stapultone, Walter de, Bishop of Exeter. *See* Exeter.
Staterius, King of Scotland, 221.
Stephen, Count of Boulogne, and King of England, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 223. *See* Mortaigne.
Stigand, Archbishop of Canterbury, 70, 71.
Stilthorp, Sir Roger de, 350.
Stirling, 200, 210, 234, 245, 246.
Stortforde, the castle of, 129.
Stragan, Alexander, 285.
Strathern, the Earl of, 198.
Stredewy, 170, 174.
Stregwalli, the, 221.
Stury, Richard, 347, 348.
Stutevyle, the town of, 479.
Suabia, Philip, Duke of. *See* Philip.
Sudbury, Simon de, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of, *and* Salisbury, Bishops of.
Suellistone, 381.
Suffolk, 133.
Suffolk, Michael atte Pool, Earl of. *See* Atte Pool.
Suffolk, Michael atte Pool, Earl of, 462, 467.
Suffolk, Robert de Ufford, Earl of, 274, 278, 287, 296, 299.
Sules, Nicholas de 183.
Suliac, the Lord of, 259.
Surrey, 157.
Surrey, (Thomas Holland), Earl of Kent, and Duke of, 378.
Surrey, Thomas Beaufort (? John Beaufort, Earl of Somerset), Earl of, 430. *See* Somerset.
Surrey and Sussex, John de Warenne, Earl of, 153, 157, 164, 200, 203, 205, 206, 210, 213.
Sussex, 157, 327.
Sussex, John, Earl of. *See* Surrey and Sussex.
Sweden, 415, 417.
Sweyn I., King of Denmark, 21, 30, 41, 43, 54.
Sweyn III.,King of Denmark, 67.
Sweyn, son of Earl Godwin, 68.
Swynbourne, Sir Thomas de, 416.
Swyne, 276.
Swynford, Katharine de, 370, 374, 380. *See* Lancaster, Katharine, Duchess of.
Swynton, Sir John de, 395.
Syfolh, a tributary king, 222.
Syria, 79, 83.
Syrtes, the, 471.

T.

Tailebrugh, 119.
Talbot, Sir Richard, 271, 273, 274.
Talbot, Lord, 479.
Tamary, Roger de, 246.
Tankerville, the Lord de, 286.
Tankerville, William Chamberlain of, 99.
Tankervyle, the Count of, 304.
Tartars, the, 167, 343.
Tartary, 125, 381.
Tassilia, the Duke of, 334.
Tees, the river, 89.
Templars, the Knights, 87, 114, 143, 144, 242, 258.
Temple Histon (now Kirk Liston), 204.
Tenchebray, 85.
Teutonia, 128, 192, 213.
Tewkesbury, 458.
Thames, the river, 41, 43, 150, 363.
Theobald, Archbishop of York, 92.

Theobald, Count, 12.
Theobald, Count, 61.
Theobald, Count of Chartres, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35.
Theobald, Count of Flanders, 92, 93,
Theobald, King of Navarre, 141.
Theobald of Piacenza. *See* Gregory X.
Therningge, William, 387.
Thirsk, 423.
Thomas, Saint, the Martyr (Thomas à Becket), 97, 103, 106, 128, 388. *See* Thomas à Becket.
Thomas à Becket, Chancellor, and Archbishop of Canterbury, 93, 95.
Thomas, Archbishop of York, 84.
Thomas of Woodstock, Prince. *See* Gloucester, *and* Woodstock.
Thomas, Prince, son of Henry IV, 387, 388. *See* Clarence.
Thomas, Earl of Lancaster. *See* Lancaster.
Thomas, Abbot of Saint Alban's, 331, 373.
Thoulouse, 93, 97, 140, 296, 426.
Thoulouse, the Count of, 128.
Three Fountains, the Abbot of, 125.
Thuringia, 128.
Thurstan, Archbishop of York, 89.
Tillières, 44, 46, 57.
Tirel, Walter, 84.
Toarte, Guido de, 126. *See* Touart.
Tolagum, the County of, 58.
Toningges, 290.
Tonsberg, 188.
Toreigne, 298.
Torta. *See* Radulph Torta.
Touart, Hugh Brun, the Vicomte de, 124. *See* Toarte.
Toucques 477, 478.
Tour Osteries, 88,
Tour St. Jean, 88.
Touraine, 110, 126.
Tournay, 277, 179.
Tours 8, 61, 93, 119, 123, 149.
Tower of London, the, 163, 174, 175, 203, 235, 254, 259, 262, 263, 277, 280, 282, 305, 309, 335, 354, 355, 386, 387, 388, 418, 432, 441, 443.
Treggoz, Robert de, 159.
Trent, the river, 203.
Tresilian, Sir Robert, 349, 350, 354, 356.
Trifels, 117.
Trinity, College of the Holy, 105.
Trinity, Monastery of the Holy, at Caen, 479.
Tripolis. *See* Bohemund, Count of.
Trivet, Sir Thomas, 166.
Trivet, Sir Thomas, 337, 355, 358.
Trojans, the, 6, 220.
Troy, 220.
Troyes, 149.
Tumba, the mount, so called, 36.
Tunbridge, 155.
Tunis, 164, 165.
Turbervile, Sir Thomas, 146.
Turberville, Hugh de, 155.
Turketil, the noble, 39,
Turks, the 108, 114, 115, 366, 391.
Turold, 57.
Turstin, Count of Exmes, 57, 58.
Tuscany, 129, 161, 165, 176.
Tusculum, 106.
Tweed, the river, 182, 128, 335, 395.
Tydeman, Bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester, Bishops of.
Twenge, Marmaduke de, 210.
Tybe. *See* Saint Sauveur.
Tylere, Walter, 335.
Tyndale, 218.
Tyne, the river, 189.
Tynemouth, 244, 250, 339, 359, 362.
Tyre, 115, 116.
Tyre, the Duke of, 115.
Tyrel, Sir Hugh, 327.

U.

Ufford, Robert de. *See* Suffolk.
Ufforde, Sir Thomas, 311.
Ulster, the Earl of, 246.
Ulster, Lionel, Earl of, 296. *See* Clarence, *and* Lionel.
Umfrevyle, Gilbert, 271.
Umfrevyle, the Lord de, 479.
Urban, II., Pope, 81, 82.

Urban IV., Pope, 149, 156, 157.
Urban, V., Pope, 314.
Urban, VI., Pope, 328, 336, 337, 338, 359, 360, 361.
Ursini, Paolo, 422.
Urso, Sheriff of Worcester, 74.
Us, the Isle of, 356.

V.

Val des Dunes, 60.
Valence, Aymer de. *See* Pembroke.
Valence, William de, 148, 152, 154, 157, 174. *See* Pembroke.
Vallis Rodulii, 88.
Valoignes, 104.
Valois, 435.
Valoys, Charles de, 258, 268, 269, 289, 290.
Valoys, Philip de, 268, 276, 280, 282. *See* Philip V., King of France.
Vango, William, 308.
Vannes, 281.
Vaux, John de, 153.
Vazhan, Rees. *See* Rees Vazhan.
Veer, De. *See* De Veer.
Vendome, 119, 160.
Vendome, the Count de, 467.
Venetians, the, 165.
Venus, the goddess, 348, 470.
Vermandois, 7.
Verne, 39.
Verneuil, 88, 99, 119, 126.
Vernon, Sir Richard, 402.
Vesci, John de, 183.
Vienna, 115.
Vienne, the Dauphin of. *See* Charles, the Dauphin, *and* Charles V. of France.
Vienne, Sir John de, 341.
Vienne. *See* Girard.
Vilames, the Bishop of, 371.
Virgil, the Poet, quoted, 4, 464, 465, 466, 482.
Viterbo, 165.
Viterne, the castle of, 143.
Viterpin. *See* Beziers.
Vulcan, the god, 7, 40.

W.

Wake, Baldwin, 153.
Wake, Blanche de, 301.
Wake, Nicholas, 153.
Wakefeld, Henry de, Bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester, Bishops of.
Wakering, John, Bishop of Norwich. *See* Norwich, Bishops of.
Walchelin (de Ferrers). *See* Ferrers.
Walcheren, 10.
Waldby, Robert, Bishop of Chichester, and Archbishop of York. *See* Chichester, Bishops of, *and* York, Archbishops of.
Waldene, Roger, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of, *and* London, Bishops of.
Waleran, Count of Mellent, 44, 45.
Waleran, Count of St. Pol. *See* Saint Pol.
Wales, 3, 74, 97, 129, 140, 143, 149, 151, 152, 155, 157, 158, 163, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 178, 180, 193, 194, 196, 221, 237, 240, 257, 264, 269, 283, 307, 349, 354, 378, 391, 393, 395, 399, 403, 416, 418. *See* Welch.
Wales, South, 158.
Wales, West. *See* Rees, *and* West Welch.
Wales, Edward, Prince of, and Duke of Acquitaine, son of Edward III. (the Black Prince), 298, 300, 305, 307, 309, 310, 313, 323, 327. *See* Acquitaine, *and* Edward, son of Edward III.
Wales, Henry, Prince of, son of Henry IV., 388, 423. *See* Henry, Prince, *and* Henry V.
Wales, Richard, Prince of, son of Edward the Black Prince, 323, 325, 326. *See* Cornwall, Richard II., *and* Richard of Bordeaux.
Wales, Joan, Princess of, 307. *See* Joan, *and* Kent.
Waleys (Wallace), William, 205, 206, 210, 213, 214, 232, 235.
Walkefare, Robert de, 261.
Wallingford, 65, 254, 264.
Walo, the Clerk, 127.
Walo, the Legate, 137, · *See* Gualo.
Walsingham, Thomas, 3.

Walter, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Walter, Bishop of Chartres, 13.
Walter, Bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester, Bishops of.
Waltham, 105.
Waltham, the Abbot of, 391.
Waltham, John, Bishop of Salisbury. *See* Salisbury, Bishops of.
Waltheof, 73, 74.
Walwurthe, Willlam, 335.
Ware, 393.
Warenne, John de, Earl of Surrey and Sussex. *See* Surrey *and* Sussex.
Warenne, Earl, 283.
Warenne, William de, 154.
Wark (Werk), the castle of, 197, 198, 338, 388.
Warkworth, the castle of, 402.
Warwast, William, 81.
Warwick, William, Earl of, 194, 200.
Warwick, Guido, Earl of. *See* Beauchamp.
Warwick, Thomas de Beauchamp, Earl of, 285, 286, 287, 296, 299, 314.
Warwick, Thomas, Earl of, 321, 323, 353, 354, 358, 374, 377, 379, 382.
Warwick, Richard, Earl of, 452, 479, 486.
Watertone, Robert, 402.
Watervyle, Berengar de, 153.
Weardale, 267.
Welch, the, 129, 140, 160, 173, 174, 176, 192, 193, 194, 213, 237, 248, 264, 391, 392, 394, 395, 403, 406, 409, 416. *See* Wales.
Welch, the West, 170, 171. *See* Rees.
Werk, the castle of. *See* Wark.
Westminster, 76, 84, 88, 89, 92, 118, 122, 134, 138, 142, 145, 164, 166, 169, 173, 177, 202, 242, 266, 294, 295, 297, 300, 326, 327, 329, 330, 352, 354, 355, 366, 368, 369, 386, 387, 388, 397, 408, 432, 447, 470.
Westminster, the Great Hall at, 386.
Westminster, the Hall at, 254.
Westminster, the Abbot of, 383, 452.
Westminster the First, the Statutes of, 169.
Westminster the Second, the Statutes of, 177.
Westminster the Third, the Statutes of, 179.
Westmoreland, 228, 285, 332.
Westmoreland, Ralph Nevyle, Earl of, 379, 384, 402, 413.
White Company, the, 306 315.
White Monks, the, 176.
Wight, the Isle of, 164, 327, 374, 403, 404.
Wigmore, 158, 259.
Wilford, William de, 403.
William I., or the Conqueror, Duke of Normandy, King of England, 55, 56, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76. *See* Bastard, William.
William II., or Rufus, King of England, son of William I., 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 80, 82, 84, 181, 223. *See* Rufus.
William, King of Scotland, 101, 103, 104, 106, 108, 111, 128, 181, 182, 223, 224, 225, 226.
William, Archbishop of Canterbury, 88, 89.
William, Archbishop of Rheims, 105.
William, Bishop of London. *See* London, Bishops of.
William, Bishop of Coventry. *See* Coventry, Bishops of.
William, Count of Poitou. *See* Poitou.
William, Count of Exmes, 38, 39.
William, Count of Soissons. *See* Soissons.
William, Count of Mortaigne, 85.
William Longsword, Duke of Normandy, 13, 16, 19, 22, 23, 28, 29.
William Longsword, Earl of Salisbury, *See* Longsword.
William, Duke of Zeland. *See* Zeland.
William, Prince, son of Henry I., 87.
William, Earl Marshal. *See* Marshal.
William, son of Richard II., Duke of Normandy, 47.
William of Malmesbury. *See* Malmesbury.
Willuby, the Lord de, 479.
Wilna, 361.
Wiltshire, William le Scrop, Earl of, 379.
Winchelsea, 207, 293, 303, 304, 327, 332.
Winchelsee, Robert de, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.

Winchester, 42, 71, 76, 84, 110, 128, 131, 135, 160, 161, 169, 269, 317, 365, 412.
Winchester, Peter, Bishop of, 135; Aymer, Bishop Elect of, 148; the Bishop of, 260; William de Edingdone, Bishop of, 293; William de Wycham, Bishop of, 358, 412; Henry (Beaufort), Bishop of, 441, 475, 476.
Winchester, Hugh Despencer the Elder, Earl of. *See* Despencer, Sir Hugh, the Elder.
Windsor, 78, 86, 104, 136, 150, 151, 153, 177, 244, 282, 326, 331, 389, 390, 412, 470.
"Without a Head," the Company so called, 300.
Witold. *See* Wytot.
Witsand, 59, 92.
Wittleseye, William de, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Archbishops of.
Wlleman, Benedict, 471.
Woodstock, 94, 105, 252.
Woodstock, Edmund of, Earl of Kent. *See* Edmund.
Woodstock, Thomas of, Earl of Buckingham, 327, 332, 339. *See* Glouecester.
Worcester, 92, 150, 158, 159, 416, 458.
Worcester, the County of, 158.
Worcester, Mauger, Bishop of, 128; Walter, Bishop of, 151, 159; the Bishop of, 236; Henry de Wakefeld, Bishop of, 370; Tydeman, Bishop of, 370; Richard de Clifford, Bishop of, 423; Thomas Peverelle, Bishop of, 423. *See* Wulstan.
Worcester, Thomas Percy, Earl of, 379, 398, 399, 400, 401. *See* Percy, Sir Thomas.
Worcester, the Prior of, 452.
Worcester. *See* Urso, Sheriff of.
Worms, 117.
Wraw, John, 336.
Wulnoth, son of Earl Godwin, 68, 76.
Wulstan, Bishop of Worcester, 73, 76, 77, 135.
Wurselee, Geoffrey, 329.
Wy, 241.
Wycham, William de, Bishop of Winchester. *See* Winchester.
Wyclef, John, 324, 325, 333, 340, 359.
Wycliffites, the, 336, 348.
Wye, the river, 158.
Wyndeleshores (Windsor), William de, 332.
Wytot (Witold), King, 361.

Y.

Yarmouth, 133, 195, 209.
York, the city of, 42, 67, 185, 212, 213, 214, 224, 225, 235, 236, 244, 247, 249, 250, 252, 257, 274, 365, 373, 402, 413, 414, 415.
York, the County of, 42.
York, Aldred, Archbishop of, 70; the Archbishop of, 219; John of Beverley, Archbishop of, 222; the Archbishop of, 288; Alexander de Neville, Archbishop of, 347, 349, 354, 355, 358; Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of, 358, 367, 369; Robert Waldby, Archbishop of, 373; the Archbishop of, 386, 406; Richard Scroope, Archbishop of, 412, 413, 417; Robert Alum, Archbishop of, 418; Henry Bowet, Archbishop of, 423. *See* Aldred, Theobald, Thomas, *and* Thurstan.
York, the Abbot of, 475.
York, Edmund, Duke of, 342, 360, 368, 384, 395. *See* Cambridge, *and* Langley.
York, Edward, Duke of, 419, 436, 457, 467, 468.
York, Thomas de Poltone, Dean of, 475.
York, William de, 159.
York, the Sheriffs of, 288, 424.
Ypres, 279, 333, 337.
Ypres, William de, 90.

Z.

Zeland, 277, 412.
Zeland, William, Duke of, 294.
Zouche, Alan la. *See* La Souche.
Zouche, Sir William la, 288, 339.

INDEX OF NAMES

IN THE

APPENDIX.

INDEX OF NAMES

IN THE

APPENDIX.

A.

Alban, Saint, 547.
Albany, 527.
Albemarle, the Earl of, 500.
Alexander IV., Pope, 535.
Alianor, or Eleanor, Queen, wife of Henry III., 504, 509, 530, 531, 537.
Almaine, or Germany, 505, 565.
Almaine, Richard, King of, (Earl of Cornwall, brother of Henry III.), 503, 504, 509, 510, 513, 514, 515, 527, 528, 529, 530, 535, 547, 548, 564. *See* Romans.
Amiens, 509.
Anjou, Charles, Count of, 532, 550. *See* Charles, brother of the King of France.
Apulia, 560.
Arundel, John Fitz-Alan, Earl of, 518, 527.
Aymer, Bishop Elect. *See* Winchester.

B.

Bardolf, William, 527.
Bartholomew, Saint, 566.
Basset, Philip, 514, 527, 548, 564.
Basset, Ralph, 542, 543.
Bassinggeburne, Warin de, 535.
Bath, William, Bishop of, 561.
Baylol, John de, 519, 527, 537.
Bayonne, 506.
Beauchamp, John de, 543.
Benevento, 566.
Benevento, the Battle of, 550.
Besille, or Besilles, Matthias de, 502, 506.
Bigot, Hugh. *See* Bygot.
Blund, William, 528.
Bonevente. *See* Benevento.
Boniface, Archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Bosham, Hervey de, 526.
Boun, Humphrey de, the Younger, 544.
Brecon, 512.
Bretagne, 531.
Bridgenorth (Bruges), 502, 539.
Bristol, 505, 535, 537.
Bruges. *See* Bridgenorth.
Brus, Peter de, 519.
Brus, Robert de, 519, 527.
Burgundy, 502.
Burgundy, the Count of, 547.
Busseye, W. de, 495.
Bygot, or Bigot, Hugh, 527, 530.
Bygot, Earl Roger de, 511, 547.

C.

Calabria, 550, 560.
Cambridge, 557.
Campania, 550.
Canterbury, 530.
Canterbury, Boniface, Archbishop of, 509, 530, 531.

Cantilupe, Walter de, Bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester.
Capua, 550.
Caserta, the Count of, 551.
Charlemagne, 566.
Charles, brother of the King of France, 530, 532. *See* Anjou, Charles, Count of.
Chaumberleyn, Peter le, 532.
Chester, 537, 539, 554.
Chester, the March of, 506.
Chichester, the Bishop of, 563.
Christ, 510, 524, 534, 545.
Christendom, 562.
Christians, the, 510, 546, 565.
Cinque Ports, the, 519, 530, 534.
Clare, Gilbert de, Earl of Gloucester. *See* Gloucester.
Clifford, Roger de, 510.
Comin, John, 527.
Coventry, 556, 561.

D.

Derby, Robert de Ferrers, Earl of, 512, 519.
Derbyshire, 519.
Despenser, Hugh, Justiciar, 517, 532, 534, 538, 542, 543.
Dover, 507, 544.

E.

Edessa, W., Archbishop of, 552.
Edward, Prince, son of Henry III., 493, 502, 503, 505, 506, 512, 513, 514, 517, 519, 522, 523, 526, 528, 531, 533, 535, 536, 537, 539, 540, 541, 559, 562, 563.
Eleanor, Queen, wife of Henry III. *See* Alianor.
Ely, 556, 558, 559, 561.
England, 493, 496, 497, 498, 499, 501, 505, 506, 508, 509, 510, 511, 514, 515, 521, 522, 523, 527, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 552, 565.
England, "Gesta" of the Kings of, 514.
English, the, 492, 496, 497, 499, 507, 511, 518, 529, 552.
Ensle, John de, 557.
Estrange, Hamo le, 510.
Europe, 530.
Evesham, 541, 542, 558.
Evesham, the Battle of, 491, 542, 544, 546, 565.

F.

Fenes, Ingelram de, 503.
Fitz-Alan, John. *See* Arundel.
Fitz-Geoffrey, John, 498.
Fitz-John, John, 529, 543.
Fitz-Warin, Fulco, 528.
Flanders, 530.
Flanders, the Count of, 550, 551.
Fletching. *See* Flexingge.
Flexingge (now Fletching), 520, 521, 524.
France, 506, 508, 509, 530.
France, the King of, 532, 553.
Frenchmen, 550.
Frideswide the Virgin, Saint, 514.

G.

Gannok. *See* Glamorgan.
Gascoigne, 497, 531.
Gawan, Count, 550.
Germany *See* Almaine.
Giffard, John, 513, 517, 526, 546.
Glamorgan (Gannok), 54 the castle of 506.
Gloucester, 502, 513, 539.
Gloucester, Gilbert de Clare, Earl of, 521, 522, 523, 525, 527, 529, 533, 538, 539, 540, 541, 544, 546, 548, 557, 558, 559.
Gloucester, Richard, Earl of, 496, 498.
Grei, Richard de, 540.

H.

Hastinges, Henry de, 526, 544.
Hay, the castle of, 512, 529.

Henry III., King of England, 492, 493, 521, 527, 536, 544, 547, 548, 558, 559, 564, 565.
Henry, son of Richard, King of Almaine, 503, 504, 505, 509, 510, 528, 533, 555.
Herbaldoune (Harbledown), 530.
Hereford, 539, 540, 541.
Hereford, the castle of, 529.
Hereford, Humphrey de Boun, Earl of, 527.
Hereford, Peter, Bishop of, 506, 509.
Heringaud, Ralph, Baron, 528.
Huntingdon, the castle of, 512.

J.

Jesus Christ, 546.
Jewry, the, in London, 517.
Jewry, the, at Worcester, 512.
Jews, the, 516, 517, 545, 557.
John, King of England, 509.
John de Temporibus, 566.
Jordin, Count, 550, 551.
Josias, 498.

K.

Kelingworthe. *See* Kenilworth.
Kempsey, 541.
Kenilworth, 517, 518, 540, 541, 542, 548, 551, 552, 556, 558.

L.

Laurence, Bishop of Rochester, 561.
Leicester, 518.
Leicester, the Countess of, wife of Simon de Montfort, 549.
Leicester, Simon de Montfort, Earl of, 496, 498, 501, 505, 507, 509, 511, 513, 516, 518, 519, 521, 523, 524, 525, 527, 529, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543.
Len. *See* Lynn.
L'Estrange, Hamo, 535.
Lewes, 512, 517, 520, 522, 524, 565.
Lewes, the Priory of, 528.
Lewes, the Battle of, 491, 492, 526, 530, 532, 536, 541, 565.
Leyburne, Roger de, 510, 515, 518.
Lincoln, the Bishop of. *See* Robert, Saint.
Liziniac, Guido de, 527.
Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, 506, 512, 529, 536.
London, 506, 507, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 525, 526, 534, 537, 549, 558, 565.
London, the Tower of, 503.
London, the Bishop of, 532, 534, 563.
Londoners, the, 504, 506, 508, 514, 515, 518, 520, 524, 526, 527, 528, 538.
Lord, the Passion of our, 516.
Louis, King of France, 506, 509.
Ludlow, 530.
Ludlow, the castle of, 529.
Lynn (Len), 557.
Lyons, the Bishop Elect of, 531.

M.

Manfred (King of Sicily), 550.
March of Wales, the, 512, 529, 535, 537, 530.
Marshal, the Lord, 564.
Mary, Saint, the Virgin, 566.
Matthew, Saint, the Gospel of, quoted, 507, 541.
Maundevile, William de, 543.
Maunsel, John, 503, 509.
Monmouth, 540.
Montfort, Guido de, 543, 544.
Montfort, Henry de, 513, 538, 543.
Montfort, Peter de, 537, 543.
Montfort, Peter de, the Younger, 544.
Montfort, Philip de, 550.
Montfort, Simon de, Earl of Leicester. *See* Leicester.
Montfort, Simon de, the Younger, 516, 541, 547, 548, 551, 558.

Montgomery, 529.
Mortimer, Hugh de, 529.
Mortimer, Roger de, 512, 529, 530, 539, 543, 546, 557, 558, 559.
Munchensi, William de, 540.

N.

Naples, 550.
Norfolk, the Earldom of, 547.
Northampton, 514, 515, 516, 519, 538, 547, 548, 555, 556.
Norwich, 551.
Nottingham, 519.

O.

Ordeleye, the castle of, 502.
Otho II., the Emperor, 566.
Ottoboni, Cardinal and Legate, 535.
Oxford, 493, 498, 502, 514, 515, 536, 552, 558.
Oxford, the Earl of, 540.
Oxford, the Provisions, or Statutes, of, 492, 497, 504, 506, 507, 508, 514, 520, 523, 538, 568.

P.

Percy, Henry de, 518, 527.
Perigord. *See* Pyregord.
Pershore, 536.
Peter, Bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
Peter of Savoy. *See* Savoy.
Pevensey, 527.
Pevensey, the castle of, 540.
Poitevins, the, 493, 498, 515.
Pyregord (Perigord), 550.

R.

Reading, 534.
Reygate, the castle of, 515.
Richard, Abbot of Westminster, 561.
Richard, Saint, 562.
Richard's Castle, 529.
Rishanger, Brother William de, 491.
Robert, Saint, Bishop of Lincoln, 497, 562, 563.
Robert, son of the Count of Flanders, 550, 551.
Rochester, 518, 519.
Rochester, the castle of, 515.
Rochester, Laurence, Bishop of, 561.
Romans, the, 495, 496, 498, 501, 550.
Romans, Richard, King of the, 522, 523. *See* Almaine, Richard, King of.
Rome, 500, 566.
Rome, the Church of, 533, 562.
Rome, the Court of, 498, 500, 501, 502, 513, 560.
Ros, Robert de, 539.
Rouen, the Archbishop of, 532.

S.

Sabina, the Bishop of, 532, 533.
"Sadonorum," the castle so called, 512.
Saint Agatha the Virgin, the Day of, 535.
Saint Alban's, 517, 535, 547.
Saint Edward, the Feast of, 558.
Saint Edmund's, Bury, 559.
Saint James, 542.
Saint Laurence, the Eve of, 556.
Saint Lucy the Virgin, the Feast of, 547.
Saint Martin, the Feast of, 554, 558.
Saint Mary, the Nativity of, 506, 546.
Saint Mary, the Purification of, 559.
Saint Michael, the Feast of, 506.
Saint Peter ad Vincula (or Peter's Chains), the Feast of, 505, 540.
Saint Peter and Saint Paul, the Day of, 539.
Saint Pol, the Count de, 547.
Saint Vincent the Martyr, the Feast of, 509, 547.
Saracens, the, 565.
Savoy, Peter of, 494, 530, 531.
Scotland, the King of, 537.
Seuly (or ? Senly), Henry de, 550.

Severn, the river, 513, 565.
Shrewsbury, 502.
Sicily, 560.
Someri, Roger de, 527.
Spain, 531.
Staffordshire, 519.
Sussex, 520.

T.

Tateshale, Robert de, 527.
Temple, the Master of the, 532.
Tetbury, 519.
Thames, the river, 504.
Tickhill. *See* Tykehille.
Tower of London, the. *See* London, the Tower of.
Tykehille (now Tickhill), 551.
Tykehille, the Honour of, 509.

V.

Valence, William de, 493, 494, 495, 527, 530, 539, 559.
Vaux, John de, 510.
Vendome, the Count de, 550.
Vesci, John de, 544.

W.

W., Archbishop of Edessa *See* Edessa.
Wales, 506, 512, 529, 536, 559,
Wallingford, 514, 535.
Walrand, Robert, 535.
Warenne, John, Earl de, 515, 518, 527, 530, 539, 559.
Warwick, 517, 518.
Warwick, William Maudut, Earl of, 517.
Welch, the, 529, 543.
Westminster, 507.
Westminster, Richard, Abbot of, 561.
William, Bishop of Bath. *See* Bath.
Wiltone, William, Justiciar, 528.
Winchester, 499, 545, 546.
Winchester, Aymer, Bishop Elect of, 493, 499, 500; the Bishop of, 563.
Windsor, 504, 513.
Windsor, the castle of, 503.
Woodstock, 537.
Worcester, 502, 512 536, 539, 540, 541.
Worcester, the castle of, 543.
Worcester, Walter de Cantilupe, Bishop of, 505, 506, 513, 524; the Bishop of, 534.
Wulvesey, the castle of, 499.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[750.—11/75.]